

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**DANISH – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Mormons Bog

En beretning skrevet ved Mormons hånd på plader taget fra Nefis plader

Således er den en forkortelse af optegnelsen om Nefis folk og også om lamanitterne – Skrevet til lamanitterne, der er en rest af Israels hus, og også til jøde og ikke-jøde – Skrevet på befaling, og også ved profetiens og åbenbarelsens ånd – Skrevet og forseglet og skjult i Herren, for at de ikke skulle blive ødelagt – Skal komme frem ved Guds gave og kraft for at blive oversat – Forseglet ved Moronis hånd og skjult i Herren for til sin tid at komme frem ved ikke-jøderne – Oversættelsen deraf ved Guds gave.

Også en forkortelse af Eters Bog, der er en optegnelse om Jeredes folk, som blev spredt på den tid, da Herren forvirrede folkets sprog, mens de var ved at bygge et tårn for at nå himlen – Hvilken skal vise resten af Israels hus, hvilke store ting Herren har gjort for deres fædre, og at de måtte kende Herrens pagter, at de ikke er forstødt for evigt – Og også for at overbevise jøde og ikke-jøde om, at JESUS er KRISTUS, den evige GUD, som giver sig til kende for alle folkeslag – Og se, hvis der er fejl, da er de menneskers fejl; fordøm derfor ikke det, der hører Gud til, så I må blive fundet uplettede for Kristi dommersæde.

OPRINDELIG OVERSÆTTELSE FRA PLADERNE TIL ENGELSK VED JOSEPH SMITH JUN.

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

De tre vidners vidnesbyrd

Det gøres herved vitterligt for alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, til hvem dette værk vil nå: At vi ved Gud Faderens og vor Herre Jesu Kristi nåde har set de plader, som indeholder denne optegnelse, som er en optegnelse om Nefis folk og også om lamanitterne, deres brødre, og også om Jereds folk, der kom fra tårnet, om hvilket der er blevet talt. Og vi ved også, at de er blevet oversat ved Guds gave og kraft, for hans røst har kundgjort det for os; derfor ved vi med vished, at værket er sandt. Og vi vidner også om, at vi har set de indgraveringer, som er på pladerne, og de er blevet os vist ved Guds og ikke noget menneskes kraft. Og vi kundgør med højtidelige ord, at en engel fra Gud kom ned fra himlen, og han bragte pladerne og lagde dem for vore øjne, så vi så og betragtede dem og indgraveringerne på dem; og vi ved, at det er ved Gud Faderens og vor Herre Jesu Kristi nåde, at vi så dem og aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at dette er sandt. Og det er vidunderligt i vore øjne. Men Herrens røst befalede os, at vi skulle aflægge vidnesbyrd om det; derfor aflægger vi for at være lydige mod Guds befalinger vidnesbyrd om dette. Og vi ved, at hvis vi er trofaste i Kristus, vil vi gøre vore klæder rene for alle menneskers blod og blive fundet uplettede for Kristi dommersæde og skal bo hos ham i evighed i himlene. Og ære være Faderen og Sønnen og Helligånden, som er én Gud. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

De otte vidners vidnesbyrd

Det gøres herved vitterligt for alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, til hvem dette værk vil nå: At Joseph Smith jun., oversætteren af dette værk, har vist os de omtalte plader, som synes at være af guld; og alle de ark, som ovennævnte Smith har oversat, har vi rørt med vore hænder, og vi så også indgraveringerne derpå, og alt har udseende af at være ældgammelt og af kunstfærdig forarbejdning. Og vi aflægger med højtidelige ord vidnesbyrd om, at ovennævnte Smith har vist os dem, for vi har set og løftet på dem og ved med vished, at ovennævnte Smith har de plader, som vi har talt om. Og vi giver vore navne til verden for at bevidne for verden, hvad vi har set. Og vi lyver ikke, Gud aflægger vidnesbyrd derom.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER
JACOB WHITMER
PETER WHITMER JUN.
JOHN WHITMER
HIRAM PAGE
JOSEPH SMITH SEN.
HYRUM SMITH
SAMUEL H. SMITH

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER
JACOB WHITMER
PETER WHITMER, JUN.
JOHN WHITMER
HIRAM PAGE
JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.
HYRUM SMITH
SAMUEL H. SMITH

Nefis Første Bog

Hans regeringstid og tjenestegørelse

En beretning om Lehi og hans hustru, Sarija, og hans fire sønner, der (begyndende med den ældste) hed Laman, Lemuel, Sam og Nepfi. Herren formaner Lehi til at drage ud af Jerusalems land, fordi han profeterer for folket angående deres misgerninger, og de forsøger at berøve ham livet. Han drager tre dages rejser ud i ørkenen med sin familie. Nepfi tager sine brødre med sig og tager tilbage til Jerusalems land efter optegnelsen om jøderne.

Beretningen om deres trængsler. De tager Ismaels døtre til hustru. De tager deres familier med sig og drager ud i ørkenen. Deres lidelser og trængsler i ørkenen. Den vej de rejser. De kommer til de store vande. Nefis brødre sætter sig op imod ham. Han beskæmmer dem og bygger et skib. De giver stedet navnet Overflod. De krydser de store vande og kommer til det forjættede land og så videre. Dette er i overensstemmelse med Nefis beretning, eller med andre ord, jeg, Nepfi, har skrevet denne optegnelse.

Nefis Første Bog 1

- 1 Jeg, Nepfi, der er født af agtværdige forældre, jeg blev derfor oplært en del i al min fars lærdom, og da jeg har set mange trængsler i løbet af mine dage, men alligevel er blevet meget begunstiget af Herren alle mine dage, ja, da jeg har fået stor kundskab om Guds godhed og hemmeligheder, udfærdiger jeg derfor en optegnelse om mit virke i mine dage.
- 2 Ja, jeg udfærdiger en optegnelse på min fars sprog, der består af jødernes lærdom og egypternes sprog.
- 3 Og jeg ved, at den optegnelse, som jeg udfærdiger, er sand; og jeg udfærdiger den med min egen hånd; og jeg udfærdiger den i overensstemmelse med min viden.

The First Book of Nephi

His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

4 For det skete i begyndelsen af det første år af Sidkijas, Judas konges, regeringstid (min far Lehi havde boet ved Jerusalem alle sine dage); og i det selv samme år kom der mange profeter, der profeterede for folket, at de skulle omvende sig, ellers ville den store by Jerusalem blive ødelagt.

5 Således skete det, at min far, Lehi, mens han drog om, bad til Herren, ja, af hele sit hjerte for sit folk.

6 Og det skete, mens han bad til Herren, at der kom en ildsøjle og hvilede på en klippe foran ham; og han så og hørte meget; og på grund af det, som han så og hørte, skælvede og bævede han overordentlig meget.

7 Og det skete, at han vendte hjem til sit eget hus ved Jerusalem; og han kastede sig på sin seng, overvældet af Ånden og det, som han havde set.

8 Og således overvældet af Ånden blev han borttrykket i et syn, så han endog så himlene åbne, og han mente at se Gud sidde på sin trone, omgivet af utallige skarer af engle, der så ud som om, de sang og priste deres Gud.

9 Og det skete, at han så Én stige ned fra himlens midte, og han så, at hans glans overgik solens midt på dagen.

10 Og han så også tolv andre, der fulgte ham, og deres skær overgik stjernernes på himmelhvælvingen.

11 Og de kom ned og gik frem på jordens overflade; og den første kom hen og stod foran min far og gav ham en bog og bød ham, at han skulle læse.

12 Og det skete, at mens han læste, blev han fyldt af Herrens Ånd.

13 Og han læste og sagde: Ve, ve, Jerusalem, for jeg har set dine vederstyggeligheder! Ja, og min far læste meget angående Jerusalem – at den ville blive tilintetgjort og indbyggerne deri; mange ville omkomme ved sværdet, og mange ville blive ført bort til Babylon som fanger.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

- 14 Og det skete, at da min far havde læst og set mange store og forunderlige ting, råbte han mange ord til Herren, såsom: Store og forunderlige er dine gerninger, o Herre, Gud, Almægtige! Din trone er høj i himlene, og din magt og godhed og barmhjertighed er over alle jordens indbyggere; og fordi du er barmhjertig, vil du ikke tillade dem, der kommer til dig, at de skal fortæbes!
- 15 Og med et sådant sprog priste min far sin Gud, for hans sjæl frydede sig, og hele hans hjerte var fyldt på grund af det, som han havde set, ja, som Herren havde vist ham.
- 16 Og se, jeg, Nephi, udfærdiger ikke en fuldstændig beretning om det, som min far har skrevet, for han har skrevet meget, som han så i syner og i drømme; og han har også skrevet meget, som han profeterede og talte til sine børn, hvorom jeg ikke udfærdiger en fuldstændig beretning.
- 17 Men jeg vil udfærdige en beretning om mit virke i mine dage. Se, jeg udfærdiger en forkortelse af min fars optegnelse på plader, som jeg har lavet med mine egne hænder; for se, efter at jeg har forkortet min fars optegnelse, så vil jeg udfærdige en beretning om mit eget liv.
- 18 For se, jeg ønsker, at I skal vide, at efter at Herren havde vist min far, Lehi, så mange forunderlige ting, ja, angående ødelæggelsen af Jerusalem, se, da gik han ud blandt folket og begyndte at profetere og at fortælle dem om det, som han havde både set og hørt.
- 19 Og det skete, at jøderne spottede ham på grund af det, som han vidnede om dem; for han vidnede i sandhed om deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder; og han vidnede om, at det, som han havde set og hørt, og også det, som han havde læst i bogen, tydeligt tilkendegav Messias' komme og også verdens forløsning.
- 20 Og da jøderne hørte dette, blev de vrede på ham, ja, ligesom på profeterne fordem, som de havde stødt ud og stenet og slået ihjel; og de stræbte ham også efter livet for at berøve ham det. Men se, jeg, Nephi, vil vise jer, at Herrens milde barmhjertighed er over alle dem, som han har udvalgt på grund af deres tro for at gøre dem mægtige, endog med magt til udfrielse.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

Nefis Første Bog 2

- 1 For se, det skete, at Herren talte til min far, ja, i en drøm, og sagde til ham: Velsignet er du, Lehi, for det, som du har gjort; og fordi du har været trofast og kundgjort dette folk det, som jeg befalede dig, se, da forsøger de at berøve dig livet.
- 2 Og det skete, at Herren befalede min far, ja, i en drøm, at han skulle tage sin familie med sig og drage ud i ørkenen.
- 3 Og det skete, at han var lydlig mod Herrens ord, hvorfor han gjorde, som Herren befalede ham.
- 4 Og det skete, at han drog ud i ørkenen. Og han forlod sit hus og sit arveland og sit guld og sit sølv og sine kostbarheder og tog ikke noget med sig, bortset fra sin familie og proviant og telte, og drog ud i ørkenen.
- 5 Og han kom ned til grænseegnene nær bredden af Det Røde Hav, og han rejste i ørkenen i de grænseegne, som ligger nærmest Det Røde Hav, og han rejste i ørkenen med sin familie, som bestod af min mor, Sarija, og mine ældre brødre, Laman, Lemuel og Sam.
- 6 Og det skete, at da han havde rejst tre dage i ørkenen, slog han sit telt op i en dal ved bredden af en flod med vand.
- 7 Og det skete, at han byggede et alter af sten og bragte Herren et offer og gav tak til Herren vor Gud.
- 8 Og det skete, at han gav floden navnet Laman, og den løb ud i Det Røde Hav, og dalen lå i grænseegnene nær dens udmunding.
- 9 Og da min far så, at flodens vand løb ud i Det Røde Havs kilde, talte han til Laman og sagde: O, gid du var som denne flod og bestandig løb ud i kilden til al retfærdighed!
- 10 Og han talte også til Lemuel: O, gid du var som denne dal, fast og bestandig, og urokkelig i at holde Herrens befalinger!

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

- 11 Se, dette sagde han på grund af Lamans og Lemuels stivnakkehed; for se, de murrede imod deres far over meget, fordi han var en synsk mand og havde ført dem ud af Jerusalems land, så de måtte efterlade deres arveland og deres guld og deres sølv og deres kostbarheder, og så de måtte omkomme i ørkenen. Og det, sagde de, havde han gjort på grund af sit hjertes tåbelige indbildninger.
- 12 Og således murrede Laman og Lemuel, der var de ældste, imod deres far. Og de murrede, fordi de ikke vidste, hvordan den Gud, som havde skabt dem, handlede.
- 13 Ej heller troede de, at Jerusalem, den store by, kunne blive ødelagt i overensstemmelse med profeternes ord. Og de var ligesom de jøder, der var i Jerusalem, og som forsøgte at berøve min far livet.
- 14 Og det skete, at min far talte til dem i Lemuels dal med kraft og fyldt af Ånden, indtil deres legeme rystede foran ham. Og han beskæmmede dem, så de ikke turde tage til genmæle mod ham; derfor gjorde de, som han befalede dem.
- 15 Og min far boede i et telt.
- 16 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, som var overordentlig ung, men som alligevel var stor af vækst, og som også nærede store ønsker om at kende til Guds hemmeligheder, jeg anrøbte derfor Herren; og se, han kom til mig og blødgjorde mit hjerte, så jeg troede alle de ord, som min far havde talt; derfor satte jeg mig ikke op imod ham, ligesom mine brødre.
- 17 Og jeg talte til Sam og kundgjorde ham det, som Herren havde givet til kende for mig ved sin hellige Ånd. Og det skete, at han troede mine ord.
- 18 Men se, Laman og Lemuel ville ikke lytte til mine ord; og da jeg var bedrøvet over deres hjertes hårdhed, anrøbte jeg Herren for dem.
- 19 Og det skete, at Herren talte til mig og sagde: Velsignet er du, Nefi, på grund af din tro, for du har søgt mig flittigt med ydmyghed i hjertet.

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

20 Og for så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang, og I skal blive ført til et forjættet land, ja, et land, som jeg har beredt til jer, ja, et land som er mere udsøgt end alle andre lande.

21 Og for så vidt som dine brødre sætter sig op imod dig, skal de blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.

22 Og for så vidt som du holder mine befalinger, skal du blive gjort til hersker over og lærer for dine brødre.

23 For se, på den dag, da de sætter sig op imod mig, vil jeg forbande dem, ja, med en hård forbandelse, og de skal ikke få nogen magt over dine efterkommere, medmindre de også sætter sig op imod mig.

24 Og dersom de sætter sig op imod mig, skal de for dine efterkommere blive en svøbe, som skal vække dem til erindring.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

Nefis Første Bog 3

- 1 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, efter at have talt med Herren vendte tilbage til min fars telt.
- 2 Og det skete, at han talte til mig og sagde: Se, jeg har drømt en drøm, hvori Herren har befalet mig, at du og dine brødre skal vende tilbage til Jerusalem.
- 3 For se, Laban har optegnelsen om jøderne og også en optegnelse over mine forfædres slægt, og de er indgrave- ret på bronzeplader.
- 4 Derfor har Herren befalet mig, at du og dine brødre skal tage til Labans hus og forsøge at få optegnelserne og bringe dem herved i ørkenen.
- 5 Og se nu, dine brødre murrer og siger, at det er noget vanskeligt, som jeg har krævet af dem, men se, jeg har ikke krævet det af dem, men det er en befaling fra Herren.
- 6 Tag derfor af sted, min søn, og du skal blive begunsti- get af Herren, fordi du ikke har murret.
- 7 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, sagde til min far: Jeg vil tage af sted og gøre det, som Herren har befalet, for jeg ved, at Herren ikke giver nogen befalinger til menneskenes børn, uden at han bereder en vej for dem, så de kan ud- føre det, som han befaler dem.
- 8 Og det skete, at da min far havde hørt disse ord, blev han overordentlig glad, for han vidste, at jeg var blevet velsignet af Herren.
- 9 Og jeg, Nefi, og mine brødre begav os ud i ørkenen med vore telte for at drage op til Jerusalems land.
- 10 Og det skete, at da vi var kommet op til Jerusalems land, rådførte mine brødre og jeg os med hinanden.
- 11 Og vi kastede lod om, hvem af os der skulle gå ind til Labans hus. Og det skete, at loddet faldt på Laman; og Laman gik ind til Labans hus, og han talte med ham, mens han sad i sit hus.
- 12 Og han ønskede af Laban de optegnelser, som var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, og som indeholdt op- tegnelsen om min fars slægt.

I Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speak- ing with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are en- graven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my fa- ther: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no com- mandments unto the children of men, save he shall pre- pare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were en- graven upon the plates of brass, which contained the ge- nealogy of my father.

13 Og se, det skete, at Laban blev vred og jog ham bort fra sin nærhed, og han ville ikke have, at han skulle have optegnelserne. Derfor sagde han til ham: Se, du er en røver, og jeg vil slå dig ihjel.

14 Men Laman flygtede bort fra hans nærhed og fortalte os om det, som Laban havde gjort. Og vi begyndte at blive overordentlig sorgfulde, og mine brødre skulle til at vende tilbage til min far i ørkenen.

15 Men se, jeg sagde til dem: Så sandt som Herren lever, og vi lever, så vil vi ikke drage ned til vor far i ørkenen, førend vi har udført det, som Herren har befaleet os.

16 Lad os derfor være trofaste i at holde Herrens befalinger; lad os derfor drage ned til vor fars arveland, for se, han har efterladt guld og sølv og alle slags rigdomme. Og alt det har han gjort på grund af Herrens befalinger.

17 For han vidste, at Jerusalem skulle blive ødelagt på grund af folkets ugudelighed.

18 For se, de har forkastet profeternes ord. Hvis min far derfor var blevet boende i landet, efter at han var blevet befaleet at flygte ud af landet, se, da ville han også omkomme. Derfor må det nødvendigvis være sådan, at han flygter ud af landet.

19 Og se, Gud anser det for vist, at vi skal få disse optegnelser, så vi kan bevare vore fædres sprog for vore børn;

20 og også så vi kan bevare for dem de ord, som er blevet talt ved alle de hellige profeters mund, og som blev givet dem ved Guds Ånd og kraft siden verden begyndte, helt op til vor tid.

21 Og det skete, at jeg med et sådant sprog formåede mine brødre til at være trofaste i at holde Guds befalinger.

22 Og det skete, at vi drog ned til vort arveland, og vi samlede vort guld og vort sølv og vore kostbarheder sammen.

23 Og efter at vi havde samlet disse ting sammen, drog vi igen op til Labans hus.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

24 Og det skete, at vi gik ind til Laban og ønskede af ham, at han skulle give os de optegnelser, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, for hvilke vi ville give ham vort guld og vort sølv og alle vore kostbarheder.

25 Og det skete, at da Laban så vor ejendom, og at den var overordentlig stor, begærede han den, således at han jog os ud og sendte sine tjenere efter os for at slå os ihjel, så han kunne få vor ejendom.

26 Og det skete, at vi flygtede for Labans tjenere, og vi var nødt til at efterlade vor ejendom, og den faldt i Labans hænder.

27 Og det skete, at vi flygtede ud i ørkenen, og Labans tjenere indhentede os ikke, og vi skjulte os i en klippehule.

28 Og det skete, at Laman blev vred på mig og også på min far; og det blev Lemuel også, for han lyttede til Lamans ord. Derfor talte Laman og Lemuel mange hårde ord til os, deres yngre brødre, og de slog os endog med en kæp.

29 Og det skete, mens de slog os med en kæp, se, da kom en engel fra Herren og stod foran dem, og han talte til dem og sagde: Hvorfor slår I jeres yngre bror med en kæp? Ved I ikke, at Herren har udvalgt ham til at være hersker over jer, og det på grund af jeres misgerninger? Se, I skal drage op til Jerusalem igen, og Herren vil overgive Laban i jeres hænder.

30 Og efter at englen havde talt til os, forlod han os.

31 Og efter at englen havde forladt os, begyndte Laman og Lemuel igen at murre og sige: Hvordan er det muligt, at Herren vil overgive Laban i vore hænder? Se, han er en mægtig mand, og han kan befale over halvtreds, ja, han kan endog slå halvtreds ihjel, hvorfor så ikke os?

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

Nefis Første Bog 4

- 1 Og det skete, at jeg talte til mine brødre og sagde: Lad os igen drage op til Jerusalem, og lad os være trofaste i at holde Herrens befalinger, for se, han er mægtigere end hele jorden, hvorfor så ikke også mægtigere end Laban og hans halvtreds, ja, eller selv end hans ti tusinder?
- 2 Lad os derfor drage derop; lad os være stærke ligesom Moses, for han talte i sandhed til vandene i Det Røde Hav, og de delte sig til den ene og til den anden side, og vore fædre kom igennem ud af fangenskab på tør grund, og Faraos hære fulgte efter og druknede i vandene i Det Røde Hav.
- 3 Se nu, I ved, at dette er sandt, og I ved også, at en engel har talt til jer; hvorledes kan I da tvivle? Lad os drage derop; Herren er i stand til at udfri os, ligesom vore fædre, og til at slå Laban ihjel, ligesom egypterne.
- 4 Se, da jeg havde talt disse ord, var de stadig vrede og fortsatte med at murre; alligevel fulgte de med mig op, indtil vi kom til Jerusalems mure.
- 5 Og det var om natten; og jeg lod dem skjule sig uden for murene. Og efter at de havde skjult sig, krøb jeg, Nefi, ind i byen og gik hen mod Labans hus.
- 6 Og jeg blev ført af Ånden uden på forhånd at vide, hvad jeg skulle gøre.
- 7 Alligevel gik jeg af sted, og da jeg kom hen i nærheden af Labans hus, så jeg en mand, og han var faldet om på jorden foran mig, for han var beruset af vin.
- 8 Og da jeg kom hen til ham, opdagede jeg, at det var Laban.
- 9 Og jeg så hans sværd, og jeg trak det ud af dets skede, og fæstet på det var af rent guld, og forarbejdningen af det var overordentlig fin, og jeg så, at klingens på det var af det ypperligste stål.

I Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

10 Og det skete, at jeg af Ånden blev drevet til, at jeg skulle dræbe Laban, men jeg sagde i mit hjerte: Aldrig på noget tidspunkt har jeg udgydt et menneskes blod. Og jeg veg tilbage og ønskede, at jeg ikke skulle slå ham ihjel.

11 Og Ånden sagde igen til mig: Se, Herren har overgivet ham i dine hænder. Ja, og jeg vidste også, at han havde forsøgt at berøve mig livet, ja, og at han ikke ville lytte til Herrens befalinger, og at han også havde taget vor ejendom.

12 Og det skete, at Ånden igen sagde til mig: Slå ham ihjel, for Herren har overgivet ham i dine hænder.

13 Se, Herren slår de ugudelige ihjel for at føre sine retfærdige formål ud i livet. Det er bedre, at ét menneske omkommer, end at et folkeslag synker ned og omkommer i vantro.

14 Og se, da jeg, Nephi, havde hørt disse ord, huskede jeg Herrens ord, som han talte til mig i ørkenen, da han sagde: For så vidt som dine efterkommere holder mine befalinger, skal de have fremgang i det forjættede land.

15 Ja, og jeg tænkte også, at de ikke kunne holde Herrens befalinger i henhold til Moseloven, medmindre de havde loven.

16 Og jeg vidste også, at loven var indgraveret på bronzepladerne.

17 Og videre, jeg vidste, at Herren havde overgivet Laban i mine hænder af denne årsag, at jeg kunne få optegnelserne i overensstemmelse med hans befalinger.

18 Derfor adlød jeg Åndens røst og tog Laban ved hans hovedhår, og jeg huggede hans hoved af med hans eget sværd.

19 Og efter at jeg havde hugget hans hoved af med hans eget sværd, tog jeg Labans klæder og tog dem på, ja, hvert et stykke, og jeg spændte hans rustning om mine lænder.

20 Og efter at jeg havde gjort det, gik jeg hen mod Labans skatkammer. Og mens jeg gik hen mod Labans skatkammer, se, da så jeg Labans tjener, som havde nøglerne til skatkammeret. Og jeg befalede ham med Labans røst, at han skulle gå med mig ind i skatkammeret.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

21 Og han antog mig for at være sin herre Laban, for han så klæderne og også sværdet, der var spændt om mine lænder.

22 Og han talte til mig om jødernes ældster, da han vidste, at hans herre Laban havde været ude med dem om aftenen.

23 Og jeg talte til ham, som om det var Laban.

24 Og jeg sagde også til ham, at jeg skulle bringe indgraveringerne, der var på bronzepladerne, med til mine ældre brødre, som var uden for murene.

25 Og jeg bød ham også, at han skulle følge med mig.

26 Og han, der antog, at jeg talte om brødrene i menigheden, og at jeg virkelig var den Laban, som jeg havde slået ihjel, han fulgte derfor med mig.

27 Og han talte mange gange til mig angående jødernes ældster, mens jeg gik ud til mine brødre, som var uden for murene.

28 Og det skete, at da Laman så mig, blev han overordentlig bange, og ligeså Lemuel og Sam. Og de flygtede fra min nærhed, for de troede, at det var Laban, og at han havde slået mig ihjel og nu også forsøgte at berøve dem livet.

29 Og det skete, at jeg råbte til dem, og de hørte mig, derfor ophørte de med at flygte fra min nærhed.

30 Og det skete, at da Labans tjener så mine brødre, begyndte han at bæve, og han skulle til at flygte fra mig og vende tilbage til byen Jerusalem.

31 Og se, jeg, Nephi, som er en mand, der er stor af bygning, og som også har fået stor styrke af Herren, jeg greb derfor fat i Labans tjener og holdt ham fast, så han ikke kunne flygte.

32 Og det skete, at jeg sagde til ham, at hvis han ville lytte til mine ord, så ville vi, så sandt som Herren lever, og jeg lever, skåne hans liv, dersom han ville lytte til vore ord.

33 Og jeg sagde til ham, ja, med en ed, at han ikke behøvede frygte; at han ville blive en fri mand som os, hvis han ville drage med os ned i ørkenen.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

34 Og jeg talte også til ham og sagde: Det er visselig Herren, der har befaleet os at gøre dette, og burde vi ikke være flittige til at holde Herrens befalinger? Hvis du derfor vil drage ned i ørkenen til min far, skal du blive regnet som en af os.

35 Og det skete, at Zoram fattede mod ved de ord, som jeg talte. Se, Zoram var navnet på tjeneren, og han lovede, at han ville drage ned i ørkenen til vor far. Ja, og han aflagde også en ed til os på, at han ville blive hos os fra det tidspunkt af.

36 Se, vi nærede ønske om, at han skulle blive hos os af den årsag, at jøderne ikke skulle få kendskab til vor flugt ud i ørkenen, for at de ikke skulle sætte efter os og slå os ihjel.

37 Og det skete, at da Zoram havde aflagt en ed til os, forsvandt vor frygt angående ham.

38 Og det skete, at vi tog bronzepladerne og Labans tjener og drog ud i ørkenen og rejste ned til vor fars telt.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

Nefis Første Bog 5

- 1 Og det skete, at efter at vi var kommet ned i ørkenen til vor far, se, da blev han fyldt af glæde, og også min mor, Sarija, blev overordentlig glad, for hun havde virkelig sørget på grund af os.
- 2 For hun havde troet, at vi var omkommet i ørkenen; og hun havde også beklaget sig over for min far og fortalt ham, at han var en synsk mand, idet hun sagde: Se, du har ført os ud af vort arveland, og mine sønner er ikke til mere, og vi omkommer i ørkenen.
- 3 Og med et sådant sprog havde min mor beklaget sig over for min far.
- 4 Og det var sket, at min far talte til hende og sagde: Jeg ved, at jeg er en synsk mand, for hvis jeg ikke i et syn havde set det, der hører Gud til, ville jeg ikke have kendt Guds godhed, men ville være blevet ved Jerusalem og være omkommet sammen med mine brødre.
- 5 Men se, jeg har fået et forjættet land, hvilket jeg fryder mig ved, ja, og jeg ved, at Herren vil udfri mine sønner af Labans hænder og igen bringe dem ned til os i ørkenen.
- 6 Og med et sådant sprog trøstede min far, Lehi, min mor, Sarija, angående os, mens vi rejste i ørkenen op til Jerusalems land for at få fat i optegnelsen om jøderne.
- 7 Og da vi var kommet tilbage til min fars telt, se, da blev deres glæde fuldkommen, og min mor blev trøstet.
- 8 Og hun talte og sagde: Nu ved jeg med vished, at Herren har befalet min mand at flygte ud i ørkenen, ja, og jeg ved også med vished, at Herren har beskyttet mine sønner og udfriet dem af Labans hænder og har givet dem magt, hvormed de kan udføre det, som Herren har befalet dem. Og med et sådant sprog talte hun.
- 9 Og det skete, at de frydede sig overordentligt og bragte slagtoffer og brændofre til Herren; og de gav tak til Israels Gud.

I Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

10 Og efter at de havde givet tak til Israels Gud, tog min far, Lehi, de optegnelser, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, og han granskede dem fra begyndelsen.

11 Og han så, at de indeholdt de fem mosebøger, som gav en beretning om verdens skabelse og også om Adam og Eva, der var vore første forældre,

12 og også en optegnelse om jøderne fra begyndelsen, helt op til indledningen af Sidkijas, Judas konges, regeringstid,

13 og også de hellige profeters profetier fra begyndelsen, helt op til indledningen af Sidkijas regeringstid, og også mange profetier, der var blevet talt ved Jeremias' mund.

14 Og det skete, at min far, Lehi, også fandt en optegnelse over sine fædres slægt på bronzepladerne, derfor vidste han, at han var efterkommer af Josef, ja, den samme Josef, som var søn af Jakob, og som blev solgt til Egypten, og som blev bevaret ved Herrens hånd, så han kunne bevare sin far Jakob og hele hans hus mod at komme på grund af hungersnød.

15 Og de blev også ført ud af fangenskab og ud af Egyptens land af den selv samme Gud, som havde bevaret dem.

16 Og således fandt min far, Lehi, ud af, hvordan hans slægtslinje var. Og Laban var også efterkommer af Josef, hvorfor han og hans fædre havde ført optegnelserne.

17 Og se, da min far så alt dette, blev han fyldt af Ånden og begyndte at profetere angående sine efterkommere,

18 at disse bronzeplader skulle komme ud til alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, der var hans efterkommere.

19 For se, han sagde, at disse bronzeplader aldrig skulle forgå; ej heller skulle de blive sløret mere af tiden. Og han profeterede meget angående sine efterkommere.

20 Og det skete, at jeg og min far hidtil havde holdt de befalinger, hvormed Herren havde befaleet os.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

21 Og vi var kommet i besiddelse af de optegnelser, som Herren havde befalet os, og havde gransket dem og opdaget, at de var ønskværdige, ja, endog af stor værdi for os i og med, at vi kunne bevare Herrens befalinger for vore børn.

22 Derfor anså Herren det for vist, at vi skulle tage dem med os, mens vi rejste i ørkenen mod det forjættede land.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, inasmuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

Nefis Første Bog 6

- 1 Og se, jeg, Nefi, opregner ikke min slægtslinje i denne del af min optegnelse; ej heller vil jeg opregne den på noget tidspunkt her på disse plader, som jeg skriver, for den er nedskrevet i den optegnelse, som er blevet ført af min far; derfor skriver jeg den ikke i dette værk.
- 2 For det er mig nok at sige, at vi er efterkommere af Josef.
- 3 Og det er ikke vigtigt for mig at være omhyggelig med at skrive en fyldestgørende beretning om alt det, der hører min far til, for det kan ikke skrives på disse plader, for jeg ønsker at bruge pladsen, så jeg kan skrive om det, der hører Gud til.
- 4 For fylden af min hensigt er, at jeg må kunne formå mennesker til at komme til Abrahams Gud og Isaks Gud og Jakobs Gud og blive frelst.
- 5 For se, det, der behager verden, skriver jeg ikke, men det, der behager Gud og dem, der ikke er af verden.
- 6 Derfor vil jeg give mine efterkommere befaling om, at de ikke skal fylde disse plader med noget, som ikke er af værdi for menneskenes børn.

I Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

Nefis Første Bog 7

- 1 Og se, jeg ønsker, at I skal vide, at efter at min far, Lehi, var færdig med at profetere angående sine efterkommere, skete det, at Herren talte til ham igen og sagde, at det ikke var passende for ham, Lehi, at han skulle tage sin familie alene med sig ud i ørkenen, men at hans sønner skulle tage sig døtre til hustru, så de kunne opfostre efterkommere til Herren i det forjættede land.
- 2 Og det skete, at Herren befalede ham, at jeg, Nefi, og mine brødre, igen skulle vende tilbage til Jerusalems land og bringe Ismael og hans familie ned i ørkenen.
- 3 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, sammen med mine brødre igen drog ud i ørkenen for at drage op til Jerusalem.
- 4 Og det skete, at vi drog op til Ismaels hus, og vi vandt yndest for Ismaels øjne, således at vi kunne tale Herrens ord til ham.
- 5 Og det skete, at Herren blødgjorde Ismaels hjerte og også hans husstands, således at de rejste med os ned i ørkenen til vor fars telt.
- 6 Og det skete, at mens vi rejste i ørkenen, se, da gjorde Laman og Lemuel og to af Ismaels døtre og Ismaels to sønner og deres familier oprør imod os, ja, imod mig, Nefi, og Sam og deres far, Ismael, og hans hustru og hans tre andre døtre.
- 7 Og det skete under dette oprør, at de nærede ønske om at vende tilbage til Jerusalems land.
- 8 Og se, jeg, Nefi, der var bedrøvet over deres hjertes hårdhed, jeg talte derfor til dem og sagde, ja, til Laman og til Lemuel: Se, I er mine ældre brødre, og hvordan kan det være, at I er så hårde i hjertet og så forblindede i sindet, at I har nødig, at jeg, jeres yngre bror, skal tale til jer, ja, og være et eksempel for jer?
- 9 Hvordan kan det være, at I ikke har lyttet til Herrens ord?

I Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

10 Hvordan kan det være, at I har glemt, at I har set Herrens engel?

11 Ja, og hvordan kan det være, at I har glemt, hvilke store ting Herren har gjort for os ved at udfri os af Labans hænder og også ved, at vi har kunnet få optegnelsen?

12 Ja, og hvordan kan det være, at I har glemt, at Herren efter sin vilje er i stand til at gøre alt for menneskenes børn, dersom de udøver tro på ham? Lad os derfor være tro mod ham.

13 Og dersom vi er tro mod ham, skal vi få det forjættede land, og engang i fremtiden skal I erfare, at Herrens ord skal blive opfyldt, hvad angår ødelæggelsen af Jerusalem, for alt, hvad Herren har talt angående ødelæggelsen af Jerusalem, skal blive opfyldt.

14 For se, Herrens Ånd hører snart op med at kæmpe med dem, for se, de har forkastet profeterne, og Jeremias har de kastet i fængsel. Og de har forsøgt at berøve min far livet, hvorved de har drevet ham ud af landet.

15 Se nu, jeg siger jer, at hvis I vender tilbage til Jerusalem, omkommer I også sammen med dem. Og se, hvis I vælger at gøre dette, drag da op til landet, og husk de ord, som jeg taler til jer, at hvis I drager af sted, omkommer I også, for således driver Herrens Ånd mig til at tale.

16 Og det skete, at da jeg, Nephi, havde talt disse ord til mine brødre, blev de vrede på mig. Og det skete, at de lagde hånd på mig, for se, de var overordentlig vrede, og de bandt mig med reb, for de forsøgte at berøve mig livet, så de kunne efterlade mig i ørkenen for at blive fortæret af vilde rovdyr.

17 Men det skete, at jeg bad til Herren og sagde: O Herre, vil du i overensstemmelse med min tro på dig udfri mig af mine brødres hænder, ja, give mig styrke, så jeg kan sprænge disse bånd, som jeg er bundet med.

18 Og det skete, at da jeg havde sagt disse ord, se, da blev båndene løst fra mine hænder og fødder, og jeg stod foran mine brødre, og jeg talte til dem igen.

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, inasmuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

19 Og det skete, at de igen blev vrede på mig og forsøgte at lægge hånd på mig, men se, en af Ismaels døtre, ja, og også hendes mor og en af Ismaels sønner, bønfuldt mine brødre, således at de blødgjorde deres hjerte og ophørte med at forsøge at berøve mig livet.

20 Og det skete, at de var sorgfulde på grund af deres ugudelighed, således at de bøjede sig ned for mig og bønfuldt mig om at tilgive dem for det, som de havde gjort imod mig.

21 Og det skete, at jeg uforbeholdent tilgav dem alt, hvad de havde gjort, og jeg formanede dem til, at de skulle bede til Herren deres Gud om tilgivelse. Og det skete, at de gjorde det. Og efter at de havde bedt til Herren, begav vi os igen på vor rejse mod vor fars telt.

22 Og det skete, at vi kom ned til vor fars telt. Og efter at jeg og mine brødre og hele Ismaels hus var kommet ned til min fars telt, gav de tak til Herren deres Gud, og de bragte ham slagtoffer og brændofre.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

Nefis Første Bog 8

- 1 Og det skete, at vi havde samlet alle slags frø af enhver art sammen, både korn af enhver art og også frø af frugt af enhver art.
- 2 Og det skete, at mens min far var i ørkenen, talte han til os og sagde: Se, jeg har drømt en drøm, eller med andre ord, jeg har set et syn.
- 3 Og se, på grund af det, som jeg har set, har jeg grund til at fryde mig i Herren ved Nefi og også ved Sam, for jeg har grund til at formode, at de, og også mange af deres efterkommere, vil blive frelst.
- 4 Men se, Laman og Lemuel, jeg nærer stor bekymring for jer, for se, det forekom mig, at jeg i min drøm så en mørk og dystert ørken.
- 5 Og det skete, at jeg så en mand, og han var klædt i en hvid kjortel, og han kom hen og stod foran mig.
- 6 Og det skete, at han talte til mig og bød mig følge sig.
- 7 Og det skete, at da jeg fulgte ham, fandt jeg mig selv, at jeg var i et mørkt og dystert øde.
- 8 Og efter at jeg havde vandret i et tidsrum af mange timer i mørke, begyndte jeg at bede til Herren om, at han ville have barmhjertighed med mig i overensstemmelse med sin store, milde barmhjertighed.
- 9 Og det skete, efter at jeg havde bedt til Herren, at jeg så en stor og udstrakt mark.
- 10 Og det skete, at jeg så et træ, hvis frugt var ønskværdig til at gøre én lykkelig.
- 11 Og det skete, at jeg gik hen og spiste af frugten af det, og jeg fandt, at den var yderst sød, mere end alt andet, som jeg nogen sinde før havde smagt. Ja, og jeg så, at frugten af det var hvid og overgik al den hvidhed, som jeg nogen sinde havde set.
- 12 Og da jeg spiste af frugten af det, fyldte den min sjæl med overordentlig stor glæde; derfor begyndte jeg at nære ønske om, at min familie også skulle spise af den, for jeg vidste, at den var mere ønskværdig end al anden frugt.

I Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

13 Og da jeg kastede blikket omkring for måske også at få øje på min familie, så jeg en flod med vand, og den løb langs med og var nær ved det træ, af hvis frugt jeg var ved at spise.

14 Og jeg så mig omkring for at se, hvor den kom fra; og jeg så dens udspring et lille stykke borte, og ved dens udspring så jeg jeres mor, Sarija, og Sam og Nefi, og de stod, som om de ikke vidste, hvor de skulle gå hen.

15 Og det skete, at jeg vinkede til dem, og jeg sagde også til dem med høj røst, at de skulle komme hen til mig og spise af frugten, som var mere ønskværdig end al anden frugt.

16 Og det skete, at de kom hen til mig og også spiste af frugten.

17 Og det skete, at jeg nærrede ønske om, at Laman og Lemuel også skulle komme hen og spise af frugten; derfor kastede jeg blikket hen mod flodens udspring, for at jeg måske kunne få øje på dem.

18 Og det skete, at jeg så dem, men de ville ikke komme hen til mig og spise af frugten.

19 Og jeg så en jernstang, og den strakte sig langs flodbredden og førte til det træ, som jeg stod ved.

20 Og jeg så også en snæver og trang sti, som løb langs med jernstangen lige hen til det træ, som jeg stod ved; og den løb også forbi kildens udspring til en mark, der var stor og udstrakt, som om den var en verden.

21 Og jeg så utallige skarer af folk, hvoraf mange trængte sig frem for at komme til stien, som førte til det træ, som jeg stod ved.

22 Og det skete, at de kom hen og begyndte at følge stien, som førte til træet.

23 Og det skete, at der opstod en tåge af mørke, ja, endog en overordentlig stor tåge af mørke, således at de, der var begyndt at følge stien, forvild, så de kom bort og forsvandt.

24 Og det skete, at jeg så andre trænge sig frem, og de kom hen og fik fat i enden af jernstangen, og de trængte sig frem gennem tågen af mørke, idet de klamrede sig til jernstangen, lige til de kom hen og spiste af træets frugt.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, inasmuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

25 Og efter at de havde spist af træets frugt, kastede de blikket rundt omkring, som om de skammede sig.

26 Og jeg kastede også blikket rundt omkring og så på den anden side af floden med vand en stor og rummelig bygning, og det var, som om den stod i luften, højt over jorden.

27 Og den var fyldt med folk, både gamle og unge, både mænd og kvinder, og deres måde at klæde sig på var overordentlig fornem, og det så ud som om, de spottede og pegede fingre ad dem, der var nået frem til og spiste af frugten.

28 Og efter at de havde smagt frugten, skammede de sig på grund af dem, som hånede dem, og de faldt fra, ind på forbudne stier, og blev væk.

29 Og se, jeg, Nephi, taler ikke alle min fars ord.

30 Men, for at skrive i korthed, se, han så andre mængder trænge sig frem, og de kom hen og fik fat i enden af jernstangen, og de trængte sig frem, idet de bestandig holdt fast ved jernstangen, indtil de nåede frem og faldt ned og spiste af træets frugt.

31 Og han så også andre mængder, der følte sig vej til den store og rummelige bygning.

32 Og det skete, at mange druknede i kildens dyb, og mange tabte han af syne, for de vandrede på fremmede veje.

33 Og stor var den mængde, som gik ind i den sælsomme bygning. Og efter at de var gået ind i bygningen, pegede de med foragt fingre ad mig og dem, der også spiste af frugten, men vi ænsede dem ikke.

34 Dette er min fars ord: For så mange, som ænsede dem, var faldet fra.

35 Og Laman og Lemuel spiste ikke af frugten, sagde min far.

36 Og det skete, efter at min far havde talt alle ordene om sin drøm, eller sit syn, hvilke var mange, at han sagde til os, at han på grund af det, som han havde set i et syn, nærrede stor bekymring for Laman og Lemuel, ja, han frygtede, at de skulle blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

37 Og han formanede dem da med alle en øm forælders følelser til at lytte til hans ord, så Herren måske ville være barmhjertig mod dem og ikke forstøde dem, ja, min far prædikede for dem.

38 Og efter at han havde prædiket for dem og også profeteret for dem om mange ting, bød han dem holde Herrens befalinger, og han ophørte med at tale til dem.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

Nefis Første Bog 9

- 1 Og alt dette så og hørte og talte min far, mens han boede i et telt i Lemuels dal, og også meget andet, som ikke kan skrives på disse plader.
- 2 Og se, som jeg har talt angående disse plader, se, det er ikke de plader, hvorpå jeg udfærdiger en fuldstændig beretning om mit folks historie, for de plader, hvorpå jeg udfærdiger en fuldstændig beretning om mit folk, har jeg givet navnet Nefi; derfor kaldes de for Nefis plader efter mit eget navn, og disse plader kaldes også for Nefis plader.
- 3 Alligevel har jeg fået den befaling af Herren, at jeg skulle lave disse plader med det særlige formål, at der skulle indgraveres en beretning om tjenestegerningen blandt mit folk.
- 4 På de andre plader skulle der indgraveres en beretning om kongernes regeringstid og mit folks krige og stridigheder; derfor handler disse plader hovedsagelig om tjenestegerningen, og de andre plader handler hovedsagelig om kongernes regeringstid og mit folks krige og stridigheder.
- 5 For se, Herren har befalet mig at lave disse plader med det, han anser for et vist formål, hvilket formål jeg ikke kender.
- 6 Men Herren kender alt fra begyndelsen; derfor bereder han en vej, så han kan udføre alle sine gerninger blandt menneskenes børn, for se, han har al magt til at opfylde alle sine ord. Og således er det. Amen.

I Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

Nefis Første Bog 10

- 1 Og se, jeg, Nefi, går videre med at give en beretning på disse plader om mit virke, og om min regeringstid og tjenestegerning; derfor må jeg for at gå videre med min beretning tale noget om det, der vedrører min far og også mine brødre.
- 2 For se, det skete, efter at min far var færdig med at tale ordene om sin drøm og også med at formane dem til at udvise al flid, at han talte til dem angående jøderne –
- 3 at efter at de var blevet tilintetgjort, ja, selv den store by Jerusalem, og efter at mange var blevet ført bort til Babylon som fanger, skulle de, når Herren anså tiden for at være inde, igen vende tilbage, ja, blive ført tilbage ud af fangenskab, og efter at de var blevet ført tilbage ud af fangenskab, skulle de igen tage deres arveland i besiddelse.
- 4 Ja, seks hundrede år fra den tid, da min far forlod Jerusalem, ville Gud Herren lade en profet fremstå blandt jøderne – ja, en Messias, eller med andre ord, en frelser for verden.
- 5 Og han talte også angående profeterne, om hvor mange der havde vidnet om dette, om denne Messias, som han havde talt om, eller denne, verdens, forløser.
- 6 For se, hele menneskeslægten var i en fortabt og i en falden tilstand og ville altid være det, medmindre de ville forlade sig på denne forløser.
- 7 Og han talte også angående en profet, der skulle komme før Messias for at berede Herrens vej –
- 8 ja, at han ville gå ud og råbe i ørkenen: Bered Herrens vej og gør hans stier rette, for blandt jer står der en, som I ikke kender, og han er mægtigere end jeg, og hans skorem er jeg ikke værdig til at løse. Og min far talte meget angående dette.
- 9 Og min far sagde, at han ville døbe i Betabara, på den anden side af Jordan, og han sagde også, at han ville døbe med vand, ja, at han ville døbe Messias med vand.

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

- 10 Og efter at han havde døbt Messias med vand, ville han se og aflægge vidnesbyrd om, at han havde døbt Guds lam, som skulle borttage verdens synder.
- 11 Og det skete, efter at min far havde talt disse ord, at han talte til mine brødre angående evangeliet, der ville blive prædikeret blandt jøderne, og også angående jødernes nedsynken i vantro. Og efter at de havde slået den Messias ihjel, der skulle komme, og efter at han var blevet slået ihjel, ville han opstå fra de døde og ville give sig til kende ved Helligånden for ikke-jøderne.
- 12 Ja, min far talte meget angående ikke-jøderne og også angående Israels hus, at de skulle sammenlignes med et oliventræ, hvis grene ville blive brækket af og ville blive spredt ud over hele jordens overflade.
- 13 For se, han sagde, at det nødvendigvis måtte være sådan, at vi alle som én skulle blive ført ind i det forjættede land for at opfylde Herrens ord om, at vi ville blive spredt ud over hele jordens overflade.
- 14 Og efter at Israels hus var blevet spredt, ville de blive indsamlet igen, eller kort sagt, efter at ikke-jøderne havde modtaget evangeliets fylde, ville oliventræets naturlige grene, eller resterne af Israels hus, blive podet ind eller komme til kundskab om den sande Messias, deres Herre og deres forløser.
- 15 Og med et sådant sprog profeterede og talte min far til mine brødre, og også meget andet, som jeg ikke skriver i denne bog, for jeg har skrevet så meget af det, som jeg har fundet tjenligt, i min anden bog.
- 16 Og alt dette, som jeg har talt om, skete, mens min far boede i et telt i Lemuels dal.
- And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.
- And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.
- Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.
- And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.
- And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

17 Og det skete, efter at jeg, Nefi, havde hørt alle min fars ord angående det, som han så i et syn, og også det, som han talte ved Helligåndens kraft, hvilken kraft han modtog ved tro på Guds Søn – og Guds Søn var den Messias, der skulle komme – at jeg, Nefi, også nærede ønske om, at jeg måtte se og høre og kende til dette ved Helligåndens kraft, han som er Guds gave til alle dem, der flittigt søger ham, såvel i fordums tider som på den tid, da han ville give sig til kende for menneskenes børn.

18 For han er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt, og vejen er beredt for alle mennesker fra verdens grundlæggelse, dersom de omvender sig og kommer til ham.

19 For den, der flittigt søger, skal finde, og Guds hemmeligheder skal blive udfoldet for dem ved Helligåndens kraft, såvel i disse tider som i fordums tider, og såvel i fordums tider som i kommende tider; for se, Herrens vej er ét evigt kredsløb.

20 Husk derfor, o menneske, at du vil blive stillet til doms for alle dine gerninger.

21 Hvis I derfor har forsøgt at handle ugudeligt i jeres prøves dage, da bliver I fundet urene for Guds dommersæde, og intet urent kan bo hos Gud; derfor vil I blive forstødt for evigt.

22 Og Helligånden giver mig myndighed til, at jeg skal sige dette og ikke holde det tilbage.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

Nefis Første Bog I I

- 1 For det skete, efter at jeg havde ønsket at få kundskab om det, som min far havde set, og da jeg havde tro på, at Herren var i stand til at give det til kende for mig, blev jeg, mens jeg sad og grundede i mit hjerte, taget bort af Herrens Ånd, ja, op på et overordentlig højt bjerg, som jeg aldrig før havde set, og som jeg aldrig før havde sat min fod på.
- 2 Og Ånden sagde til mig: Se, hvad ønsker du?
- 3 Og jeg sagde: Jeg ønsker at se det, som min far så.
- 4 Og Ånden sagde til mig: Tror du, at din far så det træ, som han har talt om?
- 5 Og jeg sagde: Ja, du ved, at jeg tror alle min fars ord.
- 6 Og da jeg havde talt disse ord, råbte Ånden med høj røst og sagde: Hosanna til Herren, Gud den Højeste; for han er Gud over hele jorden, ja, endog over alt. Og velsignet er du, Nefi, fordi du tror på Gud den Højestes Søn; derfor skal du se det, som du har ønsket.
- 7 Og se, dette skal gives dig som et tegn, at du, efter at du har set det træ, som bar den frugt, som din far smagte, også skal se en mand, som stiger ned fra himlen, og ham skal du se; og efter at du har set ham, skal du aflægge vidnesbyrd om, at det er Guds Søn.
- 8 Og det skete, at Ånden sagde til mig: Se! Og jeg så og skuede et træ, og det lignede det træ, som min far havde set, og dets skønhed var langt større end, ja, overgik al skønhed; og dets hvidhed overgik den nyfaldne snes hvidhed.
- 9 Og det skete, at jeg, efter at jeg havde set træet, sagde til Ånden: Jeg forstår, at du har vist mig det træ, der er mere dyrebart end alt andet.
- 10 Og han sagde til mig: Hvad ønsker du?

I Nephi I I

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

11 Og jeg sagde til ham: At forstå udlægningen af det – for jeg talte til ham, som et menneske taler; for jeg så, at han var i et menneskes skikkelse, men alligevel vidste jeg, at det var Herrens Ånd; og han talte til mig, som et menneske taler til et andet.

12 Og det skete, at han sagde til mig: Se! Og jeg så, som for at se på ham, og jeg så ham ikke, for han var forsvundet fra min nærhed.

13 Og det skete, at jeg så og skuede den store by Jerusalem og også andre byer. Og jeg så byen Nazaret; og i byen Nazaret så jeg en jomfru, og hun var overordentlig skøn og hvid.

14 Og det skete, at jeg så himlene åbne; og en engel kom ned og stod foran mig; og han sagde til mig: Nefi, hvad ser du?

15 Og jeg sagde til ham: En jomfru, yderst smuk og skøn, mere end alle andre jomfruer.

16 Og han sagde til mig: Forstår du Guds velvilje?

17 Og jeg sagde til ham: Jeg ved, at han elsker sine børn; alligevel forstår jeg ikke betydningen af alting.

18 Og han sagde til mig: Se, jomfruen, som du ser, er Guds Søns mor på kødets vis.

19 Og det skete, at jeg så, at hun blev borttrykket i Ånden, og efter at hun havde været borttrykket i Ånden en stund, talte englen til mig og sagde: Se!

20 Og jeg så og skuede igen jomfruen, der bar et barn i sine arme.

21 Og englen sagde til mig: Betragt Guds lam, ja, selve den evige Faders Søn! Forstår du betydningen af det træ, som din far så?

22 Og jeg svarede ham og sagde: Ja, det er Guds kærlighed, som spreder sig vidt omkring i menneskenes børns hjerte; derfor er den yderst ønskværdig, mere end alt andet.

23 Og han talte til mig og sagde: Ja, og det, der glæder sjælen mest.

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

24 Og efter at han havde sagt disse ord, sagde han til mig: Se! Og jeg så, og jeg skuede Guds Søn gå rundt blandt menneskenes børn, og jeg så mange falde ned for hans fødder og tilbede ham.

25 Og det skete, at jeg så, at den jernstang, som min far havde set, var Guds ord, som førte til kilden til de levende vande, eller til livets træ, hvilke vande er et billede på Guds kærlighed, og jeg så også, at livets træ var et billede på Guds kærlighed.

26 Og englen sagde atter til mig: Se, og betragt Guds velvilje!

27 Og jeg så og betragtede verdens forløser, hvorom min far havde talt, og jeg så også den profet, der skulle berede vejen for ham. Og Guds lam gik hen og blev døbt af ham, og efter at han var blevet døbt, så jeg himlene åbne og Helligånden komme ned fra himlen og hvile på ham i skikkelse af en due.

28 Og jeg så, at han gik frem og forkyndte for folk i magt og stor herlighed; og mængderne var samlet for at høre ham; og jeg så, at de stødte ham ud fra sig.

29 Og jeg så også tolv andre, der fulgte ham. Og det skete, at de blev borttrykket i Ånden for øjnene af mig, og jeg så dem ikke.

30 Og det skete, at englen atter talte til mig og sagde: Se! Og jeg så, og jeg skuede himlene åbne igen, og jeg så engle stige ned til menneskenes børn; og de betjente dem.

31 Og han talte atter til mig og sagde: Se! Og jeg så, og jeg skuede Guds lam gå omkring blandt menneskenes børn, og jeg så mængder af folk, som var syge, og som var plaget af alle slags sygdomme og af djævle og urene ånder; og englen talte og viste alt dette til mig. Og de blev helbredt ved Guds lams kraft; og djævlene og de urene ånder blev drevet ud.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

32 Og det skete, at englen atter talte til mig og sagde: Se! Og jeg så og skuede Guds lam, at han blev grebet af folk, ja, den evige Guds Søn blev dømt af verden, og jeg så og aflægger vidnesbyrd.

33 Og jeg, Nephi, så, at han blev løftet op på korset og slået ihjel for verdens synder.

34 Og efter at han var blevet slået ihjel, så jeg jordens mængder, at de var samlet for at kæmpe mod Lammets apostle, for sådan blev de tolv kaldt af Herrens engel.

35 Og jordens mængde var samlet; og jeg så, at de var i en stor og rummelig bygning, ligesom den bygning, som min far så. Og Herrens engel talte atter til mig og sagde: Betragt verden og dens visdom, ja, betragt Israels hus, der har samlet sig for at kæmpe mod Lammets tolv apostle.

36 Og det skete, at jeg så og aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at den store og rummelige bygning var verdens stolthed, og den faldt, og dens fald var overordentlig stort. Og Herrens engel talte atter til mig og sagde: Sådan skal alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, der vil kæmpe mod Lammets tolv apostle, blive udryddet.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Nefis Første Bog 12

- 1 Og det skete, at englen sagde til mig: Se, og betragt dine efterkommere og også dine brødres efterkommere. Og jeg så og betragtede det forjættede land; og jeg betragtede mængder af folk, ja, de så ud til at være ligeså talrige som havets sand.
- 2 Og det skete, at jeg så mængder samlet for at kæmpe, den ene mod den anden; og jeg så krige og rygter om krige og store nedslagtinger ved sværdet blandt mit folk.
- 3 Og det skete, at jeg så mange slægtled gå bort under krige og stridigheder i landet; og jeg så mange byer, ja, så mange, at jeg ikke talte dem.
- 4 Og det skete, at jeg så en tåge af mørke ligge over det forjættede lands overflade, og jeg så lyn, og jeg hørte torden og jordskælv og al slags voldsom støj; og jeg så jorden og klipperne, at de revnede; og jeg så bjerge styrte i stykker; og jeg så jordens sletter, at de blev brudt op; og jeg så mange byer, at de sank; og jeg så mange, at de blev brændt op af ild; og jeg så mange, som styrtede til jorden på grund af dens rystelser.
- 5 Og det skete, efter at jeg havde set dette, at jeg så disen af mørke, at den forsvandt fra jordens overflade; og se, jeg så mængder, der ikke var faldet som følge af Herrens store og skrækkelige domme.
- 6 Og jeg så himlene åbne og Guds lam stige ned fra himlen; og han kom ned og viste sig for dem.
- 7 Og jeg så også og aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at Helligånden faldt på tolv andre; og de blev ordineret af Gud og udvalgt.
- 8 Og englen talte til mig og sagde: Betragt Lammets tolv disciple, som er udvalgt til at betjene dine efterkommere.
- 9 Og han sagde til mig: Husker du Lammets tolv apostle? Se, det er dem, der skal dømme Israels tolv stammer; derfor skal de tolv tjenere, der er af dine efterkommere, dømmes af dem; for I er af Israels hus.

1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

10 Og disse tolv tjenere, som du ser, skal dømme dine efterkommere. Og se, de er retfærdige for evigt, for som følge af deres tro på Guds lam er deres klæder blevet gjort hvide i hans blod.

11 Og englen sagde til mig: Se! Og jeg så og skuede tre slægtled gå bort i retfærdighed; og deres klæder var hvide ligesom Guds lam. Og englen sagde til mig: Disse er blevet gjort hvide i Lammets blod på grund af deres tro på ham.

12 Og jeg, Nephi, så også mange af det fjerde slægtled, der gik bort i retfærdighed.

13 Og det skete, at jeg så jordens mængder samlet.

14 Og englen sagde til mig: Betragt dine efterkommere og også dine brødres efterkommere.

15 Og det skete, at jeg så og skuede folket, der var mine efterkommere, samlet i mængder imod mine brødres efterkommere; og de var samlet for at kæmpe.

16 Og englen talte til mig og sagde: Betragt kilden med tilsølet vand, som din far så, ja, den flod, som han talte om; og dens dyb er helvedes dyb.

17 Og tågerne af mørke er Djævelens fristelser, som forblinder menneskenes børns øjne og forhærder deres hjerte og forleder dem ind på brede veje, så de fortabes og går tabt.

18 Og den store og rummelige bygning, som din far så, er menneskenes børns tomme indbildninger og stolthed. Og en stor og skrækkelig kløft adskiller dem, ja, retfærdighedens ord fra den evige Gud og den Messias, som er Guds lam, om hvem Helligånden aflægger vidnesbyrd fra verdens begyndelse indtil denne tid og fra denne tid og for evigt.

19 Og mens englen talte disse ord, skuede jeg og så, at mine brødres efterkommere stred mod mine efterkommere i overensstemmelse med englens ord; og på grund af mine efterkommeres stolthed og Djævelens fristelser så jeg, at mine brødres efterkommere besejrede mine efterkommere.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

20 Og det skete, at jeg skuede og så det folk, der var mine brødres efterkommere, at de havde overvundet mine efterkommere; og de drog frem i mængder på landets overflade.

21 Og jeg så dem samlet i mængder; og jeg så krige og rygter om krige blandt dem, og jeg så mange slægtled gå bort under krige og rygter om krige.

22 Og englen sagde til mig: Se, disse vil synke ned i vantro.

23 Og det skete, at jeg så, at efter at de var sunket ned i vantro, blev de et mørkt og frastødende og tilsølet folk, fulde af dovenskab og alle former for vederstyggeligheder.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

Nefis Første Bog 13

- 1 Og det skete, at englen talte til mig og sagde: Se! Og jeg så og skuede mange folkeslag og riger.
- 2 Og englen sagde til mig: Hvad ser du? Og jeg sagde: Jeg ser mange folkeslag og riger.
- 3 Og han sagde til mig: Det er de ikke-jødiske folkeslag og riger.
- 4 Og det skete, at jeg blandt de ikke-jødiske folkeslag så dannelsen af en stor kirke.
- 5 Og englen sagde til mig: Betragt dannelsen af en kirke, som er yderst vederstyggelig, mere end alle andre kirker, og som slår Guds hellige ihjel, ja, og torturerer dem og undertrykker dem og lægger et jernåg på dem og fører dem ned i fangenskab.
- 6 Og det skete, at jeg så denne store og vederstyggelige kirke; og jeg så Djævelen, at han var grundlægger af den.
- 7 Og jeg så også guld og sølv og silke og skarlagen og fintvævet linned og alle slags kostbare klæder, og jeg så mange skøger.
- 8 Og englen talte til mig og sagde: Se, guldet og sølvet og silken og skarlagenet og det fintvævede linned og de kostbare klæder og skøgerne er denne store og vederstyggelige kirkes lyst.
- 9 Og for at få verdens ros slår de også Guds hellige ihjel og fører dem ned i fangenskab.
- 10 Og det skete, at jeg så og skuede mange vande; og de skilte ikke-jøderne fra mine brødres efterkommere.
- 11 Og det skete, at englen sagde til mig: Se, Guds vrede er over dine brødres efterkommere.
- 12 Og jeg så og skuede en mand blandt ikke-jøderne, som var adskilt fra mine brødres efterkommere af de mange vande, og jeg så Guds Ånd, at den kom ned og påvirkede manden; og han drog ud på de mange vande, ja, over til mine brødres efterkommere, som var i det forjættede land.

1 Nephi 13

- And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.
- And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.
- And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.
- And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.
- And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.
- And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.
- And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.
- And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.
- And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.
- And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.
- And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.
- And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

13 Og det skete, at jeg så Guds Ånd, at den påvirkede andre ikke-jøder; og de drog ud af fangenskab ud på de mange vande.

14 Og det skete, at jeg så mange mængder af ikke-jøder i det forjættede land; og jeg så Guds vrede, at den var over mine brødres efterkommere; og de blev spredt foran ikke-jøderne og blev slået.

15 Og jeg så Herrens Ånd, at den var over ikke-jøderne, og de havde fremgang og fik landet som deres arvelod; og jeg så, at de var hvide og overordentlig skønne og smukke, ligesom mit folk, før de blev udryddet.

16 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, så, at ikke-jøderne, som var draget ud af fangenskab, ydmygede sig for Herren; og Herrens kraft var med dem.

17 Og jeg så, at de ikke-jøder, som de stammede fra, var samlet på vandene og også på land for at kæmpe mod dem.

18 Og jeg så, at Guds kraft var med dem, og også at Guds vrede var over alle dem, der var samlet imod dem for at kæmpe.

19 Og jeg, Nefi, så, at de ikke-jøder, der var draget ud af fangenskab, ved Guds kraft blev udfriet af alle andre folkeslags hænder.

20 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, så, at de havde fremgang i landet, og jeg så en bog, og den blev båret frem blandt dem.

21 Og englen sagde til mig: Forstår du betydningen af bogen?

22 Og jeg sagde til ham: Jeg forstår den ikke.

23 Og han sagde: Se, den udgår af en jødes mund. Og jeg, Nefi, så det; og han sagde til mig: Bogen, som du ser, er en optegnelse om jøderne, som indeholder Herrens pagter, som han har sluttet med Israels Hus; og den indeholder også mange af de hellige profeters profetier; og det er en optegnelse i lighed med de indgravninger, der findes på bronzepletterne, bortset fra at der ikke er så mange; alligevel indeholder de Herrens pagter, som han har sluttet med Israels hus; derfor er de af stor værdi for ikke-jøderne.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

24 Og Herrens engel sagde til mig: Du har set, at bogen udgik af en jødes mund, og da den udgik af en jødes mund, indeholdt den Herrens evangeliums fylde, han, om hvem de tolv apostle aflægger vidnesbyrd; og de aflægger vidnesbyrd i overensstemmelse med den sandhed, der er i Guds lam.

25 For se, dette udgår i renhed fra jøderne til ikke-jøderne i overensstemmelse med den sandhed, der er i Gud.

26 Og efter at det ved Lammets tolv apostles hænder er udgået fra jøderne til ikke-jøderne, ser du dannelsen af den store og vederstyggelige kirke, som er yderst vederstyggelig, mere end alle andre kirker; for se, de har borttaget mange dele fra Lammets evangelium, som er tydelige og yderst dyrebare, og også mange af Herrens pagter har de taget bort.

27 Og alt dette har de gjort, så de kunne fordreje Herrens rette veje, så de kunne forblinde menneskenes børns øjne og forhærde deres hjerte.

28 Således ser du, at efter at bogen er gået igennem hænderne på den store og vederstyggelige kirke, at der er mange tydelige og dyrebare ting, der er taget bort fra bogen, som er Guds lams bog.

29 Og efter at disse tydelige og dyrebare ting er blevet taget bort, går den ud til alle de ikke-jødiske folkeslag, og efter at den er gået ud til alle de ikke-jødiske folkeslag, ja, endog over de mange vande, som du har set, sammen med de ikke-jøder, der er draget ud af fangenskab, ser du – at på grund af de mange tydelige og dyrebare ting, som er blevet taget bort fra bogen, som var tydelige for menneskenes børn at forstå i overensstemmelse med den tydelighed, der er i Guds lam – at på grund af det, der er taget bort fra Lammets evangelium, snubler overordentligt mange, ja, således at Satan har stor magt over dem.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

30 Alligevel ser du, at de ikke-jøder, som er draget ud af fangenskab og ved Guds kraft er blevet hævet op over alle andre folkeslag på overfladen af det land, som er ud-søgt, mere end alle andre lande, hvilket er det land, som Gud Herren har sluttet pagt med din far om, at hans efterkommere skulle have som deres arveland; derfor ser du, at Gud Herren ikke vil tillade, at ikke-jøderne helt udrydder den blanding af dine efterkommere, som er blandt dine brødre.

31 Ej heller vil han tillade, at ikke-jøderne udrydder dine brødres efterkommere.

32 Ej heller vil Gud Herren tillade, at ikke-jøderne for evigt forbliver i den forfærdelige tilstand af blindhed, som du ser, de er i på grund af, at de tydelige og yderst dyrebare dele af Lammets evangelium er blevet holdt tilbage af den vederstyggelige kirke, hvis dannelse du har set.

33 Derfor siger Guds lam: Jeg vil være barmhjertig mod ikke-jøderne ved at hjemsege resten af Israels hus med hårde straffedomme.

34 Og det skete, at Herrens engel talte til mig og sagde: Se, siger Guds lam, efter at jeg har hjemsegt resten af Israels hus – og den rest, som jeg taler om, er din fars efterkommere – altså, efter at jeg har hjemsegt dem med straffedomme og slået dem ved ikke-jødernes hånd, og efter at ikke-jøderne snubler overordentlig meget på grund af de yderst tydelige og dyrebare dele af Lammets evangelium, som er blevet holdt tilbage af den vederstyggelige kirke, som er skøgnernes moder, siger Lammet – vil jeg være barmhjertig mod ikke-jøderne på den dag, således at jeg ved min egen kraft vil bringe meget af mit evangelium, som vil være tydeligt og dyrebart, frem til dem, siger Lammet.

35 For se, siger Lammet, jeg vil give mig til kende for dine efterkommere, så de vil skrive meget, som jeg vil forkynde for dem, og som vil være tydeligt og dyrebart; og efter at dine efterkommere er blevet udryddet og er sunket ned i vantro og ligeså dine brødres efterkommere, se, da skal dette blive skjult for at komme frem til ikke-jøderne ved Lammets gave og kraft.

36 Og i dette skal mit evangelium skrives, siger Lammet og min klippe og min frelse.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

37 Og velsignede er de, der forsøger at bringe mit Zion frem på den dag, for de skal få Helligåndens gave og kraft, og hvis de holder ud indtil enden, skal de blive løftet op på den yderste dag og skal blive frelst i Lammets evigtvarende rige; og de, der forkynnder fred, ja, tidender om stor glæde, hvor herlige skal de ikke være på bjergene.

38 Og det skete, at jeg så resten af mine brødres efterkommere og også Guds lams bog, som var udgået af jødens mund, at den kom frem fra ikke-jøderne til resten af mine brødres efterkommere.

39 Og efter at den var kommet frem til dem, så jeg andre bøger, der kom frem ved Lammets kraft fra ikke-jøderne til dem for at overbevise ikke-jøderne og resten af mine brødres efterkommere og også de jøder, der var spredt over hele jordens overflade, om, at profeternes og Lammets tolv apostles optegnelser er sande.

40 Og englen talte til mig og sagde: Disse sidste optegnelser, som du har set blandt ikke-jøderne, skal stadfæste sandheden af de første, som kommer fra Lammets tolv apostle, og skal kundgøre de tydelige og dyrebare ting, som er blevet taget bort fra dem, og skal kundgøre for alle stammer, tungemål og folk, at Guds lam er den evige Faders Søn og verdens frelser, og at alle mennesker skal komme til ham, ellers kan de ikke blive frelst.

41 Og de skal komme i overensstemmelse med de ord, der skal blive stadfæstet ved Lammets mund, og Lammets ord skal blive kundgjort i dine efterkommeres optegnelser, såvel som i Lammets tolv apostles optegnelser; derfor skal de stadfæste hinanden i ét; for der er én Gud og én Hyrde over hele jorden.

42 Og den tid kommer, da han vil give sig til kende for alle folkeslag, både for jøderne og også for ikke-jøderne; og efter at han har givet sig til kende for jøderne og også for ikke-jøderne, så skal han give sig til kende for ikke-jøderne og også for jøderne, og de sidste skal blive de første, og de første skal blive de sidste.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

Nefis Første Bog 14

- 1 Og det skal ske, at hvis ikke-jøderne vil lytte til Guds lam på den dag, da han giver sig til kende for dem i ord og også i kraft, ja, i handling, for derved at tage deres anstødssten bort –
- 2 og ikke forhærder hjertet mod Guds lam, skal de blive regnet blandt din fars efterkommere; ja, de skal blive regnet blandt Israels hus; og de skal blive et velsignet folk i det forjættede land for evigt; de skal ikke mere blive ført ned i fangenskab, og Israels hus skal ikke mere blandes sammen med andre.
- 3 Og den store grav, som er blevet gravet for dem af den store og vederstyggelige kirke, der blev grundlagt af Djævelen og hans børn, så han kan forlede menneskenes sjæl ned til helvede – ja, den store grav, der er blevet gravet til menneskenes undergang, skal fyldes med dem, der gravede den, til deres egen fuldstændige undergang, siger Guds lam; ikke sjælens undergang, ud over at den kastes i det helvede, der ingen ende har.
- 4 For se, dette er i overensstemmelse med Djævelens fangenskab og også i overensstemmelse med Guds retfærdighed over for alle dem, der udøver ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder for ham.
- 5 Og det skete, at englen talte til mig, Nefi, og sagde: Du har set, at hvis ikke-jøderne omvender sig, skal det gå dem vel, og du kender også til Herrens pagter med Israels hus, og du har også hørt, at den, der ikke omvender sig, skal fortabes.
- 6 Derfor, ve ikke-jøderne, dersom de forhærder hjertet mod Guds lam.

1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7 For den tid kommer, siger Guds lam, da jeg vil udføre et stort og et forunderligt værk blandt menneskenes børn; et værk, som skal være evigtvarende på enten den ene eller på den anden måde – enten ved at overbevise dem, så de opnår fred og evigt liv, eller så de overgives til deres hjertes hårdhed og deres sinds blindhed, så de bliver ført ned til fangenskab og også til undergang, både timeligt og åndeligt, i overensstemmelse med Djævelens fangenskab, som jeg har talt om.

8 Og det skete, at da englen havde talt disse ord, sagde han til mig: Erindrer du Faderens pagter med Israels hus? Jeg sagde til ham: Ja.

9 Og det skete, at han sagde til mig: Se og betragt den store og vederstyggelige kirke, som er vederstyggelighedernes moder, og hvis grundlægger er Djævelen.

10 Og han sagde til mig: Se, der er kun to kirker; den ene er Guds lams kirke, og den anden er Djævelens kirke; den, der derfor ikke tilhører Guds lams kirke, tilhører den store kirke, som er vederstyggelighedernes moder; og hun er hele jordens skøge.

11 Og det skete, at jeg så og betragtede hele jordens skøge, og hun sad på mange vande; og hun havde herredømme over hele jorden, blandt alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk.

12 Og det skete, at jeg så Guds lams kirke, og dens antal var lille på grund af ugudeligheden og vederstyggelighederne hos skøgen, der sad på mange vande; alligevel så jeg, at Lammets kirke, som var Guds hellige, også var overalt på jordens overflade; og deres herredømme på jordens overflade var lille på grund af ugudeligheden hos den store skøge, som jeg så.

13 Og det skete, at jeg så, at vederstyggelighedernes store moder samlede mængder sammen overalt på jordens overflade blandt alle de ikke-jødiske folkeslag for at kæmpe mod Guds lam.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

14 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, så Guds lams kraft, at den kom ned over de hellige i Lammets kirke og over Herrens pagtsfolk, som var spredt over hele jordens overflade, og de blev udrustet med retfærdighed og med Guds kraft i stor herlighed.

15 Og det skete, at jeg så, at Guds vrede blev udøst over den store og vederstyggelige kirke, således at der var krige og rygter om krige blandt alle jordens folkeslag og stammer.

16 Og eftersom der opstod krige og rygter om krige blandt alle de folkeslag, der tilhørte vederstyggelighedernes moder, talte englen til mig og sagde: Se Guds vrede over skøgenes moder; og se, du ser alt dette –

17 og når den dag kommer, da Guds vrede bliver udøst over skøgenes moder, som er hele jordens store og vederstyggelige kirke, hvis grundlægger er Djævelen, da, på den dag, skal Faderens værk begynde ved, at han bereder vejen for opfyldelsen af sine pagter, som han har sluttet med sit folk, der er af Israels hus.

18 Og det skete, at englen talte til mig og sagde: Se!

19 Og jeg så og skuede en mand, og han var klædt i en hvid kjortel.

20 Og englen sagde til mig: Se en af Lammets tolv apostle.

21 Se, han skal se og skrive resten af dette, ja, og også meget, som er sket.

22 Og han skal også skrive om verdens ende.

23 Og se, det, som han skal skrive, er retfærdigt og sandt; og se, det bliver skrevet i den bog, som du så udgik af jødens mund; og på det tidspunkt da det udgik af jødens mund, eller på det tidspunkt da bogen udgik af jødens mund, var det, der var skrevet, tydeligt og rent og yderst dyrebart og let at forstå for alle mennesker.

24 Og se, af det, som denne Lammets apostel skal skrive, er der meget, som du har set; og se, du skal se resten.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

- 25 Men det, som du herefter skal se, skal du ikke skrive, for Gud Herren har ordineret Guds lams apostel, for at han skulle skrive det.
- 26 Og også andre, som har levet, til dem har han vist alt, og de har skrevet det; og det er blevet forseglet for, når Herren anser tiden for at være inde, at komme frem i dets renhed, i overensstemmelse med den sandhed der er i Lammet, til Israels hus.
- 27 Og jeg, Nefi, hørte og aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at navnet på Lammets apostel var Johannes ifølge englens ord.
- 28 Og se, det er mig, Nefi, forbudt at skrive resten af det, som jeg så og hørte; derfor er det, som jeg har skrevet, nok for mig, og jeg har kun skrevet en lille del af det, som jeg så.
- 29 Og jeg aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at jeg så det, som min far så, og Herrens engel gav det til kende for mig.
- 30 Og nu holder jeg op med at tale angående det, som jeg så, mens jeg var borttrykket i Ånden, og skønt alt det, som jeg så, ikke er skrevet ned, så er det, som jeg har skrevet, sandt. Og således er det. Amen.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficient me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

Nefis Første Bog 15

- 1 Og det skete, efter at jeg, Nefi, havde været borttrykket i Ånden og set alt dette, at jeg vendte tilbage til min fars telt.
- 2 Og det skete, at jeg så mine brødre, og de mundhuggedes, den ene med den anden, angående det, som min far havde talt til dem.
- 3 For han talte i sandhed mange store ting til dem, som var svære at forstå, medmindre man ville adspørge Herren; og de, som var hårde i hjertet, de så derfor ikke hen til Herren, som de burde.
- 4 Og se, jeg, Nefi, var bedrøvet på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed, og også på grund af det, som jeg havde set, og fordi jeg vidste, at det uundgåeligt måtte ske på grund af menneskenes børns store ugudelighed.
- 5 Og det skete, at jeg blev overvældet på grund af mine trængsler, for jeg mente, at mine trængsler var store, større end alle andre, på grund af udryddelsen af mit folk, for jeg havde set deres fald.
- 6 Og det skete, efter at jeg havde samlet kræfter, at jeg talte til mine brødre, idet jeg ønskede at vide af dem årsagen til deres mundhuggerier.
- 7 Og de sagde: Se, vi kan ikke forstå de ord, som vor far har talt angående oliventræets naturlige grene og også angående ikke-jøderne.
- 8 Og jeg sagde til dem: Har I adspurgte Herren?
- 9 Og de sagde til mig: Det har vi ikke, for Herren giver ikke noget sådant til kende for os.
- 10 Se, jeg sagde til dem: Hvordan kan det være, at I ikke holder Herrens befalinger? Hvordan kan det være, at I vil fortabes på grund af jeres hjertes hårdhed?
- 11 Husker I ikke, hvad Herren har sagt? – Hvis I ikke forhærder hjertet og adspørger mig i tro, overbeviste om at I skal modtage, og med flid i at holde mine befalinger, da skal dette visselig gives til kende for jer.

1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

- 12 Se, jeg siger jer, at Israels hus blev sammenlignet med et oliventræ af Herrens Ånd, som var i vor far; og se, er vi ikke brækket af fra Israels hus, og er vi ikke en gren af Israels hus?
- 13 Og se, det, som vor far mener med indpodningen af de naturlige grene ved ikke-jødernes fylde, er, at i de sidste dage, når vore efterkommere er sunket ned i vantro, ja, efter et tidsrum af mange år og mange slægtled, efter at Messias giver sig til kende for menneskenes børn i legemet, da skal fylden af Messias' evangelium komme til ikke-jøderne, og fra ikke-jøderne til resten af vore efterkommere –
- 14 og på den dag skal resten af vore efterkommere erfare, at de er af Israels hus, og at de er Herrens pagtsfolk; og da skal de kende og komme til kundskab om deres forfædre og også til kundskab om deres forlørsers evangelium, som blev forkyndt for deres fædre af ham; derfor skal de komme til kundskab om deres forløser og hver enkelt detalje af hans lære, så de kan vide, hvordan de kan komme til ham og blive frelst.
- 15 Og vil de så ikke på den dag fryde sig og prise deres evige Gud, deres klippe og deres frelse? Ja, vil de så ikke på den dag få styrke og næring fra det sande vintræ? Ja, vil de ikke komme til Guds sande fold?
- 16 Se, jeg siger jer: Jo, de skal igen huskes blandt Israels hus; de skal, da de er en naturlig gren af oliventræet, blive podet ind på det sande oliventræ.
- 17 Og dette er, hvad vor far mener; og han mener, at det ikke vil ske, førend efter at de er blevet spredt af ikke-jøderne; og han mener, at det vil ske ved ikke-jøderne, så Herren kan vise sin magt for ikke-jøderne af netop den årsag, at han vil blive forkastet af jøderne eller af Israels hus.
- 18 Vor far har derfor ikke alene talt om vore efterkommere, men også om hele Israels hus, idet han henviste til den pagt, der skal opfyldes i de sidste dage, hvilken pagt Herren sluttede med vor fader Abraham, da han sagde: I dine efterkommere skal alle jordens slægter blive vel-signet.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

19 Og det skete, at jeg, Nephi, talte meget til dem om dette; ja, jeg talte til dem om jødernes genrejsning i de sidste dage.

20 Og jeg fortalte dem de ord, som Esajas talte om genrejsningen af jøderne eller af Israels hus; og efter at de var genrejst, skulle de ikke mere blandes med andre, ej heller skulle de spredes igen. Og det skete, at jeg talte mange ord til mine brødre, så de blev formildet og ydmygede sig for Herren.

21 Og det skete, at de talte til mig igen og sagde: Hvad betyder det, som vor far så i en drøm? Hvad betyder det træ, som han så?

22 Og jeg sagde til dem: Det var et billede på livets træ.

23 Og de sagde til mig: Hvad betyder den jernstang, som vor far så, og som førte til træet?

24 Og jeg sagde til dem, at det var Guds ord, og at den, der ville lytte til Guds ord og ville holde fast ved det, de skulle aldrig fortages, ej heller kunne Modstanderens fristelser og brændende pile overvælde dem, så de blev blinde, og føre dem bort til undergang.

25 Derfor formanede jeg, Nephi, dem til at give agt på Herrens ord; ja, med hele min sjæls styrke og med alle de evner, som jeg besad, formanede jeg dem til, at de skulle give agt på Guds ord og huske altid at holde hans befalinger i alt.

26 Og de sagde til mig: Hvad betyder den flod med vand, som vor far så?

27 Og jeg sagde til dem, at det vand, som min far så, var tilsølethed; og at hans sind var så opslugt af andet, at han ikke opfattede vandets tilsølethed.

28 Og jeg sagde til dem, at den udgjorde en forfærdelig kløft, som adskilte de ugudelige fra livets træ og også fra Guds hellige.

29 Og jeg sagde til dem, at den var et billede på det forfærdelige helvede, som englen fortalte mig var beredt for de ugudelige.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

30 Og jeg sagde til dem, at vor far også så, at Guds retfærdighed ligeledes skilte de ugudelige fra de retfærdige; og skæret derfra var som skæret fra en flammende ild, der stiger op til Gud for evigt og altid og ikke har nogen ende.

31 Og de sagde til mig: Betyder det legemets pinsel i prøvens dage, eller betyder det sjælens endelige tilstand efter det timelige legemes død, eller tales der om det, der er timeligt?

32 Og det skete, at jeg sagde til dem, at det var et billede på både det timelige og det åndelige; for den dag skulle komme, da de skulle dømmes for deres gerninger, ja, de gerninger, der blev gjort med det timelige legeme i deres prøves dage.

33 Hvis de derfor skulle dø i deres ugudelighed, måtte de også blive forstødt med hensyn til det, der er åndeligt, og som hører til retfærdighed; derfor måtte de blive ført frem for Gud for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger; og hvis deres gerninger har været tilsølethed, må de selv nødvendigvis være tilsølede; og hvis de er tilsølede, må det nødvendigvis være sådan, at de ikke kan bo i Guds rige; om så var, måtte Guds rige også være tilsølet.

34 Men se, jeg siger jer: Guds rige er ikke tilsølet, og der kan ikke komme noget urent ind i Guds rige; derfor må der nødvendigvis være beredt et tilsølet sted til det, der er tilsølet.

35 Og der er beredt et sted, ja, det forfærdelige helvede, som jeg har talt om, og Djævelen er den, der har beredt det; derfor er menneskesjælens endelige tilstand at bo i Guds rige eller at blive stødt ud på grund af den retfærdighed, som jeg har talt om.

36 Derfor er de ugudelige udelukket fra de retfærdige og også fra livets træ, hvis frugt er yderst dyrebar og yderst ønskværdig, mere end alle andre frugter; ja, og den er den største af alle Guds gaver. Og således talte jeg til mine brødre. Amen.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

Nefis Første Bog 16

- 1 Og se, det skete, at efter at jeg, Nefi, var færdig med at tale til mine brødre, se, da sagde de til mig: Du har kundgjort os hårde ord, mere end vi er i stand til at bære.
- 2 Og det skete, at jeg sagde til dem, at jeg vidste, at jeg havde talt hårde ord imod de ugudelige i overensstemmelse med sandheden; og de retfærdige har jeg retfærdiggjort og vidnet om, at de skulle blive løftet op på den yderste dag; derfor anser de skyldige sandheden for at være hård, for den skærer dem til deres inderste.
- 3 Og se, mine brødre, hvis I var retfærdige og var villige til at lytte til sandheden og give agt på den, så I kunne vandre retsindigt for Gud, da ville I ikke murre over sandheden og sige: Du taler hårde ord imod os.
- 4 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, med al flid formanede mine brødre til at holde Herrens befalinger.
- 5 Og det skete, at de ydmygede sig for Herren i en sådan grad, at jeg blev glad og nærrede store forhåbninger for dem om, at de ville vandre på retfærdighedens stier.
- 6 Se, alt dette blev sagt og gjort, mens min far boede i et telt i den dal, som han kaldte Lemuel.
- 7 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, tog en af Ismaels døtre til hustru; og mine brødre tog sig også hustruer blandt Ismaels døtre; og Zoram tog den ældste af Ismaels døtre til hustru.
- 8 Og således havde min far opfyldt alle Herrens befalinger, som var blevet givet ham. Og jeg, Nefi, var også blevet overordentlig velsignet af Herren.
- 9 Og det skete, at Herrens røst talte til min far om nat og befalede ham, at han den næste dag skulle rejse ud i ørkenen.
- 10 Og det skete, at da min far stod op om morgenen og gik hen til teltdøren, så han til sin store forbavselse en rund kugle af kunstfærdig forarbejdning ligge på jorden; og den var af ren bronze. Og inde i kuglen var der to spindler; og den ene viste den retning, i hvilken vi skulle drage ud i ørkenen.

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

11 Og det skete, at vi samlede alt det, vi skulle have med ud i ørkenen, og resten af den proviant, som Herren havde givet os; og vi tog frø med af enhver slags, for at vi kunne tage dem med ud i ørkenen.

12 Og det skete, at vi tog vore telte og drog ud i ørkenen over floden Laman.

13 Og det skete, at vi rejste i et tidsrum af fire dage i næsten syd-sydøstlig retning, og vi slog igen vore telte op; og vi gav stedet navnet Shazer.

14 Og det skete, at vi tog vore buer og vore pile og gik ud i ørkenen for at nedlægge føde til vore familier; og efter at vi havde nedlagt føde til vore familier, vendte vi igen tilbage til vore familier i ørkenen til stedet Shazer. Og vi drog igen ud i ørkenen, idet vi fulgte samme retning og holdt os til ørkenens mest frugtbare dele, som lå i grænseegnene nær Det Røde Hav.

15 Og det skete, at vi rejste i et tidsrum af mange dage, mens vi nedlagde føde undervejs med vore buer og vore pile og vore sten og vore slynger.

16 Og vi fulgte kuglens anvisninger, som ledte os til de mere frugtbare dele af ørkenen.

17 Og efter at vi havde rejst i et tidsrum af mange dage, slog vi vore telte op for en tid, så vi igen kunne hvile os og skaffe føde til vore familier.

18 Og det skete, at da jeg, Nephi, gik ud for at nedlægge føde, se, da knækkede jeg min bue, som var lavet af rent stål; og efter at jeg havde knækket min bue, se, da blev mine brødre vrede på mig på grund af tabet af min bue, for vi fik ikke fat i nogen føde.

19 Og det skete, at vi vendte tilbage til vore familier uden føde, og da de var meget udmattede på grund af deres vandring, led de meget under manglen på føde.

20 Og det skete, at Laman og Lemuel og Ismaels sønner begyndte at murre overordentlig meget på grund af deres lidelser og trængsler i ørkenen; og også min far begyndte at murre imod Herren sin Gud; ja, og de var alle overordentlig sorgfulde, så de endog murrede imod Herren.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

21 Se, det skete, at da jeg, Nefi, var blevet plaget af mine brødre på grund af tabet af min bue, og da deres buer havde mistet deres spændstighed, begyndte det at blive overordentlig vanskeligt, ja, således at vi ikke kunne få fat i nogen føde.

22 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, talte meget til mine brødre, fordi de igen havde forhærdet hjertet, så de endog beklagede sig over Herren deres Gud.

23 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, ud af træ lavede en bue, og ud af en lige pind en pil; derfor bevæbnede jeg mig med en bue og en pil, med en slynge og med sten. Og jeg sagde til min far: Hvor skal jeg gå hen for at skaffe føde?

24 Og det skete, at han adspurgte Herren, for de havde ydmyget sig på grund af mine ord; for jeg sagde meget til dem af al min sjæls styrke.

25 Og det skete, at Herrens røst kom til min far; og han blev virkelig revset på grund af sin murren imod Herren, i en sådan grad at han blev bragt ned i sorgens dyb.

26 Og det skete, at Herrens røst sagde til ham: Se på kuglen, og betragt det, der er skrevet.

27 Og det skete, at da min far så det, der var skrevet på kuglen, frygtede og bævede han overordentlig meget og ligeså mine brødre og Ismaels sønner og vore hustruer.

28 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, så de visere, der var i kuglen, at de virkede i overensstemmelse med den tro og flid og agtpågivenhed, som vi viste dem.

29 Og der var også skrevet en ny indskrift på dem, som var tydelig at læse, og som gav os forståelse, hvad angår Herrens veje; og den blev skrevet og ændret fra tid til anden i overensstemmelse med den tro og flid, som vi viste den. Og således ser vi, at Herren ved små midler kan frembringe store ting.

30 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, gik op mod toppen af bjerget i overensstemmelse med de anvisninger, der blev givet på kuglen.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

31 Og det skete, at jeg nedlagde vilde dyr, således at jeg skaffede føde til vore familier.

32 Og det skete, at jeg vendte tilbage til vore telte bærende på de dyr, som jeg havde nedlagt; og da de så, at jeg havde skaffet føde, hvor stor var da ikke deres glæde! Og det skete, at de ydmygede sig for Herren og gav ham tak.

33 Og det skete, at vi genoptog vor rejse og rejste i omtrent samme retning som i begyndelsen; og efter at vi havde rejst i et tidsrum af mange dage, slog vi atter vore telte op, så vi kunne blive der en tid.

34 Og det skete, at Ismael døde og blev begravet på det sted, der blev kaldt Nahom.

35 Og det skete, at Ismaels døtre sørgede overordentlig meget på grund af tabet af deres far og på grund af deres trængsler i ørkenen; og de murrede imod min far, fordi han havde ført dem ud af Jerusalems land, og sagde: Vor far er død, ja, og vi har vandret meget i ørkenen, og vi har lidt megen trængsel, sult, tørst og udmattelse; og efter alle disse lidelser skal vi omkomme i ørkenen af sult.

36 Og således murrede de imod min far og også imod mig, og de nærrede ønske om at vende tilbage til Jerusalem igen.

37 Og Laman sagde til Lemuel og også til Ismaels sønner: Se, lad os slå vor far ihjel, og også vor bror Nephi, som har taget det på sig selv at være hersker og lærer for os, som er hans ældre brødre.

38 Se, han siger, at Herren har talt med ham, og også at engle har betjent ham. Men se, vi ved, at han lyver for os; og han fortæller os dette, og han gør meget ved hjælp af sine snedige kneb, for at han kan bedrage vore øjne, idet han måske tænker, at han kan føre os bort til en eller anden fremmed ørken; og efter at han har ført os bort, har han tænkt sig at gøre sig selv til konge og hersker over os, så han kan gøre med os efter sin vilje og sit behag. Og på den måde vakte min bror Laman deres hjerte til vrede.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inso-much that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

39 Og det skete, at Herren var med os, ja, selve Herrens
røst kom og talte mange ord til dem og revsede dem
overordentlig meget; og efter at de var blevet revset af
Herrens røst, vendte de sig fra deres vrede og omvendte
sig fra deres synder, således at Herren igen velsignede os
med føde, så vi ikke omkom.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea,
even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many
words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly;
and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord
they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their
sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with
food, that we did not perish.

Nefis Første Bog 17

- 1 Og det skete, at vi genoptog vor rejse ud i ørkenen; og vi rejste næsten stik øst fra da af. Og vi rejste og vadede gennem megen trængsel i ørkenen; og vore kvinder fødte børn i ørkenen.
- 2 Og så store var Herrens velsignelser til os, at mens vi levede af rått kød i ørkenen, gav vore kvinder rigelig die til deres børn, og de var stærke, ja, lige så stærke som mændene; og de begyndte at bære vandringerne uden murren.
- 3 Og således ser vi, at Guds befalinger skal blive opfyldt. Og dersom menneskenes børn holder Guds befalinger, giver han dem næring og styrker dem og sørger for midler, hvorved de kan udføre det, som han har befaleet dem; derfor sørgede han for midler for os, mens vi opholdt os i ørkenen.
- 4 Og vi opholdt os i ørkenen i et tidsrum af mange år, ja, hele otte år.
- 5 Og vi kom til det land, som vi kaldte Overflod på grund af dets megen frugt og ligeledes vilde honning; og alt dette var beredt af Herren, for at vi ikke skulle omkomme. Og vi så havet, som vi kaldte Irreantum, der, når det bliver oversat, betyder mange vande.
- 6 Og det skete, at vi slog vore telte op ved kysten; og til trods for, at vi havde lidt mange trængsler og haft mange vanskeligheder, ja, endog så mange, at vi ikke kan nedskrive dem alle, frydede vi os overordentlig meget, da vi kom til kysten; og vi kaldte stedet Overflod på grund af dets megen frugt.
- 7 Og det skete, efter at jeg, Nefi, havde været i Overflodens land i et tidsrum af mange dage, at Herrens røst kom til mig og sagde: Rejs dig, og gå op på bjerget. Og det skete, at jeg rejste mig og gik op på bjerget og anrøbte Herren.
- 8 Og det skete, at Herren talte til mig og sagde: Du skal bygge et skib på den måde, som jeg skal vise dig, så jeg kan føre dit folk over disse vande.

I Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

9 Og jeg sagde: Herre, hvor skal jeg gå hen, så jeg kan finde malm at smelte, så jeg kan lave værktøj til at bygge skibet med på den måde, som du har vist mig?

10 Og det skete, at Herren fortalte mig, hvor jeg skulle gå hen for at finde malm, så jeg kunne lave værktøj.

11 Og det skete, at jeg, Nephi, lavede en bælg af dyreskind til at blæse til ilden med; og efter at jeg havde lavet en bælg, så jeg dermed havde noget at blæse til ilden med, slog jeg to sten mod hinanden for at lave ild.

12 For Herren havde hidtil ikke tilladt os at lave megen ild, mens vi rejste i ørkenen; for han sagde: Jeg vil gøre jeres mad sød, så I ikke skal tilberede den.

13 Og jeg vil også være jeres lys i ørkenen; og jeg vil berede vejen for jer, dersom I holder mine befalinger; for så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I derfor blive ført mod det forjættede land; og I skal vide, at det er af mig, at I bliver ført.

14 Ja, og Herren sagde også: Efter at I er ankommet til det forjættede land, skal I vide, at jeg, Herren, er Gud, og at jeg, Herren, udfriede jer fra udryddelse, ja, at jeg førte jer ud af Jerusalems land.

15 Derfor bestræbte jeg, Nephi, mig på at holde Herrens befalinger, og jeg formanede mine brødre til trofasthed og flid.

16 Og det skete, at jeg lavede værktøj af den malm, som jeg smeltede ud af klippen.

17 Og da mine brødre så, at jeg skulle til at bygge et skib, begyndte de at murre imod mig og sige: Vor bror er en tåbe, for han tror, at han kan bygge et skib, ja, og han tror også, at han kan krydse disse store vande.

18 Og således beklagede mine brødre sig over for mig, og de nærrede ønske om, at de ikke skulle arbejde, for de troede ikke på, at jeg kunne bygge et skib; ej heller ville de tro på, at jeg var blevet undervist af Herren.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

19 Og se, det skete, at jeg, Nefi, blev overordentlig sorgfuld på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed; og da de så, at jeg begyndte at blive sorgfuld, glædede de sig i hjertet i en sådan grad, at de hoverede over mig og sagde: Vi vidste, at du ikke kunne bygge et skib, for vi vidste, at du manglede dømmekraft; derfor kan du ikke udføre så stort et arbejde.

20 Og du er ligesom vor far, forledt af sit hjertes tåbelige forestillinger; ja, han har ført os ud af Jerusalems land, og vi har vandret i ørkenen i disse mange år; og vore kvinder har arbejdet, mens de var store med barn; og de har født børn i ørkenen og lidt alt, undtagen døden; og det ville have været bedre, om de var døde, før de kom ud af Jerusalem, end at have lidt disse trængsler.

21 Se, disse mange år har vi lidt i ørkenen, mens vi kunne have nydt vor ejendom og vort arveland; ja, og vi kunne have været lykkelige.

22 Og vi ved, at det folk, der var i Jerusalems land, var et retfærdigt folk; for de holdt Herrens lovbud og retsregler og alle hans befalinger i henhold til Moseloven; derfor ved vi, at de er et retfærdigt folk; og vor far har dømt dem og har ført os bort, fordi vi lyttede til hans ord; ja, og vor bror er som han. Og med et sådant sprog murrede og beklagede mine brødre sig over for os.

23 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, talte til dem og sagde: Tror I, at vore fædre, som var Israels børn, ville være blevet ført ud af egypternes hænder, hvis de ikke havde lyttet til Herrens ord?

24 Ja, tror I, at de ville være blevet ført ud af trældom, hvis Herren ikke havde befalet Moses, at han skulle føre dem ud af trældom?

25 Se, I ved, at Israels børn var i trældom, og I ved, at de var bebyrdet med arbejde, som var tungt at bære; derfor ved I, at det nødvendigvis måtte være godt for dem at blive bragt ud af trældom.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

26 Se, I ved, at Moses blev befalet af Herren at gøre dette store arbejde; og I ved, at ved hans ord blev vandene i Det Røde Hav delt til den ene og til den anden side, og de kom igennem på tør grund.

27 Men I ved, at de egyptere, som udgjorde Faraos hære, druknede i Det Røde Hav.

28 Og I ved også, at de fik manna at spise i ørkenen.

29 Ja, og I ved også, at Moses ved sit ord i overensstemmelse med Guds kraft, som var i ham, slog på klippen, og der kom vand ud, så Israels børn kunne slukke deres tørst.

30 Og til trods for at de blev ført af Herren deres Gud, deres forløser, som gik foran dem og ledte dem om dagen og gav dem lys om natten og gjorde alt det for dem, der var tjenligt for mennesket at modtage, forhærdede de hjertet og forblindede sindet og hånedes Moses og den sande og levende Gud.

31 Og det skete, at han i overensstemmelse med sit ord udryddede dem; og i overensstemmelse med sit ord ledte han dem; og i overensstemmelse med sit ord gjorde han alt for dem; og der blev intet gjort, undtagen det var ved hans ord.

32 Og efter at de havde krydset Jordanfloden, gjorde han dem mægtige, så de kunne uddrive landets børn, ja, så de kunne sprede og derved udrydde dem.

33 Og se, tror I, at dette lands børn, som var i det forjættede land, og som blev drevet ud af vore fædre, tror I, at de var retfærdige? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej.

34 Tror I, at vore fædre ville have været mere udsøgte end de, hvis de havde været retfærdige? Jeg siger jer: Nej.

35 Se, Herren anser alt kød for at være lige; den, der er retfærdig, bliver begunstiget af Gud. Men se, dette folk havde forkastet samtlige Guds ord, og de var modne i ugudelighed; og Guds vredes fylde var over dem; og Herren forbandede landet imod dem og velsignede det for vore fædre; ja, han forbandede det imod dem, så de blev udryddet, og han velsignede det for vore fædre, så de fik magt over det.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

36 Se, Herren har skabt jorden, for at den skulle være beboet; og han har skabt sine børn, for at de skulle tage den i besiddelse.

37 Og han oprejser et retfærdigt folkeslag og udrydder de ugudelige folkeslag.

38 Og han fører de retfærdige bort til udsøgte lande, og de ugudelige udrydder han og forbander landet for dem på grund af dem.

39 Han regerer højt i himlene, for de er hans trone, og denne jord er hans fodskammel.

40 Og han elsker dem, som vil have ham som deres Gud. Se, han elskede vore fædre, og han sluttede pagt med dem, ja, selvste Abraham, Isak og Jakob; og han erindrede de pagter, som han havde sluttet; derfor førte han dem ud af Egyptens land.

41 Og han tugtede dem i ørkenen med sin stav, for de forhærdede hjertet, ligesom I har gjort; og Herren tugtede dem på grund af deres ugudelighed. Han sendte iltre, flyvende slanger blandt dem, og efter at de var blevet bidt, beredte han en vej, hvorved de kunne blive helbredt, og det, som de skulle gøre, var at se op, og på grund af vejens enkelhed, eller lethed, var der mange, der omkom.

42 Og de forhærdede hjertet fra tid til anden, og de hånedede Moses og ligeledes Gud; alligevel ved I, at de ved hans uforlignelige magt blev ført ind i det forjættede land.

43 Og se, efter alt dette er tiden kommet, da de er blevet ugudelige, ja, næsten til modenhed; og jeg anser det for muligt, at de denne dag er nær ved at blive udryddet, for jeg ved, at den dag visselig skal komme, da de vil blive udryddet på nær nogle få, som skal blive ført bort i fangenskab.

44 Derfor befalede Herren min far, at han skulle drage ud i ørkenen; og jøderne forsøgte også at berøve ham livet; ja, og I har også forsøgt at berøve ham livet; derfor er I mordere i hjertet, og I er ligesom de.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

45 I er raske til at gøre misgerninger, men langsomme til at huske Herren jeres Gud. I har set en engel, og han talte til jer, ja, I har hørt hans røst fra tid til anden; og han har talt til jer med en stille, sagte røst, men I havde ikke længere evnen til at føle, så I kan ikke føle hans ord; derfor har han talt til jer som med en tordenrøst, der fik jorden til at ryste, som skulle den sønderdeles.

46 Og I ved også, at han ved sit almægtige ords kraft kan lade jorden forgå; ja, og I ved, at han ved sit ord kan gøre ujævne steder jævne, og jævne steder skal blive brudt op. O, hvordan kan det da være, at I kan være så hårde i hjertet?

47 Se, min sjæl er sønderreven af kval på grund af jer, og mit hjerte smerter; jeg frygter, at I skal blive forstødt for evigt. Se, jeg er fuld af Guds Ånd i en sådan grad, at mit legeme ingen styrke har.

48 Og se, det skete, at da jeg havde talt disse ord, blev de vrede på mig og nærrede ønske om at kaste mig i havets dyb, og da de kom hen for at lægge hånd på mig, talte jeg til dem og sagde: I Gud den Almægtiges navn befaler jeg jer ikke at røre mig, for jeg er så fyldt af Guds kraft, at mit kød næsten fortæres; og den, der lægger hånd på mig, skal visne som et udtørret siv, og han skal være som intet over for Guds kraft, for Gud vil slå ham.

49 Og det skete, at jeg, Nephi, sagde til dem, at de ikke længere skulle murre imod deres far; ej heller skulle de holde deres arbejdskraft tilbage for mig, for Gud havde befalet mig, at jeg skulle bygge et skib.

50 Og jeg sagde til dem: Hvis Gud havde befalet mig at gøre alt, kunne jeg gøre det. Hvis han skulle befale mig, at jeg skulle sige til dette vand: Bliv til jord, så ville det blive til jord, og hvis jeg sagde det, ville det blive gjort.

51 Og se, hvis Herren har så stor magt og har udvirket så mange mirakler blandt menneskenes børn, hvorfor skulle han så ikke kunne undervise mig, så jeg kan bygge et skib?

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

- 52 Og det skete, at jeg, Nephi, sagde meget til mine brødre, således at de blev beskæmmet og ikke kunne strides med mig; ej heller turde de lægge hånd på mig eller røre mig med deres fingre, ja, i et tidsrum af mange dage. Se, de turde ikke gøre dette, for at de ikke skulle visne foran mig, så stærk var Guds Ånd; og således havde den påvirket dem.
- 53 Og det skete, at Herren sagde til mig: Stræk igen din hånd frem til dine brødre, og de skal ikke visne foran dig, men jeg vil ryste dem, siger Herren, og dette vil jeg gøre, for at de kan vide, at jeg er Herren deres Gud.
- 54 Og det skete, at jeg strakte min hånd frem til mine brødre, og de visnede ikke foran mig; men Herren rystede dem i overensstemmelse med det ord, som han havde talt.
- 55 Og se, de sagde: Vi ved med vished, at Herren er med dig, for vi ved, at det er Herrens kraft, der har rystet os. Og de faldt ned for mig og skulle til at tilbede mig, men jeg ville ikke tillade dem det og sagde: Jeg er jeres bror, ja, endog jeres yngre bror; tilbed derfor Gud Herren, og ær jeres far og jeres mor, for at I må få et langt liv i det land, som Gud Herren vil give jer.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

Nefis Første Bog 18

- 1 Og det skete, at de tilbad Herren og gik med mig; og vi tilvirkede tømmer med kunstfærdig forarbejdning. Og Herren viste mig fra tid til anden, på hvilken måde, jeg skulle forarbejde tømmeret til skibet.
- 2 Se, jeg, Nefi, forarbejdede ikke tømmeret på den måde, som mennesker havde lært, ej heller byggede jeg skibet på menneskers måde; men jeg byggede det på den måde, som Herren havde vist mig; derfor var det ikke på menneskers måde.
- 3 Og jeg, Nefi, gik op på bjerget ofte, og jeg bad ofte til Herren; derfor viste Herren mig store ting.
- 4 Og det skete, at efter at jeg havde gjort skibet færdig i overensstemmelse med Herrens ord, så mine brødre, at det var godt, og at forarbejdningen af det var overordentlig fin; derfor ydmygede de sig igen for Herren.
- 5 Og det skete, at Herrens røst kom til min far, at vi skulle bryde op og gå ned i skibet.
- 6 Og det skete den næste dag, efter at vi havde beredt alt, megen frugt og kød fra ørkenen og honning i overflod og proviant i overensstemmelse med det, som Herren havde befalet os, at vi gik ned i skibet med al vor last og vore frø og alt det, vi havde taget med os, enhver efter sin alder; og se, vi gik alle ned i skibet med vore hustruer og vore børn.
- 7 Og se, min far havde fået to sønner i ørkenen; den ældste hed Jakob og den yngste Josef.
- 8 Og det skete, efter at vi var gået ned i skibet og havde taget vor proviant og de ting, som vi var blevet befalet, med os, at vi sejlede ud på havet og blev drevet frem af vinden mod det forjættede land.

1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 Og efter at vi var blevet drevet frem af vinden i et tidsrum af mange dage, se, da begyndte mine brødre og Ismaels sønner og ligeledes deres hustruer at gøre sig lystige, således at de begyndte at danse og at synge og at tale med stor usømmelighed, ja, så de endog glemte, ved hvilken kraft de var blevet ført derhen, ja, de var opløftede til overordentlig stor usømmelighed.

10 Og jeg, Nephi, begyndte at frygte overordentligt, at Herren skulle blive vred på os og slå os på grund af vor ugudelighed, så vi skulle blive opslugt i havets dyb; derfor begyndte jeg, Nephi, at tale til dem med megen alvor; men se, de blev vrede på mig og sagde: Vi vil ikke have, at vor yngre bror skal være hersker over os.

11 Og det skete, at Laman og Lemuel greb mig og bandt mig med reb og behandlede mig med megen hårdhændthed; alligevel tillod Herren det, så han kunne vise sin magt til at opfylde sit ord, som han havde talt angående de ugudelige.

12 Og det skete, at efter at de havde bundet mig så fast, at jeg ikke kunne røre mig, ophørte det kompas, som var blevet beredt af Herren, med at virke.

13 Derfor vidste de ikke, hvor de skulle styre skibet hen, så da der rejste sig en stor storm, ja, et stort og skrækkeligt uvejr, og vi blev drevet tilbage på vandene i et tidsrum af tre dage; og de begyndte at blive overordentlig bange for, at de skulle drukne i havet; alligevel løste de mig ikke.

14 Og på den fjerde dag, da vi var blevet drevet tilbage, begyndte uvejret at blive overordentlig voldsomt.

15 Og det skete, at vi var lige ved at blive opslugt i havets dyb. Og efter at vi var blevet drevet tilbage på vandene i et tidsrum af fire dage, begyndte mine brødre at indse, at Guds straffedomme var over dem, og at de skulle komme, medmindre de omvendte sig fra deres misgerninger; derfor kom de til mig og løste de reb, som var om mine håndled, og se, de var overordentlig opsvulmede; og også mine ankler var meget opsvulmede, og stor var smerten fra dem.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

16 Alligevel så jeg hen til min Gud, og jeg priste ham hele dagen; og jeg murrede ikke imod Herren over mine trængsler.

17 Se, min far, Lehi, havde sagt meget til dem og ligeledes til Ismaels sønner; men se, de udslyngede mange trusler mod enhver, der talte min sag; og mine forældre, som var oppe i årene, og som havde lidt megen bedrøvelse på grund af deres børn, måtte lægge sig, ja, på deres sygeleje.

18 På grund af deres bedrøvelse og megen sorg og mine brøders ugudelighed var de endda tæt på at blive båret ud af denne tid for at møde deres Gud, ja, deres grå hår var lige ved at blive lagt ned i støvet, ja, af sorg var de nær ved at blive kastet i en grav af vand.

19 Og Jakob og Josef, der var unge og havde brug for megen næring, var også bedrøvede på grund af deres mors trængsler; og hverken min hustru med sine tårer og bønner eller mine børn kunne blødgøre mine brøders hjerte, så de ville løse mig.

20 Og der var intet bortset fra Guds kraft, som truede dem med udryddelse, der kunne blødgøre deres hjerte; da de derfor så, at de var nær ved at blive opslugt i havets dyb, omvendte de sig fra det, de havde gjort, således at de løste mig.

21 Og det skete, efter at de havde løst mig, se, da tog jeg kompasset, og det virkede, sådan som jeg ønskede. Og det skete, at jeg bad til Herren; og efter at jeg havde bedt, ophørte vinden, og stormen ophørte, og det blev fuldstændig vindstille.

22 Og det skete, at jeg, Nephi, styrede skibet, så vi igen sejlede mod det forjættede land.

23 Og det skete, at efter at vi havde sejlet i et tidsrum af mange dage, ankom vi til det forjættede land; og vi gik i land og slog vore telte op; og vi kaldte det for det forjættede land.

24 Og det skete, at vi begyndte at dyrke jorden, og vi begyndte at så; ja, vi lagde alle de frø i jorden, som vi havde bragt med fra Jerusalems land. Og det skete, at de voksede overordentlig godt; derfor blev vi velsignet i overflod.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, inasmuch that they loosed me.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

25 Og det skete, mens vi rejste i ødemarken, at vi i det forjættede land opdagede, at der i skovene fandtes dyr af enhver art, både koen og øksen og æslet og hesten og geden og den vilde ged og alle slags vilde dyr, som var til menneskers brug. Og vi fandt alle slags malm, både guld og sølv og kobber.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

Nefis Første Bog 19

1 Og det skete, at Herren befalede mig, derfor lavede jeg plader af malm, så jeg på dem kunne indgravere optegnelsen om mit folk. Og på de plader, som jeg lavede, indgraverede jeg min fars optegnelse og også vore vandringer i ørkenen og min fars profetier; og også mange af mine egne profetier har jeg indgraveret på dem.

2 Og jeg vidste ikke på det tidspunkt, da jeg lavede dem, at jeg ville blive befalede af Herren at lave disse plader; derfor er min fars optegnelse og optegnelsen over hans fædres slægt og størstedelen af alt vort virke i ørkenen indgraveret på disse første plader, som jeg har talt om; derfor er det, der skete, før jeg lavede disse plader, i sandhed mere udførligt omtalt på de første plader.

3 Og efter at jeg havde lavet disse plader på befaling, fik jeg, Nefi, den befaling, at tjenestegerningen og profetierne, de mere tydelige og dyrebare dele af dem, skulle skrives på disse plader; og at det, der blev skrevet, skulle bevares til undervisning af mit folk, som skulle tage landet i besiddelse, og også med andre vise formål, hvilke formål er kendt af Herren.

4 Derfor skrev jeg, Nefi, en optegnelse på de andre plader, som giver en beretning, eller som giver en mere udførlig beretning, om mit folks krige og stridigheder og udryddelse. Og dette har jeg gjort og har givet mit folk befaling om, hvad de skal gøre, når jeg er borte, og at disse plader skal overdrages fra det ene slægtled til det næste, eller fra den ene profet til den næste, indtil Herren giver yderligere befalinger.

5 Og en beretning om, hvordan jeg har lavet disse plader, skal gives siden hen, og se, jeg går videre i overensstemmelse med det, som jeg har talt; og dette gør jeg, for at det, der er mere helligt, kan blive bevaret til mit folks kundskab.

6 Alligevel skriver jeg ikke noget på plader, medmindre jeg mener, at det er helligt. Og se, hvis jeg laver fejl, så lavede de også fejl forud; ikke at jeg vil undskylde mig på grund af andre mennesker, men på grund af den svaghed, der er i mig som følge af kødet, vil jeg undskylde mig.

1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

- 7 For det, som nogle mennesker anser for at være af stor værdi, både for legemet og sjælen, regner andre for intet og træder under føde. Ja, endog selve Israels Gud træder mennesker under føde; jeg siger træder under føde, men jeg vil sige det med andre ord – de regner ham for intet og lytter ikke til hans råds røst.
- 8 Og se, han kommer ifølge englens ord seks hundrede år fra den tid, da min far forlod Jerusalem.
- 9 Og på grund af ugudelighed vil verden regne ham for noget, der er uden værdi; derfor pisker de ham, og han tåler det; og de slår ham, og han tåler det. Ja, de spytter på ham, og han tåler det på grund af sin kærlige godhed og sin langmodighed med menneskenes børn.
- 10 Og vore fædres Gud, de som blev ført ud af Egypten, ud af trældom, og som også blev bevaret i ørkenen ved ham, ja, Abrahams og Isaks Gud, og Jakobs Gud, overgiver sig ifølge englens ord som et menneske i ugudelige menneskers hænder for ifølge Zenoks ord at blive løftet op, og for ifølge Neums ord at blive korsfæstet, og for ifølge Zenos' ord, som han talte angående de tre dages mørke, som skulle være et tegn på hans død for dem, som skulle bebo øerne i havet, og især givet til dem, der er af Israels hus, at blive begravet i en gravhule.
- 11 For således talte profeten: Gud Herren skal visselig komme til hele Israels hus på den dag, til nogle med sin røst på grund af deres retfærdighed til deres store glæde og frelse og til andre med sin magts torden og lyn, ved uvej, ved ild og ved røg og dis af mørke, og ved at jorden åbner sig, og ved bjerge, der skal løftes op.
- 12 Og alt det skal visselig ske, siger profeten Zenos. Og jordens klipper skal revne, og på grund af jordens stønnen vil mange af kongerne på øerne i havet blive påvirket af Guds Ånd til at udbryde: Naturens Gud lider.
- For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words— they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.
- And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.
- And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.
- And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.
- For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunders and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.
- And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

13 Og med hensyn til dem, der er ved Jerusalem, siger profeten, skal de blive tugtet af alle folk, fordi de korsfæster Israels Gud og vender hjertet bort, idet de forkaster Israels Guds tegn og undere og magt og herlighed.

14 Og fordi de vender hjertet bort, siger profeten, og har foragtet Israels Hellige, skal de vandre i kødet og komme og blive til spot og spe og hadet blandt alle folkeslag.

15 Alligevel vil han, når den dag kommer, siger profeten, da de ikke længere vender hjertet bort fra Israels Hellige, erindre de pagter, som han sluttede med deres fædre.

16 Ja, da vil han erindre øerne i havet; ja, og alle de folk, der er af Israels hus, vil jeg, siger Herren ifølge profeten Zenos' ord, indsamle fra jordens fire hjørner.

17 Ja, og hele jorden skal se Herrens frelse, siger profeten; alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk skal blive velsignet.

18 Og jeg, Nephi, har skrevet dette til mit folk, så jeg måske kan formå dem til at huske Herren deres forløser.

19 Og se, jeg taler til hele Israels hus, dersom de skulle få dette.

20 For se, jeg tilskyndes af Ånden, hvilket udmatter mig så meget, at alle mine led er svage, med hensyn til dem der er ved Jerusalem, for havde Herren ikke været så barmhjertig at vise mig angående dem, ligesom han gjorde for de fordums profeter, ville jeg også være kommet.

21 Og han viste visselig de fordums profeter alt angående dem; og han viste også mange af dem angående os; derfor må det nødvendigvis være sådan, at vi kender til dem, for det står skrevet på bronzepladerne.

22 Se, det skete, at jeg, Nephi, lærte mine brødre om dette; og det skete, at jeg læste for dem meget, som var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, for at de kunne kende til Herrens gerninger i andre lande blandt fordums folk.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

23 Og jeg læste for dem meget, som stod skrevet i mo-
sebøgerne; men for at jeg mere fuldt ud kunne formå
dem til at tro på Herren, deres forløser, læste jeg for dem
det, der var skrevet af profeten Esajas, for jeg anvendte
alle skrifter på os, så det kunne blive os til gavn og lær-
dom.

24 Derfor talte jeg til dem og sagde: Hør I profetens ord,
I, der er en rest af Israels hus, en gren, som er blevet
brækket af; hør I profetens ord, der blev skrevet til hele
Israels hus, og anvend dem på jer selv, så I kan have håb
ligesom jeres brødre, fra hvem I er blevet brækket af; for
på denne måde har profeten skrevet.

And I did read many things unto them which were
written in the books of Moses; but that I might more
fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their
Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written
by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto
us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the
words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the
house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear
ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto
all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves,
that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from
whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has
the prophet written.

Nefis Første Bog 20

- 1 Lyt og hør dette, o Jakobs hus, som kaldes ved Israels navn og er steget op af Judas vande, eller op af dåbens vande, og som sværger ved Herrens navn og påkalder Israels Gud, dog sværger de ikke i sandhed eller i retfærdighed.
- 2 Alligevel kalder de sig ved den hellige by, men de forlader sig ikke på Israels Gud, som er Hærskarers Herre; ja, Hærskarers Herre er hans navn.
- 3 Se, jeg har kundgjort det, der skete tidligere, fra begyndelsen, og det gik ud af min mund, og jeg viste det. Jeg viste det pludseligt.
- 4 Og jeg gjorde det, fordi jeg vidste, at du er hård, og din nakke er en jernsene og din pande bronze.
- 5 Og lige fra begyndelsen har jeg kundgjort dig det; før det skete, viste jeg dig det, og jeg viste det af frygt for, at du skulle sige: Min afgud har gjort det, og mit udskårne gudebillede og mit støbte gudebillede har befalet det.
- 6 Du har set og hørt alt dette; og vil I ikke kundgøre det? Og at jeg fra nu af har vist dig det nye, endog det skjulte, og du kendte det ikke.
- 7 Det bliver skabt nu og ikke fra begyndelsen, selv før den dag, da du ikke hørte det, blev det kundgjort for dig, for at du ikke skulle sige: Se, jeg vidste det.
- 8 Ja, og du hørte det ikke, ja, du vidste det ikke, ja, fra den tid af var dit øre ikke åbent. For jeg vidste, at du ville handle meget troløst og blev kaldt overtræder fra moders liv.
- 9 Alligevel, for mit navns skyld vil jeg udsætte min vrede, og for min æres skyld vil jeg holde mig fra dig, så jeg ikke slår dig ihjel.
- 10 For se, jeg har lutret dig, jeg har udvalgt dig i trængselens ovn.
- 11 For min egen skyld, ja, for min egen skyld vil jeg gøre dette, for jeg vil ikke tillade, at mit navn vanæres, og jeg vil ikke give min ære til en anden.

I Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

12 Lyt til mig, o Jakob, og Israel min kaldede, for jeg er ham; jeg er den første, og jeg er også den sidste.

13 Min hånd har også lagt jordens grundvold, og min højre hånd har udspændt himlene. Jeg kalder på dem, og de rejser sig sammen.

14 Alle I, saml jer og hør: Hvem blandt dem har kundgjort dem dette? Herren har elsket ham; ja, og han vil opfylde sit ord, som han har kundgjort ved dette; og han vil gøre med Babylon, som det behager ham, og hans arm skal falde på kaldæerne.

15 Herren siger også: Jeg, Herren, ja, jeg har talt; ja, jeg har kaldet ham til at kundgøre, jeg har bragt ham her, og han skal have fremgang på sin vej.

16 Kom I nær til mig, jeg har ikke talt i det skjulte; fra begyndelsen, fra den tid, da det blev kundgjort, har jeg talt; og Gud Herren og hans Ånd har sendt mig.

17 Og så siger Herren, din forløser, Israels Hellige: Jeg har sendt ham, Herren din Gud, som lærer dig, hvad der gavner, som fører dig på den vej, du skal vandre, har gjort det.

18 O, gid du havde lyttet til mine befalinger – da havde din fred været som en flod og din retfærdighed som havets bølger.

19 Dine efterkommere havde også været som sandet, dit skøds afkom som dets sandkorn; hans navn ville ikke være blevet udslttet eller tilintetgjort for mig.

20 Drag I ud af Babylon, flygt I fra kaldæerne, kundgør det med en røst af sang, fortæl det, lad det lyde til jordens ende, sig I: Herren har forløst sin tjener Jakob.

21 Og de tørstede ikke; han ledte dem gennem ørkenerne; han fik vandet til at flyde ud af klippen til dem; han kløvede også klippen, og vandene strømmede ud.

22 Og skønt han har gjort alt dette og også det, der er større, findes der ingen fred for de ugudelige, siger Herren.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

Nefis Første Bog 21

- 1 Og videre: Lyt, o Israels hus, alle I, som er brækket af og er drevet ud på grund af mit folks hyrders ugudelighed; ja, alle I, som er brækket af, som er spredt vidt omkring, som er af mit folk, o Israels hus. Lyt, o øer, til mig, og lyt, I folk langt borte; Herren har kaldet mig fra moders liv, fra min mors skød har han nævnt mit navn.
- 2 Og han har gjort min mund til et skarpt sværd, i skyggen af sin hånd har han skjult mig og har gjort mig til en sleben pil, i sit kogger har han gemt mig
- 3 og sagt til mig: Du er min tjener, o Israel, i hvem jeg bliver herliggjort.
- 4 Da sagde jeg: Jeg har arbejdet forgæves, jeg har brugt mine kræfter til ingen nytte og forgæves; visse, min dom er hos Herren og min gerning hos min Gud.
- 5 Og se, siger Herren, som dannede mig fra moders liv, for at jeg skulle være hans tjener og føre Jakob tilbage til ham: Skønt Israel ikke er samlet, skal jeg dog være agtet i Herrens øjne, og min Gud skal være min styrke.
- 6 Og han sagde: Det er let for dig at være min tjener og oprejse Jakobs stammer og genrejse Israels overlevende! Jeg vil også gøre dig til et lys for ikke-jøderne, så du kan være min frelse til jordens ender.
- 7 Så siger Herren, Israels forløser, hans Hellige, til ham, som mennesker foragter, til ham, som folkene afskyr, til herskeres tjener: Konger skal se og rejse sig, fyrster skal også tilbede på grund af Herren, som er trofast.
- 8 Så siger Herren: På et gunstigt tidspunkt har jeg hørt dig, o havets øer, og på frelsens dag har jeg hjulpet dig, og jeg vil bevare dig og give dig min tjener som en pagt med folket for at genrejse landet, for at give de øde lodder i arv,
- 9 så du kan sige til fangerne: Gå ud! Og til dem, der sidder i mørket: Kom frem! De skal græsse langs vejene, og deres græsgange skal være på alle høje.

1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

10 De skal hverken sulte eller tørste, ej heller skal heden eller solen plage dem, for den, der har barmhjertighed med dem, vil føre dem, ja, langs kildevældene skal han lede dem.

11 Og jeg vil gøre alle mine bjerge til en vej, og mine landeveje skal bygges højt.

12 Og da, o Israels hus, se, disse skal komme fra det fjerne, og se, disse fra nord og fra vest, og disse fra Sinims land.

13 Syng, o himle, og fryd dig, o jord, for fødderne af dem, der er mod øst, skal grundfæstes; og bryd ud i sang, I bjerge! For de skal ikke længere blive slået, for Herren har trøstet sit folk og vil have barmhjertighed med sine plagede.

14 Men se, Zion har sagt: Herren har svigtet mig, og min Herre har glemt mig! – Men han vil vise, at det har han ikke.

15 For kan en kvinde glemme sit diende barn, så hun ikke har medfølelse med sit livs søn? Ja, selv om hun skulle glemme, så vil jeg ikke glemme dig, o Israels hus.

16 Se, i mine håndflader har jeg tegnet dig, dine mure har jeg bestandig for øje.

17 Dine børn skal haste mod dine ødelæggere; og de, som lagde dig øde, skal drage bort fra dig.

18 Opløft dine øjne, se dig omkring, alle disse samler sig, og de skal komme til dig. Og så sandt jeg lever, siger Herren, skal du visselig iklæde dig dem alle som med et smykke, og binde dem om dig, ja, som en brud.

19 For dine øde og dine ubeboede steder og dit ødelagte land skal selv nu være for trangt på grund af indbyggerne; og de, som opslugte dig, skal være langt borte;

20 de børn, som du skal få, efter at du har mistet de første, skal atter sige i dine ører: Stedet er for trangt til mig, giv plads til mig, så jeg kan bo.

21 Da skal du sige i dit hjerte: Hvem har født mig disse, eftersom jeg har mistet mine børn og er ufrugtbar, en fange og en, der drager hid og did? Og hvem har opdraget disse? Se, jeg var ladet alene tilbage, disse, hvor har de været?

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

- 22 Så siger Gud Herren: Se, jeg vil løfte min hånd for ikke-jøderne og rejse mit banner for folket, og de skal bringe dine sønner i deres arme, og dine døtre skal de bære på deres skuldre.
- 23 Og konger skal være dine plejefædre, og deres dronninger dine plejemødre. De skal bøje sig ned for dig med ansigtet mod jorden og slikke støvet af dine fødder, og du skal vide, at jeg er Herren; for de, som venter på mig, skal ikke blive gjort til skamme.
- 24 For skal byttet tages fra den mægtige eller de retmæssigt tilfangetagne blive udfriet?
- 25 Men så siger Herren: Selv den mægtiges fanger skal tages bort, og den skrækindjagendes bytte blive udfriet, for jeg vil strides med den, som strides med dig, og dine børn vil jeg redde.
- 26 Jeg vil lade dem, der undertrykker dig, æde deres eget kød; de skal være berusede af deres eget blod som af sød vin; og alt kød skal vide, at jeg, Herren, er din frelser og din forløser, Jakobs Mægtige.

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

Nefis Første Bog 22

- 1 Og se, det skete, at efter at jeg, Nefi, havde læst det, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, kom mine brødre til mig og sagde til mig: Hvad betyder det, som du har læst? Se, skal det forstås som noget, der er åndeligt, som skal ske i ånden og ikke i kødet?
- 2 Og jeg, Nefi, sagde til dem: Se, det blev tilkendegivet for profeten ved Åndens røst; for ved Ånden bliver alt det givet til kende for profeterne, som skal ske med menneskenes børn med hensyn til kødet.
- 3 Derfor er det, som jeg har læst, noget, der vedrører både det timelige og det åndelige; for det synes, som om Israels hus før eller siden skal blive spredt ud over hele jordens overflade og også blandt alle folkeslag.
- 4 Og se, der er mange, som de, der er i Jerusalem, allerede har tabt kendskabet til. Ja, størstedelen af alle stammerne er blevet ført bort; og de er spredt hid og did på øerne i havet; og hvor de er, ved ingen af os, bortset fra at vi ved, at de er blevet ført bort.
- 5 Og siden de blev ført bort, er dette blevet profeteret angående dem og ligeledes angående alle dem, der herefter skal blive spredt og blandet med andre på grund af Israels Hellige; for mod ham vil de forhærde hjertet; derfor skal de blive spredt blandt alle folkeslag og skal blive hadet af alle mennesker.
- 6 Alligevel, efter at de er blevet opfostret af ikke-jøderne, og Herren har løftet sin hånd for ikke-jøderne og rejst dem som et banner, og deres børn er blevet båret i deres arme, og deres døtre er blevet båret på deres skuldre, se det, der her tales om, er timeligt; for således er Herrens pagter med vore fædre; og det henviser til os i kommende dage og også til alle vore brødre, som er af Israels hus.

I Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7 Og det betyder, at den tid kommer, at efter at hele Israels hus er blevet spredt og blandet med andre, at da vil Gud Herren oprejse et mægtigt folkeslag blandt ikke-jøderne, ja, endog på dette lands overflade, og ved dem skal vore efterkommere blive spredt.
- 8 Og efter at vore efterkommere er blevet spredt, vil Gud Herren skride til at udføre et forunderligt værk blandt ikke-jøderne, som skal være af stor værdi for vore efterkommere; derfor bliver det sammenlignet ved, at de bliver opfostret af ikke-jøderne og bliver båret i deres arme og på deres skuldre.
- 9 Og det skal også være af værdi for ikke-jøderne; og ikke alene for ikke-jøderne, men for hele Israels hus ved at tilkendegive himlens Faders pagter med Abraham, da han sagde: I dine efterkommere skal alle jordens stammer blive velsignet.
- 10 Og jeg ønsker, mine brødre, at I skal vide, at alle jordens stammer ikke kan blive velsignet, medmindre han blotter sin arm for øjnene af folkeslagene.
- 11 Gud Herren vil derfor skride til at blotte sin arm for øjnene af alle folkeslagene ved at tilvejebringe sine pagter og sit evangelium for dem, der er af Israels hus.
- 12 Han vil derfor atter føre dem ud af fangenskab, og de skal indsamles til deres arvelande; og de skal blive ført ud af dunkelhed og ud af mørke; og de skal vide, at Herren er deres frelser og deres forløser, Israels Mægtige.
- 13 Og blodet fra den store og vederstyggelige kirke, som er hele jordens skøge, skal komme over deres eget hoved; for de skal føre krig mod hinanden, og sværdet i deres egne hænder skal falde på deres eget hoved, og de skal være berusede af deres eget blod.
- 14 Og ethvert folkeslag, som fører krig mod dig, o Israels hus, skal vendes, det ene imod det andet, og de skal falde i den grav, som de gravede for at lokke Herrens folk i en fælde. Og alle, der kæmper mod Zion, skal blive tilintetgjort, og den store skøge, som har fordrejet Herrens rette veje, ja, den store og vederstyggelige kirke, skal styrte i støvet, og stort skal dens fald være.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

15 For se, siger profeten, den tid kommer hastigt, da Satan ikke længere skal have nogen magt over menneskenes børns hjerte; for den dag kommer snart, da alle de stolte og de, der handler ugudeligt, skal være som stubbe; og den dag kommer, da de skal blive brændt op.

16 For den tid kommer snart, da Guds vredes fylde skal blive udøst over alle menneskenes børn; for han vil ikke tillade, at de ugudelige skal udrydde de retfærdige.

17 Derfor vil han bevare de retfærdige ved sin magt, skønt hans vredes fylde skal komme og de retfærdige blive bevaret, så deres fjender bliver udryddet ved ild. Derfor behøver de retfærdige ikke at frygte; for så siger profeten: De skal blive reddet, skønt det skal ske ved ild.

18 Se, mine brødre, jeg siger jer, at dette snart skal ske; ja, der skal endog komme blod og ild og røgdis; og det skal nødvendigvis ske på denne jords overflade; og det kommer over menneskene i kødet, dersom de forhærder hjertet mod Israels Hellige.

19 For se, de retfærdige skal ikke fortabes; for den tid skal visselig komme, da alle de, der kæmper mod Zion, skal blive forstødt.

20 Og Herren vil visselig berede en vej for sit folk ved at opfylde de ord, som Moses talte, da han sagde: En profet som mig vil Herren jeres Gud lade fremstå for jer; ham skal I høre i alt, hvad end han vil sige til jer. Og det skal ske, at alle de, som ikke vil høre på den profet, skal blive forstødt fra folket.

21 Og se, jeg, Nephi, kundgør for jer, at den profet, som Moses talte om, var Israels Hellige, derfor skal han fælde dom i retfærdighed.

22 Og de retfærdige behøver ikke at frygte, for de er dem, der ikke skal blive udryddet. Men det er Djævelens rige, som skal blive bygget op blandt menneskenes børn, hvilket rige er oprettet blandt dem, der er i kødet —

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

- 23 for den tid skal hastigt komme, da alle kirker, som er bygget op for at få vinding, og alle de, der er bygget op for at få magt over kødet, og de, der er bygget op for at blive populære i verdens øjne, og de, der stræber efter kødets lyst og det, der hører verden til, og efter at gøre al slags ugudelighed; ja, kort sagt, alle de, der hører Djævelens rige til, er dem, der har grund til frygte og bæve og skælve; de er dem, der skal bringes ned i støvet; de er dem, der skal brænde som stubbe; og dette er ifølge profetens ord.
- 24 Og den tid kommer hastigt, da de retfærdige skal blive samlet som kalve i båsen, og Israels Hellige skal regere med herredømme og magt og kraft og stor herlighed.
- 25 Og han samler sine børn fra jordens fire hjørner; og han tæller sine får, og de kender ham, og der skal være én fold og én hyrde; og han skal vogte sine får, og i ham skal de finde græsgange.
- 26 Og på grund af hans folks retfærdighed har Satan ingen magt; derfor kan han ikke blive løst i et tidsrum af mange år, for han har ingen magt over folkets hjerte, for de bor i retfærdighed, og Israels Hellige regerer.
- 27 Og se nu, jeg, Nefi, siger jer, at alt dette skal ske i kødet.
- 28 Men se, alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk skal bo trygt i Israels Hellige, dersom de vil omvende sig.
- 29 Og se, jeg, Nefi, slutter for jeg tør ikke sige mere om dette nu.
- 30 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker, at I skal indse, at det, der er skrevet på bronzepladerne, er sandt; og det vidner om, at et menneske må være lydigt mod Guds befalinger.
- 31 I behøver derfor ikke at tro, at jeg og min far er de eneste, der har vidnet og også undervist i det. Hvis I derfor er lydige mod befalingerne og holder ud til enden, bliver I frelst på den yderste dag. Og således er det. Amen.
- For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.
- And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.
- And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.
- And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.
- And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.
- But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.
- And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.
- Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.
- Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog

En beretning om Lehis død. Nefis brødre sætter sig op imod ham. Herren formaner Nefi til at drage ud i ødemarken. Hans vandringer i ødemarken og så videre.

Nefis Anden Bog 1

- 1 Og se, det skete, at efter at jeg, Nefi, var færdig med at undervise mine brødre, talte også vor far, Lehi, meget til dem og forklarede igen for dem, hvilke store ting Herren havde gjort for dem ved at føre dem ud af Jerusalems land.
- 2 Og han talte til dem om deres oprør på vandene og om Guds barmhjertighed ved at skåne deres liv, så de ikke blev opslugt i havet.
- 3 Og han talte også til dem om det forjættede land, som de havde fået – hvor barmhjertig Herren havde været ved at formane os til at flygte ud af Jerusalems land.
- 4 For se, sagde han, jeg har set et syn, som gør, at jeg ved, at Jerusalem er ødelagt; og var vi blevet i Jerusalem, var vi også omkommet.
- 5 Men, sagde han, til trods for vore trængsler har vi fået et forjættet land, et land, der er mere udsøgt end alle andre lande, et land, som Gud Herren har sluttet pagt med mig om skulle være et land til arvelod for mine efterkommere. Ja, Herren har med en pagt skænket dette land til mig og til mine børn for evigt og også til alle dem, som ved Herrens hånd skulle blive ført ud af andre lande.
- 6 Derfor profeterer jeg, Lehi, i overensstemmelse med tilskyndelsen fra den Ånd, som er i mig, at ingen skal komme til dette land, medmindre de bliver bragt ved Herrens hånd.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Derfor er dette land helliget ham, som han vil bringe. Og dersom de vil tjene ham i overensstemmelse med de befalinger, som han har givet, skal det være et frihedens land for dem; derfor vil de aldrig blive ført ned i fangenskab; hvis det sker, er det på grund af ugudelighed; for hvis ugudeligheden bliver fremherskende, skal landet være forbandet på grund af dem, men for de retfærdige skal det være velsignet for evigt.

8 Og se, det er visdom, at andre folkeslag endnu en tid skal holdes i uvidenhed om dette land; for se, mange folkeslag ville oversvømme landet, så der ikke ville være plads til en arvelod.

9 Og se, jeg, Lehi, har fået et løfte om, at for så vidt som de, som Gud Herren vil føre ud af Jerusalems land, holder hans befalinger, skal de have fremgang på dette lands overflade; og de skal blive holdt skjult for alle andre folkeslag, så de kan tage dette land i besiddelse for sig selv. Og dersom de holder hans befalinger, skal de blive velsignet på dette lands overflade, og der skal ikke være nogen til at forulempe dem eller til at berøve dem deres arveland; og de skal bo trygt for evigt.

10 Men se, når den tid kommer, da de vil synke ned i vantro, efter at de har modtaget så store velsignelser af Herrens hånd – efter at have fået kundskab om skabelsen af jorden og af alle mennesker og have fået kendskab til Herrens store og forunderlige gerninger fra verdens skabelse; efter at have fået overdraget magt til at gøre alt ved tro; efter at have fået alle befalingerne fra begyndelsen og ved hans grænseløse godhed være blevet ført til dette udsøgte forjættede land – se, jeg siger, at hvis den dag kommer, da de vil forkaste Israels Hellige, den sande Messias, deres forløser og deres Gud, se, da skal strafedommene fra ham, som er retfærdig, hvile på dem.

11 Ja, han vil bringe andre folkeslag til dem, og han vil give dem magt, og han vil tage deres ejendomslande fra dem, og han vil lade dem blive spredt og slået.

12 Ja, som slægtled følger slægtled skal der være blodsudgydelser og svære hjemsøgelser blandt dem; derfor ønsker jeg, mine sønner, at I vil huske, ja, jeg ønsker, at I vil lytte til mine ord.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

- 13 O, gid I ville vågne op, vågne op af en dyb søvn, ja, af helvedes søvn og ryste de forfærdelige lænker af, som I er bundet med, som er de lænker, der binder menneskenes børn, så de som fanger bliver ført bort ned i elendighe- dens og jammerens evige kløft.
- 14 Vågn op! Og rejs jer af støvet, og hør ordene fra en skælvende forælder, hvis lemmer I snart skal lægge ned i den kolde og tavse grav, hvorfra ingen vejfarende kan vende tilbage; nogle få dage til, så går jeg al kødets gang.
- 15 Men se, Herren har forløst min sjæl fra helvede; jeg har set hans herlighed, og jeg er i evighed omsluttet af hans kærligheds arme.
- 16 Og jeg ønsker af jer, at I skal huske at iagttage Herrens lovbud og retsregler. Se, det har været min sjæls ængstelse fra begyndelsen.
- 17 Mit hjerte har været tynget af sorg fra tid til anden, for jeg har frygtet, at Herren jeres Gud på grund af jeres hjertes hårdhed skulle lade sin vredes fylde komme over jer, så I skulle blive fordømt og udryddet for evigt;
- 18 eller at der skulle komme en forbandelse over jer i et tidsrum af mange slægtled, og at I skulle blive hjemsogt med sværd og med hungersnød og blive hadet og ført af sted i overensstemmelse med Djævelens fangenskab.
- 19 O, mine sønner, måtte dette ikke komme over jer, men måtte I blive et af Herren udsøgt og begunstiget folk. Men se, hans vilje ske, for hans veje er retfærdighed for evigt.
- 20 Og han har sagt: For så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet, men for så vidt som I ikke vil holde mine befalinger, skal I blive forstødt fra min nærhed.
- 21 Og se, for at min sjæl må glæde sig over jer, og for at mit hjerte må forlade denne verden med glæde på grund af jer, for at jeg ikke skal blive lagt i graven af bedrøvelse og sorg, så rejs jer af støvet, mine sønner, og vær mænd, og vær beslutsomme med ét sind og med ét hjerte, forenede i alt, så I ikke skal komme ned i fangenskab;
- O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.
- Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveller can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.
- But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.
- And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.
- My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;
- Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.
- O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.
- And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.
- And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

- 22 så I ikke skal blive forbandet med en hård forbandelse, og også så I ikke skal pådrage jer en retfærdig Guds mishag til fordærvelse, ja, den evige fordærvelse af både sjælen og legemet.
- 23 Vågn op, mine sønner! Ifør jer retfærdighedens rustning. Ryst de lænker af, som I er bundet med, og kom ud af dunkelhed, og rejs jer af støvet.
- 24 Sæt jer ikke mere op imod jeres bror, hvis syner har været herlige, og som har holdt befalingerne fra det tidspunkt, da vi forlod Jerusalem, og som har været et redskab i Guds hånd til at føre os over til det forjættede land; for var det ikke for ham, var vi omkommet af sult i ørkenen; alligevel forsøgte I at berøve ham livet, ja, og han har lidt megen sorg på grund af jer.
- 25 Og jeg frygter og bæver overordentlig meget på grund af jer, for at han atter skal komme til at lide; for se, I har beskyldt ham for, at han stræbte efter magt og myndighed over jer, men jeg ved, at han ikke har stræbt efter magt eller myndighed over jer, men han har stræbt efter at herliggøre Gud og efter jeres eget evige velfærd.
- 26 Og I har murret, fordi han har været ligefrem over for jer. I siger, at han har brugt skarphed; I siger, at han har været vred på jer, men se, hans skarphed var skarpheden i Guds ords kraft, der var i ham; og det, som I kalder vrede, var sandheden i overensstemmelse med den, som er i Gud, og som han ikke kunne holde tilbage, idet han ligefremt gav jer jeres syndighed til kende.
- 27 Og det måtte nødvendigvis være sådan, at Guds kraft måtte være med ham, så han endog kunne befale jer, så I måtte adlyde. Men se, det var ikke ham, men det var Herrens Ånd, som var i ham, som åbnede hans mund til mæle, så han ikke kunne lukke den.
- 28 Og se, min søn Laman og også Lemuel og Sam og også mine sønner, som er Ismaels sønner, se, hvis I vil lytte til Nefis røst, skal I ikke fortabes. Og hvis I vil lytte til ham, efterlader jeg jer en velsignelse, ja, endog min første velsignelse.
- 29 Men hvis I ikke vil lytte til ham, tager jeg min første velsignelse bort, ja, endog min velsignelse, og den skal hvile på ham.

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

30 Og nu, Zoram, taler jeg til dig. Se, du er Labans tjener; alligevel er du blevet ført ud af Jerusalems land, og jeg ved, at du er min søn Nefi en sand ven for evigt.

31 Og se, fordi du har været trofast, skal dine efterkommere blive velsignet sammen med hans efterkommere, så de længe må bo i velstand på dette lands overflade; og intet undtagen ugudelighed blandt dem skal hindre eller forstyrre deres velstand på dette lands overflade for evigt.

32 Hvis I derfor holder Herrens befalinger, har Herren helliget dette land til sikkerhed for dine efterkommere sammen med min søns efterkommere.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

Nefis Anden Bog 2

- 1 Og nu, Jakob, taler jeg til dig. Du er min førstefødte i min modgangs dage i ørkenen. Og se, i din barndom har du lidt trængsler og megen sorg på grund af dine brøders voldsomhed.
- 2 Alligevel, Jakob, min førstefødte i ørkenen, kender du Guds storhed, og han vil hellige dine trængsler til gavn for dig.
- 3 Derfor vil din sjæl blive velsignet, og du skal bo trygt sammen med din bror Nephi; og dine dage skal tilbringes i din Guds tjeneste. Derfor ved jeg, at du er forløst på grund af din forlørsers retfærdighed; for du har set, at han i tidens fylde kommer for at bringe frelse til mennesker.
- 4 Og du har set hans herlighed i din ungdom; derfor er du velsignet ligesom dem, som han skal betjene i kødet; for Ånden er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt. Og vejen er beredt siden menneskets fald, og frelse er fri.
- 5 Og menneskene er tilstrækkeligt undervist til, at de kender godt fra ondt. Og loven er givet til menneskene. Og ved loven er intet kød retfærdiggjort, eller ved loven er menneskene forstødt. Ja, ved den timelige lov blev de forstødt; og ved den åndelige lov fortabes de også fra det, som er godt, og bliver elendige for evigt.
- 6 Derfor udvirkes forløsningen i og ved den hellige Messias, for han er fuld af nåde og sandhed.
- 7 Se, han bringer sig selv som et offer for synd for at opfylde lovens formål for alle dem, der har et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd, og for ingen andre kan lovens krav blive opfyldt.
- 8 Af hvor stor vigtighed er det derfor ikke at gøre dette kendt for jordens indbyggere, så de kan vide, at der intet kød er, som kan bo i Guds nærhed, uden at det er ved den hellige Messias' fortjenester og barmhjertighed og nåde, han som nedlægger sit liv med hensyn til kødet og tager det igen ved Åndens kraft, så han ved at være den første, som skal opstå, kan tilvejebringe de dødes opstandelse.
- 9 Derfor er han førstegrøden for Gud, således at han skal gå i forbøn for alle menneskenes børn; og de, der tror på ham, skal blive frelst.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

10 Og på grund af hans forbøn for alle, kommer alle mennesker til Gud; derfor står de i hans nærhed for at blive dømt af ham i overensstemmelse med den sandhed og hellighed, som er i ham. Og se, formålet med loven, som den Hellige har givet for at tildele den straf, der er knyttet dertil, hvilken straf, der er knyttet dertil, er i modsætning til den lykke, der er knyttet dertil, for at opfylde formålet med forsoningen –

11 for det må nødvendigvis være sådan, at der er en modsætning i alt. Hvis det ikke var således, min førstefødte i ørkenen, kunne retfærdighed ikke tilvejebringes, ej heller ugudelighed, hverken hellighed eller elendighed, hverken godt eller ondt. Alt måtte derfor nødvendigvis være en sammenblanding i ét; hvis det derfor var ét hele, måtte det nødvendigvis forblive som dødt, idet det hverken havde liv eller død, eller forgængelighed eller uforgængelighed, lykke eller elendighed, hverken følelse eller ufølsomhed.

12 Derfor måtte det nødvendigvis være blevet skabt som noget, der er uden værdi; derfor ville der ikke have været noget formål med sigtet med dets skabelse. Derfor måtte dette nødvendigvis tilintetgøre Guds visdom og hans evige formål og også Guds kraft og barmhjertighed og retfærdighed.

13 Og hvis I siger, at der ingen lov findes, da siger I også, at der ingen synd findes. Hvis I siger, at der ingen synd findes, da siger I også, at der ingen retfærdighed findes. Og hvis der ingen retfærdighed findes, da findes der ingen lykke. Og findes der hverken retfærdighed eller lykke, da findes der heller ingen straf eller elendighed. Og hvis dette ikke findes, så findes der ingen Gud. Og findes der ingen Gud, da er vi ikke til, heller ikke jorden; for intet kunne være blevet skabt, hverken til selv at handle eller til at være genstand for handling; derfor måtte alt være svundet bort.

14 Og nu, mine sønner, taler jeg dette til jer til jeres gavn og lærdom; for der findes en Gud, og han har skabt alt, både himlene og jorden og alt, der er i dem, både det, der selv handler, og det, som er genstand for handling.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

15 Og for at opnå sine evige formål med hensyn til mennesket, efter at han havde skabt vore første forældre og dyrene på marken og fuglene i luften, ja, kort sagt alt det, der er skabt, måtte det nødvendigvis være sådan, at der var en modsætning, nemlig den forbudne frugt i modsætning til livets træ, den ene sød og den anden bitter.

16 Derfor gav Gud Herren mennesket, at det skulle handle selv. Og se, mennesket kunne ikke handle selv, medmindre det skulle ske, at det blev tilskyndet af den ene eller den anden.

17 Og ifølge det, som jeg har læst, må jeg, Lehi, nødvendigvis tro, at en af Guds engle, ifølge det der står skrevet, var faldet fra himlen; derfor blev han en djævel, fordi han havde stræbt efter det, der var ondt for Gud.

18 Og fordi han var faldet fra himlen og var blevet elendig for evigt, stræbte han også efter at gøre hele menneskeslægten elendig. Derfor sagde han til Eva, ja, den gamle slange, der er Djævelen, der er fader til alle løgne, derfor sagde han: Spis af den forbudne frugt, og I skal ikke dø, men I skal blive som Gud, idet I kender godt og ondt.

19 Og efter at Adam og Eva havde spist af den forbudne frugt, blev de drevet ud af Edens have for at dyrke jorden.

20 Og de har fået børn, ja, al jordens slægt.

21 Og menneskenes børns dage blev forlænget efter Guds vilje, for at de kunne omvende sig, mens de var i kødet; derfor blev deres tilstand en prøvetilstand, og deres tid blev forlænget i overensstemmelse med de befalinger, som Gud Herren gav menneskenes børn. For han gav befaling om, at alle mennesker skulle omvende sig; for han viste alle mennesker, at de var fortabte på grund af deres forældres overtrædelse.

22 Og se nu, hvis Adam ikke havde overtrådt, ville han ikke være faldet, men han ville være forblevet i Edens have. Og alt, der var blevet skabt, måtte være forblevet i den samme tilstand, som det var i, efter at det var blevet skabt, og det måtte være forblevet for evigt og ingen ende have haft.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

23 Og de ville ingen børn have fået; derfor ville de være forblevet i en tilstand af uskyld uden at have glæde, for de kendte ikke til elendighed; uden at gøre noget godt, for de kendte ikke til synd.

24 Men se, alt er blevet gjort i hans visdom, han som ved alt.

25 Adam faldt, for at menneskene kunne blive til, og menneskene er til for at kunne nyde glæde.

26 Og Messias kommer i tidens fylde, for at han kan forløse menneskenes børn fra faldet. Og fordi de er forløst fra faldet, er de blevet frie for evigt, idet de kender godt fra ondt, til selv at handle og ikke være genstand for handling med undtagelse af lovens straf på den store og yderste dag i overensstemmelse med de befalinger, som Gud har givet.

27 Derfor er menneskene frie, hvad angår kødet; og alt, der er tjenligt for mennesket, er givet dem. Og de er frie til at vælge frihed og evigt liv ved alle menneskers store formidler, eller til at vælge fangenskab og død i overensstemmelse med Djævelens fangenskab og magt; for han stræber efter at gøre alle mennesker elendige, ligesom han selv er.

28 Og se, mine sønner, jeg ønsker, at I skal se hen til den store formidler og lytte til hans store befalinger og være trofaste mod hans ord og vælge evigt liv efter hans hellige Ånds vilje

29 og ikke vælge evig død efter kødets vilje og det onde, som er deri, og som giver Djævelens ånd magt til at tage jer til fange, til at føre jer ned til helvede, så han kan regere over jer i sit eget rige.

30 Jeg har talt disse få ord til jer alle, mine sønner, i min prøves sidste dage, og jeg har valgt den gode del i overensstemmelse med profetens ord. Og jeg har intet andet formål end jeres sjæls evigtvarende velfærd. Amen.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 3

- 1 Og nu taler jeg til dig, Josef, min sidstfødte. Du blev født i mine trængslers ørken, ja, i min største sorgs dage fødte din mor dig.
- 2 Og måtte Herren også hellige dette land, der er et yderst udsøgt land, for dig som din arvelod og dine efterkommeres arvelod sammen med dine brødre til sikkerhed for jer for evigt, dersom I holder Israels Helliges befalinger.
- 3 Og se, Josef, min sidstfødte, som jeg har ført ud af mine trængslers ørken, måtte Herren velsigne dig for evigt, for dine efterkommere skal ikke helt blive udryddet.
- 4 For se, du er mine lænders frugt, og jeg er efterkommer af Josef, som blev ført til Egypten som fange. Og store var Herrens pagter, som han sluttede med Josef.
- 5 Og se, Josef så i sandhed vor dag. Og han fik et løfte fra Herren om, at Gud Herren af hans lænders frugt vil le oprejse en retfærdig gren for Israels hus, ikke Messias, men en gren, der ville blive brækket af, men alligevel blive husket i Herrens pagter, så Messias skulle give sig tilkende for dem i de sidste dage på magtfuld vis for at føre dem ud af mørket frem i lyset – ja, ud af skjult mørke og ud af fangenskab til frihed.
- 6 For Josef vidnede i sandhed, da han sagde: En seer, som skal være en udsøgt seer for mine lænders frugt, skal Herren min Gud lade fremstå.
- 7 Ja, Josef sagde i sandhed: Så siger Herren til mig: En udsøgt seer vil jeg lade fremstå af dine lænders frugt, og han skal være højt agtet blandt dine lænders frugt. Og til ham vil jeg give befaling om, at han skal udføre et værk for dine lænders frugt, hans brødre, som skal være af stor værdi for dem, ja, derved at det bringer dem til kundskab om de pagter, som jeg har sluttet med dine fædre.
- 8 Og jeg vil give ham den befaling, at han ikke skal udføre noget andet værk end det værk, som jeg vil befale ham. Og jeg vil gøre ham mægtig i mine øjne, for han skal udføre mit værk.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

- 9 Og han skal være mægtig ligesom Moses, som jeg har sagt, jeg vil lade fremstå for jer til at udfri mit folk, o Israels hus.
- 10 Og Moses vil jeg lade fremstå til at udfri dit folk af Egyptens land.
- 11 Men en seer vil jeg lade fremstå af dine lænders frugt, og ham vil jeg give magt til at bringe mit ord ud til dine lænders efterkommere – og ikke alene til at udbringe mit ord, siger Herren, men til at overbevise dem om mit ord, som allerede skal være udbredt blandt dem.
- 12 Derfor skal dine lænders frugt skrive, og Judas lænders frugt skal skrive, og det, der skal skrives af dine lænders frugt, og også det, der skal skrives af Judas lænders frugt, skal vokse sammen for at gendrive falske lærdomme og afskaffe stridigheder og skabe fred blandt dine lænders frugt og bringe dem til kundskab om deres fædre i de sidste dage og også til kundskab om mine pagter, siger Herren.
- 13 Og fra svaghed skal han blive gjort stærk på den dag, da mit værk skal begynde blandt hele mit folk for at genrejse dig, o Israels hus, siger Herren.
- 14 Og således profeterede Josef, idet han sagde: Se, den seer vil Herren velsigne, og de, der forsøger at slå ham ihjel, skal blive udsløttet; for dette løfte, som jeg har fået af Herren angående mine lænders frugt, skal blive opfyldt. Se, jeg er sikker på opfyldelsen af dette løfte.
- 15 Og han skal få navn efter mig; og det skal være efter hans fars navn. Og han skal være ligesom jeg; for det, som Herren skal udføre ved hans hånd, skal ved Herrens kraft bringe mit folk til frelse.
- 16 Ja, således profeterede Josef: Jeg er sikker på dette, ligesom jeg er sikker på løftet om Moses; for Herren har sagt til mig: Jeg vil bevare dine efterkommere for evigt.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

17 Og Herren har sagt: Jeg vil lade en Moses fremstå, og jeg vil give ham magt i en stav, og jeg vil give ham dømmekraft til at skrive. Dog vil jeg ikke løse hans tunge, så han skal tale meget, for jeg vil ikke gøre ham mægtig i tale. Men jeg vil skrive min lov for ham med min egen hånds finger, og jeg vil udpege en talsmand for ham.

18 Og Herren sagde også til mig: Jeg vil lade én fremstå for dine lænders frugt, og jeg vil udpege ham en talsmand. Og jeg, se, jeg vil give ham, at han skal skrive optegnelsen om dine lænders frugt til dine lænders frugt, og dine lænders talsmand skal kundgøre den.

19 Og de ord, som han skal skrive, skal være de ord, som efter min visdom er tjenlige til at udgå til dine lænders frugt. Og det skal være, som om dine lænders frugt havde råbt til dem fra støvet; for jeg kender deres tro.

20 Og de skal råbe fra støvet, ja, omvendelse til deres brødre, selv efter at mange slægtled er gået bort. Og det skal ske, at deres råb skal udgå, ja, i overensstemmelse med deres ords enkelhed.

21 På grund af deres tro skal deres ord udgå af min mund til deres brødre, som er dine lænders frugt; og svagheden af deres ord vil jeg gøre stærk ved deres tro til erindring om min pagt, som jeg sluttede med dine fædre.

22 Og se nu, min søn Josef, på denne måde profeterede min fordums fader.

23 Derfor er du på grund af denne pagt velsignet; for dine efterkommere skal ikke blive udryddet, for de skal lytte til bogens ord.

24 Og der skal fremstå en mægtig blandt dem, som skal gøre meget godt, både i ord og i handling, idet han er et redskab i Guds hænder til med overordentlig stor tro at gøre mægtige undere og gøre det, der er stort i Guds øjne, ved at tilvejebringe megen genrejsning for Israels hus og for dine brødres efterkommere.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

25 Og se, velsignet er du, Josef. Se, du er lille; lyt derfor til din bror Nefis ord, og det skal blive gjort for dig i overensstemmelse med de ord, som jeg har talt. Husk din døende fars ord. Amen.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 4

- 1 Og nu taler jeg, Nefi, angående de profetier, som min far har talt om angående Josef, som blev ført til Egypten.
- 2 For se, han profeterede i sandhed angående alle sine efterkommere. Og de profetier, som han skrev, der er ikke mange større end dem. Og han profeterede angående os og vore kommende slægter, og de er skrevet på bronzepladerne.
- 3 Og se, efter at min far var færdig med at tale angående Josefs profetier, kaldte han Lamans børn, hans sønner og hans døtre, til sig og sagde til dem: Se, mine sønner og mine døtre, som er min førstefødtes sønner og døtre, jeg ønsker, at I skal låne øre til mine ord.
- 4 For Gud Herren har sagt: For så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet, og for så vidt som I ikke vil holde mine befalinger, skal I blive forstødt fra min nærhed.
- 5 Men se, mine sønner og mine døtre, jeg kan ikke gå i min grav, uden at jeg efterlader en velsignelse over jer; for se, jeg ved, at hvis I bliver opdraget i den vej, I bør gå, vil I ikke vige fra den.
- 6 Hvis I derfor bliver forbandet, se, da efterlader jeg min velsignelse over jer, så forbandelsen kan blive taget fra jer og jeres forældre blive holdt ansvarlige.
- 7 Som følge af min velsignelse vil Gud Herren derfor ikke tillade, at I fortages; derfor vil han være barmhjertig mod jer og mod jeres efterkommere for evigt.
- 8 Og det skete, efter at min far var færdig med at tale til Lamans sønner og døtre, at han fik Lemuels sønner og døtre ført frem for sig.
- 9 Og han talte til dem og sagde: Se, mine sønner og mine døtre, som er min næstældste søns sønner og døtre, se, jeg efterlader jer den samme velsignelse, som jeg efterlod Lamans sønner og døtre; derfor skal I ikke blive helt udryddet, men til sidst skal jeres efterkommere blive velsignet.
- 10 Og det skete, at da min far var færdig med at tale til dem, se, da talte han til Ismaels sønner, ja, og til hele hans husstand.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

11 Og efter at han var færdig med at tale til dem, talte han til Sam og sagde: Velsignet er du og dine efterkommere, for du skal arve landet ligesom din bror Nefi. Og dine efterkommere skal regnes sammen med hans efterkommere; og du skal være ligesom din bror, og dine efterkommere ligesom hans efterkommere, og du skal være velsignet alle dine dage.

12 Og det skete, efter at min far Lehi havde talt til hele sin husstand i overensstemmelse med sit hjertes følelser og Herrens Ånd, som var i ham, blev han gammel. Og det skete, at han døde og blev begravet.

13 Og det skete, at ikke mange dage efter hans død blev Laman og Lemuel og Ismaels sønner vrede på mig på grund af Herrens irettesættelser.

14 For jeg, Nefi, blev drevet til at tale til dem i overensstemmelse med hans ord. For jeg havde talt meget til dem, og ligeså havde min far før sin død, og mange af disse udtalelser er skrevet på mine andre plader; for en mere historisk del er skrevet på mine andre plader.

15 Og på disse skriver jeg det, der rører sig i min sjæl, og mange af de skrifter, der er indgraveret på bronzepladerne. For min sjæl fryder sig ved skrifterne, og mit hjerte grunder over dem, og jeg skriver dem til mine børns lærdom og gavn.

16 Se, min sjæl fryder sig ved det, der hører Herren til; og mit hjerte grunder bestandig over det, som jeg har set og hørt.

17 Men uagtet Herrens store godhed ved at vise mig sine store og forunderlige gerninger udbryder mit hjerte alligevel: O, jeg elendige menneske! Ja, mit hjerte sørger på grund af mit kød; min sjæl bedrøves på grund af mine overtrædelser.

18 Jeg er omringet på grund af de fristelser og de synder, som så let omklammer mig.

19 Og når jeg ønsker at fryde mig, sukker mit hjerte på grund af mine synder; alligevel ved jeg, til hvem jeg har sat min lid.

20 Min Gud har været min støtte, han har ført mig gennem mine trængsler i ørkenen; og han har bevaret mig på det store dybs vande.

21 Han har fyldt mig med sin kærlighed, ja, som om mit kød skulle fortæres.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

22 Han har beskæmmet mine fjender og fået dem til at skælve for mig.

23 Se, han har hørt mit råb om dagen og har givet mig kundskab ved syner ved nattetide.

24 Og om dagen har jeg vokset mig frimodig i indtrængende bøn til ham, ja, min røst har jeg opsendt til det høje; og engle kom ned og betjente mig.

25 Og på hans Ånds vinger er mit legeme blevet borttrykket til overordentlig høje bjerge. Og mine øjne har set store ting, ja, for store for mennesket; derfor fik jeg påbud om, at jeg ikke måtte skrive dem.

26 O, når jeg nu har set så store ting, og når Herren i sin velvilje over for menneskenes børn er kommet til menneskene i så megen barmhjertighed, hvorfor skulle mit hjerte da græde og min sjæl dvæle i sorgens dal og mit kød svinde hen og min styrke svækkes på grund af mine trængsler?

27 Og hvorfor skulle jeg give efter for synd på grund af mit kød? Ja, hvorfor skulle jeg give efter for fristelser, så den Onde får plads i mit hjerte til at tilintetgøre min fred og plage min sjæl? Hvorfor er jeg vred på grund af min fjende?

28 Vågn op, min sjæl! Vær ikke længere modløs på grund af synd. Fryd dig, o mit hjerte, og giv ikke længere plads for min sjæls fjende.

29 Bliv ikke igen vred på grund af mine fjender. Svæk ikke min styrke på grund af mine trængsler.

30 Fryd dig, o mit hjerte, og anrøb Herren og sig: O Herre, jeg vil prise dig for evigt; ja, min sjæl vil frydes i dig, min Gud og min frelses klippe.

31 O Herre, vil du forløse min sjæl? Vil du udfri mig af mine fjenders hænder? Vil du lade mig gyse ved synet af synd?

32 Måtte helvedes porte bestandig være lukkede for mig, fordi mit hjerte er sønderknust og min ånd er angertfuld! O Herre, luk ikke din retfærdigheds porte for mig, så jeg kan vandre på stien i den dybe dal, så jeg kan holde mig nøje på den jævne vej.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

33 O Herre, vil du omslutte mig i din retfærdigheds kappe! O Herre, vil du berede en vej for min flugt fra mine fjender! Vil du gøre min sti ret for mig! Læg ingen anstødssten på min vej – men vil du rydde min vej for mig og ikke spærre min vej, men mine fjenders veje.

34 O Herre, jeg har sat min lid til dig, og jeg vil sætte min lid til dig for evigt. Jeg vil ikke sætte min lid til armen af kød, for jeg ved, at forbandet er den, der sætter sin lid til armen af kød. Ja, forbandet er den, der sætter sin lid til mennesket eller gør kød til sin arm.

35 Ja, jeg ved, at Gud vil give gavmildt til den, som beder. Ja, min Gud vil give mig, hvis jeg ikke beder om noget forkert; derfor vil jeg opløfte min røst til dig, ja, jeg vil anråbe dig, min Gud, min retfærdigheds klippe. Se, min røst skal for evigt stige op til dig, min klippe og min evige Gud. Amen.

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 5

- 1 Se, det skete, at jeg, Nefi, anr bte Herren min Gud meget p  grund af mine br dres vrede.
- 2 Men se, deres vrede mod mig tiltog i en s dan grad, at de fors gte at ber ve mig livet.
- 3 Ja, de murrede imod mig og sagde: Vor yngre bror har sat sig for at herske over os, og vi har haft mange pr velser p  grund af ham; se, lad os derfor sl  ham ihjel, s  vi ikke mere skal plages p  grund af hans ord. For se, vi vil ikke have ham til at v re vor hersker, for det tilkommer os, som er de  ldre br dre, at herske over dette folk.
- 4 Se, jeg skriver ikke p  disse plader alle de ord, som de murrede imod mig, men det er mig nok at sige, at de fors gte at ber ve mig livet.
- 5 Og det skete, at Herren formanede mig til, at jeg, Nefi, skulle drage bort fra dem og flygte ud i  demarken, og ogs  alle dem, der ville f lge mig.
- 6 Derfor skete det, at jeg, Nefi, tog min familie med mig og ogs  Zoram og hans familie og Sam, min  ldre bror, og hans familie og Jakob og Josef, mine yngre br dre, og ogs  mine s stre og alle dem, der ville drage med mig. Og alle de, der ville drage med mig, var dem, der troede p  Guds advarsler og  benbaringer; derfor lyttede de til mine ord.
- 7 Og vi tog vore telte, og hvad der ellers var muligt for os, og rejste i  demarken i et tidsrum af mange dage, og efter at vi havde rejst i et tidsrum af mange dage, slog vi vore telte op.
- 8 Og mit folk  nskede, at vi skulle give stedet navnet Nefi; derfor kaldte vi det for Nefi.
- 9 Og alle de, der var med mig, besluttede sig for at kalde sig Nefis folk.
- 10 Og vi bestr bte os p  at holde Herrens retsregler og lovbud og befalinger i alt i henhold til Moseloven.
- 11 Og Herren var med os; og vi havde overordentlig stor fremgang, for vi s ede fr , og vi h stede igen i overflod. Og vi begyndte at opdr tte flokke og h rde og dyr af enhver art.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, inso-much that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

12 Og jeg, Nefi, havde også medbragt de optegnelser, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, og også den kugle, eller det kompas, der blev beredt til min far ved Herrens hånd ifølge det, der er skrevet.

13 Og det skete, at vi begyndte at have overordentlig stor fremgang og at mangfoldiggøre os i landet.

14 Og jeg, Nefi, tog Labans sværd og lavede mange sværd som det, for at det folk, der nu blev kaldt lamanitter, ikke på nogen måde skulle overfalde os og udrydde os; for jeg kendte deres had til mig og mine børn og dem, der blev kaldt for mit folk.

15 Og jeg lærte mit folk at bygge bygninger og at arbejde med al slags træ og jern og kobber og bronze og stål og guld og sølv og kostbart malm, som fandtes i stor rigelighed.

16 Og jeg, Nefi, byggede et tempel; og jeg opførte det på samme måde som Salomos tempel, bortset fra at det ikke blev bygget af så mange kostbarheder, for de fandtes ikke i landet, hvorfor det ikke kunne bygges ligesom Salomos tempel. Men måden, det blev opført på, var ligesom Salomos tempel; og udførelsen af det var overordentlig fin.

17 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, fik mit folk til at være flittige og til at arbejde med deres hænder.

18 Og det skete, at de ønskede, at jeg skulle være deres konge. Men jeg, Nefi, nærede ønske om, at de ikke skulle have nogen konge; alligevel gjorde jeg for dem i overensstemmelse med, hvad der stod i min magt.

19 Og se, Herrens ord, som han talte angående mine brødre, at jeg skulle være deres hersker og deres lærer, var blevet opfyldt. For se, jeg havde været deres hersker og deres lærer i overensstemmelse med Herrens befaling indtil den tid, da de forsøgte at berøve mig livet.

20 For se, Herrens ord blev opfyldt, som han talte til mig, idet han sagde: For så vidt som de ikke vil lytte til dine ord, skal de blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed. Og se, de blev forstødt fra hans nærhed.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

- 21 Og han havde ladet forbandelsen komme over dem, ja, en hård forbandelse på grund af deres ugudelighed. For se, de havde forhærdet hjertet mod ham, så de var blevet som flint; for se, da de var hvide og overordentlig skønne og tiltalende, og for at de ikke skulle være tillok-kende for mit folk, lod Gud Herren dem få en mørk hud.
- 22 Og så siger Gud Herren: Jeg vil lade dem være frastø-dende for dit folk, medmindre de omvender sig fra deres ugudelighed.
- 23 Og forbandet skal være efterkommerne af den, der blander sig med deres efterkommere, for de skal blive forbandet, ja, med den samme forbandelse. Og Herren talte det, og det blev gjort.
- 24 Og på grund af deres forbandelse, som hvilede på dem, blev de et dovent folk, fulde af fortræd og lumsk-hed, og de jagede efter rovdyr i ødemarken.
- 25 Og Gud Herren sagde til mig: De skal være en svøbe for dine efterkommere til at vække dem til erindring om mig; og for så vidt som de ikke vil huske mig og lytte til mine ord, skal de tugte dem, lige indtil de bliver udryd-det.
- 26 Og det skete, at jeg, Nefi, indviede Jakob og Josef, for at de skulle være præster og lærere over mit folks land.
- 27 Og det skete, at vi levede på lykkelig vis.
- 28 Og der var gået tredive år fra den tid, da vi forlod Jerusalem.
- 29 Og jeg, Nefi, havde hidtil ført optegnelserne om mit folk på mine plader, som jeg havde lavet.
- 30 Og det skete, at Gud Herren sagde til mig: Lav andre plader, og du skal indgravere meget på dem, som er godt i mine øjne, til gavn for dit folk.
- 31 For derfor at være lydige mod Herrens befalinger gik jeg, Nefi, hen og lavede disse plader, på hvilke jeg har indgraveret dette.
- And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.
- And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall re-pent of their iniquities.
- And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.
- And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.
- And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.
- And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teach-ers over the land of my people.
- And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.
- And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.
- And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.
- And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.
- Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the com-mandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

- 32 Og jeg har indgraveret det, der er behageligt for Gud.
Og hvis mit folk finder behag i det, der hører Gud til, da vil de finde behag i mine indgraveringer, som findes på disse plader.
- 33 Og hvis mit folk ønsker at kende den mere detaljerede del af mit folks historie, må de granske mine andre plader.
- 34 Og det er mig nok at sige, at der var gået fyrre år, og vi havde allerede haft krige og stridigheder med vore brødre.
- And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.
And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.
- And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.
- And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

Nefis Anden Bog 6

- 1 De ord, som Jakob, Nefis bror, talte til Nefis folk:
- 2 Se, mine elskede brødre, jeg, Jakob, som er blevet kaldet af Gud og ordineret i overensstemmelse med hans hellige orden, og som er blevet indviet af min bror Nefi, som I betragter som konge, eller beskytter, og som I forlader jer på med hensyn til sikkerhed, se, I ved, at jeg har talt overordentlig meget til jer.
- 3 Alligevel taler jeg til jer igen, for jeg nærer ønske for jeres sjæls velfærd. Ja, min ængstelse for jer er stor; og I ved selv, at det har den altid været. For jeg har formanet jer med al flid, og jeg har lært jer min fars ord; og jeg har talt til jer angående alt, som er skrevet, fra verdens skabelse.
- 4 Og se nu, jeg ønsker at tale til jer angående det, der er, og det, der skal komme; jeg vil derfor læse Esajas' ord for jer. Og det er de ord, som min bror har ønsket af mig, at jeg skulle tale til jer. Og jeg taler til jer for jeres egen skyld, for at I må lære og herliggøre jeres Guds navn.
- 5 Og se, de ord, som jeg skal læse, er dem, som Esajas talte angående hele Israels hus; derfor kan de anvendes på jer, for I er af Israels hus. Og der er meget, som er blevet talt ved Esajas, der kan anvendes på jer, fordi I er af Israels hus.
- 6 Og se, dette er ordene: Så siger Gud Herren: Se, jeg vil løfte min hånd for ikke-jøderne og rejse mit banner for folket, og de skal bringe dine sønner i deres arme, og dine døtre skal de bære på deres skuldre.
- 7 Og konger skal være dine plejefædre, og deres dronninger dine plejemødre. De skal bøje sig ned for dig med deres ansigter mod jorden og slikke støvet af dine fødder, og du skal vide, at jeg er Herren; for de, som venter på mig, skal ikke blive gjort til skamme.
- 8 Og nu vil jeg, Jakob, tale noget om disse ord. For se, Herren har vist mig, at de, der var i Jerusalem, hvorfra vi kom, er blevet slået ihjel og ført bort som fanger.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

- 9 Alligevel har Herren vist mig, at de skal vende tilbage igen. Og han har også vist mig, at Gud Herren, Israels Hellige, skal give sig til kende for dem i kødet; og efter at han har givet sig til kende, skal de piske ham og korsfæste ham ifølge ordene fra den engel, som fortalte mig det.
- 10 Og efter at de har forhærdet hjertet og gjort nakken stiv mod Israels Hellige, se, da skal Israels Helliges strafdomme komme over dem. Og den dag kommer, da de skal blive slået og plaget.
- 11 For se, efter at de er blevet drevet hid og did, for således siger englen, skal mange blive plaget i kødet, og det skal ikke blive dem tilladt at omkomme på grund af de trofastes bønner; de skal blive spredt og slået og hadet; alligevel vil Herren være barmhjertig mod dem, så de, når de kommer til kundskab om deres forløser, igen skal indsamles til deres arvelande.
- 12 Og velsignede er ikke-jøderne, de om hvem profeten har skrevet; for se, dersom de vil omvende sig og ikke kæmpe mod Zion og ikke forener sig med den store og vederstyggelige kirke, skal de blive frelst; for Gud Herren vil opfylde sine pagter, som han har sluttet med sine børn, og af denne årsag har profeten skrevet dette.
- 13 For se, de, der kæmper mod Zion og Herrens pagtsfolk, skal slikke støvet af deres fødder, og Herrens folk skal ikke blive gjort til skamme. For Herrens folk er dem, der venter på ham; for de venter stadig på Messias' komme.
- 14 Og se, ifølge profetens ord vil Messias igen for anden gang sætte sig for at bringe dem tilbage; derfor vil han give sig til kende for dem i magt og stor herlighed, så deres fjender bliver udryddet, når den dag kommer, da de vil tro på ham; og ingen, som tror på ham, vil han udrydde.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

- 15 Og de, som ikke tror på ham, skal blive udryddet både ved ild og ved uvejr og ved jordskælv og ved blodsudgydelser og ved pest og ved hungersnød. Og de skal vide, at Herren er Gud, Israels Hellige.
- 16 For skal byttet tages fra den mægtige eller den retmæssigt tilfangetagne blive udfriet?
- 17 Men så siger Herren: Selv den mægtiges fanger skal tages bort, og den skrækindjagendes bytte blive udfriet; for den mægtige Gud skal udfri sit pagtsfolk. For så siger Herren: Jeg vil strides med dem, der strides med dig –
- 18 og jeg vil lade dem, der undertrykker dig, æde deres eget kød; og de skal være berusede af deres eget blod som af sød vin; og alt kød skal vide, at jeg, Herren, er din frelser og din forløser, Jakobs Mægtige.
- And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.
- For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?
- But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—
- And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

Nefis Anden Bog 7

- 1 Ja, for så siger Herren: Har jeg sendt dig bort, eller har jeg forstødt dig for evigt? For så siger Herren: Hvor er jeres mors skilsmissebrev? Til hvem har jeg sendt dig bort, eller til hvem af mine kreditorer har jeg solgt jer? Ja, til hvem har jeg solgt jer? Se, på grund af jeres misgerninger har I solgt jer selv, og på grund af jeres overtrædelser er jeres mor blevet sendt bort.
- 2 Derfor var der, da jeg kom, ingen; da jeg kaldte, ja, var der ingen til at svare. O Israels hus, er min hånd blevet forkortet på nogen måde, så den ikke kan forløse, eller har jeg ingen kraft til at udfri? Se, ved min trussel tørrer jeg havet ud, jeg gør deres floder til en ørken og får deres fisk til at stinke, fordi vandene er tørret ud, og de dør af tørst.
- 3 Jeg klæder himlene i sort, og jeg indhyller dem i sækkelærred.
- 4 Gud Herren har givet mig de lærdes tunge, for at jeg kunne vide at tale et ord i rette tid til dig, o Israels hus. Når I er trætte, vækker han mit øre morgen efter morgen. Han vækker mit øre til at høre som de lærde.
- 5 Gud Herren har åbnet mit øre, og jeg var ikke genstridig, ej heller vendte jeg mig bort.
- 6 Jeg bød min ryg til den, som slog mig, og vendte mine kinder til dem, som rykkede skægget af. Jeg skjulte ikke mit ansigt for skændsel og spyttten.
- 7 For Gud Herren vil hjælpe mig, derfor bliver jeg ikke beskæmmet. Derfor har jeg gjort mit ansigt hårdt som flint, og jeg ved, at jeg ikke bliver gjort til skamme.
- 8 Og Herren er nær, og han retfærdiggør mig. Hvem vil strides med mig? Lad os stå frem sammen. Hvem er min modstander? Lad ham komme mig nær, så vil jeg slå ham med min munds styrke.
- 9 For Gud Herren vil hjælpe mig. Og alle de, der fordømmer mig, se, de skal alle ældes som en klædning, og møllet skal æde dem.
- 10 Hvem er der blandt jer, som frygter Herren, som adlyder hans tjeners røst, som vandrer i mørke og ikke har noget lys?

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

11 Se, alle I, som tænder ild, og som omgiver jer med gnister, vandr i lyset af jeres ild og af de gnister, som I har tændt. Dette skal I få af min hånd: I skal lægge jer i sorg.

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

Nefis Anden Bog 8

- 1 Lyt til mig, I, der stræber efter retfærdighed. Se hen til den klippe, som I er hugget ud af, og til det hul i bruddet, som I er gravet op af.
- 2 Se hen til Abraham, jeres fader, og til Sara, hende, der fødte jer, for ham alene kaldte jeg og velsignede ham.
- 3 For Herren skal trøste Zion; han vil trøste alle hendes øde steder, og han vil gøre hendes ødemark som Eden og hendes ørken som Herrens have. Fryd og glæde skal findes deri, taksigelse og lovsang.
- 4 Lyt til mig, mit folk, og lån mig øre, o mit folkeslag, for en lov skal udgå fra mig, og jeg vil lade min ret stå som et lys for folkene.
- 5 Min retfærdighed er nær, min frelse er sendt ud, og min arm skal dømme folket. Øerne skal vente på mig, og til min arm skal de sætte deres lid.
- 6 Løft jeres øjne op mod himlene, og se på jorden under jer, for himlene skal forsvinde som røg, og jorden skal ældes som en klædning; og de, der bor derpå, skal dø på samme måde. Men min frelse skal vare evigt, og min retfærdighed skal ikke høre op.
- 7 Lyt til mig, I, der kender retfærdighed, det folk, i hvis hjerte jeg har skrevet min lov, frygt ikke for menneskers bebrejdelser, og vær heller ikke ræd for deres hån.
- 8 For møllet skal æde dem som en klædning, og larven skal æde dem som uld. Men min retfærdighed skal vare evigt, og min frelse fra slægtled til slægtled.
- 9 Vågn op, vågn op! Ifør dig styrke, du Herrens arm; vågn op, som i fordums tid. Er du ikke ham, som har sønderhugget Rahab og gennemboret dragen?
- 10 Er du ikke ham, der har tørret havet ud, det store dybs vande; der har gjort havets dyb til en vej, som de løskøbte kunne gå over?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

11 For se, Herrens forløste skal vende tilbage og komme til Zion med sang, og evigtvarende fryd og hellighed skal være over deres hoved; og de skal få glæde og fryd, sorg og sørgeudbrud skal flygte bort.

12 Jeg er ham, ja, jeg er ham, som trøster jer. Se, hvem er du, at du skulle være bange for mennesker, som skal dø, og for menneskesønnen, som skal blive som græs?

13 Og at du glemmer Herren din skaber, som har udspændt himlene og lagt jordens grundvold, at du bestandig hver dag har frygtet undertrykkerens rasen, som om han var rede til at ødelægge? Og hvor er undertrykkerens rasen?

14 Den fangne landflygtige skynder sig, for at han kan blive løst, og for at han ikke skal dø i fangehullet, og for at han ej heller skal mangle brød.

15 Men jeg er Herren din Gud, hvis bølger brusede; Hærskarers Herre er mit navn.

16 Og jeg har lagt mine ord i din mund og har skjult dig i skyggen af min hånd, for at jeg kunne tilså himlen og lægge jordens grundvold og sige til Zion: Se, du er mit folk.

17 Vågn op, vågn op, rejs dig, o Jerusalem! Du, som af Herrens hånd har drukket af hans rasens bæger – du har drukket bundfaldet af frygtens bæger til sidste dråbe –

18 og der er ingen til at lede hende blandt alle de sønner, hun har født, ej heller nogen, som tager hende ved hånden af alle de sønner, hun har opdraget.

19 Disse to sønner er kommet til dig; hvem skal have ondt af dig – din ødelæggelse og undergang og hungersnøden og sværdet – og ved hvem skal jeg trøste dig?

20 Dine sønner er besvimet, undtagen disse to; de ligger for enden af alle gaderne; som en vild tyr i et net er de fulde af Herrens rasen, din Guds revselse.

21 Hør nu derfor dette, du plagede og berusede, men ikke af vin.

22 Så siger din Herre: Herren og din Gud taler sit folks sag; se, jeg har taget frygtens bæger ud af din hånd, bundfaldet af min rasens bæger; du skal aldrig mere drikke det igen.

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury— thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

23 Men jeg vil give det i hånden på dem, der plager dig, og som har sagt til din sjæl: Bøj dig, så vi kan gå hen over dig! Og du har lagt dit legeme ned som jorden og som gaden for dem, der gik over.

24 Vågn op, vågn op! Ifør dig din styrke, o Zion; ifør dig dine smukke klæder, o Jerusalem, du hellige by; for fra nu af skal de uomskårne og de urene aldrig mere komme ind i dig.

25 Ryst støvet af dig; rejs dig, tag sæde, o Jerusalem; løs-gør dig fra dine halslænker, o du fangne Zions datter.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the un-circumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

Nefis Anden Bog 9

- 1 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg har læst dette, for at I må kende til Herrens pagter, som han har indgået med hele Israels hus –
- 2 at han har talt til jøderne ved sine hellige profeters mund lige fra begyndelsen og op, fra slægtled til slægtled, indtil den tid kommer, da de skal blive bragt tilbage til Guds sande kirke og fold, da de skal blive indsamlet til deres arvelande og skal blive bosat i alle deres forjættede lande.
- 3 Se, mine elskede brødre, jeg taler dette til jer, for at I kan fryde jer og løfte hovedet for evigt på grund af de velsignelser, som Gud Herren skal skænke jeres børn.
- 4 For jeg ved, at I, mange af jer, har søgt meget efter at få kundskab om det tilkommende; derfor ved jeg, at I ved, at vort kød må svinde hen og dø; alligevel skal vi i vort legeme se Gud.
- 5 Ja, jeg ved, at I ved, at han i legemet skal vise sig for dem ved Jerusalem, hvorfra vi kom; for det er nødvendigt, at det skulle ske blandt dem; for det påhviler den store skaber, at han lader sig blive mennesket underkastet i kødet og dør for alle mennesker, for at alle mennesker kan blive ham underkastet.
- 6 For eftersom døden er blevet alle mennesker til del for at opfylde den store skabers barmhjertige plan, må der nødvendigvis være en kraft til opstandelse, og opstandelsen må nødvendigvis blive mennesket til del på grund af faldet; og faldet skete på grund af overtrædelse; og fordi mennesket blev faldent, blev de forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.
- 7 Derfor må det nødvendigvis være en altomfattende forsoning – medmindre det var en altomfattende forsoning, kunne denne forgængelighed ikke iføre sig uforgængelighed. Derfor måtte den første straffedom, som kom over mennesket, nødvendigvis være blevet stående med uendelig varighed. Og hvis det var så, måtte dette kød have lagt sig for at rådne og for at hensmuldre i dets moder jord for aldrig mere at opstå.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

- 8 O, hvor stor er ikke Guds visdom, hans barmhjertighed og nåde! For se, hvis kødet aldrig mere skulle opstå, måtte vor ånd blive underkastet den engel, som faldt fra den evige Guds nærhed og blev Djævelen, for aldrig mere at opstå.
- 9 Og vor ånd måtte være blevet ligesom ham, og vi bliver djævle, engle for en djævel, for at blive udelukket fra vor Guds nærhed og forblive hos løgnens fader i elendighed, ligesom han selv, ja, hos det væsen, som forledte vore første forældre, og som forvandler sig til næsten at være lysets engel og vækker menneskenes børn til hemmelige sammensværgelser om mord og alle slags hemmelige gerninger af mørke.
- 10 O, hvor stor er ikke vor Guds godhed, han, som bereder en vej for vor flugt fra dette forfærdelige uhyres greb; ja, dette uhyre, døden og helvede, som jeg kalder legemets død og også åndens død.
- 11 Og på grund af vor Guds, den Israels Helliges, vej til udfrielse skal denne død, som jeg har talt om, og som er den timelige, frigive sine døde, hvilken død er graven.
- 12 Og denne død, som jeg har talt om, og som er den åndelige død, skal frigive sine døde, hvilken åndelig død er helvede; derfor skal død og helvede frigive deres døde, og helvede skal frigive sine fangne ånder, og graven skal frigive sine fangne legemer, og menneskenes legeme og ånd skal blive bragt tilbage til hinanden; og det sker ved den Israels Helliges opstandelses kraft.
- 13 O, hvor stor er ikke vor Guds plan! For på den anden side skal Guds paradis frigive de retfærdiges ånder, og graven frigive de retfærdiges legemer, og ånden og legemet bliver bragt tilbage til hinanden igen, og alle mennesker bliver uforgængelige og udødelige, og de er levende sjæle og har en fuldkommen kundskab, ligesom vi i kødet, bortset fra at vor kundskab skal være fuldkommen.
- 14 Derfor skal vi have en fuldkommen kundskab om al vor skyld og vor urenhed og vor nøgenhed; og de retfærdige skal have en fuldkommen kundskab om deres glæde og deres retfærdighed og være ikklædt renhed, ja, endog retfærdighedens dragt.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

15 Og det skal ske, at når alle mennesker er overgået fra denne første død til livet, i og med at de er blevet udødelige, skal de stå foran Israels Helliges dommersæde; og så kommer dommen, og så skal de dømmes i overensstemmelse med Guds hellige dom.

16 Og så vist som Herren lever, for Gud Herren har talt det, og det er hans evige ord, som ikke kan forgå, skal de, der er retfærdige, forblive retfærdige, og de, der er tilsølede, forblive tilsølede; derfor, de, der er tilsølede, er Djævelen og hans engle; og de skal gå bort til evigtvarende ild, som er beredt for dem; og deres pinsler er som en sø af ild og svovl, hvis flammer stiger op for evigt og altid og ikke har nogen ende.

17 O, hvor stor er ikke vor Guds storhed og retfærdighed! For han fuldbyrder alle sine ord, og de er udgået af hans mund, og hans lov skal blive opfyldt.

18 Men se, de retfærdige, Israels Helliges hellige, de, der har troet på Israels Hellige, de, der har udholdt verdens kors og foragtet skammen ved det, de skal arve Guds rige, som var beredt for dem fra verdens grundlæggelse, og deres glæde skal være fuldkommen for evigt.

19 O, hvor stor er ikke vor Guds, Israels Helliges, barmhjertighed! For han udfrier sine hellige fra dette forfærdelige uhyre, Djævelen og døden og helvede og den sø af ild og svovl, som er uendelig pinsel.

20 O, hvor stor er ikke vor Guds hellighed! For han kender alt, og der findes intet, uden at han kender det.

21 Og han kommer til verden, så han kan frelse alle mennesker, hvis de vil lytte til hans røst; for se, han lider alle menneskers smerter, ja, hver eneste levende skabnings smerter, både mænds, kvinders og børns, som hører til Adams slægt.

22 Og han lider dette, for at opstandelsen kan blive alle mennesker til del, for at alle kan stå foran ham på den store dag, dommens dag.

23 Og han befaler alle mennesker, at de skal omvende sig og blive døbt i hans navn, idet de har fuldkommen tro på Israels Hellige, ellers kan de ikke blive frelst i Guds rige.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

- 24 Og hvis de ikke vil omvende sig og tro på hans navn og blive døbt i hans navn og holde ud til enden, skal de blive fordømt; for Gud Herren, Israels Hellige, har talt det.
- 25 For se, han har givet en lov; og hvor der ingen lov er givet, er der ingen straf; og hvor der ingen straf er, er der ingen fordømmelse; og hvor der ingen fordømmelse er, har Israels Helliges barmhjertighed krav på dem på grund af forsoningen; for de er udfriet ved hans kraft.
- 26 Og forsoningen tilfredsstiller hans retfærdigheds krav for alle dem, der ikke har fået loven, så de bliver udfriet fra det forfærdelige uhyre, død og helvede, og Djævelen og søen af ild og svovl, som er en uendelig pinsel; og de bliver bragt tilbage til den Gud, som gav dem ånde, som er Israels Hellige.
- 27 Men ve den, som har fået loven givet, ja, som har alle Guds befalinger, ligesom vi, og som overtræder dem og spilder sin prøves dage, for forfærdelig er hans tilstand!
- 28 O, hvor snedig er ikke den Ondes plan! O, menneskers forfængelighed og skrøbelighed og dårskab! Når de er lærde, tror de, at de er vise, og de lytter ikke til Guds råd, for de tilsidesætter det, fordi de mener, at de selv ved bedst, derfor er deres visdom dårskab, og den gavner dem intet. Og de skal fortabes.
- 29 Men at være lærd er godt, hvis man lytter til Guds råd.
- 30 Men ve de rige, som er rige på det, der hører verden til. For fordi de er rige, foragter de de fattige, og de følger de sagtmødige, og deres hjerte hænger ved deres skatte, derfor er deres skat deres gud. Og se, deres skatte skal også forgå sammen med dem.
- 31 Og ve de døve, som ikke vil høre; for de skal fortabes.
- 32 Ve de blinde, som ikke vil se; for de skal også fortabes.
- 33 Ve de uomskårne af hjertet, for en kundskab om deres syndighed skal ramme dem på den yderste dag.
- 34 Ve løgneren, for han skal styrtes ned til helvede.
- And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.
- Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.
- For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.
- But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!
- O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.
- But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.
- But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.
- And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.
- Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.
- Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.
- Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

35 Ve morderen, som forsætligt dræber, for han skal dø.

36 Ve dem, som begår utugtigheder, for de skal nedstyrttes til helvede.

37 Ja, ve dem, som dyrker afguder, for Djævelen over alle djævle fryder sig over dem.

38 Og kort sagt, ve alle dem, som dør i deres synder, for de skal vende tilbage til Gud og se hans ansigt og forblive i deres synder.

39 O, mine elskede brødre, husk, hvor forfærdeligt det er at synde mod den hellige Gud, og også hvor forfærdeligt det er at give efter for den snediges tillokkelser. Husk, at være kødeligt sindet er død, og at være åndeligt sindet er evigt liv.

40 O, mine elskede brødre, lån øre til mine ord. Husk Israels Helliges storhed. Sig ikke, at jeg har talt hårde ord mod jer; for hvis I gør det, håner I sandheden; for jeg har talt jeres skabers ord. Jeg ved, at sandhedens ord er hårde mod al urenhed; men de retfærdige frygter dem ikke, for de elsker sandheden og bliver ikke rystet.

41 O da, mine elskede brødre, kom til Herren, den Hellige. Husk, at hans stier er retfærdige. Se, vejen for mennesket er trang, men den ligger foran ham i lige retning, og portens vogter er Israels Hellige; og han beskæftiger ingen tjener der; og der er ingen anden vej end ad porten, for han kan ikke bedrages, for Gud Herren er hans navn.

42 Og den, der banker på, for ham vil han lukke op; og de vise og de lærde og de, der er rige, og som er opblæste på grund af deres lærdom og deres visdom og deres rigdom – ja, det er dem, som han foragter; og medmindre de kaster dette fra sig og betragter sig selv som tåber for Gud og stiger ned i ydmyghedens dyb, lukker han ikke op for dem.

43 Men det, der hører de vise og de kloge til, skal skjules for dem for evigt – ja, den lykke, der er beredt for de helige.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

44 O, mine elskede brødre, husk mine ord. Se, jeg tager mine klæder af, og jeg ryster dem foran jer; jeg beder min frelses Gud om, at han vil se på mig med sit altseende øje; derfor skal I erfare på den yderste dag, når alle mennesker skal dømmes efter deres gerninger, at Israels Gud var vidne til, at jeg rystede jeres misgerninger af min sjæl, og at jeg står skinnende for ham og er fri for jeres blod.

45 O, mine elskede brødre, vend jer bort fra jeres synder, afryst hans lænker, han som gerne vil binde jer fast; kom til den Gud, som er jeres frelses klippe.

46 Bered jeres sjæl til den herlige dag, da retfærdighed skal blive tildelt de retfærdige, ja, dommens dag, så I ikke skal vige tilbage med forfærdelig frygt, så I ikke til fuldkommenhed skal erindre jeres forfærdelige skyld og blive drevet til at udbryde: Hellige, hellige er dine straffedomme, o Herre, Gud, Almægtige – men jeg kender min skyld; jeg overtrådte din lov, og mine overtrædelser er mine; og Djævelen har fået mig, så jeg er et bytte for hans forfærdelige elendighed.

47 Men se, mine brødre, er det nødvendigt, at jeg vækker jer til en forfærdelig erkendelse af dette? Ville jeg oprive jeres sjæl, hvis jeres sind var rent? Ville jeg være ligefrem over for jer i overensstemmelse med sandhedens ligefremhed, hvis I var befriet for synd?

48 Se, hvis I var hellige, ville jeg tale til jer om hellighed; men da I ikke er hellige, og I anser mig for at være lærer, er det nødvendigt, at jeg lærer jer om følgerne af synd.

49 Se, min sjæl afskyr synd, og mit hjerte fryder sig ved retfærdighed, og jeg vil prise min Guds hellige navn.

50 Kom, mine brødre, enhver som tørster, kom I til vandene; og den, der ingen penge har, kom, køb og spis; ja, kom, køb vin og mælk uden penge og uden betaling.

51 Brug derfor ikke penge på det, som ikke er af nogen værdi, ej heller jeres arbejdskraft på det, som ikke kan tilfredsstille. Lyt omhyggeligt til mig, og husk de ord, som jeg har talt; og kom til Israels Hellige, og tag for jer af det, som ikke forgår, ej heller kan blive fordærvet, og lad jeres sjæl fryde sig ved fedme.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

52 Se, mine elskede brødre, husk jeres Guds ord; bed bestandigt til ham om dagen, og giv tak til hans hellige navn om natten. Lad hjertet fryde sig.

53 Og se, hvor store er ikke Herrens pagter, og hvor stor er ikke hans velvilje over for menneskenes børn; og på grund af sin storhed og sin nåde og barmhjertighed har han lovet os, at vore efterkommere ikke fuldstændig skal blive udryddet med hensyn til kødet, men at han vil bevare dem; og i kommende slægter skal de blive en retfærdig gren for Israels hus.

54 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ville gerne tale mere til jer, men i morgen vil jeg kundgøre jer resten af mine ord. Amen.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 10

- 1 Og nu taler jeg, Jakob, til jer igen, mine elskede brødre, angående denne retfærdige gren, som jeg har talt om.
- 2 For se, de løfter, som vi har fået, er løfter til os med hensyn til kødet; derfor, skønt det er blevet mig vist, at mange af vore børn skal omkomme i kødet på grund af vantrø, vil Gud alligevel være barmhjertig mod mange; og vore børn skal blive ført tilbage, så de kan antage det, der vil give dem den sande kundskab om deres forløser.
- 3 For se, som jeg sagde til jer, er det nødvendigt, at Kristus – for i nat sagde englen til mig, at dette skulle være hans navn – skal komme blandt jøderne, blandt dem, der er den mere ugudelige del af verden; og de vil korsfæste ham – for således påhviler det vor Gud, og der er intet andet folkeslag på jorden, der ville korsfæste deres Gud.
- 4 For hvis de mægtige mirakler blev udført blandt andre folkeslag, ville de omvende sig og erfare, at han er deres Gud.
- 5 Men på grund af præstelist og syndighed gør de, der er i Jerusalem, nakken stiv mod ham, så han bliver korsfæstet.
- 6 På grund af deres syndighed skal ødelæggelser, hungersnød, pest og blodsudgydelse derfor komme over dem; og de, der ikke bliver slået ihjel, bliver spredt blandt alle folkeslag.
- 7 Men se, så siger Gud Herren: Når den dag kommer, da de vil tro på mig, at jeg er Kristus, da har jeg sluttet pagt med deres fædre om, at de i kødet skal bringes tilbage på jorden til deres arvelande.
- 8 Og det skal ske, at de skal blive indsamlet fra deres lange adspjaltelse, fra øerne i havet og fra jordens fire hjørner; og de ikke-jødiske folkeslag skal blive mægtige i mine øjne, siger Gud, derved at de fører dem tilbage til deres arvelande.
- 9 Ja, ikke-jødernes konger skal være plejefædre for dem, og deres dronninger skal blive plejemødre; derfor er Herrens løfter til ikke-jøderne store, for han har talt det, og hvem kan bestride det?

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

10 Men se, dette land, siger Gud, skal være dit arveland, og ikke-jøderne skal blive velsignet i landet.

11 Og dette land skal være et frihedens land for ikke-jøderne, og i landet skal der ingen konger være, som skal blive oprejst for ikke-jøderne.

12 Og jeg vil befæste dette land mod alle andre folkeslag.

13 Og den, der kæmper mod Zion, skal omkomme, siger Gud.

14 For den, der lader en konge fremstå mod mig, skal omkomme, for jeg, Herren, himlens konge, skal være deres konge, og jeg vil for evigt være et lys for dem, der hører mine ord.

15 For se, af den grund at mine pagter kan blive opfyldt, som jeg har sluttet med menneskenes børn om, hvad jeg vil gøre for dem, mens de er i kødet, må jeg nødvendigvis tilintetgøre hemmelige gerninger af mørke og af mord og af vederstyggeligheder.

16 Derfor skal den, der kæmper mod Zion, både jøde og ikke-jøde, både træl og fri, både mand og kvinde, omkomme; for det er dem, der er hele jordens skøge; for de, der ikke er for mig, er mod mig, siger vor Gud.

17 For jeg vil opfylde mine løfter, som jeg har givet menneskenes børn om, hvad jeg vil gøre for dem, mens de er i kødet.

18 For se, mine elskede brødre, så siger vor Gud: Jeg vil hjemløse dine efterkommere ved ikke-jødernes hånd; alligevel vil jeg blødgøre ikke-jødernes hjerte, så de skal blive ligesom en far for dem; derfor skal ikke-jøderne blive velsignet og regnet blandt Israels hus.

19 For se, jeg vil hellige dette land for evigt for dine efterkommere og for dem, der skal regnes blandt dine efterkommere, som deres arveland; for det er et udsøgt land, siger Gud til mig, mere end alle andre lande, derfor ønsker jeg, at alle mennesker, som bor deri, skal tilbede mig, siger Gud.

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

20 Og se, mine elskede brødre, da vi ser, at vor barmhjer-
tige Gud har givet os så stor kundskab om dette, lad os
da huske ham og aflægge vore synder og ikke hænge med
hovedet, for vi er ikke forstødt; alligevel er vi blevet dre-
vet ud af vort arveland; men vi er blevet ført til et bedre
land, for Herren har gjort havet til vor sti, og vi er på en
ø i havet.

21 Men store er Herrens løfter til dem, som er på øerne i
havet; for se, eftersom der siges øer, må der nødvendig-
vis være flere end denne, og de er også beboet af vore
brødre.

22 For se, Gud Herren har fra tid til anden efter sin vilje
og sit behag ført nogle af Israels hus bort. Og se nu,
Herren husker alle dem, der er blevet brækket af, derfor
husker han også os.

23 Fat derfor mod, og husk, at I er frie til selv at handle –
til at vælge vejen til evigtvarende død eller vejen til evigt
liv.

24 Derfor, mine elskede brødre, forlig jer med Guds vilje
og ikke med Djævelens og kødets vilje; og husk, at det,
efter at I er blevet forligt med Gud, alene er i og ved
Guds nåde, at I bliver frelst.

25 Måtte Gud derfor oprejse jer fra døden ved opstan-
delsens kraft og også fra evigtvarende død ved forsonin-
gens kraft, så I må blive modtaget i Guds evige rige, så I
må prise ham ved guddommelig nåde. Amen.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our mer-
ciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning
these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our
sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast
off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of
our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land,
for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon
an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them
who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says
isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are
inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to
time from the house of Israel, according to his will and
pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all
them who have been broken off, wherefore he remem-
bereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that
ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of
everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile your-
selves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil
and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled
unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of
God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the
power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting
death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be re-
ceived into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may
praise him through grace divine. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 11

- 1 Og se, Jakob talte meget mere til mit folk på det tidspunkt, alligevel er det kun dette, jeg har ladet nedskrive; for det, som jeg har skrevet, er tilstrækkeligt for mig.
- 2 Og nu skriver jeg, Nefi, flere af Esajas' ord, for min sjæl fryder sig ved hans ord. For jeg vil anvende hans ord på mit folk, og jeg vil sende dem ud til alle mine børn, for han så sandelig min forløser, ligesom jeg har set ham.
- 3 Og min bror Jakob har også set ham, ligesom jeg har set ham; derfor vil jeg sende deres ord ud til mine børn for at bevise for dem, at mine ord er sande. For se, ved tre vidners ord vil jeg stadfæste mit ord, har Gud sagt. Alligevel sender Gud flere vidner, og han beviser alle sine ord.
- 4 Se, min sjæl fryder sig ved at bevise sandheden om Kristi komme for mit folk; for med dette sigte er Moseloven blevet givet, og alt det, som Gud har givet mennesket fra verdens begyndelse, er sindbilleder på ham.
- 5 Og min sjæl fryder sig også ved Herrens pagter, som han har sluttet med vore fædre, ja, min sjæl fryder sig ved hans nåde og ved hans retfærdighed og magt og barmhjertighed ved den store og evige plan til udfrielse fra døden.
- 6 Og min sjæl fryder sig ved at bevise for mit folk, at medmindre Kristus kommer, må alle mennesker fortales.
- 7 For hvis der ikke er nogen Kristus, er der ingen Gud, og hvis der ikke er nogen Gud, er vi ikke til; for der kunne ikke have været nogen skabelse. Men der er en Gud, og han er Kristus, og han kommer i sin egen tids fylde.
- 8 Og se, jeg skriver nogle af Esajas' ord, for at de blandt mit folk, der ser disse ord, må blive opløftet i hjertet og fryde sig på alle menneskers vegne. Se, dette er ordene, og I kan anvende dem på jer selv og på alle mennesker.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficient me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

Nefis Anden Bog 12

- 1 Det ord, som Esajas, Amos' søn, så angående Juda og Jerusalem:
- 2 Og det skal ske i de sidste dage, når det bjerg, hvorpå Herrens hus ligger, skal være grundfæstet på bjergenes top, og skal være ophøjet over højene, og alle folkeslag skal strømme dertil.
- 3 Og mange folk skal drage af sted og sige: Kom I, og lad os drage op til Herrens bjerg, til Jakobs Guds hus; og han vil lære os om sine veje, og vi vil vandre på hans stier; for fra Zion skal loven udgå, og Herrens ord fra Jerusalem.
- 4 Og han skal dømme mellem folkeslagene og skal irtettesætte mange folk, og de skal smede deres sværd om til plovjern og deres spyd om til podeknive – folkeslag skal ikke løfte sværd mod folkeslag, ej heller skal de mere blive oplært til krig.
- 5 O Jakobs hus, kom I, og lad os vandre i Herrens lys; ja, kom, for I er alle faret vild, hver og en på sine ugudelige veje.
- 6 Derfor, o Herre, har du svigtet dit folk, Jakobs hus, fordi de er fyldt af østens væsen og lytter til sandsigere ligesom filistrene, og de finder behag i de fremmedes børn.
- 7 Deres land er også fuldt af sølv og guld, ej heller er der nogen ende på deres skatte; deres land er også fuldt af heste, ej heller er der nogen ende på deres stridsvogne.
- 8 Deres land er også fuldt af afguder; de tilbeder deres egne hænders værk, det, som deres egne fingre har lavet.
- 9 Og den jævne mand bøjer sig ikke, og den mægtige herre ydmyger sig ikke; tilgiv ham derfor ikke.
- 10 O, I ugudelige, søg ind mellem klipperne, og skjul jer i støvet, for frygt for Herren og hans vældes herlighed skal ramme jer.
- 11 Og det skal ske, at menneskets hovne blikke skal blive ydmyget, og menneskers hovmod skal blive bøjet ned, og Herren alene skal være ophøjet på den dag.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks— nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

- 12 For Hærskarers Herres dag kommer snart over alle folkeslag, ja, over hver og en; ja, over de stolte og hovne og over enhver, der er indbildsk, og han skal blive fornedret.
- 13 Ja, og Herrens dag skal komme over alle Libanons cedre, for de er høje og indbildske, og over alle Bashans ege.
- 14 Og over alle de høje bjerge og over alle højene og over alle de folkeslag, som er indbildske, og over ethvert folk.
- 15 Og over ethvert højt tårn og over enhver befæstet mur.
- 16 Og over alle skibene på havet og over alle Tarshishs skibe og over alle behagelige udsyn.
- 17 Og menneskets hovenhed skal bøjes, og menneskers hovmod skal blive fornedret, og Herren alene skal være ophøjet på den dag.
- 18 Og afguderne skal han aldeles afskaffe.
- 19 Og de skal søge ind i hullerne i klipperne og ned i hullerne i jorden, for frygt for Herren skal komme over dem, og hans vældes herlighed skal ramme dem, når han rejser sig for at ryste jorden skrækkeligt.
- 20 På den dag skal et menneske kaste sine afguder af sølv og sine afguder af guld, som han selv har lavet for at tilbede dem, hen til muldvarpene og til flagermusene;
- 21 for at søge ind i klippespalterne og op på toppen af de forrevne klipper; for frygt for Herren skal komme over dem, og hans herligheds væld skal ramme dem, når han rejser sig for at ryste jorden skrækkeligt.
- 22 Forlad jer ikke længere på mennesket, hvis ånde er i hans næsebor, for hvad er han at regne for?
- For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.
- Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;
- And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;
- And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;
- And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.
- And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- And the idols he shall utterly abolish.
- And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;
- To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

Nefis Anden Bog 13

- 1 For se, Herren, Hærskarers Herre, fjerner fra Jerusalem og fra Juda støtten og staven, hele staven af brød og hele støtten af vand –
- 2 den mægtige og krigeren, dommeren og profeten og den kloge og oldingen;
- 3 anføreren for de halvtreds og den ansete mand og rådgiveren og den trolddomskyndige og den veltalende.
- 4 Og jeg vil give dem børn, som skal være deres fyrster, og småbørn skal herske over dem.
- 5 Og folk skal blive undertrykt, den ene af den anden og enhver af sin næste, barnet skal stolt sætte sig op imod den gamle og den foragtede mod den fornemme.
- 6 Når en mand griber fat i sin bror af sin fars hus og siger: Du har klæder, vær du vor hersker, og lad ikke denne ødelæggelse komme under din hånd –
- 7 på den dag skal han sværge og sige: Jeg vil ikke være læge, for i mit hus er der hverken brød eller klæder, gør mig ikke til hersker over folket.
- 8 For Jerusalem er ødelagt, og Juda er faldet, fordi deres tunger og deres gerninger har været imod Herren for at opildne hans herligheds øjne.
- 9 Deres ansigtsudtryk vidner imod dem og kundgør, at deres synd er som Sodomas, og de kan ikke skjule den. Ve deres sjæl, for de har belønnet sig selv med ondt.
- 10 Sig til de retfærdige, at det er vel med dem, for de skal nyde frugten af deres gerninger.
- 11 Ve de ugudelige, for de skal fortages, for deres hænders løn skal komme over dem!
- 12 Og mit folk bliver undertrykt af børn, og kvinder hersker over det. O mit folk, de, der leder dig, får dig til at fejle og tilintetgøre dine stiers vej.
- 13 Herren rejser sig for at tale sit folks sag og står frem for at dømme folket.
- 14 Herren vil afsige dom over sit folks oldinge og dets fyrster; for I har opædt vingården og rovet fra de fattige i jeres huse.

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

15 Hvad mener I? I sønderslår mit folk og kværner de
fattiges ansigter, siger Herren, Hærskarers Gud.

16 Endvidere siger Herren: Fordi Zions døtre er hovne
og går med knejsende nakke og med lystne øjne og går
med trippende gang og laver en ringlende lyd med deres
fødder –

17 så vil Herren ramme Zions døtre med sår på deres is-
se, og Herren vil blotte deres blusel.

18 På den dag skal Herren borttage pragten af deres
ringlende smykker og hækledede huer og runde smykker,
der ligner måner;

19 halskæderne og armbåndene og slørene,
20 bindehuerne, smykkerne om benene, hårbåndene,
lugtedåserne og øreringene,
21 fingerringene og næsesmykkerne;
22 skifteklæderne og kåberne og sjalerne og hårnålene,
23 spejlene og det fine linned og hætterne og slørene.

24 Og det skal ske, at der i stedet for vellugt skal være
stank; og i stedet for et bælte en flænge, og i stedet for
velsat hår skaldethed og i stedet for et bryststykke en
sæk om livet, et brændemærke i stedet for skønhed.

25 Dine mænd skal falde for sværdet, og dine mægtige i
krigen.

26 Og hendes porte skal klage og sørge, og hun selv skal
være ribbet for alt og sidde på jorden.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and
grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of
Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks
and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and
making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown
of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will
discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of
their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like
the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the
headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles,
and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the
veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there
shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead
of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a
girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the
war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall
be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

Nefis Anden Bog 14

- 1 Og på den dag skal syv kvinder gribe fat i én mand og si-ge: Vi vil spise vort eget brød og gå med vort eget tøj, blot vi må kaldes ved dit navn for at fjerne vor vanære.
- 2 På den dag skal Herrens gren være skøn og herlig, jor-dens frugt fortrinlig og smuk for dem af Israel, der er undsluppet.
- 3 Og det skal ske, at de, der er tilbage i Zion og forbliver i Jerusalem, skal kaldes hellige, enhver, som er indskre-vet blandt de levende i Jerusalem,
- 4 når Herren har vasket Zions døtres tilsølethed bort og har skyllet Jerusalems blod ud fra dets midte ved dommens ånd og ved lutringens ånd.
- 5 Og over hver eneste bolig på Zions bjerg og over hen-des forsamlinger vil Herren skabe en sky og røg om da-gen og skæret af en flammende ild om natten; for der skal være et værn over hele Zions herlighed.
- 6 Og der skal være en hytte som skygge mod heden om dagen og som et tilflugtssted og et ly mod storm og mod regn.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

Nefis Anden Bog 15

- 1 Og da vil jeg synge en sang til min højtelskede om min elskede, der handler om hans vingård. Min højtelskede har en vingård på en meget frugtbar høj.
- 2 Og han indhegnede den og fjernede stenene derfra og plantede den til med de mest udsøgte vinstokke og byggede et tårn i midten af den og lavede også en vinperse deri; og han så frem til, at den skulle frembringe druer, og den frembragte vilde druer.
- 3 Og se: O Jerusalems indbyggere og Judas mænd, døm, beder jeg jer, mellem mig og min vingård.
- 4 Hvad mere kunne der være gjort ved min vingård, som jeg ikke har gjort i den? Derfor, da jeg så frem til, at den skulle frembringe druer, frembragte den vilde druer.
- 5 Og hør nu, jeg vil fortælle jer, hvad jeg vil gøre ved min vingård: jeg vil fjerne hegnet om den, og den skal blive ædt op, og jeg vil nedrive muren om den, og den skal blive trådt ned;
- 6 og jeg vil lægge den øde; den skal hverken beskæres eller graves; men der skal vokse torn og tjørn op; jeg vil også befale skyerne, at de ikke regner regn på den.
- 7 For Hærskarers Herres vingård er Israels hus, og Judas folk er hans herlige plante; og han ventede ret og se, undertrykkelse; retfærdighed, men se, der lød et skrig.
- 8 Ve dem, der lægger hus til hus, indtil der ikke er mere land tilbage, så de må bosætte sig alene midt på jorden.
- 9 I mine ører sagde Hærskarers Herre: Sandelig, mange huse skal blive lagt øde, og store og skønne byer være uden indbyggere.
- 10 Ja, ti tønder land vingård skal give én bat, og én omer såsæd skal give én efa.
- 11 Ve dem, der står tidligt op om morgenen, så de kan jage efter stærke drikke, som bliver ved indtil natten og blusser af vin!
- 12 Og harpen og lutten, tamburinen og fløjten og vin hører til deres gilde; men de har ikke øje for Herrens gerning og ænser heller ikke hans hænders værk.

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

13 Derfor er mit folk blevet ført i fangenskab, fordi de ikke har kundskab; og deres ærværdige mænd hungrer, og deres mængde vansmægter af tørst.

14 Derfor har helvede udvidet sig og spærret sin mund op på vid gab; og deres herlighed og deres mængde og deres pomp og den, som fryder sig, skal fare derved.

15 Og den jævne mand skal blive fornedret, og den mægtige mand skal blive ydmyget, og de hovnes øjne skal blive ydmyget.

16 Men Hærskarers Herre skal blive ophøjet ved dommen, og Gud, der er hellig, skal blive helliget ved retfærdighed.

17 Da skal lammene spise på deres vis, og de fedes øde steder skal fremmede spise.

18 Ve dem, som trækker ugudelighed med tomhedens reb, og synd som med et vognreb;

19 og som siger: Lad ham haste, fremskynde sit værk, så vi kan se det; og lad Israels Helliges råd nærme sig og komme, så vi kan kende det.

20 Ve dem, som kalder ondt godt og godt ondt, som gør mørke til lys og lys til mørke, som gør bittert til sødt og sødt til bittert!

21 Ve dem, som er vise i deres egne øjne og kloge i deres egne øjne!

22 Ve dem, som er mægtige til at drikke vin og dygtige til at blande stærk drik;

23 og som frikender den skyldige mod belønning og fratager den retfærdige hans retfærdighed!

24 Derfor, ligesom ilden opbrænder stubbene, og flammen fortærer avnerne, skal deres rod være råddenskab, og deres blomster skal hvirvle op som støv; fordi de har forkastet Hærskarers Herres lov og foragtet Israels Helliges ord.

25 Derfor er Herrens vrede optændt mod hans folk, og han har udstrakt sin hånd mod dem og har slået dem; højene bævede, og ligene af dem lå sønderrevet midt i gaderne. Trods alt dette har hans vrede ikke lagt sig, men hans hånd er stadig strakt ud.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

- 26 Og han vil rejse et banner for folkeslagene i det fjerne og fløjte efter dem fra jordens ende; og se, de skal komme med hast, skyndsomt; ingen skal blive træt eller snuble blandt dem.
- 27 Ingen skal slumre eller sove; ej heller skal bæltet om deres lænder løsnes, eller remmen på deres sko knække.
- 28 Deres pile skal være skarpe, og alle deres buer spændte, og deres hestes hove skal være som flint, og deres hjul som en hvirvelvind, deres brøl som en løves.
- 29 De skal brøle som unge løver, ja, de skal brøle og gribe byttet og skal bære det sikkert bort, og ingen skal redde det.
- 30 Og på den dag skal de brøle imod dem, som havets brølen; og hvis de ser ud over landet, se, mørke og sorg, og lyset er formørket på himlene over det.
- And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.
- None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;
- Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.
- They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.
- And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

Nefis Anden Bog 16

- 1 I det år, da kong Uzzija døde, så jeg også Herren sidde på en trone, høj og ophøjet, og hans slæb fyldte templet.
- 2 Over den stod seraferne; hver af dem havde seks vinger; med de to skjulte de deres ansigt, og med de to skjulte de deres fødder, og med de to fløj de.
- 3 Og den ene råbte til den anden og sagde: Hellig, hellig, hellig er Hærskarers Herre; hele jorden er fuld af hans herlighed.
- 4 Og dørstolperne rystede ved røsten af den, der råbte, og huset blev fyldt med røg.
- 5 Da sagde jeg: Ve mig! for det er ude med mig; for jeg er en mand med urene læber, og jeg bor midt blandt et folk med urene læber; for mine øjne har set kongen, Hærskarers Herre.
- 6 Da fløj en af seraferne hen til mig, og han havde i hånden et glødende kul, som han havde taget fra alteret med tangen.
- 7 Og han lagde det på min mund og sagde: Se, det har rørt dine læber, og din ugudelighed er fjernet, og din synd er sonet.
- 8 Og jeg hørte også Herrens røst sige: Hvem skal jeg sende, og hvem vil gå for os? Da sagde jeg: Her er jeg, send mig.
- 9 Og han sagde: Gå hen og sig til dette folk: Hør blot! men de forstod ikke; og se blot! men de fattede ikke.
- 10 Gør dette folks hjerter fede, og gør deres ører tunge, og luk deres øjne til, så de ikke kan se med øjnene og ikke høre med ørerne og forstå med hjertet og omvende sig og blive helbredt.
- 11 Så sagde jeg: Herre, hvor længe? Og han sagde: Indtil byerne ligger øde uden indbyggere, og husene uden folk, og landet er blevet totalt ødelagt.
- 12 Og Herren har ført menneskene langt bort, for der skal være en stor tomhed midt i landet.
- 13 Men der skal dog være en tiendedel, og de skal vende tilbage og skal blive fortæret som en terebinte og som en eg, hvis kraft er i dem, når de kaster deres blade; således skal den hellige sæd være kraften deri.

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

Nefis Anden Bog 17

- 1 Og det skete i de dage, da Akaz, Jotams søn, søn af Uzzija, var konge af Juda, at Resin, konge af Syrien, og Peka, Remaljas søn, konge af Israel, drog op mod Jerusalem for at føre krig imod det, men de kunne ikke erobre det.
- 2 Og det blev meddelt Davids hus: Syrien har indgået forbund med Efraim. Og hans hjerte skælvede, og hans folks hjerte, ligesom træerne i skoven skælver for vinden.
- 3 Da sagde Herren til Esajas: Gå nu hen og mød Akaz, du og Shearjashub, din søn, for enden af vandlejningen fra den øvre dam på vejen ved valkerens plads,
- 4 og sig til ham: Pas på, og vær stille, frygt ikke, og tab ikke modet over disse to ryggede fakkelstumper, for Resins og Syriens og Remaljas søns rasende vrede.
- 5 Fordi Syrien, Efraim og Remaljas søn har lagt onde råd op imod dig og siger:
- 6 Lad os drage op imod Juda og plage det, og lad os bryde ind og indsætte en konge i dets midte, ja, Tab'als søn.
- 7 Så siger Gud Herren: Det skal ikke lykkes, ej heller skal det ske.
- 8 For Syriens hoved er Damaskus, og Damaskus' hoved er Resin; og inden tre snese og fem år skal Efraim blive knust, så det ikke er et folk.
- 9 Og Efraims hoved er Samaria, og Samarias hoved er Remaljas søn. Hvis I ikke vil tro, skal I visselig ikke blive boende.
- 10 Endvidere talte Herren igen til Akaz og sagde:
- 11 Bed om et tegn af Herren, din Gud; bed om det i det dybe eller i det høje oventil.
- 12 Men Akaz sagde: Jeg vil ikke bede, ej heller vil jeg friste Herren.
- 13 Og han sagde: Hør I nu, o Davids hus; er det så let for jer at trætte mennesker, at I også vil trætte min Gud?
- 14 Derfor skal Herren selv give jer et tegn: Se, en jomfru skal blive med barn og føde en søn og skal give ham navnet Immanuel.

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

15 Smør og honning skal han spise, for at han kan forstå at afslå det onde og at vælge det gode.

16 For inden barnet forstår at afslå det onde og vælge det gode, skal det land, som du afskyr, blive svigtet af begge sine konger.

17 Over dig og over dit folk og over din fars hus skal Herren lade dage komme, som ikke har været siden den dag, Efraim skilte sig fra Juda – kongen af Assyrien.

18 Og det skal ske på den dag, at Herren skal fløjte efter fluerne, som er i den fjerneste del af Egypten, og efter bierne, som er i Assyriens land.

19 Og de skal komme og skal slå sig ned alle sammen i de øde dale og i hullerne i klipperne og på alle tornekrat og på alle buske.

20 På samme dag vil Herren med en barberkniv, som er lejet af dem, der bor på den anden side af floden, af kongen af Assyrien, rase hovedet og rase håret af fødderne; ja, og den skal også fjerne skægget.

21 Og det skal ske på den dag, at en mand skal holde en ung ko og to får.

22 Og det skal ske, at med den overflod af mælk, de giver, skal han spise smør; for enhver, som er tilbage i landet, skal spise smør og honning.

23 Og det skal ske på den dag, at hvert sted, hvor der var tusind vinstokke, tusind sølvstykker værd, skal blive til torn og tjørn.

24 Med pile og med buer skal mænd drage derhen, fordi hele landet skal blive til torn og tjørn.

25 Og alle høje, som dyrkes med hakke, dér skal der ikke komme frygt for torn og tjørn; men det skal være til at sætte okser ud i og til at trædes ned af småkvæg.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

Nefis Anden Bog 18

- 1 Ydermere sagde Herrens ord til mig: Tag dig en stor rulle, og skriv på den med et menneskes pen om Maher-Shalal Hash-Baz.
- 2 Og jeg tog mig troværdige vidner til at skrive, præsten Urija og Zekarja, Jeberekjas søn.
- 3 Og jeg gik ind til profetinden, og hun blev gravid og fødte en søn. Da sagde Herren til mig: Giv ham navnet Maher-Shalal Hash-Baz.
- 4 For se, barnet skal ikke have lært at råbe: Min far og min mor, før Damaskus' rigdomme og Samarias rov bliver ført bort af kongen af Assyrien.
- 5 Og Herren talte også til mig igen og sagde:
- 6 For eftersom dette folk afslår Siloas vande, der rinder sagte, og fryder sig ved Resin og Remaljas søn;
- 7 se, derfor lader Herren flodens vande, mægtige og mange, oversvømme dem, ja, kongen af Assyrien og al hans herlighed, og han skal stige over alle sine flodlejer og gå over alle sine bredder.
- 8 Og han skal strømme gennem Juda, han skal vælde frem og strømme over, han skal nå dem helt til halsen; og hans udbredte vinger skal fylde dit land i hele dets bredde, o Immanuel.
- 9 Slut jer sammen, o I folk, og I skal blive sønderknust; og lån øre, alle I, som er i fjerne lande; spænd jeres bælte, og I skal blive sønderknust; spænd jeres bælte, og I skal blive sønderknust.
- 10 Læg råd op sammen, og det skal blive til intet; tal ordet, og det skal ikke bestå; for Gud er med os.
- 11 For så sagde Herren til mig med en stærk hånd og pålagde mig, at jeg ikke skulle vandre på dette folks vej, idet han sagde:
- 12 Sig I ikke: Et forbund! til alle dem, til hvem dette folk siger: Et forbund! frygt ikke, hvad de frygter, vær heller ikke bange.
- 13 Hellig selve Hærskarers Herre, og lad ham være jeres frygt, og lad ham være jeres ærefrygt.

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

- 14 Og han skal være jer en helligdom, men også en klippe til at snuble over og en anstødssten for begge Israels huse, en fælde og en snare for Jerusalems indbyggere.
- 15 Og mange blandt dem skal snuble og falde og blive lemlæstet og blive fanget i snaren og blive fanget i fælden.
- 16 Bind vidnesbyrdet til, forsegl loven blandt mine disciple.
- 17 Og jeg vil vente på Herren, der skjuler sit ansigt for Jakobs hus, og jeg vil se frem til ham.
- 18 Se, jeg og de børn, som Herren har givet mig, er givet som tegn og undere i Israel fra Hærskarers Herre, som bor på Zions bjerg.
- 19 Og når de siger til jer: Søg til dem, der maner ånder frem og til troldmændene, som piber og mumler – burde et folk ikke søge til deres Gud for de levende for at høre fra de døde?
- 20 Til loven og til vidnesbyrdet! og hvis de ikke taler i overensstemmelse med dette ord, er det fordi, der intet lys er i dem.
- 21 Og de skal gennemgå det, hårdt plagede og sultne; og det skal ske, at når de bliver sultne, skal de ærgre sig og forbande deres konge og deres Gud og se op.
- 22 Og de skal se til jorden og se besvær og mørke, kvalers mulm, og de skal blive drevet ud i mørket.
- And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.
- And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.
- Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.
- And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.
- Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.
- And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?
- To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.
- And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.
- And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

Nefis Anden Bog 19

- 1 Dog skal mulmet ikke være som det, der var under hendes plage, da han først hjemsøgte Zebulons land og Naftalis land let, og siden mere alvorligt hjemsøgte ved vejen til Det Røde Hav på den anden side af Jordan i folkeslagenes Galilæa.
- 2 De folk, der vandrede i mørke, har set et stort lys; de, der bor i dødsskyggens land, på dem har lyset skinnet.
- 3 Du har mangfoldiggjort folket og øget glæden – de glæder sig for dig, som glæden over høsten, og som mænd fryder sig, når de deler rovet.
- 4 For du har brudt hans byrdes åg og stangen over hans skulder, hans undertrykkers kæp.
- 5 For i alle krigerens slag er der forvirret larm og blod-sølede klæder; men dette skal ske med ild og med næring til ilden.
- 6 For et barn er født os, en søn er givet os; og herredømmet skal ligge på hans skulder; og han skal få navnet Underfuld, Rådgiver, Mægtige Gud, Evige Fader, Fredsfyrsten.
- 7 På væksten af herredømme og fred er det ingen ende for Davids trone og heller ikke på hans rige for at ordne det og til at grundfæste det med ret og med retfærdighed fra nu af, ja, for evigt. Hærskarers Herres nidkærlighed skal udvirke dette.
- 8 Herren sendte sit ord til Jakob, og det har lyst på Israel.
- 9 Og hele folket skal kende det, selv Efraim og indbyggerne i Samaria, som siger i stolthed og hjertets hovmod:
- 10 Murstenene er faldet ned, men vi vil bygge med tilhuggede sten; morbærtræerne er fældet, men vi vil sætte cedertræer i stedet.
- 11 Derfor skal Herren rejse Resins modstandere mod ham og forene hans fjender.
- 12 Syrerne forfra og filistrene bagfra; og de skal fortære Israel med opspilet mund. Trods alt dette har hans vrede ikke lagt sig, men hans hånd er stadig strakt ud.

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

13 For folket vender sig ikke til ham, der slår dem; ej heller søger de Hærskarers Herre.

14 Derfor vil Herren hugge hoved og hale af Israel, gren og siv på én dag.

15 Oldingen, han er hovedet; og profeten, som underviser i løgne, han er halen.

16 Og dette folks ledere får dem til at fejle; og de, der bliver ledt af dem, bliver udryddet.

17 Derfor vil Herren ikke glæde sig over deres unge mænd, ej heller have barmhjertighed med deres faderløse og enker; for hver eneste af dem er en hykler og en misgerningsmand, og hver eneste mund taler dårskab. Trods alt dette har hans vrede ikke lagt sig, men hans hånd er stadig strakt ud.

18 For ugudelighed brænder som ilden; den vil fortære torn og tjørn og vil sætte ild på skovens krat, og de skal blive hvirvlet op, ligesom røg stiger til vejrs.

19 Ved Hærskarers Herres vrede bliver landet formørket, og folket skal være som ildens bytte; ingen skal skåne sin bror.

20 Og han skal rage til sig med den højre hånd og være sulten; og han skal spise med den venstre hånd, og de skal ikke blive mætte; hver eneste skal æde sin egen arms kød –

21 Manasse, Efraim; og Efraim, Manasse; de skal sammen være mod Juda. Trods alt dette har hans vrede ikke lagt sig, men hans hånd er stadig strakt ud.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

Nefis Anden Bog 20

- 1 Ve dem, der forordner uretfærdige forordninger, og som udskriver uret, som de har pålagt,
- 2 for at bortvise de trængende fra dom og for at fratage de fattige blandt mit folk deres ret, for at enker kan blive deres bytte, og for at de kan berøve de faderløse!
- 3 Og hvad vil I gøre på hjemsøgelsens dag og under den ødelæggelse, som skal komme fra det fjerne? Til hvem vil I flygte for at få hjælp? Og hvor vil I efterlade jeres herlighed?
- 4 Uden mig skal de bøje sig blandt fangerne, og de skal falde blandt de ihjelslagne. Trods alt dette har hans vrede ikke lagt sig, men hans hånd er stadig strakt ud.
- 5 O assyrer, min vredes kæp, og stokken i deres hånd er deres harme.
- 6 Jeg vil sende ham mod et hyklerisk folkeslag, og mod min vredes folk vil jeg give ham en befaling om at tage rovet og at tage byttet og at træde dem ned som sølet på gaderne.
- 7 Det var imidlertid ikke hans agt, ej heller tænker hans hjerte så; men i sit hjerte ønsker han at ødelægge og at forstøde folkeslag, ikke blot nogle få.
- 8 For han siger: Er mine fyrster ikke alle sammen konger?
- 9 Er ikke Kalno som Karkemish? Er ikke Hamat som Arpad? Er ikke Samaria som Damaskus?
- 10 Ligesom min hånd har grundlagt afgudernes riger og de, hvis gudebilleder overgik dem i Jerusalem og i Samaria,
- 11 skal jeg da ikke, som jeg har gjort imod Samaria og hendes afguder, gøre ligeså imod Jerusalem og hendes afguder?
- 12 Derfor skal det ske, at når Herren har udført hele sit værk på Zions bjerg og i Jerusalem, vil jeg straffe kongen af Assyrien for frugten af hans hjertes hovmod og pralet i hans hovne blik.

2 Nephi 20

- Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;
- To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!
- And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?
- Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.
- I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.
- Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.
- For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?
- Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?
- As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;
- Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?
- Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

13 For han siger: Med min hånds kraft og med min visdom har jeg gjort dette; for jeg er klog, og jeg har flyttet folkets grænser, og jeg har røvet deres skatte, og som en tapper mand har jeg overvundet indbyggerne;

14 og min hånd har som til en fuglerede fundet frem til folkenes rigdomme; og som man samler forladte æg, har jeg samlet hele jorden; og der var ingen, som rørte en vinge eller åbnede munden eller peb.

15 Skal øksen prale over for ham, som hugger med den? Skal saven gøre sig vigtig over for ham, som trækker den? Som om kæppen skulle svinge sig selv mod dem, som løfter den, eller som om en stok skulle løfte sig selv op, som var den ikke af træ!

16 Derfor skal Herren, Hærskarers Herre, blandt sine fede sende magerhed; og under sin herlighed skal han tænde en brand som en luende ild.

17 Og Israels lys skal være som en ild, og hans Hellige som en flamme; og den skal brænde og skal fortære hans torn og tjørn på én dag

18 og skal fortære hans skovs og hans frugtbare markers herlighed, både sjæl og legeme; og de skal være, som når en fanebærer besvimer.

19 Og de tilbageblevne træer i hans skov skal være få, så et barn kan skrive dem op.

20 Og det skal ske på den dag, at Israels rest og de af Jakobs hus, der er undsluppet, ikke mere skal forlade sig på ham, der slog dem, men skal forlade sig på Herren, Israels Hellige, i sandhed.

21 Denne rest skal vende tilbage, ja, Jakobs rest, til den mægtige Gud.

22 For selv om dit folk Israel er som havets sand, skal kun en rest af dem vende tilbage; tilintetgørelsen, der er forordnet, skal strømme over af retfærdighed.

23 For Herren, Hærskarers Gud, skal gennemføre en tilintetgørelse, ja, som er bestemt for hele landet.

24 Derfor, så siger Herren, Hærskarers Gud: O mit folk, som bor i Zion, frygt ikke for assyreren; han skal slå dig med en kæp og skal løfte sin stok imod dig på samme måde som i Egypten.

25 For om endnu en meget kort tid skal harmen ophøre, og ligeså min vrede i deres udryddelse.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

- 26 Og Hærskarers Herre skal svinge en svøbe over ham ligesom ved nedslagtningen af Midjan ved Orebs klippe; og ligesom hans stav var løftet over havet, sådan skal han løfte den på samme måde, som i Egypten.
- 27 Og det skal ske på den dag, at hans byrde skal blive fjernet fra dine skuldre og hans åg fra din nakke; og åget skal sprænges på grund af salvelsen.
- 28 Han er kommet til Ajjat, han er draget til Migron; ved Mikmas har han ladet sine vogne blive tilbage.
- 29 De er draget igennem passet; de har slået lejr for natten i Geba; Rama er bange, Sauls Gibea er flygtet.
- 30 Opløft din røst, o Gallims datter; lad den blive hørt helt til Lajsha, o arme Anatot.
- 31 Madmena er flygtet; indbyggerne i Gebim samler sig til flugt.
- 32 Endnu den dag skal han blive ved Nob; han skal true med sin hånd imod Zions datters bjerg, imod Jerusalems høj.
- 33 Se, Herren, Hærskarers Herre skal afhugge grene ved hjælp af skræk; og de af høj rang skal blive fældet, og de hovne skal blive ydmyget.
- 34 Og han skal hugge skovtykningerne ned med jern, og Libanon skal falde ved den mægtige.
- And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.
- And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.
- He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.
- They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.
- Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.
- Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.
- As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.
- Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.
- And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

Nefis Anden Bog 21

- 1 Og der skal skyde en kvist fra Isajs stub, og en gren skal gro frem af hans rødder.
- 2 Og Herrens Ånd skal hvile over ham, visdoms og forstands ånd, råds og styrkes ånd, kundskabs og gudsfrygts ånd;
- 3 og skal give ham skarp forstand i frygt for Herren, og han skal ikke dømmе efter det, hans øjne ser, ej heller irettesætte efter det, hans ører hører.
- 4 Men med retfærdighed skal han dømmе de fattige og irettesætte med upartiskhed til fordel for jordens sagtmodige; og han skal slå jorden med sin munds kæp, og med sine læbers ånde skal han slå de ugudelige ihjel.
- 5 Og retfærdighed skal være bæltet om hans lænder, og trofasthed bæltet om hans hofter.
- 6 Ulven skal også leve sammen med lammet, og panteren skal ligge sammen med kiddet, og kalven og den unge løve sammen med fedekvæget; og et lille barn skal lede dem.
- 7 Og koen og bjørnen skal æde; deres unger skal ligge sammen; og løven skal æde strå som oksen.
- 8 Og det diende barn skal lege ved giftslangens hul, og det afvænnede barn skal stikke sin hånd ind i hugormens hule.
- 9 De skal ikke forvolde ondt eller ødelægge noget på hele mit hellige bjerg, for jorden skal være fuld af kundskab om Herren, ligesom vandene dækker havet.
- 10 Og på den dag skal der være en rod af Isaj, som skal stå som et banner for folket; til ham skal ikke-jøderne søge; og hans hvile skal være herlig.
- 11 Og det skal ske på den dag, at Herren atter for anden gang skal udstrække sin hånd for at genvinde den rest af sit folk, som skal være tilbage fra Assyrien og fra Egypten og fra Patros og fra Kush og fra Elam og fra Sinear og fra Hamat og fra øerne i havet.
- 12 Og han skal rejse et banner for folkeslagene og skal samle Israels fordrevne og indsamle Judas spredte fra jordens fire hjørner.

2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

- 13 Og Efraims misundelse skal også ophøre, og Judas modstandere skal blive forstødt; Efraim skal ikke være misundelig på Juda, og Juda skal ikke plage Efraim.
- 14 Men de skal kaste sig over filistrenes skuldre i vest; de skal sammen plyndre dem, der bor i øst; de skal lægge hånden på Edom og Moab; og Ammons børn skal adlyde dem.
- 15 Og Herren skal helt udrydde Egypterhavets vig; og med sin mægtige vind skal han svinge sin hånd over floden og skal slå den til de syv bække og lade mennesker gå tørskoet over.
- 16 Og der skal være en vej fra Assyrien for den rest af hans folk, som skal være tilbage, ligesom der var for Israel, den dag han drog op fra Egyptens land.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

Nefis Anden Bog 22

- 1 Og på den dag skal du sige: O Herre, jeg vil prise dig; skønt du var vred på mig, har din vrede lagt sig, og du trøster mig.
- 2 Se, Gud er min frelse, jeg vil sætte min lid til ham og ikke være bange; for den Herre JAHVE er min styrke og min sang; han er også blevet min frelse.
- 3 Derfor skal I med glæde hente vand fra frelsens kilder.
- 4 Og på den dag skal I sige: Pris Herren, påkald hans navn, kundgør hans gerninger blandt folkene, forkynd, at hans navn er ophøjet.
- 5 Syng til Herren, for han har gjort fortrinlige ting; dette er kendt over hele jorden.
- 6 Råb højt og jubl, I indbyggere i Zion; for stor er Israels Hellige midt blandt jer.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

Nefis Anden Bog 23

- 1 Profetudsagnet om Babylon, som Esajas, Amos' søn, så.
- 2 Rejs et banner på det høje bjerg, opløft røsten til dem, vink med hånden, så de kan gå ind ad de fornemmes porte.
- 3 Jeg har givet befaling til mine indviede; jeg har også kaldet mine mægtige, for min vrede er ikke over dem, der fryder sig ved min højhed.
- 4 Larmen fra mængden på bjergene er som af et stort folk, en tumultagtig larm af folkeslagenes riger, der samles sammen; Hærskarers Herre mønstrer slagets hærskarer.
- 5 De kommer fra et fjerntliggende land, fra himlens ende, ja, Herren og hans harmes våben, for at ødelægge hele landet.
- 6 Hyl I, for Herrens dag er for hånden, den skal komme som en ødelæggelse fra den Almægtige.
- 7 Derfor skal alle hænder blive svage, og enhvers hjerte skal smelte.
- 8 Og de skal være bange, veer og sorger skal gribe dem; de skal se forbløffet på hinanden, deres ansigter skal blusse som luer.
- 9 Se, Herrens dag kommer, grusom med både forbitrelse og rasende vrede for at lægge landet øde; og han skal slå de syndere ihjel, der er i det.
- 10 For himlens stjerner og dens stjernebilleder skal ikke lade deres lys skinne, solen skal blive formørket i sin kurs, og månen skal ikke lade sit lys skinne.
- 11 Og jeg vil straffe jorden for dens ondskab, og de ugudelige for deres ugudelighed; og jeg vil gøre en ende på de stoltes indbildskhed og vil stoppe de skrækindjagendes hovmod.
- 12 Jeg vil gøre en mand mere dyrebar end fint guld, ja, et menneske mere end Ofirs guldbarre.
- 13 Derfor vil jeg ryste himlene, og jorden skal vige fra sit sted ved Hærskarers Herres forbitrelse og på hans rasende vredes dag.

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

- 14 Og det skal være som med den jagede rå og som med et får, som ingen tager sig af; og de skal hver eneste én vende sig til sit eget folk og flygte hver og én til sit eget land.
- 15 Enhver, som er stolt, skal blive gennemboret, ja, og enhver, som slutter sig til de ugudelige, skal falde for sværdet.
- 16 Deres børn skal også blive knust for deres øjne, deres huse skal blive plyndret og deres hustruer skændet.
- 17 Se, jeg vil ophidse mederne imod dem, de vil ikke regne sølv og guld for noget, ej heller vil de fryde sig ved det.
- 18 Deres buer skal også få de unge mænd i stykker, og de skal ikke have nogen medlidenhed med moderlivs frugt; deres øjne skal ikke skåne børnene.
- 19 Og Babylon, det herligste af kongerigerne, kaldæernes stolteste pryd, skal blive, som da Gud omstyrtede Sodoma og Gomorra.
- 20 Det skal aldrig blive beboet, ej heller skal nogen leve der fra slægtled til slægtled, ej heller skal araberne slå telt op der, ej heller skal hyrderne bygge deres fold der.
- 21 Men ørkenens vilde dyr skal ligge der, og deres huse skal være fulde af klagende skabninger, og ugler skal bo der, og bukketrolde skal danse der.
- 22 Og øernes vilde dyr skal hyle i deres øde huse og drager i deres prægtige paladser; og hendes tid er nært forestående, og hendes dage skal ikke blive forlænget. For jeg vil tilintetgøre hende hastigt; ja, for jeg vil være barmhjertig mod mit folk, men de ugudelige skal fortales.
- And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.
- Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.
- Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.
- Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.
- Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.
- And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.
- It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.
- But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.
- And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

Nefis Anden Bog 24

- 1 For Herren vil have barmhjertighed med Jakob og vil endnu udvælge Israel og indsætte dem i deres eget land; og de fremmede vil blive knyttet til dem, og de vil holde sig til Jakobs hus.
- 2 Og folkene skal tage dem og føre dem til deres sted, ja, fra det fjerne til jordens ender, og de skal vende tilbage til deres forjættede lande. Og Israels hus skal tage dem i besiddelse, og Herrens land skal levere tjenere og tjene-stepiger; og de skal gøre fanger af dem, som de var fanger hos, og de skal herske over deres undertrykkere.
- 3 Og det skal ske på den dag, at Herren vil give dig hvile fra din sorg og fra din frygt og fra den hårde trældom, i hvilken du var tvunget til at tjene.
- 4 Og det skal ske på den dag, at du skal udtale dette ordsprog imod kongen af Babylon og sige: Tænk, undertrykkeren er hørt op, den gyldne stad er hørt op!
- 5 Herren har brudt de ugudeliges stav, herskernes sceptre.
- 6 Han, der slog folkene i forbitrelse med vedvarende slag, han, der herskede over folkeslag i vrede, bliver forfulgt, og ingen forhindrer det.
- 7 Hele jorden finder hvile og er stille, de bryder ud i sang.
- 8 Ja, enebærtræerne fryder sig ved dig og ligeledes Libanons cedre og siger: Siden dit fald er ingen skovhugger kommet op mod os.
- 9 Helvedet nedentil er i oprør over dig for at møde dig, når du kommer, det vækker de døde for dig, alle jordens mægtige; det har ladet alle folkenes konger rejse sig fra deres troner.
- 10 Alle skal de tale og sige til dig: Er du også blevet svag ligesom vi? Er du blevet som vi?
- 11 Din pragt er styrtet ned i graven; dine lutters lyd bliver ikke hørt; maddikerne breder sig under dig, og maddikerne dækker dig.
- 12 Tænk, at du faldt fra himlen, o Lucifer, morgengryets søn! Tænk, at du er hugget ned til jorden, du, som svækkede folkeslagene!

2 Nephi 24

- For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.
- And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.
- And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!
- The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.
- He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.
- The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.
- Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.
- Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.
- All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?
- Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.
- How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

- 13 For du har sagt i dit hjerte: Jeg vil stige op til himlen, jeg vil ophøje min trone over Guds stjerner; jeg vil også sidde på forsamlingens bjerg i det yderste nord.
- 14 Jeg vil stige op over skyerne; jeg vil være som den Højeste.
- 15 Dog skal du styrtes ned i helvede, til afgrundens yderste.
- 16 De, der ser dig, skal stirre på dig og skal betragte dig og skal sige: Er det den mand, som fik jorden til at bæve, som rystede kongeriger,
- 17 og som gjorde verden til en ørken og ødelagde byerne deri og ikke åbnede sine fangers hus?
- 18 Alle folkeslagenes konger, ja, dem alle, hviler med ære, hver af dem i sit eget hus.
- 19 Men du er stødt ud af din grav som en vederstyggelig gren og som resten af dem, som er slået ihjel, gennemborret med et sværd, og som bliver kastet ned til stenene i hullet, som et lig, der er trådt under fode.
- 20 Du skal ikke forenes med dem i graven, fordi du har ødelagt dit land og slået dit folk ihjel; efterkommerne af dem, der forvolder ondt, skal aldrig æres.
- 21 Bered en nedslagtning af hans børn for deres fædres syndighed, så de ikke rejser sig eller tager landet i besiddelse eller fylder verdens overflade med byer.
- 22 For jeg vil rejse mig imod dem, siger Hærskarers Herre, og udslutte navn og rest og søn og nevø fra Babylon, siger Herren.
- 23 Jeg vil også gøre den til rørdrummens eje og til sumpe; og jeg vil feje den bort med ødelæggelsens kost, siger Hærskarers Herre.
- 24 Hærskarers Herre har svoret og sagt: Som jeg har tænkt, således skal det visselig ske; og som jeg har sat mig det for, således skal det stå fast –
- 25 at jeg vil føre assyreren til mit land og træde ham under fode på mine bjerge; så skal hans åg vige fra dem, og hans byrde skal vige fra deres skuldre.
- 26 Det er det formål, der er fastlagt for hele jorden; og det er den hånd, der er strakt ud mod alle folkene.
- For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;
- I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.
- Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
- They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms? And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?
- All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.
- But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.
- Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.
- Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.
- For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.
- I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—
- That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
- This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

27 For Hærskarers Herre har sat sig det for, og hvem skal forpurre det? Og hans hånd er strakt ud, og hvem skal tvinge den tilbage?

28 I det år, da kong Akaz døde, kom dette profetudsagn:

29 Glæd dig ikke, ganske Palæstina, fordi den stok, som han slog dig med, er brækket; for af slangens rod skal der komme en hugorm, og hans frugt skal være en ilter, flyvende slange.

30 Og den førstefødte af de fattige skal spise, og de trængende skal lægge sig i tryghed; og jeg vil dræbe din rod med sult; og han skal slå din rest ihjel.

31 Hyl, o port; råb, o by; du, hele Palæstina, er gået i opløsning; for nordenfra skal der komme en røg, og ingen skal være ene i sin tildelte tid.

32 Og hvad skal folkeslagenes sendebud da svare? At Herren har grundlagt Zion, og de fattige af hans folk skal sætte deres lid til det.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

Nefis Anden Bog 25

- 1 Se, jeg, Nefi, taler noget om de ord, som jeg har skrevet, og som er blevet talt af Esajas' mund. For se, Esajas sagde meget, som det var svært for mange af mit folk at forstå; for de kender ikke til den måde, hvorpå der blev profeteret blandt jøderne.
- 2 For jeg, Nefi, har ikke lært dem meget om jødernes skikke, for deres gerninger var mørkets gerninger, og deres handlinger var vederstyggeligheders handlinger.
- 3 Derfor skriver jeg til mit folk, til alle dem som herefter skal modtage det, som jeg skriver, for at de må få kundskab om Guds straffedomme, at de kommer over alle folkeslag i overensstemmelse med det ord, som han har talt.
- 4 Lyt derfor, o mit folk, som er af Israels hus, og lån øre til mine ord; for skønt Esajas' ord ikke er tydelige for jer, så er de alligevel tydelige for alle dem, der er fyldt af profetiens ånd. Men jeg giver jer en profeti i overensstemmelse med den ånd, der er i mig; for se, jeg vil profetere i overensstemmelse med den tydelighed, der har været i mig fra den tid, da jeg kom fra Jerusalem med min far; for se, min sjæl fryder sig ved tydelig tale til mit folk, så de kan lære.
- 5 Ja, og min sjæl fryder sig ved Esajas' ord, for jeg kom fra Jerusalem, og mine øjne har set det, der angår jøderne, og jeg ved, at jøderne forstår det, der angår profeterne, og der findes intet andet folk, som forstår det, der blev talt til jøderne, end netop dem, medmindre de er blevet oplært i jødernes skikke.
- 6 Men se, jeg, Nefi, har ikke oplært mine børn i jødernes skikke; men se, jeg har selv boet ved Jerusalem, hvorfor jeg kender til egnene deromkring; og jeg har over for mine børn omtalt Guds straffedomme, som er blevet fuldbyrdet blandt jøderne, for mine børn, i overensstemmelse med alt det, som Esajas har talt, og jeg skriver dem ikke.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

7 Men se, jeg går videre med min egen profeti i overensstemmelse med min tydelige måde, som jeg ved, at ingen kan tage fejl af; alligevel vil mennesker i de dage, når Esajas' profetier skal blive opfyldt, med vished kende dem på de tidspunkter, da de skal ske.

8 Derfor er de af værdi for menneskenes børn; og den, som mener, at de ikke er det, til dem vil jeg især tale og begrænse ordene til mit eget folk; for jeg ved, at de skal være af stor værdi for dem i de sidste dage, for på den dag skal de forstå dem; derfor har jeg skrevet dem til deres gavn.

9 Og ligesom et slægtled er blevet udryddet blandt jøderne på grund af ugudelighed, således er de blevet udryddet fra slægtled til slægtled i overensstemmelse med deres ugudelighed; og ingen af dem er nogen sinde blevet udryddet, uden at det blev dem forudsagt af Herrens profeter.

10 Derfor er der blevet dem fortalt om den ødelæggelse, der skulle komme over dem, straks efter at min far forlod Jerusalem; alligevel forhærdede de hjertet; og i overensstemmelse med min profeti er de blevet udryddet med undtagelse af dem, der bliver ført bort til Babylon som fanger.

11 Og se, dette taler jeg på grund af den ånd, som er i mig. Og til trods for at de er blevet ført bort, skal de igen vende tilbage og tage Jerusalems land i besiddelse; derfor skal de igen blive bragt tilbage til deres arveland.

12 Men se, de skal have krige og rygter om krige; og når den dag kommer, da Faderens Enbårne, ja, himlens og jordens Fader, giver sig til kende for dem i kødet, se, da vil de forkaste ham på grund af deres syndighed og deres hjertes hårdhed og deres nakkes stivhed.

13 Se, de vil korsfæste ham; og efter at han har ligget i en gravhule i et tidsrum af tre dage, skal han opstå fra de døde med helbredelse i sine vinger; og alle de, der tror på hans navn, skal blive frelst i Guds rige. Derfor fryder min sjæl sig ved at profetere om ham, for jeg har set hans dag, og mit hjerte priser hans hellige navn.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

14 Og se, det skal ske, efter at Messias er opstået fra de døde og har givet sig til kende for sit folk, for så mange som vil tro på hans navn, se, da skal Jerusalem blive ødelagt igen; for ve dem, der kæmper mod Gud og hans kirkes folk.

15 Derfor skal jøderne blive spredt blandt alle folkeslag, ja, og Babylon skal også blive ødelagt; derfor skal jøderne blive spredt af andre folkeslag.

16 Og efter at de er blevet spredt, og Gud Herren har tugt dem ved andre folkeslag i et tidsrum af mange slægtled, ja, fra slægtled til slægtled, indtil de bliver formået til at tro på Kristus, Guds Søn, og på forsoningen, der er altomfattende for hele menneskeslægten – og når den dag kommer, da de vil tro på Kristus og tilbede Faderen i hans navn med rent hjerte og rene hænder og ikke længere se frem til en anden Messias, da, til den tid, kommer dagen, hvor det er nødvendigt, at de tror på dette.

17 Og Herren vil igen for anden gang udstrække sin hånd for at genrejse sit folk fra deres fortabte og faldne tilstand. Derfor vil han skride til at udføre et forunderligt værk og et under blandt menneskenes børn.

18 For se, han skal bringe dem sine ord, hvilke ord skal dømme dem på den yderste dag, for de skal gives dem med det formål at overbevise dem om den sande Messias, som blev forkastet af dem, og for at overbevise dem om, at de ikke længere behøver at se frem til, at der skal komme en Messias; for der skal ikke komme nogen, uden at det er en falsk Messias, der skal bedrage folk; for der er kun omtalt én Messias af profeterne, og denne Messias er ham, der vil blive forkastet af jøderne.

19 For ifølge profeternes ord kommer Messias seks hundrede år efter den tid, da min far forlod Jerusalem; og ifølge profeternes ord og ligeledes Guds engels ord skal hans navn være Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

20 Og se, mine brødre, jeg har talt tydeligt, så I ikke kan tage fejl. Og så sandt som Gud Herren lever, som førte Israel ud af Egyptens land og gav Moses magt, så han kunne helbrede folkeslagene, efter at de var blevet bidt af giftige slanger, hvis de ville kaste blikket på den slange, som han rejste for dem, og også gav ham magt, så han kunne slå på klippen og få vandet til at komme frem; ja, se, jeg siger jer, at så vist som dette er sandt, og så sandt som Gud Herren lever, er der ikke givet noget andet navn under himlen, hvorved mennesket kan blive frelst, end denne Jesus Kristus, om hvem jeg har talt.

21 For se, af den årsag har Gud Herren lovet mig, at det, som jeg skriver, skal blive beskyttet og bevaret og overdraget op gennem mine efterkommere fra slægtled til slægtled, så det løfte må blive opfyldt for Josef, at hans efterkommere aldrig skulle omkomme, så længe som jorden består.

22 Derfor skal det blive overleveret fra slægtled til slægtled, så længe som jorden skal bestå; og det skal blive overleveret efter Guds vilje og behag; og de folkeslag, som skal eje det, skal blive dømt efter det i henhold til det ord, der er skrevet.

23 For vi arbejder flittigt med at skrive for at formå vore børn og også vore brødre til at tro på Kristus og til at blive forligt med Gud; for vi ved, at det er ved nåde, at vi bliver frelst, efter alt hvad vi kan gøre.

24 Og til trods for at vi tror på Kristus, holder vi Moseloven og ser med standhaftighed hen til Kristus, indtil loven bliver opfyldt.

25 For med dette sigte blev loven givet; derfor er loven blevet død for os, og vi er blevet gjort levende i Kristus på grund af vor tro, dog holder vi loven på grund af befalingerne.

26 Og vi taler om Kristus, vi fryder os i Kristus, vi prædiker om Kristus, vi profeterer om Kristus, og vi skriver i overensstemmelse med vore profetier, for at vore børn kan vide, til hvilken kilde de kan se hen for at få forladelse for deres synder.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

27 For se, vi taler om loven, for at vore børn kan vide, at loven er død, og at de ved at vide, at loven er død, kan se frem til det liv, som er i Kristus, og vide, med hvilket sigte loven blev givet. Og efter at loven er opfyldt i Kristus, at de ikke behøver at forhærde hjertet mod ham, når loven burde være afskaffet.

28 Og se nu, mit folk, I er et stivnakket folk; derfor har jeg talt tydeligt til jer, så I ikke kan misforstå. Og de ord, som jeg har talt, skal stå som et vidnesbyrd mod jer, for de er tilstrækkelige til at lære enhver den rette vej, for den rette vej er at tro på Kristus og ikke forkaste ham, for ved at forkaste ham forkaster I også profeterne og loven.

29 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at den rette vej er at tro på Kristus og ikke forkaste ham; og Kristus er Israels Hellige; derfor må I bøje jer for ham og tilbede ham af al jeres kraft, sind og styrke og af hele jeres sjæl; og hvis I gør dette, skal I på ingen måde blive stødt ud.

30 Og for så vidt, som det er nødvendigt, skal I holde Guds skikke og ordinancer, indtil loven, som blev givet til Moses, bliver opfyldt.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

Nefis Anden Bog 26

- 1 Og efter at Kristus er opstået fra de døde, skal han vise sig for jer, mine børn og mine elskede brødre; og de ord, han skal tale til jer, skal være den lov, som I skal holde.
- 2 For se, jeg siger jer, at jeg har set, at mange slægtled skal gå bort, og der skal være store krige og stridigheder blandt mit folk.
- 3 Og når Messias kommer, skal der gives mit folk tegn på hans fødsel og også på hans død og opstandelse; og stor og skrækkelig skal den dag være for de ugudelige, for de skal omkomme; og de omkommer, fordi de støder profeterne og de hellige ud og stener dem og slår dem ihjel; derfor skal råbet fra de helliges blod stige op til Gud fra jorden mod dem.
- 4 For se, alle de, som er stolte, og som handler ugudeligt, skal blive opbrændt af den dag, der kommer, siger Hærskarers Herre, for de skal være som stubbe.
- 5 Og de, der slår profeterne og de hellige ihjel, dem skal jordens dyb opsluge, siger Hærskarers Herre, og bjerge skal dække dem, og hvirvelvinde skal føre dem bort, og bygninger skal falde ned over dem og sønderknuse dem og male dem til støv.
- 6 Og de skal blive hjemsøgt af torden og lyn og jordskælv og alle slags ødelæggelser; for Herrens vredes ild skal være tændt imod dem, og de skal være som stubbe, og den dag, der kommer, skal fortære dem, siger Hærskarers Herre.
- 7 O, min sjæls smerte og kval over tabet af mit folks faldne! For jeg, Nefi, har set det, og det er nær ved at fortære mig for Herrens nærhed, men jeg må råbe til min Gud: Dine veje er retfærdige.
- 8 Men se, de retfærdige, der lytter til profeternes ord og ikke slår dem ihjel, men til trods for al forfølgelse med standhaftighed ser frem til Kristus efter de tegn, der er givet – se, det er dem, der ikke skal omkomme.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

9 Men Retfærdighedens Søn skal vise sig for dem, og han skal helbrede dem, og de skal have fred i ham, indtil tre slægtled er gået bort, og mange af det fjerde slægtled er gået bort i retfærdighed.

10 Og når dette har fundet sted, rammer en hastig ødelæggelse mit folk; for til trods for smerterne i min sjæl har jeg set det; derfor ved jeg, at det skal ske; og de sælger sig selv for intet; for som belønning for deres stolthed og deres dårskab skal de høste undergang; for eftersom de giver efter for Djævelen og vælger mørkets gerninger snarere end lysets, skal de fare ned til helvede.

11 For Herrens Ånd vil ikke stedse kæmpe med mennesket. Og når Ånden hører op med at kæmpe med mennesker, da kommer hastig undergang, og det bedrøver min sjæl.

12 Og som jeg talte om, at jøderne skulle blive overbevist om, at Jesus er den sande Kristus, så må det nødvendigvis være sådan, at ikke-jøderne også bliver overbevist om, at Jesus er Kristus, den evige Gud,

13 og at han giver sig til kende ved Helligåndens kraft for alle dem, der tror på ham, ja, for hvert eneste folkeslag, stamme, tungemål og folk ved at gøre mægtige mirakler, tegn og undere blandt menneskenes børn i forhold til deres tro.

14 Men se, jeg profeterer for jer om de sidste dage; om de dage, da Gud Herren skal bringe dette frem for menneskenes børn.

15 Efter at mine efterkommere og mine brødres efterkommere er sunket ned i vantro og er blevet slået af ikke-jøderne; ja, efter at Gud Herren har slået lejr rundt omkring dem og har belejret dem med en vold og rejst fæstninger mod dem; og efter at de er blevet bragt ned i støvet, så de endog ikke er til, skal de retfærdiges ord dog blive skrevet, og de trofastes bønner skal blive hørt, og alle de, der er sunket ned i vantro, skal ikke blive glemte.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

- 16 For de, som skal blive udryddet, skal tale til dem fra jorden, og deres tale skal lyde svagt fra støvet, og deres røst skal være som fra en, der maner ånder frem; for Gud Herren vil give ham magt, så han kan hviske om dem, som var det fra jorden, og deres tale skal hviske fra støvet.
- 17 For så siger Gud Herren: De skal nedskrive det, der skal blive gjort blandt dem, og det skal blive skrevet og forsejlet i en bog, og de, der er sunket ned i vantro, skal ikke få det, for de forsøger at tilintetgøre det, der hører Gud til.
- 18 For se, ligesom de, der blev udryddet, er blevet udryddet hastigt; og mængden af deres skrækkindjagende skal være som avner, der blæser bort – ja, så siger Gud Herren: Det skal ske på et øjeblik, pludseligt –
- 19 og det skal ske, at de, der er sunket ned i vantro, skal blive slået ved ikke-jødernes hånd.
- 20 Og ikke-jøderne er indbildske i deres øjnes stolthed og er snublet, fordi deres anstødssten var stor, så de har opbygget mange kirker; alligevel nedgør de Guds kraft og mirakler og priser for sig selv deres egen visdom og deres egen lærdom, så de kan skaffe sig vinding og kværne på den fattiges ansigt.
- 21 Og der er opbygget mange kirker, hvilket forårsager misundelse, stridigheder og ondsindethed.
- 22 Og der er også hemmelige sammensværgelser, ja, som i fordums tid efter Djævelens sammensværgelser; for han er grundlæggeren af alt dette; ja, grundlæggeren af mord og mørkets gerninger; ja, og han leder dem ved halsen med et hørreb, indtil han binder dem med sine stærke reb for evigt.
- 23 For se, mine elskede brødre, jeg siger jer, at Gud Herren udfører ikke sine gerninger i mørke.
- 24 Han gør ikke noget, uden at det er til gavn for verden; for han elsker verden, så han endog nedlægger sit eget liv, så han kan drage alle mennesker til sig. Derfor befaler han ikke nogen, at de ikke skal tage del i hans frelse.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

- 25 Se, råber han til nogen og siger: Gå bort fra mig? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, men han siger: Kom til mig, alle I jordens ender, køb mælk og honning uden penge og uden betaling.
- 26 Se, har han befalet nogen, at de skulle gå ud af synagogerne eller ud af tilbedelseshusene? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej.
- 27 Har han befalet nogen, at de ikke skulle tage del i hans frelse? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, men han har givet den frit til alle mennesker; og han har befalet sit folk, at de skulle formå alle mennesker til omvendelse.
- 28 Se, har Herren befalet nogen, at de ikke skulle tage del i hans godhed? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, men alle mennesker har samme muligheder, det ene såvel som det andet, og det er ingen forbudt.
- 29 Han befaler, at der ingen præstelist skal være; for se, præstelist består deri, at mennesker prædiker og sætter sig selv op som et lys for verden, så de kan opnå vinding og verdens ros, men de stræber ikke efter Zions velfærd.
- 30 Se, Herren har forbudt dette; for se, Gud Herren har givet den befaling, at alle mennesker skal nære næstekærlighed, hvilken næstekærlighed er kærlighed, og medmindre de nærer næstekærlighed, er de intet. For se, hvis de nærede næstekærlighed, ville de ikke lade arbejderen i Zion omkomme.
- 31 Men arbejderen i Zion skal arbejde for Zion, for hvis de arbejder for penge, skal de fortabes.
- 32 Og videre, Gud Herren har befalet, at mennesker ikke skulle slå ihjel, at de ikke skulle lyve, at de ikke skulle stjæle, at de ikke skulle misbruge Herren, deres Guds navn, at de ikke skulle misunde, at de ikke skulle være ondsindede, at de ikke skulle strides, den ene med den anden, at de ikke skulle begå utugtigheder, og at de ikke skulle gøre noget af dette; for den, der gør det, skal fortabes.
- Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.
- Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.
- Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.
- Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.
- He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.
- Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.
- But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.
- And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

33 For ingen af disse misgerninger kommer fra Herren, for han gør det, som er godt blandt menneskenes børn, og han gør intet, undtagen det er tydeligt for menneskenes børn; og han opfordrer dem alle til at komme til sig og tage del i hans godhed, og han afviser ingen, som kommer til ham, sort og hvid, træl og fri, mand og kvinde; og han husker hedningerne; og alle er lige for Gud, både jøde og ikke-jøde.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

Nefis Anden Bog 27

- 1 Men se, i de sidste dage eller i ikke-jødernes dage – ja, se alle de ikke-jødiske folkeslag og også jøderne, både de, der kommer til dette land, og de, der er i andre lande, ja, i alle jordens lande, se, de skal være berusede af ugudelighed og alle slags vederstyggeligheder –
- 2 og når den dag kommer, skal de blive hjemsøgt af Hærskarers Herre med torden og med jordskælv og med megen larm og med storm og med uvejr og med den for-tærende ilds flamme.
- 3 Og alle de folkeslag, der kæmper mod Zion, og som plager hende, skal være som en drøm i et nattesyn; ja, det skal være for dem ligesom for en sulten mand, der drømmer, og se, han spiser, men han vågner, og hans sjæl er tom; eller som en tørstig mand, der drømmer, og se, han drikker, men han vågner, og se, han er svag, og hans sjæl er tørstig; ja, således skal den mængde fra alle folkeslagene være, der kæmper mod Zions bjerg.
- 4 For se, alle I, der begår misgerninger, stands op og tænk, for I skal råbe højt og skrike, ja, I skal være berusede, men ikke af vin, I skal rave, men ikke af stærk drik.
- 5 For se, Herren har udøst den dybe søvns ånd over jer. For se, I har lukket jeres øjne, og I har forkastet profeterne; og jeres herskere og seerne har han skjult på grund af jeres ugudelighed.
- 6 Og det skal ske, at Gud Herren skal bringe ordene fra en bog frem til jer, og det skal være ordene fra dem, der er slumret ind.
- 7 Og se, bogen skal være forsegleet; og i bogen skal der være en åbenbaring fra Gud fra verdens begyndelse til dens ende.
- 8 For se, på grund af det, der er forsegleet, skal det, der er forsegleet, ikke blive givet på folks ugudeligheds og vederstyggeligheds dag. Derfor skal bogen blive holdt tilbage fra dem.
- 9 Men bogen skal blive givet til en mand, og han skal give bogens ord, som er ordene fra dem, der har slumret i støvet, og han skal give disse ord til en anden.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

10 Men de ord, der er forseglede, skal han ikke give, ej heller skal han give bogen. For bogen skal være forseglet ved Guds kraft, og den åbenbaring, som blev forseglet, skal forblive i bogen, indtil Herren anser tiden for at være inde, så de kan komme frem; for se, de åbenbarer alt fra verdens grundlæggelse til dens ende.

11 Og den dag kommer, da de ord i bogen, som blev forseglet, skal blive læst op fra hustagene; og de skal blive læst op ved Kristi kraft; og alt, hvad der nogen sinde er sket blandt menneskenes børn, og som nogen sinde vil ske, ja, til jordens ende, skal blive åbenbaret for menneskenes børn.

12 For se, på den dag, da bogen skal gives til den mand, som jeg har talt om, skal bogen være skjult for verdens øjne, så ingens øjne skal se den, bortset fra at tre vidner skal se den ved Guds kraft, ud over ham, til hvem bogen skal gives; og de skal vidne om sandheden af bogen og det, der er i den.

13 Og der er ingen andre, som skal se den, bortset fra nogle få efter Guds vilje for at aflægge vidnesbyrd om hans ord for menneskenes børn; for Gud Herren har sagt, at de trofastes ord skal tale, som var det fra de døde.

14 Derfor vil Gud Herren skride til at bringe bogens ord frem; og ved så mange vidners mund, som han finder for godt, vil han stadfæste sit ord, og ve den, der forkaster Guds ord!

15 Men se, det skal ske, at Gud Herren skal sige til ham, til hvem han skal give bogen: Tag disse ord, som ikke er forseglede, og giv dem til en anden, så han kan vise dem til den lærde og sige: Jeg beder dig, læs dette. Og den lærde skal sige: Bring bogen hid, og jeg vil læse den.

16 Og se, for verdens æres skyld og for at få vinding siger de dette og ikke for Guds æres skyld.

17 Og manden skal sige: Jeg kan ikke bringe bogen, for den er forseglet.

18 Da skal den lærde sige: Jeg kan ikke læse den.

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

19 For se, det skal ske, at Gud Herren atter vil give bogen og dens ord til ham, der ikke er lærd; og den mand, der ikke er lærd, skal sige: Jeg er ikke lærd.

20 Da skal Gud Herren sige til ham: De lærde skal ikke læse dem, for de har forkastet dem, og jeg er i stand til at udføre mit eget værk, derfor skal du læse de ord, som jeg vil give dig.

21 Rør ikke det, der er forseglet, for jeg vil bringe det frem, når jeg anser tiden for at være inde, for jeg vil vise menneskenes børn, at jeg er i stand til at udføre mit eget værk.

22 For se, når du har læst de ord, som jeg har befalet dig, og har skaffet de vidner, som jeg har lovet dig, da skal du forsegle bogen igen og skjule den i mig, så jeg kan bevare de ord, som du ikke har læst, indtil jeg i min egen visdom finder det tjenligt at åbenbare alt for menneskenes børn.

23 For se, jeg er Gud; og jeg er en Gud, der gør mirakler; og jeg vil vise verden, at jeg er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt; og jeg virker ikke blandt menneskenes børn, undtagen i forhold til deres tro.

24 Og det skal atter ske, at Herren skal sige til ham, der skal læse de ord, der skal blive givet ham:

25 Eftersom dette folk henvender sig til mig med munden og ærer mig med læberne, men har fjernet deres hjerte langt bort fra mig, og deres frygt for mig er tillært efter menneskers forskrifter –

26 vil jeg derfor skride til at udføre et forunderligt værk blandt dette folk, ja, et forunderligt værk og et under, for deres vises og lærdes visdom skal forgå, og deres kloges kundskab skal skjules.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

27 Og ve dem, der søger dybt for at skjule deres plan for Herren! Og deres gerninger sker i mørket, og de siger: Hvem ser os, og hvem kender os? Og de siger også: Det, at du vender tingene på hovedet, skal visselig regnes som pottemagerens ler. Men se, jeg vil vise dem, siger Hærskarers Herre, at jeg kender alle deres gerninger. For skal gerningen sige om ham, der gjorde den: Han har ikke gjort mig? Eller skal det, der er formet, sige om ham, som formede det: Han har ingen forståelse?

28 Men se, siger Hærskarers Herre: Jeg vil vise menneskenes børn, at det kun varer en meget kort tid endnu, og så skal Libanon blive forvandlet til en frugtbar mark; og den frugtbare mark skal regnes for en skov.

29 Og på den dag skal den døve høre bogens ord, og den blindes øjne skal se ud af dunkelhed og ud af mørke.

30 Og de sagtmødige skal også have vækst, og deres fryd skal være i Herren, og de fattige blandt mennesker skal fryde sig i Israels Hellige.

31 For så vist som Herren lever, skal de se, at den skrækindjagende bliver gjort til intet, og at spotteren bliver fortæret, og at alle, der lurere på ondt, bliver forstødt;

32 og de, der gør et menneske til overtræder på grund af et ord og lægger en fælde for ham, der irttesætter i porten og afviser den retfærdige som noget, der er uden værdi.

33 Derfor, så siger Herren, som forløste Abraham, angående Jakobs hus: Jakob skal ikke blive til skamme nu, ej heller skal hans ansigt blegne nu.

34 Men når han ser sine børn, mine hænders værk, i sin midte, skal de hellige mit navn og hellige Jakobs Hellige og skal frygte Israels Gud.

35 Også de, som fór vild i ånden, skal komme til kundskab, og de, som murrede, skal lære lærdom.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

Nefis Anden Bog 28

- 1 Og se nu, mine brødre, jeg har talt til jer, som Ånden har drevet mig, derfor ved jeg, at det visselig vil ske.
- 2 Og det, der skal skrives af bogen, skal være af stor værdi for menneskenes børn og især for vore efterkommere, der er en rest af Israels hus.
- 3 For det skal ske på den dag, at de kirker, som er bygget op, og ikke til Herren, når den ene skal sige til den anden: Se, jeg, jeg er Herrens! og de andre skal sige: Jeg, jeg er Herrens! og således skal enhver sige, som har bygget kirker op, og ikke til Herren –
- 4 og de skal strides, den ene med den anden; og deres præster skal strides, den ene med den anden, og de skal undervise med deres egen lærdom og forkaste Helligånden, som giver mæle.
- 5 Og de forkaster Guds, Israels Helliges, kraft; og de siger til folket: Lyt til os, og hør vor forskrift; for se, der er ingen Gud i dag, for Herren og Forløseren har udført sin gerning, og han har givet sin magt til mennesker;
- 6 se, lyt til min forskrift; hvis de siger, at der er udført et mirakel ved Herrens hånd, så tro det ikke, for i dag er han ikke en Gud, der gør mirakler; han har udført sin gerning.
- 7 Ja, og der skal være mange, der skal sige: Spis, drik, og vær lystig, for i morgen dør vi, og det skal gå os godt.
- 8 Og der skal også være mange, der skal sige: Spis, drik, og vær lystig, men frygt alligevel Gud – han vil retfærdiggøre, at man begår en lille synd; ja, lyv lidt, drag fordel af en anden på grund af hans ord, grav en grav for din næste; det er der intet galt i; og gør alt dette, for i morgen skal vi dø; og dersom vi er skyldige, vil Gud slå os med nogle få slag, og til sidst skal vi blive frelst i Guds rige.
- 9 Ja, og der skal være mange, som på denne måde skal undervise i falske og tomme og tåbelige lærdomme og skal være opblæste i hjertet og søge dybt for at skjule deres planer for Herren; og deres gerninger skal ske i mørket.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Harken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God to-day, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

- 10 Og de helliges blod skal råbe fra jorden mod dem. And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.
- 11 Ja, de har alle forladt vejen; de er blevet fordærvede. Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.
- 12 På grund af stolthed og på grund af falske lærere og falsk lære er deres kirker blevet fordærvede, og deres kirker er indbildske; på grund af stolthed er de opblæste. Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.
- 13 De røver fra de fattige til deres fine helligdomme; de røver fra de fattige til deres fine klæder; og de forfølger de sagtmodige og de fattige i hjertet, fordi de er opblæste i deres stolthed. They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.
- 14 De knejser med nakken og holder hovedet højt; ja, og på grund af stolthed og ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder og utugtigheder er de alle faret vild med undtagelse af nogle få, der er Kristi ydmyge tilhængere; men de bliver ledet således, at de i mange tilfælde begår fejl, fordi de er undervist efter menneskers forskrifter. They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.
- 15 O, de vise og de lærde og de rige, som er opblæste i hjertets stolthed, og alle de, som prædiker falske lærdomme, og alle de, som begår utugtigheder og fordrejer Herrens rette vej, ve, ve, ve dem, siger Herren, Gud den Almægtige, for de skal blive nedstyrtet til helvede! O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!
- 16 Ve dem, som afviser den retfærdige som noget, der er uden værdi, og håner det, der er godt, og siger, at det er uden værdi! For den dag skal komme, da Gud Herren hastigt vil hjem søge jordens indbyggere; og på den dag, da de er fuldstændig modne i ugudelighed, skal de komme. Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.
- 17 Men se, hvis jordens indbyggere omvender sig fra deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder, skal de ikke blive udryddet, siger Hærskarers Herre. But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 18 Men se, den store og vederstyggelige kirke, hele jordens skøge, skal styrte til jorden, og stort skal dens fald blive. But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.
- 19 For Djævelens rige skal ryste, og de, der tilhører det, må nødvendigvis blive vækket til omvendelse, ellers vil Djævelen gribe dem med sine evigtvarende lænker, og de bliver ophidset til vrede og fortæbes. For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;
- 20 For se, på den dag skal han rase i hjertet på menneskenes børn og ophidse dem til vrede imod det, der er godt. For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

21 Og andre beroliger han og luller dem ind i kødelig sikkerhed, så de siger: Alt er vel i Zion, ja, Zion har fremgang, alt er vel – og således narrer Djævelen deres sjæl og fører dem omhyggeligt ned til helvede.

22 Og se, andre drager han bort ved smiger og fortæller dem, at der ikke findes noget helvede, og han siger til dem: Jeg er ingen djævel, for der findes ingen – og således hvisker han dem i øret, indtil han griber dem med sine forfærdelige lænker, hvorfra der ingen udfrielse er.

23 Ja, de bliver grebet af døden og helvede; og døden og helvede og Djævelen og alle, der er blevet fanget deraf, skal stå for Guds trone og blive dømt efter deres gerninger, hvorfra de skal gå til det sted, som er beredt for dem, nemlig en sø af ild og svovl, som er uendelig pinsel.

24 Derfor, ve den, der er ligegyldig i Zion.

25 Ve den, der råber: Alt er vel!

26 Ja, ve den, der lytter til menneskers forskrifter og forkaster Guds kraft og Helligåndsgaven!

27 Ja, ve den, der siger: Vi har modtaget, og vi behøver ikke mere!

28 Og kort sagt, ve alle dem, som dirrer og er vrede på grund af Guds sandhed! For se, den, der er bygget på klippen, modtager den med glæde; og den, der er bygget på en grundvold af sand, bæver af frygt for at falde.

29 Ve den, der siger: Vi har modtaget Guds ord, og vi behøver ikke mere af Guds ord, for vi har tilstrækkeligt!

30 For se, så siger Gud Herren: Jeg vil give menneskenes børn linje på linje, forskrift på forskrift, lidt her og lidt der; og velsignede er de, der lytter til mine forskrifter og låner øre til mit råd, for de skal lære visdom; for til den, der modtager, vil jeg give mere; og fra dem, der siger: Vi har tilstrækkeligt! fra dem skal endog blive taget det, de har.

31 Forbandet er den, som sætter sin lid til mennesket eller gør kød til sin arm eller lytter til menneskers forskrifter, medmindre deres forskrifter bliver givet ved Helligåndens kraft.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

32 Ve ikke-jøderne, siger Herren, Hærskarers Gud, for uagtet jeg rækker min arm ud til dem dag efter dag, forkaster de mig; alligevel vil jeg være barmhjertig mod dem, siger Gud Herren, hvis de vil omvende sig og komme til mig, for min arm er rakt ud hele dagen lang, siger Herren, Hærskarers Gud.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Nefis Anden Bog 29

- 1 Men se, der skal være mange – på den dag, da jeg vil skride til at udføre et forunderligt værk blandt dem, for at jeg kan erindre mine pagter, som jeg har sluttet med menneskenes børn, og for at jeg atter for anden gang kan strække min hånd ud for at genvinde mit folk, som er af Israels hus,
- 2 og også for at jeg kan erindre de løfter, som jeg har givet til dig, Nefi, og også til din far, at jeg vil huske jeres efterkommere, og at jeres efterkommeres ord skal udgå af min mund til jeres efterkommere, og at mine ord skal hvisle frem til jordens ender som et banner for mit folk, der er af Israels hus,
- 3 og fordi mine ord skal hvisle frem – skal mange af ikke-jøderne sige: En bibel! En bibel! Vi har en bibel, og der kan ikke være nogen anden bibel.
- 4 Men så siger Gud Herren: O tåber, de skal få en bibel, og den skal udgå fra jøderne, mit gamle pagtsfolk. Og hvordan takker de jøderne for den bibel, som de får fra dem? Ja, hvad mener ikke-jøderne? Erindrer de jødernes møje og arbejde og umage og deres flid for mig med at tilvejebringe frelse for ikke-jøderne?
- 5 O, I ikke-jøder, har I husket jøderne, mit gamle pagtsfolk! Nej, men I har forbandet dem og har hadet dem og har ikke forsøgt at genrejse dem. Men se, jeg vil gengælde alt dette på jeres eget hoved; for jeg, Herren, har ikke glemt mit folk.
- 6 Du tåbe, som siger: En bibel, vi har en bibel, og vi har ikke brug for nogen anden bibel. Har I fået en bibel uden ved jøderne?
- 7 Ved I ikke, at der findes flere end ét folkeslag? Ved I ikke, at jeg, Herren jeres Gud, har skabt alle mennesker, og at jeg husker dem, som er på øerne i havet, og at jeg hersker i himlene oventil og på jorden nedentil, og jeg bringer mit ord ud til menneskenes børn, ja, til alle jordens folkeslag?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

- 8 Hvorfor murrer I, fordi I skal modtage mere af mit ord? Ved I ikke, at to folkeslags vidnesbyrd er et vidne for jer om, at jeg er Gud, at jeg husker det ene folkeslag såvel som det andet? Derfor taler jeg de samme ord til det ene folkeslag som til det andet. Og når de to folkeslag kommer sammen, skal de to folkeslags vidnesbyrd også komme sammen.
- 9 Og jeg gør dette for at jeg kan bevise over for mange, at jeg er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt, og at jeg taler mine ord efter mit eget behag. Og fordi jeg har talt ét ord, behøver I ikke at formode, at jeg ikke kan tale et andet, for mit værk er endnu ikke fuldbragt, ej heller bliver det det, førend menneskets endeligt, ej heller fra den tid af og for evigt.
- 10 For se, fordi I har en bibel, behøver I ikke at formode, at den indeholder alle mine ord; ej heller behøver I at formode, at jeg ikke har ladet mere blive skrevet.
- 11 For jeg befaler alle mennesker, både i øst og i vest og i nord og i syd og på øerne i havet, at de skal skrive de ord, som jeg taler til dem; for ud fra bøgerne, som skal blive skrevet, vil jeg dømme verden, enhver efter deres gerninger, i henhold til det, der er skrevet.
- 12 For se, jeg skal tale til jøderne, og de skal skrive det, og jeg skal også tale til nefitterne, og de skal skrive det, og jeg skal også tale til de andre stammer af Israels hus, som jeg har ført bort, og de skal skrive det, og jeg skal også tale til alle jordens folkeslag, og de skal skrive det.
- 13 Og det skal ske, at jøderne skal få nefitternes ord, og nefitterne skal få jødernes ord; og nefitterne og jøderne skal få Israels tabte stammers ord, og Israels tabte stammer skal få nefitternes og jødernes ord.
- 14 Og det skal ske, at mit folk, som er af Israels hus, skal blive samlet hjem til deres ejendomslande; og mit ord skal også blive samlet i ét. Og jeg vil vise dem, der kæmper mod mit ord og mod mit folk, som er af Israels hus, at jeg er Gud, og at jeg sluttede pagt med Abraham om, at jeg ville huske hans efterkommere for evigt.

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

Nefis Anden Bog 30

- 1 Og se nu, mine elskede brødre, jeg vil tale til jer; for jeg, Nefi, vil ikke tillade, at I skal tro, at I er mere retfærdige, end ikke-jøderne skal være. For se, medmindre I holder Guds befalinger, skal I alle ligeledes fortabes; og på grund af de ord, der er blevet talt, behøver I ikke at tro, at ikke-jøderne skal blive helt udryddet.
- 2 For se, jeg siger jer, at så mange af ikke-jøderne, som vil omvende sig, er Herrens pagtsfolk; og så mange af jøderne, som ikke vil omvende sig, skal blive forstødt; for Herren slutter ikke pagt med nogen undtagen med dem, der omvender sig og tror på hans Søn, som er Israels Hellige.
- 3 Og nu vil jeg profetere noget mere angående jøderne og ikke-jøderne. For efter at bogen, som jeg har talt om, er kommet frem og blevet skrevet til ikke-jøderne og igen blevet forseglet til Herren, skal der være mange, der vil tro på de ord, der er skrevet; og de skal bringe dem til resten af vore efterkommere.
- 4 Og da skal resten af vore efterkommere få kundskab om os, hvorledes vi kom ud af Jerusalem, og at de er efterkommere af jøderne.
- 5 Og Jesu Kristi evangelium skal blive kundgjort blandt dem; derfor skal de atter blive bragt til kundskab om deres fædre og ligeledes til den kundskab om Jesus Kristus, der fandtes blandt deres fædre.
- 6 Og da skal de fryde sig, for de skal vide, at det er en velsignelse til dem fra Guds hånd; og deres skæl af mørke skal begynde at falde fra deres øjne, og der skal ikke gå mange slægtled bort blandt dem, førend de bliver et rent og et tiltalende folk.
- 7 Og det skal ske, at jøderne, som er spredt, også skal begynde at tro på Kristus, og de skal begynde at samle sig på landets overflade; og så mange, som vil tro på Kristus, skal også blive et tiltalende folk.
- 8 Og det skal ske, at Gud Herren skal begynde sit værk blandt alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk for at tilvejebringe genoprettelsen af sit folk på jorden.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightsome people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

9 Og med retfærdighed skal Gud Herren dømme de fattige og irettesætte med upartiskhed til fordel for jordens sagtmødige. Og han skal slå jorden med sin munds kæp, og med sine læbers ånde skal han slå de ugudelige ihjel.

10 For den tid kommer hastigt, da Gud Herren skal forårsage en stor adskillelse blandt folk, og de ugudelige vil han slå ihjel, og han vil skåne sit folk, ja, selv om han må slå de ugudelige ihjel ved ild.

11 Og retfærdighed skal være bæltet om hans lænder og trofasthed bæltet om hans hofter.

12 Og da skal ulven bo sammen med lammet, og pante- ren skal ligge sammen med kuddet, og kalven og den unge løve og fedekvæget skal leve sammen, og et lille barn skal lede dem.

13 Og koen og bjørnen skal æde; deres unger skal ligge sammen, og løven skal æde strå som oxen.

14 Og det diende barn skal lege ved giftslangens hul, og det afvænnede barn skal stikke sin hånd ind i hugor- mens hule.

15 De skal ikke forvolde ondt eller ødelægge noget på hele mit hellige bjerg; for jorden skal være fuld af kund- skab om Herren, ligesom vandene dækker havet.

16 For se, alle folkeslags gerninger skal blive kundgjort; ja, alt skal blive kundgjort for menneskenes børn.

17 Der er intet, der er hemmeligt, som ikke skal blive åbenbaret; der er ingen mørkets gerning, som ikke skal blive bragt frem i lyset; og der er intet, der er beseglet på jorden, som ikke skal blive løst.

18 Derfor skal alt, som er blevet åbenbaret for menne- skenes børn, blive åbenbaret på den dag; og i lang tid skal Satan ikke længere have magt over menneskenes børns hjerte. Og nu, mine elskede brødre, slutter jeg mi- ne ord.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy moun- tain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be re- vealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

Nefis Anden Bog 3 1

- 1 Og nu holder jeg, Nefi, op med at profetere for jer, mine elskede brødre. Og jeg kan ikke skrive andet end en smule, som jeg visselig ved skal ske; ej heller kan jeg skrive mere end nogle få af min bror Jakobs ord.
- 2 For se, det, som jeg har skrevet, er mig nok, bortset fra nogle få ord, som jeg må tale angående Kristi lære; derfor vil jeg tale tydeligt til jer i overensstemmelse med tydeligheden af min måde at profetere på.
- 3 For min sjæl fryder sig ved tydelighed, for på denne måde udfører Gud Herren sine gerninger blandt menneskenes børn. For Gud Herren giver lys, så man forstår; for han taler til mennesker på deres sprog, så de forstår.
- 4 For se, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at jeg har talt til jer om den profet, som Herren viste mig, og som skulle døbe Guds lam, der skulle borttage verdens synder.
- 5 Og se, hvis Guds lam, han som er hellig, skulle have behov for at blive døbt med vand for at opfylde al retfærdighed, o, hvor meget større behov har da ikke vi, som er uhellige, for at blive døbt, ja, med vand!
- 6 Og nu vil jeg spørge jer, mine elskede brødre, hvorledes Guds lam opfyldte al retfærdighed ved at blive døbt med vand?
- 7 Ved I ikke, at han var hellig? Men uagtet at han er hellig, viser han menneskenes børn, at han hvad kødet angår ydmyger sig for Faderen og bevidner for Faderen, at han ville være lydige mod ham ved at holde hans befalinger.
- 8 For se, efter at han var blevet døbt med vand, steg Helligånden ned over ham i skikkelse af en due.
- 9 Og videre, det viser menneskenes børn, hvor snæver den sti er, og hvor trang den port er, som de skulle træde ind ad, idet han havde været eksemplet for dem.

2 Nephi 3 1

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficeth me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

- 10 Og han sagde til menneskenes børn: Følg mig. Derfor, mine elskede brødre, kan vi følge Jesus, medmindre vi er villige til at holde Faderens befalinger?
- 11 Og Faderen sagde: Omvend jer, omvend jer, og bliv døbt i min elskede Søns navn.
- 12 Og Sønnens røst kom også til mig og sagde: Den, der bliver døbt i mit navn, til ham vil Faderen give Helligånden, ligesom til mig; følg derfor mig, og gør det, som I har set mig gøre.
- 13 Derfor ved jeg, mine elskede brødre, at hvis I vil følge Sønnen med hjertets faste forsæt uden at handle hyklerisk og bedragerisk over for Gud, men med oprigtig hensigt omvender jer fra jeres synder og bevidner for Faderen, at I er villige til at påtage jer Kristi navn ved dåb – ja, ved at følge jeres Herre og jeres frelser ned i vandet i overensstemmelse med hans ord, se, da skal I modtage Helligånden; ja, da kommer dåben med ild og med Helligånden, og da kan I tale med engles tunge og råbe lovprisninger til Israels Hellige.
- 14 Men se, mine elskede brødre, således kom Sønnens røst til mig og sagde: Efter at I har omvendt jer fra jeres synder og bevidnet for Faderen ved dåben med vand, at I er villige til at holde mine befalinger og har modtaget dåben med ild og med Helligånden og kan tale med en ny tunge, ja, med engles tunge, og derefter skulle fornægte mig, da ville det have været bedre for jer, at I ikke havde kendt mig.
- 15 Og jeg hørte en røst fra Faderen, som sagde: Ja, min Elskedes ord er sande og troværdige. Den, der holder ud til enden, han skal blive frelst.
- 16 Og se, mine elskede brødre, heraf ved jeg, at medmindre et menneske holder ud til enden ved at følge den levende Guds Søns eksempel, kan han ikke blive frelst.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

17 Gør derfor det, som jeg har fortalt jer, at jeg har set, at jeres Herre og jeres forløser vil gøre; for af denne årsag er det blevet vist til mig, at I måtte kende den port, som I skal træde ind ad. For den port, som I skal træde ind ad, er omvendelse og dåb med vand; og da får I forladelse for jeres synder ved ild og ved Helligånden.

18 Og da er I på denne snævre og trange sti, der fører til evigt liv; ja, I er trådt ind ad porten; I har handlet i overensstemmelse med Faderens og Sønnens befalinger; og I har modtaget Helligånden, som vidner om Faderen og Sønnen, til opfyldelse af det løfte, som han har givet, at hvis I gik ind ad denne vej, skulle I modtage.

19 Og se, mine elskede brødre, efter at I er kommet ind på denne snævre og trange sti, vil jeg spørge, om alt er gjort? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, for I er ikke kommet så vidt uden ved Kristi ord med urokkelig tro på ham, idet I helt forlader jer på hans fortjenester, han der er mægtig til at frelse.

20 Derfor må I trænge jer frem med standhaftighed i Kristus og have et fuldkommen klart håb og en kærlighed til Gud og til alle mennesker. For se, hvis I trænger jer frem, idet I tager for jer af Kristi ord og holder ud til enden, se, så siger Faderen: I skal få evigt liv.

21 Og se nu, mine elskede brødre, dette er vejen; og der er ikke givet nogen anden vej eller noget andet navn under himlen, hvorved mennesket kan blive frelst i Guds rige. Og se nu, dette er Kristi lære og Faderens og Sønnens og Helligåndens eneste og sande lære, de, som er én Gud uden ende. Amen.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

Nefis Anden Bog 32

- 1 Og se nu, mine elskede brødre, jeg formoder, at I grunder en del i hjertet over det, som I skal gøre, efter at I er trådt ind på denne vej. Men se, hvorfor grunder I over dette i hjertet?
- 2 Husker I ikke, at jeg sagde til jer, at I, efter at have modtaget Helligånden, kunne tale med engles tunge. Og se, hvorledes kunne I tale med engles tunge, hvis ikke det var ved Helligånden?
- 3 Engle taler ved Helligåndens kraft; derfor taler de Kristi ord. Derfor sagde jeg til jer: Tag for jer af Kristi ord, for se, Kristi ord vil fortælle jer alt det, som I skal gøre.
- 4 For hvis I, efter at jeg har talt disse ord, ikke kan forstå dem, så er det, fordi I ikke beder, ej heller banker på; derfor føres I ikke ind i lyset, men må fortabes i mørket.
- 5 For se, jeg siger jer igen, at hvis I vil træde ind på vejen og modtage Helligånden, vil den vise jer alt det, som I skal gøre.
- 6 Se, dette er Kristi lære, og der vil ikke blive givet nogen yderligere lære, førend efter at han har givet sig til kende for jer i kødet. Og det, som han vil sige til jer, når han giver sig til kende for jer i kødet, skal I bestræbe jer på at gøre.
- 7 Og nu kan jeg, Nefi, ikke sige mere; Ånden standser mit mæle, og jeg er overladt til at sørge på grund af menneskers vantro og ugudelighed og uvidenhed og stivnakkethed; for de vil ikke søge efter kundskab eller forstå stor kundskab, når den bliver givet dem i tydelighed, ja, så tydeligt, som et ord kan være.
- 8 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg fornemmer, at I stadig grunder i hjertet, og det bedrøver mig, at jeg må tale angående dette. For hvis I ville lytte til den Ånd, der lærer mennesket at bede, da ville I vide, at I skal bede; for den onde ånd lærer ikke et menneske at bede, men lærer det, at det ikke skal bede.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

9 Men se, jeg siger jer, at I altid skal bede og ikke miste modet; at I ikke må udføre noget for Herren, uden at I først beder til Faderen i Kristi navn om, at han vil hellige din gerning for dig, så din gerning må blive til din sjæls velfærd.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

Nefis Anden Bog 33

- 1 Og se, jeg, Nefi, kan ikke skrive alt det, der blev undervist i blandt mit folk, ej heller er jeg så mægtig med hensyn til at skrive som til tale; for når et menneske taler ved Helligåndens kraft, overfører Helligåndens kraft det til menneskenes børns hjerte.
- 2 Men se, der er mange, som forhærder hjertet mod den hellige Ånd, så den ikke får plads hos dem; derfor kaster de mange ting bort, som er skrevet, og regner dem for noget, der er uden værdi.
- 3 Men jeg, Nefi, har skrevet, hvad jeg har skrevet, og jeg anser det for at have stor værdi, og især for mit folk. For jeg beder bestandig for dem om dagen, og mine øjne væder min pude om natten på grund af dem; og jeg anrår min Gud i tro, og jeg ved, at han vil høre mit råb.
- 4 Og jeg ved, at Gud Herren vil hellige mine bønner til gavn for mit folk. Og de ord, som jeg har skrevet i svaghed, vil blive gjort stærke for dem; for det formår dem til at gøre godt; det bringer dem til kundskab om deres fædre; og det taler om Jesus og formår dem til at tro på ham og til at holde ud til enden, hvilket er evigt liv.
- 5 Og det taler strengt imod synd i overensstemmelse med sandhedens ligefremhed; derfor vil ingen blive vred over de ord, som jeg har skrevet, medmindre han er af Djævelens ånd.
- 6 Jeg fryder mig ved tydelighed, jeg fryder mig ved sandhed, jeg fryder mig ved min Jesus, for han har frelst min sjæl fra helvede.
- 7 Jeg nærer næstekærlighed til mit folk og stor tro i Kristus på, at jeg vil møde mange sjæle uplettede ved hans dommersæde.
- 8 Jeg nærer næstekærlighed til jøden – jeg siger jøden, fordi jeg mener dem, hvorfra jeg kom.
- 9 Jeg nærer også næstekærlighed til ikke-jøderne. Men se, for ingen af dem kan jeg have noget håb, medmindre de bliver forligt med Kristus og træder ind ad den trangport og vandrer på den snævre sti, som fører til liv, og fortsætter på stien, indtil prøvens dag er til ende.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

10 Og se, mine elskede brødre og også jøde og alle I jordens ender, lyt til disse ord og tro på Kristus; og hvis I ikke tror på disse ord, så tro på Kristus. Og hvis I vil tro på Kristus, vil I tro på disse ord, for de er Kristi ord, og han har givet dem til mig, og de lærer alle mennesker, at de skal gøre godt.

11 Og hvis de ikke er Kristi ord, døm selv – for på den yderste dag vil Kristus med kraft og stor herlighed vise jer, at de er hans ord; og I og jeg skal stå ansigt til ansigt foran hans domstol; og I skal vide, at jeg er blevet befalet af ham at skrive dette på trods af min svaghed.

12 Og jeg beder Faderen i Kristi navn om, at mange af os, om ikke alle, må blive frelst i hans rige på den store og yderste dag.

13 Og se, mine elskede brødre, alle de, der er af Israels hus og alle I jordens ender, jeg taler til jer som røsten fra en, der råber fra støvet: Farvel, indtil den store dag kommer.

14 Og I, som ikke vil tage del i Guds godhed og respektere jødernes ord og også mine ord og de ord, der skal udgå af Guds lams mund, se, jeg byder jer et evigtvarende farvel, for disse ord skal dømme jer skyldige på den yderste dag.

15 For hvad jeg besegler på jorden, skal blive ført frem mod jer ved domstolen; for således har Herren befalet mig, og jeg må adlyde. Amen.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Jakobs Bog

Af Jakob, Nefis bror

De ord, som han forkyndte for sine brødre. Han beskæmmer en mand, der forsøger at kuldkaste Kristi lære. Nogle få ord angående Nefis folks historie.

Jakobs Bog 1

- 1 For se, det skete, at der var gået femoghalvtreds år fra den tid, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem, hvorfor Nefi gav mig, Jakob, en befaling angående de små plader, hvorpå dette er indgraveret.
- 2 Og han gav mig, Jakob, den befaling, at jeg på disse plader skulle skrive en smule af det, som jeg anså for at være mest dyrebart; om at jeg kun kortfattet skulle berøre historien om dette folk, som kaldes Nefis folk.
- 3 For han sagde, at hans folks historie skulle indgrave-res på hans andre plader, og at jeg skulle bevare disse pla-der og overdrage dem til mine efterkommere fra slægt- led til slægtled.
- 4 Og hvis der var nogen forkyndelse, der var hellig, el-ler nogen åbenbaring, der var stor, eller nogen profeti, at jeg da skulle skrive hovedpunkterne af dem på disse plader og berøre dem så meget, som det var muligt for Kristi skyld og for vort folks skyld.
- 5 For på grund af tro og stor ængstelse var det i sandhed blevet tilkendegivet for os angående vort folk, hvad der skulle ske med dem.
- 6 Og vi modtog også mange åbenbaringer og den ånd, der er forbundet med megen profeti; derfor kendte vi til Kristus og hans rige, som skulle komme.
- 7 For se, vi arbejdede flittigt blandt vort folk, for at vi kunne formå dem til at komme til Kristus og få del i Guds godhed, så de kunne gå ind til hans hvile, så han ikke i sin vrede skulle sværge, at de ikke skulle gå ind, li-gesom ved oprøret i fristelsens dage, mens Israels børn var i ørkenen.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He confoundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the his-tory of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment con-cerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should pre-serve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or rev-elation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

8 Gud derfor give, at vi kunne formå alle mennesker til ikke at sætte sig op imod Gud og opildne ham til vrede, men at alle mennesker ville tro på Kristus og have hans død for øje, og påtage sig hans kors og bære verdens skam; derfor påtager jeg, Jakob, mig at opfylde min brors Nefis befaling.

9 Se, Nefi begyndte at blive gammel, og han så, at han snart skulle dø; derfor salvede han en mand til fra da af at være konge og hersker over sit folk i overensstemmelse med kongernes regeringsperioder.

10 Folket havde elsket Nefi overordentlig højt, for han havde været en stor beskytter for dem og havde ført Labans sværd til forsvar for dem og havde alle sine dage arbejdet for deres velfærd –

11 hvorfor folket nærede ønske om at bevare hans navn i deres erindring. Og den, der regerede i hans sted, blev af folket kaldt Nefi den Anden, Nefi den Tredje og så videre i overensstemmelse med kongernes regeringsperioder; og således blev de kaldt af folket, ligegyldigt hvilket navn de havde.

12 Og det skete, at Nefi døde.

13 Se, de folk, der ikke var lamanitter, var nefitter; alligevel blev de kaldt nefitter, jakobitter, josefitter, zoramitter, lamanitter, lemuelitter og ismaelitter.

14 Men jeg, Jakob, vil ikke herefter skelne mellem dem ved disse navne, men jeg vil kalde dem, der stræber efter at udrydde Nefis folk, for lamanitter, og dem, der er venligt stemt mod Nefi, vil jeg kalde nefitter eller Nefis folk i overensstemmelse med kongernes regeringsperioder.

15 Og se, det skete, at Nefis folk i den anden konges regeringstid begyndte at blive hårde i hjertet og i nogen grad hengive sig til ugudelige skikke, ligesom David for-dum, der begærede mange hustruer og medhustruer, og ligeså Salomo, hans søn.

16 Ja, og de begyndte også at søge efter meget guld og sølv og begyndte at blive noget indbildske i stolthed.

17 Derfor gav jeg, Jakob, dem disse ord, mens jeg under-viste dem i templet efter først at have modtaget mit ærinde af Herren.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

18 For jeg, Jakob, og min bror Josef var blevet indviet til præster og lærere for dette folk under Nefis hånd.

19 Og vi højnede vort embede for Herren, idet vi påtog os ansvaret og selv svarede for folkets synder, hvis vi ikke lærte dem Guds ord med al flid; når vi derfor arbejdede af alle vore kræfter, ville deres blod ikke komme på vore klæder; men ellers ville deres blod komme på vore klæder, og vi ville ikke blive fundet uplettede på den yderste dag.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Jakobs Bog 2

- 1 De ord, som Jakob, Nefis bror, talte til Nefis folk efter Nefis død:
- 2 Se, mine elskede brødre, i henhold til det ansvar, jeg er under for Gud med hensyn til at højne mit embede med alvor, og for at jeg kan gøre mine klæder rene for jeres synder, kommer jeg, Jakob, op i templet i dag for at kundgøre jer Guds ord.
- 3 Og I ved selv, at jeg hidtil har været flittig i det embede, som er mit kald, men i dag er jeg tynget af meget større omsorg og ængstelse for jeres sjæls velfærd, end jeg hidtil har været.
- 4 For se, indtil nu har I været lydige mod Herrens ord, som jeg har givet jer.
- 5 Men se, lyt til mig og vid, at jeg ved himlens og jordens almægtige skabers hjælp kan fortælle jer angående jeres tanker, hvorledes I er begyndt at begå synd, hvilken synd forekommer mig meget vederstyggelig, ja, og vederstyggelig for Gud.
- 6 Ja, det bedrøver min sjæl og får mig til med skam at vige tilbage for min skabers nærhed, at jeg må vidne for jer om jeres hjertes ugudelighed.
- 7 Og det bedrøver mig også, at jeg må tale med så megen ligefremhed angående jer foran jeres hustruer og jeres børn, hvoraf manges følelser er overordentlig sarte og dydige og fintmærkende for Gud, hvilket er behageligt for Gud;
- 8 og jeg formoder, at de er kommet herop for at høre Guds behagelige ord, ja, det ord, der læger den sårede sjæl.
- 9 Derfor tynger det min sjæl, at jeg på grund af den strenge befaling, som jeg har fået af Gud, skal være drevet til at formane jer med hensyn til jeres forbrydelser, til at gøre sårene større hos dem, der allerede er sårede, i stedet for at lindre og læge deres sår; og de, der ikke er sårede, får i stedet for at tage for sig af Guds behagelige ord dolke rettet mod sig, som gennemborer deres sjæl og sårer deres fintmærkende sind.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

- 10 Men på trods af opgavens størrelse må jeg handle i overensstemmelse med Guds strenge befaling og fortælle jer om jeres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder i overværelse af de rene i hjertet og det sønderknuste hjerte og under blikket fra Gud den Almægtiges gennemtrængende øje.
- 11 Derfor må jeg fortælle jer sandheden i overensstemmelse med Guds ords ligefremhed. For se, da jeg adspurgte Herren, kom ordet til mig således: Jakob, gå op i templet i morgen, og kundgør det ord, som jeg vil give dig, for dette folk.
- 12 Og se nu, mine brødre, dette er det ord, som jeg kundgør for jer, at mange af jer er begyndt at søge efter guld og efter sølv og efter al slags kostbar malm, hvorpå dette land, som er et forjættet land for jer og jeres efterkommere, er yderst rigt.
- 13 Og forsynets hånd har smilet til jer med største behag, så I har fået store rigdomme; og fordi nogle af jer har fået mere rigeligt, end jeres brødre har, er I indbildske i hjertets stolthed og knejser med nakken og holder hovedet højt på grund af jeres kostbare klæder og forfølger jeres brødre, fordi I tror, at I er bedre end de.
- 14 Og se, mine brødre, tror I, at Gud retfærdiggør jer i dette? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej. Men han dømmer jer skyldige, og hvis I bliver ved med dette, skal hans straffedomme hastigt komme over jer.
- 15 O, gid han ville vise jer, at han kan gennembore jer, og at han med et eneste øjekast kan slå jer i støvet!
- 16 O, gid han ville befri jer for denne syndighed og vederstyggelighed. Og gid I ville lytte til hans befalingers ord og ikke lade denne jeres hjertes stolthed fordærve jeres sjæl!
- 17 Tænk på jeres brødre som på jer selv, og vær venlige mod alle og gavmilde med jeres gods, så de må blive lige ligesom I.
- 18 Men før I søger efter rigdomme, søg da Guds rige.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

19 Og efter at I har fået et håb i Kristus, skal I få rigdomme, hvis I søger dem, og I vil søge dem med den hensigt at gøre godt – at klæde den nøgne og at bispise den sultne og at sætte den fangne fri og at yde lindring til den syge og den plagede.

20 Og se, mine brødre, jeg har talt til jer om stolthed; og de af jer, der har plaget jeres næste og forfulgt ham, fordi I var stolte i hjertet over det, som Gud har givet jer, hvad siger I dertil?

21 Tror I ikke, at sådanne ting er vederstyggelige for ham, som har skabt alt kød? Og den ene skabning er lige så dyrebar i hans øjne som den anden. Og alt kød kommer af støvet; og med det selv samme sigte har han skabt dem, at de skulle holde hans befalinger og forherlige ham for evigt.

22 Og nu holder jeg op med at tale til jer om denne stolthed. Og var det ikke, fordi jeg måtte tale til jer om en grovere forbrydelse, ville mit hjerte fryde sig overordentligt ved jer.

23 Men Guds ord tynger mig på grund af jeres grovere forbrydelser. For se, så siger Herren: Dette folk begynder at vokse i ugudelighed; de forstår ikke skrifterne, for de forsøger at undskylde sig, når de begår utugtigheder, på grund af det, der blev skrevet om David og Salomo, hans søn.

24 Se, David og Salomo havde i sandhed mange hustruer og medhustruer, hvad der var vederstyggeligt for mig, siger Herren.

25 Derfor, så siger Herren: Jeg har ført dette folk ud af Jerusalems land ved min arms kraft, for at jeg kan oprejse mig en retfærdig gren af Josefs lænders frugt.

26 Derfor vil jeg, Gud Herren, ikke tillade, at dette folk skal gøre, som de fra forud gjorde.

27 Derfor, mine brødre, hør mig, og lyt til Herrens ord: For der skal ikke være nogen mand blandt jer, som skal have mere end én hustru, og medhustruer skal han ikke have nogen af.

28 For jeg, Gud Herren, fryder mig ved kvinders kyskhed, og utugtigheder er en vederstyggelighed for mig; så siger Hærskarers Herre.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

29 For se, dette folk skal holde mine befalinger, siger Hærskarers Herre, ellers skal landet være forbandet på grund af dem.

30 For hvis jeg vil skaffe mig efterkommere, siger Hærskarers Herre, så vil jeg befale mit folk det; ellers skal de lytte til dette.

31 For se, jeg, Herren, har set sorgen og hørt mit folks døtres sørgeudbrud i Jerusalems land, ja, og i alle mit folks lande, på grund af deres mænds ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder.

32 Og jeg vil ikke tillade, siger Hærskarers Herre, at råbene fra de skønne døtre af dette folk, som jeg har ført ud af Jerusalems land, skal komme op for mig mod mit folks mænd, siger Hærskarers Herre.

33 For de skal ikke føre mit folks døtre bort som fanger på grund af disses sarthed, uden at jeg skal hjem søge dem med en hård forbandelse, lige indtil de bliver udryddet; for de skal ikke begå utugtigheder, ligesom dem fordum, siger Hærskarers Herre.

34 Og se nu, mine brødre, I ved, at disse befalinger blev givet vor fader Lehi; derfor har I kendt dem før, og I er kommet under stor fordømmelse, for I har gjort det, som I ikke burde have gjort.

35 Se, I har gjort større misgerninger end lamanitterne, vore brødre. I har knust jeres sarte hustruers hjerte og mistet jeres børns tillid på grund af jeres dårlige eksempel over for dem, og deres hjertes hulken stiger op til Gud mod jer. Og på grund af strengheden af Guds ord, som kommer ned mod jer, døde mangt et hjerte, genomboret af dybe sår.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Jakobs Bog 3

- 1 Men se, jeg, Jakob, ønsker at tale til jer, som er rene i hjertet. Se hen til Gud med fasthed i sindet, og bed til ham med stor tro, så vil han trøste jer i jeres trængsler, så vil han tale jeres sag og sende retfærdighed ned over dem, der søger jeres udryddelse.
- 2 O, alle I, der er rene i hjertet, løft hovedet, og modtag Guds behagelige ord, og tag for jer af hans kærlighed, for det kan I gøre for evigt, hvis jeres sind er urokkeligt.
- 3 Men ve, ve jer, der ikke er rene i hjertet, som i dag er tilsølede for Gud; for medmindre I omvender jer, bliver landet forbandet på grund af jer, og lamanitterne, som ikke er så tilsølede som I, men som alligevel er forbandet med en hård forbandelse, skal tugte jer, lige indtil I bliver udryddet.
- 4 Og tiden kommer hastigt, hvor de, medmindre I omvender jer, skal tage jeres arveland i besiddelse, og Gud Herren vil lede de retfærdige bort fra jer.
- 5 Se, lamanitterne, jeres brødre, som I hader på grund af deres tilsølethed og den forbandelse, som er kommet over deres hud, er mere retfærdige end I; for de har ikke glemt Herrens befaling, som blev givet vor fader, om at de kun skulle have én hustru, og at medhustruer skulle de ikke have nogen af, og at der ikke skulle blive begået utugtigheder blandt dem.
- 6 Og se, denne befaling bestræber de sig på at holde; derfor, på grund af denne bestræbelse i at holde denne befaling, vil Gud Herren ikke udrydde dem, men vil være barmhjertig mod dem, og en dag vil de blive et velsignet folk.
- 7 Se, deres mænd elsker deres hustruer, og deres hustruer elsker deres mænd; og deres mænd og deres hustruer elsker deres børn; og deres vantro og deres had til jer skyldes deres fædres ugudelighed; hvor meget bedre end de er derfor I i jeres store skabers øjne?
- 8 O, mine brødre, jeg frygter, at medmindre I omvender jer fra jeres synder, vil deres hud blive hvidere end jeres, når I sammen med dem skal blive ført frem for Guds trone.

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

9 Jeg giver jer derfor den befaling, som er Guds ord, at I ikke længere håner dem på grund af deres mørke hud; ej heller skal I håne dem på grund af deres tilsølethed; men I skal erindre jeres egen tilsølethed og huske, at deres tilsølethed skyldes deres fædre.

10 For se, I skal huske jeres børn, hvorledes I har bedrøvet deres hjerte på grund af det eksempel, I har været for dem; og husk også, at I på grund af jeres tilsølethed kan bringe jeres børn til fordærvelse, og jeres hoved skal blive overdænget med deres synder på den yderste dag.

11 O, mine brødre, lyt til mine ord, væk jeres sjæls evner, ryst jer selv, så I kan vågne op af dødens slummer; og befri jer fra helvedes kvaler, så I ikke bliver Djævelens engle, der skal kastes i den sø af ild og svovl, der er den anden død.

12 Og se, jeg, Jakob, talte meget mere til Nefis folk, idet jeg advarede dem mod utugt og uterlighed og alle slags synder og fortalte dem om de forfærdelige følger deraf.

13 Og en hundrededel af virket blandt dette folk, der nu begyndte at blive talrigt, kan ikke skrives på disse plader; men meget af deres virke er nedskrevet på de store plader, og deres krige og deres stridigheder og deres kongers regeringsperioder.

14 Disse plader kaldes Jakobs plader, og de blev lavet ved Nefis hånd. Og nu holder jeg op med at tale disse ord.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Jakobs Bog 4

- 1 Se nu, det skete, at jeg, Jakob, der i ord har forkyndt meget for mit folk (og jeg kan ikke skrive mere end nogle få af mine ord på grund af vanskeligheden ved at indgrave vore ord på plader), og vi ved, at det, som vi skriver på plader, skal bestå;
- 2 men hvad vi end skriver på, andet end på plader, det vil forgå og svinde bort; men vi kan skrive nogle få ord på plader, som vil give vore børn og også vore elskede brødre en lille grad af kundskab om os, eller om deres fædre –
- 3 se, ved dette fryder vi os nu; og vi arbejder flittigt med at indgrave disse ord på plader i håbet om, at vore elskede brødre og vore børn vil modtage dem med taknemligt hjerte og se på dem, så de med glæde og ikke med sorg og heller ikke med foragt kan lære om deres første forældre.
- 4 For i denne hensigt har vi skrevet dette, for at de må vide, at vi kendte til Kristus, og at vi havde et håb om hans herlighed mange hundrede år før hans komme; og ikke alene havde vi selv et håb om hans herlighed, men også alle de hellige profeter, som var før os.
- 5 Se, de troede på Kristus og tilbad Faderen i hans navn, og vi tilbeder også Faderen i hans navn. Og i denne hensigt holder vi Moseloven, fordi den retter vor sjæl mod ham; og af denne årsag bliver det regnet os til retfærdighed, ligesom det blev tilregnet Abraham i ørkenen at være lydige mod Guds befalinger ved at ofre sin søn Isak, hvilket er et sindbillede på Gud og hans enbårne Søn.
- 6 Derfor gransker vi profeterne, og vi har mange åbenbaringer og profetiens ånd; og da vi har alle disse vidnesbyrd, får vi et håb, og vor tro bliver urokkelig i en sådan grad, at vi i sandhed kan befale i Jesu navn, og selv træerne adlyder os eller bjergene eller havets bølger.
- 7 Alligevel viser Gud Herren os vor svaghed, så vi kan erfare, at det er ved hans nåde og hans store velvilje over for menneskenes børn, at vi har magt til at gøre dette.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

- 8 Se, store og forunderlige er Herrens gerninger. Hvor uransagelige er ikke dybderne i hans hemmeligheder, og det er umuligt, at mennesket skulle kunne finde ud af alle hans veje. Og ingen kender til hans veje, medmindre det bliver åbenbaret for ham; derfor, brødre, foragt ikke Guds åbenbaringer.
- 9 For se, ved hans ords kraft kom mennesket til jordens overflade, hvilken jord blev skabt ved hans ords kraft. Hvis Gud derfor var i stand til at tale, så verden blev til, og tale, så mennesket blev skabt, o, hvorfor skulle han da ikke være i stand til at befale jorden eller sine hænders værk på dens overflade efter sin vilje og sit behag?
- 10 Derfor, brødre, forsøg ikke at give Herren råd, men at tage mod råd af hans hånd. For se, I ved selv, at han giver råd i visdom og i retfærdighed og i stor barmhjertighed til hele sit værk.
- 11 Elskede brødre, bliv derfor forliget med ham ved Kristi, hans enbårne Søns, forsoning, så I kan få en opstandelse i overensstemmelse med opstandelsens kraft, som er i Kristus, og blive fremstillet for Gud som Kristi førstegrøde, idet I har tro og har fået et godt håb om herlighed i ham, før han giver sig til kende i kødet.
- 12 Og se, I elskede, vær ikke forundrede over, at jeg fortæller jer dette; for hvorfor ikke tale om Kristi forsoning og stræbe efter en fuldkommen kundskab om ham såvel som at stræbe efter kundskaben om en opstandelse og den tilkommende verden?
- 13 Se, mine brødre, den, der profeterer, lad ham profeterer således, at folk kan forstå det; for Ånden taler sandheden og lyver ikke. Derfor taler den om ting, som de virkelig er, og om ting, som de virkelig vil blive; derfor bliver disse ting givet tydeligt til kende for os til vor sjæls frelse. Men se, vi er ikke de eneste vidner om disse ting; for Gud omtalte dem også for de fordums profeter.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

14 Men se, jøderne var et stivnakket folk; og de foragtede de tydelige ord og slog profeterne ihjel og søgte efter det, som de ikke kunne forstå. Derfor, på grund af deres blindhed, hvilken blindhed skyldtes, at de så forbi målet, må de nødvendigvis falde; for Gud har taget sin tydelighed bort fra dem og givet dem meget, som de ikke kan forstå, fordi de ønskede det således. Og fordi de ønskede det, har Gud gjort det, så de vil snuble.

15 Og se, jeg, Jakob, bliver ledt af Ånden til at profetere; for jeg fornemmer ved tilskyndelsen fra den Ånd, der er i mig, at jøderne ved at snuble vil forkaste den sten, hvorpå de kunne bygge og få en sikker grundvold.

16 Men se, ifølge skrifterne skal denne sten blive den store og den sidste og den eneste sikre grundvold, hvorpå jøderne kan bygge.

17 Og se, mine elskede, hvorledes er det muligt, at de efter at have forkastet den sikre grundvold nogen sinde kan bygge på den, så den kan blive deres hovedhjørnesten?

18 Se, mine elskede brødre, jeg vil udfolde denne hemmelighed for jer, hvis jeg ikke på en eller anden måde bliver røkket fra min standhaftighed i Ånden og snubler på grund af min store ængstelse for jer.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

Jakobs Bog 5

- 1 Se, mine brødre, husker I ikke at have læst profeten Zenos' ord, som han talte til Israels hus, da han sagde:
- 2 Lyt, o Israels hus, og hør ordene fra mig, Herrens profet.
- 3 For se, så siger Herren: Jeg vil sammenligne dig, o Israels hus, med et forædlet oliventræ, som en mand tog og passede i sin vingård; og det voksede og blev gammelt og begyndte at visne.
- 4 Og det skete, at vingårdens herre gik ud, og han så, at hans oliventræ begyndte at visne, og han sagde: Jeg vil beskære det og grave rundt om det og passe det, så det måske kan skyde unge og spæde grene og ikke dø.
- 5 Og det skete, at han beskar det og gravede rundt om det og passede det i henhold til sit ord.
- 6 Og det skete efter mange dage, at det begyndte at skyde nogle få unge og spæde grene; men se, dets top begyndte at dø.
- 7 Og det skete, at vingårdens herre så det, og han sagde til sin tjener: Det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste dette træ; gå derfor hen og ryk grenene af et vildt oliventræ, og bring dem hen til mig; og vi vil rykke de store grene af, som er begyndt at visne hen, og vi vil kaste dem i ilden, så de kan blive brændt.
- 8 Og se, siger vingårdens Herre, jeg fjerner mange af disse unge og spæde grene, og jeg vil pode dem ind, hvor jeg end vil; og det betyder ikke noget, selv om roden af dette træ skulle dø, for jeg kan alligevel bevare frugten deraf for mig selv; jeg vil derfor tage disse unge og spæde grene, og jeg vil pode dem ind, hvor jeg end vil.
- 9 Tag du grenene fra det vilde oliventræ, og pod dem ind i deres sted; og dem, som jeg har rykket af, vil jeg kaste i ilden og brænde dem, så de ikke ligger og flyder på jorden i min vingård.
- 10 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herres tjener handlede i henhold til vingårdens Herres ord og indpodede grenene fra det vilde oliventræ.

Jacob 5

- Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:
- Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.
- For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.
- And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.
- And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.
- And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.
- And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.
- And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.
- Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.
- And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

11 Og vingårdens Herre lod grave rundt om det og lod det beskære og passe, idet han sagde til sin tjener: Det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste dette træ; derfor, for at jeg måske kan bevare dets rødder, så de ikke dør, så jeg kan bevare dem for mig selv, har jeg gjort dette.

12 Gå derfor hen og tag vare på træet, og pas det i henhold til mine ord.

13 Og disse vil jeg sætte i den nederste del af min vingård, hvor jeg end vil, det vedkommer ikke dig; og jeg gør det, for at jeg kan bevare de naturlige grene af træet for mig selv, og også for at jeg kan oplagre frugt deraf til mig selv til tiden efter høsten; for det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste dette træ og dets frugt.

14 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre gik sin vej og skjulte de naturlige grene af det forædlede oliventræ i de nederste dele af vingården, nogle et sted og nogle et andet, efter sin vilje og sit behag.

15 Og det skete, at der gik en lang tid, og vingårdens Herre sagde til sin tjener: Kom, lad os gå ned i vingården, så vi kan arbejde i vingården.

16 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre og også tjeneren gik ned i vingården for at arbejde. Og det skete, at tjeneren sagde til sin herre: Se, se her, se træet.

17 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre så og skuede træet, hvorpå de vilde olivengrene var blevet podet ind; og det var vokset til og var begyndt at bære frugt. Og han så, at det var godt, og dets frugt var som den naturlige frugt.

18 Og han sagde til tjeneren: Se, grenene fra det vilde træ har suget væden fra dets rod, så dets rod har frembragt megen kraft; og på grund af den megen kraft fra dets rod har de vilde grene frembragt forædlet frugt. Se, hvis vi ikke havde indpodet disse grene, ville træet være visnet. Og se nu, jeg vil oplagre megen frugt, som træet har frembragt, og frugten deraf vil jeg oplagre til mig selv til tiden efter høsten.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

19 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til tjeneren: Kom, lad os gå til den nederste del af vingården og se, om de naturlige grene af træet ikke også har frembragt megen frugt, så jeg kan oplagre frugten deraf til mig selv til tiden efter høsten.

20 Og det skete, at de gik derhen, hvor herren havde skjult de naturlige grene af træet, og han sagde til tjeneren: Se disse; og han så den første, at den havde frembragt megen frugt, og han så også, at den var god. Og han sagde til tjeneren: Tag af frugten deraf, og oplagr den til tiden efter høsten, så jeg kan bevare den til mig selv; for se, sagde han, i denne lange tid har jeg passet den, og den har frembragt megen frugt.

21 Og det skete, at tjeneren sagde til sin herre: Hvorfor kom du her for at plante dette træ eller denne gren af træet? For se, det var det ringeste sted af al jorden i din vingård.

22 Og vingårdens Herre sagde til ham: Rådgiv mig ikke; jeg vidste, at det var et ringe stykke jord; derfor sagde jeg til dig, at jeg har passet det i denne lange tid, og du ser, at det har frembragt megen frugt.

23 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til sin tjener: Se her, se, jeg har også plantet en anden gren af træet; og du ved, at dette stykke jord var ringere end det første. Men se træet. Jeg har passet det i denne lange tid, og det har frembragt megen frugt; saml den derfor ind, og oplagr den til tiden efter høsten, så jeg kan bevare den til mig selv.

24 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre igen sagde til sin tjener: Se her, og se også en anden gren, som jeg har plantet; se, jeg har også passet den, og den har frembragt frugt.

25 Og han sagde til tjeneren: Se her, og se den sidste. Se, denne har jeg plantet i et godt stykke jord; og jeg har passet den i denne lange tid, og kun en del af træet har frembragt forædlet frugt, og den anden del af træet har frembragt vild frugt; se, jeg har passet dette træ som de andre.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

- 26 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til tjeneren: Ryk de grene af, som ikke har frembragt god frugt, og kast dem i ilden.
- 27 Men se, tjeneren sagde til ham: Lad os beskære det og grave rundt om det og passe det lidt længere, så det måske kan frembringe god frugt til dig, som du kan oplagre til tiden efter høsten.
- 28 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre og vingårdens Herres tjener passede al vingårdens frugt.
- 29 Og det skete, at der var gået en lang tid, og vingårdens Herre sagde til sin tjener: Kom, lad os gå ned i vingården, så vi igen kan arbejde i vingården. For se, tiden nærmer sig, og enden kommer snart; derfor må jeg oplagre frugt til mig selv til tiden efter høsten.
- 30 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre og tjeneren gik ned i vingården; og de kom til det træ, hvis naturlige grene var blevet brækket af, og hvorpå de vilde grene var blevet podet ind; og se, al slags frugt tyngede træet.
- 31 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre smagte på frugten, ja, på hver sort efter dens antal. Og vingårdens Herre sagde: Se, i denne lange tid har vi passet dette træ, og jeg har oplagret megen frugt til mig selv til tiden efter høsten.
- 32 Men se, denne gang har det frembragt megen frugt, og der er intet af den, der er god. Og se, der er al slags dårlig frugt; og det gavner mig intet til trods for alt vort arbejde, og nu bedrøver det mig, at jeg skulle miste dette træ.
- 33 Og vingårdens Herre sagde til tjeneren: Hvad skal vi gøre med træet, for at jeg igen kan få god frugt deraf til mig selv?
- 34 Og tjeneren sagde til sin herre: Se, fordi du indpodede grenene fra det vilde oliventræ, har de givet næring til rødderne, så de er i live og ikke er døde; derfor ser du, at de endnu er gode.
- 35 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til sin tjener: Træet gavner mig intet, og dets rødder gavner mig intet, så længe det frembringer dårlig frugt.
- And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.
- But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.
- And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.
- And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.
- And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.
- And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.
- But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.
- And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?
- And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.
- And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

36 Alligevel ved jeg, at rødderne er gode, og til mit eget formål har jeg bevaret dem; og på grund af deres megen kraft har de hidtil frembragt god frugt på de vilde grene.

37 Men se, de vilde grene er vokset og er blevet stærkere end dets rødder; og fordi de vilde grene har fået overhånd over dets rødder, har det frembragt megen dårlig frugt; og fordi det har frembragt så megen dårlig frugt, ser du, at det begynder at dø, og det bliver snart modent, så det kan blive kastet i ilden, medmindre vi gør noget for at bevare det.

38 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til sin tjener: Lad os gå ned i de nederste dele af vingården og se, om de naturlige grene også har frembragt dårlig frugt.

39 Og det skete, at de gik ned i de nederste dele af vingården. Og det skete, at de så, at frugten fra de naturlige grene også var blevet fordærvet; ja, den første og den anden og også den sidste; og de var alle blevet fordærvet.

40 Og den vilde frugt på den sidste havde fået så megen overhånd over den del af det træ, der frembragte god frugt, at grenen var visnet hen og var død.

41 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre græd og sagde til tjeneren: Hvad mere kunne jeg have gjort for min vingård?

42 Se, jeg vidste, at al frugten i vingården med undtagelse af disse var blevet fordærvede. Og se, disse, som engang har frembragt god frugt, er også blevet fordærvet; og nu duer ingen af træerne i vingården til andet end at blive hugget om og kastet i ilden.

43 Og dette sidste, hvis gren er visnet hen, plantede jeg i et godt stykke jord, ja, i det, der var mig mere udsøgt end alle andre dele af jorden i min vingård.

44 Og du så, at jeg også fældede det, som dækkede dette stykke jord, så jeg kunne plante dette træ i dets sted.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

45 Og du så, at en del af det frembragte god frugt, og en del af det frembragte vild frugt; og fordi jeg ikke rykkede grenene af det og kastede dem i ilden, se, derfor har de fået overhånd over den gode gren, så den er visnet hen.

46 Og se nu, til trods for al den omsorg vi har draget for min vingård, er træerne deri blevet fordærvede, så de ikke frembringer nogen god frugt, og disse havde jeg håbet at bevare for at oplagre frugt deraf til mig selv til tiden efter høsten. Men se, de er blevet ligesom det vilde oliventræ, og de er ikke andet værd end at blive hugget om og kastet i ilden, og det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste dem.

47 Men hvad mere kunne jeg have gjort i min vingård? Har jeg holdt min hånd tilbage, så jeg ikke har passet den? Nej, jeg har passet den, og jeg har gravet den, og jeg har beskåret den, og jeg har gødet den, og jeg har udstrakt min hånd næsten hele dagen lang, og enden nærmer sig. Og det bedrøver mig, at jeg skal hugge alle træerne i min vingård om og kaste dem i ilden, for at de skal blive brændt. Hvem er det, der har fordærvet min vingård?

48 Og det skete, at tjeneren sagde til sin herre: Er det ikke højden af træerne i din vingård – har deres grene ikke fået overhånd over rødderne, som er gode? Og fordi grenene har fået overhånd over deres rødder, se, da voksede de hurtigere end røddernes kraft og tog kraft til sig selv. Se, siger jeg, er dette ikke årsagen til, at træerne i din vingård er blevet fordærvede?

49 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sagde til tjeneren: Kom, lad os hugge træerne i vingården om og kaste dem i ilden, så de ikke skal ligge og flyde på jorden i min vingård; for jeg har gjort alt. Hvad mere kunne jeg have gjort for min vingård?

50 Men se, tjeneren sagde til vingårdens Herre: Skån den lidt længere.

51 Og Herren sagde: Ja, jeg vil skåne den lidt længere, for det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste træerne i min vingård.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

52 Lad os derfor tage af grenene af disse, som jeg har plantet i de nederste dele af min vingård, og lad os pøde dem ind på det træ, hvorfra de kom; og lad os af træet rykke de grene, hvis frugt er mest bitter og i deres sted indpøde træets naturlige grene.

53 Og dette vil jeg gøre, for at træet ikke skal dø, for at jeg måske kan bevare rødderne deraf til mit eget formål.

54 Og se, rødderne fra træets naturlige grene, som jeg plantede, hvor end jeg ville det, er stadig i live; derfor, for også at bevare dem til mit eget formål, vil jeg tage nogle af grenene fra dette træ, og jeg vil pøde dem ind på dem. Ja, jeg vil pøde grenene fra deres modertræ ind på dem, så jeg også kan bevare rødderne til mig selv, så de, når de bliver tilstrækkelig stærke, måske kan frembringe god frugt til mig, og jeg endnu kan få glæde af min vingårds frugt.

55 Og det skete, at de tog fra det naturlige træ, som var blevet vildt, og podede ind på de naturlige træer, som også var blevet vilde.

56 Og de tog også fra de naturlige træer, som var blevet vilde, og podede ind på deres modertræ.

57 Og vingårdens Herre sagde til tjeneren: Ryk ikke de vilde grene af træerne, undtagen de, der er mest bitre; og på dem skal I pøde, sådan som jeg har sagt.

58 Og vi vil igen passe træerne i vingården, og vi vil beskære deres grene; og vi vil rykke de grene af træerne, som er modne, og som skal dø, og kaste dem i ilden.

59 Og dette gør jeg, for at deres rødder måske kan få styrke, da de er gode; og fordi grenene er blevet byttet om, så de gode kan få overhånd over de dårlige.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

60 Og fordi jeg har bevaret de naturlige grene og deres rødder, og fordi jeg igen har indpodet de naturlige grene på deres modertræ og har bevaret rødderne på deres modertræ, så træerne i min vingård måske igen kan frembringe god frugt; og så jeg igen kan glæde mig over min vingårds frugt, og så jeg måske kan fryde mig overordentlig meget ved, at jeg har bevaret rødderne og grenene af den første frugt –

61 kom derfor, og tilkald tjenere, så vi kan arbejde flittigt af alle vore kræfter i vingården, så vi kan berede vejen, så jeg igen kan frembringe den naturlige frugt, hvilken naturlig frugt er god og yderst dyrebare, mere end al anden frugt.

62 Kom, lad os derfor arbejde af alle vore kræfter denne sidste gang, for se, enden nærmer sig, og dette er den sidste gang, jeg vil beskære min vingård.

63 Pod grenene ind; begynd med de sidste, så de må blive de første, og så de første må blive de sidste, og grav rundt om træerne, både gamle og unge, de første og de sidste og de sidste og de første, så alle må blive passet igen for sidste gang.

64 Grav derfor rundt om dem, og beskær dem, og gød dem igen for sidste gang, for enden nærmer sig. Og hvis det sker, at disse sidste podekviste vil vokse og frembringe den naturlige frugt, da skal I berede vejen for dem, så de kan vokse.

65 Og når de begynder at vokse, skal I fjerne de grene, der frembringer bitter frugt i forhold til kraften af de gode og deres størrelse; og I skal ikke fjerne alle de dårlige på én gang, for at deres rødder ikke skal blive for stærke for podekvisten og podekvisten på dem dør, og jeg mister træerne i min vingård.

66 For det bedrøver mig, at jeg skulle miste træerne i min vingård; derfor skal I fjerne de dårlige i forhold til, hvordan de gode vokser, så roden og kronen må være ens i styrke, indtil de gode overvinder de dårlige, og de dårlige bliver hugget om og kastet i ilden, så de ikke ligger og flyder på jorden i min vingård; og således vil jeg fjerne de dårlige fra min vingård.

67 Og det naturlige træs grene vil jeg igen pøde ind på det naturlige træ;

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

68 Og det naturlige træs grene vil jeg pøde ind på træets naturlige grene; og således vil jeg forene dem igen, så de vil frembringe den naturlige frugt, og de skal være ét.

69 Og de dårlige skal kastes bort, ja, bort fra al jorden i min vingård; for se, kun denne ene gang vil jeg beskære min vingård.

70 Og det skete, at vingårdens Herre sendte sin tjener; og tjeneren gik hen og gjorde, som Herren havde befalet ham, og tog andre tjenere med; og de var få.

71 Og vingårdens Herre sagde til ham: Kom og arbejd i vingården af alle jeres kræfter. For se, dette er den sidste gang, jeg vil passe min vingård; for enden er nær for hånden, og tiden efter kommer hastigt; og hvis I arbejder sammen med mig af alle jeres kræfter, skal I glæde jer over frugten, som jeg vil oplagre til mig selv til tiden, der snart kommer.

72 Og det skete, at tjenerne gik hen og arbejdede af alle kræfter; og vingårdens Herre arbejdede også sammen med dem; og de adlød vingårdens Herres befalinger i alt.

73 Og der begyndte igen at komme naturlig frugt i vingården; og de naturlige grene begyndte at vokse og trives overordentlig godt; og de vilde grene begyndte at blive rykket af og at blive kastet bort; og de holdt roden og kronen på dem lige store i forhold til deres styrke.

74 Og således arbejdede de med al flid i overensstemmelse med vingårdens Herres befalinger, indtil de dårlige var blevet kastet bort ud af vingården, og Herren havde bevaret de naturlige grene for sig selv, så træerne igen bar deres naturlige frugt; og de blev som ét, og frugten var ens; og vingårdens Herre havde bevaret den naturlige frugt for sig selv, den frugt der havde været ham mest dyrebar fra begyndelsen.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

75 Og det skete, at da vingårdens Herre så, at hans frugt var god, og at hans vingård ikke mere var fordærvet, kaldte han sine tjenere til sig og sagde til dem: Se, for denne sidste gang har vi passet min vingård; og I ser, at jeg har gjort efter min vilje; og jeg har bevaret den naturlige frugt, så den er god, ja, ligesom den var i begyndelsen. Og velsignede er I; for eftersom I har været flittige til at arbejde sammen med mig i min vingård og har holdt mine befalinger og har bragt mig den naturlige frugt igen, så min vingård ikke længere er fordærvet, og den dårlige er kastet bort, se, så skal I glæde jer sammen med mig på grund af min vingårds frugt.

76 For se, jeg vil i lang tid oplagre min vingårds frugt til mig selv til tiden efter høsten, som kommer hastigt; og for sidste gang har jeg passet min vingård og beskåret den og gravet den og gødet den; derfor vil jeg i lang tid oplagre noget af frugten til mig selv i overensstemmelse med det, jeg har talt.

77 Og når den tid kommer, da der igen kommer dårlig frugt ind i min vingård, da vil jeg lade den gode og den dårlige samle ind; og den gode vil jeg bevare for mig selv, og den dårlige vil jeg kaste bort til dens eget sted. Og da kommer tiden efter høsten og enden; og min vingård vil jeg lade brænde op af ild.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Jakobs Bog 6

- 1 Og se nu, mine brødre, eftersom jeg sagde til jer, at jeg ville profetere, se, dette er min profeti, at det, som denne profet Zenos talte angående Israels hus, hvori han sammenlignede dem med et forædlet oliventræ, visselig må ske.
- 2 Og den dag, da han igen for anden gang vil udstrække sin hånd for at genrejse sit folk, er den dag, ja, den sidste gang, at Herrens tjenere skal gå frem i hans kraft for at passe og beskære hans vingård; og efter det kommer enden snart.
- 3 Og hvor velsignede er ikke de, der har arbejdet flittigt i hans vingård; og hvor forbandede er ikke de, der skal blive stødt ud til deres eget sted! Og verden skal blive brændt op af ild.
- 4 Og hvor barmhjertig er ikke vor Gud mod os; for han husker Israels hus, både rødder og grene; og han strækker sine hænder frem til dem hele dagen lang; og de er et stivnakket og et genstridigt folk; men så mange, som ikke vil forhærde hjertet, skal blive frelst i Guds rig.
- 5 Derfor, mine elskede brødre, bønfaller jeg jer med alvor om at omvende jer og komme med hjertets faste forsæt og holde fast ved Gud, ligesom han holder fast ved jer. Og mens hans barmhjertigheds arm er strakt ud mod jer ved dagens lys, forhærd da ikke hjertet.
- 6 Ja, hvis I vil høre hans røst i dag, så forhærd ikke hjertet; for hvorfor vil I dø?
- 7 For se, når I har fået næring ved Guds gode ord hele dagen lang, vil I så frembringe dårlig frugt, så I skal blive hugget om og kastet i ilden?
- 8 Se, vil I forkaste disse ord? Vil I forkaste profeternes ord; og vil I forkaste alle de ord, der er blevet talt om Kristus, efter at så mange har talt om ham, og forkaste Kristi gode ord og Guds kraft og Helligåndsgaven og udslukke den hellige Ånd og drive spot med den store forløsningsplan, som er blevet lagt for jer?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

9 Ved I ikke, at hvis I gør dette, så vil forløsningens og opstandelsens kraft, som er i Kristus, få jer til at stå med skam og forfærdelig skyld for Guds domstol?

10 Og i overensstemmelse med retfærdighedens kraft – for retfærdigheden kan ikke afslås – må I gå bort til den sø af ild og svovl, hvis flammer er uudslukkelige, og hvis røg stiger op for evigt og altid, hvilken sø af ild og svovl er uendelig pinsel.

11 O, mine elskede brødre, omvend jer derfor, og træd ind ad den snævre port og fortsæt på den vej, som er trang, indtil I opnår evigt liv.

12 O, vær vise; hvad mere kan jeg sige?

13 Til slut byder jeg jer farvel, indtil jeg skal møde jer for Guds behagelige domstol, hvilken domstol slår de ugudelige med forfærdelig gru og frygt. Amen.

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Jakobs Bog 7

- 1 Og se, det skete, efter at der var gået nogle år, at der blandt Nefis folk kom en mand, hvis navn var Sherem.
- 2 Og det skete, at han begyndte at prædike blandt folket og at kundgøre for dem, at der ikke skulle komme nogen Kristus. Og han prædikede meget, som var smigrende for folket; og dette gjorde han, for at han måske kunne kuldkaste Kristi lære.
- 3 Og han arbejdede flittigt i et forsøg på at forlede folkets hjerte, således at han forledte mangt et hjerte; og da han vidste, at jeg, Jakob, havde tro på Kristus, som skulle komme, søgte han ivrigt efter en lejlighed til at komme til mig.
- 4 Og han var lærd, så han havde fuldkommen kundskab om folkets sprog; derfor kunne han bruge megen smiger og megen overtalelseskraft i overensstemmelse med Djævelens magt.
- 5 Og han havde håb om at rokke mig fra troen til trods for de mange åbenbaringer og de mange ting, jeg havde set angående dette; for jeg havde i sandhed set engle, og de havde betjent mig. Og jeg havde også hørt Herrens røst tale til mig med virkelige ord fra tid til anden; derfor kunne jeg ikke rokkes.
- 6 Og det skete, at han kom til mig, og på denne vis talte han til mig, idet han sagde: Broder Jakob, jeg har ivrigt søgt efter en lejlighed til at tale med dig; for jeg har hørt og ved også, at du går meget omkring og prædiker det, som du kalder evangeliet, eller Kristi lære.
- 7 Og du har forledt mange blandt dette folk, så de drejer Guds rette veje og ikke holder Moseloven, som er den rette vej, og ændrer Moseloven til tilbedelsen af et væsen, som du siger kommer om mange hundrede år fra nu af. Og se nu, jeg, Sherem, kundgør for dig, at det er gudsbespottelse; for ingen kender til noget sådant; for man kan ikke fortælle om det tilkommende. Og på denne måde stredes Sherem med mig.
- 8 Men se, Gud Herren udøste sin Ånd i min sjæl i en sådan grad, at jeg beskæmmede ham med hensyn til alle hans ord.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

9 Og jeg sagde til ham: Fornægter du den Kristus, der skal komme? Og han sagde: Hvis der var en Kristus, vil jeg ikke fornægte ham, men jeg ved, at der ikke er nogen Kristus, ej heller har der været eller vil der nogen sinde komme nogen.

10 Og jeg sagde til ham: Tror du på skrifterne? Og han sagde: Ja.

11 Og jeg sagde til ham: Så forstår du dem ikke, for de vidner i sandhed om Kristus. Se, jeg siger dig, at ingen af profeterne har skrevet eller profeteret, uden at de har talt om denne Kristus.

12 Og det er ikke alt – det er blevet tilkendegivet for mig, for jeg har hørt og set; og det er også blevet tilkendegivet for mig ved Helligåndens kraft; derfor ved jeg, at hvis der ikke blev foretaget en forsoning, ville hele menneskeslægten være fortabt.

13 Og det skete, at han sagde til mig: Vis mig et tegn ved denne, Helligåndens, kraft, ved hvilken du ved så meget.

14 Og jeg sagde til ham: Hvem er jeg, at jeg skulle friste Gud til at vise dig et tegn om det, som du ved er sandt? Du vil jo forkaste det, fordi du er af Djævelen. Dog, ske ikke min vilje, men hvis Gud slår dig, lad det da være dig et tegn på, at han har magt, både i himlen og på jorden, og også at Kristus skal komme. Og ske din vilje, o Herre, og ikke min.

15 Og det skete, at da jeg, Jakob, havde talt disse ord, kom Herrens kraft over ham i en sådan grad, at han faldt til jorden. Og det skete, at han blev madet i et tidsrum af mange dage.

16 Og det skete, at han sagde til folket: Forsaml jer i morgen, for jeg skal dø; derfor ønsker jeg at tale til folket, før jeg dør.

17 Og det skete, at den næste dag var mængden samlet; og han talte ligefremt til dem og tilbagekaldte det, som han havde lært dem, og bekendte Kristus og Helligåndens kraft og engles betjening.

18 Og han sagde ligefremt til dem, at han var blevet bedraget af Djævelens magt. Og han talte om helvede og om evigheden og om evig straf.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, in-somuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

19 Og han sagde: Jeg frygter, at jeg har begået den utilgivelige synd, for jeg har løjet for Gud; for jeg fornægtede Kristus og sagde, at jeg troede på skrifterne, og de vidner i sandhed om ham. Og fordi jeg således har løjet for Gud, frygter jeg meget for, at min tilstand bliver forfærdelig; men jeg bekender over for Gud.

20 Og det skete, at da han havde sagt disse ord, kunne han ikke sige mere, og han opgav ånden.

21 Og da mængden havde været vidne til, at han sagde dette, mens han var ved at opgive ånden, blev de overordentlig forbavsede, i en sådan grad at Guds kraft kom ned over dem, og de blev overvældet, så de faldt til jorden.

22 Se, dette behagede mig, Jakob, for jeg havde begæret det af min Fader, som var i himlen; for han havde hørt mit råb og besvaret min bøn.

23 Og det skete, at fred og kærlighed til Gud atter blev genoprettet blandt folket; og de granskede skrifterne og lyttede ikke mere til denne ugudelige mands ord.

24 Og det skete, at der blev udtænkt mange midler til at vinde lamanitterne tilbage og bringe dem tilbage til kundskab om sandheden; men det var alt sammen forgæves, for de frydede sig ved krige og blodsudgydelse, og de nærrede et evigt had til os, deres brødre. Og de forsøgte bestandig at udrydde os med deres våbenmagt.

25 Derfor forskansede Nefis folk sig mod dem med deres våben og af alle deres kræfter, idet de satte deres lid til Gud og deres frelses klippe; derfor har de indtil nu overvundet deres fjender.

26 Og det skete, at jeg, Jakob, begyndte at blive gammel; og eftersom optegnelsen om dette folk bliver ført på de andre af Nefis plader, afslutter jeg derfor denne optegnelse og kundgør, at jeg har skrevet ud fra min bedste viden ved at sige, at tiden svandt hen med os, og vort liv svandt også hen, som var det os en drøm, for vi er et ensomt og højtideligt folk, vandrere, der er stødt ud fra Jerusalem, født under modgang i ørkenen og hadet af vore brødre, hvilket forårsagede krige og stridigheder; derfor levede vi alle vore dage i sorg.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

27 Og jeg, Jakob, så, at jeg snart måtte gå i min grav; derfor sagde jeg til min søn Enosh: Tag disse plader. Og jeg fortalte ham det, som min bror Nefi havde befalet mig, og han lovede at vise lydighed mod befalingerne. Og nu holder jeg op med at skrive på disse plader, hvilken tekst har været kort; og jeg byder læseren farvel, idet jeg håber, at mange af mine brødre vil læse mine ord. Brødre, adjø.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

Enoshs Bog

- 1 Se, det skete, at jeg, Enosh, der kendte min far som en retfærdig mand – for han oplærte mig i sit sprog og også i Herrens tugt og formaning – og velsignet være min Guds navn for det –
- 2 og jeg vil fortælle jer om den kamp, som jeg havde foran Gud, før jeg fik forladelse for mine synder.
- 3 Se, jeg gik ud for at jage dyr i skovene; og de ord, som jeg ofte havde hørt min far tale angående evigt liv og de helliges glæde, sank dybt i mit hjerte.
- 4 Og min sjæl hungrede, og jeg knælede ned for min skaber og anråbte ham i indtrængende bøn og påkaldelse for min egen sjæl; og hele dagen lang anråbte jeg ham; ja, og da natten kom, oplod jeg stadig min røst, så den nåede himlene.
- 5 Og der kom en røst til mig, som sagde: Enosh, dine synder er dig tilgivet, og du skal blive velsignet.
- 6 Og jeg, Enosh, vidste, at Gud ikke kunne lyve; derfor blev min skyld fejlet bort.
- 7 Og jeg sagde: Herre, hvordan er det sket?
- 8 Og han sagde til mig: På grund af din tro på Kristus, som du aldrig før har hørt eller set. Og der vil gå mange år, før han giver sig til kende i kødet; se, din tro har gjort dig ren.
- 9 Se, det skete, da jeg havde hørt disse ord, at jeg begyndte at føle et ønske for mine brødre nefitternes velfærd; derfor udøste jeg hele min sjæl til Gud for dem.
- 10 Og mens jeg således kæmpede i ånden, se, da lød Herrens røst igen i mit sind og sagde: Jeg vil komme til dine brødre i forhold til deres flid med hensyn til at holde mine befalinger. Jeg har givet dem dette land, og det er et helligt land; og jeg forbander det ikke, undtagen på grund af ugudelighed; derfor vil jeg komme til dine brødre, sådan som jeg har sagt; og deres overtrædelser vil jeg bringe ned over deres eget hoved med sorg.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

11 Og efter at jeg, Enosh, havde hørt disse ord, begyndte min tro på Herren at blive urokkelig; og jeg bad til ham med mange lange anstrengelser for mine brødre, lamanitterne.

12 Og det skete, efter at jeg havde bedt og arbejdet med al flid, at Herren sagde til mig: Jeg vil give dig efter dine ønsker på grund af din tro.

13 Og se nu, dette var det ønske, som jeg ønskede af ham – at hvis det skulle ske, at mit folk, nefitterne, skulle falde i overtrædelse og på en eller anden måde blive udryddet, og lamanitterne ikke skulle blive udryddet, at Gud Herren da ville bevare en optegnelse om mit folk, nefitterne, om det så skulle ske ved hans hellige arms kraft, så den engang i fremtiden kunne blive bragt frem til lamanitterne, så de muligvis kunne blive bragt til frelse.

14 For i øjeblikket var vore kampe forgæves med hensyn til at bringe dem tilbage til den sande tro. Og de svor i deres vrede, at hvis det var muligt, ville de tilintetgøre vore optegnelser og os og også alle vore fædres overlevninger.

15 Da jeg derfor vidste, at Gud Herren var i stand til at bevare vore optegnelser, anråbte jeg ham bestandig, for han havde sagt til mig: Hvad du end beder om i tro, overbevist om at du skal få det, i Kristi navn, det skal du få.

16 Og jeg havde tro, og jeg anråbte Gud om, at han ville bevare optegnelserne; og han sluttede pagt med mig om, at han ville bringe dem frem til lamanitterne, når han anså tiden for at være inde.

17 Og jeg, Enosh, vidste, at det ville ske i overensstemmelse med den pagt, som han havde sluttet; derfor havde min sjæl ro.

18 Og Herren sagde til mig: Dine fædre har også begæret dette af mig, og det skal blive gjort for dem i overensstemmelse med deres tro; for deres tro var ligesom din.

19 Og se, det skete, at jeg, Enosh, gik omkring blandt Nefis folk og profeterede om det tilkommende og vidnede om det, som jeg havde hørt og set.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

20 Og jeg aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at Nefis folk flittigt forsøgte at bringe lamanitterne tilbage til den sande tro på Gud. Men vort arbejde var forgæves; deres had var fast indgroet, og de blev ledt af deres onde natur, så de blev vilde og grusomme og et blodtørstigt folk, fulde af afgudsdyrkelse og tilsølethed, der levede af rovdyr, boede i telte og vandrede omkring i ødemarken med et kort skind om lænderne og med raget hoved; og deres færdighed lå i buen og i sablen og øksen. Og mange af dem spiste intet andet end rå kød; og de forsøgte bestandig at udrydde os.

21 Og det skete, at Nefis folk bearbejdede jorden og dyrkede alle slags korn og frugt og tillagde sig flokke af hjerde og flokke af alle slags kvæg af enhver art og geder og vilde geder og også mange heste.

22 Og der var overordentlig mange profeter blandt os. Og folket var et stivnakket folk, som havde svært ved at forstå.

23 Og der var intet, bortset fra overordentlig megen strengthed, forkyndelse og profeti om krige og stridigheder og ødelæggelser og en bestandig påmindelse om dem om død og evighedens varighed og Guds straffedomme og magt og alt dette – en bestandig opildnen for at holde dem i frygt for Herren. Jeg siger, der var intet, bortset fra dette og overordentlig ligefrem tale, der kunne hindre dem i at synke hastigt ned til undergang. Og således skriver jeg om dem.

24 Og jeg så krige mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne i løbet af mine dage.

25 Og det skete, at jeg begyndte at blive gammel, og der var gået et hundrede og nioghalvfjerds år fra det tidspunkt, da vor fader Lehi forlod Jerusalem.

26 Og jeg så, at jeg snart måtte gå i min grav, efter at jeg har været påvirket af Guds kraft, så jeg måtte prædike og profetere for dette folk og kundgøre ordet i overensstemmelse med den sandhed, der er i Kristus. Og jeg har kundgjort det i alle mine dage og har frydet mig ved det mere end ved det, der er af verden.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things — stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

27 Og jeg går snart til mit hvilested, som er hos min forløser; for jeg ved, at i ham skal jeg hvile. Og jeg fryder mig ved den dag, da min dødelighed skal iføre sig udødelighed og skal stå over for ham; da skal jeg med behag se hans ansigt, og han vil sige til mig: Kom til mig, du velsignede, der er et sted beredt til dig i min Faders boliger. Amen.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

Jaroms Bog

- 1 Se nu, jeg, Jarom, skriver nogle få ord i overensstemmelse med min fars, Enoshs, befaling, for at optegnelsen om vor slægt kan blive ført.
- 2 Og da disse plader er små, og da dette bliver skrevet i den hensigt at gavne vore brødre, lamanitterne, må det derfor nødvendigvis være sådan, at jeg skriver lidt; men jeg skriver ikke noget fra mine profetier, ej heller fra mine åbenbaringer. For hvad mere kunne jeg skrive end det, som mine fædre har skrevet? For har de ikke åbenbaret frelsesplanen? Jeg siger jer: Jo, og det er mig nok.
- 3 Se, det er nødvendigt, at der skal gøres meget blandt dette folk på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed og deres ørers døvhed og deres sinds blindhed og deres nakkes stivhed; alligevel er Gud overordentlig barmhjertig mod dem og har endnu ikke fejlet dem bort fra landets overflade.
- 4 Og der findes mange blandt os, som får mange åbenbaringer, for de er ikke alle stivnakkede. Og så mange, som ikke er stivnakkede og har tro, har samvær med den hellige Ånd, der tilkendegiver ting for menneskenes børn i forhold til deres tro.
- 5 Og se nu, to hundrede år var gået, og Nefis folk havde vokset sig stærke i landet. De bestræbte sig på at holde Moseloven og sabbatsdagen hellig for Herren. Og de handlede ikke vanhelligt; ej heller talte de gudsbespotteligt. Og landets love var overordentlig strenge.
- 6 Og de var spredt over store dele af landets overflade, og det var lamanitterne også. Og de var meget mere talrige end nefitterne; og de elskede mord og drak dyreblood.
- 7 Og det skete, at de mange gange kom imod os, nefitterne, for at kæmpe. Men vore konger og vore ledere var mægtige mænd i troen på Herren, og de lærte folket Herrens veje; derfor modstod vi lamanitterne og fejede dem bort, ud af vore lande, og begyndte at befæste vore byer eller et hvilket som helst af vore arvesteder.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

- 8 Og vi mangfoldiggjorde os overordentlig meget og bredte os over landets overflade og blev overordentlig rige på guld og på sølv og på kostbarheder og på fint træarbejde, på bygninger og på maskineri og også på jern og kobber og bronze og stål, og vi lavede alle slags redskaber af enhver art til at bearbejde jorden med og krigsvåben – ja, den skarpe, spidse pil og koggeret og kaste-pilen og kastespyddet og traf alle slags forberedelser til krig.
- 9 Og da vi således var rede til at møde lamanitterne, havde de ingen fremgang mod os. Men det ord fra Herren blev bekræftet, som han talte til vore fædre, da han sagde: For så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet.
- 10 Og det skete, at Herrens profeter truede Nefis folk i overensstemmelse med Guds ord med, at hvis de ikke holdt befalingerne, men faldt i overtrædelse, ville de blive udryddet fra landets overflade.
- 11 Derfor arbejdede profeterne og præsterne og lærerne flittigt, idet de med al langmodighed formanede folket til flid og underviste i Moseloven og den hensigt, i hvilken den var blevet givet, og overtalte dem til at se frem til Messias og tro på ham, der skulle komme, som om han allerede var kommet. Og på denne måde underviste de dem.
- 12 Og det skete, at de ved at gøre dette skåned dem for at blive udryddet fra landets overflade; for de stak dem i hjertet med ordet, idet de bestandig vækkede dem til omvendelse.
- 13 Og det skete, at der var gået to hundrede og otteog-tredive år – med krige og stridigheder og kiv meget af tiden.
- 14 Og jeg, Jarom, skriver ikke mere, for pladerne er små. Men se, mine brødre, I kan se i Nefis andre plader; for se, på dem er optegnelserne om vore krige indgraveret i overensstemmelse med kongernes beretninger eller dem, som de lod skrive.
- 15 Og jeg overgiver disse plader i min søn Omnis hænder, så de kan blive ført i overensstemmelse med mine fædres befalinger.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Omnis Bog

- 1 Se, det skete, at jeg, Omni, der havde fået en befaling af min far, Jarom, om, at jeg skulle skrive noget på disse plader for at bevare optegnelsen om vor slægt –
- 2 derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal vide, at jeg i mine dage har kæmpet meget med sværdet for at beskytte mit folk, nefitterne, mod at falde i hænderne på deres fjender, lamanitterne. Men se, jeg er selv en ugudelig mand, og jeg har ikke holdt Herrens lovbud og befalinger, sådan som jeg burde have gjort.
- 3 Og det skete, at der var gået to hundrede og seksoghalvfjerds år, og vi havde mange perioder med fred; og vi havde mange perioder med alvorlige krige og blodudgydelse. Ja, kort sagt var der gået to hundrede og toogfirs år, og jeg havde ført disse plader i overensstemmelse med mine fædres befalinger; og jeg overdrog dem til min søn Amaron. Og jeg slutter.
- 4 Og se, jeg, Amaron, skriver det, som jeg skriver, hvilket kun er lidt, i min fars bog.
- 5 Se, det skete, at der var gået tre hundrede og tyve år, og den mere ugudelige del af nefitterne var blevet udryddet.
- 6 For Herren ville ikke tillade, efter at han havde ført dem ud af Jerusalems land og beskyttet og bevaret dem mod at falde i deres fjenders hænder, ja, han ville ikke tillade, at de ord ikke skulle blive bekræftet, som han talte til vore fædre, da han sagde: For så vidt som I ikke vil holde mine befalinger, skal I ikke have fremgang i landet.
- 7 Derfor hjemsøgte Herren dem med hårde strafedomme; alligevel skånede han de retfærdige, så de ikke omkom, men udfriede dem af deres fjenders hænder.
- 8 Og det skete, at jeg overgav pladerne til min bror Kemish.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

- 9 Se, jeg, Kemish, skriver den smule, som jeg skriver, i den samme bog som min bror; for se, jeg så det sidste, som han skrev, at han skrev det med sin egen hånd; og han skrev det den dag, da han overgav dem til mig. Og på denne måde fører vi optegnelserne, for det er i overensstemmelse med vore fædres befalinger. Og jeg slutter.
- 10 Se, jeg, Abinadom, er søn af Kemish. Se, det skete, at jeg så megen krig og strid mellem mit folk, nefitterne, og lamanitterne; og jeg har med mit eget sværd taget mange lamanitters liv i forsvaret af mine brødre.
- 11 Og se, optegnelsen om dette folk er indgraveret på plader, som kongerne besidder fra slægtled til slægtled; og jeg kender ikke til nogen åbenbaring bortset fra det, der er blevet skrevet, ej heller til nogen profeti; derfor er det, der er skrevet, tilstrækkeligt. Og jeg slutter.
- 12 Se, jeg er Amaleki, Abinadoms søn. Se, jeg vil tale noget til jer om Mosija, som blev gjort til konge over Zarahemlas land; for se, han blev af Herren formanet til, at han skulle flygte ud af Nefis land, og så mange, som ville lytte til Herrens røst, skulle også drage ud af landet med ham ud i ødemarken –
- 13 og det skete, at han gjorde, sådan som Herren havde befaleet ham. Og de drog ud af landet ud i ødemarken, så mange, som ville lytte til Herrens røst; og de blev vejledt af megen forkyndelse og profeti. Og de blev bestandig formanet af Guds ord; og de blev ledet ved hans arms kraft gennem ødemarken, indtil de kom ned til det land, der kaldes Zarahemlas land.
- 14 Og de opdagede et folk, som blev kaldt Zarahemlas folk. Se, der blev stor glæde blandt Zarahemlas folk; og Zarahemla frydede sig også overordentlig meget, fordi Herren havde sendt Mosijas folk med bronzepladerne, som indeholdt optegnelsen om jøderne.
- 15 Se, det skete, at Mosija opdagede, at Zarahemlas folk kom ud fra Jerusalem på den tid, da Sidkija, Judas konge, blev ført bort til Babylon som fange.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

- 16 Og de rejste i ørkenen og blev ved Herrens hånd ført over de store vande til det land, hvor Mosija opdagede dem; og de havde boet der fra den tid af.
- 17 Og på det tidspunkt, da Mosija opdagede dem, var de blevet overordentlig talrige. Alligevel havde de haft mange krige og alvorlige stridigheder og var tid efter anden faldet for sværdet; og deres sprog var blevet forvansket; og de havde ikke bragt nogen optegnelser med sig; og de fornægtede eksistensen af deres skaber, og hverken Mosija eller Mosijas folk kunne forstå dem.
- 18 Men det skete, at Mosija foranledigede, at de blev oplært i hans sprog. Og det skete, efter at de var blevet oplært i Mosijas sprog, at Zarahemla opregnede sin slægtslinje efter hukommelsen, og den findes nedskrevet, men ikke på disse plader.
- 19 Og det skete, at Zarahemlas og Mosijas folk forenede sig, og Mosija blev udpeget til at være deres konge.
- 20 Og det skete i Mosijas dage, at en stor sten med indgravninger på blev bragt til ham, og han oversatte indgravningerne ved Guds gave og kraft.
- 21 Og de berettede om en vis Coriantumr og de slagte af hans folk. Og Coriantumr blev fundet af Zarahemlas folk; og han boede hos dem i et tidsrum af ni måneder.
- 22 Den talte også nogle få ord om hans fædre. Og hans første forældre kom fra tårnet på den tid, da Herren forvirrede folkets sprog, og Herrens strenghed faldt på dem i overensstemmelse med hans straffedomme, der er retfærdige; og deres knogler lå spredt i landet mod nord.
- 23 Se, jeg, Amaleki, er født i Mosijas dage; og jeg har oplevet at se hans død, og Benjamin, hans søn, regerer i hans sted.
- And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.
- And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.
- But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.
- And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.
- And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.
- And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.
- It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.
- Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

24 Og se, jeg har i kong Benjamins dage set en alvorlig krig og megen blodsudgydelse mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne. Men se, nefitterne opnåede stor fordel over dem, ja, i en sådan grad, at kong Benjamin drev dem ud af Zarahemlas land.

25 Og det skete, at jeg begyndte at blive gammel, og da jeg ingen efterkommere har, og da jeg ved, at kong Benjamin er en retfærdig mand for Herren, vil jeg derfor overgive disse plader til ham, idet jeg formaner alle mennesker til at komme til Gud, Israels Hellige, og tro på profeti og på åbenbaringer og på engles betjening og på gaven at kunne tale i tunger og på gaven at kunne oversætte sprog og på alt, hvad der er godt; for der er ikke noget, der er godt, uden at det kommer fra Herren, og det, der er ondt, kommer fra Djævelen.

26 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg ønsker, at I skal komme til Kristus, som er Israels Hellige, og få del i hans frelse og i hans forløsnings kraft. Ja, kom til ham, og bring hele jeres sjæl som et offer til ham, og fortsæt med at faste og bede, og hold ud til enden; og så sandt som Herren lever, vil I blive frelst.

27 Og nu ønsker jeg at tale noget om et vist antal, som drog op i ødemarken for at vende tilbage til Nefis land; for der var et stort antal, der nærede ønske om at tage deres arveland i besiddelse.

28 Derfor drog de op i ødemarken. Og deres leder var en stærk og mægtig mand og en stivnakket mand, hvorfor han forårsagede strid blandt dem; og de blev alle dræbt i ødemarken på nær halvtreds, og de vendte igen tilbage til Zarahemlas land.

29 Og det skete, at de også tog et betydeligt antal andre med sig og igen rejste ud i ødemarken.

30 Og jeg, Amaleki, havde en bror, som også tog med dem; og jeg har ikke siden hørt til dem. Og jeg er lige ved at lægge mig i min grav; og disse plader er fyldte. Og jeg holder op med at tale.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, in-somuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiff-necked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Mormons Ord

- 1 Og se, jeg, Mormon, der er ved at overgive den optegnelse, som jeg har været i færd med skrive, i min søn Moronis hænder, se, jeg har været vidne til udryddelsen af næsten hele mit folk, nefitterne.
- 2 Og det er mange hundrede år efter Kristi komme, at jeg overgiver disse optegnelser i min søns hænder; og jeg formoder, at han vil blive vidne til den fuldstændige udryddelse af mit folk. Men måtte Gud tilstede, at han overlever dem, så han kan skrive noget angående dem og noget angående Kristus, så det måske en dag må gavne dem.
- 3 Og se, jeg taler noget om det, som jeg har skrevet; for efter at jeg havde lavet en forkortelse af Nefis plader op til denne kong Benjamins regeringstid, han, som Amaleki talte om, søgte jeg blandt de optegnelser, som var blevet overgivet i mine hænder, og jeg fandt disse plader, der indeholdt denne korte beretning af profeterne, fra Jakob og op til denne kong Benjamins regeringstid, og også mange af Nefis ord.
- 4 Og det, der er på disse plader, behager mig på grund af profetierne om Kristi komme; og mine fædre ved, at mange af dem er blevet opfyldt; ja, og jeg ved også, at så meget, som er blevet profeteret angående os op til denne dag, er blevet opfyldt, og at så meget, som rækker ud over denne dag, visselig skal ske –
- 5 derfor valgte jeg dette til at afslutte min optegnelse med, og resten af min optegnelse vil jeg tage fra Nefis plader; og jeg kan ikke skrive en hundrededel af det, der vedrører mit folk.
- 6 Men se, jeg vil tage disse plader, som indeholder disse profetier og åbenbaringer, og lægge dem sammen med resten af min optegnelse, for de er udsøgte for mig; og jeg ved, at de vil være udsøgte for mine brødre.
- 7 Og jeg gør dette med et vist formål; for således er det blevet hvisket til mig ved tilskyndelsen fra Herrens Ånd, som er i mig. Og se, jeg kender ikke alt, men Herren kender alt det, der skal komme, derfor tilskynder han mig til at handle efter sin vilje.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

- 8 Og min bøn til Gud er for mine brødre, at de endnu engang må komme til kundskab om Gud, ja, Kristi forløsning, så de atter må blive et tiltalende folk.
- 9 Og nu skrider jeg, Mormon, til at afslutte min optegnelse, som jeg tager fra Nefis plader; og jeg udfærdiger den i overensstemmelse med den kundskab og den forståelse, som Gud har givet mig.
- 10 For se, det skete, efter at Amaleki havde overgivet disse plader i kong Benjamins hænder, at han tog dem og lagde dem sammen med de andre plader, der indeholdt optegnelser, som var blevet overdraget af kongerne fra slægtled til slægtled indtil kong Benjamins dage.
- 11 Og de blev overdraget fra kong Benjamin fra slægtled til slægtled, indtil de er faldet i mine hænder. Og jeg, Mormon, beder til Gud om, at de må blive bevaret fra denne tid af. Og jeg ved, at de vil blive bevaret, for der er skrevet storslåede ting på dem, ud fra hvilke mit folk og deres brødre, ifølge det Guds ord der er skrevet, skal dømmes på den store og yderste dag.
- 12 Og se, angående denne kong Benjamin – han havde en del stridigheder blandt sit eget folk.
- 13 Og det skete også, at lamaniternes hære kom ned fra Nefis land for at kæmpe mod hans folk. Men se, kong Benjamin samlede sine hære sammen, og han stod dem imod; og han kæmpede med sin egen arms styrke med Labans sværd.
- 14 Og i Herrens styrke stred de mod deres fjender, indtil de havde slået mange tusinde af lamanitterne ihjel. Og det skete, at de stred mod lamanitterne, indtil de havde drevet dem ud af alle deres arvelande.
- 15 Og det skete, efter at der havde været falske kristus'er, og deres mund var blevet lukket, og de var blevet straffet for deres forbrydelser;

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightful people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

16 og efter at der havde været falske profeter og falske prædikanter og lærere blandt folket, og alle disse var blevet straffet i forhold til deres forbrydelser; og efter at der havde været megen strid, og mange var gået over til lamanitterne, se, da skete det, at kong Benjamin med hjælp fra de hellige profeter, der var blandt hans folk –

17 for se, kong Benjamin var en hellig mand, og han regerede over sit folk i retfærdighed; og der var mange hellige mænd i landet, og de talte Guds ord med kraft og med myndighed; og de brugte megen skarphed på grund af folkets stivnakkethed –

18 altså, med hjælp fra disse fik kong Benjamin ved at arbejde af alle sit legemes kræfter og hele sin sjæls evner – og ligeså profeterne – endnu engang stiftet fred i landet.

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Mosijas Bog

Mosijas Bog 1

- 1 Og nu var der ikke mere strid i hele Zarahemlas land blandt hele det folk, der tilhørte kong Benjamin, så kong Benjamin havde vedvarende fred alle resten af sine dage.
- 2 Og det skete, at han havde tre sønner; og han kaldte deres navne Mosija og Helorum og Helaman. Og han foranledigede, at de blev oplært i hele hans fædres sprog, så de derved kunne blive forstandige mænd, og så de kunne få kundskab om de profetier, der var blevet talt ved deres fædres mund, og som blev overgivet dem ved Herrens hånd.
- 3 Og han lærte dem også om de optegnelser, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, idet han sagde: Mine sønner, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at var det ikke for disse plader, som indeholder disse optegnelser og disse befalinger, ville vi være forblevet i uvidenhed, ja, på dette tidspunkt uden at kende Guds hemmeligheder.
- 4 For det var ikke muligt, at vor fader Lehi kunne have erindret alt dette, så han kunne have lært sine børn det, uden det var ved hjælp af disse plader; for han, der var blevet oplært i egypternes sprog, han kunne derfor læse disse indgravninger og lære sine børn dem, så de derved kunne lære deres børn dem og således opfylde Guds befalinger helt op til denne tid.
- 5 Jeg siger jer, mine sønner, var det ikke for dette, der er blevet beskyttet og bevaret ved Guds hånd, så vi kan læse og forstå nogle af hans hemmeligheder og altid have hans befalinger for vore øjne, da var selv vore fædre sunket ned i vantro, og vi ville have været ligesom vore brødre, lamanitterne, der ikke kender noget til dette og ikke engang tror på det, når de bliver undervist i det, på grund af deres fædres overleveringer, som ikke er rigtige.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

6 O, mine sønner, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at disse ord er sande og også, at disse optegnelser er sande. Og se, også Nefis plader, som indeholder vore fædres optegnelser og ord fra det tidspunkt, de forlod Jerusalem og indtil nu, at de er sande; og vi kan vide, at de er sande, for vi har dem for vore øjne.

7 Og se, mine sønner, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske at granske dem flittigt, så I kan få gavn deraf; og jeg ønsker, at I skal holde Guds befalinger, så I må have fremgang i landet i overensstemmelse med de løfter, som Herren gav vore fædre.

8 Og kong Benjamin lærte sine sønner meget mere, som ikke er skrevet i denne bog.

9 Og det skete, efter at kong Benjamin var færdig med at undervise sine sønner, at han blev gammel, og han indså, at han meget snart måtte gå al kødets gang; derfor anså han det for passende, at han skulle overdrage riget til en af sine sønner.

10 Derfor lod han Mosija hente til sig; og disse er de ord, som han talte til ham, idet han sagde: Min søn, jeg ønsker, at du skal offentliggøre en proklamation overalt i hele dette land blandt hele dette folk, eller Zarahemlas folk og Mosijas folk, som bor i landet, så de derved kan samles; for i morgen vil jeg med min egen mund forkynde for dette folk, at du er konge og hersker over dette folk, som Herren vor Gud har givet os.

11 Og endvidere vil jeg give dette folk et navn, så de derved kan skelnes fra alle de folk, som Gud Herren har bragt ud af Jerusalems land; og dette gør jeg, fordi de har været et flittigt folk i at holde Herrens befalinger.

12 Og jeg giver dem et navn, som aldrig skal blive slettet, undtagen ved overtrædelse.

13 Ja, og endvidere siger jeg til dig, at hvis dette af Herren rigt begunstigede folk skulle falde i overtrædelse og blive et ugudeligt og et ægteskabsbrydende folk, at Herren da vil forlade dem, så de derved bliver svage som deres brødre; og han vil ikke mere bevare dem med sin uforlignelige og forunderlige kraft, sådan som han hidtil har bevaret vore fædre.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

- 14 For jeg siger dig, at hvis han ikke havde udstrakt sin arm for at bevare vore fædre, var de faldet i lamanitternes hænder og blevet ofre for deres had.
- 15 Og det skete, efter at kong Benjamin havde afsluttet disse ord til sin søn, at han overdrog ham ansvaret for alle rigets anliggender.
- 16 Og endvidere overdrog han ham også ansvaret for de optegnelser, som var indgraveret på bronzepladerne og også Nefis plader og også Labans sværd og kuglen, eller vejviseren, som ledte vore fædre gennem ørkenen, og som blev beredt ved Herrens hånd, for at de derved kunne blive ledt, hver især i forhold til den agtpågivenhed og flid, som de viste ham.
- 17 Når de ikke var trofaste, havde de derfor ikke fremgang eller fremskridt på deres rejse, men blev drevet tilbage og pådrog sig Guds mishag; og derfor blev de slået med hunger og svære trængsler for at vække dem til erindring om deres pligt.
- 18 Og se, det skete, at Mosija gik ud og gjorde, som hans far havde befalet ham, og forkyndte for alle de folk, som var i Zarahemlas land, så de derved kunne samles, at de skulle drage op til templet for at høre de ord, som hans far ville tale til dem.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mosijas Bog 2

- 1 Og det skete, efter at Mosija havde gjort, som hans far havde befaleet ham, og havde offentliggjort en proklamation overalt i hele landet, at folket samlede sig over hele landet, for at de kunne drage op til templet for at høre de ord, som kong Benjamin ville tale til dem.
- 2 Og der var et stort antal, ja, så mange, at de ikke talte dem; for de havde mangfoldiggjort sig overordentlig meget og havde vokset sig mægtige i landet.
- 3 Og de tog også af de førstefødte af deres flokke, så de kunne bringe slagtoffer og brændofre i henhold til Moseloven;
- 4 og så de også kunne give tak til Herren deres Gud, som havde ført dem ud af Jerusalems land, og som havde udfriet dem af deres fjenders hænder og udpeget retfærdige mænd til at være deres lærere og også en retfærdig mand til at være deres konge, som havde stiftet fred i Zarahemlas land, og som havde lært dem at holde Guds befalinger, så de kunne fryde sig og være fyldt med kærlighed til Gud og alle mennesker.
- 5 Og det skete, at da de kom op til templet, slog de deres telte op rundt omkring, hver mand efter sin familie, bestående af hans hustru og hans sønner og hans døtre, og deres sønner og deres døtre, fra den ældste ned til den yngste, så hver familie var adskilt, den ene fra den anden.
- 6 Og de slog deres telte op rundt omkring templet, idet hver mand havde sit telt med døren vendt mod templet, så de derved kunne blive i deres telte og høre de ord, som kong Benjamin ville tale til dem.
- 7 For mængden, der var så stor, at kong Benjamin ikke kunne undervise dem alle indenfor templets mure, han lod derfor opføre et tårn, så hans folk derved kunne høre de ord, som han ville tale til dem.

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8 Og det skete, at han begyndte at tale til sit folk fra tårnet; og de kunne ikke alle høre hans ord på grund af mængdens størrelse; derfor foranledigede han, at de ord, som han talte, blev skrevet ned og sendt ud blandt dem, som ikke var indenfor hans røsts rækkevidde, så de også kunne modtage hans ord.

9 Og disse er de ord, som han talte og fik skrevet ned, idet han sagde: Mine brødre, alle I, der har samlet jer, I, der kan høre mine ord, som jeg vil tale til jer i dag; for jeg har ikke befalet jer at komme herop for at tage let på de ord, som jeg skal tale, men for at I skal lytte til mig og åbne ørerne, så I kan høre, og hjertet, så I kan forstå, og jeres sind, så Guds hemmeligheder må blive udfoldet for jeres syn.

10 Jeg har ikke befalet jer at komme herop, for at I skulle frygte mig, eller for at I skulle tænke, at jeg af mig selv er mere end et dødeligt menneske.

11 Men jeg er, ligesom I selv, underkastet alle slags skrøbeligheder i legeme og sind; alligevel er jeg blevet valgt af dette folk og indviet af min far og er ved Herrens hånd blevet forundt, at jeg skulle være hersker og konge over dette folk; og jeg er blevet beskyttet og bevaret ved hans uforlignelige kraft, for at jeg kan tjene jer med al den kraft, det sind og den styrke, som Herren har skænket mig.

12 Jeg siger jer, at da det er blevet mig forundt at tilbringe mine dage i jeres tjeneste, ja, indtil dette tidspunkt, og jeg ikke har stræbt efter guld eller sølv eller nogen som helst form for rigdom fra jer;

13 ej heller har jeg tilladt, at I skulle blive spærret inde i fangehuller, eller at I skulle gøre hinanden til slaver, eller at I skulle myrde eller plyndre eller stjæle eller begå ægteskabsbrud, ej heller har jeg tilladt, at I skulle øve nogen slags ugudelighed, og har lært jer, at I skulle holde Herrens befalinger i alt det, som han har befalet jer –

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

14 og jeg har endog selv arbejdet med mine egne hænder, så jeg kunne tjene jer, og så I ikke skulle være tynget af skatter, og så der ikke skulle lægges noget på jer, der var tungt at bære – og om alt dette, som jeg har talt, er I selv vidner i dag.

15 Alligevel, mine brødre, har jeg ikke gjort dette, så jeg kan prale, ej heller siger jeg dette, så jeg derved kan anklage jer; men jeg siger dette, så I kan vide, at jeg kan svare med en ren samvittighed for Gud denne dag.

16 Se, jeg siger jer, at fordi jeg sagde til jer, at jeg havde tilbragt mine dage i jeres tjeneste, ønsker jeg ikke at prale, for jeg har blot været i Guds tjeneste.

17 Og se, jeg fortæller jer dette, så I kan lære visdom; så I kan lære, at når I er i jeres medmenneskers tjeneste, er I blot i jeres Guds tjeneste.

18 Se, I har kaldt mig jeres konge; og hvis jeg, som I kalder jeres konge, arbejder for at tjene jer, burde I da ikke arbejde for at tjene hinanden?

19 Og se også, hvis jeg, som I kalder jeres konge, og som har tilbragt sine dage i jeres tjeneste og dog har været i Guds tjeneste, fortjener nogen tak af jer, o, hvor meget burde I da ikke takke jeres himmelske Konge!

20 Jeg siger jer, mine brødre, at hvis I ville give al den tak og pris, som hele jeres sjæl evner at besidde, til den Gud, som har skabt jer og har beskyttet og bevaret jer og har givet jer grund til at frydes og har tilstedt, at I skulle leve i fred, den ene med den anden –

21 jeg siger jer, at hvis I skulle tjene ham, som har skabt jer fra begyndelsen og bevarer jer fra dag til dag ved at låne jer ånde, så I kan leve og røre jer og gøre efter jeres egen vilje, og endog forsørger jer fra det ene øjeblik til det næste – jeg siger, at hvis I skulle tjene ham af hele jeres sjæl, ville I alligevel være unyttige tjenere.

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

- 22 Og se, alt, hvad han kræver af jer, er, at I holder hans befalinger; og han har lovet jer, at hvis I holder hans befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet; og han afviger aldrig fra det, som han har sagt; hvis I derfor holder hans befalinger, velsigner han jer og giver jer fremgang.
- 23 Og se, for det første har han skabt jer og skænket jer livet, for hvilket I er i gæld til ham.
- 24 Og for det andet kræver han, at I skal gøre, som han har befalet jer, for hvilket han, hvis I gør det, straks velsigner jer; og derfor har han belønnet jer. Og I er stadig i gæld til ham og er og vil være det for evigt og altid; hvad har I derfor at prale af?
- 25 Og nu spørger jeg: Kan I sige noget som helst til jeres forsvar? Jeg svarer jer: Nej. I kan ikke sige, at I er blot så meget som jordens støv; dog er I skabt af jordens støv, men se, det tilhører ham, som skabte jer.
- 26 Og jeg, selv jeg, som I kalder jeres konge, er ikke bedre, end I er; for jeg er også af støvet. Og I ser, at jeg er gammel og er ved at give dette dødelige legeme tilbage til dets moder jord.
- 27 For se, ligesom jeg sagde til jer, at jeg havde tjent jer og vandret med en ren samvittighed for Gud, således har jeg på dette tidspunkt foranlediget, at I skulle samle jer, så jeg kunne blive fundet ulastelig, og så jeres blod ikke skulle komme over mig, når jeg skal stå frem for at blive dømt af Gud for det, som han har befalet mig angående jer.
- 28 Jeg siger jer, at jeg har foranlediget, at I skulle samle jer, så jeg kunne gøre mine klæder rene for jeres blod på dette tidspunkt, da jeg er ved at gå i min grav, så jeg kan gå derned i fred, og min udødelige ånd kan slutte sig til korene foroven i at synge en retfærdig Guds pris.
- 29 Og endvidere siger jeg til jer, at jeg har foranlediget, at I skulle samle jer, så jeg kunne kundgøre for jer, at jeg ikke længere kan være jeres lærer, ej heller jeres konge;

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

30 for selv på dette tidspunkt skælver hele mit legeme overordentlig meget, mens jeg forsøger at tale til jer; men Gud Herren støtter mig og har tilladt mig, at jeg skulle tale til jer, og har befalet mig, at jeg skulle kundgøre for jer denne dag, at min søn Mosija er konge og hersker over jer.

31 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker, at I skal gøre, som I hidtil har gjort. Ligesom I har holdt mine befalinger og også min fars befalinger og har haft fremgang og er blevet bevaret mod at falde i jeres fjenders hænder, således skal I, hvis I holder min søns befalinger, eller Guds befalinger, som I skal få af ham, have fremgang i landet, og jeres fjender skal ikke få nogen magt over jer.

32 Men, o mit folk, pas på, at der ikke opstår stridigheder blandt jer, og I vælger at adlyde den onde ånd, som blev omtalt af min far Mosija.

33 For se, der er udtalt et ve over den, der vælger at adlyde den ånd; for hvis han vælger at adlyde ham og forbliver og dør i sine synder, drikker han fordømmelse til sin egen sjæl; for han får som løn en evigtvarende straf, fordi han har overtrådt Guds lov mod bedre vidende.

34 Jeg siger jer, at der ikke er nogen blandt jer, bortset fra jeres små børn, som ikke er blevet undervist i dette, og som ikke ved, at I i evighed står i gæld til jeres himmelske Fader – om at give ham alt, hvad I har og er – og som ikke også er blevet undervist angående de optegnelser, der indeholder de profetier, som er blevet udtalt af de hellige profeter helt op til den tid, da vor fader, Lehi, forlod Jerusalem.

35 Og også alt, der er blevet talt af vore fædre indtil nu. Og se, også de sagde det, der blev dem befalet af Herren; derfor er de retfærdige og sande.

36 Og se, jeg siger jer, mine brødre, at hvis I, efter at I har fået kundskab om og er blevet undervist i alt dette, skulle overtræde og gå imod det, der er blevet talt, så I trækker jer bort fra Herrens Ånd, så den ikke får plads i jer til at lede jer på visdommens stier, så I kan blive velsignet, have fremgang og blive bevaret –

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

37 jeg siger jer, at det menneske, der gør dette, han kommer frem i åbent oprør imod Gud; derfor vælger han at adlyde den onde ånd, og bliver en fjende af al retfærdighed; derfor har Herren ingen plads i ham, for han bor ikke i vanhellige templer.

38 Hvis dette menneske derfor ikke omvender sig og forbliver og dør som en fjende af Gud, da vækker den guddommelige retfærdigheds krav hans udødelige sjæl til en levende bevidsthed om hans egen skyld, hvilken får ham til at vige tilbage fra Herrens nærhed og fylder hans bryst med skyld og smerte og kval, der er som en uudslukkelig ild, hvis flamme stiger op for evigt og altid.

39 Og se, jeg siger jer, at barmhjertigheden har ikke noget krav på dette menneske; derfor er hans endelige lod at lide en aldrig ophørende pinsel.

40 O, alle I gamle mænd og også I unge mænd og I små børn, som kan forstå mine ord, for jeg har talt tydeligt til jer, så I kan forstå, jeg beder for, at I vil vågne op til en erindring om den forfærdelige situation for dem, der er faldet i overtrædelse.

41 Og endvidere ønsker jeg af jer, at I skal tænke på den velsignede og lykkelige tilstand for dem, der holder Guds befalinger. For se, de er velsignede i alt, både temmeligt og åndeligt; og hvis de holder trofast ud til enden, bliver de modtaget i himlen, så de derved kan bo hos Gud i en tilstand af aldrig ophørende lykke. O husk, husk, at dette er sandt, for Gud Herren har talt det.

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mosijas Bog 3

- 1 Og videre, mine brødre, vil jeg bede om jeres opmærksomhed, for jeg har noget mere at sige jer; for se, jeg har noget at fortælle jer om det, der skal komme.
- 2 Og det, som jeg vil fortælle jer, er blevet mig kundgjort af en engel fra Gud. Og han sagde til mig: Vågn op; og jeg vågnede, og se, han stod foran mig.
- 3 Og han sagde til mig: Vågn op, og hør de ord, som jeg skal sige til dig; for se, jeg er kommet for at kundgøre dig glædelige tidender om stor glæde.
- 4 For Herren har hørt dine bønner og har bedømt din retfærdighed og har sendt mig for at kundgøre dette for dig, så du kan fryde dig, og så du kan kundgøre dette for dit folk, så de også kan blive fyldt af glæde.
- 5 For se, den tid kommer og er ikke langt borte, da Herren den Almægtige, som regerer, som var og er fra al evighed til al evighed, med kraft skal komme ned fra himlen blandt menneskenes børn og skal bo i en bolig af ler og skal gå omkring blandt menneskene, idet han udfører mægtige mirakler, såsom at helbrede de syge, oprejse de døde, få de lamme til at gå, de blinde til at få deres syn og de døve til at høre og helbrede alle slags sygdomme.
- 6 Og han skal uddrive djævlene eller de onde ånder, som bor i menneskenes børns hjerte.
- 7 Og se, han skal lide fristelser og legemlige smerter, sult, tørst og udmattelse, ja, mere end mennesker kan udholde, uden at det forvolder døden; for se, der kommer blod fra hver pore, så stor skal hans kval være over sit folks ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder.
- 8 Og han skal kaldes Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, himlens og jordens Fader, skaberen af alt fra begyndelsen; og hans mor skal hedde Maria.
- 9 Og se, han kommer til sine egne, for at frelse kan blive menneskenes børn til del, ja, ved tro på hans navn; og selv efter alt dette skal de betragte ham som et menneske og sige, at han har en djævel i sig, og skal piske ham og skal korsfæste ham.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

10 Og han skal på tredjedagen opstå fra de døde; og se, han står frem for at dømme verden; og se, alt dette sker, så der kan blive fældet en retfærdig dom over menneskenes børn.

11 For se, hans blod soner også for de synder, der er begået af dem, der er faldet ved Adams overtrædelse, og som døde uden at kende til Guds vilje angående sig, eller som har syndet i uvidenhed.

12 Men ve, ve den, der ved, at han sætter sig op imod Gud! For frelse bliver ikke sådanne til del, undtagen ved omvendelse og tro på den Herre Jesus Kristus.

13 Og Gud Herren har sendt sine hellige profeter blandt alle menneskenes børn for at kundgøre dette for alle stammer, folkeslag og tungemål, så derved hver den, som tror, at Kristus skal komme, han kan få forladelse for sine synder og fryde sig med overordentlig stor glæde, ja, som om han allerede var kommet blandt dem.

14 Imidlertid så Gud Herren, at hans folk var et stivnakket folk, og han fastsatte en lov for dem, nemlig Moseloven.

15 Og mange tegn og undere og sindbilleder og skygger viste han dem angående sit komme; og hellige profeter talte også til dem angående hans komme; og dog forhærdede de hjertet og forstod ikke, at Moseloven ikke er til nogen nytte, hvis det ikke var for forsoningen ved hans blod.

16 Og selv om det var muligt, at små børn kunne synde, kunne de ikke blive frelst; men jeg siger dig, de er velsignede; for se, ligesom de falder i Adam eller af naturen, således soner Kristi blod for deres synder.

17 Og endvidere siger jeg til dig, at der ikke skal gives noget andet navn eller nogen anden vej eller noget andet middel, hvorved frelse kan blive menneskenes børn til del, undtagen i og ved Kristi, Herren den Almægtiges, navn.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

18 For se, han dømmes, og hans dom er retfærdig; og spædbarnet, der dør i sin barndom, fortæbes ikke; men menneskene drikker fordømmelse til deres egen sjæl, medmindre de ydmyger sig og bliver som små børn og tror på, at frelse var og er og skal komme i og ved Kristi, Herren den Almægtiges, forsonende blod.

19 For det naturlige menneske er en fjende af Gud og har været det fra Adams fald og vil være det for evigt og altid, medmindre han giver efter for Helligåndens tilskyndelser og aflægger det naturlige menneske og bliver en hellig ved Herren Kristi forsoning og bliver som et barn, underdanig, sagtmodig, ydmyg, tålmodig, fuld af kærlighed, villig til at underordne sig alt det, som Herren finder det tjenligt at pålægge ham, ligesom et barn underordner sig sin far.

20 Og endvidere siger jeg til dig, at den tid skal komme, da kundskaben om en frelser skal blive spredt blandt alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk.

21 Og se, når den tid kommer, skal ingen, bortset fra små børn, blive fundet ulastelige for Gud, undtagen ved omvendelse og tro på Herrens, Gud den Almægtiges, navn.

22 Og selv på dette tidspunkt, hvor du har lært dit folk det, som Herren din Gud har befalet dig, selv da findes de ikke mere ulastelige i Guds øjne, undtagen i overensstemmelse med de ord, som jeg har talt til dig.

23 Og nu har jeg talt de ord, som Gud Herren har befalet mig.

24 Og så siger Herren: De skal stå som et klart vidnesbyrd mod dette folk på dommedagen, hvorfor de skal dømmes, enhver efter sine gerninger, om de er gode, eller om de er onde.

25 Og hvis de er onde, overgives de til en forfærdelig bevidsthed om deres egen skyld og vederstyggeligheder, hvilket får dem til at vige tilbage fra Herrens nærhed til en tilstand af elendighed og uendelig pinsel, hvorfra de ikke mere kan vende tilbage; derfor har de drukket fordømmelse til deres egen sjæl.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

26 Derfor har de drukket af Guds vredes bæger, hvilket retfærdigheden ikke kunne hindre dem i mere, end den kunne hindre Adam i at falde, fordi han spiste af den forbudne frugt; derfor kan barmhjertigheden aldrig mere for evigt have krav på dem.

27 Og deres pinsel er som en sø af ild og svovl, hvis flammer er uudslukkelige, og hvis røg stiger op for evigt og altid. Således har Herren befalet mig. Amen.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mosijas Bog 4

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da kong Benjamin var færdig med at tale de ord, som var blevet givet ham af Herrens engel, at han kastede blikket rundt på mængden, og se, de var faldet til jorden, for frygt for Herren var kommet over dem.
- 2 Og de havde set sig selv i deres egen kødelige tilstand, endog ringere end jordens støv. Og de råbte alle højt med én røst og sagde: O, hav barmhjertighed, og anvend Kristi forsonende blod, så vi kan få tilgivelse for vore synder, og vort hjerte kan blive rensed; for vi tror på Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, som skabte himlen og jorden og alting, og som skal komme ned blandt menneskenes børn.
- 3 Og det skete, efter at de havde talt disse ord, at Herrens Ånd kom over dem, og de blev fyldt af glæde, idet de fik forladelse for deres synder og fik fred med samvittigheden som følge af den overordentlig store tro, som de havde på Jesus Kristus, som skulle komme ifølge de ord, som kong Benjamin havde talt til dem.
- 4 Og kong Benjamin åbnede igen sin mund og begyndte at tale til dem og sagde: Mine venner og mine brødre, min slægt og mit folk, jeg vil igen bede om jeres opmærksomhed, så I kan høre og forstå resten af mine ord, som jeg vil tale til jer.
- 5 For se, hvis kundskaben om Guds godhed nu har vakt jer til en bevidsthed om jeres intethed og jeres uværdige og faldne tilstand –
- 6 jeg siger jer, at hvis I er kommet til kundskab om Guds godhed og hans uforlignelige magt og hans visdom og hans tålmodighed og hans langmodighed med menneskenes børn; og også den forsoning, der har været beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse, så frelse derved kunne blive den til del, som vil sætte sin lid til Herren og være flittig til at holde hans befalinger og vedblive i troen helt til enden på sit liv, jeg mener det dødelige legemes liv –

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

- 7 jeg siger, at dette er det menneske, der opnår frelse ved den forsoning, som har været beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse for alle mennesker, som nogen sinde har været til siden Adams fald, eller som er, eller som nogen sinde vil blive til, ja, indtil verdens ende.
- 8 Og dette er det middel, hvorved frelse finder sted. Og der er ingen anden frelse end denne, der er talt om; ej heller er der andre betingelser, hvorpå mennesket kan blive frelst, end de betingelser, som jeg har fortalt jer.
- 9 Tro på Gud; tro, at han er til, og at han har skabt alt, både i himlen og på jorden; tro, at han har al visdom og al magt, både i himlen og på jorden; tro, at mennesket ikke fatter alt det, som Herren kan fatte.
- 10 Og videre, tro, at I må omvende jer fra jeres synder og aflægge dem og ydmyge jer for Gud; og bed i hjertets oprigtighed om, at han vil tilgive jer; og se, hvis I tror alt dette, så se til, at I gør det.
- 11 Og videre siger jeg jer, ligesom jeg har sagt før, at hvis I er kommet til kundskab om Guds herlighed, eller hvis I har erfaret hans godhed og har smagt hans kærlighed og har fået forladelse for jeres synder, hvilket forårsager så overordentlig stor glæde i jeres sjæl, så ønsker jeg, at I skal huske og altid bevare i erindringen Guds storhed og jeres egen intethed og hans godhed og langmodighed mod jer, uværdige skabninger, og ydmyge jer, ja, i ydmyghedens dyb, idet I påkalder Herrens navn dagligt og står standhaftige i troen på det, som skal komme, og som blev talt ved englens mund.
- 12 Og se, jeg siger jer, at hvis I gør dette, skal I altid fryde jer og være fyldt af Guds kærlighed og altid blive ved med at have forladelse for jeres synder; og I skal vokse i kundskab om hans herlighed, han som har skabt jer, eller i kundskaben om det, der er ret og sandt.
- 13 Og I har ikke tilbøjelighed til at forurette hinanden, men til at leve fredsommeligt og til at give enhver efter det, der tilkommer ham.

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

14 Og I vil ikke lade jeres børn gå sultne eller nøgne; ej heller vil I tillade, at de overtræder Guds love og slås og skændes, den ene med den anden, og tjener Djævelen, som er syndens herre, eller som er den onde ånd, der er blevet talt om af vore fædre, han, som er en fjende af al retfærdighed.

15 Men I vil lære dem at vandre på sandhedens og alvorens veje; I vil lære dem at elske hinanden og at tjene hinanden.

16 Og I vil også selv bistå dem, der står i behov for jeres bistand; I vil yde af jeres gods til den, der står i nød, og I vil ikke tillade, at tiggeren fremfører sin bøn for jer forgæves og jage ham bort for at omkomme.

17 Du vil måske sige: Det menneske har bragt sin elendighed over sig selv; derfor vil jeg holde min hånd tilbage og vil ikke give ham af min mad eller give ham af mit gods, så han ikke skal lide; for hans straffe er retfærdige –

18 men jeg siger dig, o menneske, at hver den, der gør dette, han har stor grund til at omvende sig; og medmindre han omvender sig fra det, han har gjort, fortæbes han for evigt og har ingen del i Guds rige.

19 For se, er vi ikke alle tiggere? Er vi ikke alle afhængige af det samme væsen, nemlig Gud, med hensyn til alt det gods, som vi har, med hensyn til både føde og klæder og med hensyn til guld og sølv og alle de rigdomme, som vi har af enhver art?

20 Og se, I har selv lige nu påkaldt hans navn og tigget om forladelse for jeres synder. Og har han ladet jer tigge forgæves? Nej, han har udøst sin Ånd over jer og har foranlediget, at jeres hjerte blev fyldt af glæde, og foranlediget, at jeres mund blev lukket, så I ikke kunne finde mæle, så overordentlig stor var jeres glæde.

21 Og se, hvis Gud, som har skabt jer, af hvem I er afhængige med hensyn til jeres liv og med hensyn til alt det, I har og er, skænker jer, hvad end I beder om, som er ret, i tro, overbeviste om at I skal få, o, hvor burde I da ikke give af det gods, som I har, den ene til den anden.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

- 22 Og hvis I dømmer det menneske, der fremfører sin bøn for jer om jeres gods for ikke at omkomme, og fordømmer ham, hvor meget mere retfærdig vil da ikke jeres fordømmelse blive for at tilbageholde jeres gods, som ikke tilhører jer, men Gud, hvem også jeres liv tilhører; og dog fremfører I ingen bøn eller omvender jer fra det, I har gjort.
- 23 Jeg siger jer, ve det menneske, for hans gods skal forgå sammen med ham; og se, dette siger jeg til dem, der er rige, hvad angår denne verdens gods.
- 24 Og videre, jeg siger til de fattige, I, som intet har og dog har tilstrækkeligt til at leve fra dag til dag; jeg mener alle I, der afviser tiggeren, fordi I intet har; jeg vil ønske, at I i jeres hjerte siger: Jeg giver intet, fordi jeg intet har, men hvis jeg havde, ville jeg give.
- 25 Og se, hvis I siger dette i jeres hjerte, forbliver I skyldfri, ellers bliver I dømt skyldige, og jeres dom er retfærdig, for I begærer det, som I ikke har fået.
- 26 Og se, af hensyn til dette, som jeg har talt til jer – det vil sige af hensyn til at blive ved med at have forladelse for jeres synder fra dag til dag, så I kan vandre skyldfri for Gud – ønsker jeg, at I skal give af jeres gods til de fattige, enhver i forhold til det, som han har, så som at bespise de sultne, klæde de nøgne, besøge de syge og yde dem lindring, både åndeligt og timeligt i forhold til deres trang.
- 27 Og se til, at alt dette gøres med visdom og orden; for det forlanges ikke, at et menneske skal løbe hurtigere, end det har styrke til. Og videre, det er nødvendigt, at han er flittig, så han derved kan vinde sejrprisen; derfor må alt gøres med orden.
- 28 Og jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at hver den blandt jer, som låner af sin næste, skal give det, som han låner, tilbage, sådan som han har aftalt, for ellers begår du synd; og måske vil du foranledige din næste til også at begå synd.
- 29 Og til slut, jeg kan ikke fortælle jer alt det, hvori I kan begå synd; for der er forskellige veje og måder, ja, så mange, at jeg ikke kan tælle dem.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30 Men så meget kan jeg sige jer, at hvis I ikke vogter jerselv og jeres tanker og jeres ord og jeres handlinger og iagttager Guds befalinger og vedbliver i troen på det, I har hørt angående Herrens komme, helt til jeres livs ende, må I fortabes. Og se, o menneske, husk dette, og gå ikke fortabt.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mosijas Bog 5

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da kong Benjamin således havde talt til sit folk, sendte han tjenere ud blandt dem, idet han ønskede at få at vide af sit folk, om de troede de ord, som han havde talt til dem.
- 2 Og de råbte alle med én røst og sagde: Ja, vi tror alle de ord, som du har talt til os; og vi ved også, at de er ubetvivlelige og sande som følge af Herren den Almægtiges Ånd, som har bevirket en mægtig forandring i os, eller i vort hjerte, så vi ikke mere har tilbøjelighed til at gøre ondt, men til bestandigt at gøre godt.
- 3 Og vi har også selv ved Guds grænseløse godhed og hans Ånds tilkendegivelser set storslåede syner om det, der skal komme; og hvis det var nødvendigt, kunne vi profetere om alt.
- 4 Og det er den tro, som vi har haft på det, som vor konge har talt til os, der har bragt os til denne store kundskab, hvorved vi fryder os med så overordentlig stor glæde.
- 5 Og vi er villige til at indgå en pagt med vor Gud om at gøre hans vilje og at være lydige mod hans befalinger i alt, hvad han vil befale os alle resten af vore dage, så vi ikke bringer en aldrig ophørende pinsel over os selv, sådan som der er blevet talt ved englen, så vi ikke skal drikke af Guds vredes bæger.
- 6 Og se, disse er de ord, som kong Benjamin ønskede af dem; og derfor sagde han til dem: I har talt de ord, som jeg ønskede, og den pagt, som I har sluttet, er en retfærdig pagt.
- 7 Og se, på grund af den pagt, I har sluttet, skal I kaldes Kristi børn, hans sønner og hans døtre; for se, i dag har han født jer åndeligt; for I siger, at jeres hjerte er forandret ved tro på hans navn; derfor er I født af ham og er blevet hans sønner og døtre.

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

- 8 Og under denne betegnelse er I blevet frie, og der er ikke nogen anden betegnelse, hvorved I kan blive gjort frie. Der er ikke givet noget andet navn, hvorved frelse bliver tilvejebragt; derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal påtage jer Kristi navn, alle I, der har indgået pagten med Gud om, at I vil være lydige til jeres livs ende.
- 9 Og det skal ske, at hver den, som gør dette, skal blive fundet ved Guds højre hånd, for han skal kende det navn, som han kaldes ved; for han skal kaldes ved Kristi navn.
- 10 Og se, det skal ske, at hver den, som ikke påtager sig Kristi navn, skal kaldes ved et andet navn; derfor finder han sig selv ved Guds venstre hånd.
- 11 Og jeg ønsker, at I også skal huske, at dette er det navn, som jeg sagde, jeg ville give jer, og som aldrig skulle slettes, undtagen ved overtrædelse; pas derfor på, at I ikke overtræder, så navnet ikke bliver slettet fra jeres hjerte.
- 12 Jeg siger jer, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske altid at bevare navnet skrevet i hjertet, så I ikke bliver fundet ved Guds venstre hånd, men at I hører og kender den røst, hvorved I skal kaldes, og også det navn, som han skal kalde jer ved.
- 13 For hvorledes kender en mand den herre, som han ikke har tjent, og som er fremmed for ham og er langt borte fra hans hjertes tanker og hensigter?
- 14 Og videre, tager en mand et æsel, der tilhører hans næste, og beholder det? Jeg siger jer: Nej, han vil end ikke tillade, at det græsser blandt hans flokke, men vil drive det bort og støde det ud. Jeg siger jer, at således skal det være med jer, hvis I ikke kender det navn, hvorved I kaldes.
- 15 Derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal være standhaftige og urokkelige, altid rige på gode gerninger, så Kristus, Herren, Gud den Almægtige, kan besegle jer som sine, så I vil blive bragt til himlen, så I kan få evigtvarende frelse og evigt liv ved visdommen og kraften og retfærdigheden og barmhjertigheden i ham, der har skabt alt i himlen og på jorden, og som er Gud over alting. Amen.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mosijas Bog 6

- 1 Og se, kong Benjamin mente, at det var passende, at han efter at være blevet færdig med at tale til folket skulle nedskrive navnene på alle dem, der havde indgået en pagt med Gud om at holde hans befalinger.
- 2 Og det skete, at der ikke var én sjæl, bortset fra små børn, som ikke havde indgået pagten og havde påtaget sig Kristi navn.
- 3 Og videre, det skete, at da kong Benjamin var færdig med alt dette og havde indviet sin søn Mosija til at være hersker og konge over sit folk og havde givet ham hele ansvaret for rigets anliggender og også havde udpeget præster til at undervise folket, så de derved kunne høre og kende Guds befalinger, og til at vække dem til erindring om den ed, som de havde aflagt, lod han mængden gå, og de vendte hver især efter slægtskab tilbage til deres eget hus.
- 4 Og Mosija begyndte at regere i sin fars sted. Og han begyndte at regere i sin alders tredivte år, hvilket i det hele udgjorde omkring fire hundrede og seksoghalvfjerds år fra det tidspunkt, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem.
- 5 Og kong Benjamin levede tre år, og han døde.
- 6 Og det skete, at kong Mosija vandrede på Herrens vej og iagttog hans retsregler og hans lovbud og holdt hans befalinger i alt, hvad han befalede ham.
- 7 Og kong Mosija foranledigede sit folk til at dyrke jorden. Og han dyrkede også selv jorden, så han derved ikke kom til at ligge sit folk til byrde, så han kunne gøre i overensstemmelse med det, som hans far havde gjort i alt. Og der var ingen strid blandt hele hans folk i et tidsrum af tre år.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mosijas Bog 7

- 1 Og se, det skete, efter at kong Mosija havde haft vedvarende fred i et tidsrum af tre år, at han nærede ønske om at få noget at vide om de mennesker, der drog op for at bo i Lehi-Nefis land, eller i byen Lehi-Nefi; for hans folk havde intet hørt fra dem fra det tidspunkt, de forlod Zarahemlas land, derfor trættede de ham med deres plagerier.
- 2 Og det skete, at kong Mosija tilstedte, at seksten af deres stærke mænd kunne drage op til Lehi-Nefis land for at forhøre sig angående deres brødre.
- 3 Og det skete, at de den næste dag begyndte at drage op, idet de med sig havde en vis Ammon, der var en stærk og mægtig mand og en efterkommer af Zarahemla; og han var også deres leder.
- 4 Og se, de kendte ikke den vej, de skulle rejse i ødemarken for at komme op til Lehi-Nefis land; derfor vandrede de mange dage i ødemarken, ja, i fyrre dage vandrede de.
- 5 Og da de havde vandret i fyrre dage, kom de til en høj, der ligger nord for Shiloms land, og der slog de deres telte op.
- 6 Og Ammon tog tre af sine brødre med sig, og deres navne var Amaleki, Helem og Hem, og de drog ned i Nefis land.
- 7 Og se, de mødte kongen over de folk, der var i Nefis land og i Shiloms land; og de blev omringet af kongens vagt og blev pågrebet og blev bundet og blev kastet i fængsel.
- 8 Og det skete, at da de havde været i fængsel i to dage, blev de atter ført frem for kongen, og deres bånd blev løst; og de stod for kongen og fik lov til, eller snarere blev befalet, at de skulle besvare de spørgsmål, som han ville stille dem.
- 9 Og han sagde til dem: Se, jeg er Limhi, søn af Noa, der var søn af Zeniff, der drog op fra Zarahemlas land for at arve dette land, der var deres fædres land, og som blev gjort til konge ved folkets stemme.
- 10 Og se, jeg vil gerne kende grunden til, at I var så dristige at komme nær byens mure, mens jeg selv befandt mig med mine vagter uden for porten?

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

11 Og se, af denne grund har jeg ladet jer bevare livet, så jeg kunne adspørge jer, ellers ville jeg have ladet mine vagter sende jer i døden. Det er jer tilladt at tale.

12 Og se, da Ammon så, at det var ham tilladt at tale, gik han frem og bøjede sig for kongen; og idet han atter rejste sig, sagde han: O konge, jeg er i dag Gud meget taknemlig for, at jeg endnu er i live, og at det er mig tilladt at tale; og jeg vil forsøge at tale med frimodighed,

13 for jeg er forvisset om, at hvis I havde kendt mig, ville I ikke have tilladt, at jeg skulle have båret disse reb. For jeg er Ammon og er efterkommer af Zarahemla og er kommet op fra Zarahemlas land for at forhøre mig angående vore brødre, som Zeniff førte ud af det land.

14 Og se, det skete, efter at Limhi havde hørt Ammons ord, at han blev overordentlig glad og sagde: Nu ved jeg med vished, at mine brødre, der var i Zarahemlas land, endnu er i live. Og nu vil jeg fryde mig, og i morgen vil jeg også lade mit folk fryde sig.

15 For se, vi er i trældom under lamanitterne, og vi bliver beskattet med en skat, der er tung at bære. Og se nu, vore brødre vil udfri os af vor trældom eller af lamaniternes hænder, og vi vil være deres slaver; for det er bedre, at vi er nefitternes slaver end at betale skat til lamanitternes konge.

16 Og se, kong Limhi befalede sine vagter, at de ikke mere skulle holde Ammon eller hans brødre bundet, men lade dem drage til den høj, der var nord for Shilom og bringe deres brødre ind i byen, så de derved kunne spise og drikke og hvile sig efter deres rejses møje, for de havde lidt meget; de havde lidt sult, tørst og udmattelse.

17 Og se, det skete den næste dag, at kong Limhi sendte en proklamation ud til hele sit folk, så de derved kunne samle sig ved templet for at høre de ord, som han ville tale til dem.

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

- 18 Og det skete, at da de havde samlet sig, at han talte til dem på denne vis og sagde: O, I mit folk, løft hovedet, og vær trøstet; for se, tiden er for hånden eller er ikke langt borte, da vi ikke længere skal være underkastet vore fjender til trods for vore mange kampe, der har været forgæves; dog er jeg vis på, at der endnu forestår en afgørende kamp.
- 19 Løft derfor hovedet, og fryd jer, og sæt jeres lid til Gud, til den Gud, der var Abrahams, Isaks og Jakobs Gud; og også den Gud, der førte Israels børn ud af Egyptens land og foranledigede, at de gik gennem Det Røde Hav på tør grund og bispiste dem med manna, for at de ikke skulle omkomme i ørkenen; og meget mere gjorde han for dem.
- 20 Og videre, den selv samme Gud har bragt vore fædre ud af Jerusalems land og har beskyttet og bevaret sit folk helt indtil nu; og se, det er på grund af vor syndighed og vore vederstyggeligheder, at han har bragt os i trældom.
- 21 Og I er alle i dag vidner på, at Zeniff, der blev gjort til konge over dette folk, han, som var overivrig efter at arve sine fædres land, blev derfor bedraget af kong Lamans snedighed og snuhed, han, som havde indgået en traktat med kong Zeniff og havde overladt besiddelserne af en del af landet i hans hænder, nemlig byen Lehi-Nefi og byen Shilom og landet deromkring –
- 22 og alt dette har han gjort med det ene formål at bringe dette folk til underkastelse eller i trældom. Og se, på dette tidspunkt betaler vi en skat til lamanitternes konge, der udgør halvdelen af vor majs og vor byg, ja, af alt vort korn af enhver art og halvdelen af tilvæksten i vore flokke og hjerde; og endog halvdelen af alt, hvad vi har eller ejer, kræver lamanitternes konge af os, eller vort liv.
- 23 Og se, er det nu ikke tungt at bære? Og er denne vor trængsel ikke stor? Se, hvor stor grund vi har til at sørge.
- 24 Ja, jeg siger jer, store er de grunde, vi har til at sørge; for se, hvor mange af vore brødre er ikke blevet slået ihjel, og deres blod er blevet udgydt forgæves, og alt sammen på grund af ugudelighed.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

25 For hvis dette folk ikke var faldet i overtrædelse, ville Herren ikke have tilladt, at dette store onde var kommet over dem. Men se, de ville ikke lytte til hans ord, men der opstod stridigheder blandt dem, ja, så meget at de endog udgød blod indbyrdes.

26 Og Herrens profet har de slået ihjel, ja, en mand, udvalgt af Gud, som foreholdt dem deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder og profeterede om meget, der skulle komme, ja, endog om Kristi komme.

27 Og fordi han sagde til dem, at Kristus var Gud, altings Fader, og sagde, at han ville påtage sig et menneskes billede, og at det ville være det billede, efter hvilket mennesket blev skabt i begyndelsen; eller med andre ord, han sagde, at mennesket blev skabt efter Guds billede, og at Gud skulle komme ned blandt menneskenes børn og påtage sig kød og blod og gå omkring på jordens overflade.

28 Og se, fordi han sagde dette, sendte de ham i døden; og de gjorde meget mere, som nedkaldte Guds vrede over dem. Hvem kan derfor undre sig over, at de er i trældom, og at de bliver slået med svære trængsler?

29 For se, Herren har sagt: Jeg vil ikke bistå mit folk på deres overtrædelses dag; men jeg vil spørre vejen for dem, så de ikke har fremgang; og deres gerninger skal være som en anstødssten for dem.

30 Og videre siger han: Hvis mit folk sår tilsølethed, skal de høste avnerne deraf i hvirvelvinden; og virkningen deraf er gift.

31 Og videre siger han: Hvis mit folk sår tilsølethed, skal de høste østenvinden, som bringer øjeblikkelig ødelæggelse.

32 Og se nu, Herrens løfte er opfyldt, og I bliver slået og plaget.

33 Men hvis I vil vende jer til Herren med hjertets faste forsæt og sætte jeres lid til ham og tjene ham med al sindets flid, hvis I vil gøre det, vil han efter sin vilje og sit behag udfri jer af trældom.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mosijas Bog 8

- 1 Og det skete, efter at kong Limhi var færdig med at tale til sit folk, for han talte meget til dem, og kun lidt af det har jeg skrevet i denne bog, at han fortalte sit folk alt om deres brødre, der var i Zarahemlas land.
- 2 Og han lod Ammon stå frem foran mængden og fortælle dem om alt det, der var hændt deres brødre fra det tidspunkt, da Zeniff drog op fra landet, og lige til den tid da han selv kom op fra landet.
- 3 Og han forklarede dem også de sidste ord, som kong Benjamin havde lært dem, og forklarede dem for kong Limhis folk, så de kunne forstå alle de ord, som han talte.
- 4 Og det skete, at efter at han havde gjort alt dette, at kong Limhi lod mængden gå og lod dem vende tilbage, hver til sit eget hus.
- 5 Og det skete, at han lod de plader, der indeholdt optegnelsen om hans folk fra det tidspunkt, da de forlod Zarahemlas land, blive bragt frem for Ammon, så han kunne læse dem.
- 6 Se, så snart Ammon havde læst optegnelsen, adspurgte kongen ham for at få at vide, om han kunne oversætte sprog, og Ammon fortalte ham, at det kunne han ikke.
- 7 Og kongen sagde til ham: Eftersom jeg var bedrøvet over mit folks trængsler, lod jeg treogfyre af mine folk rejse ud i ødemarken, så de måske derved kunne finde Zarahemlas land, så vi måske kunne bønfalde vore brødre om at udfri os af trældom.
- 8 Og de for vild i ødemarken i et tidsrum af mange dage, dog var de flittige og fandt ikke Zarahemlas land, men vendte tilbage til dette land efter at have rejst i et land mellem mange vande og efter at have opdaget et land, der var dækket af knogler fra mennesker og fra dyr og også dækket af ruiner af bygninger af enhver art, og efter at have opdaget et land, der havde været befolket af et folk, der var lige så talrigt som Israels hærskarer.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

- 9 Og som et vidnesbyrd om, at det, som de havde sagt, er sandt, har de bragt fireogtyve plader med tilbage, som er fyldt med indgravninger, og de er af rent guld.
- 10 Og se, de har også bragt brynjer med, som er store, og de er af bronze og af kobber og er helt ubeskadigede.
- 11 Og videre, de har bragt sværd med tilbage, men fæsterne på dem var forgået, og klingerne på dem var angrebet af rust; og der er ikke en eneste i landet, der er i stand til at oversætte det sprog eller de indgravninger, der er på pladerne. Derfor sagde jeg til dig: Kan du oversætte?
- 12 Og jeg siger dig videre: Kender du til nogen, som kan oversætte? For jeg nærer ønske om, at disse optegnelser skal oversættes til vort sprog; for måske vil de give os en viden om en rest af det folk, som er blevet udryddet, og fra hvem disse optegnelser kom; eller måske vil de give os en viden om selve dette folk, som er blevet udryddet, og jeg nærer ønske om at kende årsagen til deres udryddelse.
- 13 Se, Ammon sagde til ham: Jeg kan helt sikkert fortælle dig, o konge, om en mand, der kan oversætte optegnelserne; for han har noget, hvormed han kan se og oversætte alle optegnelser, der er fra gammel tid; og det er en gave fra Gud. Og de kaldes oversættere, og ingen kan se i dem, medmindre det bliver ham befalet, for at han ikke skal se efter det, som han ikke burde, og omkomme. Og hver den, der bliver befalet at se i dem, han kaldes seer.
- 14 Og se, kongen over det folk, som er i Zarahemlas land, er den mand, som er blevet befalet at gøre dette, og som har denne høje gave fra Gud.
- 15 Og kongen sagde, at en seer er større end en profet.
- 16 Og Ammon sagde, at en seer er en åbenbarer og også en profet; og en gave, der er større, kan intet menneske have, medmindre han skulle besidde Guds magt, hvilket intet menneske kan; dog kan et menneske have fået stor magt af Gud.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

- 17 Men en seer kan kende til det, der er forgangent, og også til det, der skal komme, og ved dem skal alt åbenbares, eller snarere skal det, der er hemmeligt, blive givet til kende, og det, der er skjult, skal komme frem i lyset, og det, der ikke er kendt, skal blive gjort kendt ved dem, og ved dem skal også dét blive gjort kendt, som ellers ikke kunne blive kendt.
- 18 Således har Gud sørget for et middel, så mennesket ved tro kan gøre mægtige mirakler; derfor bliver han til stor gavn for sine medmennesker.
- 19 Og se, da Ammon var færdig med at tale disse ord, frydede kongen sig overordentligt og gav tak til Gud, idet han sagde: Uden tvivl indeholder disse plader en stor hemmelighed, og disse oversættere er uden tvivl blevet beredt med det formål at udfolde alle sådanne hemmeligheder for menneskenes børn.
- 20 O, hvor forunderlige er ikke Herrens gerninger, og hvor længe bærer han ikke over med sit folk; ja, og hvor blind og uigennemtrængelig er ikke menneskenes børns forstand; for de vil ikke søge visdom, ej heller ønsker de, at hun skal regere over dem!
- 21 Ja, de er som en vild flok, der flygter fra hyrden og spreder sig og bliver jaget og bliver ædt af skovens rovdyr.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

ZENIFFS OPTEGNELSE – En beretning om hans folk fra det tidspunkt, de forlod Zarahemlas land, indtil det tidspunkt, da de blev udfriet af lamaniternes hænder.

Mosijas Bog 9

- 1 Jeg, Zeniff, som er blevet oplært i hele nefitternes sprog og har haft kendskab til Nefis land, eller til vore fædres første arveland, og som har været sendt ud som spion blandt lamanitterne, for at jeg måske kunne udspionere deres styrker, så vor hær kunne falde over dem og udrydde dem – men da jeg så det, der var godt hos dem, nærrede jeg ønske om, at de ikke skulle udryddes –
- 2 jeg stredes derfor med mine brødre i ødemarken, for jeg ønskede, at vor hersker skulle slutte en traktat med dem; men han, der var en streng og blodtørstig mand, befalede, at jeg skulle slås ihjel; men jeg blev reddet ved udgydelse af meget blod, for far kæmpede mod far og bror mod bror, indtil størstedelen af vor hær var blevet udryddet i ødemarken; og de af os, hvis liv blev skånet, vendte tilbage til Zarahemlas land for at give denne beretning til deres hustruer og deres børn.
- 3 Og dog samlede jeg, der var overivrig efter at arve vore fædres land, så mange, der nærrede ønske om at drage op for at tage landet i besiddelse, og begyndte igen på vor rejse ud i ødemarken for at drage op til landet; men vi blev slået med sult og svære trængsler, for vi var langsomme til at huske Herren vor Gud.
- 4 Alligevel slog vi efter mange dages vandring i ødemarken vore telte op på det sted, hvor vore brødre var blevet slået ihjel, hvilket var nær ved vore fædres land.
- 5 Og det skete, at jeg med fire af mine mænd atter gik ind i byen, ind til kongen, for at jeg kunne finde ud af kongens indstilling, og for at jeg måske kunne finde ud af, om jeg måtte drage ind med mit folk og i fred tage landet i besiddelse.
- 6 Og jeg gik ind til kongen, og han sluttede pagt med mig om, at jeg måtte tage Lehi-Nefis land og Shiloms land i besiddelse.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

7 Og han befalede også, at hans folk skulle drage ud af landet, og jeg og mit folk drog ind i landet, så vi kunne tage det i besiddelse.

8 Og vi begyndte at bygge bygninger og at reparere byens mure, ja, murene omkring byen Lehi-Nefi og byen Shilom.

9 Og vi begyndte at tilså jorden, ja, med alle slags frø, med frø af majs og af hvede og af byg og med neas og med sheum og med frø af alle slags frugter, og vi begyndte at mangfoldiggøre os og have fremgang i landet.

10 Se, det skyldtes kong Lamans snedighed og snuhed med henblik på at bringe mit folk i trældom, at han gav afkald på landet, så vi kunne tage det i besiddelse.

11 Derfor skete det, at efter at vi havde boet i landet i et tidsrum af tolv år, at kong Laman begyndte at blive urolig for, at mit folk på en eller anden måde skulle vokse sig stærke i landet, og at de ikke kunne overvinde dem og bringe dem i trældom.

12 Se, de var et dovent og afgudsdyrkende folk; derfor nærrede de ønske om at bringe os i trældom, så de kunne mæske sig ved vore hænders arbejde; ja, så de kunne tage for sig af kvæget på vore marker.

13 Derfor skete det, at kong Laman begyndte at ophidse sit folk, for at de skulle stride mod mit folk; derfor opstod der krige og stridigheder i landet.

14 For i det trettende år af min regeringstid i Nefis land, nede i den sydlige del af Shiloms land, faldt der, mens mit folk vandede og fodrede deres flokke og dyrkede deres jord, en talrig hærske af lamanitter over dem og begyndte at slå dem ihjel og at bortrøve deres flokke og majs på deres marker.

15 Ja, og det skete, at de flygtede, alle, der ikke blev overmandet, ja, til byen Nephi og anmodede mig om beskyttelse.

16 Og det skete, at jeg bevæbnede dem med buer og med pile, med sværd og med sabler og med køller og med slynger og med alle slags våben, som vi kunne opfinde, og jeg og mit folk drog ud mod lamanitterne for at kæmpe.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

17 Ja, i Herrens styrke drog vi ud for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne; for jeg og mit folk anråbte Herren indtrængende om, at han ville udfri os af vore fjenders hænder; for vi blev vakt til erindring om vore fædres udfrielse.

18 Og Gud hørte vore råb og besvarede vore bønner; og vi drog ud i hans styrke; ja, vi drog ud mod lamanitterne, og på én dag og én nat slog vi tre tusinde og treogfyre ihjel; vi slog dem, lige indtil vi havde drevet dem ud af landet.

19 Og jeg hjalp selv med mine egne hænder til med at begrave deres døde. Og se, til vor store sorg og beklagelse var to hundrede og nioghalvfjerds af vore brødre blevet slået ihjel.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mosijas Bog 10

- 1 Og det skete, at vi igen begyndte at oprette riget, og at vi igen begyndte at tage landet i besiddelse i fred. Og jeg lod fremstille krigsvåben af enhver art, så jeg derved kunne have våben til mit folk til den tid, da lamanitterne igen ville komme op for at føre krig mod mit folk.
- 2 Og jeg satte vagter rundt omkring landet, så lamanitterne ikke igen uventet skulle falde over os og slå os ihjel; og således beskyttede jeg mit folk og mine flokke og sørgede for, at de ikke faldt i vore fjenders hænder.
- 3 Og det skete, at vi arvede vore fædres land i mange år, ja, i et tidsrum af toogtyve år.
- 4 Og jeg lod mændene dyrke jorden og avle alle slags korn og alle slags frugt af enhver art.
- 5 Og jeg lod kvinderne spinde og arbejde og virke og lave alle slags fint linned, ja, og klæde af enhver art, så vi kunne klæde vor nøgenhed; og således havde vi fremgang i landet – således havde vi vedvarende fred i landet i et tidsrum af toogtyve år.
- 6 Og det skete, at kong Laman døde, og hans søn begyndte at regere i hans sted. Og han begyndte at ophidse sit folk til oprør mod mit folk; derfor begyndte de at forberede sig på krig og at komme op for at kæmpe mod mit folk.
- 7 Men jeg havde sendt mine spioner ud rundt omkring i Shemlons land, for at jeg måske kunne opdage deres forberedelser, så jeg kunne være på vagt over for dem, så de ikke skulle falde over mit folk og udrydde dem.
- 8 Og det skete, at de kom op mod den nordlige del af Shiloms land med deres talrige hærskarere, mænd, bevæbnet med buer og med pile og med sværd og med sabler og med sten og med slynger; og de havde raget hovedet, så de var nøgne; og de havde et læderbælte spændt om lænderne.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

- 9 Og det skete, at jeg foranledigede, at mit folks kvinder og børn skulle skjules i ødemarken; og jeg foranledigede også, at alle de af mine gamle mænd, som kunne bære våben, og ligeledes alle de af mine unge mænd, som var i stand til at bære våben, skulle samles for at drage ud for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne; og jeg stillede dem op i deres formationer, hver mand efter sin alder.
- 10 Og det skete, at vi drog op for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne; og jeg, selv jeg i min høje alder, drog op for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne. Og det skete, at vi drog op i Herrens styrke for at kæmpe.
- 11 Se, lamanitterne kendte intet til Herren eller til Herrens styrke, derfor stolede de på deres egen styrke. Dog var de et stærkt folk, hvad menneskelig styrke angår.
- 12 De var et vildt og grusomt og et blodtørstigt folk, der troede på deres fædres overlevering, der er som følger – de troede, at de blev drevet ud af Jerusalems land på grund af deres fædres syndighed, og at de blev forurettet i ørkenen af deres brødre, og at de også blev forurettet, mens de krydsede havet;
- 13 og videre, at de blev forurettet, mens de var i deres første arveland, efter at de havde krydset havet, og alt dette, fordi Nephi var mere trofast i at holde Herrens befalinger – derfor blev han begunstiget af Herren, for Herren hørte hans bønner og besvarede dem, og han tog ledelsen af deres rejse i ørkenen.
- 14 Og hans brødre var vrede på ham, fordi de ikke forstod Herrens måde at handle på; de var også vrede på ham på vandene, fordi de forhærdede hjertet mod Herren.
- 15 Og videre, de var vrede på ham, da de var kommet til det forjættede land, fordi de sagde, at han havde taget ledelsen af folket ud af deres hænder; og de forsøgte at dræbe ham.
- 16 Og videre, de var vrede på ham, fordi han var draget ud i ødemarken, sådan som Herren havde befalet ham, og havde taget de optegnelser, som var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, med, for de sagde, at han berøvede dem.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

- 17 Og således har de lært deres børn, at de skal hade dem, og at de skal myrde dem, og at de skal berøve og plyndre dem og gøre alt, hvad de kan, for at udrydde dem; derfor har de et evigt had til Nefis børn.
- 18 Af selv samme grund har kong Laman med sin snedighed og løgnagtige snuhed og sine gyldne løfter bedraget mig, så jeg har ført dette mit folk op til dette land, så de kan udrydde dem; ja, og vi har lidt disse mange år i landet.
- 19 Og se, efter at jeg, Zeniff, havde fortalt mit folk alt dette om lamanitterne, opmuntrede jeg dem til at drage ud for at kæmpe af alle deres kræfter, idet de satte deres lid til Herren; derfor stred vi mod dem, ansigt til ansigt.
- 20 Og det skete, at vi igen drev dem ud af vort land; og vi slog dem ihjel under en stor nedslagtning, ja, så mange at vi ikke talte dem.
- 21 Og det skete, at vi igen vendte tilbage til vort eget land, og mit folk begyndte igen at passe deres flokke og at dyrke deres jord.
- 22 Og se, jeg, der er gammel, overdrog riget til en af mine sønner; derfor siger jeg ikke mere. Og måtte Herren velsigne mit folk. Amen.
- And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.
- For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.
- And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.
- And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.
- And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.
- And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mosijas Bog 11

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Zeniff overdrog riget til Noa, en af sine sønner; derfor begyndte Noa at regere i hans sted; og han vandrede ikke på sin fars veje.
- 2 For se, han holdt ikke Guds befalinger, men han vandrede efter sit eget hjertes ønsker. Og han havde mange hustruer og medhustruer. Og han fik sit folk til at begå synd og gøre det, der var vederstyggeligt i Herrens øjne. Ja, og de begik utugtigheder og al slags ugudelighed.
- 3 Og han pålagde dem en skat på en femtedel af alt det, de ejede, en femtedel af deres guld og af deres sølv og en femtedel af deres ziff og af deres kobber og af deres bronze og deres jern og en femtedel af deres fedekvæg og også en femtedel af al deres korn.
- 4 Og alt dette tog han for at forsørge sig selv og sine hustruer og sine medhustruer og også sine præster og deres hustruer og deres medhustruer; således havde han forandret rigets anliggender.
- 5 For han afsatte alle de præster, der var blevet indviet af hans far, og indviede nye i deres sted, sådanne som var indbildske i hjertets stolthed.
- 6 Ja, og således blev de understøttet i deres dovenskab og i deres afgudsdyrkelse og i deres utugtigheder af de skatter, som kong Noa havde pålagt sit folk; således arbejdede folket overordentlig meget for at understøtte ugudelighed.
- 7 Ja, og også de blev afgudsdyrkende, fordi de blev bedraget af kongens og præsternes tomme og smigrende ord; for de talte smigrende ord til dem.
- 8 Og det skete, at kong Noa byggede mange elegante og rummelige bygninger; og han prydede dem med fint træarbejde og med alle slags kostbarheder af guld og af sølv og af jern og af bronze og af ziff og af kobber;
- 9 og han byggede sig også et rummeligt palads og en trone midt i det, alt sammen var af fint træ og var prydet med guld og sølv og med kostbarheder.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

10 Og han foranledigede også, at hans håndværkere skulle udføre al slags fint arbejde af fint træ og af kobber og af bronze indenfor templets mure.

11 Og de siddepladser, der var beregnet til højpræsterne, og som var anbragt over alle de andre siddepladser, prydede han med rent guld; og han lod et brystværn bygge foran dem, som de kunne hvile deres legeme og deres arme på, mens de talte løgnagtige og tomme ord til hans folk.

12 Og det skete, at han byggede et tårn nær ved templet, ja, et meget højt tårn, endog så højt, at han kunne stå på toppen af det og se ud over Shiloms land og ligeså Shemlons land, som lamanitterne havde taget i besiddelse; og han kunne endog se ud over hele landet deromkring.

13 Og det skete, at han lod mange bygninger bygge i landet Shilom; og han lod et stort tårn bygge på den høj nord for landet Shilom, som havde været et tilflugtssted for Nefis børn på det tidspunkt, de flygtede ud af landet; og således gjorde han med de rigdomme, som han fik ved beskatningen af sit folk.

14 Og det skete, at han kastede sit hjerte på sine rigdomme, og han tilbragte sin tid i løssluppet levned med sine hustruer og sine medhustruer; og på samme måde tilbragte hans præster også deres tid med skøger.

15 Og det skete, at han plantede vingårde overalt i landet; og han byggede vinperser og lavede vin i overflod; og derfor blev han vindrunker og ligeledes hans folk.

16 Og det skete, at lamanitterne begyndte at falde over hans folk, i små grupper, og at slå dem ihjel på deres marker, og mens de vogtede deres flokke.

17 Og kong Noa sendte vagter ud omkring i landet for at holde dem borte; men han sendte ikke et tilstrækkeligt antal, og lamanitterne faldt over dem og dræbte dem og drev mange af deres flokke ud af landet; således begyndte lamanitterne at slå dem ihjel og at udøve deres had mod dem.

18 Og det skete, at kong Noa sendte sine hære mod dem, og de blev drevet tilbage, eller de drev dem tilbage for en tid; derfor vendte de tilbage og frydede sig ved deres rov.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

19 Og se, på grund af denne store sejr blev de indbildske i hjertets stolthed; de pralede af deres egen styrke, idet de sagde, at halvtreds af dem kunne stå sig imod tusinder af lamanitter; og således pralede de og frydede sig ved blod og ved at udgyde deres brødres blod, og det på grund af deres konges og præsters ugudelighed.

20 Og det skete, at der var en mand blandt dem, hvis navn var Abinadi; og han gik ud blandt dem og begyndte at profetere, idet han sagde: Se, så siger Herren, og således har han befalet mig, idet han sagde: Gå ud og sig til dette folk, at så siger Herren: Ve dette folk, for jeg har set deres vederstyggeligheder og deres ugudelighed og deres utugtigheder, og medmindre de omvender sig, vil jeg hjem søge dem i min vrede.

21 Og medmindre de omvender sig og vender sig til Herren deres Gud, se, da vil jeg overgive dem i deres fjenders hænder, ja, og de skal blive bragt i trældom, og de skal blive plaget ved deres fjenders hånd.

22 Og det skal ske, at de skal vide, at jeg er Herren deres Gud og er en nidkær Gud, der hjem søger mit folks syndighed.

23 Og det skal ske, at medmindre dette folk omvender sig og vender sig til Herren deres Gud, skal de blive bragt i trældom; og ingen, undtagen Herren, Gud den Almægtige, skal udfri dem.

24 Ja, og det skal ske, at når de anråber mig, vil jeg være sen til at høre deres råb, ja, og jeg vil tillade dem at blive slået af deres fjender.

25 Og medmindre de omvender sig i sæk og aske og indtrængende anråber Herren deres Gud, vil jeg ikke høre deres bønner, ej heller vil jeg udfri dem af deres trængsler; og så siger Herren, og således har han befalet mig.

26 Se, det skete, at da Abinadi havde talt disse ord til dem, blev de vrede på ham og forsøgte at berøve ham livet; men Herren udfriede ham af deres hænder.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

- 27 Se, da kong Noa havde hørt om de ord, som Abinadi havde talt til folket, blev også han vred, og han sagde: Hvem er Abinadi, at jeg og mit folk skal dømmes af ham; eller hvem er den Herre, der skal bringe så stor trængsel over mit folk?
- 28 Jeg befaler jer at bringe Abinadi herhen, så jeg kan slå ham ihjel, for han har sagt dette for at ophidse mit folk til vrede, den ene mod den anden, og for at skabe stridigheder blandt mit folk; derfor vil jeg slå ham ihjel.
- 29 Se, folkets øjne var forblindede; derfor forhædede de hjertet mod Abinadis ord, og de forsøgte fra den tid af at gribe ham. Og kong Noa forhædede sit hjerte mod Herrens ord, og han omvendte sig ikke fra sine onde gerninger.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

Mosijas Bog 12

- 1 Og det skete, at efter et tidsrum af to år, at Abinadi kom blandt dem i forklædning, så de ikke kendte ham, og begyndte at profetere blandt dem, idet han sagde: Således har Herren befalet mig, idet han sagde: Abinadi, drag ud og profetér for dette mit folk; for de har forhærdet hjertet mod mine ord; de har ikke omvendt sig fra deres onde gerninger; derfor vil jeg hjemsøge dem i min vrede, ja, i min rasende vrede vil jeg hjemsøge dem i deres syndighed og deres vederstyggeligheder.
- 2 Ja, ve denne slægt! Og Herren sagde til mig: Stræk din hånd ud og profetér, idet du siger: Så siger Herren: Det skal ske, at denne slægt på grund af deres syndighed skal blive bragt i trældom og skal blive slået på kinden, ja, og skal blive drevet af mennesker og skal blive slået ihjel, og luftens gribbe og hundene, ja, og de vilde rovdyr, skal æde deres kød.
- 3 Og det skal ske, at kong Noas liv ikke skal regnes for mere end en klædning i en hed ovn; for han skal vide, at jeg er Herren.
- 4 Og det skal ske, at jeg vil slå dette mit folk med svære trængsler, ja, med hungersnød og med pest; og jeg vil give dem anledning til at hyle hele dagen lang.
- 5 Ja, og jeg vil foranledige, at de får bundet byrder på deres rygge, og de skal drives af sted som et stumt æsel.
- 6 Og det skal ske, at jeg vil sende hagl blandt dem, og den skal slå dem; og de skal også blive slået med østenvinden; og insekter skal også forpeste deres land og fortære deres korn.
- 7 Og de skal blive slået med en stor pest – og alt dette vil jeg gøre på grund af deres syndighed og vederstyggeligheder.
- 8 Og det skal ske, at medmindre de omvender sig, vil jeg helt udrydde dem fra jordens overflade; dog skal de efterlade sig en optegnelse, og jeg vil bevare dem for andre folkeslag, som skal tage landet i besiddelse; ja, alt dette vil jeg gøre, for at jeg kan afsløre dette folks vederstyggeligheder for andre folkeslag. Og meget profeterede Abinadi mod dette folk.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

9 Og det skete, at de blev vrede på ham; og de greb ham og bar ham bunden frem for kongen og sagde til kongen: Se, vi har ført en mand frem for dig, som har profeteret ondt om dit folk og siger, at Gud vil udrydde dem.

10 Og han profeterer også ondt om dit liv og siger, at dit liv skal være som en klædning i en ovn med ild.

11 Og videre, han siger, at du skal være som et strå, ja, som et tørt strå på marken, der bliver rendt over ende af dyrene og trådt under føde.

12 Og videre, han siger, at du skal være som blomsterne på en tidsel, der, når den er helt moden, føres ud over hele landets overflade, hvis vinden blæser. Og han foregiver, at Herren har talt det. Og han siger, at alt dette skal komme over dig, medmindre du omvender dig, og det på grund af din syndighed.

13 Og se, o konge, hvad grufuldt ondt har du gjort, eller hvilke store synder har dit folk begået, at vi skulle blive dømt skyldige af Gud eller dømt af denne mand?

14 Og se, o konge, se, vi er skyldfri, og du, o konge, har ikke syndet; derfor har denne mand løjet om dig, og han har profeteret forgæves.

15 Og se, vi er stærke, vi skal ikke komme i trældom eller blive taget til fange af vore fjender; ja, og du har haft fremgang i landet, og du skal fortsat have fremgang.

16 Se, her er manden, vi overgiver ham i dine hænder; du kan gøre med ham, som du finder for godt.

17 Og det skete, at kong Noa foranledigede, at Abinadi skulle kastes i fængsel; og han befalede, at præsterne skulle forsamle sig, så han kunne holde råd med dem om, hvad han skulle gøre med ham.

18 Og det skete, at de sagde til kongen: Bring ham herhen, så vi kan udspørge ham; og kongen befalede, at han skulle bringes frem for dem.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

19 Og de begyndte at udspørge ham, for at de kunne få ham til at modsige sig selv, så de derved kunne have noget at beskyldes ham for; men han svarede dem frimodigt og modstod alle deres spørgsmål, ja, til deres forbavselse, for han modstod dem i alle deres spørgsmål og bragte dem til tavshed i alle deres ord.

20 Og det skete, at en af dem sagde til ham: Hvad betyder de ord, som er skrevet, og som vore fædre har forkyndt, og som lyder:

21 Hvor herlige på bjergene er ikke fødderne af ham, som bringer gode tidender, som forkynder fred, som bringer gode tidender om godt, som forkynder frelse, som siger til Zion: Din Gud regerer.

22 Dine vægttere skal opløfte røsten, med forenet røst skal de synge, for de skal med egne øjne se, når Herren genrejser Zion.

23 Bryd ud i glæde, syng sammen, I Jerusalems øde steder; for Herren har trøstet sit folk, han har forløst Jerusalem.

24 Herren har blottet sin hellige arm for øjnene af alle folkeslagene, og alle jordens ender skal se vor Guds frelse?

25 Og se, Abinadi sagde til dem: Er I præster og foregiver at undervise dette folk og at forstå profetiens ånd og ønsker dog at få at vide af mig, hvad dette betyder?

26 Jeg siger jer: Ve jer, fordi I fordrejer Herrens veje! For hvis I forstår dette, så har I ikke undervist i det; derfor har I fordrejet Herrens veje.

27 I har ikke brugt hjertet til at forstå; derfor har I ikke været vise. Hvad lærer I da dette folk?

28 Og de sagde: Vi lærer dem Moseloven.

29 Og videre sagde han til dem: Hvis I lærer dem Moseloven, hvorfor holder I den så ikke? Hvorfor lader I hjertet blive optaget af rigdomme? Hvorfor begår I utugtigheder og spilder jeres kræfter på skøger, ja, og får dette folk til at begå synd, så Herren har grund til at sende mig for at profetere mod dette folk, ja, en stor ulykke mod dette folk?

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

30 Ved I ikke, at jeg taler sandheden? Jo, I ved, at jeg taler sandheden; og I burde skælve for Gud.

31 Og det skal ske, at I skal blive slået for jeres syndighed, for I har sagt, at I lærer dem Moseloven. Og hvad ved I om Moseloven? Bliver frelse tilvejebragt ved Moseloven? Hvad siger I?

32 Og de svarede og sagde, at frelse blev tilvejebragt ved Moseloven.

33 Men se, Abinadi sagde til dem: Jeg ved, at hvis I holder Guds befalinger, skal I blive frelst; ja, hvis I holder de befalinger, som Herren gav til Moses på Sinajs bjerg, da han sagde:

34 Jeg er Herren din Gud, som har bragt dig ud af Egyptens land, ud af trællehuset.

35 Du må ikke have nogen anden Gud end mig.

36 Du må ikke lave dig noget udskåret gudebillede eller noget afbillede af noget som helst oppe i himlen, eller noget, som er nede på jorden.

37 Nu sagde Abinadi til dem: Har I holdt alt dette? Jeg siger jer: Nej, det har I ikke. Og har I lært dette folk, at de skulle holde alt dette? Jeg siger jer: Nej, det har I ikke.

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

Mosijas Bog 13

- 1 Og se, da kongen havde hørt disse ord, sagde han til sine præster: Bort med denne karl, og slå ham ihjel, for hvad har vi at gøre med ham, for han er gal.
- 2 Og de stod frem og forsøgte at lægge hånd på ham; men han modstod dem og sagde til dem:
- 3 Rør mig ikke, for Gud skal slå jer, hvis I lægger hånd på mig, for jeg har ikke fremført det budskab, som Herren har sendt mig for at fremføre; ej heller har jeg sagt jer det, som I forlangte, at jeg skulle sige; derfor vil Gud ikke tillade, at jeg bliver slået ihjel på dette tidspunkt.
- 4 Men jeg må opfylde de befalinger, hvormed Gud har befalet mig; og fordi jeg har sagt jer sandheden, er I vrede på mig. Og videre, fordi jeg har talt Guds ord, har I bedømt mig til at være gal.
- 5 Se, det skete, efter at Abinadi havde talt disse ord, at kong Noas folk ikke turde lægge hånd på ham, for Herrens Ånd var over ham; og hans ansigt strålede med overordentlig stærk glans, ligesom Moses' gjorde, mens han var på Sinajs bjerg, mens han talte med Herren.
- 6 Og han talte med magt og myndighed fra Gud; og han fortsatte sine ord, idet han sagde:
- 7 I ser, at I ikke har magt til at slå mig ihjel, derfor fuldfører jeg mit budskab. Ja, og jeg fornemmer, at det skærer jer i hjertet, fordi jeg siger sandheden om jeres syndighed.
- 8 Ja, og mine ord fylder jer med forundring og forbløffelse og med vrede.
- 9 Men jeg fuldfører mit budskab; og derefter betyder det intet, hvor jeg går hen, blot jeg bliver frelst.
- 10 Men så meget siger jeg til jer: Hvad I gør med mig herefter skal være et sindbillede på og en skygge af det, der skal komme.
- 11 Og nu læser jeg resten af Guds befalinger for jer, for jeg fornemmer, at de ikke står skrevet i hjertet; jeg fornemmer, at I har udtænkt og undervist i ugudelighed i størstedelen af jeres liv.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

12 Og se, I husker, at jeg sagde til jer: Du må ikke lave dig noget udskåret gudebillede eller noget afbillede af noget, som er oppe i himlen, eller som er nede på jorden, eller som er i vandet under jorden.

13 Og videre: Du må ikke bøje dig for dem eller dyrke dem, for jeg, Herren din Gud, er en nidkær Gud, der straffer fædres syndighed på børnene indtil tredje og fjerde slægtled efter dem, der hader mig,

14 og viser barmhjertighed mod tusinder af dem, der elsker mig og holder mine befalinger.

15 Du må ikke misbruge Herren din Guds navn, for Herren vil ikke lade den være skyldfri, der misbruger hans navn.

16 Husk sabbatsdagen, at holde den hellig.

17 I seks dage skal du arbejde og gøre al din gerning;

18 men på den syvende dag, Herren din Guds sabbat, må du ikke gøre noget arbejde, hverken du selv eller din søn eller din datter, din træl eller din trælkvind eller dit kvæg eller din fremmede, som er inden dine porte.

19 For på seks dage skabte Herren himlen og jorden og havet og alt, hvad de rummer; derfor har Herren velsignet sabbatsdagen og helliget den.

20 Ær din far og din mor, for at dine dage må blive mange i det land, som Herren, din Gud, giver dig.

21 Du må ikke begå drab.

22 Du må ikke begå ægteskabsbrud. Du må ikke stjæle.

23 Du må ikke aflægge falsk vidnesbyrd mod din næste.

24 Du må ikke begære din næstes hus. Du må ikke begære din næstes hustru eller hans træl eller hans trælkvind eller hans okse eller hans æsel eller noget som helst, som er din næstes.

25 Og det skete, efter at Abinadi havde afsluttet disse ord, at han sagde til dem: Har I lært dette folk, at de skulle bestræbe sig på at gøre alt dette for at holde disse befalinger?

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

26 Jeg siger jer: Nej, for hvis I havde, ville Herren ikke have fået mig til at stå frem og profetere ulykke over dette folk.

27 Og se, I har sagt, at frelse tilvejebringes ved Moseloven. Jeg siger jer, at det er nødvendigt, at I endnu holder Moseloven; men jeg siger jer, at den tid skal komme, da det ikke længere vil være nødvendigt at holde Moseloven.

28 Og endvidere siger jeg til jer, at frelse ikke tilvejebringes ved loven alene; og var det ikke for den forsoning, som Gud selv skal foretage for sit folks synder og syndighed, så måtte de dog, på trods af Moseloven, uundgåeligt fortabes.

29 Og se, jeg siger jer, at det var nødvendigt, at der skulle gives Israels børn en lov, ja, endog en meget streng lov; for de var et stivnakket folk, hurtige til at gøre misgerninger og langsomme til at huske Herren deres Gud;

30 derfor blev der givet dem en lov, ja, en lov med skikke og med ordinancer, en lov, som de skulle iagttage strengt fra dag til dag for at holde dem i erindring om Gud og deres pligt mod ham.

31 Men se, jeg siger jer, at alt dette var sindbilleder på det tilkommende.

32 Og se, forstod de loven? Jeg siger jer: Nej, de forstod ikke alle loven, og det var på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed; for de forstod ikke, at ingen kunne blive frelst, undtagen ved Guds forløsning.

33 For se, profeterede Moses ikke for dem om Messias' komme, og om at Gud skulle forløse sit folk? Jo, og endog alle de profeter, der har profeteret lige siden verden begyndte, har de ikke talt mere eller mindre om dette?

34 Har de ikke sagt, at Gud selv skulle komme ned blandt menneskenes børn og påtage sig et menneskes skikkelse og gå omkring med mægtig kraft på jordens overflade?

35 Ja, og har de ikke også sagt, at han skulle tilvejebringe de dødes opstandelse, og at han selv skulle blive undertrykt og plaget?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosijas Bog 14

- 1 Ja, siger Esajas ikke: Hvem troede på vor beretning, og for hvem bliver Herrens arm åbenbaret?
- 2 For han skal skyde op for ham som en spæd plante og som et rodsrud af tør jord; han har ingen fremtræden eller pragt; og når vi ser ham, er der ingen skønhed, at vi skulle drages mod ham.
- 3 Han er foragtet og forkastet af mennesker, en sorgernes mand og kendt med lidelse, og vi skjulte vort ansigt for ham; han var foragtet, og vi regnede ham ikke for noget.
- 4 Han har visselig båret vor lidelse og båret vore sorger; dog regnede vi ham for ramt, slået af Gud og plaget.
- 5 Men han blev gennemboret for vore overtrædelser, han blev knust for vor syndighed; de straffe, der gav os fred, dem led han; og ved hans sår bliver vi helbredt.
- 6 Vi er alle faret vild som får; vi har vendt os hver sin vej; og Herren har lagt al vor syndighed på ham.
- 7 Han blev undertrykt, og han blev plaget, dog åbnede han ikke sin mund; han føres som et lam til slagtning, og som et får, der hos sine fåreklippere er stumt, således åbnede han ikke sin mund.
- 8 Han blev taget fra fængsel og fra dom; og hvem skal tale om hans slægt? For han blev revet bort fra de levendes land; for mit folks overtrædelser blev han ramt.
- 9 Og han fandt sin grav blandt ugudelige og hos den rige i døden, skønt han intet ondt havde gjort, ej heller fandtes der nogen svig i hans mund.
- 10 Dog behagede det Herren at knuse ham; han har voldt ham bedrøvelse; når du bringer hans sjæl som et offer for skyld, skal han se sine efterkommere, han skal forlænge sine dage, og Herrens vilje skal lykkes ved hans hånd.
- 11 Han skal se sin sjæls møje og skal være tilfreds; ved sin kundskab skal min retfærdige tjener retfærdiggøre mange; for han skal bære deres syndighed.

Mosiah 14

- Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?
- For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.
- He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.
- Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.
- But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.
- All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.
- He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.
- He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.
- And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.
- Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.
- He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Derfor vil jeg give ham en del med de store, og han skal dele byttet med de mægtige; fordi han har udøst sin sjæl til døden; og han blev regnet blandt overtræderne; og han bar manges synder og gik i forbøn for overtræderne.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mosijas Bog 15

- 1 Og nu sagde Abinadi til dem: Jeg ønsker, at I skal forstå, at Gud selv skal komme ned blandt menneskenes børn og skal forløse sit folk.
- 2 Og fordi han bor i kødet, skal han kaldes Guds Søn, og da han har underkastet kødet Faderens vilje, er han Faderen og Sønnen –
- 3 Faderen, fordi han blev undfanget ved Guds kraft; og Sønnen på grund af kødet; således bliver han Faderen og Sønnen –
- 4 og de er én Gud, ja, selve himlens og jordens evige Fader.
- 5 Og således, ved at kødet bliver underkastet Ånden – eller Sønnen Faderen, da de er én Gud – lider han fristelse og giver ikke efter for fristelsen, men lader sig spotte og piske og støde ud og vrage af sit folk.
- 6 Og efter alt dette, efter at have udført mange mægtige mirakler blandt menneskenes børn, skal han blive ført, ja, sådan som Esajas sagde, som et får, der hos fåreklipperen er stumt, således åbnede han ikke sin mund.
- 7 Ja, således skal han blive ført, korsfæstet og slået ihjel, ved at kødet bliver underkastet selve døden, og Sønnens vilje bliver opslugt i Faderens vilje.
- 8 Og således bryder Gud dødens bånd, idet han har vundet sejr over døden, og giver Sønnen magt til at gå i forbøn for menneskenes børn –
- 9 idet han er steget op til himlen, har et indre af barmhjertighed, er fyldt af medfølelse med menneskenes børn, står mellem dem og retfærdighed, idet han har brudt dødens bånd, påtaget sig deres syndighed og deres overtrædelser, forløst dem og tilfredsstillet retfærdighedens krav.
- 10 Og nu siger jeg til jer: Hvem skal tale om hans slægt? Se, jeg siger jer, at når hans sjæl er blevet bragt som et offer for synd, skal han se sine efterkommere. Og se, hvad siger I? Og hvem skal være hans efterkommere?

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

11 Se, jeg siger jer, at hver den, der har hørt profeternes ord, ja, alle de hellige profeter, som har profeteret om Herrens komme – jeg siger jer, at alle de, som har lyttet til deres ord og troet på, at Herren ville forløse sit folk og har set frem til den dag for at få forladelse for deres synder, jeg siger jer, at disse er hans efterkommere, eller de er arvingerne til Guds rige.

12 For disse er dem, hvis synder han har båret; disse er dem, for hvem han er død for at forløse dem fra deres overtrædelser. Og se, er de ikke hans efterkommere?

13 Jo, og er profeterne det ikke, hver og en, der har åbnet sin mund for at profetere, som ikke er faldet i overtrædelse, jeg mener alle de hellige profeter, lige siden verden begyndte? Jeg siger jer, at de er hans efterkommere.

14 Og disse er dem, der har forkyndt fred, som har bragt gode tidender om godt, som har forkyndt frelse og sagt til Zion: Din Gud regerer.

15 Og o, hvor herlige på bjergene var ikke deres fødder!

16 Og videre, hvor herlige på bjergene er ikke fødderne af dem, der endnu forkynder fred!

17 Og videre, hvor herlige på bjergene er ikke fødderne af dem, der herefter skal forkynde fred, ja, fra denne tid og for evigt!

18 Og se, jeg siger jer, at dette er ikke alt. For, o, hvor herlige på bjergene er ikke fødderne af ham, der bringer gode tidender, og som er stifteren af fred; ja, Herren selv, som har forløst sit folk, ja, han, som har skænket sit folk frelse;

19 for var det ikke for den forløsning, som han har tilvebragt for sit folk, og som var beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse, jeg siger jer, var det ikke for dette, måtte hele menneskeslægten være fortabt.

20 Men se, dødens bånd skal blive brudt, og Sønnen regerer og har magt over de døde; derfor tilvejebringer han de dødes opstandelse.

21 Og der finder en opstandelse sted, nemlig en første opstandelse; ja, nemlig en opstandelse af dem, som har været, og som er, og som skal være, lige til Kristus – for således skal han kaldes – opstår.

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

22 Og se, alle profeterne og alle dem, der har troet på deres ord, eller alle dem, der har holdt Guds befalinger, skal komme frem i den første opstandelse; derfor udgør de den første opstandelse.

23 De bliver oprejst for at bo hos Gud, som har forløst dem; således får de evigt liv ved Kristus, som har brudt dødens bånd.

24 Og disse er dem, der har del i den første opstandelse; og disse er dem, der døde i uvidenhed, før Kristus kom, idet de ikke fik frelse forkyndt for sig. Og således tilvejebringer Herren genløsningen af disse; og de har en del i den første opstandelse eller har evigt liv, idet de er forløst af Herren.

25 Og små børn har også evigt liv.

26 Men se, og frygt, og skælv for Gud, for I bør skælve; for Herren forløser ingen sådanne, som sætter sig op imod ham og dør i deres synder, ja, alle de, der har været fortabt i deres synder, lige siden verden begyndte, som forsættligt har sat sig op imod Gud, og som har kendt Guds befalinger og ikke villet holde dem, disse er dem, der ingen del har i den første opstandelse.

27 Bør I derfor ikke skælve? For frelse bliver ikke sådanne til del; for Herren har ikke forløst sådanne; ja, ej heller kan Herren forløse sådanne; for han kan ikke modsige sig selv, for han kan ikke afslå retfærdigheden, når den har sit krav.

28 Og se, jeg siger jer, at den tid skal komme, da Herrens frelse skal blive forkyndt for alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk.

29 Ja, Herre, dine vægttere skal opløfte deres røst; med forenet røst skal de synge; for de skal med egne øjne se, når Herren genrejser Zion.

30 Bryd ud i jubel, syng sammen, I Jerusalems øde steder; for Herren har trøstet sit folk, han har forløst Jerusalem.

31 Herren har blottet sin hellige arm for øjnene af alle folkeslagene, og alle jordens ender skal se vor Guds frelse.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Mosijas Bog 16

- 1 Og se, det skete, at efter at Abinadi havde talt disse ord, strakte han hånden ud og sagde: Den tid skal komme, da alle skal se Herrens frelse; da alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk med deres egne øjne skal se og skal bekende for Gud, at hans straffedomme er retfærdige.
- 2 Og da skal de ugudelige blive stødt ud, og de skal have grund til at hyle og græde og jamre og skære tænder, og dette fordi de ikke ville lytte til Herrens røst; derfor forløser Herren dem ikke.
- 3 For de er kødelige og djævelske, og Djævelen har magt over dem; ja, den gamle slange, der forledte vore første forældre, hvilket var årsagen til deres fald, hvilket var årsagen til, at hele menneskeslægten blev kødelig, sanselig, djævelsk, i stand til at kende ondt fra godt, idet de underkastede sig Djævelen.
- 4 Således blev hele menneskeslægten fortabt; og se, de ville have været uendeligt fortabte, havde det ikke været, fordi Gud forløste sit folk fra deres fortabte og faldne tilstand.
- 5 Men husk, at den, der fremturer efter sin egen kødelige natur og fortsætter på syndens veje og sætter sig op mod Gud, forbliver i sin faldne tilstand, og Djævelen har helt magten over ham. Derfor er han, som om der ingen forløsning var blevet foretaget, fordi han er en fjende af Gud; og Djævelen er ligeledes en fjende af Gud.
- 6 Og se, hvis Kristus ikke var kommet til verden – jeg taler om det, der skal ske, som om det allerede er sket – kunne der ikke have været nogen forløsning.
- 7 Og hvis Kristus ikke var opstået fra de døde eller havde brudt dødens bånd, så graven ikke skulle have nogen sejr, og døden ikke skulle have nogen brod, kunne der ikke have været nogen opstandelse.
- 8 Men der er en opstandelse; derfor har graven ingen sejr, og dødens brod er opslugt i Kristus.
- 9 Han er verdens lys og liv, ja, et lys, som er uendeligt, som aldrig kan formørkes; ja, og også et liv, som er uendeligt, så der aldrig mere kan være nogen død.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

10 Selv dette dødelige skal iføre sig udødelighed, og denne forgængelighed skal iføre sig uforgængelighed og skal blive ført frem for at stå for Guds domstol for at blive dømt af ham efter deres gerninger, om de er gode, eller de er onde –

11 hvis de er gode, til opstandelsen til uendeligt liv og lykke; og hvis de er onde, til opstandelsen til uendelig fordømmelse, idet de overgives til Djævelen, der har underlagt sig dem, hvilket er fordømmelse –

12 fordi de vandrede efter deres egne kødelige ønsker og lyster og aldrig påkaldte Herren, mens barmhjertighedens arme var strakt ud mod dem; for barmhjertighedens arme var strakt ud mod dem, og de ville ikke; de var blevet foreholdt deres syndighed, og dog ville de ikke vige fra den; og de blev befalet at omvende sig, og dog ville de ikke omvende sig.

13 Og se, burde I ikke skælve og omvende jer fra jeres synder og huske, at kun i og ved Kristus kan I blive frelst?

14 Hvis I derfor underviser i Moseloven, undervis da også om, at den er en skygge af det, der skal komme –

15 lær dem, at forløsning kommer ved Kristus, Herren, som er selve den evige Fader. Amen.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mosijas Bog 17

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Abinadi havde endt denne tale, befalede kongen, at præsterne skulle gribe ham og sørge for, at han blev sendt i døden.
- 2 Men blandt dem var der en, hvis navn var Alma, og som også var efterkommer af Nephi. Og han var en ung mand, og han troede de ord, som Abinadi havde talt, for han kendte til den ugudelighed, som Abinadi havde vidnet om imod dem; derfor begyndte han at bønfalde kongen om ikke at være vred på Abinadi, men tillade, at han kunne gå i fred.
- 3 Men kongen blev mere vred og foranledigede, at Alma skulle stødes ud fra dem og sendte sine tjenere efter ham for at slå ham ihjel.
- 4 Men han flygtede fra dem og skjulte sig, så de ikke fandt ham. Og mens han holdt sig skjult i mange dage, nedskrev han alle de ord, som Abinadi havde talt.
- 5 Og det skete, at kongen foranledigede, at hans vagter skulle omringe Abinadi og gribe ham; og de bandt ham og kastede ham i fængsel.
- 6 Og efter tre dage, efter at have rådført sig med sine præster, lod han ham igen bringe frem for sig.
- 7 Og han sagde til ham: Abinadi, vi har fundet en anklage imod dig, og du fortjener at dø.
- 8 For du har sagt, at Gud selv skulle komme ned blandt menneskenes børn; og se, af den grund skal du blive sendt i døden, medmindre du vil tilbagekalde alle de ord, hvormed du har talt ondt om mig og mit folk.
- 9 Se, Abinadi sagde til ham: Jeg siger dig, jeg vil ikke tilbagekalde de ord, som jeg har talt til dig angående dette folk, for de er sande; og for at I kan vide det med vished, har jeg ladet mig selv falde i jeres hænder.
- 10 Ja, og jeg vil lide, endog til døden, og jeg vil ikke tilbagekalde mine ord, og de skal stå som et vidnesbyrd mod jer. Og hvis I slår mig ihjel, udgyder I uskyldigt blod, og det skal også stå som et vidnesbyrd mod jer på den yderste dag.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

11 Og se, kong Noa var lige ved at løslade ham, for han frygtede hans ord; for han frygtede, at Guds straffedomme ville komme over ham.

12 Men præsterne opløftede deres røst imod ham og begyndte at anklage ham, idet de sagde: Han har hånet kongen. Derfor blev kongen ophidset til vrede mod ham, og han overgav ham, så han kunne blive slået ihjel.

13 Og det skete, at de greb ham og bandt ham og pinte hans hud med brændeknipper, ja, til han døde.

14 Og se, da flammerne begyndte at svide ham, råbte han til dem og sagde:

15 Se, sådan som I har gjort mod mig, således skal det ske, at jeres efterkommere skal lade mange lide de smerter, som jeg lider, ja, smerterne ved at dø ved ild; og dette fordi de tror på Herren deres Guds frelse.

16 Og det skal ske, at I skal blive plaget af alle slags sygdomme på grund af jeres syndighed.

17 Ja, og I skal blive slået fra alle sider og skal blive drevet og spredt hid og did, ja, som en vild flok bliver drevet af vilde og glubske rovdyr.

18 Og på den dag skal I blive jaget og skal blive grebet ved jeres fjenders hånd, og da skal I lide, som jeg lider, smerterne ved at dø ved ild.

19 Således tager Gud hævn over dem, der udrydder hans folk. O Gud, modtag min sjæl.

20 Og se, da Abinadi havde sagt disse ord, faldt han om, idet han led døden ved ild; ja, efter at være blevet sendt i døden, fordi han ikke ville fornægte Guds befalinger, og efter at have beseglet sandheden af sine ord med sin død.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mosijas Bog 18

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Alma, som var flygtet for kong Noas tjenere, omvendte sig fra sine synder og sin syndighed og gik hemmeligt om blandt folk og begyndte at undervise i Abinadis ord –
- 2 ja, om det, der skulle komme, og også om de dødes opstandelse og den forløsning af folk, som ville blive tilvebragt ved Kristi kraft og lidelser og død samt hans opstandelse og opstigning til himlen.
- 3 Og så mange, som ville lytte til hans ord, underviste han. Og han underviste dem i hemmelighed, for at det ikke skulle komme til kongens kendskab. Og mange troede på hans ord.
- 4 Og det skete, at så mange, som troede på ham, gik hen til et sted, som blev kaldt Mormon, og som havde fået sit navn af kongen, og som lå ved grænserne til det land, som til tider eller i perioder blev hærget af vilde rovdyr.
- 5 Se, der var i Mormon en kilde af rent vand, og Alma tog tilflugt dér, idet der dér i nærheden af vandet var en tykning af små træer, hvor han skjulte sig om dagen for kongens eftersøgninger.
- 6 Og det skete, at så mange, som troede på ham, gik derhen for at høre hans ord.
- 7 Og det skete efter mange dage, at der var samlet et temmelig stort antal ved stedet Mormon for at høre Almas ord. Ja, alle, der troede på hans ord, var samlet for at høre ham. Og han underviste dem og prædikede omvendelse og forløsning og tro på Herren for dem.
- 8 Og det skete, at han sagde til dem: Se, her er Mormons vande (for således blev de kaldt), og se, efter- som I nu nærer ønske om at komme ind i Guds fold og at blive kaldt hans folk og er villige til at bære hinandens byrder, så de bliver lette;
- 9 ja, og er villige til at sørge med dem, der sørger, ja, og at trøste dem, der står i behov for trøst, og at stå som Guds vidner til alle tider og i alle ting og på alle steder, hvor I måtte befinde jer, ja, indtil døden, så I kan blive forløst af Gud og blive regnet blandt dem i den første opstandelse, så I må få evigt liv –

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

10 se, jeg siger jer, hvis dette er jeres hjertes ønske, hvad har I da imod at blive døbt i Herrens navn som et vidnesbyrd for ham om, at I har indgået en pagt med ham om, at I vil tjene ham og holde hans befalinger, så han kan udøse sin Ånd mere rigeligt over jer.

11 Og se, da folket havde hørt disse ord, klappede de i deres hænder af glæde og udbrød: Det er vort hjertes ønske.

12 Og se, det skete, at Alma tog Helam, som var en af de første, og gik hen og trådte ud i vandet og råbte, idet han sagde: O Herre, udøs din Ånd over din tjener, så han kan gøre dette arbejde i hjertets hellighed.

13 Og da han havde sagt disse ord, kom Herrens Ånd over ham, og han sagde: Helam, jeg døber dig, idet jeg har myndighed fra Gud den Almægtige, som et vidnesbyrd om, at du har indgået en pagt om at tjene ham, indtil du er død, hvad det dødelige legeme angår; og måtte Herrens Ånd blive udøst over dig; og måtte han skænke dig evigt liv ved Kristi forløsning, hvem han har beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse.

14 Og efter at Alma havde sagt disse ord, blev både Alma og Helam begravet i vandet; og de rejste sig og kom op af vandet og frydede sig, for de var fyldt af Ånden.

15 Og atter, Alma tog en anden og gik for anden gang ud i vandet og døbte ham ligesom den første, blot begrave han ikke sig selv i vandet igen.

16 Og på denne måde døbte han enhver, der kom hen til stedet Mormon; og de var i antal omkring to hundrede og fire sjæle; ja, og de blev døbt i Mormons vande og blev fyldt af Guds nåde.

17 Og de blev kaldt Guds kirke eller Kristi kirke fra den tid af. Og det skete, at hver den, der blev døbt med magt og myndighed fra Gud, blev føjet til hans kirke.

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

18 Og det skete, at Alma, der havde myndighed fra Gud, ordinerede præster; ja, én præst for hver halvtreds af dem ordinerede han til at prædike for dem og til at undervise dem i det, der hører Guds rige til.

19 Og han befalede dem, at de intet måtte undervise i, undtagen det som han havde undervist i, og som var blevet talt ved de hellige profeters mund.

20 Ja, han befalede dem endda, at de intet skulle prædike, undtagen omvendelse og tro på Herren, som havde forløst sit folk.

21 Og han befalede dem, at der ikke skulle være nogen strid, den ene med den anden, men at de skulle se fremad med ét blik, idet de havde én tro og én dåb og havde deres hjerter knyttet sammen i enighed og i kærlighed, den ene til den anden.

22 Og således befalede han dem at prædike. Og således blev de Guds børn.

23 Og han befalede dem, at de skulle iagttage sabbatsdagen og holde den hellig, og også at de hver dag skulle give tak til Herren deres Gud.

24 Og han befalede dem også, at de præster, som han havde ordineret, skulle arbejde med deres hænder for deres underhold.

25 Og der var én dag i hver uge, der blev afsat til, at de skulle samle sig for at undervise folket og for at tilbede Herren deres Gud, og også så ofte, som det stod i deres magt at mødes sammen.

26 Og præsterne skulle ikke være afhængige af folket med hensyn til deres underhold, men for deres arbejde skulle de modtage Guds nåde, så de kunne vokse sig stærke i Ånden, idet de havde kundskab om Gud, så de kunne undervise med magt og myndighed fra Gud.

27 Og videre befalede Alma, at kirkens folk skulle give af deres gods, enhver i forhold til det, som han havde; hvis han havde mere rigeligt, skulle han give mere rigeligt; og af den, der kun havde lidt, skulle der kun forlanges lidt; og til den, der ikke havde noget, skulle der gives.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

28 Og således skulle de give af deres gods af deres egen fri vilje og gode ønsker for Gud og til de præster, der stod i behov, ja, og til enhver trængende, nogen sjæl.

29 Og dette sagde han til dem efter at have fået befaling af Gud; og de vandrede retsindigt for Gud, idet de gav til hinanden, både timeligt og åndeligt, efter deres behov og deres trang.

30 Og se, det skete, at alt dette blev gjort i Mormon, ja, ved Mormons vande i den skov, der lå nær ved Mormons vande; ja, stedet Mormon, Mormons vande og Mormons skov, hvor smukke er de ikke i deres øjne, de, som dér kom til kundskab om deres forløser; ja, og hvor velsignede er de ikke, for de skal synge til hans pris for evigt.

31 Og dette blev gjort i landets grænseegne, for at det ikke skulle komme til kongens kendskab.

32 Men se, det skete, at kongen, der havde opdaget en bevægelse blandt folket, sendte sine tjenere ud for at holde øje med dem. Derfor blev de på den dag, da de var ved at samles for at høre Herrens ord, opdaget af kongen.

33 Og se, kongen sagde, at Alma ophidsede folket til oprør mod ham; derfor sendte han sin hær ud for at udrydde dem.

34 Og det skete, at Alma og Herrens folk blev underrettet om kongens hærs komme, derfor tog de deres telte og deres familier og drog ud i ødemarken.

35 Og de var i antal omkring fire hundrede og halvtreds sjæle.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mosijas Bog 19

- 1 Og det skete, at kongens hær vendte tilbage efter forgæves at have søgt efter Herrens folk.
- 2 Og se nu, kongens styrker var små, efter at de var blevet svækket, og der opstod en adskillelse mellem resten af folket.
- 3 Og den mindste gruppe begyndte at udslynge trusler mod kongen, og der opstod en stor strid blandt dem.
- 4 Og se, der var blandt dem en mand, hvis navn var Gideon, og han, der var en stærk mand og en fjende af kongen, han trak derfor sit sværd og svor i sin vrede, at han ville slå kongen ihjel.
- 5 Og det skete, at han kæmpede mod kongen; og da kongen så, at han var ved at besejre ham, flygtede han og løb og kom op i tårnet, som lå i nærheden af templet.
- 6 Og Gideon forfulgte ham og skulle til at fortsætte op i tårnet for at slå kongen ihjel, da kongen kastede blikket rundt mod Shemlons land, og se, lamaniternes hær var inden for landets grænser.
- 7 Og se, kongen råbte i sin sjælekval og sagde: Gideon, skån mig, for lamanitterne kommer over os, og de vil udrydde os, ja, de vil udrydde mit folk.
- 8 Og se, kongen var ikke så bekymret for sit folk, som han var for sit eget liv; men alligevel skånedes Gideon hans liv.
- 9 Og kongen befalede folket, at de skulle flygte for lamanitterne, og han gik selv i spidsen for dem, og de flygtede ud i ødemarken med deres kvinder og deres børn.
- 10 Og det skete, at lamanitterne forfulgte dem og indhentede dem og begyndte at slå dem ihjel.
- 11 Se, det skete, at kongen befalede dem, at alle mændene skulle forlade deres hustruer og deres børn og flygte for lamanitterne.
- 12 Se, der var mange, der ikke ville forlade dem, men hellere ville blive og omkomme sammen med dem. Og resten forlod deres hustruer og deres børn og flygtede.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

13 Og det skete, at de, der blev tilbage med deres hustruer og deres børn, foranledigede, at deres skønne døtre skulle træde frem og bønfalde lamanitterne om, at de ikke ville slå dem ihjel.

14 Og det skete, at lamanitterne fik medfølelse med dem, for de blev betaget af deres kvinders skønhed.

15 Derfor skånedes lamanitterne deres liv og tog dem til fange og førte dem tilbage til Nefis land og tilstedte dem, at de måtte tage landet i besiddelse på de betingelser, at de ville overgive kong Noa i lamanitternes hænder og overgive deres ejendom, ja, halvdelen af alt, hvad de besad, halvdelen af deres guld og deres sølv og alle deres kostbarheder, og således skulle de betale skat til lamanitternes konge fra år til år.

16 Og se, blandt dem, der blev taget til fange, var der en af kongens sønner, hvis navn var Limhi.

17 Og se, Limhi nærede ønske om, at hans far ikke skulle slås ihjel; alligevel var Limhi ikke uvidende om sin fars syndighed, eftersom han selv var en retfærdig mand.

18 Og det skete, at Gideon hemmeligt sendte mænd ud i ødemarken for at søge efter kongen og dem, der var med ham. Og det skete, at de mødte folket i ødemarken, alle undtagen kongen og hans præster.

19 Se, de havde svoret i hjertet, at de ville vende tilbage til Nefis land, og hvis deres hustruer og børn var blevet slået ihjel, og også dem der var blevet hos dem, at de da ville stræbe efter hævn og også omkomme sammen med dem.

20 Og kongen befalede dem, at de ikke skulle vende tilbage; og de blev vrede på kongen og lod ham lide, endog døden ved ild.

21 Og de skulle også til at gribe præsterne og sende dem i døden, men de flygtede for dem.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

22 Og det skete, at de skulle til at vende tilbage til Nefis land, da de mødte Gideons mænd. Og Gideons mænd fortalte dem om alt det, der var hændt deres hustruer og deres børn, og at lamanitterne havde tilstedt dem, at de måtte tage landet i besiddelse, imod at de betalte en skat til lamanitterne på halvdelen af alt, hvad de besad.

23 Og folket fortalte Gideons mænd, at de havde slået kongen ihjel, og at hans præster var flygtet for dem læn- gere ud i ødemarken.

24 Og det skete, efter at de havde afsluttet ceremonien, at de vendte tilbage til Nefis land, idet de frydede sig, fordi deres hustruer og børn ikke var blevet slået ihjel, og de fortalte Gideon, hvad de havde gjort ved kongen.

25 Og det skete, at lamanitternes konge aflagde en ed til dem på, at hans folk ikke ville slå dem ihjel.

26 Og Limhi, der var kongens søn, og som havde fået ri- get overdraget af folket, aflagde også en ed til lamanit- ternes konge på, at hans folk ville betale skat til ham, ja, halvdelen af alt, hvad de ejede.

27 Og det skete, at Limhi begyndte at oprette riget og skabe fred blandt sit folk.

28 Og lamanitternes konge satte vagter rundt omkring landet, så han kunne holde Limhis folk i landet, så de ik- ke skulle drage ud i ødemarken; og han forsørgede sine vagter ud af den skat, som han modtog fra nefitterne.

29 Og se, kong Limhi havde vedvarende fred i sit rige i et tidsrum af to år, sådan at lamanitterne hverken foru- lempede dem eller forsøgte at udrydde dem.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had hap- pened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might pos- sess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the cer- emony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoic- ing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they pos- sessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilder- ness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mosijas Bog 20

- 1 Se, der var et sted i Shemlon, hvor lamaniternes døtre samledes for at synge og at danse og at more sig.
- 2 Og det skete, at et lille antal af dem en dag var samlet for at synge og for at danse.
- 3 Og se, kong Noas præster, som skammede sig ved at skulle vende tilbage til byen Nephi, ja, og som også frygtede, at folket ville slå dem ihjel, de turde derfor ikke vende tilbage til deres hustruer og deres børn.
- 4 Og da de var forblevet i ødemarken, og da de havde opdaget lamaniternes døtre, lagde de sig på lur og iagttog dem.
- 5 Og da der kun var nogle få af dem samlet for at danse, kom de frem fra deres skjulesteder og greb dem og førte dem ud i ødemarken; ja, fireogtyve af lamaniternes døtre førte de ud i ødemarken.
- 6 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne fandt ud af, at deres døtre var borte, blev de vrede på Limhis folk, for de troede, at det var Limhis folk.
- 7 Derfor sendte de deres hære ud; ja, kongen selv drog i spidsen for sit folk; og de drog op til Nephis land for at udrydde Limhis folk.
- 8 Og se, Limhi havde opdaget dem fra tårnet, ja, alle deres forberedelser til krig havde han opdaget; derfor samlede han sit folk og lagde sig i baghold for dem på markerne og i skovene.
- 9 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne var kommet derop, at Limhis folk begyndte at falde over dem fra deres skjulesteder og begyndte at slå dem ihjel.
- 10 Og det skete, at slaget blev overordentlig hårdt, for de kæmpede som løver om deres bytte.
- 11 Og det skete, at Limhis folk begyndte at drive lamanitterne tilbage; dog var de ikke halvt så talrige som lamanitterne. Men de kæmpede for deres liv og for deres hustruer og for deres børn; derfor anstrengte de sig til det yderste og kæmpede som drager.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

12 Og det skete, at de fandt lamaniternes konge blandt deres døde; dog var han ikke død, men var blevet såret og efterladt på jorden, så hastig var hans folks flugt.

13 Og de tog ham med og forbandt hans sår og førte ham frem for Limhi og sagde: Se, her er lamaniternes konge; efter at være blevet påført et sår er han faldet om blandt deres døde, og de har efterladt ham; og se, vi har ført ham frem for dig; og lad os nu slå ham ihjel.

14 Men Limhi sagde til dem: I skal ikke slå ham ihjel, men føre ham herhen, så jeg kan tale med ham. Og de førte ham derhen. Og Limhi sagde til ham: Hvilken begrundelse har I for at komme op for at føre krig mod mit folk? Se, mit folk har ikke brudt den ed, som jeg af lagde til dig, hvorfor skulle I da bryde den ed, som I af lagde til mit folk?

15 Og se, kongen sagde: Jeg har brudt eden, fordi dit folk har bortført mit folks døtre; derfor lod jeg i min vrede mit folk komme herop for at føre krig mod dit folk.

16 Og se, Limhi havde intet hørt angående denne sag, derfor sagde han: Jeg vil søge blandt mit folk, og den, der har gjort dette, skal omkomme. Derfor foranledigede han, at der skulle foretages en eftersøgning blandt hans folk.

17 Se, da Gideon, som var kongens anfører, havde hørt dette, trådte han frem og sagde til kongen: Jeg beder dig lade være og ikke udspørge dette folk og ikke beskyldte dem for dette.

18 For husker du ikke din fars præster, som dette folk forsøgte at udrydde? Og er de ikke i ødemarken? Og er det ikke dem, der har bortført lamaniternes døtre?

19 Og se nu, og fortæl kongen om dette, så han kan fortælle det til sit folk, så de kan blive fredelig stemt over for os; for se, de er allerede ved at forberede sig til at komme mod os; og se, vi er også kun få.

20 Og se, de kommer med deres talrige hærskarer, og medmindre kongen får dem fredelig stemt over for os, må vi omkomme.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

21 For er Abinadis ord ikke blevet opfyldt, som han profeterede imod os? Og alt dette fordi vi ikke ville lytte til Herrens ord og vende os fra vor syndighed.

22 Og se, lad os få kongen fredeligt stemt og opfylde den ed, som vi har aflagt til ham; for det er bedre, at vi skulle være i trældom, end at vi skulle miste livet; lad os derfor sætte en stopper for udgydelsen af så meget blod.

23 Og se, Limhi fortalte kongen alt om sin far og de præster, der var flygtet ud i ødemarken, og tillagde dem bortførelsen af deres døtre.

24 Og det skete, at kongen blev fredeligt stemt mod hans folk, og han sagde til dem: Lad os gå ud og møde mit folk uden våben, og jeg sværger over for jer med en ed på, at mit folk ikke vil slå dit folk ihjel.

25 Og det skete, at de fulgte kongen og gik ud uden våben for at møde lamanitterne. Og det skete, at de mødte lamanitterne, og lamanitternes konge bøjede sig for dem og bønfuldt dem på vegne af Limhis folk.

26 Og da lamanitterne så Limhis folk, at de var uden våben, fik de medfølelse med dem, og blev fredeligt stemt over for dem og vendte fredeligt tilbage til deres eget land med deres konge.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mosijas Bog 2 I

- 1 Og det skete, at Limhi og hans folk vendte tilbage til byen Nephi og begyndte igen at bo i landet i fred.
- 2 Og det skete, at efter mange dage begyndte lamanitterne igen at blive ophidset til vrede mod nefitterne, og de begyndte at komme ind over grænserne til det omkringliggende land.
- 3 Se, de turde ikke slå dem ihjel på grund af den ed, som deres konge havde aflagt til Limhi, men de slog dem på kinderne og udøvede myndighed over dem og begyndte at lægge tunge byrder på ryggen af dem og drive dem, som de ville et stumt æsel –
- 4 ja, alt dette skete, for at Herrens ord kunne blive opfyldt.
- 5 Og se, nefitternes trængsler var store, og der var ingen måde, hvorpå de kunne udfri sig af deres hænder, for lamanitterne havde omringet dem på alle sider.
- 6 Og det skete, at folket begyndte at murre over for kongen på grund af deres trængsler; og de begyndte at nære ønske om at drage imod dem for at kæmpe. Og de plagede kongen meget med deres klagemål; derfor tilstedte han dem, at de skulle gøre efter deres ønsker.
- 7 Og de samledes igen og iførte sig deres rustninger og drog ud mod lamanitterne for at drive dem ud af deres land.
- 8 Og det skete, at lamanitterne slog dem og drev dem tilbage og slog mange af dem ihjel.
- 9 Og se, der var et stort sørgeudbrud og klageråb blandt Limhis folk, enken sørgede over sin mand, sønnen og datteren sørgede over deres far og brødrene over deres brødre.
- 10 Se, der var et stort antal enker i landet, og de råbte indtrængende fra dag til dag, for en stor frygt for lamanitterne var kommet over dem.
- 11 Og det skete, at deres vedvarende råb ophidsede resten af Limhis folk til vrede mod lamanitterne; og de drog igen ud for at kæmpe, men de blev igen drevet tilbage og led store tab.

Mosiah 2 I

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

12 Ja, de drog endog ud tredje gang og led på samme måde; og de, der ikke blev slået ihjel, vendte igen tilbage til byen Nephi.

13 Og de ydmygede sig helt ned i støvet og underkastede sig trældomsåget og overgav sig til at blive slået og til at blive drevet hid og did og blive pålagt byrder efter deres fjenders ønsker.

14 Og de ydmygede sig endog i ydmyghedens dyb; og de anrøbte indtrængende Gud, ja, hele dagen lang anrøbte de deres Gud om, at han ville udfri dem af deres trængsler.

15 Og nu var Herren sen til at høre deres råb på grund af deres syndighed; alligevel hørte Herren deres råb og begyndte at blødgøre lamaniternes hjerte, så de begyndte at lette deres byrder; dog fandt Herren det ikke tjenligt at udfri dem af trældom.

16 Og det skete, at de gradvis begyndte at have fremgang i landet, og de begyndte at avle korn mere rigeligt og flokke og hjerde, så de ikke led sult.

17 Se, der var et stort antal kvinder, flere end der var mænd, derfor befalede kong Limhi, at hver mand skulle give til enkernes og deres børns underhold, så de ikke skulle omkomme af sult; og dette gjorde de på grund af det store antal af dem, der var blevet slået ihjel.

18 Se, Limhis folk holdt sig samlet som en gruppe, så meget som det var muligt, og sikrede deres korn og deres flokke;

19 og kongen selv følte sig ikke sikker uden for byens mure, medmindre han tog sine vagter med, for han frygtede, at han på en eller anden måde skulle falde i lamaniternes hænder.

20 Og han foranledigede, at hans folk holdt øje med landet rundt omkring, for at de måske på en eller anden måde kunne gribe de præster, som var flygtet ud i ødemarken, og som havde bortført lamaniternes døtre, og som havde forårsaget, at der var kommet så stor en ødelæggelse over dem.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

21 For de nærede ønske om at gribe dem, så de kunne straffe dem; for de var kommet ind i Nefis land om natten og havde taget deres korn og mange af deres kostbarheder; derfor lå de på lur efter dem.

22 Og det skete, at der ikke var flere uroligheder mellem lamanitterne og Limhis folk helt frem til det tidspunkt, da Ammon og hans brødre kom ind i landet.

23 Og kongen, der havde været uden for byens porte med sin vagt, opdagede Ammon og hans brødre; og da han antog dem for at være Noas præster, foranledigede han derfor, at de blev grebet og bundet og kastet i fængsel. Og havde de været Noas præster, ville han have ladet dem sende i døden.

24 Men da han fandt ud af, at de ikke var det, men at de var hans brødre og var kommet fra Zarahemlas land, blev han fyldt af overordentlig stor glæde.

25 Se, kong Limhi havde før Ammons komme sendt et lille antal mænd ud for at søge efter Zarahemlas land; men de kunne ikke finde det og for vild i ødemarken.

26 Men de fandt alligevel et land, der havde været befolket, ja, et land, der var dækket af tørre knogler, ja, et land, der havde været befolket, og som var blevet ødelagt; og da de formodede, at det var Zarahemlas land, vendte de tilbage til Nefis land og havde nået landets grænse ikke mange dage før Ammons komme.

27 Og de bragte en optegnelse med sig, ja, en optegnelse om det folk, hvis knogler de havde fundet; og den var indgraveret på plader af malm.

28 Og nu blev Limhi igen fyldt af glæde ved at erfare af Ammons mund, at kong Mosija havde en gave fra Gud, hvormed han kunne oversætte sådanne indgravninger; ja, og Ammon frydede sig også.

29 Dog var Ammon og hans brødre fyldt af sorg, fordi så mange af deres brødre var blevet slået ihjel;

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

30 og også fordi kong Noa og hans præster havde været årsag til, at folket havde begået så mange synder og misgerninger imod Gud; og de sørgede også over Abinadis død, og også over at Alma og det folk, som tog med ham, var rejst bort, de som havde dannet Guds kirke ved Guds kraft og magt og tro på de ord, som var blevet talt af Abinadi.

31 Ja, de sørgede over deres bortrejse, for de vidste ikke, hvor de var flygtet hen. Nu ville de med glæde have sluttet sig til dem, for de havde selv indgået en pagt med Gud om at tjene ham og holde hans befalinger.

32 Og se, efter Ammons komme havde kong Limhi også indgået en pagt med Gud, og ligeså mange af hans folk, om at tjene ham og holde hans befalinger.

33 Og det skete, at kong Limhi og mange af hans folk nærrede ønske om at blive døbt; men der fandtes ingen i landet, der havde myndighed fra Gud. Og Ammon afslog at gøre det, da han anså sig for at være en uværdig tjener.

34 Derfor organiserede de sig ikke på det tidspunkt som en kirke, men ventede på Herrens Ånd. Se, de nærrede ønske om at blive som Alma og hans brødre, der var flygtet ud i ødemarken.

35 De nærrede ønske om at blive døbt som et vidne på og et vidnesbyrd om, at de var villige til at tjene Gud af hele deres hjerte; alligevel udsatte de tidspunktet, og en beretning om deres dåb skal gives siden hen.

36 Og se, alle Ammons og hans folks og kong Limhis og hans folks overvejelser gik ud på at udfri sig af lamaniternes hænder og af trældom.

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

Mosijas Bog 22

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Ammon og kong Limhi begyndte at rådføre sig med folket om, hvordan de skulle udfri sig af trældom; og de foranledigede endog, at hele folket samlede sig, og dette gjorde de, for at de kunne kende folkets stemme angående sagen.
- 2 Og det skete, at de ikke kunne finde nogen anden måde at udfri sig af trældom på end ved at tage deres kvinder og børn og deres flokke og deres hjerde og deres telte og drage ud i ødemarken; for da lamanitterne var så talrige, var det umuligt for Limhis folk at stride mod dem med tanke på at udfri sig af trældom ved sværdet.
- 3 Se, det skete, at Gideon trådte frem og stod for kongen og sagde til ham: Se, o konge, du har hidtil lyttet til mine ord mange gange, når vi har stridt mod vore brødre, lamanitterne.
- 4 Og se, o konge, hvis du ikke har fundet, at jeg var en unyttig tjener, eller hvis du hidtil har lyttet til mine ord i nogen som helst grad, og de har været dig til nytte, da ønsker jeg af dig, at du skal lytte til mine ord på dette tidspunkt, og jeg vil være din tjener og udfri dette folk af trældom.
- 5 Og kongen tilstedte ham, at han kunne tale. Og Gideon sagde til ham:
- 6 Tænk på bagejeven gennem den bageste mur på bagsiden af byen. Lamanitterne, eller lamanitternes vagter, er berusede om natten, lad os derfor sende en proklamation ud til hele dette folk om, at de skal samle deres flokke og hjerde, så de kan drive dem ud i ødemarken om natten.
- 7 Og jeg vil i henhold til din befaling gå hen og betale den sidste skat af vin til lamanitterne, og de vil blive berusede, og vi vil gå gennem den hemmelige udgang til venstre for deres lejr, når de er berusede og sover.
- 8 Således vil vi drage af sted med vore kvinder og vore børn, vore flokke og vore hjerde ud i ødemarken; og vi vil rejse rundt om Shiloms land.
- 9 Og det skete, at kongen lyttede til Gideons ord.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

10 Og kong Limhi foranledigede, at hans folk skulle samle deres flokke sammen, og han sendte skatten af vin til lamanitterne, og han sendte også mere vin som en gave til dem; og de drak rigeligt af den vin, som kong Limhi sendte dem.

11 Og det skete, at kong Limhis folk om natten drog ud i ødemarken med deres flokke og deres hjerde, og de drog rundt om Shiloms land i ødemarken og satte kurs mod Zarahemlas land, idet de blev ledt af Ammon og hans brødre.

12 Og de havde taget alt deres guld og sølv og deres kostbarheder, som de kunne bære, og også deres proviant med sig ud i ødemarken, og de fortsatte deres rejse.

13 Og efter at have været mange dage i ødemarken ankom de til Zarahemlas land og sluttede sig til Mosijas folk og blev hans undersåtter.

14 Og det skete, at Mosija modtog dem med glæde; og han tog også imod deres optegnelser og også de optegnelser, der var blevet fundet af Limhis folk.

15 Og se, det skete, da lamanitterne fandt ud af, at Limhis folk var draget ud af landet om natten, at de sendte en hær ud i ødemarken for at forfølge dem.

16 Og efter at de havde forfulgt dem i to dage, kunne de ikke følge deres spor længere, derfor for de vild i ødemarken.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

En beretning om Alma og Herrens folk, som blev drevet ud i ødemarken af kong Noas folk.

Mosijas Bog 23

- 1 Se, Alma, som var blevet advaret af Herren om, at kong Noas hære ville falde over dem, og som havde gjort sit folk bekendt dermed, de samlede derfor deres flokke sammen og tog af deres korn og drog ud i ødemarken forud for kong Noas hære.
- 2 Og Herren styrkede dem, så kong Noas folk ikke kunne indhente dem for at slå dem ihjel.
- 3 Og de flygtede otte dagsrejser ud i ødemarken.
- 4 Og de kom til et land, ja, et meget smukt og behageligt land, et land med rent vand.
- 5 Og de slog deres telte op og begyndte at dyrke jorden og at bygge bygninger; ja, de var arbejdsomme og arbejdede overordentlig meget.
- 6 Og folket nærrede ønske om, at Alma skulle være deres konge, for han var elsket af sit folk.
- 7 Men han sagde til dem: Se, det er ikke passende, at vi skal have en konge; for så siger Herren: I skal ikke agte ét kød højere end et andet, eller ét menneske skal ikke tro, at det er bedre end et andet; derfor siger jeg til jer, at det ikke er tjenligt, at I skal have en konge.
- 8 Men hvis det var muligt, at I altid kunne have retfærdige mænd til at være konger for jer, ville det være godt for jer at have en konge.
- 9 Men husk kong Noas og hans præsters ugudelighed; og jeg blev selv fanget i en snare og gjorde meget, som var vederstyggeligt i Herrens øjne, hvilket bragte mig til alvorlig omvendelse.
- 10 Efter megen modgang hørte Herren alligevel mine råb og besvarede mine bønner og gjorde mig til et redskab i sine hænder til at bringe så mange af jer til kundskab om hans sandhed.
- 11 Alligevel roser jeg mig ikke af det, for jeg er uværdig til at rose mig selv.

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

12 Og se, jeg siger jer: I er blevet undertrykt af kong Noa og har været i trældom under ham og hans præster og er blevet ført i syndighed af dem, derfor var I bundet med syndens bånd.

13 Og se, da I ved Guds kraft er blevet udfriet af disse bånd, ja, af kong Noas og hans folks hænder og også af syndens bånd, så ønsker jeg af jer, at I skal stå fast i denne frihed, hvormed I er blevet gjort frie, og at I ikke betror nogen at være konge over jer.

14 Og betro heller ikke nogen at være jeres lærer eller jeres tjener, medmindre han er en gudsmænd, der vandrer på hans veje og holder hans befalinger.

15 Således lærte Alma sit folk, at enhver skulle elske sin næste som sig selv, så der ingen strid skulle være blandt dem.

16 Og se, Alma var deres højpræst, for han var grundlæggeren af deres kirke.

17 Og det skete, at ingen fik myndighed til at prædike eller til at undervise, uden at det skete ved ham fra Gud. Derfor indviede han alle deres præster og alle deres lærere; og ingen blev indviet, medmindre de var retfærdige mænd.

18 Derfor vågede de over deres folk og nærrede dem med det, der har med retfærdighed at gøre.

19 Og det skete, at de begyndte at have overordentlig stor fremgang i landet; og de kaldte landet Helam.

20 Og det skete, at de mangfoldiggjorde sig overordentligt og havde overordentlig stor fremgang i Helams land; og de byggede en by, som de kaldte byen Helam.

21 Alligevel finder Herren det tjenligt at revse sit folk; ja, han prøver deres tålmodighed og deres tro.

22 Men hver den, der sætter sin lid til ham, han skal blive løftet op på den yderste dag. Ja, og således var det med dette folk.

23 For se, jeg vil vise jer, at de blev bragt i trældom, og ingen kunne udfri dem, bortset fra Herren deres Gud, ja, Abrahams og Isaks og Jakobs Gud.

24 Og det skete, at han udfriede dem, og han viste dem sin mægtige kraft, og store var deres glædesudbrud.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

25 For se, det skete, at mens de var i Helams land, ja, i byen Helam, mens de dyrkede jorden deromkring, se, da kom en hær af lamanitter ind over landets grænser.

26 Se, det skete, at Almas brødre flygtede fra deres marker og samlede sig i byen Helam; og de var meget bange på grund af lamaniternes tilsynekomst.

27 Men Alma trådte frem og stod blandt dem og formandede dem om, at de ikke skulle være bange, men at de skulle huske Herren deres Gud, så ville han udfri dem.

28 Derfor dæmpede de deres frygt og begyndte at anråbe Herren om, at han ville blødgøre lamaniternes hjerte, så de ville skåne dem og deres hustruer og deres børn.

29 Og det skete, at Herren blødgjorde lamaniternes hjerte. Og Alma og hans brødre gik frem og overgav sig i deres hænder; og lamanitterne tog Helams land i besiddelse.

30 Se, lamaniternes hære, som var fulgt efter kong Limhis folk, havde været faret vild i ødemarken i mange dage.

31 Og se, de havde fundet kong Noas præster på et sted, som de kaldte Amulon; og de var begyndt at tage Amulons land i besiddelse og var begyndt at dyrke jorden.

32 Se, navnet på lederen for disse præster var Amulon.

33 Og det skete, at Amulon bønfuldt lamanitterne; og han sendte også deres hustruer, der var lamaniternes døtre, frem for at bønfalde deres brødre om, at de ikke skulle slå deres mænd ihjel.

34 Og lamanitterne fik medfølelse med Amulon og hans brødre, og de slog dem ikke ihjel på grund af deres hustruer.

35 Og Amulon og hans brødre sluttede sig til lamanitterne, og de rejste om i ødemarken for at lede efter Nefis land, da de opdagede Helams land, som Alma og hans brødre havde taget i besiddelse.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

36 Og det skete, at lamanitterne lovede Alma og hans brødre, at hvis de ville vise dem den vej, der førte til Nefis land, at de da ville skænke dem livet og friheden.

37 Men efter at Alma havde vist dem den vej, der førte til Nefis land, ville lamanitterne ikke holde deres løfte, men de satte vagter rundt omkring i Helams land over Alma og hans brødre.

38 Og resten af dem drog til Nefis land; og en del af dem vendte tilbage til Helams land og medbragte også hustruerne og børnene til de vagter, som var blevet ladet tilbage i landet.

39 Og lamanitternes konge havde tilstedt Amulon, at han skulle være konge og hersker over hans folk, som var i Helams land; men alligevel skulle han ingen magt have til at gøre noget i strid med lamanitternes konges vilje.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mosijas Bog 24

- 1 Og det skete, at Amulon vandt yndest for lamaniternes konges øjne; derfor tilstedte lamaniternes konge ham og hans brødre, at de skulle udpeges til lærere over hans folk, ja, over det folk, der var i Shemlons land og i Shiloms land og i Amulons land.
- 2 For lamanitterne havde taget alle disse lande i besiddelse; derfor havde lamaniternes konge udpeget konger over alle disse lande.
- 3 Og se, navnet på lamaniternes konge var Laman, idet han blev kaldt efter sin fars navn, og derfor blev han kaldt kong Laman. Og han var konge over et talrigt folk.
- 4 Og han udpegede lærere blandt Amulons brødre i hvert land, som hans folk havde taget i besiddelse; og således begyndte man at undervise i Nefis sprog blandt hele det lamanitiske folk.
- 5 Og det var et folk, der var venlige, den ene over for den anden; alligevel kendte de ikke Gud; og Amulons brødre lærte dem hverken noget om Herren deres Gud eller om Moseloven, ej heller lærte de dem Abinadis ord.
- 6 Men de lærte dem, at de skulle føre deres optegnelse, og at de kunne skrive, den ene til den anden.
- 7 Og således begyndte lamanitterne at tiltage i rigdom og begyndte at handle, den ene med den anden, og voksede sig mægtige og begyndte at blive et snedigt og et vísit folk, hvad angår verdens visdom, ja, et meget snedigt folk, der frydede sig ved al slags ugudelighed og plyndring, undtagen blandt deres egne brødre.
- 8 Og se, det skete, at Amulon begyndte at udøve myndighed over Alma og hans brødre og begyndte at forfølge ham og foranledige, at hans børn skulle forfølge deres børn.
- 9 For Amulon kendte Alma og vidste, at han havde været en af kongens præster, og at det var ham, der havde troet Abinadis ord og var blevet jaget bort fra kongen; og derfor var han vred på ham, for han var underkastet kong Laman, men alligevel udøvede han myndighed over dem og pålagde dem arbejde og satte opsynsmænd over dem.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

10 Og det skete, at deres trængsler blev så store, at de indtrængende begyndte at anråbe Gud.

11 Og Amulon befalede dem, at de skulle standse deres råk; og han satte vagter over dem for at holde øje med dem, så hver den, der blev grebet i at påkalde Gud, skulle sendes i døden.

12 Og Alma og hans folk oplod ikke deres røst til Herren deres Gud, men de udøste hjertet til ham; og han kendte deres hjertes tanker.

13 Og det skete, at Herrens røst kom til dem i deres trængsler og sagde: Løft hovedet og vær ved godt mod, for jeg kender den pagt, som I har sluttet med mig; og jeg vil slutte pagt med mit folk og udfri dem af trældom.

14 Og jeg vil også lette de byrder, der bliver lagt på jeres skuldre, så I slet ikke kan føle dem på jeres ryg, selv mens I er i trældom; og dette vil jeg gøre, for at I kan stå som vidner for mig herefter, og for at I kan vide med vished, at jeg, Gud Herren, kommer til mit folk i deres trængsler.

15 Og se, det skete, at de byrder, der blev lagt på Alma og hans brødre, blev gjort lette; ja, Herren styrkede dem, så de kunne bære deres byrder med lethed, og de underordnede sig gladelig og med tålmodighed hele Herrens vilje.

16 Og det skete, at deres tro og deres tålmodighed var så stor, at Herrens røst igen kom til dem og sagde: Vær ved godt mod, for i morgen vil jeg udfri jer af trældom.

17 Og han sagde til Alma: Du skal gå i spidsen for dette folk, og jeg vil gå med dig og udfri dette folk af trældom.

18 Se, det skete, at Alma og hans folk ved nattetide samlede deres flokke sammen og også noget af deres korn, ja, gennem hele natten samlede de deres flokke sammen.

19 Og om morgenen lod Herren en dyb søvn falde over lamanitterne, ja, og alle deres opsynsmænd lå i en dyb søvn.

20 Og Alma og hans folk begav sig ud i ødemarken; og da de havde rejst hele dagen, slog de deres telte op i en dal, og de kaldte dalen Alma, fordi han viste dem vej i ødemarken.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

- 21 Ja, og i Almas dal udøste de deres tak til Gud, fordi han havde været barmhjertig mod dem og lettet deres byrder og havde udfriet dem af trældom; for de var i trældom, og ingen kunne udfri dem bortset fra Herren deres Gud.
- 22 Og de gav tak til Gud, ja, alle deres mænd og alle deres kvinder og alle deres børn, som kunne tale, opløftede deres røst i lovprisningerne af deres Gud.
- 23 Og se, Herren sagde til Alma: Skynd dig, og få dig selv og dette folk ud af dette land, for lamanitterne er vågnet og forfølger dig; få jer derfor ud af dette land, og jeg vil standse lamanitterne i denne dal, så de ikke når længere i forfølgelsen af dette folk.
- 24 Og det skete, at de drog ud af dalen og begav sig på deres rejse ud i ødemarken.
- 25 Og efter at de havde været i ødemarken i tolv dage, kom de til Zarahemlas land; og kong Mosija modtog og så dem med glæde.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mosijas Bog 25

- 1 Og se, kong Mosija foranledigede, at alle folk skulle samles.
- 2 Se, der var ikke så mange af Nefis børn eller så mange af dem, der var efterkommere af Nefi, som der var af Zarahemlas folk, han, der var en efterkommer af Mulek og dem, der kom med ham ud i ødemarken.
- 3 Og der var ikke så mange af Nefis folk og af Zarahemlas folk, som der var af lamanitterne; ja, de var ikke halvt så talrige.
- 4 Og se, hele Nefis folk var samlet, og også hele Zarahemlas folk, og de var samlet i to grupper.
- 5 Og det skete, at Mosija læste og lod Zeniffs optegnelser oplæse for sit folk; ja, han læste Zeniffs folks optegnelser fra det tidspunkt, da de forlod Zarahemlas land, og indtil de vendte tilbage igen.
- 6 Og han læste også beretningen om Alma og hans brødre og alle deres trængsler fra det tidspunkt, da de forlod Zarahemlas land, indtil det tidspunkt, da de vendte tilbage igen.
- 7 Og se, da Mosija var færdig med at læse optegnelserne, var hans folk, der var blevet i landet, slået af forundring og forbløffelse.
- 8 For de vidste ikke, hvad de skulle tro; for når de så dem, der var blevet udfriet af trældom, blev de fyldt af en overordentlig stor glæde.
- 9 Og videre, når de tænkte på deres brødre, som var blevet slået ihjel af lamanitterne, blev de fyldt af sorg og fældede endog mange sorgens tårer.
- 10 Og videre, når de tænkte på Guds umiddelbare godhed og hans magt til at udfri Alma og hans brødre af lamanitternes hænder og af trældom, opløftede de deres røst og gav tak til Gud.
- 11 Og videre, når de tænkte på lamanitterne, som var deres brødre, på deres syndige og besmittede tilstand, blev de fyldt af smerte og kval for deres sjæls velfærd.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

12 Og det skete, at de, der var børn af Amulon og hans brødre, som havde taget lamanitternes døtre til hustruer, fattede mishag i deres fædres vandel, og de ville ikke længere kaldes ved deres fædres navne, derfor tog de Nefis navn på sig, så de kunne kaldes Nefis børn og blive regnet blandt dem, der blev kaldt nefitter.

13 Og se, hele Zarahemlas folk blev regnet for nefitter, og dette fordi riget ikke var blevet overdraget til andre end dem, som var efterkommere af Nefi.

14 Og se, det skete, at da Mosija var færdig med at tale til og læse for folket, ønskede han af Alma, at han også skulle tale til folket.

15 Og Alma talte til dem, da de var samlet i store grupper, og han gik fra den ene gruppe til den anden og prædikede omvendelse og tro på Herren for folket.

16 Og han formanede Limhis folk og hans brødre, alle de, der var blevet udfriet af trældom, til, at de skulle huske på, at det var Herren, der havde udfriet dem.

17 Og det skete, at efter at Alma havde lært folket meget og var færdig med at tale til dem, nærrede kong Limhi ønske om, at han kunne blive døbt; og hele hans folk nærrede ønske om, at de også kunne blive døbt.

18 Derfor gik Alma ud i vandet og døbte dem; ja, han døbte dem på samme måde, som han døbte sine brødre i Mormons vande; ja, og så mange, som han døbte, tilhørte Guds kirke, og det på grund af deres tro på Almas ord.

19 Og det skete, at kong Mosija tilstedte Alma, at han kunne oprette menigheder overalt i hele Zarahemlas land, og gav ham magt til at ordinere præster og lærere over hver menighed.

20 Se, dette blev gjort, fordi der var så mange folk, at de ikke alle kunne ledes af én lærer, ej heller kunne de alle høre Guds ord i én forsamling.

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

- 21 Derfor samledes de i forskellige grupper, som blev kaldt menigheder, idet hver menighed havde sine præster og sine lærere, og hver præst prædikede ordet, som det blev givet ham ved Almas mund.
- 22 Og således var de, til trods for at der var mange menigheder, alle én kirke, nemlig Guds kirke, for i alle menighederne blev der ikke prædikeret andet end omvendelse og tro på Gud.
- 23 Og se, der fandtes syv menigheder i Zarahemlas land. Og det skete, at hver den, der nærede ønske om at påtage sig Kristi, eller Guds, navn, sluttede sig til Guds menigheder;
- 24 og de blev kaldt Guds folk. Og Herren udøste sin Ånd over dem, og de blev velsignet og havde fremgang i landet.

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mosijas Bog 26

- 1 Se, det skete, at der var mange af den opvoksende slægt, som ikke kunne forstå kong Benjamins ord, eftersom de var små børn på det tidspunkt, da han talte til sit folk; og de troede ikke på deres fædres overlevering.
- 2 De troede ikke på det, der var blevet sagt angående de dødes opstandelse, ej heller troede de på Kristi komme.
- 3 Og se, på grund af deres vantro kunne de ikke forstå Guds ord; og deres hjerte blev forhærdet.
- 4 Og de ville ikke lade sig døbe; ej heller ville de slutte sig til kirken. Og de var et udskilt folk, hvad deres tro angik, og forblev således lige siden, ja, i deres kødelige og syndige tilstand, for de ville ikke påkalde Herren deres Gud.
- 5 Og se, i Mosijas regeringstid var de ikke halvt så talrige som Guds folk; men på grund af kiv blandt brødrene blev de talrigere.
- 6 For det skete, at de bedrog mange, som var i kirken, med deres smigrende ord og fik dem til at begå mange synder; derfor blev det nødvendigt, at de, som begik synd, og som var i kirken, måtte formanenes af kirken.
- 7 Og det skete, at de blev ført frem for præsterne og overladt til præsterne af lærerne; og præsterne førte dem frem for Alma, som var højpræsten.
- 8 Se, kong Mosija havde givet Alma myndighed over kirken.
- 9 Og det skete, at Alma ikke vidste, hvad han skulle stille op med dem; men der var mange vidner imod dem, ja, folk stod og vidnede i rigelighed om deres ugudelighed.
- 10 Se, der var ikke tidligere sket noget sådant i kirken, derfor blev Alma foruroliget i sin ånd, og han lod dem føre frem for kongen.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

11 Og han sagde til kongen: Se, her er mange, som vi har ført frem for dig, og som anklages af deres brødre, ja, og de er blevet grebet i forskellige misgerninger. Og de omvender sig ikke fra deres misgerninger, derfor har vi ført dem frem for dig, for at du kan dømme dem i forhold til deres forbrydelser.

12 Men kong Mosija sagde til Alma: Se, jeg dømmer dem ikke, derfor overgiver jeg dem i dine hænder for at blive dømt.

13 Og se, Almas ånd blev igen foruroliget; og han gik hen og adspurgte Herren, hvad han skulle gøre i denne sag, for han frygtede, at han skulle gøre uret i Guds øjne.

14 Og det skete, efter at han havde udøst hele sin sjæl for Gud, at Herrens røst kom til ham og sagde:

15 Velsignet er du, Alma, og velsignede er de, der blev døbt i Mormons vande. Du er velsignet på grund af din overordentlig store tro alene på min tjener Abinadis ord.

16 Og velsignede er de på grund af deres overordentlig store tro alene på de ord, som du har talt til dem.

17 Og velsignet er du, fordi du har oprettet en menighed blandt dette folk, og de skal blive grundfæstet, og de skal være mit folk.

18 Ja, velsignet er dette folk, som er villige til at bære mit navn; for ved mit navn skal de kaldes; og de er mine.

19 Og fordi du har adspurgt mig angående overtræderen, er du velsignet.

20 Du er min tjener, og jeg slutter pagt med dig om, at du skal få evigt liv; og du skal tjene mig og gå ud i mit navn og skal indsamle mine får.

21 Og den, der vil høre min røst, skal være mit får; og ham skal I tage imod i kirken, og ham vil jeg også tage imod.

22 For se, dette er min kirke; hver den, der bliver døbt, skal døbes til omvendelse. Og hver den, I tager imod, skal tro på mit navn; og ham vil jeg fritilgive.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23 For det er mig, der påtager mig verdens synder; for det er mig, der har skabt den; og det er mig, som skænker ham, der tror indtil enden, en plads ved min højre hånd.

24 For se, ved mit navn bliver de kaldt; og hvis de kender mig, skal de komme frem og skal have en plads i evighed ved min højre hånd.

25 Og det skal ske, at når den anden basun lyder, da skal de, der aldrig kendte mig, komme frem og skal stå foran mig.

26 Og da skal de vide, at jeg er Herren deres Gud, at jeg er deres forløser, men de ville ikke lade sig forløse.

27 Og da vil jeg bekende for dem, at jeg aldrig kendte dem; og de skal gå bort til den evigtvarende ild, der er beredt for Djævelen og hans engle.

28 Derfor siger jeg til dig, at den, der ikke vil høre min røst, ham skal I ikke tage imod i min kirke; for ham vil jeg ikke tage imod på den yderste dag.

29 Derfor siger jeg til dig: Gå i gang; og hver den, der overtræder imod mig, ham skal I dømme i forhold til de synder, som han har begået; og hvis han bekender sine synder for dig og mig og omvender sig i sit hjertes oprigtighed, skal I tilgive ham, og jeg vil også tilgive ham.

30 Ja, og så ofte som mit folk omvender sig, vil jeg tilgive dem deres overtrædelser imod mig.

31 Og I skal også tilgive hinanden jeres overtrædelser; for sandelig siger jeg til dig: Den, der ikke tilgiver sin næste hans overtrædelser, når han siger, at han omvender sig, han har bragt sig selv under fordømmelse.

32 Se, jeg siger dig: Gå i gang, og hver den, der ikke vil omvende sig fra sine synder, han skal ikke regnes blandt mit folk; og dette skal iagttages fra dette tidspunkt af.

33 Og det skete, da Alma havde hørt disse ord, at han skrev dem ned, så han kunne have dem, og så han kunne dømme folket i denne kirke i henhold til Guds befaling.

34 Og det skete, at Alma gik i gang og dømte dem, der var blevet grebet i synd, i henhold til Herrens ord.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

- 35 Og hver den, der omvendte sig fra sine synder og bekendte dem, regnede han blandt kirkens folk.
- 36 Og de, der ikke ville bekende deres synder og omvende sig fra deres ugudelighed, de blev ikke regnet blandt kirkens folk, og deres navne blev slettet.
- 37 Og det skete, at Alma styrede alle kirkens anliggender; og de begyndte igen at have fred og at have overordentlig stor fremgang i kirkens anliggender, idet de vandrede med omhu for Gud, optog mange og døbte mange.
- 38 Og se, alt dette gjorde Alma og hans medarbejdere, som ledte kirken, idet de vandrede med al flid og i alting underviste i Guds ord og led alle slags trængsler; for de blev forfulgt af alle dem, der ikke tilhørte Guds kirke.
- 39 Og de formanede deres brødre; og hver og en af dem blev også formanet ved Guds ord i forhold til deres synder eller til de synder, som de havde begået, idet de blev befaleet af Gud at bede uden ophør og at give tak i alt.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mosijas Bog 27

- 1 Og se, det skete, at de forfølgelser, som kirken blev udsat for af de ikke-troende, blev så store, at kirken begyndte at murre og beklage sig til deres ledere over det; og de beklagede sig til Alma. Og Alma lagde sagen frem for deres konge, Mosija. Og Mosija rådførte sig med sine præster.
- 2 Og det skete, at kong Mosija sendte en proklamation ud over hele landet rundt omkring om, at ingen ikke-troende måtte forfølge nogen af dem, der tilhørte Guds kirke.
- 3 Og der udgik en streng befaling til alle menighederne om, at der ikke skulle være nogen forfølgelser blandt dem, at der skulle være lighed mellem alle mennesker;
- 4 at de ikke skulle lade stolthed eller hovmod forstyrre deres fred; at enhver skulle agte sin næste som sig selv, idet de skulle arbejde med deres egne hænder for deres underhold.
- 5 Ja, at alle deres præster og lærere skulle arbejde med deres egne hænder for deres underhold i alle tilfælde, undtagen ved sygdom eller i stor trang, og ved at gøre dette nød de i rigt mål af Guds nåde.
- 6 Og der begyndte igen at blive megen fred i landet; og folket begyndte at blive meget talrigt og begyndte at brede sig vidt omkring på jordens overflade, ja, mod nord og mod syd, mod øst og mod vest, idet de byggede store byer og landsbyer i alle dele af landet.
- 7 Og Herren kom til dem og gav dem fremgang, og de blev et stort og velhavende folk.
- 8 Se, Mosijas sønner blev regnet blandt de ikke-troende; og også en af Almas sønner blev regnet blandt dem. Han hed Alma efter sin far; alligevel blev han en meget ugudelig og en afgudsdyrkende mand. Og han var en mand af mange ord og talte megen smiger til folket; derfor forledte han mange blandt folket til at gøre sine synder efter.
- 9 Og han blev en stor hindring for Guds kirkes fremgang, idet han stjal folkets hjerte og forårsagede megen kiv blandt folket og derved gav Guds fjende en mulighed for at udøve sin magt over dem.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

- 10 Og se, det skete, at mens han drog rundt for at tilintetgøre Guds kirke, for han gik hemmeligt rundt sammen med Mosijas sønner og forsøgte at tilintetgøre kirken og at føre Herrens folk på afveje i modstrid med Guds befalinger og også kongens –
- 11 og som jeg sagde til jer, mens de drog rundt og satte sig op imod Gud, se, da viste Herrens engel sig for dem; og han steg ned som i en sky; og han talte som med en tordenrøst, hvilket fik jorden, hvorpå de stod, til at ryste.
- 12 Og så stor var deres forbavselse, at de faldt til jorden og ikke forstod de ord, som han talte til dem.
- 13 Alligevel råbte han igen og sagde: Alma, rejs dig og stå frem, for hvorfor forfølger du Guds kirke? For Herren har sagt: Dette er min kirke, og jeg vil stadfæste den; og intet skal omstyrte den, undtagen mit folks overtrædelse.
- 14 Og englen sagde videre: Se, Herren har hørt sit folks bønner og også sin tjener Almas, din fars, bønner; for han har med megen tro bedt for dig om, at du måtte blive bragt til kundskab om sandheden; derfor, med det formål er jeg kommet for at overbevise dig om Guds magt og myndighed, så hans tjeneres bønner må blive besvaret i forhold til deres tro.
- 15 Og se nu, kan I bestride Guds magt? For se, får min røst ikke jorden til at ryste? Og kan I ikke også se mig for jer? Og jeg er sendt fra Gud.
- 16 Se, jeg siger dig: Gå nu, og husk dine fædres fangenskab i Helams land og i Nefis land; og husk, hvor store ting han har gjort for dem; for de var i trældom, og han har udfriet dem. Og se, jeg siger dig: Alma, begiv dig nu på vej, og forsøg ikke mere at tilintetgøre kirken, så deres bønner må blive besvaret, og gør dette, selv om du ønsker selv at blive forstødt.
- 17 Og se, det skete, at disse var de sidste ord, som englen talte til Alma, og han forlod dem.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

18 Og se, Alma og de, der var med ham, faldt igen til jorden, for stor var deres forbavselse; for med deres egne øjne havde de set en engel fra Herren; og hans røst var som torden, der rystede jorden; og de vidste, at der ikke var noget bortset fra Guds kraft, der kunne ryste jorden og få den til at bæve, som om den ville falde fra hinanden.

19 Og se, Almas forbavselse var så stor, at han blev stum, så han ikke kunne åbne sin mund; ja, og han blev så svag, at han ikke engang kunne bevæge sine hænder; derfor blev han løftet op af dem, der var sammen med ham, og båret hjælpeløs bort, lige indtil han blev lagt foran sin far.

20 Og de fortalte hans far alt, hvad der var hændt dem; og hans far frydede sig, for han vidste, at det var Guds kraft.

21 Og han foranledigede, at en mængde skulle samle sig, så de kunne bevidne, hvad Herren havde gjort for hans søn og også for dem, der var med ham.

22 Og han lod præsterne samle sig; og de begyndte at faste og at bede til Herren deres Gud om, at han ville åbne Almas mund, så han kunne tale, og også om at hans lemmer måtte få deres styrke – så folkets øjne måtte blive åbnet, så de kunne se og kende til Guds godhed og herlighed.

23 Og det skete, efter at de havde fastet og bedt i et tidsrum af to dage og to nætter, at Almas lemmer fik deres styrke, og han rejste sig og begyndte at tale til dem, idet han bød dem være ved godt mod:

24 For, sagde han, jeg har omvendt mig fra mine synder og er blevet forløst af Herren; se, jeg er født af Ånden.

25 Og Herren sagde til mig: Vær ikke forundret over, at hele menneskeslægten, ja, mænd og kvinder, alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk må fødes på ny, ja, fødes af Gud, forandres fra deres kødelige og faldne tilstand til en tilstand af retfærdighed, idet de er forløst af Gud og bliver hans sønner og døtre;

26 og således bliver de nye skabninger; og medmindre de gør dette, kan de på ingen måde arve Guds rige.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

27 Jeg siger jer, at medmindre dette er tilfældet, vil de blive forstødt; og det ved jeg, fordi jeg var nær ved at blive forstødt.

28 Alligevel, efter at have vadet gennem megen trængsel og omvendt mig næsten til døde, har Herren i sin barmhertighed fundet det tjenligt at rive mig ud af en evigtvarende brænden, og jeg er født af Gud.

29 Min sjæl er blevet forløst fra bitterheds galde og syndens bånd. Jeg var i den mørkeste afgrund; men nu ser jeg Guds forunderlige lys. Min sjæl blev martret af evig pinsel; men jeg er blevet revet ud, og min sjæl smertes ikke mere.

30 Jeg forkastede min forløser og afviste det, der var blevet omtalt af vore fædre; men se, for at alle på forhånd må kunne vide, at han vil komme, og at han husker hver skabning, som han har skabt, vil han give sig til kende for dem.

31 Ja, hvert knæ skal bøje sig, og hver tunge bekende for ham. Ja, på den yderste dag, når alle mennesker skal stå frem for at blive dømt af ham, da skal de bekende, at han er Gud; da skal de, der lever uden Gud i verden, bekende, at dommen over dem på en evigtvarende straf er retfærdig; og de skal skælve og bæve og vige tilbage under hans altseende øjes blik.

32 Og se, det skete, at Alma fra det tidspunkt af begyndte at undervise folket og også dem, der var sammen med Alma på det tidspunkt, da englen viste sig for dem, idet de rejste omkring overalt i landet og forkyndte det, som de havde hørt og set, for hele folket og prædikede Guds ord under megen modgang, idet de blev stærkt forfulgt af dem, der var ikke-troende, og blev slået af mange af dem.

33 Men til trods for alt dette gav de kirken stor trøst, idet de bekræftede deres tro og formanede dem med langmodighed og megen møje til at holde Guds befalinger.

34 Og fire af dem var Mosijas sønner; og deres navne var Ammon og Aron og Omner og Himni; dette var navnene på Mosijas sønner.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

35 Og de rejste omkring overalt i Zarahemlas land og blandt hele det folk, som var under kong Mosijas regering, idet de med iver bestræbte sig på at gøre alle de skader gode igen, som de havde forvoldt kirken, idet de bekendte alle deres synder og forkyndte alt det, som de havde set, og forklarede profetierne og skrifterne for alle, der ønskede at høre dem.

36 Og således var de redskaber i Guds hænder til at bringe mange til kundskab om sandheden, ja, til kundskab om deres forløser.

37 Og hvor velsignede er de ikke! For de forkyndte fred; de forkyndte gode tidender om godt; og de kundgjorde for folket, at Herren regerer.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mosijas Bog 28

- 1 Se, det skete, efter at Mosijas sønner havde gjort alt dette, at de tog et lille antal med sig og vendte tilbage til deres far, kongen, og ønskede af ham, at han ville tilstede, at de sammen med dem, som de havde udvalgt, kunne drage op til Nefis land, så de kunne prædike det, som de havde hørt, og så de kunne give Guds ord til deres brødre, lamanitterne –
- 2 så de måske kunne bringe dem til kundskab om Herren deres Gud og overbevise dem om deres fædres ugudelighed; og så de måske kunne befri dem for deres had til nefitterne, så de også kunne bringes til at glæde sig i Herren deres Gud, så de kunne blive venlige mod hinanden, og så der ikke skulle være flere stridigheder i hele det land, som Herren deres Gud havde givet dem.
- 3 Se, de nærede ønske om, at frelse skulle blive kundgjort for enhver skabning, for de kunne ikke bære, at nogen menneskesjæl skulle fortabes; ja, selve tanken om, at nogen sjæl skulle lide uendelig pinsel, fik dem til at skælve og bæve.
- 4 Og således virkede Herrens Ånd på dem, for de var de allerværste syndere. Og Herren fandt i sin grænseløse barmhjertighed det tjenligt at skåne dem; alligevel led de store sjælekvaler på grund af deres syndighed, idet de led meget og frygtede, at de skulle blive forstødt for evigt.
- 5 Og det skete, at de bønfuldt deres far i mange dage om, at de måtte få lov til at drage op til Nefis land.
- 6 Og kong Mosija gik hen og adspurgte Herren, om han skulle lade sine sønner drage op blandt lamanitterne for at prædike ordet.
- 7 Og Herren sagde til Mosija: Lad dem drage op, for mange vil tro på deres ord, og de skal få evigt liv; og jeg vil udfri dine sønner af lamanitternes hænder.
- 8 Og det skete, at Mosija tilstedte dem, at de kunne drage af sted og gøre som de havde bedt om.
- 9 Og de begav sig af sted ud i ødemarken for at drage op og prædike ordet blandt lamanitterne; og jeg skal siden hen give en beretning om deres virke.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

10 Se, kong Mosija havde ingen at overdrage riget til, for der var ikke nogen af hans sønner, der ville modtage riget.

11 Derfor tog han – efter at have oversat og ladet skrive de optegnelser, der var på de guldblader, som var blevet fundet af Limhis folk, og som blev overgivet til ham ved Limhis hånd – de optegnelser, der var indgraveret på bronzepladerne, og også Nefis plader og alle de ting, som han havde opbevaret og bevaret i henhold til Guds befalinger.

12 Og dette gjorde han på grund af sit folks store iver, for de nærede et umådelig stort ønske om at få noget at vide om det folk, der var blevet udryddet.

13 Og se, han oversatte dem ved hjælp af de to sten, der var fastgjort i de to indfatninger på en bue.

14 Se, disse blev beredt fra begyndelsen og blev overdraget fra slægtled til slægtled med det formål at oversætte sprog;

15 og de var blevet opbevaret og bevaret ved Herrens hånd, for at han kunne afsløre sit folks syndighed og vederstyggeligheder for enhver skabning, som skulle tage landet i besiddelse.

16 Og den, der har dem, kaldes seer efter fordums skik.

17 Se, efter at Mosija var færdig med at oversætte disse optegnelser, se, den indeholdt en beretning om det folk, der blev udryddet, fra det tidspunkt, da de blev udryddet, og tilbage til bygningen af det store tårn, på den tid da Herren forvirrede folkets sprog, og de blev spredt vidt omkring på hele jordens overflade, ja, og endog fra den tid og tilbage til Adams skabelse.

18 Se, denne beretning fik Mosijas folk til at sørge overordentlig meget, ja, de blev fyldt af sorg; alligevel gav den dem megen kundskab, hvilket de frydede sig ved.

19 Og denne beretning skal skrives siden hen; for se, det er vigtigt, at alle folk skal kende til det, der er skrevet i denne beretning.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

20 Og se, som jeg sagde til jer, efter at kong Mosija havde gjort dette, tog han bronzepladerne og alt det, som han havde opbevaret, og overdrog dem til Alma, som var Almas søn, ja, alle optegnelserne og også oversætterne og overdrog dem til ham og befalede ham, at han skulle beskytte og bevare dem og også føre en optegnelse om folket og overdrage dem fra det ene slægtled til det næste, således som de var blevet overdraget fra det tidspunkt, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosijas Bog 29

- 1 Se, da Mosija havde gjort dette, sendte han bud ud over hele landet, til hele folket, for han ønskede at kende deres vilje angående, hvem der skulle være deres konge.
- 2 Og det skete, at folkets stemme lød således: Vi nærer ønske om, at Aron, din søn, skal være vor konge og vor hersker.
- 3 Se, Aron var draget op til Nefis land, derfor kunne kongen ikke overdrage riget til ham; ej heller ville Aron påtage sig riget; ej heller var nogen af Mosijas sønner vilige til at påtage sig riget.
- 4 Derfor sendte kong Mosija igen bud ud blandt folket; ja, han sendte et skriftligt budskab ud blandt folket. Og disse var de ord, der stod skrevet, og som lød:
- 5 Se, o I mit folk, eller mine brødre, for jeg agter jer som sådanne, jeg ønsker af jer, at I skal overveje den sag, som I er blevet kaldt sammen for at overveje – for I nærer ønske om at få en konge.
- 6 Se, jeg kundgør for jer, at han, hvem riget retmæssigt tilhører, har afslået og ikke vil påtage sig riget.
- 7 Og se, hvis der blev udpeget en anden i hans sted, så frygter jeg for, at der vil opstå stridigheder mellem jer. Og hvem ved, om ikke min søn, hvem riget tilhører, kunne ændre mening og blive vred og drage en del af dette folk med sig, hvilket ville forårsage krig og stridigheder blandt jer, hvilket ville være årsag til udgydelse af meget blod og fordrejelse af Herrens vej, ja, og bringe mange menneskers sjæl til undergang.
- 8 Se, jeg siger jer, lad os være vise og overveje dette, for vi har ingen ret til at slå min søn ihjel, ej heller skulle vi have nogen ret til at slå nogen anden ihjel, hvis han blev udpeget i hans sted.
- 9 Og hvis min søn igen skulle vende tilbage til sin stolthed og tomme ting, ville han tilbagekalde det, som han har sagt, og gøre krav på sin ret til riget, hvilket ville få ham og også dette folk til at begå megen synd.
- 10 Og se, lad os være vise og fremsynede med hensyn til dette og gøre det, der vil sikre dette folks fred.

Mosiah 29

- Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.
- And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.
- Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.
- Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:
- Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.
- Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.
- And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.
- Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.
- And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.
- And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

11 Derfor vil jeg være jeres konge resten af mine dage; lad os alligevel udpege dommere til at dømme dette folk i henhold til vor lov; og vi vil ordne dette folks forhold på en ny måde, for vi vil udpege vise mænd til at være dommere, der vil dømme dette folk i henhold til Guds befalinger.

12 Se, det er bedre, at et menneske bliver dømt af Gud end af mennesker; for Guds domme er altid retfærdige, men menneskets domme er ikke altid retfærdige.

13 Hvis det derfor var muligt, at I kunne få retfærdige mænd til at være jeres konger, som ville stadfæste Guds love og dømme dette folk i henhold til hans befalinger, ja, hvis I kunne få mænd som jeres konger, som ville gøre, ligesom min far Benjamin gjorde for dette folk – jeg siger jer, at hvis dette altid kunne være tilfældet, så ville det være tjenligt for jer altid at have konger til at regere over jer.

14 Og jeg har selv arbejdet med al den kraft og alle de evner, som jeg har været i besiddelse af, på at lære jer Guds befalinger og på at skabe fred i hele landet, så der ingen krige eller stridigheder, ingen tyverier eller plyndringer eller mord eller nogen form for ugudelighed skulle være.

15 Og hver den, der har begået misgerninger, ham har jeg straffet i forhold til den forbrydelse, som han har begået i henhold til den lov, der blev givet os af vore fædre.

16 Se, jeg siger jer, at da ikke alle mennesker er retfærdige, er det ikke tjenligt, at I skal have en konge eller konger til at regere over jer.

17 For se, hvor megen ugudelighed er ikke én ugudelig konge årsag til, at der bliver begået, ja, og hvor stor ødelæggelse!

18 Ja, husk kong Noa, hans ugudelighed og hans vederstyggeligheder og også hans folks ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder. Se, hvilken stor ødelæggelse, der kom over dem; og også på grund af deres syndighed blev de bragt i trældom.

19 Og var det ikke for deres alvise skabers mellemkomst, og det som følge af deres oprigtige omvendelse, måtte de undgåeligt være forblevet i trældom indtil nu.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

20 Men se, han udfriede dem, fordi de ydmygede sig for ham; og fordi de anrøbte ham indtrængende, udfriede han dem af trældom; og således virker Herren med sin kraft i alle tilfælde blandt menneskenes børn ved at strække barmhjertighedens arm ud mod dem, der sætter deres lid til ham.

21 Og se, nu siger jeg til jer, I kan ikke afsætte en ugudelig konge undtagen ved megen strid og udgydelse af meget blod.

22 For se, han har sine venner i ugudelighed, og han holder sine vagter om sig; og de, der har regeret i retfærdighed før ham, deres love flår han i stykker; og Guds befalinger tramper han under fode.

23 Og han udsteder love og sender dem ud blandt sit folk, ja, love efter sin egen ugudelighed; og hver den, der ikke adlyder hans love, lader han slå ihjel; og hver den, der gør oprør imod ham, mod dem vil han sende sine hære for at føre krig, og hvis han kan, vil han slå dem ihjel; og således fordrejer en uretfærdig konge al retfærdigheds veje.

24 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at det ikke er tjenligt, at sådanne vederstyggeligheder skulle komme over jer.

25 Vælg jer derfor dommere ved folkets stemme, så I kan blive dømt i henhold til de love, som er blevet givet jer af vore fædre, og som er fejlfrie, og som blev givet dem ved Herrens hånd.

26 Se, det er ikke almindeligt, at folkets stemme ønsker noget, der strider mod det, der er ret; men det er almindeligt for mindretallet af folket at ønske det, der ikke er ret; dette skal I derfor iagttage og gøre det til jeres lov: at I ordner jeres sager ved folkets stemme.

27 Og hvis den tid kommer, at folkets stemme vælger ugudelighed, da er det tid, da Guds straffedomme skal komme over jer; ja, da er det tid, da han skal hjemsøge jer med stor ødelæggelse, ligesom han hidtil har hjemsøgt dette land.

28 Og se, hvis I har dommere, og de ikke dømmer jer i henhold til den lov, der er blevet givet, kan I lade dem blive dømt af en højere dommer.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

29 Hvis jeres højere dommere ikke dømmes retfærdige domme, skal I lade et lille antal af jeres lavere dommere samles, og de skal dømme jeres højere dommere i overensstemmelse med folkets stemme.

30 Og jeg befaler jer at gøre dette med frygt for Herren; og jeg befaler jer at gøre dette, og at I ikke skal have nogen konge, således at hvis disse folk begår synder og misgerninger, skal de selv svare for dem.

31 For se, jeg siger jer, at mange folks synder er blevet forårsaget af deres kongers syndighed; derfor må deres konger svare for deres syndighed.

32 Og nu ønsker jeg, at denne ulighed ikke mere skal findes i dette land, især blandt dette mit folk; men jeg ønsker, at dette land skal være et frihedens land, og at enhver må nyde sine rettigheder og privilegier i lige mål, så længe som Herren finder det tjenligt, at vi kan leve og arve landet, ja, så længe som nogen blandt vor efterslægt findes på landets overflade.

33 Og meget mere skrev kong Mosija til dem, idet han udfoldede alle en retfærdig konges prøvelser og besværligheder for dem, ja, al sjælens møje for deres folk og også al murren fra folket over for deres konge; og han forklarede det hele for dem.

34 Og han fortalte dem, at dette ikke burde finde sted, men at byrden skulle fordeles over hele folket, så enhver kunne bære sin del.

35 Og han udfoldede også for dem alle de ulemper, de ville blive udsat for ved at have en uretfærdig konge til at regere over sig,

36 ja, al hans syndighed og alle hans vederstyggeligheder og alle krigene og stridighederne og blodsudgydelsen og tyverierne og plyndringerne og begåelsen af utugtigheder og al slags syndighed, som ikke kan opregnes – og han sagde til dem, at dette ikke burde finde sted, at de udtrykkeligt var i modstrid med Guds befalinger.

37 Og se, det skete, efter at kong Mosija havde sendt dette ud til folket, at de blev overbevist om sandheden af hans ord.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

38 Derfor opgav de deres ønske om en konge og blev overordentlig ivrige efter, at enhver skulle have den samme mulighed over hele landet; ja, og enhver gav udtryk for sin villighed til at svare for sine egne synder.

39 Derfor skete det, at de samlede sig i grupper over hele landet for at afgive deres stemme med hensyn til, hvem der skulle være deres dommere og dømme dem i henhold til den lov, der var blevet givet dem; og de frydede sig overordentlig ved den frihed, der var blevet skænket dem.

40 Og deres kærlighed til Mosija voksede sig stærk; ja, de agtede ham mere end nogen anden mand, for de så ikke på ham som en tyrant, der stræbte efter vinding, ja, efter den mammon, der fordærver sjælen; for han havde ikke krævet rigdomme af dem, ej heller havde han frydet sig ved udgydelsen af blod; men han havde skabt fred i landet, og han havde tilstedt sit folk, at de skulle udfries af al slags trældom; derfor agtede de ham, ja, overordentlig meget, umådeligt.

41 Og det skete, at de udpegede dommere til at regere over sig eller til at dømme sig i henhold til loven, og dette gjorde de overalt i hele landet.

42 Og det skete, at Alma blev udpeget til at være den første overdommer, og han var også højpræsten, idet hans far havde overdraget ham dette embede og havde givet ham ansvaret for alle kirkens anliggender.

43 Og se, det skete, at Alma vandrede på Herrens veje, og han holdt hans befalinger, og han dømte retfærdige domme; og der var vedvarende fred i landet.

44 Og således begyndte dommernes regeringstid i hele Zarahemlas land blandt hele det folk, der blev kaldt nefitter; og Alma var den første og øverste dommer.

45 Og se, det skete, at hans far døde, da han var toogfirs år gammel, efter at have levet til at opfylde Guds befalinger.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

46 Og det skete, at Mosija også døde i det treogtredivte år af sin regeringstid, da han var treogtres år gammel; hvad der i alt udgør fem hundrede og ni år fra det tidspunkt, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem.

47 Og således endte den periode, hvor kongerne regerede over Nefis folk; og således endte Almas dage, han, der var grundlæggeren af deres kirke.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

Almas Bog

Af Alma, Almas søn

Beretningen om Alma, der var søn af Alma, den første og øverste dommer over Nefis folk og også højpræsten over kirken. En beretning om dommernes regeringstid og krigen og stridighederne blandt folket. Og også en beretning om en krig mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne ud fra Almas, den første og øverste dommers, optegnelse.

Almas Bog 1

- 1 Se, det skete, at der i det første år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, fra denne tid og fremover, efter at kong Mosija var gået al kødets gang, havde stridt den gode strid, havde vandret retsindigt for Gud og ikke havde efterladt sig nogen til at regere i sit sted; dog havde han udstedt love, og de blev anerkendt af folket; derfor var de nødt til at rette sig efter de love, som han havde indført.
- 2 Og det skete i det første år af Almas regeringstid i dommarsædet, at der blev ført en mand frem for ham for at blive dømt, en mand, der var stor og var kendt for sin megen styrke.
- 3 Og han havde gået omkring blandt folket og havde prædiket det for dem, som han udgav for at være Guds ord, idet han modarbejdede kirken; idet han kundgjorde for folket, at enhver præst og lærer burde nyde anseelse, og at de ikke burde arbejde med hænderne, men at de burde blive forsørget af folket.
- 4 Og han vidnede også for folket om, at hele menneskeslægten ville blive frelst på den yderste dag, og at de ikke behøvede at frygte eller bæve, men at de kunne løfte hovedet og fryde sig, for Herren havde skabt alle mennesker og havde også forløst alle mennesker; og til sidst ville alle mennesker få evigt liv.
- 5 Og det skete, at han underviste så meget i dette, at mange troede på hans ord, ja, så mange, at de begyndte at forsørge ham og give ham penge.

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

6 Og han begyndte at blive indbildsk i sit hjertes stolthed og at gå med meget kostbare klæder, ja, og begyndte endog at etablere en kirke i overensstemmelse med sin forkyndelse.

7 Og det skete, mens han var på vej hen for at prædike for dem, der troede på hans ord, at han mødte en mand, som tilhørte Guds kirke, ja, endog en af deres lærere; og han begyndte at strides skarpt med ham for at kunne forlede kirkens folk; men manden modstod ham, idet han formanede ham med Guds ord.

8 Se, mandens navn var Gideon; og det var ham, der havde været et redskab i Guds hænder ved at udfri Limhis folk af trældom.

9 Se, fordi Gideon modstod ham med Guds ord, blev han vred på Gideon og trak sit sværd og begyndte at slå ham. Se, Gideon, der var højt oppe i årene, han var derfor ikke i stand til at modstå hans slag, derfor blev han slået ihjel med sværdet.

10 Og den mand, der slog ham ihjel, blev grebet af kirkens folk og blev ført frem for Alma for at blive dømt for de forbrydelser, som han havde begået.

11 Og det skete, at han stod foran Alma og talte sin egen sag med stor frimodighed.

12 Men Alma sagde til ham: Se, dette er første gang, at præstelist er blevet indført blandt dette folk. Og se, du er ikke alene skyldig i præstelist, men har forsøgt at gennemtvunge den med sværdet; og skulle præstelist blive gennemtvunget blandt dette folk, ville det medføre deres fuldstændige undergang.

13 Og du har udgydt en retfærdig mands blod, ja, en mand, som har gjort meget godt blandt dette folk; og skulle vi skåne dig, ville hans blod komme over os som hævn.

14 Derfor bliver du dømt til at dø i henhold til den lov, der er blevet givet os af Mosija, vor sidste konge; og den er blevet anerkendt af dette folk; derfor må dette folk rette sig efter loven.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

15 Og det skete, at de greb ham; og hans navn var Nehor; og de bar ham op til toppen af højen Manti, og der blev han tvunget til, eller rettere sagt, der erkendte han mellem himlene og jorden, at det, som han havde lært folket, var i modstrid med Guds ord; og der led han en forsmædelig død.

16 Alligevel gjorde dette ikke en ende på udbredelsen af præstelist i landet, for der var mange, der elskede verdens tomme ting, og de drog omkring og prædikede falske lærdomme; og dette gjorde de for rigdoms og æres skyld.

17 Alligevel turde de ikke lyve af frygt for loven, dersom det skulle blive kendt, for løgnere blev straffet; derfor foregav de at prædike i overensstemmelse med deres tro; og se, loven kunne ingen retsvirkning have for nogen, for så vidt angår hans tro.

18 Og de turde ikke stjæle af frygt for loven, for sådanne blev straffet; ej heller turde de røve eller myrde, for den, der myrdede, blev straffet med døden.

19 Men det skete, at hver den, der ikke tilhørte Guds kirke, begyndte at forfølge dem, der tilhørte Guds kirke og havde påtaget sig Kristi navn.

20 Ja, de forfulgte dem og plagede dem med alle slags ord, og dette på grund af deres ydmyghed, fordi de ikke var stolte i deres egne øjne, og fordi de gav Guds ord, den ene til den anden, uden penge og uden betaling.

21 Se, der fandtes en streng lov blandt kirkens folk om, at ingen, der tilhørte kirken, skulle rejse sig og forfølge dem, der ikke tilhørte kirken, og at der ingen forfølgelse skulle være blandt dem indbyrdes.

22 Alligevel var der mange blandt dem, som begyndte at blive stolte og begyndte at strides hedt med deres modstandere og endog at slås; ja, de slog hinanden med næverne.

23 Se, dette fandt sted i det andet år af Almas regerings-tid, og det var årsag til stor trængsel for kirken; ja, det var årsag til stor prøvelse i kirken.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

- 24 For mange forhærdede hjertet, og deres navne blev slettet, så de ikke mere blev husket blandt Guds folk. Og mange trak sig også selv tilbage fra dem.
- 25 Se, dette var en stor prøvelse for dem, der stod fast i troen; alligevel var de standhaftige og urokkelige i at holde Guds befalinger, og de bar med tålmodighed den forfølgelse, de blev overdænget med.
- 26 Og når præsterne forlod deres arbejde for at give Guds ord til folket, forlod folket også deres arbejde for at høre Guds ord. Og når præsten havde givet dem Guds ord, vendte de alle flittigt tilbage til deres arbejde; og præsten agtede sig ikke over sine tilhørere, for prædikeren var ikke bedre end tilhøreren, ej heller var læreren bedre end eleven; og således var de alle lige, og de arbejdede alle, enhver i forhold til sin styrke.
- 27 Og de gav af deres gods til de fattige og de trængende og de syge og de plagede, enhver i forhold til det, som han havde; og de gik ikke med kostbare klæder, men alligevel var de nydelige og pæne.
- 28 Og således ordnede de kirkens anliggender; og således begyndte de at få vedvarende fred igen til trods for alle deres forfølgelser.
- 29 Og se, på grund af kirkens standhaftighed begyndte de at blive overordentlig rige og at få overflod af alt, hvad de end stod i behov for – en overflod af flokke og hjerde og fedekvæg af enhver art og også overflod af korn og af guld og af sølv og af kostbarheder og overflod af silke og fintvævet linned og al slags godt, beskedent klæde.
- 30 Og således sendte de i deres fremgangsrige kår ikke nogen bort, som var nøgen, eller som var sulten, eller som var tørstig, eller som var syg, eller som ikke havde fået mad, og de lod ikke hjertet blive optaget af rigdomme; derfor var de gavmilde mod alle, både gamle og unge, både trælle og frie, både mænd og kvinder, hvad enten de var uden for kirken eller i kirken, idet de ikke gjorde forskel på folk med hensyn til dem, der stod i behov.
- For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.
- Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.
- And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.
- And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.
- And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.
- And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and finetwined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.
- And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

31 Og således havde de fremgang og blev langt mere velhavende end dem, der ikke tilhørte deres kirke.

32 For de, der ikke tilhørte deres kirke, hengav sig til trolddom og til afgudsdyrkelse eller lediggang og til tom snak og til misundelse og strid, idet de gik med kostbare klæder, var indbildske i deres egne øjnes stolthed, forfulgte, løj, stjal, røvede og begik utugtigheder og mord og al slags ugudelighed; alligevel blev loven sat i kraft over for alle dem, der overtrådte den, for så vidt som det var muligt.

33 Og det skete, at ved således at håndhæve loven over for dem og lade enhver lide i forhold til det, som han havde gjort, blev de mere fredelige og turde ikke begå nogen ugudelighed, hvis det blev kendt; derfor var der stor fred blandt Nefis folk indtil det femte år af dommernes regeringstid.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Almas Bog 2

- 1 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det femte år af deres regeringstid, at der opstod en strid blandt folket, for en vis mand, der hed Amlici, som var en meget snedig mand, ja, en vis mand, hvad angår verdens visdom, og som var af samme orden som den mand, der slog Gideon ihjel med sværdet, og som blev henrettet i henhold til loven –
- 2 se, denne Amlici havde ved sin snedighed draget mange folk over til sig, endog så mange, at de begyndte at blive meget magtfulde; og de begyndte at forsøge på at indsætte Amlici som konge over folket.
- 3 Se, dette var foruroligende for kirkens folk og også for alle dem, der ikke var blevet tiltrukket af Amlicis overtalelser; for de vidste, at i henhold til deres lov skulle sådanne ting afgøres ved folkets stemme.
- 4 Hvis det derfor var muligt, at Amlici kunne vinde folkets stemme, så ville han, der var en ugudelig mand, berøve dem deres rettigheder og privilegier ved kirken; for det var hans hensigt at tilintetgøre Guds kirke.
- 5 Og det skete, at folket samlede sig i forskellige grupper over hele landet, enhver efter sin overbevisning, hvad enten den var for eller imod Amlici, idet de havde mange skænderier og forunderlige stridigheder, den ene med den anden.
- 6 Og således samlede de sig for at afgive deres stemme angående sagen; og de blev fremlagt for dommerne.
- 7 Og det skete, at folkets stemme gik imod Amlici, så han ikke blev gjort til konge over folket.
- 8 Se, dette skabte megen glæde i hjertet hos dem, som var imod ham, men Amlici ophidsede dem, der var på hans side, til vrede mod dem, der ikke var på hans side.
- 9 Og det skete, at de samlede sig og indviede Amlici til at være deres konge.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

10 Se, da Amlici var blevet gjort til konge over dem, befalede han dem, at de skulle gribe til våben mod deres brødre; og dette gjorde han, for at han kunne underlægge sig dem.

11 Se, Amlicis folk var kendetegnet ved Amlicis navn, idet de blev kaldt amlicitter; og resten blev kaldt nefitter, eller Guds folk.

12 Derfor var det nefitiske folk klar over amlicitternes hensigt, og derfor beredte de sig til at møde dem; ja, de bevæbnede sig med sværd og med sabler og med buer og med pile og med sten og med slynger og med alle slags krigsvåben af enhver art.

13 Og således var de rede til at møde amlicitterne på det tidspunkt, da de kom. Og der var udpeget anførere, højere anførere og øverste anførere i forhold til deres antal.

14 Og det skete, at Amlici bevæbnede sine mænd med alle slags krigsvåben af enhver art; og han udpegede også herskere og ledere over sit folk til at føre dem i krig mod deres brødre.

15 Og det skete, at amlicitterne kom til højen Amnihu, der lå øst for floden Sidon, som løb langs Zarahemlas land; og dér begyndte de at føre krig mod nefitterne.

16 Se, Alma, der var overdommer og regent over Nefis folk, han drog derfor op med sit folk, ja, med sine anførere og øverste anførere, ja, i spidsen for sine hære mod amlicitterne for at kæmpe.

17 Og de begyndte at slå amlicitterne ihjel på højen øst for Sidon. Og amlicitterne stred mod nefitterne med stor kraft, således at mange af nefitterne faldt for amlicitterne.

18 Alligevel styrkede Herren nefitternes hånd, så de slog amlicitterne ihjel under en stor nedslagtning, så de begyndte at flygte for dem.

19 Og det skete, at nefitterne forfulgte amlicitterne hele den dag, og de slog dem ihjel under megen nedslagtning, således at der af amlicitterne blev slået tolv tusinde fem hundrede og toogtredive sjæle ihjel, og at der af nefitterne blev slået seks tusinde fem hundrede og toogtres sjæle ihjel.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

20 Og det skete, at da Alma ikke længere kunne forfølge amlicitterne, lod han sit folk slå deres telte op i Gideons dal, den dal, der var blevet opkaldt efter den Gideon, der blev slået ihjel ved Nehors hånd med sværdet; og i denne dal slog nefitterne deres telte op for natten.

21 Og Alma sendte spioner ud for at følge efter resten af amlicitterne, så han kunne få kendskab til deres planer og deres rænker, hvorved han kunne beskytte sig mod dem, så han kunne bevare sit folk mod at blive udryddet.

22 Se, de, som han havde sendt ud for at holde øje med amlicitternes lejr, hed Zeram og Amnor og Manti og Limher; dette var dem, der tog af sted med deres mænd for at holde øje med amlicitternes lejr.

23 Og det skete, at de den næste dag vendte tilbage til nefitternes lejr i stor hast, og de var meget forbavsede og grebet af stor frygt og sagde:

24 Se, vi fulgte amlicitternes hær, og til vor store forbavselse så vi i Minons land oven for Zarahemlas land, i retning af Nefis land, en talrig hærske af lamanitter; og se, amlicitterne har sluttet sig til dem;

25 og de er faldet over vore brødre i det land; og de flygter for dem med deres flokke og deres hustruer og deres børn hen imod vor by; og medmindre vi skynder os, tager de vor by i besiddelse, og vore fædre og vore hustruer og vore børn vil blive slået ihjel.

26 Og det skete, at Nefis folk tog deres telte og drog ud af Gideons dal hen imod deres by, som var byen Zarahemla.

27 Og se, mens de gik over floden Sidon, faldt lamanitterne og amlicitterne, der næsten var lige så talrige som havets sand, over dem for at udrydde dem.

28 Men nefitterne blev styrket af Herrens hånd, idet de havde bedt indtrængende til ham om, at han ville udfri dem af deres fjenders hænder, derfor hørte Herren deres råb og styrkede dem, og lamanitterne og amlicitterne faldt for dem.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

29 Og det skete, at Alma kæmpede mod Amlici med sværdet, ansigt til ansigt; og de stred af al kraft, den ene mod den anden.

30 Og det skete, at Alma, som var en guds mand, og som var bevæget af stor tro, råbte og sagde: O Herre, vis barmhjertighed og skån mit liv, så jeg kan være et redskab i dine hænder til at frelse og bevare dette folk.

31 Se, da Alma havde sagt disse ord, stred han igen mod Amlici; og han blev styrket, således at han slog Amlici ihjel med sværdet.

32 Og han stred også mod lamaniternes konge, men lamaniternes konge flygtede væk fra Alma og sendte sine vagter hen for at stride mod Alma.

33 Men Alma med sine vagter stred mod lamaniternes konges vagter, indtil han slog dem og drev dem tilbage.

34 Og således ryddede han den plads eller rettere sagt den bred, der var på vestsiden af floden Sidon, idet han kastede ligene af de lamanitter, der var blevet slået ihjel, ud i Sidons vande, så hans folk derved kunne få plads til at gå over og stride mod lamanitterne og amlicitterne på vestsiden af floden Sidon.

35 Og det skete, at da de alle var kommet over floden Sidon, at lamanitterne og amlicitterne begyndte at flygte for dem, på trods af at de var så talrige, at de ikke kunne tælles.

36 Og de flygtede for nefitterne ud mod ødemarken, som lå mod vest og nord, langt uden for landets grænser; og nefitterne forfulgte dem af alle deres kræfter og slog dem ihjel.

37 Ja, de blev mødt fra alle sider og slået ihjel og fordrevet, indtil de var spredt mod vest og mod nord, indtil de havde nået den ødemark, der blev kaldt Hermounts; og det var den del af ødemarken, som blev hærget af vilde og glubske rovdyr.

38 Og det skete, at mange døde i ødemarken af deres sår og blev ædt af disse rovdyr og også af luftens gribbe; og deres knogler er blevet fundet og er blevet dynget op på jorden.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Almas Bog 3

- 1 Og det skete, at de nefitter, der ikke var blevet slået ihjel af krigsvåben, efter at de havde begravet dem, der var blevet slået ihjel – se, antallet af de slagne blev ikke talt på grund af det store antal af dem – efter at de var færdige med at begrave deres døde, vendte de alle tilbage til deres lande og til deres huse og deres hustruer og deres børn.
- 2 Se, mange kvinder og børn var blevet dræbt ved sværdet og også mange af deres flokke og deres hjerde; og mange af deres kornmarker var også ødelagt, fordi de var trådt ned af de store menneskeskarer.
- 3 Og se, så mange af de lamanitter og amlicitter, som var blevet slået ihjel på bredden af floden Sidon, blev kastet i Sidons vande; og se, deres knogler er i havets dyb, og de er mange.
- 4 Og amlicitterne kunne skelnes fra nefitterne, for de havde mærket sig med rødt i panden efter lamaniternes skik; dog havde de ikke raget hovedet som lamanitterne.
- 5 Se, lamaniternes hoved var raget, og de var nøgne bortset fra det skind, der var spændt om lænderne på dem, og også deres rustning, som var spændt om dem, og deres buer og deres pile og deres sten og deres slynger og så videre.
- 6 Og lamaniternes hud var mørk i overensstemmelse med det mærke, der var blevet sat på deres fædre, hvilket var en forbandelse over dem på grund af deres overtrædelse og deres oprør mod deres brødre, som bestod af Nefi, Jakob og Josef og Sam, der var retfærdige og hellige mænd.
- 7 Og deres brødre forsøgte at udrydde dem, derfor blev de forbandet; og Gud Herren satte et mærke på dem, ja, på Laman og Lemuel og også på Ismaels sønner og de ismaelitiske kvinder.
- 8 Og dette blev gjort, for at deres efterkommere kunne skelnes fra deres brødres efterkommere, så Gud Herren derved kunne bevare sit folk, så de ikke ville blande sig og tro på urigtige overleveringer, hvilket ville føre til deres undergang.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

9 Og det skete, at hver den, der blandede sin sæd med lamaniternes, bragte den samme forbandelse over sine efterkommere.

10 Derfor blev hver den, der tillod sig at blive forledt af lamanitterne, kaldt ved den betegnelse, og der blev sat et mærke på ham.

11 Og det skete, at hver den, der ikke ville tro på lamaniternes overlevering, men troede på de optegnelser, der var blevet bragt med fra Jerusalems land, og også på deres fædres overlevering, der var rigtig, og som troede på Guds befalinger og holdt dem fra det tidspunkt af, blev kaldt nefitter eller Nefis folk.

12 Og det er dem, der har ført de optegnelser, der er sande, om deres folk og også om det lamanitiske folk.

13 Se, vi vil igen vende tilbage til amlicitterne, for de havde også fået et mærke sat på sig; ja, de satte selv mærket på sig, nemlig et rødt mærke i panden.

14 Således bliver Guds ord opfyldt, for disse er de ord, som han sagde til Nefi: Se, lamanitterne har jeg forbandet, og jeg vil sætte et mærke på dem, så de og deres efterkommere kan blive adskilt fra dig og dine efterkommere fra denne tid af og for evigt, medmindre de omvender sig fra deres ugudelighed og vender sig til mig, så jeg kan have barmhjertighed med dem.

15 Og videre: Jeg vil sætte et mærke på den, der blander sin sæd med dine brødre, så de også må blive forbandet.

16 Og videre: Jeg vil sætte et mærke på den, der kæmper mod dig og dine efterkommere.

17 Og videre siger jeg, at den, der skiller sig ud fra dig, ikke mere skal blive kaldt din efterkommer; og jeg vil velsigne dig og hver den, der skal blive kaldt din efterkommer fra nu af og for evigt; og dette var Herrens løfter til Nefi og til hans efterkommere.

18 Se, amlicitterne vidste ikke, at de var ved at opfylde Guds ord, da de begyndte at mærke sig i panden; alligevel var de kommet frem i åbent oprør mod Gud; derfor var det tjenligt, at forbandelsen skulle falde på dem.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

19 Se, jeg ønsker, at I skal se, at de selv bragte forbandelsen over sig; og således bringer enhver, der bliver forbandet, sin egen fordømmelse over sig.

20 Se, det skete, at ikke mange dage efter det slag, der var blevet udkæmpet i Zarahemlas land af lamanitterne og amlicitterne, faldt der en anden lamanitisk hær over Nefis folk på samme sted, hvor den første hær mødte amlicitterne.

21 Og det skete, at en hær blev sendt af sted for at drive dem ud af deres land.

22 Se, Alma, der selv var plaget af et sår, drog ikke op for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne på dette tidspunkt.

23 Men han sendte en talrig hær op mod dem; og de drog op og slog mange af lamanitterne ihjel og drev resten af dem ud over deres lands grænser.

24 Og så vendte de tilbage igen og begyndte at skabe fred i landet, idet de for en tid ikke mere blev besværet af deres fjender.

25 Se, alt dette blev nu gjort, ja, alle disse krige og stridigheder blev påbegyndt og afsluttet i det femte år af dommernes regeringstid.

26 Og på ét år blev tusinder og ti tusinder af sjæle sendt til den evige verden, så de kunne høste deres løn efter deres gerninger, om de var gode, eller om de var onde, for at høste evig lykke eller evig elendighed i overensstemmelse med den ånd, som de valgte at adlyde, om det var en god ånd eller en ond.

27 For enhver får løn af ham, som han vælger at adlyde, og dette i overensstemmelse med profetiens ånds ord; lad det derfor være i overensstemmelse med sandheden. Og således ender det femte år af dommernes regeringstid.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Almas Bog 4

- 1 Se, det skete i det sjette år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at der ingen stridigheder eller krige var i Zarahemlas land.
- 2 Men folket led trængsler, ja, store trængsler på grund af tabet af deres brødre og også på grund af tabet af deres flokke og hjerde og også på grund af tabet af deres kornmarker, som var trådt under fode og ødelagt af lamanitterne.
- 3 Og så store var deres trængsler, at hver eneste sjæl havde grund til at sørge; og de troede, at det var Guds straffedomme, der var sendt over dem på grund af deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder; derfor blev de vakt til erindring om deres pligt.
- 4 Og de begyndte at etablere kirken mere fuldstændigt; ja, og mange blev døbt i Sidons vande og blev indlemmet i Guds kirke; ja, de blev døbt ved Almas hånd, han der var blevet indviet til højpræst over kirkens folk ved sin fars, Almas, hånd.
- 5 Og det skete i det syvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at der var omkring tre tusinde og fem hundrede sjæle, der forenede sig med Guds kirke og blev døbt. Og således endte det syvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk; og der var vedvarende fred i al den tid.
- 6 Og det skete i det ottende år af dommernes regeringstid, at kirkens folk begyndte at vokse sig stolte på grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme og deres fine silketøj og deres fintvævede linned og på grund af deres mange flokke og hjerde og deres guld og deres sølv og alle slags kostbarheder, som de havde skaffet sig ved deres arbejdsomhed; og i alt dette var de indbildske i deres øjnes stolthed, for de begyndte at gå med meget kostbare klæder.
- 7 Se, dette var årsag til megen trængsel for Alma, ja, og for mange af de folk, som Alma havde indviet til at være lærere og præster og ældster over kirken; ja, mange af dem var dybt bedrøvede over den ugudelighed, som de så var opstået blandt deres folk.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

- 8 For de så og betragtede med stor sorg, at kirkens folk begyndte at blive indbildske i deres øjnes stolthed og at lade hjertet blive optaget af rigdom og af verdens tomme ting, så de begyndte at vise foragt, den ene for den anden, og de begyndte at forfølge dem, der ikke troede, efter deres egen vilje og deres eget behag.
- 9 Og således opstod der i dette det ottende år af dommernes regeringstid store stridigheder blandt kirkens folk; ja, der var misundelse og strid og ondsindethed og forfølgelser og stolthed, der endog overgik stoltheden hos dem, der ikke tilhørte Guds kirke.
- 10 Og således endte det ottende år af dommernes regeringstid; og kirkens ugudelighed var en stor anstødssten for dem, der ikke tilhørte kirken; og således begyndte kirken at stagnere i sin fremgang.
- 11 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det niende år, at Alma så kirkens ugudelighed, og han så også, at kirkens eksempel begyndte at få dem, der var ikke-troende, til at begå den ene misgerning efter den anden og således blive årsag til folkets undergang.
- 12 Ja, han så stor ulighed blandt folket, idet nogle var indbildske i deres stolthed, foragtede andre, vendte deres ryg til de trængende og de nøgne og dem, der var sultne, og dem der var tørstige, og dem der var syge og plagede.
- 13 Se, dette blev en stor årsag til klageråb blandt folket, mens andre ydmygede sig og bistod dem, som stod i behov for deres bistand, ved blandt andet at give af deres gods til de fattige og de trængende, bespise de sultne og lide alle slags trængsler for Kristi skyld, der skulle komme ifølge profetiens ånd,
- 14 idet de så frem til den dag, og således blev de ved med at have forladelse for deres synder; idet de blev fyldt af stor glæde på grund af de dødes opstandelse i overensstemmelse med Jesu Kristi vilje og magt og udfrielse fra dødens bånd.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

15 Og se, det skete, at Alma efter at have set Guds ydmyge tilhængeres trængsler og de forfølgelser, som de blev overdænget med af resten af hans folk, og så al deres ulighed, begyndte at blive meget sorgfuld; alligevel svigtede Herrens Ånd ham ikke.

16 Og han udvalgte en vis mand, der var blandt kirkens ældster, og gav ham magt i overensstemmelse med folkets stemme, så han kunne have magt til at udstede love i henhold til de love, der var blevet givet, og til at håndhæve dem i forhold til folkets ugudelighed og forbrydelser.

17 Se, denne mands navn var Nefiha, og han blev udpeget til overdommer; og han sad i dommersædet for at dømme og at styre folket.

18 Se, Alma skænkede ham ikke embedet at være højpræst over kirken, men han beholdt selv embedet som højpræst; men han overgav dommersædet til Nefiha.

19 Og dette gjorde han, for at han selv kunne gå ud blandt sit folk eller blandt Nefis folk, for at han kunne prædike Guds ord for dem og vække dem til erindring om deres pligt, og for at han ved Guds ord kunne nedbryde al den stolthed og snuighed og alle de stridigheder, der fandtes blandt hans folk, idet han ikke så anden vej til at vinde dem tilbage end ved at øve pres mod dem med det rene vidnesbyrd.

20 Og således overgav Alma i begyndelsen af det niende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, dommersædet til Nefiha og helligede sig helt det høje præstedømme efter Guds hellige orden og til at aflægge vidnesbyrd om ordet i overensstemmelse med åbenbarelsens og profetiens ånd.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

De ord, som Alma, højpræsten efter Guds hellige orden, fremførte for folket i deres byer og landsbyer over hele landet.

Almas Bog 5

- 1 Se, det skete, at Alma begyndte at fremføre Guds ord for folket, først i Zarahemlas land og derfra over hele landet.
- 2 Og disse er de ord, som han ifølge sin egen optegnelse talte til folket i den menighed, som var blevet oprettet i byen Zarahemla, idet han sagde:
- 3 Jeg, Alma, der er blevet indviet af min far, Alma, til at være højpræst over Guds kirke, idet han havde magt og myndighed fra Gud til at gøre dette, se, jeg siger jer, at han begyndte at oprette en kirke i det land, der lå inden for grænsen af Nefi, ja, det land, der kaldes Mormons land, ja, og han døbte sine brødre i Mormons vande.
- 4 Og se, jeg siger jer, de blev udfriet af kong Noas folks hænder ved Guds barmhjertighed og kraft.
- 5 Og se, derefter blev de bragt i trældom ved lamaniternes hænder i ødemarken; ja, jeg siger jer, at de var i fangenskab, og igen udfriede Herren dem af trældom ved sit ords magt; og vi blev bragt til dette land, og her begyndte vi også at oprette Guds kirke overalt i dette land.
- 6 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, mine brødre, I, der tilhører denne kirke, har I i tilstrækkelig grad bevaret jeres fædres fangenskab i erindringen? Ja, og har I i tilstrækkelig grad bevaret hans barmhjertighed og langmodighed med dem i erindringen? Og endvidere, har I i tilstrækkelig grad bevaret i erindringen, at han har udfriet deres sjæl fra helvede?
- 7 Se, han forandrede deres hjerte; ja, han vækkede dem af en dyb søvn, og de vågnede op til Gud. Se, de var midt i mørket; alligevel blev deres sjæl oplyst af det evigtvarende ords lys; ja, de var omsluttet af dødens bånd og helvedes lænker, og en evigtvarende undergang ventede dem.

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

- 8 Og nu spørger jeg jer, mine brødre, led de undergang? Jeg siger jer: Nej, det gjorde de ikke.
- 9 Og jeg spørger igen: Blev dødens bånd brudt, og helvedes lænker, som omsluttede dem, blev de løst? Jeg siger jer: Ja, de blev løst, og deres sjæl svulmede, og de sang om den forløsende kærlighed. Og jeg siger jer, at de er frelst.
- 10 Og nu spørger jeg jer: På hvilke vilkår er de frelst? Ja, hvad grund havde de til at håbe på frelse? Hvad er årsagen til, at de blev løst af dødens bånd, ja, og også af helvedes lænker?
- 11 Se, det kan jeg fortælle jer – troede min far Alma ikke på de ord, der blev fremført ved Abinadis mund? Og var han ikke en hellig profet? Talte han ikke Guds ord, og min far Alma troede på dem?
- 12 Og i overensstemmelse med hans tro skete der en mægtig forandring i hans hjerte. Se, jeg siger jer, at alt dette er sandt.
- 13 Og se, han prædikede ordet for jeres fædre, og der skete også en mægtig forandring i deres hjerte; og de ydmygede sig og satte deres lid til den sande og levende Gud. Og se, de var trofaste indtil enden; derfor blev de frelst.
- 14 Og se, nu spørger jeg jer, mine brødre i kirken: Er I blevet født åndeligt af Gud? Har I antaget hans billede i jeres ansigtsudtryk? Har I oplevet denne mægtige forandring i jeres hjerte?
- 15 Udøver I tro på forløsningen ved ham, der skabte jer? Ser I fremad med troens øje og ser for jer dette dødelige legeme oprejst i udødelighed og denne forgængelighed oprejst i uforgængelighed, så I kan stå foran Gud og blive dømt efter de handlinger, som er blevet gjort i det dødelige legeme?
- 16 Jeg siger jer: Kan I forestille jer, at I hører Herrens røst sige til jer på den dag: Kom til mig, I velsignede, for se, jeres gerninger har været retfærdigheds gerninger på jordens overflade?
- 17 Eller forestiller I jer, at I kan lyve for Herren på den dag og sige: Herre, vore gerninger var retfærdige gerninger på jordens overflade, og at han vil frelse jer?

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

- 18 Eller sagt på en anden måde, kan I forestille jer blive ført frem for Guds domstol med sjælen fuld af skyld og anger, idet I har en erindring om al jeres skyld, ja, en fuldkommen erindring om al jeres ugudelighed, ja, en erindring om, at I har trodset Guds befalinger?
- 19 Jeg siger jer: Kan I se op til Gud på den dag med et rent hjerte og rene hænder? Jeg siger jer: Kan I se op med Guds billede aftegnet i jeres ansigtsudtryk?
- 20 Jeg siger jer: Kan I tænke på at blive frelst, når I har hengivet jer til at blive Djævelens undersætter?
- 21 Jeg siger jer: I vil på den dag vide, at I ikke kan blive frelst; for ingen kan blive frelst, medmindre hans klæder bliver vasket hvide; ja, hans klæder må gøres rene, indtil de er rensede for alle pletter ved blodet fra ham, om hvem der er blevet talt af vore fædre, og som skulle komme for at forløse sit folk fra deres synder.
- 22 Og nu spørger jeg jer, mine brødre, hvordan ville I føle, hvis I skulle stå for Guds domstol med jeres klæder plettet af blod og al slags tilsølethed? Se, hvad ville dette ikke vidne mod jer?
- 23 Se, ville det ikke vidne om, at I er mordere, ja, og også at I er skyldige i al slags ugudelighed?
- 24 Se, mine brødre, tror I, at en sådan kan få et sted at sætte sig ned i Guds rige sammen med Abraham, med Isak og med Jakob og også alle de hellige profeter, hvis klæder er rensede og er pletfri, rene og hvide?
- 25 Jeg siger jer: Nej, for medmindre I gør vor skaber til en løgner fra begyndelsen eller tror, at han er en løgner fra begyndelsen, kan I ikke tro, at sådanne kan få plads i Himmeriget, men de skal blive stødt ud, for de er Djævelens riges børn.
- 26 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, mine brødre, hvis I har oplevet en forandring i hjertet, og hvis I har følt lyst til at synge sangen om den forløsende kærlighed, vil jeg spørge, om I også føler således nu?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

27 Har I vandret og holdt jer ulastelige for Gud? Kunne I, hvis I blev pålagt at dø på dette tidspunkt, sige inde i jer selv, at I har været tilstrækkelig ydmyge? At jeres klæder er blevet rensset og gjort hvide ved Kristi blod, han, som kommer for at forløse sit folk fra deres synder?

28 Se, har I aflagt jeres stolthed? Jeg siger jer, hvis I ikke har det, er I ikke rede til at møde Gud. Se, I må gøre jer rede hurtigt, for Himmeriget er snart for hånden, og en sådan har ikke evigt liv.

29 Se, jeg siger, er der nogen blandt jer, som ikke har aflagt sin misundelse? Jeg siger jer, at en sådan er ikke rede; og jeg ønsker, at han skal gøre sig rede hurtigt, for tiden er nær for hånden, og han ved ikke, hvornår den tid kommer; for en sådan bliver ikke fundet skyldfri.

30 Og videre siger jeg til jer, er der nogen blandt jer, som spotter sin bror, eller som overdænger ham med forfølgelser?

31 Ve en sådan, for han er ikke rede, og tiden er for hånden, da han må omvende sig, ellers kan han ikke blive frelst!

32 Ja, ve også over alle jer, der begår misgerninger; omvend jer, omvend jer, for Gud Herren har talt det!

33 Se, han sender en opfordring til alle mennesker; for barmhjertighedens arme er strakt ud mod dem, og han siger: Omvend jer, så vil jeg modtage jer.

34 Ja, han siger: Kom til mig, så skal I nyde af frugten af livets træ; ja, så skal I frit spise og drikke af livets brød og vand.

35 Ja, kom til mig, og frembring retfærdigheds gerninger, så skal I ikke blive hugget om og kastet i ilden –

36 for se, tiden er for hånden, da hver den, som ikke frembringer god frugt eller hver den, der ikke gør retfærdigheds gerninger, han har grund til at jamre og sørge.

37 O, I, der begår misgerninger, I, der er opblæste med hensyn til verdens tomme ting, I, der har foregivet at have kendt retfærdighedens veje, men alligevel er faret vild som får, der ikke har nogen hyrde, til trods for at en hyrde har kaldt på jer og stadig kalder på jer, men I vil ikke lytte til hans røst!

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

38 Se, jeg siger jer, at den gode hyrde kalder jer; ja, og i sit eget navn kalder han jer, hvilket er Kristi navn; og hvis I ikke vil lytte til den gode hyrdes røst, til det navn, hvorved I bliver kaldt, se, da er I ikke den gode hyrdes får.

39 Og se, hvis I ikke er den gode hyrdes får, af hvilken fold er I da? Se, jeg siger jer, at Djævelen er jeres hyrde, og I er af hans fold; og se, hvem kan nægte dette? Se jeg siger jer, at hver den, der nægter dette, er en løgner og Djævelens barn.

40 For jeg siger jer, at hvad som helst, der er godt, kommer fra Gud, og hvad som helst, der er ondt, kommer fra Djævelen.

41 Hvis et menneske derfor frembringer gode gerninger, lytter han til den gode hyrdes røst, og han følger ham; men hver den, der frembringer onde gerninger, han bliver Djævelens barn, for han lytter til hans røst og følger ham.

42 Og hver den, der gør dette, får sin løn af ham; derfor får han som løn død med hensyn til det, der hører til retfærdighed, idet han er død med hensyn til alle gode gerninger.

43 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker, at I skal høre mig, for jeg taler af hele min sjæls styrke; for se, jeg har talt tydeligt til jer, så I ikke kan tage fejl, eller jeg har talt i overensstemmelse med Guds befalinger.

44 For jeg er kaldet til at tale på denne måde, i overensstemmelse med Guds hellige orden, som er i Kristus Jesus; ja, jeg er blevet befalet at rejse mig og vidne for dette folk om det, der er blevet talt af vore fædre angående det, der skal komme.

45 Og dette er ikke alt. Tror I ikke, at jeg selv kender til dette? Se, jeg vidner for jer om, at jeg ved, at det, hvorom jeg har talt, er sandt. Og hvordan tror I, at jeg kender til dets sandhed?

46 Se, jeg siger jer, det er blevet kundgjort for mig ved Guds hellige Ånd. Se, jeg har fastet og bedt i mange dage, for at jeg selv kunne vide dette. Og se, jeg ved selv, at det er sandt, for Gud Herren har tilkendegivet det for mig ved sin hellige Ånd; og dette er åbenbarelsens ånd, som er i mig.

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

- 47 Og endvidere siger jeg til jer, at det således er blevet åbenbaret for mig, at de ord, der er blevet talt af vore fædre, er sande, ja, ved profetiens ånd, som er i mig, og som også er en tilkendegivelse fra Guds Ånd.
- 48 Jeg siger jer, at jeg selv ved, at hvad som helst jeg siger jer om det, der skal komme, er sandt; og jeg siger jer, at jeg ved, at Jesus Kristus skal komme, ja, Sønnen, Faderens Enbårne, fuld af nåde og barmhjertighed og sandhed. Og se, det er ham, der kommer for at borttage verdens synder, ja, de synder, der er begået af enhver, som standhaftigt tror på hans navn.
- 49 Og se, jeg siger jer, at dette er den orden, efter hvilken jeg er kaldet, ja, til at prædike for mine elskede brødre, ja, og for enhver, der bor i landet; ja, til at prædike for alle, både gamle og unge, både trælle og frie; ja, jeg siger jer, for de aldrende og også de midaldrende og den opvoksende slægt; ja, til at råbe til dem, at de skal omvende sig og blive født på ny.
- 50 Ja, så siger Ånden: Omvend jer, alle I jordens ender, for Himmeriget er nær for hånden; ja, Guds Søn kommer i sin herlighed, i sin magt, storhed, kraft og herredømme. Ja, mine elskede brødre, jeg siger jer, at Ånden siger: Se, al jordens konges og også himlens konges herlighed skal meget snart skinne blandt menneskenes børn.
- 51 Og Ånden siger også til mig, ja, råber til mig med mægtig røst og siger: Gå ud, og sig til dette folk: Omvend jer, for medmindre I omvender jer, kan I på ingen måde arve Himmeriget.
- 52 Og videre siger jeg til jer, at Ånden siger: Se, øksen er lagt ved træets rod; derfor skal hvert træ, som ikke frembringer god frugt, blive hugget om og kastet i ilden, ja, en ild, der ikke kan fortæres, ja, en uudslukkelig ild. Se, og husk, at den Hellige har talt det.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

53 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg siger til jer: Kan I modsige disse ord? Ja, kan I afvise dette og træde den Hellige under fode? Ja, kan I være opblæste i hjertets stolthed? Ja, vil I stadig fremture ved at gå med kostbare klæder og ved at lade hjertet være optaget af verdens tomme ting, af jeres rigdomme?

54 Ja, vil I fremture med at tro, at I er bedre, den ene end den anden? Ja, vil I fremture i forfølgelsen af jeres brødre, som ydmyger sig og vandrer efter Guds hellige orden, ved hvilken de er blevet bragt ind i denne kirke, idet de er blevet helliggjort ved den hellige Ånd, og de frembringer de gerninger, som er omvendelsen værdig –

55 ja, og vil I fremture med at vende de fattige og de trængende ryggen og at tilbageholde jeres gods fra dem?

56 Og til sidst siger jeg til jer, alle jer, der vil fremture i jeres ugudelighed, at det er dem, der skal blive hugget om og kastet i ilden, medmindre de hastigt omvender sig.

57 Og se, jeg siger jer, alle jer, der nærer ønske om at følge den gode hyrdes røst: Drag bort fra de ugudelige, og skil jer ud, og rør ikke deres urene ting, og se, deres navne skal slettes, så de ugudeliges navne ikke skal regnes blandt de retfærdiges navne, så Guds ord må blive opfyldt, som lyder: De ugudeliges navne skal ikke blandes med mit folks navne.

58 For de retfærdiges navne skal skrives i livets bog, og dem vil jeg skænke en arv ved min højre hånd. Og se, mine brødre, hvad har I at sige imod dette? Jeg siger jer, at hvis I taler imod det, gør det intet, for Guds ord skal blive opfyldt.

59 For hvilken hyrde er der blandt jer, som har mange får, og som ikke vogter over dem, så ulvene ikke kommer ind og æder hans flok? Og se, hvis en ulv kommer ind i hans flok, jager han den da ikke ud? Jo, og til sidst vil han, hvis han kan, slå den ihjel.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

60 Og se, jeg siger jer, at den gode hyrde kalder på jer; og hvis I vil lytte til hans røst, vil han bringe jer ind i sin fold, og I er hans får; og han befaler jer, at I ikke tillader nogen grådig ulv at komme ind blandt jer, for at I ikke skal blive udryddet.

61 Og nu befaler jeg, Alma, jer på hans sprog, han som har befalet mig, at I skal bestræbe jer på at gøre de ord, som jeg har talt til jer.

62 Jeg siger det som befaling til jer, som tilhører kirken; og til dem, som ikke tilhører kirken, siger jeg det som en opfordring: Kom, og bliv døbt til omvendelse, så I også kan blive delagtige i frugten fra livets træ.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Almas Bog 6

- 1 Og se, det skete, efter at Alma var færdig med at tale til folket i den menighed, som var blevet oprettet i byen Zarahemla, at han ordinerede præster og ældster ved håndspålæggelse efter Guds orden til at præsidere og våge over menigheden.
- 2 Og det skete, at hver den, som ikke tilhørte kirken, og som omvendte sig fra sine synder, blev døbt til omvendelse og blev optaget i kirken.
- 3 Og det skete også, at hver den, som tilhørte kirken, og som ikke omvendte sig fra sin ugudelighed og ydmygede sig for Gud – jeg mener dem, der var indbildske i hjertets stolthed – de blev udelukket, og deres navne blev slettet, så deres navne ikke mere blev regnet blandt de retfærdiges.
- 4 Og således begyndte de at oprette kirkens orden i byen Zarahemla.
- 5 Se, jeg ønsker, at I skal forstå, at Guds ord var frit tilgængeligt for alle, at ingen blev berøvet det privilegium at samle sig for at høre Guds ord.
- 6 Men Guds børn blev befaleet, at de skulle samle sig ofte og forene sig i faste og indtrængende bøn til fordel for velfærd for de sjæle, som ikke kendte Gud.
- 7 Og se, det skete, at da Alma havde foretaget disse reguleringer, drog han bort fra dem, ja, fra den menighed, som var i byen Zarahemla, og drog over på østsiden af floden Sidon ind i Gideons dal, idet der dér var blevet bygget en by, der hed byen Gideon, som lå i den dal, der hed Gideon, idet den var opkaldt efter den mand, der var blevet slået ihjel med sværdet ved Nehors hånd.
- 8 Og Alma gik ud og begyndte at kundgøre Guds ord for den menighed, som var blevet oprettet i Gideons dal, i overensstemmelse med åbenbaringen af sandheden af det ord, som var blevet talt af hans fædre, og i overensstemmelse med profetiens ånd, som var i ham som følge af vidnesbyrdet om Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, som skulle komme for at forløse sit folk fra deres synder, og den hellige orden ved hvilken han var kaldet. Og således er det skrevet. Amen.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Almas ord, som han fremførte for folket i Gideon ifølge hans egen optegnelse.

Almas Bog 7

- 1 Se, mine elskede brødre, eftersom det er blevet mig tilladt at komme til jer, vil jeg derfor forsøge at tale til jer på mit eget sprog, ja, med min egen mund, eftersom det er første gang, at jeg har talt til jer med min munds ord, idet jeg har været fuldstændigt bundet til dommersædet, da jeg har haft så mange sager, at jeg ikke har kunnet komme til jer.
- 2 Og jeg kunne heller ikke være kommet nu på dette tidspunkt, hvis det ikke var fordi, dommersædet var blevet givet til en anden, der skal regere i mit sted, og Herren i sin store barmhjertighed har tilstedt, at jeg skulle komme til jer.
- 3 Og se, jeg er kommet med store forhåbninger og et stort ønske om, at jeg måtte finde, at I havde ydmyget jer for Gud, og at I var fortsat i anrøbelen af hans nåde, og at jeg måtte finde, at I var ulastelige for ham, og at jeg måtte finde, at I ikke var i den forfærdelige knibe, som vore brødre var i ved Zarahemla.
- 4 Men velsignet være Guds navn, fordi han har ladet mig vide, ja, har givet mig den overordentlig store glæde at vide, at de igen er grundfæstet på hans retfærdigheds vej.
- 5 Og jeg har i overensstemmelse med Guds Ånd, som er i mig, tiltro til, at jeg også skal glæde mig over jer; alligevel ønsker jeg ikke, at min glæde over jer skal komme som følge af så megen trængsel og sorg, som jeg har haft for brødrene ved Zarahemla, for se, min glæde over dem kommer efter at have vadet gennem megen trængsel og sorg.
- 6 Men se, jeg har tiltro til, at I ikke er i en tilstand af så stor vantro, som jeres brødre var; jeg har tiltro til, at I ikke er indbildske i hjertets stolthed; ja, jeg har tiltro til, at I ikke har ladet hjertet blive optaget af rigdom og af verdens tomme ting, ja, jeg har tiltro til, at I ikke tilbeder afguder, men at I tilbeder den sande og levende Gud, og at I med en evigtvarende tro ser frem til den syndsforladelse, som skal finde sted.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

- 7 For se, jeg siger jer, at meget skal finde sted, og se, der er ét, der er af større vigtighed end alt andet – for se, tiden er ikke langt borte, da Forløseren lever og kommer blandt sit folk.
- 8 Se, jeg siger ikke, at han kommer blandt os, mens han bor i sin dødelige bolig; for se, Ånden har ikke sagt til mig, at dette vil være tilfældet. Se, med hensyn til dette ved jeg intet; men så meget ved jeg, at Gud Herren har magt til at gøre alt det, der er i overensstemmelse med hans ord.
- 9 Men se, så meget har Ånden sagt til mig: Råb til dette folk og sig: Omvend jer, og bered Herrens vej, og vandr på hans stier, som er rette; for se, Himmeriget er for hånden, og Guds Søn kommer til jordens overflade.
- 10 Og se, han skal blive født af Maria ved Jerusalem, som er vore forfædres land, og hun er en jomfru, et dyrebart og udvalgt redskab, som skal blive overskygget og undfange ved Helligåndens kraft og føde en søn, ja, selveste Guds Søn.
- 11 Og han skal gå omkring og lide smerter og trængsler og fristelser af enhver art; og dette for at det ord må blive opfyldt, som lyder: Han vil påtage sig sit folks smerter og sygdomme.
- 12 Og han vil påtage sig døden, så han kan løse dødens bånd, som binder hans folk; og han vil påtage sig deres skrøbeligheder, så hans indre kan fyldes med barmhjerlighed, hvad angår kødet, så han, hvad angår kødet, kan vide, hvorledes han kan bistå sit folk, hvad angår deres skrøbeligheder.
- 13 Se, Ånden ved alt; alligevel lider Guds Søn, hvad angår kødet, så han kan påtage sig sit folks synder, så han kan slette deres overtrædelser i overensstemmelse med sin magt til at udfri; og se nu, det er det vidnesbyrd, som er i mig.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

- 14 Se, jeg siger jer, at I må omvende jer og blive født på ny; for Ånden siger, at hvis I ikke bliver født på ny, kan I ikke arve Himmeriget; kom derfor og bliv døbt til omvendelse, så I kan blive vasket rene for jeres synder, så I kan have tro på Guds lam, som borttager verdens synder, og som er mægtig til at frelse og til at rense for al uretfærdighed.
- 15 Ja, jeg siger jer: Kom, og frygt ikke, og aflæg enhver synd, som let omklammer jer, og som binder jer, så I lider undergang; ja, kom, og gå frem, og vis jeres Gud, at I er villige til at omvende jer fra jeres synder og indgå en pagt med ham om at holde hans befalinger, og bevidn det for ham i dag ved at gå ned i dåbens vande.
- 16 Og hver den, der gør dette og holder Guds befalinger fra da af, han vil huske på, at jeg siger til ham, ja, han vil huske på, at jeg har sagt til ham, at han vil få evigt liv ifølge vidnesbyrdet fra den hellige Ånd, som vidner i mig.
- 17 Og se, mine elskede brødre, tror I på dette? Se, jeg siger jer: Ja, jeg ved, at I tror på det; og den måde, hvorpå jeg ved, at I tror på det, er ved tilkendegivelsen fra den Ånd, som er i mig. Og se, da jeres tro er stærk angående det, ja, angående dette, som jeg har talt om, så er min glæde stor.
- 18 For som jeg sagde til jer i begyndelsen, at jeg havde et stort ønske om, at I ikke var i den samme tilstand af knibe som jeres brødre, ja, så har jeg fundet, at disse mine ønsker er blevet opfyldt.
- 19 For jeg fornemmer, at I er på retfærdighedens stier; jeg fornemmer, at I er på den sti, der fører til Guds rige; ja, jeg fornemmer, at I gør hans stier rette.
- 20 Jeg fornemmer, at det er blevet kundgjort for jer ved hans ords vidnesbyrd, at han ikke kan vandre på krogede stier; ej heller afviger han fra det, som han har sagt; ej heller findes der hos ham skygge af omskiftelse fra højre til venstre eller fra det, der er ret, til det, der er forkert; derfor er Herrens vej ét evigt kredsløb.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

- 21 Og han bor ikke i vanhellige templer; ej heller kan tilsølethed eller noget, der er urent, blive modtaget i Guds rige; derfor siger jeg jer, at tiden skal komme, ja, og det skal ske på den yderste dag, at den, der er tilsølet, skal forblive i sin tilsølethed.
- 22 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg har sagt dette til jer, så jeg kunne vække jer til en erkendelse af jeres pligt mod Gud, så I kan vandre ulasteligt for ham, så I kan vandre efter Guds hellige orden, ved hvilken I er blevet modtaget.
- 23 Og se, jeg ønsker, at I skal være ydmyge og være underdanige og blide, beredvillige, fulde af tålmodighed og langmodighed, være mådeholdne i alt, være flittige til på alle tidspunkter at holde Guds befalinger, bede om hvad som helst som I står i behov for, både åndeligt og timeligt, og altid give Gud tak for, hvad I end modtager.
- 24 Og se til, at I har tro, håb og næstekærlighed, og da vil I altid være rige på gode gerninger.
- 25 Og måtte Herren velsigne jer og holde jeres klæder uplettede, så I til sidst måtte få lov at sætte jer ned sammen med Abraham, Isak og Jakob og de hellige profeter, der har været lige siden verden begyndte, i Himmeriget for ikke mere at forlade det, idet jeres klæder er uplettede, ligesom deres klæder er uplettede.
- 26 Og nu, mine elskede brødre, jeg har talt disse ord til jer i overensstemmelse med den Ånd, som vidner i mig, og min sjæl fryder sig overordentligt på grund af den overordentlig store flid og agtpågivenhed, som I har vist mine ord.
- 27 Og se, måtte Guds fred hvile over jer og over jeres huse og jorder og over jeres flokke og hjerde og alt, hvad I besidder, jeres kvinder og jeres børn i overensstemmelse med jeres tro og gode gerninger fra dette tidspunkt af og for evigt. Og således har jeg talt. Amen.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

Almas Bog 8

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Alma vendte tilbage fra Gideons land efter at have lært folket i Gideon meget, som ikke kan skrives, og have bragt menigheden i orden, ligesom han tidligere havde gjort det i Zarahemlas land; ja, han vendte tilbage til sit hus i Zarahemla for at hvile sig efter det arbejde, han havde udført.
- 2 Og således endte det niende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 3 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det tiende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at Alma drog derfra, og han rejste over til Meleks land på vestsiden af floden Sidon, mod vest ved ødemarkens grænseegne.
- 4 Og han begyndte at undervise folk i Meleks land efter Guds hellige orden, ved hvilken han var blevet kaldet; og han begyndte at undervise folk overalt i Meleks land.
- 5 Og det skete, at folk kom til ham fra alle de kanter af landet, der grænsede op til ødemarken. Og de blev døbt overalt i landet;
- 6 så da han var blevet færdig med sin gerning i Melek, drog han derfra og rejste tre dagsrejser mod nord fra Meleks land, og han kom til en by, der hed Ammoniha.
- 7 Se, det var skik hos Nefis folk at opkalde deres lande og deres byer og deres landsbyer, ja, selv alle deres små landsbyer efter navnet på den, som først tog dem i besiddelse, og således var det med Ammonihans land.
- 8 Og det skete, at da Alma var kommet til byen Ammoniha, begyndte han at prædike Guds ord for dem.
- 9 Se, Satan havde fået et fast greb om hjertet på folket i byen Ammoniha, derfor ville de ikke lytte til Almas ord.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

10 Alligevel arbejdede Alma meget i ånden, idet han kæmpede med Gud i indtrængende bøn om, at han ville udøse sin Ånd over de mennesker, der var i byen, og også om, at han ville tilstede, at han måtte døbe dem til omvendelse.

11 Alligevel forhærdede de hjertet og sagde til ham: Se, vi ved, at du er Alma, og vi ved, at du er højpræst over den kirke, som du har oprettet i mange dele af landet i overensstemmelse med jeres overlevering; men vi er ikke af din kirke, og vi tror ikke på sådanne tåbelige overleveringer.

12 Og se, vi ved, at fordi vi ikke er af din kirke, så ved vi, at du ingen magt har over os; og du har overdraget dommersædet til Nefiha, derfor er du ikke overdommer over os.

13 Se, da folket havde sagt dette og modsat sig alle hans ord og hånet ham og spyttet på ham og ladet ham støde ud af deres by, drog han derfra og rejste mod den by, der hed Aron.

14 Og det skete, at mens han var på vej dertil og var tynget af sorg og vadede gennem megen modgang og megen sjælekval på grund af ugudeligheden blandt de mennesker, der var i byen Ammonihah, skete det, at mens Alma således var tynget af sorg, se, da viste en engel fra Herren sig for ham og sagde:

15 Velsignet er du, Alma; løft derfor dit hoved og fryd dig, for du har stor grund til at fryde dig, for du har været trofast i at holde Guds befalinger fra det tidspunkt, da du modtog dit første budskab fra ham. Se, jeg er ham, som bragte dig det.

16 Og se, jeg er blevet udsendt for at befale dig, at du skal vende tilbage til byen Ammonihah og igen prædike for byens folk, ja, prædik for dem. Ja, sig til dem, at medmindre de omvender sig, vil Gud Herren udrydde dem.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

17 For se, de gør sig på dette tidspunkt overvejelser, for at de kan tilintetgøre dit folks frihed (for så siger Herren), hvilket strider imod de lovbud og retsregler og befalinger, som han har givet sit folk.

18 Se, det skete, at efter at Alma havde modtaget dette budskab fra Herrens engel, vendte han hastigt tilbage til Ammonihahs land. Og han kom ind i byen ad en anden vej, ja, ad den vej, som er på sydsiden af byen Ammonihah.

19 Og da han kom ind i byen, var han sulten, og han sagde til en mand: Vil du give Guds ydmyge tjener noget at spise?

20 Og manden sagde til ham: Jeg er nefit, og jeg ved, at du er Guds hellige profet, for du er den mand, om hvem en engel i et syn sagde: Du skal tage imod! Gå derfor med mig ind i mit hus, så vil jeg give dig af min mad; og jeg ved, at du vil blive en velsignelse for mig og mit hus.

21 Og det skete, at manden tog imod ham i sit hus; og manden hed Amulek, og han hentede brød og kød og satte det foran Alma.

22 Og det skete, at Alma spiste brød og blev mæt; og han velsignede Amulek og hans hus, og han gav Gud tak.

23 Og efter at han havde spist og var blevet mæt, sagde han til Amulek: Jeg er Alma og er højpræsten over Guds kirke i hele landet.

24 Og se, jeg er blevet kaldet til at prædike Guds ord blandt hele dette folk i overensstemmelse med åbenbarrelsens og profetiens ånd; og jeg var her i landet, og de ville ikke tage imod mig, men de stødte mig ud, og jeg var ved at vende ryggen til dette land for evigt.

25 Men se, jeg er blevet befalet, at jeg skal vende tilbage og profetere for dette folk, ja, og vidne imod dem om deres syndighed.

26 Og se, Amulek, fordi du har bespist mig og taget imod mig, er du velsignet; for jeg var sulten, for jeg havde fastet mange dage.

27 Og Alma blev hos Amulek mange dage, før han begyndte at prædike for folket.

28 Og det skete, at folket voksede sig grovere i deres ugodhed.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

29 Og ordet kom til Alma således: Drag ud, og sig også til min tjener Amulek: Drag ud og profetér for dette folk og sig: Omvend jer, for så siger Herren: Medmindre I omvender jer, vil jeg hjemsøge dette folk i min vrede; ja, og jeg vil ikke vende min rasende vrede bort.

30 Og Alma og også Amulek drog ud blandt folket for at kundgøre Guds ord for dem; og de var fyldt af Helligånden.

31 Og der var blevet givet dem magt i en sådan grad, at de ikke kunne holdes indespærret i fangehuller; ej heller var det muligt, at nogen kunne slå dem ihjel; alligevel udøvede de ikke deres magt, før de blev bundet med reb og kastet i fængsel. Se, dette blev gjort, for at Herren kunne vise sin magt ved dem.

32 Og det skete, at de drog ud og begyndte at prædike og at profetere for folket i overensstemmelse med den ånd og kraft, som Herren havde givet dem.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Almas ord og også Amuleks ord, som blev kundgjort for det folk, der var i Ammonihab. De bliver også kastet i fængsel og udfriet ved Guds mirakuløse magt, som var i dem, ifølge Almas optegnelse.

Almas Bog 9

- 1 Og videre, idet jeg, Alma, var blevet befaleet af Gud, at jeg skulle tage Amulek med mig og drage ud og atter prædike for dette folk eller de mennesker, der var i byen Ammonihab, skete det, at da jeg begyndte at prædike for dem, begyndte de at strides med mig, idet de sagde:
- 2 Hvem er du? Mener du, at vi skal tro på en enkelt mands vidnesbyrd, om han så skulle prædike for os, at jorden skulle forgå?
- 3 Se, de forstod ikke de ord, som de talte; for de vidste ikke, at jorden skulle forgå.
- 4 Og de sagde også: Vi vil ikke tro på dine ord, om du så skulle profetere, at denne store by skulle blive ødelagt på én dag.
- 5 Se, de vidste ikke, at Gud kunne gøre sådanne forunderlige gerninger, for de var et hårdhjertet og stivnakket folk.
- 6 Og de sagde: Hvem er Gud, der ikke sender mere myndighed end én mand til dette folk for at kundgøre sandheden for dem om sådanne store og forunderlige ting?
- 7 Og de trådte frem for at lægge hånd på mig, men se, de gjorde det ikke. Og jeg stod med frimodighed frem for at kundgøre for dem, ja, jeg vidnede frimodigt for dem, idet jeg sagde:
- 8 Se, o du ugudelige og afsporede slægt, hvorledes har I glemt jeres fædres overlevering; ja, hvor hurtigt I har glemt Guds befalinger.
- 9 Husker I ikke, at vor fader Lehi blev ført ud af Jerusalem ved Guds hånd? Husker I ikke, at de alle blev ledt af ham gennem ørkenen.

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihab. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihab, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiff-necked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

- 10 Og har I så hurtigt glemt, hvor mange gange han udfriede vore fædre af deres fjenders hænder og bevarede dem mod at blive udryddet, endog ved deres egne brødrers hænder?
- 11 Ja, og hvis det ikke havde været for hans uforlignelige kraft og hans barmhjertighed og hans langmodighed med os, ville vi uundgåeligt være blevet udryddet fra jordens overflade længe før denne tid og måske være blevet overgivet til en tilstand af uendelig elendighed og jammer.
- 12 Se, jeg siger jer, at han befaler jer at omvende jer, og medmindre I omvender jer, kan I på ingen måde arve Guds rige. Men se, det er ikke alt – han har befalet jer at omvende jer, ellers vil han fuldstændig udrydde jer fra jordens overflade, ja, han vil hjemsøge jer i sin vrede, og i sin rasende vrede vil han ikke vende sig bort.
- 13 Se, husker I ikke de ord, som han talte til Lehi, da han sagde: For så vidt som I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet? Og videre er det sagt: For så vidt som I ikke vil holde mine befalinger, skal I blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.
- 14 Se, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske på, at for så vidt som lamanitterne ikke har holdt Guds befalinger, er de blevet forstødt fra Herrens nærhed. Nu ser vi, at Herrens ord er blevet bekræftet med hensyn til dette, og lamanitterne er blevet forstødt fra hans nærhed fra begyndelsen af deres overtrædelser i landet.
- 15 Alligevel siger jeg til jer, at det skal blive tåleligere for dem på dommens dag end for jer, hvis I forbliver i jeres synder; ja, og endog tåleligere for dem i dette liv end for jer, medmindre I omvender jer.
- 16 For der er mange løfter, som er givet til lamanitterne; for det er på grund af deres fædres overleveringer, der fik dem til at forblive i deres tilstand af uvidenhed; derfor vil Herren være barmhjertig mod dem og forlænge deres tilværelse i landet.

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

17 Og på et tidspunkt skal de blive bragt til at tro på hans ord og til at kende til urigtigheden af deres fædres overleveringer; og mange af dem skal blive frelst, for Herren vil være barmhjertig mod alle, der påkalder hans navn.

18 Men se, jeg siger jer, at hvis I fremturer i jeres ugudelighed, så bliver jeres dage ikke forlænget i landet, for lamanitterne bliver sendt mod jer; og hvis I ikke omvender jer, skal de komme på et tidspunkt, da I ikke ved det, og I skal blive hjemsøgt med fuldstændig udryddelse; og det skal ske i overensstemmelse med Herrens rasende vrede.

19 For han vil ikke tillade jer, at I skal leve i jeres syndighed, så I ødelægger hans folk. Jeg siger jer: Nej, han ville hellere tillade, at lamanitterne kunne udrydde hele hans folk, som hedder Nefis folk, hvis det var muligt, at de kunne falde i synd og overtrædelse efter at have fået så meget lys og så megen kundskab givet til sig af Herren deres Gud;

20 ja, efter at have været et af Herren så rigt begunstiget folk; ja, efter at være blevet mere begunstiget end alle andre folkeslag, stammer, tungemål eller folk; efter at have fået alt kundgjort for sig efter deres ønsker og deres tro og bønner om det, som har været, og som er, og som skal komme;

21 efter at være blevet besøgt af Guds Ånd; efter at have talt med engle og efter at være blevet talt til af Herrens røst; og efter at have fået profetiens ånd og åbenbarelsens ånd og også mange gaver, gaven at kunne tale i tunger og gaven at kunne prædike og Helligåndsgaven og gaven at kunne oversætte;

22 ja, og efter at være blevet udfriet af Gud af Jerusalems land ved Herrens hånd, efter at være blevet reddet fra hungersnød og fra svagheder og alle slags sygdomme af enhver art, og efter at de havde vokset sig stærke i kamp, så de ikke skulle blive udryddet, efter at være blevet bragt ud af trældom tid efter anden og efter at være blevet beskyttet og bevaret indtil nu, og de har fået fremgang, indtil de er blevet rige på alle slags ting –

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

23 og se, nu siger jeg jer, at hvis dette folk, der har modtaget så mange velsignelser af Herrens hånd, skulle overtræde i modstrid med det lys og den kundskab, som de har, jeg siger jer, at hvis det skulle være tilfældet, at hvis de skulle falde i overtrædelse, ville det blive langt tåleligere for lamanitterne end for dem.

24 For se, Herrens løfter er givet til lamanitterne, men de er ikke givet til jer, hvis I overtræder; for har Herren ikke udtrykkeligt lovet og fast bestemt, at hvis I sætter jer op imod ham, skal I blive fuldstændig udryddet fra jordens overflade.

25 Og se, af denne årsag, for at I ikke skal blive udryddet, har Herren sendt sin engel for at besøge mange blandt sit folk, idet han kundgør for dem, at de skal drage ud og råbe indtrængende til dette folk og sige: Omvend jer, for Himmeriget er nær for hånden;

26 og om ikke mange dage skal Guds Søn komme i sin herlighed; og hans herlighed skal være Faderens Enbarnes herlighed, fuld af nåde, upartiskhed og sandhed, fuld af tålmodighed, barmhjertighed og langmodighed, hurtig til at høre sit folks røb og til at besvare deres bønner.

27 Og se, han kommer for at forløse dem, der lader sig døbe til omvendelse ved tro på hans navn.

28 Bered derfor Herrens vej, for tiden er for hånden, da alle mennesker skal høste en løn for deres gerninger i forhold til, hvordan de har været – hvis de har været retfærdige, skal de høste deres sjæls frelse i overensstemmelse med Jesu Kristi magt og udfrielse; og hvis de har været onde, skal de høste deres sjæls fordømmelse i overensstemmelse med Djævelens magt og tilfangetagelse.

29 Se nu, dette er englens røst, der råber til folket.

30 Og se, mine elskede brødre, for I er mine brødre, og I burde være elsket, og I burde frembringe gerninger, som er omvendelsen værdig, eftersom jeres hjerte har været meget forhærdet mod Guds ord, og eftersom I er et fortabt og et faldent folk.

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

31 Se, det skete, at da jeg, Alma, havde talt disse ord, se, da blev folket vrede på mig, fordi jeg sagde til dem, at de var et hårdhjertet og et stivnakket folk.

32 Og også fordi jeg sagde til dem, at de var et fortabt og et faldent folk, blev de vrede på mig og forsøgte at lægge hånd på mig, så de kunne kaste mig i fængsel.

33 Men det skete, at Herren ikke tillod dem at gribe mig på det tidspunkt og kaste mig i fængsel.

34 Og det skete, at Amulek gik hen og stod frem og også begyndte at prædike for dem. Og se, Amuleks ord er ikke alle skrevet, dog er en del af hans ord skrevet i denne bog.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Almas Bog 10

- 1 Se, disse er de ord, som Amulek prædikede for de mennesker, der var i Ammonihahs land, idet han sagde:
- 2 Jeg er Amulek; jeg er søn af Giddona, der var søn af Ismael, som var efterkommer af Aminadi; og det var den selv samme Aminadi, som oversatte den indskrift, der var på templets mur, og som var skrevet af Guds finger.
- 3 Og Aminadi var efterkommer af Nephi, som var søn af Lehi, som kom ud af Jerusalems land, og som var efterkommer af Manasse, der var søn af Josef, som blev solgt til Egypten ved sine brødres hånd.
- 4 Og se, jeg er også en mand af ikke ringe anseelse blandt alle dem, der kender mig; ja, og se, jeg har mange slægtninge og venner, og jeg har også erhvervet mig megen rigdom ved mine hænders arbejdsomhed.
- 5 Trods alt dette har jeg alligevel aldrig kendt meget til Herrens veje og hans hemmeligheder og forunderlige magt. Jeg sagde, jeg aldrig havde kendt meget til dette, men se, jeg tager fejl, for jeg har set mange af hans hemmeligheder og meget af hans forunderlige magt, ja, i den måde, hvorpå dette folks liv er blevet bevaret.
- 6 Alligevel forhærdede jeg mit hjerte, for der blev kaldt på mig mange gange, og jeg ville ikke høre; derfor kendte jeg til dette, og dog ville jeg ikke vide af det; derfor blev jeg ved at sætte mig op imod Gud i mit hjertes ugudelighed helt indtil den fjerde dag i denne syvende måned, som er i det tiende år af dommernes regeringstid.
- 7 Mens jeg var på rejse for at besøge en meget nær slægtning, se, da viste en engel fra Herren sig for mig og sagde: Amulek, vend tilbage til dit eget hus, for du skal bispise Herrens profet, ja, en hellig mand, som er en mand, der er udvalgt af Gud; for han har fastet i mange dage på grund af dette folks synder, og han er sulten, og du skal tage imod ham i dit hus og bispise ham, og han skal velsigne dig og dit hus, og Herrens velsignelse skal hvile over dig og dit hus.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

8 Og det skete, at jeg adlød englens røst og vendte om mod mit hus. Og mens jeg var på vej dertil, fandt jeg manden, om hvem englen havde sagt til mig: Du skal tage imod ham i dit hus. Og se, det var den samme mand, som har talt til jer angående det, der hører Gud til.

9 Og englen sagde til mig, at han er en hellig mand; derfor ved jeg, at han er en hellig mand, fordi det blev sagt af en engel fra Gud.

10 Og videre, jeg ved, at det, hvorom han har vidnet, er sandt; for se, jeg siger jer, at så sandt som Herren lever, har han sendt sin engel for at give dette til kende for mig; og dette har han gjort, mens denne Alma har boet i mit hus.

11 For se, han har velsignet mit hus, han har velsignet mig og mine kvinder og mine børn og min far og mine slægtninge, ja, hele min slægt har han velsignet, og Herrens velsignelse har hvilet over os i overensstemmelse med de ord, som han talte.

12 Og se, da Amulek havde talt disse ord, begyndte folket at blive forbavset, eftersom der var mere end ét vidne, der vidnede om det, som de blev anklaget for, og også om det, der skulle komme, i overensstemmelse med profetiens ånd, som var i dem.

13 Alligevel var der nogle blandt dem, som tænkte på at udspørge dem, for at de ved deres snedige anslag kunne fange dem i deres ord, så de kunne finde vidnesbyrd mod dem, så de kunne overgive dem til deres dommere, så de kunne blive dømt i henhold til loven, og så de kunne blive slået ihjel eller kastet i fængsel alt afhængig af den forbrydelse, som de kunne få det til at se ud som om, de havde begået, eller kunne vidne imod dem.

14 Se, de mænd, der forsøgte at gøre det af med dem, var dem, der var advokater og blev ansat eller udpeget af folket til at forvalte loven under deres retssager eller ved behandlingen af folkets forbrydelser for dommerne.

15 Se, disse advokater var lærde i alle folkets kneb og snedigheder; og det var de, for at de kunne være dygtige i deres fag.

16 Og det skete, at de begyndte at udspørge Amulek, for at de derved kunne få ham til at modsige sig selv eller modsige de ord, som han skulle tale.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

17 Se, de vidste ikke, at Amulek kunne få kendskab til deres forehavender. Men det skete, at da de begyndte at udspørge ham, fornemmede han deres tanker, og han sagde til dem: O du ugudelige og afsporede slægt, I advokater og hyklere, for I lægger Djævelens grundvolde; for I lægger fælder og snarer for at fange Guds hellige.

18 I lægger planer om at fordreje de retfærdiges veje og at nedkalde Guds vrede over jeres hoved, ja, til dette folks fuldstændige udryddelse.

19 Ja, med rette sagde Mosija, der var vor sidste konge, da han var ved at give riget fra sig, fordi han ikke havde nogen at overdrage det til, og foranledigede, at dette folk skulle regeres ved deres egen stemme – ja, med rette sagde han, at hvis den tid skulle komme, da dette folks stemme ville vælge ugudelighed, det vil sige, at hvis den tid skulle komme, da dette folk skulle falde i overtrædelse, da ville de være modne til udryddelse.

20 Og se, jeg siger jer, at Herren med rette dømmer jer for jeres syndighed; med rette råber han til dette folk ved sine engles røst: Omvend jer, omvend jer, for Himmeriget er for hånden.

21 Ja, med rette råber han ved sine engles røst: Jeg vil komme ned blandt mit folk med upartiskhed og retfærdighed i hænderne.

22 Ja, og jeg siger jer, at var det ikke for bønnerne fra de retfærdige, som nu er i landet, da ville I allerede nu blive hjemløst med fuldstændig udryddelse, dog ville det ikke blive ved en vandflod, som folket blev det i Noas dage, men det ville blive ved hungersnød og ved pest og sværdet.

23 Men det er ved de retfærdiges bønner, at I bliver skånet; se, hvis I derfor vil støde de retfærdige ud fra jer, da vil Herren ikke holde sin hånd tilbage; men i sin rasende vrede vil han komme imod jer; da skal I blive slået med hungersnød og med pest og med sværdet, og tiden er snart for hånden, medmindre I omvender jer.

24 Og se, det skete, at folket blev mere vrede på Amulek, og de råbte og sagde: Denne mand håner vore love, som er retfærdige, og vore vise advokater, som vi har udvalgt.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

25 Men Amulek strakte sin hånd ud og råbte med endnu større kraft til dem og sagde: O, du ugudelige og afsporede slægt, hvorfor har Satan fået så fast et greb om jeres hjerte? Hvorfor vil I hengive jer til ham, så han kan få magt over jer til at forblinde jeres øjne, så I ikke forstår de ord, der bliver talt i overensstemmelse med sandheden af dem?

26 For se, har jeg vidnet imod jeres lov? I forstår ikke; I siger, at jeg har talt imod jeres lov, men det har jeg ikke, men jeg har talt til fordel for jeres lov til jeres fordømmelse.

27 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at grundvolden til dette folks udryddelse er ved at blive lagt ved jeres advokaters og jeres dommers uretfærdighed.

28 Og se, det skete, at da Amulek havde talt disse ord, råbte folket imod ham og sagde: Nu ved vi, at denne mand er Djævelens barn, for han har løjet for os, for han har talt imod vor lov. Og se, han siger, at han ikke har talt imod den.

29 Og videre, han har hånet vore advokater og vore dommere.

30 Og det skete, at advokaterne i hjertet satte sig for, at de ville huske dette imod ham.

31 Og blandt dem var der en, hvis navn var Ze'ezrom. Se, han var den førende med hensyn til at anklage Amulek og Alma, for han var en af de dygtigste blandt dem og havde mange forretninger at gøre blandt folket.

32 Se, det var disse advokaters hensigt at få vinding; og de fik vinding i forhold til deres beskæftigelse.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Almas Bog 11

- 1 Se, der stod i Mosijas lov, at hver mand, der beklædte et dommersæde, eller de, der blev udpeget til dommere, skulle have løn i forhold til den tid, de anvendte til at dømme dem, der blev ført frem for dem for at blive dømt.
- 2 Se, hvis en mand skyldte en anden, og han ikke ville betale det, som han skyldte, blev han indklaget for dommeren; og dommeren udøvede sin myndighed og sendte betjente ud for at få manden ført frem for sig; og han dømte manden i henhold til loven og de beviser, der blev fremført imod ham, og således blev manden tvunget til at betale det, som han skyldte, eller blive frataget sin ejendom eller blive stødt ud af folket som tyv og røver.
- 3 Og dommeren fik løn i forhold til sin tid: en senine guld for en dag eller en senum sølv, hvilket svarer til en senine guld; og det er i henhold til den lov, som var givet.
- 4 Se, dette er navnene på de forskellige stykker af deres guld og deres sølv efter deres værdi. Og navnene blev givet af nefitterne, for de regnede ikke på samme måde som de jøder, der var i Jerusalem; ej heller målte de på samme måde som jøderne; men de ændrede deres beregnings- og målesystem efter folkets ønske og omstændigheder i hver slægt indtil dommerens regerings-tid, hvor de blev stadfæstet af kong Mosija.
- 5 Se, beregningssystemet er således: En senine guld, en seon guld, en shum guld og en limna guld.
- 6 En senum sølv, en amnor sølv, en ezrom sølv og en onti sølv.
- 7 En senum sølv svarede til en senine guld, og hver af disse til et mål byg og også til et mål af enhver anden slags korn.
- 8 Se, værdien af en seon guld var det dobbelte af værdien af en senine.
- 9 Og en shum guld var dobbelt så meget værd som en seon.
- 10 Og en limna guld svarede i værdi til dem alle.
- 11 Og en amnor sølv var lige så meget som to senum.
- 12 Og en ezrom sølv var lige så meget som fire senum.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

13 Og en onti var lige så meget som dem alle.
14 Se, dette er værdien af de mindre størrelser i deres be-
regningssystem:
15 En shiblon er det halve af en senum; derfor svarer en
shiblon til et halvt mål byg.
16 Og en shiblum er en halv shiblon.
17 Og en lea er det halve af en shiblum.
18 Se, dette er deres størrelser efter deres beregnings-
stem.
19 Se, en antion guld svarer til tre shiblon.
20 Se, det var med det ene formål at få vinding – for de
fik deres løn i forhold til deres beskæftigelse – derfor op-
hidsede de folket til optøjer og alle slags uroligheder og
ugudelighed, så de kunne få mere beskæftigelse, så de
kunne få penge i forhold til de søgsmål, der blev ind-
bragt for dem; derfor ophidsede de folket mod Alma og
Amulek.
21 Og denne Ze'ezrom begyndte at udspørge Amulek,
idet han sagde: Vil du svare mig på nogle få spørgsmål,
som jeg vil stille dig? Se, Ze'ezrom var en mand, der var
dygtig i Djævelens anslag, så han kunne ødelægge det,
der var godt; derfor sagde han til Amulek: Vil du svare
på de spørgsmål, som jeg vil stille dig?
22 Og Amulek sagde til ham: Ja, hvis det er i overens-
stemmelse med Herrens Ånd, som er i mig; for jeg vil in-
tet sige, der er i modstrid med Herrens Ånd. Og
Ze'ezrom sagde til ham: Se, her er seks onti sølv, og alle
dem vil jeg give dig, hvis du vil fornægte eksistensen af et
allerhøjeste væsen.
23 Se, Amulek sagde: O, du helvedes barn, hvorfor fri-
ster du mig? Ved du ikke, at de retfærdige ikke giver ef-
ter for sådanne fristelser?
24 Tror du, at der ingen Gud er? Jeg siger dig: Nej, du
ved, at der er en Gud, men du elsker den mammon mere
end ham.
25 Og se, du har løjet for mig foran Gud. Du sagde til
mig: Se, disse seks onti, som er af stor værdi, vil jeg give
dig! mens du havde det i dit hjerte ikke at ville give mig
dem; og det var alene dit ønske, at jeg skulle fornægte
den sande og levende Gud, så du kunne få grund til at
gøre det af med mig. Og se nu, for dette store onde skal
du få din løn.

And an onti was as great as them all.
Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their
reckoning—
A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for
half a measure of barley.
And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.
And a leah is the half of a shiblum.
Now this is their number, according to their reckon-
ing.
Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.
Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because
they received their wages according to their employ,
therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all
manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they
might have more employ, that they might get money ac-
cording to the suits which were brought before them;
therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and
Amulek.
And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, say-
ing: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask
you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the
devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which
was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye an-
swer the questions which I shall put unto you?
And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to
the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say
nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord.
And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties
of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny
the existence of a Supreme Being.
Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt
ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no
such temptations?
Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you,
Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest
that lucre more than him.
And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou
saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of
great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it
in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy
desire that I should deny the true and living God, that
thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now be-
hold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

26 Og Ze'ezrom sagde til ham: Siger du, at der er en sand og levende Gud?

27 Og Amulek sagde: Ja, der er en sand og levende Gud.

28 Se, Ze'ezrom sagde: Er der mere end én Gud?

29 Og han svarede: Nej.

30 Se, Ze'ezrom sagde til ham igen: Hvorledes ved du dette?

31 Og han sagde: En engel har kundgjort det for mig.

32 Og Ze'ezrom sagde igen: Hvem er han, som skal komme? Er det Guds Søn?

33 Og han sagde til ham: Ja.

34 Og Ze'ezrom sagde igen: Skal han frelse sit folk i dets synder? Og Amulek svarede og sagde til ham: Jeg siger dig, at det skal han ikke, for det er umuligt for ham at tilbagekalde sit ord.

35 Se, Ze'ezrom sagde til folket: Se til, at I husker dette, for han sagde, at der kun er én Gud, dog siger han, at Guds Søn skal komme, men at han ikke skal frelse sit folk – som om han havde myndighed til at give Gud befaling.

36 Se, Amulek siger igen til ham: Se, du har løjet, for du siger, at jeg talte, som om jeg havde myndighed til at befale Gud, fordi jeg sagde, at han ikke skal frelse sit folk i deres synder.

37 Og jeg siger dig igen, at han ikke kan frelse dem i deres synder, for jeg kan ikke fornægte hans ord, og han har sagt, at intet urent kan arve Himmeriget; hvorledes kan I derfor blive frelst, medmindre I arver Himmeriget? Derfor kan I ikke blive frelst i jeres synder.

38 Se, Ze'ezrom siger igen til ham: Er Guds Søn selve den evige Fader?

39 Og Amulek sagde til ham: Ja, han er selve den evige Fader til himlen og jorden og alt, som er i dem; han er begyndelsen og enden, den første og den sidste.

40 Og han skal komme til verden for at forløse sit folk; og han skal påtage sig de overtrædelser, der er begået af dem, som tror på hans navn; og det er dem, der skal have evigt liv, og frelse bliver ikke andre til del.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

41 Derfor forbliver de ugudelige, som om der ingen forløsning var blevet foretaget, bortset fra at dødens bånd bliver løst; for se, den dag kommer, da alle skal opstå fra de døde og stå foran Gud og blive dømt efter deres gerninger.

42 Se, der er en død, som kaldes en timelig død; og Kristi død skal løse denne timelige døds bånd, så alle bliver oprejst fra denne timelige død.

43 Ånden og legemet skal atter blive genforenet i deres fuldkomne form; både lem og led skal blive bragt tilbage til deres rette skikkelse, ligesom vi er nu på dette tidspunkt; og vi skal blive ført frem for Gud, idet vi ved det samme, som vi ved nu, og have en klar erindring om al vor skyld.

44 Se, denne genoprettelse skal blive alle til del, både gamle og unge, både trælle og frie, både mænd og kvinder, både de ugudelige og de retfærdige; og der skal end ikke gå så meget som et hår på hovedet tabt; men alt skal blive bragt tilbage til dets fuldkomne skikkelse, som det er nu, eller i legemet, og skal blive bragt frem og stillet til ansvar for Sønnen Kristi og Gud Faderens og den hellige Ånds domstol, de, som er én evig Gud, for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger, om de er gode eller om de er onde.

45 Se nu, jeg har talt til dig om det dødelige legemes død og også om det dødelige legemes opstandelse. Jeg siger dig, at dette dødelige legeme bliver oprejst til et udødeligt legeme, det vil sige fra døden, ja, fra den første død til livet, så de ikke mere kan dø, idet deres ånd bliver forenet med deres legeme for aldrig mere at blive adskilt; og således bliver det hele åndeligt og udødeligt, så de ikke mere kan se forgængelighed.

46 Se, da Amulek havde sagt disse ord, begyndte folket igen at blive forbavset, og også Ze'ezrom begyndte at bæve. Og således sluttede Amuleks ord, eller dette er alt, hvad jeg har skrevet.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Almas Bog 12

- 1 Se, Alma, der så, at Amuleks ord havde bragt Ze'ezrom til tavshed, for han så, at Amulek havde grebet ham i hans løgn og bedrag, der havde til formål at gøre det af med ham, og så, at han begyndte at bæve ved bevidstheden om sin skyld, han åbnede munden og begyndte at tale til ham og stadfæste Amuleks ord og forklare ud over, eller at udfolde skrifterne ud over det, som Amulek havde gjort.
- 2 Se, de ord, som Alma talte til Ze'ezrom, blev hørt af folk rundt omkring; for mængden var stor, og han talte på denne vis:
- 3 Ze'ezrom, du ser, at du er blevet grebet i din løgnagtighed og snuighed, for du har ikke bare løjet for mennesker, men du har løjet for Gud; for se, han kender alle dine tanker, og du ser, at dine tanker bliver gjort kendt for os ved hans Ånd;
- 4 og du ser, at vi ved, at din plan var en meget lumsk plan efter Djævelens lumskhed om at lyve og bedrage dette folk, så du kunne sætte dem op imod os for at håne os og for at støde os ud –
- 5 se, dette var en plan fra din modstander, og han har udøvet sin magt ved dig. Se, jeg ønsker, at du skal huske, at hvad jeg siger til dig, siger jeg til alle.
- 6 Og se, jeg siger til jer alle, at dette var en af Modstanderens snarer, som han har lagt for at fange dette folk, så han kunne bringe jer til at underkaste jer ham, så han kunne omslutte jer med sine lænker, så han kunne lænke jer til evigtvarende undergang i overensstemmelse med hans fangenskabs magt.
- 7 Se, da Alma havde talt disse ord, begyndte Ze'ezrom at bæve endnu mere, for han blev mere og mere overbevist om Guds kraft; og han var også overbevist om, at Alma og Amulek havde kendskab til ham, for han var overbevist om, at de kendte hans hjertes tanker og hensigter; for der var blevet givet dem magt, så de kunne kende dem i overensstemmelse med profetiens ånd.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

8 Og Ze'ezrom begyndte at udsperge dem flittigt, for at han kunne få mere at vide angående Guds rige. Og han sagde til Alma: Hvad betyder det, som Amulek har sagt angående de dødes opstandelse, at alle skal opstå fra de døde, både de retfærdige og de uretfærdige, og blive ført frem for Gud for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger?

9 Og nu begyndte Alma at udlægge dette for ham og sagde: Det er givet mange at forstå Guds hemmeligheder; dog er de blevet underlagt en streng befaling om, at de ikke må fortælle om dem, undtagen i forhold til den del af hans ord, som han skænker menneskenes børn i forhold til den agtpågivenhed og flid, som de viser ham.

10 Og den, der forhærder sit hjerte, han modtager derfor en mindre del af ordet; og den, der ikke forhærder sit hjerte, til ham gives der en større del af ordet, indtil det er givet ham at kende Guds hemmeligheder, indtil han kender dem fuldstændigt.

11 Og de, der forhærder hjertet, til dem gives en mindre del af ordet, indtil de intet kender til hans hemmeligheder; og da bliver de taget til fange af Djævelen og bliver efter hans vilje ført ned til undergang. Se, det er det, der menes med helvedes lænker.

12 Og Amulek har talt tydeligt om døden og om at blive oprejst fra denne dødelighed til en tilstand af udødelighed og om at blive ført frem for Guds domstol for at blive dømt efter vore gerninger.

13 Så hvis vort hjerte er blevet forhærdet, ja, hvis vi har forhærdet vort hjerte mod ordet i en sådan grad, at det ikke er blevet fundet i os, da bliver vor tilstand forfærdelig, for da bliver vi dømt skyldige.

14 For vore ord skal dømme os skyldige, ja, alle vore gerninger skal dømme os skyldige; vi skal ikke blive fundet uplettede; og vore tanker skal også dømme os skyldige, og i denne forfærdelige tilstand skal vi ikke turde se op til vor Gud; og vi ville være glade, hvis vi kunne befale klipperne og bjergene at falde ned over os for at skjule os for hans nærhed.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

15 Men dette kan ikke ske; vi må komme frem og stå foran ham i hans herlighed og i hans kraft og i hans magt, storhed og herredømme og til vor evigtvarende skam erkende, at alle hans straffedomme er retfærdige; at han er retfærdig i alle sine gerninger, og at han er barmhjertig mod menneskenes børn, og at han har al magt til at frelse enhver, der tror på hans navn og frembringer de frugter, som er omvendelse værdig.

16 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, da kommer der en død, ja, en anden død, som er en åndelig død; da er det en tid, da hver den, der dør i sine synder med hensyn til en legemlig død, også skal dø en åndelig død; ja, han skal dø med hensyn til det, der hører til retfærdighed.

17 Da er det tiden, da deres pinsler skal være som en sø af ild og svovl, hvis flammer stiger op for evigt og altid; og da er det tiden, da de skal blive lænket til en evigtvarende undergang i overensstemmelse med Satans magt og fangenskab, idet han har underlagt sig dem efter sin vilje.

18 Da, siger jeg til jer, skal de være, som om der ingen forløsning var blevet foretaget; for de kan i overensstemmelse med Guds retfærdighed ikke blive forløst; og de kan ikke dø, eftersom der ingen forgængelighed er mere.

19 Se, det skete, at da Alma var færdig med at tale disse ord, begyndte folket at blive mere forbavset;

20 men der var en vis Antiona, som var en overordnet hersker blandt dem, som kom frem og sagde til ham: Hvad er det, som du har sagt om, at mennesket skal opstå fra de døde og blive forandret fra denne dødelige til en udødelig tilstand, så sjælen aldrig kan dø?

21 Hvad betyder det skriftsted, som siger, at Gud satte keruber og et flammesværd øst for Edens have, for at vore første forældre ikke skulle gå ind og spise af frugten af livets træ og leve evigt? Og således ser vi, at der ikke var nogen mulighed for, at de skulle leve for evigt.

22 Se, Alma sagde til ham: Det er det, jeg skulle til at forklare. Nu ser vi, at Adam i henhold til Guds ord faldt ved at spise af den forbudne frugt; og således ser vi, at hele menneskeslægten ved hans fald blev et fortabt og faldent folk.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

23 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at hvis det havde været muligt for Adam at have spist af frugten af livets træ på det tidspunkt, så ville der ingen død have været, og ordet ville have været tomt og gjort Gud til en løgner; for han sagde: Hvis du spiser, skal du visselig dø.

24 Og vi ser, at døden kommer over menneskeslægten, ja, den død, der er blevet omtalt af Amulek, hvilken er den timelige død; dog blev der tilstedt mennesket et tidsrum, hvori han kunne omvende sig; derfor blev dette liv en prøvetilstand, en tid til at berede sig til at møde Gud; en tid til at berede sig til den uendelige tilstand, som er blevet omtalt af os, og som er efter de dødes opstandelse.

25 Se, hvis det nu ikke havde været for den forløsningsplan, der var lagt fra verdens grundlæggelse, kunne der ikke have været nogen opstandelse fra de døde; men der blev lagt en forløsningsplan, som skal tilvejebringe de dødes opstandelse, hvorom der er blevet talt.

26 Og se nu, hvis det havde været muligt, at vore første forældre kunne være gået hen og have spist af livets træ, ville de have været elendige for evigt, for de ville ingen forberedende tilstand have haft; og derfor ville forløsningsplanen være blevet forpurret, og Guds ord ville have været tomt, da det ingen virkning ville have haft.

27 Men se, det gik ikke sådan; men det blev bestemt for menneskene, at de skulle dø; og efter døden skulle de stilles for dommen, ja, den selv samme dom, som vi har talt om, som er enden.

28 Og efter at Gud havde bestemt, at dette skulle ske for mennesket, se, da så han, at det var nødvendigt, at mennesket skulle kende til det, som han havde bestemt for dem.

29 Derfor sendte han engle til at tale til dem, hvilket gjorde, at menneskene så noget af hans herlighed.

30 Og de begyndte fra den tid af at påkalde hans navn; derfor talte Gud til menneskene og kundgjorde dem forløsningsplanen, som havde været beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse, og denne kundgjorde han for dem i forhold til deres tro og omvendelse og deres hellige gerninger.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

31 Derfor gav han befalinger til menneskene, fordi de først havde overtrådt de første befalinger med hensyn til det, der var timeligt, og var blevet som guder og kendte godt fra ondt og havde anbragt sig i en tilstand, hvor de kunne handle, eller var blevet anbragt i en tilstand, hvor de kunne handle efter deres vilje og behag, om de ville gøre ondt eller gøre godt –

32 derfor gav Gud dem befalinger, efter at have kundgjort forløsningsplanen for dem, for at de ikke skulle gøre ondt, idet straffen derfor var den anden død, som var en evigtvarende død med hensyn til det, der hører til retfærdighed; for over sådanne kunne forløsningsplanen ingen magt have; for retfærdighedens gerninger kunne i overensstemmelse med Guds allerstørste godhed ikke blive tilintetgjort.

33 Men Gud kaldte på menneskene i sin Søns navn (idet det var den forløsningsplan, der var blevet lagt) og sagde: Hvis I vil omvende jer og ikke forhærde hjertet, da vil jeg have barmhjertighed med jer ved min enbårne Søn.

34 Hver den, der derfor omvender sig og ikke forhærder sit hjerte, han skal have krav på barmhjertighed ved min enbårne Søn til forladelse for sine synder; og disse skal gå ind til min hvile.

35 Og hver den, der forhærder sit hjerte og gør misgerninger, se, jeg sværger i min vrede, at han ikke skal gå ind til min hvile.

36 Og se, mine brødre, se, jeg siger jer, at hvis I forhærder hjertet, skal I ikke gå ind til Herrens hvile; derfor opildner jeres misgerninger ham, så han sender sin vrede ned over jer, ligesom i det første oprør, ja, ifølge hans ord i det sidste oprør, såvel som i det første, til jeres sjæls evigtvarende undergang; altså ifølge hans ord til den sidste død såvel som til den første.

37 Og se, mine brødre, eftersom vi ved dette, og det er sandt, lad os da omvende os og ikke forhærde vort hjerte, så vi ikke opildner Herren vor Gud og bringer hans vrede ned over os i disse, hans næste befalinger, som han har givet os; men lad os gå ind til Guds hvile, som er beredt i overensstemmelse med hans ord.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Almas Bog 13

- 1 Og videre, mine brødre, vil jeg lede jeres tanker frem til den tid, da Gud Herren gav disse befalinger til sine børn; og jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at Gud Herren ordinerede præster efter sin hellige orden, som var efter hans Søns orden, for at lære folket dem.
- 2 Og disse præster blev ordineret efter hans Søns orden på en måde, så folk derved kunne vide, på hvilken måde de skulle se frem til hans Søn for at få forløsning.
- 3 Og dette er den måde, hvorpå de blev ordineret – de blev kaldet og beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse i overensstemmelse med Guds forudviden som følge af deres overordentlig store tro og gode gerninger; til at begynde med blev de overladt til at vælge godt eller ondt; derfor er de, eftersom de valgte det gode og udøvede overordentlig stor tro, kaldet med en hellig kaldelse, ja, med den hellige kaldelse, som var beredt samtidig med og i henhold til en forberedt forløsning for sådanne.
- 4 Og således er de blevet kaldet til dette hellige kald som følge af deres tro, mens andre forkastede Guds Ånd som følge af deres hjertes hårdhed og deres sinds blindhed, mens de, hvis det ikke havde været for dette, kunne have haft et lige så stort privilegium som deres brødre.
- 5 Eller kort sagt, til at begynde med var de på samme stade som deres brødre; og således blev dette hellige kald beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse for sådanne, som ikke ville forhærde hjertet, og det er i og ved den enbårne Søns forsoning, han som blev beredt –
- 6 og således blev de kaldet med denne hellige kaldelse og ordineret til det høje præstedømme efter Guds hellige orden for at lære menneskenes børn hans befalinger, så de også kunne gå ind til hans hvile –
- 7 dette høje præstedømme er efter hans Søns orden, hvilken orden var til fra verdens grundlæggelse eller med andre ord er uden dages begyndelse eller års ende og er beredt fra evighed til al evighed ifølge hans forudviden om alt –

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

8 se, de blev ordineret på denne måde – de blev kaldet med en hellig kaldelse og ordineret med en hellig ordinance og påtog sig det høje præstedømme efter den hellige orden, hvilket kald og hvilken ordinance og hvilket høje præstedømme er uden begyndelse eller ende –

9 således bliver de højpræster for evigt af Sønnens, Faderens Enbårnes, orden, han, som er uden dages begyndelse eller års ende, og som er fuld af nåde, upartiskhed og sandhed. Og således er det. Amen.

10 Se, som jeg sagde angående denne hellige orden eller dette høje præstedømme, så var der mange, der blev ordineret og blev højpræster for Gud; og det var som følge af deres overordentlig store tro og omvendelse og deres retfærdighed for Gud, for de valgte at omvende sig og øve retfærdighed frem for at fortabes.

11 Derfor blev de kaldet efter denne hellige orden og blev helliggjort, og deres klæder blev vasket hvide ved Lammets blod.

12 Se, efter at være blevet helliggjort ved Helligånden og have fået deres klæder gjort hvide, så de var rene og uplettede for Gud, kunne de ikke se på synd uden at føle afsky; og der var mange, overordentlig mange, som blev gjort rene og gik ind til Herren deres Guds hvile.

13 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker, at I skal ydmyge jer for Gud og frembringe de frugter, som er omvendelsen værdig, så I også kan gå ind til denne hvile.

14 Ja, ydmyg jer ligesom folk i Melkisedeks dage, han, der også var højpræst af den samme orden, som jeg har talt om, og som også påtog sig det høje præstedømme for evigt.

15 Og det var den selv samme Melkisedek, til hvem Abraham betalte tiende; ja, selv vor fader Abraham betalte tiende bestående af en tiendedel af alt, hvad han ejede.

16 Se, disse ordinancer blev givet på denne måde, for at folk derved kunne se frem til Guds Søn, idet den var et sindbillede på hans orden, eller var hans orden; og dette for at de kunne se frem til ham for at få forladelse for deres synder, så de kunne gå ind til Herrens hvile.

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

17 Se, denne Melkisedek var konge over Salems land; og hans folk havde vokset sig stærke i synd og vederstyggelighed; ja, de var alle faret vild, de var fulde af al slags ugudelighed;

18 men Melkisedek, som havde udøvet mægtig tro og fået embede i det høje præstedømme efter Guds hellige orden, prædikede omvendelse for sit folk. Og se, de omvendte sig; og Melkisedek skabte fred i landet i sine dage; derfor blev han kaldt fredsfyrsten, for han var konge af Salem; og han regerede under sin far.

19 Se, der var mange før ham, og der var også mange efter, men ingen var større, ham har de derfor især nævnt.

20 Se, jeg behøver ikke at forklare mere om sagen; hvad jeg har sagt skulle være tilstrækkeligt. Se, skrifterne ligger foran jer; hvis I fordrejer dem, bliver det til jeres egen undergang.

21 Og se, det skete, at da Alma havde sagt disse ord til dem, strakte han hånden ud mod dem og råbte med mægtig røst, idet han sagde: Nu er tiden til at omvende sig, for frelsens dag nærmer sig;

22 ja, og Herrens røst kundgør det ved engles mund for alle folkeslag, ja, kundgør det, så de kan få glædelige tidender om stor glæde; ja, og han lader disse glædelige tidender lyde til hele sit folk, ja, endog til dem, der er spredt vidt omkring på jordens overflade; derfor er de kommet til os.

23 Og de er blevet kundgjort for os i tydelige vendinger, så vi kan forstå, så vi ikke kan tage fejl, og dette fordi vi er vandrere i et fremmed land; derfor er vi så rigt begunstigede, for vi får disse glædelige tidender kundgjort for os i alle dele af vor vingård.

24 For se, engle kundgør det på dette tidspunkt for mange i vort land; og dette sker med det formål at berede menneskenes børns hjerte til at modtage hans ord på tidspunktet for hans komme i sin herlighed.

25 Og nu venter vi kun på at høre de glade nyheder om hans komme blive kundgjort for os ved engles mund, for tiden kommer, vi ved ikke hvor snart. Gud give, at det bliver i min tid; men hvad enten det sker før eller senere, vil jeg fryde mig derved.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

26 Og det skal blive kundgjort for retfærdige og hellige mænd ved engles mund på den tid, da han kommer, så vore fædres ord må blive opfyldt, hvad angår det, som de har talt om ham, hvilket var i overensstemmelse med profetiens ånd, som var i dem.

27 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker af mit hjertes inderste, ja, med så stor ængstelse, at det endog volder smerte, at I vil lytte til mine ord og kaste jeres synder fra jer og ikke udsætte jeres omvendelses dag;

28 men at I vil ydmyge jer for Herren og påkalde hans hellige navn og våge og bede bestandigt, så I ikke må blive fristet mere end det, som I kan bære, og således blive ledet af den hellige Ånd, idet I bliver ydmyge, sagtmødige, underdanige, tålmodige, fulde af kærlighed og al langmodighed,

29 idet I har tro på Herren, idet I har et håb om, at I vil få evigt liv, idet I altid har Guds kærlighed i hjertet, så I kan blive løftet op på den yderste dag og gå ind til hans hvile.

30 Og måtte Herren skænke jer omvendelse, så I ikke nedkalder hans vrede over jer, så I ikke bliver bundet af helvedes lænker, så I ikke lider den anden død.

31 Og Alma talte mange flere ord til folket, som ikke er skrevet i denne bog.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Almas Bog 14

- 1 Og det skete, efter at han var færdig med at tale til folket, at mange troede på hans ord og begyndte at omvende sig og at granske skrifterne.
- 2 Men størstedelen af dem nærede ønske om, at de kunne slå Alma og Amulek ihjel, for de var vrede på Alma på grund af ligefremheden af hans ord til Ze'ezrom; og de sagde også, at Amulek havde løjet for dem og havde hånet deres lov og også deres advokater og dommere.
- 3 Og de var også vrede på Alma og Amulek; og fordi de havde vidnet så ligefremt om deres ugudelighed, forsøgte de at gøre det af med dem i hemmelighed.
- 4 Men det skete, at de ikke gjorde det; men de greb dem og bandt dem med stærke reb og førte dem frem for landets overdommer.
- 5 Og folket stod frem og vidnede imod dem – og de aflagde vidnesbyrd om, at de havde hånet loven og deres advokater og landets dommere og også alle folk, som var i landet, og også havde aflagt vidnesbyrd om, at der kun var én Gud, og at han ville sende sin Søn ned blandt menneskene, men at han ikke skulle frelse dem; og meget sådant aflagde folket vidnesbyrd om imod Alma og Amulek. Se, dette blev gjort over for landets overdommer.
- 6 Og det skete, at Ze'ezrom var forbavset over de ord, som var blevet talt, og han var også klar over den blindhed i sindet, som han ved sine løgnagtige ord havde forårsaget blandt folket; og hans sjæl begyndte at blive oprevet ved bevidstheden om sin skyld; ja, han begyndte at blive omsluttet af helvedes kvaler.
- 7 Og det skete, at han begyndte at råbe til folket, idet han sagde: Se, jeg er skyldig, og disse mænd er uplettede for Gud. Og han begyndte fra dette tidspunkt at tale deres sag; men de hånede ham, idet de sagde: Er du også besat af Djævelen? Og de spyttede på ham og stødte ham ud fra sig og ligeså alle dem, der troede på de ord, der var blevet talt af Alma og Amulek; og de stødte dem ud og sendte mænd ud for at kaste sten efter dem.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

8 Og de bragte deres hustruer og børn sammen, og hver den, der troede eller var blevet oplært til at tro på Guds ord, foranledigede de, at de skulle kastes i ilden; og de hentede også deres optegnelser, som indeholdt de hellige skrifter, og kastede også dem i ilden, så de kunne blive brændt op og tilintetgjort af ilden.

9 Og det skete, at de greb Alma og Amulek og bragte dem hen til martyrstedet, for at de kunne være vidne til drabet på dem, der blev fortæret af ild.

10 Og da Amulek så de smerter, som kvinderne og børnene, der blev fortæret af ilden, led, led han også smerter, og han sagde til Alma: Hvorledes kan vi være vidne til dette forfærdelige syn? Lad os derfor strække vore hænder ud og udøve Guds kraft, som er i os, og redde dem fra flammerne.

11 Men Alma sagde til ham: Ånden driver mig til ikke at strække min hånd ud; for se, Herren tager dem op til sig i herlighed; og han tillader, at de kan gøre dette, eller at folket kan gøre dette mod dem i overensstemmelse med deres hjertes hårdhed, for at de straffedomme, som han vil udøve over dem i sin vrede, må være retfærdige; og de uskyldiges blod skal stå som et vidne mod dem, ja, og råbe indtrængende imod dem på den yderste dag.

12 Se, Amulek sagde til Alma: Se, måske vil de også brænde os.

13 Og Alma sagde: Lad det ske efter Herrens vilje. Men se, vor gerning er ikke fuldført, derfor brænder de os ikke.

14 Se, det skete, at da ligene af dem, der var blevet kastet i ilden, var fortæret og også optegnelserne, der blev kastet ind sammen med dem, kom landets overdommer og stod foran Alma og Amulek, mens de var bundet; og han slog dem på kinderne med sin hånd, og sagde til dem: Efter det I har set, vil I så igen prædike for dette folk, at de skal blive kastet i en sø af ild og svovl?

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

15 Se, I ser, at I ikke havde magt til at redde dem, der var blevet kastet i ilden; ej heller har Gud frelst dem, fordi de var af jeres tro. Og dommeren slog dem igen på kinderne og spurgte: Hvad har I selv at sige?

16 Se, denne dommer var af Nehors orden og tro, han der slog Gideon ihjel.

17 Og det skete, at Alma og Amulek ingenting svarede ham; og han slog dem igen og overgav dem til betjentene, for at de kunne blive kastet i fængsel.

18 Og da de havde været kastet i fængsel i tre dage, kom der mange advokater og dommere og præster og lærere, som var af Nehors bekendelse; og de kom ind i fængslet for at tale med dem, og de udspurgte dem om mange ord, men de svarede dem ingenting.

19 Og det skete, at dommeren stod foran dem og sagde: Hvorfor besvarer I ikke disse menneskers ord? Ved I ikke, at jeg har magt til at overgive jer til flammerne? Og han befalede dem at tale, men de svarede ingenting.

20 Og det skete, at de forlod dem og gik deres vej, men kom igen den næste dag; og dommeren slog dem også igen på kinderne. Og mange andre kom også hen og slog dem, idet de sagde: Vil I stå frem igen og dømme dette folk og fordømme vor lov? Hvis I har så stor magt, hvorfor udfrier I så ikke jer selv?

21 Og meget sådant sagde de til dem, idet de skar tænder af dem og spyttede på dem og sagde: Hvordan vil vi se ud, når vi bliver fordømt?

22 Og meget sådant, ja, al slags sådant sagde de til dem; og således spottede de dem i mange dage. Og de nægtede dem mad, for at de skulle sulte, og vand, for at de skulle tørste; og de tog også deres tøj fra dem, så de var nøgne; og således var de bundet med stærke reb og spærret inde i fængslet.

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

23 Og det skete, efter at de således havde lidt i mange dage (og det var på den tolvte dag i den tiende måned i det tiende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk), at overdommeren over Ammonihahs land og mange af deres lærere og deres advokater gik ind i fængslet, hvor Alma og Amulek var bundet med reb.

24 Og overdommeren stod foran dem og slog dem igen og sagde til dem: Hvis I har Guds kraft, så udfri jer fra disse bånd, og da vil vi tro, at Herren vil udrydde dette folk i overensstemmelse med jeres ord.

25 Og det skete, at de alle, lige til den sidste, gik hen og slog dem, idet de sagde de samme ord; og da den sidste havde talt til dem, kom Guds kraft over Alma og Amulek, og de rejste sig og stod på benene.

26 Og Alma råbte, idet han sagde: Hvor længe skal vi lide disse store trængsler, o Herre? O Herre, giv os styrke i forhold til vor tro, som er på Kristus, ja, til udfrielse! Og de sønderrev de reb, som de var bundet med; og da folk så dette, begyndte de at flygte, for frygten for udryddelse var kommet over dem.

27 Og det skete, at deres frygt var så stor, at de faldt til jorden og ikke nåede fængslets yderdør; og jorden rystede kraftigt, og fængslets mure blev brudt i to, så de faldt til jorden; og overdommeren og advokaterne og præsterne og lærerne, som slog Alma og Amulek, blev slået ihjel ved deres fald.

28 Og Alma og Amulek kom ud af fængslet, og de var ikke kommet til skade, for Herren havde givet dem kraft i forhold til deres tro, som var på Kristus. Og de kom straks ud af fængslet; og de var løst af deres bånd, og fængslet var styrtet til jorden, og hver eneste sjæl inden for dets mure, bortset fra Alma og Amulek, var blevet slået ihjel; og de gik straks ind til byen.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

29 Se, folket, der havde hørt en stor larm, kom løbende i mængder for at finde årsagen til den; og da de så Alma og Amulek komme ud af fængslet og så, at dets mure var styrtet til jorden, blev de slået af stor frygt og flygtede bort fra Alma og Amuleks nærhed, ligesom en ged flygter med sine kid fra to løver; og således flygtede de fra Alma og Amuleks nærhed.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Almas Bog 15

- 1 Og det skete, at Alma og Amulek blev befalet at drage ud af den by; og de drog ud og kom ud til Sidoms land, og se, dér fandt de alle de folk, der var draget ud af Ammonihahs land, og som var blevet stødt ud og stenet, fordi de troede på Almas ord.
- 2 Og de fortalte dem alt, hvad der var hændt deres hustruer og børn og også om dem selv og om deres kraft til udfrielse.
- 3 Og Ze'ezrom lå også syg ved Sidom med en brændende feber, som var forårsaget af de store anfægtelser i hans sind som følge af hans ugudelighed; for han antog, at Alma og Amulek ikke var til mere; og han antog, at de var blevet slået ihjel på grund af hans syndighed. Og denne store synd og hans mange andre synder rev op i hans sind, indtil det blev overordentlig plaget, eftersom han ikke blev udfriet; derfor begyndte han at svides af en brændende hede.
- 4 Se, da han hørte, at Alma og Amulek var i Sidoms land, begyndte hans hjerte at fatte mod; og han sendte straks en meddelelse til dem, hvori han ønskede af dem, at de skulle komme til ham.
- 5 Og det skete, at de straks tog af sted i lydighed mod den meddelelse, som han havde sendt dem; og de gik ind i huset til Ze'ezrom; og de fandt ham i sengen, syg og meget svag med en brændende feber, og hans sind var også overordentlig plaget på grund af hans syndighed; og da han så dem, rakte han hånden frem og bad dem indtrængende om, at de ville helbrede ham.
- 6 Og det skete, at Alma sagde til ham, idet han tog ham ved hånden: Tror du på Kristi kraft til frelse?
- 7 Og han svarede og sagde: Ja, jeg tror alle de ord, som du har sagt.
- 8 Og Alma sagde: Hvis du tror på Kristi forløsning, kan du blive helbredt.
- 9 Og han sagde: Ja, jeg tror i overensstemmelse med dine ord.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

10 Og da anrøbte Alma Herren og sagde: O Herre vor Gud, hav barmhjertighed med denne mand, og helbred ham i forhold til hans tro, som er på Kristus.

11 Og da Alma havde sagt disse ord, sprang Ze'ezrom op og begyndte at gå; og dette skete til hele folkets store forbavselse; og efterretningen om dette gik ud over hele Sidoms land.

12 Og Alma døbte Ze'ezrom til Herren; og han begyndte fra den tid af at prædike for folket.

13 Og Alma oprettede en menighed i Sidoms land og indviede præster og lærere i landet til at døbe til Herren hver den, som nærrede ønske om at blive døbt.

14 Og det skete, at det var mange; for de flokkedes ind fra hele egnen rundt om Sidom og blev døbt.

15 Men hvad angår folket i Ammonihahs land, så forblev de et hårdhjertet og stivnakket folk; og de omvendte sig ikke fra deres synder, idet de tilskrev al Almas og Amuleks kraft Djævelen; for de var af Nehors bekendelse og troede ikke på omvendelse fra deres synder.

16 Og det skete, at Alma og Amulek – Amulek, der havde fortaget alt sit guld og sølv og sine kostbarheder, som var i Ammonihahs land, for Guds ords skyld, og som var blevet afvist af dem, der engang var hans venner, og også af sin far og sine slægtninge;

17 derfor, efter at Alma havde oprettet menigheden i Sidom og havde set en omfattende tilbageholdenhed, ja, havde set, at folket var blevet tilbageholdende med hensyn til deres hjertes stolthed og begyndte at ydmyge sig for Gud og begyndte at samle sig i deres helligdomme for at tilbede Gud foran alteret, idet de bestandigt vågede og bad, for at de kunne blive udfriet fra Satan og fra død og fra undergang –

18 se, som jeg sagde, Alma, der havde set alt dette, han tog derfor Amulek med sig og kom over til Zarahemlas land, og han tog ham med til sit eget hus og tog sig af ham i hans modgang og styrkede ham i Herren.

19 Og således endte det tiende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiff-necked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Almas Bog 16

- 1 Og det skete i det ellefte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk på den femte dag i den anden måned, efter at der havde været megen fred i Zarahemlas land og ikke havde været nogen krige eller stridigheder i et vist antal år lige til den femte dag i den anden måned i det ellefte år, at der hørtes et krigsråb ud over hele landet.
- 2 For se, lamanitternes hære var kommet ind fra den side af landet, der vender mod ødemarken, ind over grænserne, ja, endog ind i byen Ammonihah, og begyndte at slå folket ihjel og ødelægge byen.
- 3 Og se, det skete, at før nefitterne kunne mønstre en hær, der var tilstrækkelig til at drive dem ud af landet, havde de slået de folk ihjel, som var i byen Ammonihah og også nogle omkring grænsen til Noa og havde ført andre ud i ødemarken som fanger.
- 4 Se, det skete, at nefitterne nærrede ønske om at få dem tilbage, som var blevet ført ud i ødemarken som fanger.
- 5 Derfor gik han, der var blevet udpeget til øverste anfører for nefitternes hære (og hans navn var Zoram, og han havde to sønner, Lehi og Aha) – se, Zoram og hans to sønner, som vidste, at Alma var højpræst over kirken, og som havde hørt, at han havde profetiens ånd, de gik derfor til ham og ønskede af ham at få at vide, hvor Herren ville have, at de skulle drage hen i ødemarken for at lede efter deres brødre, som var blevet taget til fange af lamanitterne.
- 6 Og det skete, at Alma adspurgte Herren angående sagen. Og Alma vendte tilbage og sagde til dem: Se, lamanitterne vil krydse floden Sidon i den sydlige ødemark langt oppe på den anden side af grænsen til Mantis land. Og se, dér skal I møde dem på østsiden af floden Sidon, og dér vil Herren overgive dine brødre, som er blevet taget til fange af lamanitterne, til dig.
- 7 Og det skete, at Zoram og hans sønner gik over floden Sidon med deres hære og marcherede langt over på den anden side af grænsen til Manti ud i den sydlige ødemark, som lå på østsiden af floden Sidon.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

8 Og de faldt over lamanitternes hære, og lamanitterne blev spredt og drevet ud i ødemarken; og de tog deres brødre, som var blevet taget til fange af lamanitterne, og der var ikke gået én sjæl tabt af dem, der var blevet taget til fange. Og de blev ført tilbage af deres brødre for at tage deres egne lande i besiddelse.

9 Og således endte dommernes ellefte år med, at lamanitterne var blevet drevet ud af landet, og at Ammonihahs folk blev udryddet; ja, hver eneste levende sjæl blandt ammonihahitterne blev slået ihjel, og ødelagt blev også deres store by, som de sagde, at Gud ikke kunne ødelægge på grund af dens magt.

10 Men se, på én dag blev den lagt øde, og ligene blev sønderrevet af hunde og ødemarkens vilde rovdyr.

11 Efter mange dage blev deres døde kroppe alligevel dynget op på jordens overflade, og de blev dækket med et tyndt lag jord. Og se, stanken deraf var så stærk, at folket i mange år ikke drog ind for at tage Ammonihahs land i besiddelse. Og det blev kaldt for Nehorernes Øde, for de, der blev slået ihjel, var af Nehors bekendelse, og deres lande forblev øde.

12 Og lamanitterne drog ikke i krig mod nefitterne igen før i det fjortende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk. Og således havde Nefis folk vedvarende fred i tre år i hele landet.

13 Og Alma og Amulek drog ud og prædikede omvendelse for folket i deres templer og i deres helligdomme og også i deres synagoger, som var bygget på jødernes vis.

14 Og til så mange, som ville høre deres ord, gav de bestandig Guds ord uden at gøre forskel på folk.

15 Og således drog Alma og Amulek ud og også mange andre, som var blevet udvalgt til arbejdet, for at prædike ordet overalt i hele landet. Og kirken blev oprettet overalt i landet, i hele egnen rundt omkring, blandt hele det nefitiske folk.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

16 Og der fandtes ingen ulighed mellem dem; Herren udøste sin Ånd over hele landets overflade for at berede menneskenes børns sind, eller for at berede deres hjerte, på at modtage det ord, som ville blive forkyndt blandt dem på den tid, da han skulle komme –

17 så de ikke ville være forhærdede mod ordet, så de ikke ville være ikke-troende og fortsætte mod undergang, men så de ville modtage ordet med glæde og som en gren blive indpodet på det sande vintræ, så de kunne gå ind til Herren deres Guds hvile.

18 Se, de præster, der drog ud blandt folket, prædikede imod al løgn og bedrageri og misundelse og stridigheder og ondsindethed og hån og tyveri, røveri, plyndring, mord, ægteskabsbrud og al slags uterlighed, idet de råbte, at dette ikke burde finde sted –

19 og foreholdt dem det, der snarlig skulle ske, ja, foreholdt dem Guds Søns komme, hans lidelse og død og også de dødes opstandelse.

20 Og mange blandt folket spurgte med hensyn til det sted, hvor Guds Søn skulle komme; og de fik forklaret, at han ville vise sig for dem efter sin opstandelse; og det hørte folket med stor fryd og glæde.

21 Og se, efter at kirken var blevet oprettet overalt i hele landet – idet den havde vundet sejr over Djævelen, og Guds ord blev prædikeret i dets renhed i hele landet, og Herren udøste sine velsignelser over folket – endte således det fjortende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

En beretning om Mosijas sønner, som frasagde sig deres ret til riget for Guds ords skyld og drog op til Nefis land for at prædike for lamanitterne; deres lidelser og udfrielse – ifølge Almas optegnelse.

Almas Bog 17

- 1 Og se, det skete, at mens Alma var på vej fra Gideons land sydpå i retning mod Mantis land, se, da mødte han til sin forbavselse Mosijas sønner, der var på vej til Zarahemlas land.
- 2 Se, disse, Mosijas sønner, var sammen med Alma på det tidspunkt, da englen for første gang viste sig for ham; derfor frydede Alma sig overordentlig ved at se sine brødre; og hvad der bidrog mere til hans glæde var, at de stadig var hans brødre i Herren; ja, og de havde vokset sig stærke i kundskaben om sandheden, for de var mænd med en sund forståelse, og de havde gransket skrifterne flittigt, for at de kunne kende Guds ord.
- 3 Men det er ikke alt; de havde hengivet sig til megen bøn og faste, derfor havde de profetiens ånd og åbenbarelens ånd, og når de underviste, underviste de med magt og myndighed fra Gud.
- 4 Og de havde undervist i Guds ord i et tidsrum af fjorten år blandt lamanitterne, og det var i høj grad lykkedes dem at bringe mange til kundskab om sandheden; ja, ved deres ords kraft blev mange ført til Guds alter for at påkalde hans navn og bekende deres synder for ham.
- 5 Se, dette er de omstændigheder, de var underkastet på deres rejser, for de havde mange trængsler; de led meget både på legeme og på sjæl, såsom sult, tørst og udmattelse og også store åndelige anstrengelser.
- 6 Se, dette er deres rejser: Da de havde taget afsked med deres far, Mosija, i dommernes første år efter at have frasagt sig riget, som deres far nærede ønske om at overdrage dem, og det var også folkets vilje,

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

- 7 rejste de alligevel fra Zarahemlas land og tog deres sværd og deres spyd og deres buer og deres pile og deres slynger med sig; og dette gjorde de, for at de kunne sørge for føde til sig selv, mens de var i ødemarken.
- 8 Og således drog de ud i ødemarken sammen med dem, som de havde udvalgt, for at drage op til Nefis land for at prædike Guds ord for lamanitterne.
- 9 Og det skete, at de rejste i ødemarken i mange dage, og de fastede meget og bad meget om, at Herren ville skænke dem en del af sin Ånd til at ledsage dem og forblive hos dem, så de kunne blive et redskab i Guds hænder til, hvis det var muligt, at bringe deres brødre, lamanitterne, til kundskab om sandheden, til kundskab om tarveligheden af deres fædres overleveringer, som ikke var rigtige.
- 10 Og det skete, at Herren besøgte dem med sin Ånd og sagde til dem: Vær trøstet! og de blev trøstet.
- 11 Og Herren sagde også til dem: Drag ud blandt lamanitterne, jeres brødre, og stadfæst mit ord; dog skal I være tålmodige i langmodighed og trængsler, så I kan være gode eksempler for dem i mig, og jeg vil gøre jer til et redskab i mine hænder til frelse for mange sjæle.
- 12 Og det skete, at Mosijas sønner og de, der var med dem, fattede mod i hjertet til at drage ud til lamanitterne for at kundgøre Guds ord for dem.
- 13 Og det skete, da de var kommet til grænsen til lamaniternes land, at de skiltes og tog af sted, den ene fra den anden, idet de stolede på Herren, at de skulle mødes igen efter afslutningen på deres høst, for de antog, at det var et stort arbejde, de havde påtaget sig.

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

- 14 Og det var visselig stort, for de havde påtaget sig at prædike Guds ord for et vildt og forhærdet og grusomt folk, et folk, der frydede sig ved at myrde nefitterne og ved at berøve og plyndre dem; og de lod hjertet blive op-
taget af rigdom eller af guld og sølv og kostbare stene; og de forsøgte at få fat i disse ting ved at myrde og plyndre, så de ikke skulle arbejde for dem med deres egne hænder.
- 15 Således var de et meget ugideligt folk, hvoraf mange tilbad afguder, og Guds forbandelse var faldet på dem på grund af deres fædres overleveringer; alligevel var Herrens løfter udstrakt til dem på betingelse af omvendelse.
- 16 Dette var derfor grunden til, at Mosijas sønner havde påtaget sig dette arbejde, at de måske kunne bringe dem til omvendelse, at de måske kunne bringe dem til kundskab om forløsningsplanen.
- 17 Derfor skiltes de, den ene fra den anden, og drog ud blandt dem, hver mand for sig i overensstemmelse med Guds ord og magt, som blev givet ham.
- 18 Se, Ammon var lederen for dem, eller rettere han tog sig af dem; og han forlod dem efter at have velsignet dem i henhold til deres forskellige opgaver og have givet dem Guds ord eller tog sig af dem før sin afrejse; og således begav de sig af sted til de forskellige dele af landet.
- 19 Og Ammon tog til Ismaels land, det land, der var opkaldt efter Ismaels sønner, der også blev lamanitter.
- 20 Og da Ammon kom ind i Ismaels land, greb lamanitterne ham og bandt ham, som det var deres skik at binde alle de nefitter, der faldt i deres hænder, og føre dem frem for kongen; og således blev det overladt til kongens behag at slå dem ihjel eller at holde dem i fangenskab eller at kaste dem i fængsel eller at vise dem ud af landet efter hans vilje og behag.
- 21 Og således blev Ammon ført frem for den konge, som var over Ismaels land; og hans navn var Lamoni, og han var efterkommer af Ismael.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

22 Og kongen spurgte Ammon, om det var hans ønske at bo i landet blandt lamanitterne, eller blandt hans folk.

23 Og Ammon sagde til ham: Ja, jeg ønsker at bo blandt dette folk i nogen tid, ja, måske indtil den dag jeg dør.

24 Og det skete, at kong Lamoni fandt stor behag i Ammon og foranledigede, at hans bånd skulle løses, og han ville, at Ammon skulle tage en af hans døtre til hustru.

25 Men Ammon sagde til ham: Nej, men jeg vil være din tjener. Derfor blev Ammon tjener for kong Lamoni. Og det skete, at han sammen med andre tjenere blev sat til at vogte Lamonis flokke i overensstemmelse med lamaniternes skik.

26 Og efter at han havde været i kongens tjeneste i tre dage, og mens han sammen med de lamanitiske tjenere drog af sted med deres flokke til stedet med vand, som hed Sebus' vand, og alle lamanitterne driver deres flokke derhen, for at de kan få vand –

27 mens Ammon og kongens tjenere således drev deres flokke frem til dette sted med vand, se, da stod der et vist antal af de lamanitter, som havde været henne for at vande deres flokke, og spredte Ammons og kongens tjeneres flokke, og de spredte dem, således at de flygtede i mange retninger.

28 Se, kongens tjenere begyndte at murre, idet de sagde: Nu slår kongen os ihjel, ligesom han har gjort med vore brødre, fordi deres flokke blev spredt ved disse menneskers ondskabsfuldhed. Og de begyndte at græde overordentlig meget, mens de sagde: Se, vore flokke er allerede spredt.

29 Se, de græd af frygt for at blive slået ihjel. Se, da Ammon så det, svulmede hjertet i ham af glæde, for, sagde han, jeg vil vise min magt for mine medtjenere, eller den magt, som er i mig, ved at bringe disse flokke tilbage til kongen, så jeg kan vinde disse mine medtjeneres hjerte, så jeg kan få dem til at tro på mine ord.

30 Og se, dette var Ammons tanker, da han så trængslerne hos dem, som han kaldte sine brødre.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

31 Og det skete, at han opmuntrede dem med sine ord, idet han sagde: Mine brødre, vær ved godt mod, og lad os gå ud og lede efter flokkene, og vi vil samle dem sammen og føre dem tilbage til stedet med vand; og således vil vi bevare flokkene for kongen, og han vil ikke slå os ihjel.

32 Og det skete, at de gik ud og ledte efter flokkene, og de fulgte Ammon, og de styrtede af sted med stor raskhed og indhentede kongens flokke og samlede dem igen ved stedet med vand.

33 Og disse mænd stod der igen for at sprede deres flokke; men Ammon sagde til sine brødre: Omring flokkene, så de ikke flygter, så går jeg hen og strider mod disse mænd, som spreder vore flokke.

34 Derfor gjorde de, som Ammon befalede dem, og han gik hen og stod frem for at stride mod dem, som stod ved Sebus' vande; og de var ikke få i antal.

35 Derfor frygtede de ikke Ammon, for de troede, at én af deres mænd kunne dræbe ham efter deres behag, for de vidste ikke, at Herren havde lovet Mosija, at han ville udfri hans sønner af deres hænder, ej heller kendte de noget til Herren, derfor frydede de sig ved deres brøders undergang, og af den årsag stod de dér for at sprede kongens flokke.

36 Men Ammon stod frem og begyndte at kaste sten efter dem med sin slynge, ja, med mægtig kraft slyngede han sten ind mellem dem; og således slog han et vist antal af dem ihjel, således at de begyndte at blive forbavset over hans kraft; alligevel var de vrede på ham på grund af de slagte blandt deres brødre, og de var fast besluttede på, at han skulle falde; da de derfor så, at de ikke kunne ramme ham med deres sten, gik de frem med køller for at slå ham ihjel.

37 Men se, hver mand, der løftede sin kølle for at slå Ammon, huggede han armene af med sit sværd, for han modstod deres slag ved at slå deres arme med æggen af sværdet, således at de begyndte at blive forbavsede og begyndte at flygte for ham; ja, og de var ikke få i antal; og han fik dem til at flygte ved sin arms styrke.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

38 Se, seks af dem var faldet for slyngen, men han dræbte ingen med sit sværd, undtagen deres leder, og han huggede så mange arme af, som blev løftet mod ham, og det var ikke få.

39 Og da han havde drevet dem langt bort, vendte han tilbage, og de vandede deres flokke og førte dem tilbage til kongens græsgang og gik derefter ind til kongen med de arme, som med Ammons sværd var blevet hugget af, og som tilhørte dem, som havde forsøgt at slå ham ihjel; og de blev båret ind til kongen som et vidnesbyrd om det, som de havde gjort.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Almas Bog 18

- 1 Og det skete, at kong Lamoni foranledigede, at hans tjenere skulle stå frem og vidne om alt det, som de havde set angående den sag.
- 2 Og da de alle havde vidnet om det, som de havde set, og han havde hørt om Ammons trofasthed med hensyn til at beskytte hans flokke og også om hans store kraft, da han stred mod dem, der forsøgte at slå ham ihjel, blev han overordentlig forbavset og sagde: Visselig, dette er mere end et menneske. Se, er dette ikke den Store Ånd, som sender sådanne store straffedomme over dette folk på grund af deres mord?
- 3 Og de svarede kongen og sagde: Om han er den Store Ånd eller et menneske, ved vi ikke, men så meget ved vi, at han ikke kan slås ihjel af kongens fjender; ej heller kan de sprede kongens flokke, når han er med os, på grund af hans dygtighed og store styrke; derfor ved vi, at han er kongens ven. Og se, o konge, vi tror ikke, at et menneske kan have så stor magt, for vi ved, at han ikke kan slås ihjel.
- 4 Og se, da kongen hørte disse ord, sagde han til dem: Nu ved jeg, at det er den Store Ånd; og han er kommet ned på dette tidspunkt for at bevare jeres liv, så jeg ikke skal slå jer ihjel, sådan som jeg slog jeres brødre ihjel. Se, det er den Store Ånd, som vore fædre har talt om.
- 5 Se, det var den overlevering, som Lamoni havde fået af sin far, at der var en Stor Ånd. Til trods for at de troede på en Stor Ånd, antog de, at hvad de end gjorde, så var det rigtigt; alligevel begyndte Lamoni at frygte overordentlig af frygt for, at han havde gjort uret ved at slå sine tjenere ihjel;
- 6 for han havde slået mange af dem ihjel, fordi deres brødre havde spredt deres flokke ved stedet med vand; og fordi de således havde fået deres flokke spredt, var de blevet slået ihjel.
- 7 Se, det var disse lamanitters vane at stå ved Sebus' vande og sprede folkets flokke, så de derved kunne drive mange af dem, der var blevet spredt, bort til deres eget land, for det var den vanlige måde at plyndre på blandt dem.

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

- 8 Og det skete, at kong Lamoni spurgte sine tjenere, idet han sagde: Hvor er denne mand, der har så stor en magt?
- 9 Og de sagde til ham: Se, han er ved at fodre dine heste. Se, kongen havde nemlig befalet sine tjenere før det tidspunkt, da de skulle vande deres flokke, at de skulle gøre hans heste og vogne klar og ledsage ham over til Nefis land, for der var blevet bekendtgjort et stort gilde i Nefis land af Lamonis far, som var konge over hele landet.
- 10 Se, da kong Lamoni hørte, at Ammon var ved at gøre hans heste og hans vogne klar, blev han endnu mere for-
bavset over Ammons trofasthed og sagde: Blandt alle mine tjenere har der visselig ikke været nogen tjener, der har været så trofast som denne mand, for han husker at udføre alle mine befalinger.
- 11 Nu ved jeg visselig, at dette er den Store Ånd, og jeg ville ønske af ham, at han kom ind til mig, men jeg tør ikke.
- 12 Og det skete, at da Ammon havde gjort hestene og vognene klar til kongen og hans tjenere, gik han ind til kongen, og han så, at kongens ansigtsudtryk var forandret; derfor skulle han til at gå tilbage bort fra hans nærhed.
- 13 Men en af kongens tjenere sagde til ham: Rabbana! der, når det bliver oversat, betyder vældige eller store konge, eftersom de anså deres konger for at være vældige; og således sagde han til ham: Rabbana, kongen ønsker, at du skal blive.
- 14 Derfor vendte Ammon sig mod kongen og sagde til ham: Hvad vil du, at jeg skal gøre for dig, o konge? Og kongen svarede ham ikke i et tidsrum af en time efter deres tid, for han vidste ikke, hvad han skulle sige til ham.
- 15 Og det skete, at Ammon igen sagde til ham: Hvad ønsker du af mig? Men kongen svarede ham ikke.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbana, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbana, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

16 Og det skete, at Ammon, der var fyldt af Guds Ånd, derfor fornemmede han kongens tanker. Og han sagde til ham: Er det, fordi du har hørt, at jeg forsvarede dine tjenere og dine flokke og slog syv af deres brødre ihjel med slyngen og med sværdet og huggede armene af andre for at forsvare dine flokke og dine tjenere; se, er det dette, der er årsag til din forundring?

17 Jeg siger dig: Hvad er det, der gør, at din forundring er så stor? Se, jeg er et menneske, og jeg er din tjener, hvad du derfor end ønsker, og som er ret, det vil jeg gøre.

18 Se, da kongen havde hørt disse ord, blev han igen forundret, for han så, at Ammon kunne læse hans tanker, men til trods for det åbnede kong Lamoni sin mund og sagde til ham: Hvem er du? Er du den Store Ånd, som kender alting?

19 Ammon svarede og sagde til ham: Det er jeg ikke.

20 Og kongen sagde: Hvorledes kender du mit hjertes tanker? Du kan tale frimodigt og fortælle mig angående dette og også fortælle mig, ved hvilken magt du dræbte og huggede armene af mine brødre, som spredte mine flokke –

21 og se, hvis du vil fortælle mig om dette, vil jeg give dig, hvad end du ønsker; og hvis det var nødvendigt, vil jeg beskytte dig med mine hære; men jeg ved, at du er vældigere end dem alle; alligevel, hvad end du ønsker af mig, det vil jeg skænke dig.

22 Se, Ammon, der var vis, men dog fredelig, han sagde til Lamoni: Vil du lytte til mine ord, hvis jeg fortæller dig, ved hvilken magt jeg gør dette? Og det er det, som jeg ønsker af dig.

23 Og kongen svarede ham og sagde: Ja, jeg vil tro alle dine ord. Og således blev han fanget ved list.

24 Og Ammon begyndte at tale til ham med frimodighed og sagde til ham: Tror du, at der findes en Gud?

25 Og han svarede og sagde til ham: Jeg ved ikke, hvad det betyder.

26 Og da sagde Ammon: Tror du, at der findes en stor Ånd?

27 Og han sagde: Ja.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marvelled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

28 Og Ammon sagde: Det er Gud. Og Ammon sagde videre til ham: Tror du, at denne Store Ånd, som er Gud, har skabt alt, som er i himlen og på jorden?

29 Og han sagde: Ja, jeg tror, at han har skabt alt, som er på jorden, men jeg kender ikke himlene.

30 Og Ammon sagde til ham: Himlene er et sted, hvor Gud bor og alle hans hellige engle.

31 Og kong Lamoni sagde: Er det oven over jorden?

32 Og Ammon sagde: Ja, og han ser ned på alle menneskers børn; og han kender alle hjertets tanker og hensigter, for ved hans hånd blev de alle skabt fra begyndelsen.

33 Og kong Lamoni sagde: Jeg tror alt, hvad du har talt. Er du sendt fra Gud?

34 Ammon sagde til ham: Jeg er et menneske, og mennesket blev i begyndelsen skabt efter Guds billede, og jeg er ved hans hellige Ånd blevet kaldet til at undervise dette folk i dette, så de må blive bragt til kundskab om det, der er retfærdigt og sandt;

35 og en del af den Ånd bor i mig, hvilket giver mig kundskab og magt i forhold til min tro og efter mine ønsker, som er i Gud.

36 Se, da Ammon havde sagt disse ord, begyndte han ved verdens skabelse og også Adams skabelse og fortalte ham alt om menneskets fald og forklarede og forelagde ham folkets optegnelser og hellige skrifter, som var blevet talt ved profeterne, ja, helt op til den tid, da deres fader, Lehi, forlod Jerusalem.

37 Og han fortalte dem (nemlig kongen og hans tjenere) om alle deres fædres vandringer i ørkenen og alle deres lidelser ved sult og tørst og deres møje og så videre.

38 Og han fortalte dem ligeledes om Lamans og Lemuels og Ismaels sønners oprør, ja, han fortalte dem om alle deres oprør; og han udlagde alle optegnelserne og skrifterne for dem fra den tid, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem og op til nærværende tid.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

39 Men det er ikke alt, for han udlagde for dem den forløsningsplan, som var beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse; og han gjorde dem også bekendt med Kristi komme, og alle Herrens gerninger gjorde han dem bekendt med.

40 Og det skete, efter at han havde sagt alt dette og udlagt det for kongen, at kongen troede alle hans ord.

41 Og han begyndte at anråbe Herren, idet han sagde: O Herre, hav barmhjertighed! I overensstemmelse med din overstrømmende barmhjertighed, som du har haft med Nefis folk, hav det med mig og mit folk.

42 Og se, da han havde sagt dette, faldt han til jorden, som om han var død.

43 Og det skete, at hans tjenere tog ham med og bar ham ind til hans hustru og lagde ham på en seng; og i et tidsrum af to dage og to nætter lå han, som om han var død; og hans hustru og hans sønner og hans døtre sørgede over ham på lamanitternes vis, idet de dybfølt begræd tabet af ham.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Almas Bog 19

- 1 Og det skete, at efter to dage og to nætter skulle de til at tage hans legeme og lægge det i en gravhule, som de havde lavet med det formål at begrave deres døde i.
- 2 Se, dronningen, der havde hørt om Ammons ry, hun sendte derfor bud og ønskede af ham, at han skulle komme ind til hende.
- 3 Og det skete, at Ammon gjorde, som han blev befalelet, og gik ind til dronningen og ønskede at få at vide, hvad hun ville, at han skulle gøre.
- 4 Og hun sagde til ham: Min mands tjenere har ladet mig vide, at du er en hellig Guds profet, og at du har magt til at gøre mange mægtige gerninger i hans navn.
- 5 Hvis det derfor er tilfældet, ønsker jeg, at du skal gå ind og se til min mand, for han har ligget på sin seng i et tidsrum af to dage og to nætter; og nogle siger, at han ikke er død, men andre siger, at han er død, og at han stinker, og at han burde lægges i gravhulen; men jeg for mit vedkommende synes ikke, at han stinker.
- 6 Se, dette var, hvad Ammon ønskede, for han vidste, at kong Lamoni var i Guds magt; han vidste, at det mørke slør af vantro var ved at blive fjernet fra hans sind, og at det lys, som oplyste hans sind, og som var Guds herligheds lys, som var hans godheds forunderlige lys – ja, dette lys havde indgydt hans sjæl en sådan glæde, efter at skyen af mørke var blevet spredt, og at det evigtvarende livs lys var blevet tændt i hans sjæl, ja, han vidste, at det havde overvældet hans naturlige legeme, og han var borttrykket i Gud –
- 7 derfor var det, som dronningen ønskede af ham, hans eneste ønske. Han gik derfor ind for at se til kongen, sådan som dronningen havde ønsket af ham; og han så kongen, og han vidste, at han ikke var død.
- 8 Og han sagde til dronningen: Han er ikke død, men han sover i Gud, og i morgen skal han rejse sig igen; begrav ham derfor ikke.
- 9 Og Ammon sagde til hende: Tror du dette? Og hun sagde til ham: Jeg har ikke noget vidnesbyrd bortset fra dit ord og vore tjeneres ord; alligevel tror jeg, at det skal ske, sådan som du har sagt.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

10 Og Ammon sagde til hende: Velsignet er du på grund af din overordentlig store tro; jeg siger dig, kvinde, så stor tro har der ikke været blandt hele det nefitiske folk.

11 Og det skete, at hun vågede ved sin mands seng fra det tidspunkt og indtil det tidspunkt den næste dag, som Ammon havde fastsat, at han skulle rejse sig.

12 Og det skete, at han rejste sig i overensstemmelse med Ammons ord; og da han rejste sig, strakte han sin hånd ud til kvinden og sagde: Velsignet være Guds navn, og velsignet er du.

13 For så sikkert, som du lever, har jeg set min forløser; og han skal komme og blive født af en kvinde, og han skal forløse hele menneskeslægten, som tror på hans navn. Se, da han havde sagt disse ord, svulmede hjertet i ham, og han sank igen om af glæde; og dronningen sank også om, overvældet af Ånden.

14 Se, da Ammon så, at Herrens Ånd i overensstemmelse med hans bønner blev udøst over lamanitterne, hans brødre, som havde været årsagen til så stort sørgeudbrud blandt nefitterne eller blandt hele Guds folk på grund af deres syndighed og deres overleveringer, faldt han på sine knæ og begyndte at udøse sin sjæl i bøn og taksigelse til Gud for, hvad han havde gjort for hans brødre; og han blev også overvældet af glæde, og således var de alle tre sunket om på jorden.

15 Se, da kongens tjenere så, at de var faldet om, begyndte de også at anråbe Gud, for frygt for Herren var også kommet over dem; for det var dem, som havde stået foran kongen og vidnet for ham om Ammons store magt.

16 Og det skete, at de påkaldte Herrens navn af al deres magt, ja, indtil de alle var faldet om på jorden med undtagelse af en af de lamanitiske kvinder, hvis navn var Abish, og hun havde været omvendt til Herren i mange år som følge af et bemærkelsesværdigt syn, som hendes far havde haft —

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father —

17 og da hun således havde været omvendt til Herren og aldrig havde gjort det kendt, vidste hun derfor, da hun så, at alle Lamoni's tjenere var faldet til jorden, og også at hendes herskerinde dronningen og kongen og Ammon lå udstrakt på jorden, at det var Guds magt; og da hun antog, at denne lejlighed til at kundgøre for folket, hvad der var sket blandt dem, at det, ved at de så dette syn, vil le få dem til at tro på Guds magt, løb hun derfor fra hus til hus og kundgjorde det for folket.

18 Og de begyndte at samle sig i kongens hus. Og der kom en mængde, og til deres forbavselse så de kongen og dronningen og deres tjenere ligge udstrakt på jorden, og de lå der alle, som om de var døde; og de så også Ammon, og se, han var nefit.

19 Og se, folket begyndte at murre indbyrdes; nogle sagde, at det var en stor ulykke, der var kommet over dem, eller over kongen og hans hus, fordi han havde tilladt nefitten at blive i landet.

20 Men andre irettesatte dem ved at sige: Kongen har bragt denne ulykke over sit hus, fordi han slog dem af sine tjenere ihjel, som havde fået deres flokke spredt ved Sebus' vande.

21 Og de blev også irettesat af de mænd, der havde stået ved Sebus' vande og spredt de flokke, der tilhørte kongen, for de var vrede på Ammon på grund af det antal af deres brødre, som han havde slået ihjel ved Sebus' vande, mens han forsvarede kongens flokke.

22 Se, en af dem, hvis bror var blevet slået ihjel med Ammons sværd, og som var overordentlig vred på Ammon, trak sit sværd og trådte frem for at lade det falde på Ammon og dræbe ham, og da han løftede sværdet for at slå ham ihjel, se, da faldt han død om.

23 Vi ser nu, at Ammon ikke kunne slås ihjel, for Herren havde sagt til Mosija, hans far: Jeg vil skåne ham, og det skal ske ham i overensstemmelse med din tro! derfor betroede Mosija ham til Herren.

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

24 Og det skete, at da mængden så, at den mand, der havde løftet sværdet for at slå Ammon ihjel, var faldet død om, kom der frygt over dem alle, og de turde ikke række hånden ud for at røre ham eller nogen af dem, der var faldet om; og de begyndte igen at forundre sig indbyrdes over, hvad der kunne være årsagen til denne store magt, eller hvad alt dette kunne betyde.

25 Og det skete, at der var mange blandt dem, der sagde, at Ammon var den Store Ånd, og andre sagde, at han var sendt af den Store Ånd.

26 Men andre irettesatte dem alle, idet de sagde, at han var et uhyre, der var blevet sendt af nefitterne for at plage dem.

27 Og der var nogle, der sagde, at Ammon var sendt af den Store Ånd for at plage dem på grund af deres syndighed, og at det var den store Ånd, som altid havde været med nefitterne, og som altid havde udfriet dem af deres hænder; og de sagde, at det var denne Store Ånd, der havde udryddet så mange af deres brødre, lamanitterne.

28 Og således begyndte striden at blive overordentlig skarp blandt dem. Og mens de således stredes, kom den tjenestekvinde, som havde foranlediget mængden til at samle sig, og da hun så den strid, der var blandt mængden, blev hun overordentlig sorgfuld, ja, til tårer.

29 Og det skete, at hun gik hen og tog dronningen ved hånden, for at hun måske kunne rejse hende op fra jorden; og så snart hun rørte ved hendes hånd, rejste hun sig op og stod på benene, og hun råbte med høj røst, idet hun sagde: O velsignede Jesus, som har frelst mig fra et forfærdeligt helvede! O velsignede Gud, hav barmhertighed med dette folk!

30 Og da hun havde sagt dette, slog hun hænderne sammen, for hun var fuld af glæde og talte mange ord, som ikke blev forstået; og da hun havde gjort dette, tog hun kong Lamoni ved hånden, og se, han rejste sig op og stod på benene.

31 Og da han så striden blandt sit folk, gik han straks frem og begyndte at irettesætte dem og at lære dem de ord, som han havde hørt af Ammons mund; og så mange, som hørte hans ord, troede og blev omvendt til Herren.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

- 32 Men der var mange blandt dem, som ikke ville høre hans ord, derfor gik de deres vej.
- 33 Og det skete, at da Ammon rejste sig, tog han sig også af dem, og det samme gjorde alle Lamonis tjenere; og de kundgjorde alle det selv samme for folket: at deres hjerte var blevet forandret, at de ikke mere havde noget ønske om at gøre ondt.
- 34 Og se, mange kundgjorde for folket, at de havde set engle og havde talt med dem; og således havde de fortalt dem noget om Gud og hans retfærdighed.
- 35 Og det skete, at der var mange, der troede deres ord; og så mange, som troede, blev døbt; og de blev et retfærdigt folk, og de oprettede en menighed blandt sig.
- 36 Og således begyndte Herrens værk blandt lamanitterne; således begyndte Herren at udøse sin Ånd over dem; og vi ser, at hans arm er strakt ud til alle mennesker, som vil omvende sig og tro på hans navn.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Almas Bog 20

- 1 Og det skete, da de havde oprettet en menighed i det land, at kong Lamoni ønskede af Ammon, at han skulle tage med ham til Nefis land, så han kunne forestille ham for sin far.
- 2 Og Herrens røst kom til Ammon og sagde: Du skal ikke drage op til Nefis land, for se, kongen vil stræbe dig efter livet; men du skal drage til Middonis land, for se, din bror Aron og også Muloki og Amma er i fængsel.
- 3 Se, det skete, at da Ammon havde hørt dette, sagde han til Lamoni: Se, min bror og mine brødre er i fængsel i Middoni, og jeg drager derhen, for at jeg kan udfri dem.
- 4 Se, Lamoni sagde til Ammon: Jeg ved, at du i Herrens styrke kan gøre alt. Men se, jeg vil drage med dig til Middonis land, for kongen i Middonis land, hvis navn er Antiomno, er en ven af mig, derfor vil jeg drage til Middonis land, så jeg kan smigre kongen i landet, og han vil da løslade dine brødre fra fængslet. Se, Lamoni sagde til ham: Hvem fortalte dig, at dine brødre var i fængsel?
- 5 Og Ammon sagde til ham: Ingen har sagt mig det, undtagen Gud; og han sagde til mig: Drag af sted, og udfri dine brødre, for de er i fængsel i Middonis land.
- 6 Se, da Lamoni havde hørt dette, foranledigede han, at hans tjenere skulle gøre hans heste og vogne klar.
- 7 Og han sagde til Ammon: Kom, jeg vil drage med dig ned til Middonis land, og der vil jeg bønfalde kongen om, at han løslader dine brødre fra fængslet.
- 8 Og det skete, at mens Ammon og Lamoni var på vej derhen, mødte de Lamonis far, som var konge over hele landet.
- 9 Og se, Lamonis far sagde til ham: Hvorfor kom I ikke til gildet på den store dag, da jeg holdt et gilde for mine sønner og mit folk?
- 10 Og han sagde også: Hvor er du på vej hen med denne nefit, som er et af børnene af en løgner?
- 11 Og det skete, at Lamoni forklarede ham, hvor han var på vej hen, for han frygtede for at fornærme ham.

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

12 Og han fortalte ham også hele grunden til, at han var blevet i sit eget rige, og at han ikke var taget til sin far til det gilde, som han havde beredt.

13 Og se, da Lamoni havde forklaret ham alt dette, se, da blev hans far til hans forbavselse vred på ham og sagde: Lamoni, du vil udfri disse nefitter, som er sønner af en løgner. Se, han udplyndrede vore fædre; og nu er hans børn også kommet blandt os, for at de ved deres snedighed og deres løgne kan bedrage os, så de igen kan røve vor ejendom fra os.

14 Se, Lamonis far befalede ham, at han skulle slå Ammon ihjel med sværdet. Og han befalede ham også, at han ikke skulle drage til Middonis land, men at han sammen med ham skulle vende tilbage til Ismaels land.

15 Men Lamoni sagde til ham: Jeg vil ikke slå Ammon ihjel, ej heller vil jeg vende tilbage til Ismaels land, men jeg drager til Middonis land, så jeg kan befri Ammons brødre, for jeg ved, at de er retfærdige mænd og den sande Guds hellige profeter.

16 Se, da hans far havde hørt disse ord, blev han vred på ham, og han trak sit sværd, så han kunne slå ham til jorden.

17 Men Ammon stod frem og sagde til ham: Se, du skal ikke slå din søn ihjel; alligevel ville det være bedre, at han faldt end du, for se, han har omvendt sig fra sine synder; men hvis du skulle falde på dette tidspunkt i din vrede, kunne din sjæl ikke blive frelst.

18 Og videre, det er nødvendigt, at du lader være; for hvis du skulle slå din søn, som er en uskyldig mand, ihjel, ville hans blod råbe fra jorden til Herren hans Gud om, at hævn skulle komme over dig; og måske du så ville miste din sjæl.

19 Se, da Ammon havde sagt disse ord til ham, svarede han ham, idet han sagde: Jeg ved, at hvis jeg skulle slå min søn ihjel, at jeg da ville udgyde uskyldigt blod, for det er dig, der har forsøgt at slå ham ihjel.

20 Og han strakte hånden ud for at slå Ammon ihjel. Men Ammon modstod hans slag og slog ham også på armen, så han ikke kunne bruge den.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

21 Se, da kongen så, at Ammon kunne slå ham ihjel, begyndte han at bønfalde Ammon om, at han ville skåne hans liv.

22 Men Ammon løftede sit sværd og sagde til ham: Se, jeg vil slå dig ihjel, medmindre du vil tilstede mig, at mine brødre må blive løsladt fra fængslet.

23 Da kongen frygtede, at han skulle miste livet, sagde han: Hvis du vil skåne mig, vil jeg skænke dig alt, hvad du end beder om, endog indtil det halve af riget.

24 Se, da Ammon så, at han havde påvirket den gamle konge efter sit ønske, sagde han til ham: Hvis du vil tilstede, at mine brødre bliver løsladt fra fængslet, og også at Lamoni må beholde sit rige, og at du ikke fatter misnag mod ham, men tilsteder, at han kan handle efter sine egne ønsker, med hensyn til hvad end han tænker, da vil jeg skåne dig; ellers vil jeg slå dig til jorden.

25 Se, da Ammon havde sagt disse ord, begyndte kongen at fryde sig på grund af sit liv.

26 Og da han så, at Ammon ikke havde noget ønske om at slå ham ihjel, og da han også så den store kærlighed, han nærede for hans søn Lamoni, blev han overordentlig forbavset og sagde: Fordi dette er alt, hvad du har ønsket af mig, at jeg skulle løslade dine brødre og tillade, at min søn Lamoni skulle beholde sit rige, se, da vil jeg tilstede dig, at min søn må beholde sit rige fra denne tid af og for evigt, og jeg vil ikke mere regere over ham.

27 Og jeg vil også tilstede dig, at dine brødre bliver løsladt fra fængslet, og du og dine brødre må komme til mig i mit rige, for jeg ønsker i høj grad at mødes med dig. For kongen var højst forbavset over de ord, som han havde talt, og også over de ord, som var blevet talt af hans søn Lamoni; derfor nærede han ønske om at lære dem.

28 Og det skete, at Ammon og Lamoni fortsatte på deres rejse til Middonis land. Og Lamoni fandt yndest for landets konges øjne, derfor blev Ammons brødre ført ud af fængslet.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

29 Og da Ammon mødte dem, blev han overordentlig sorgfuld, for se, de var nøgne, og deres hud var overordentlig ilde tilredt, fordi de havde været bundet med stærke reb. Og de havde også lidt sult, tørst og alle slags trængsler; alligevel var de tålmodige i alle deres lidelser.

30 Og som det skete, var det deres lod at være faldet i hænderne på et mere forhærdet og et mere stivnakket folk, derfor ville de ikke lytte til deres ord, og de havde stødt dem ud og havde slået dem og havde drevet dem fra hus til hus og fra sted til sted, lige indtil de var kommet til Middonis land; og der blev de pågrebet og kastet i fængsel og bundet med stærke reb og holdt fængslet i mange dage og blev udfriet af Lamoni og Ammon.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

En beretning om Arons og Mulokis og deres brøders forkyndelse for lamanitterne.

Almas Bog 2 I

- 1 Se, da Ammon og hans brødre skiltes ved grænsen til lamanitternes land, se, da begav Aron sig på rejse mod det land, som af lamanitterne blev kaldt Jerusalem, idet de havde opkaldt det efter deres fædres fødeland, og det lå langt borte ved grænsen til Mormon.
- 2 Se, lamanitterne og amalekitterne og Amulons folk havde bygget en stor by, som blev kaldt Jerusalem.
- 3 Se, lamanitterne var i sig selv tilstrækkelig forhærdede, men amalekitterne og amulonitterne var endnu mere forhærdede; derfor foranledigede de lamanitterne til, at de skulle forhærde hjertet, at de skulle vokse sig stærke i ugudelighed og i deres vederstyggeligheder.
- 4 Og det skete, at Aron kom til byen Jerusalem og begyndte først at prædike for amalekitterne. Og han begyndte at prædike for dem i deres synagoger, for de havde bygget synagoger efter nehorernes orden; for mange af amalekitterne og amulonitterne var af nehorernes orden.
- 5 Da Aron derfor kom ind i en af deres synagoger for at prædike for folket, og mens han talte til dem, se, da rejste en amalekit sig op og begyndte at strides med ham, idet han sagde: Hvad er det, du har vidnet om? Har du set en engel? Hvorfor viser der sig ikke engle for os? Se, er dette folk ikke lige så godt som dit folk?
- 6 Du siger også, at medmindre vi omvender os, skal vi fortabes. Hvordan kender du vort hjertes tanke og hensigt? Hvordan ved du, at vi har grund til at omvende os? Hvordan ved du, at vi ikke er et retfærdigt folk? Se, vi har bygget helligdomme, og vi samler os for at tilbede Gud. Vi tror, at Gud vil frelse alle mennesker.
- 7 Se, Aron sagde til ham: Tror du, at Guds Søn skal komme for at forløse menneskeslægten fra dens synder?

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 2 I

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

8 Og manden sagde til ham: Vi tror ikke, at du ved noget sådant. Vi tror ikke disse tåbelige overleveringer. Vi tror ikke, at du kender til det tilkommende, ej heller tror vi, at dine fædre og heller ikke at vore fædre kendte noget til det, de talte om med hensyn til det, der skal komme.

9 Nu begyndte Aron at åbne skrifterne for dem angående Kristi komme og også angående de dødes opstandelse, og at der ingen forløsning kunne være for menneskeslægten uden ved Kristi død og lidelser og forsoningen ved hans blod.

10 Og det skete, da han begyndte at udlægge dette for dem, at de blev vrede på ham og begyndte at spotte ham; og de ville ikke høre de ord, som han talte.

11 Da han derfor så, at de ikke ville høre hans ord, gik han ud af deres synagoge og kom over til en landsby, som hed Ani-Anti, og der fandt han Muloki i færd med at prædike ordet for dem, og også Amma og hans brødre. Og de stredes med mange om ordet.

12 Og det skete, at de så, at folket ville forhærde hjertet, derfor drog de bort og kom over til Middonis land. Og de prædikede ordet for mange, og nogle få troede på de ord, som de forkyndte.

13 Alligevel blev Aron og et vist antal af hans brødre grebet og kastet i fængsel, og resten af dem flygtede ud af Middonis land til egnene deromkring.

14 Og de, der blev kastet i fængsel, led meget, og de blev udfriet ved Lamonis og Ammons hånd, og de fik mad og klæder.

15 Og de drog igen ud for at kundgøre ordet, og således blev de for første gang udfriet af fængslet, og således havde de lidt.

16 Og de drog derhen, hvor de blev ledt af Herrens Ånd, idet de prædikede Guds ord i enhver af amalekitternes synagoger eller i enhver af lamanitternes forsamlinger, hvortil de kunne få adgang.

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

17 Og det skete, at Herren begyndte at velsigne dem, således at de bragte mange til kundskab om sandheden; ja, de overbeviste mange om deres synder og om deres fædres overleveringer, som ikke var rigtige.

18 Og det skete, at Ammon og Lamoni vendte tilbage fra Middonis land til Ismaels land, som var deres arveland.

19 Og kong Lamoni ville ikke tillade, at Ammon skulle tjene ham eller være hans tjener.

20 Men han foranledigede, at der skulle bygges synagoger i Ismaels land; og han foranledigede, at hans folk, eller de mennesker som var under hans regering, skulle samle sig.

21 Og han frydede sig ved dem, og han lærte dem meget. Og han kundgjorde også for dem, at de var et folk, som var under ham, og at de var et frit folk, at de var frie for kongens, hans fars, undertrykkelse, for hans far havde tilstedt ham, at han kunne regere over de mennesker, der var i Ismaels land og i hele landet deromkring.

22 Og han kundgjorde også for dem, at de havde frihed til at dyrke Herren deres Gud efter deres ønsker, hvor som helst de var, hvis det var i det land, som var under kong Lamonis regering.

23 Og Ammon prædikede for kong Lamonis folk; og det skete, at han lærte dem om alt angående det, der vedrører retfærdighed. Og han formanede dem daglig med al flid; og de gav agt på hans ord, og de var ivrige efter at holde Guds befalinger.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Almas Bog 22

- 1 Se, mens Ammon således bestandig underviste Lamonis folk, vender vi nu tilbage til beretningen om Aron og hans brødre; for efter at han var draget bort fra Middonis land, blev han ledt af Ånden til Nefis land, ja til kongens hus, han som regerede over hele landet, undtagen over Ismaels land, og det var Lamonis far.
- 2 Og det skete, at han gik ind til ham i kongens palads sammen med sine brødre og bøjede sig for kongen og sagde til ham: Se, o konge, vi er Ammons brødre, som du har udfriet af fængslet.
- 3 Og se, o konge, hvis du vil skåne vore liv, vil vi være dine tjenere. Og kongen sagde til dem: Rejs jer, for jeg vil skænke jer livet, og jeg vil ikke tillade, at I skal være mine tjenere; men jeg vil forlange, at I underviser mig, for jeg har været noget foruroliget i sindet på grund af jeres bror Ammons storsindethed og storheden af hans ord; og jeg ønsker at kende årsagen til, at han ikke er kommet op fra Middoni sammen med jer.
- 4 Og Aron sagde til kongen: Se, Herrens Ånd har kaldt ham en anden vej; han er draget til Ismaels land for at undervise Lamonis folk.
- 5 Se, kongen sagde til dem: Hvad betyder det, som I har sagt om Herrens Ånd? Se, det er det, der foruroliger mig.
- 6 Og hvad betyder det, som Ammon sagde: Hvis I vil omvende jer, skal I blive frelst, og hvis I ikke vil omvende jer, skal I blive forstødt på den yderste dag?
- 7 Og Aron svarede ham og sagde: Tror du, at der findes en Gud? Og kongen sagde: Jeg ved, at amalekitterne siger, at der findes en Gud, og jeg har tilstedt dem, at de skulle bygge helligdomme, så de kan samle sig og tilbede ham. Og hvis du nu siger, at der er en Gud, se, så vil jeg tro det.
- 8 Og se, da Aron hørte det, begyndte hans hjerte at fryde sig, og han sagde: Se, så vist som du lever, o konge, findes der en Gud.
- 9 Og kongen sagde: Er Gud den Store Ånd, som førte vore fædre ud af Jerusalems land?

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

- 10 Og Aron sagde til ham: Ja, han er den Store Ånd, og han har skabt alt, både i himlen og på jorden. Tror du det?
- 11 Og han sagde: Ja, jeg tror, at den Store Ånd har skabt alt, og jeg ønsker af dig, at du skal fortælle mig om alt dette, så vil jeg tro på dine ord.
- 12 Og det skete, at da Aron så, at kongen ville tro på hans ord, begyndte han fra Adams skabelse, idet han læste skrifterne for kongen – hvorledes Gud skabte mennesket efter sit eget billede, og at Gud gav ham befalinger, og at mennesket var faldet på grund af overtrædelse.
- 13 Og Aron udlagde skrifterne for ham fra Adams skabelse, idet han fremlagde menneskets fald for ham og dets kødelige tilstand og også den forløsningsplan, som var beredt ved Kristus fra verdens begyndelse for hver den, som vil tro på hans navn.
- 14 Og eftersom mennesket var faldet, kunne det ikke af sig selv gøre sig fortjent til noget; men Kristi lidelse og død soner for deres synder ved tro og omvendelse og så videre; og at han bryder dødens bånd, så graven ingen sejr skal få, og så dødens brod skal blive opslugt i håbet om herlighed; og Aron udlagde alt dette for kongen.
- 15 Og det skete, at efter at Aron havde udlagt dette for ham, sagde kongen: Hvad skal jeg gøre, for at jeg kan få dette evige liv, som du har talt om? Ja, hvad skal jeg gøre, for at jeg kan blive født af Gud og få denne ugudelige ånd rykket ud af mit bryst og modtage hans Ånd, så jeg kan blive fyldt af glæde, så jeg ikke bliver forstødt på den yderste dag? Se, sagde han, jeg vil give afkald på alt, hvad jeg besidder, ja, jeg vil frasige mig mit rige, for at jeg kan få denne store glæde.
- 16 Men Aron sagde til ham: Hvis du ønsker dette, hvis du vil bøje dig for Gud, ja, hvis du vil omvende dig fra alle dine synder og bøje dig for Gud og påkalde hans navn i tro, overbevist om at du skal få, da skal du få det håb, som du ønsker.
- 17 Og det skete, at da Aron havde sagt disse ord, knælede kongen ned for Herren, ja, han kastede sig endog til jorden og råbte indtrængende, idet han sagde:

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

18 O Gud, Aron har fortalt mig, at der findes en Gud, og hvis der findes en Gud, og hvis du er Gud, vil du da give dig til kende for mig, så vil jeg aflægge alle mine synder for at kende dig og for at kunne blive oprejst fra de døde og blive frelst på den yderste dag. Og se, da kongen havde sagt disse ord, blev han ramt, som om han var død.

19 Og det skete, at hans tjenere løb hen og fortalte dronningen alt, hvad der var sket med kongen. Og hun kom ind til kongen; og da hun så ham ligge, som om han var død, og også Aron og hans brødre stå, som om de havde været årsagen til hans fald, blev hun vred på dem og befalede, at hendes tjenere, eller kongens tjenere, skulle gribe dem og slå dem ihjel.

20 Se, tjenerne havde set årsagen til kongens fald, derfor turde de ikke lægge hånd på Aron og hans brødre, og de bønfuldt dronningen, idet de sagde: Hvorfor befaler du, at vi skal slå disse mænd ihjel, når nu én af dem er mægtigere end os alle? Derfor vil vi jo falde for dem.

21 Se, da dronningen så tjenernes frygt, begyndte hun også at frygte overordentlig meget for, at en ulykke skulle komme over hende. Og hun befalede sine tjenere, at de skulle gå ud og kalde på folket, så de kunne dræbe Aron og hans brødre.

22 Se, da Aron så dronningens beslutsomhed, og da han også kendte hårdheden af folkets hjerte, frygtede han for, at en mængde skulle samle sig, og at der ville blive en stor strid og en urolighed blandt dem, derfor rakte han hånden ud og rejste kongen op fra jorden og sagde til ham: Rejs dig. Og han rejste sig på benene og fik sin styrke.

23 Se, dette blev gjort i overværelse af dronningen og mange tjenere. Og da de så det, blev de meget forundrede og begyndte at frygte. Og kongen stod frem og begyndte at forkynde for dem. Og han forkyndte for dem, således at hele hans husstand blev omvendt til Herren.

24 Se, der var samlet en mængde på grund af dronningens befaling, og der opstod en stor murren blandt dem på grund af Aron og hans brødre.

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

25 Men kongen stod frem blandt dem og tog sig af dem. Og de blev fredeligt stemt over for Aron og dem, der var med ham.

26 Og det skete, at da kongen så, at folket var blevet fredeligt stemt, foranledigede han, at Aron og hans brødre skulle stå frem i midten af mængden, og at de skulle prædike ordet for dem.

27 Og det skete, at kongen sendte en proklamation ud over hele landet blandt hele sit folk, som var i hele hans land, og som var i alle egnene rundt omkring, som grænsede helt op til havet mod øst og mod vest, og som var skilt fra Zarahemlas land ved et smalt stykke ødemark, som strakte sig fra havet mod øst helt til havet mod vest og langs grænseegnene mod kysten og grænseegnene mod ødemarken, som lå mod nord ved Zarahemlas land gennem Mantis grænser ved udspringet af floden Sidon, som løb fra øst mod vest – og således var lamanitterne og nefitterne adskilt.

28 Se, den mest dovne del af lamanitterne levede i ødemarken og boede i telte, og de var spredt ud over ødemarken mod vest i Nefis land, ja, og også vest for Zarahemlas land i grænseegnene ved kysten og mod vest i Nefis land på deres fædres første arvested og grænsede således op mod kysten.

29 Og der var også mange lamanitter mod øst ved kysten, hvor nefitterne havde drevet dem hen. Og således var nefitterne næsten omringet af lamanitterne; alligevel havde nefitterne sat sig i besiddelse af alle de nordlige dele af landet, som grænsede op til ødemarken ved udspringet af floden Sidon fra øst til vest rundt langs med ødemarken mod nord, lige til de kom til det land, som de kaldte Overflod.

30 Og det grænsede op til det land, som de kaldte Ødelæggelse, da det var så langt mod nord, at det strakte sig ind i det land, der havde været beboet og var blevet ødelagt, om hvis knogler vi har talt, og som blev opdaget af Zarahemlas folk, idet det var det sted, hvor de først gik i land.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

31 Og de kom derfra op i den sydlige ødemark. Således blev landet mod nord kaldt Ødelæggelse, og landet mod syd blev kaldt Overflod; det var den ødemark, der er fuld af alle slags vilde dyr af enhver art, hvoraf en del var kommet fra landet mod nord efter føde.

32 Og se, der var i afstand kun halvanden dagsrejse for en nefit langs grænsen mellem Overflod og landet Ødelæggelse fra det østlige til det vestlige hav; og således var Nefis land og Zarahemlas land næsten omgivet af vand, for der var kun en lille landtunge mellem landet mod nord og landet mod syd.

33 Og det skete, at nefitterne havde bosat sig i landet Overflod lige fra det østlige til det vestlige hav, og således havde nefitterne i deres visdom med deres vagter og deres hære indesluttet lamanitterne mod syd, for at de på den måde ikke skulle få flere besiddelser mod nord, for at de ikke skulle oversvømme landet mod nord.

34 Derfor kunne lamanitterne ikke få flere besiddelser undtagen i Nefis land og i ødemarken deromkring. Se, dette anså nefitterne for vist – eftersom lamanitterne var deres fjender, ville de ikke lade sig plage af dem fra alle sider, og også for at de kunne have et land, som de kunne flygte til efter deres ønsker.

35 Og se, efter at have sagt dette vender jeg igen tilbage til beretningen om Ammon og Aron, Omner og Himni og deres brødre.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites— as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

Almas Bog 23

- 1 Se, nu skete det, at lamanitternes konge sendte en proklamation ud til hele sit folk om, at de ikke måtte lægge hånd på Ammon eller Aron eller Omner eller Himni, ej heller på nogen af deres brødre, som ville drage ud og prædike Guds ord på noget som helst sted, de måtte befinde sig, i nogen som helst del af deres land.
- 2 Ja, han sendte en forordning ud til dem om, at de ikke måtte lægge hånd på dem for at binde dem eller kaste dem i fængsel; ej heller måtte de spytte på dem eller slå dem eller støde dem ud af deres synagoger eller piske dem; ej heller måtte de stene dem; men at de skulle have fri adgang til deres huse og også deres templer og deres helligdomme.
- 3 Og således kunne de drage omkring og prædike ordet efter deres ønsker, for kongen var blevet omvendt til Herren, og hele hans husstand; derfor sendte han sin proklamation ud over hele landet til sit folk, for at Guds ord ikke skulle møde nogen hindring, men at det måtte få fremgang overalt i hele landet, så hans folk måtte blive overbevist om deres fædres ugudelige overleveringer, og så de måtte blive overbevist om, at de alle var brødre, og at de ikke burde myrde eller plyndre eller stjæle eller begå ægteskabsbrud eller begå nogen form for ugudelighed.
- 4 Og se, det skete, at da kongen havde udsendt denne proklamation, at Aron og hans brødre drog fra by til by og fra det ene tilbedelseshus til det andet, idet de oprettede menigheder og indviede præster og lærere overalt i landet blandt lamanitterne til at prædike og til at under vise i Guds ord blandt dem; og således begyndte de at få stor medgang.
- 5 Og tusinder blev bragt til kundskab om Herren, ja, tusinder blev bragt til at tro på nefitternes overleveringer; og de blev fortalt om de optegnelser og profetier, som var blevet overdraget lige til nærværende tid.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

6 Og så vist som Herren lever, så vist er det, at så mange som troede, eller så mange som blev bragt til kundskab om sandheden ved Ammons og hans brødres forkyndelse i overensstemmelse med åbenbarelsens og profetiens ånd og Guds kraft, som gjorde mirakler ved dem – ja, jeg siger jer, så sandt som Herren lever, at så mange af lamanitterne, som troede på deres forkyndelse og blev omvendt til Herren, faldt aldrig fra.

7 For de blev et retfærdigt folk; de nedlagde oprørsvåbne, så de ikke mere kæmpede mod Gud, ej heller mod nogen af deres brødre.

8 Se, dette er dem, der blev omvendt til Herren:

9 Det lamanitiske folk, der var i Ismaels land,

10 og også det lamanitiske folk, der var i Middonis land,

11 og også det lamanitiske folk, der var i byen Nephi,

12 og også det lamanitiske folk, der var i Shiloms land, og som var i Shemlons land og i byen Lemuel og i byen Shimnilom.

13 Og det er navnene på lamanitternes byer, som blev omvendt til Herren; og det er dem, der nedlagde deres oprørsvåben, ja, alle deres krigsvåben, og de var alle lamanitter.

14 Og amalekitterne blev ikke omvendt, bortset fra én eneste, ej heller blev nogen af amulonitterne, men de forhærdede hjertet og ligeledes hjertet hos lamanitterne i de dele af landet, hvor de end boede, ja, alle deres landsbyer og alle deres byer.

15 Derfor har vi nævnt alle lamanitternes byer, hvori de omvendte sig og kom til kundskab om sandheden og blev omvendt.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 Og se, det skete, at kongen og de, der var blevet omvendt, nærede ønske om at få et navn, så de derved kunne blive skelnet fra deres brødre; derfor rådførte kongen sig med Aron og mange af deres præster angående det navn, som de ville påtage sig for at kunne blive skelnet.

17 Og det skete, at de kaldte sig anti-nefi-lehier; og de blev kaldt ved det navn og blev ikke mere kaldt lamaniter.

18 Og de begyndte at blive et meget arbejdsomt folk; ja, og de var venlige over for nefitterne; derfor optog de forbindelse med dem, og Guds forbandelse fulgte dem ikke mere.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Almas Bog 24

- 1 Og det skete, at de amalekitter og de amulonitter og de lamanitter, som var i Amulons land og også i Helams land, og som var i Jerusalems land og kort sagt i hele landet rundt omkring, og som ikke var blevet omvendt og ikke havde påtaget sig navnet Anti-Nefi-Lehi, blev opbidset af amalekitterne og af amulonitterne til vrede mod deres brødre.
- 2 Og deres had mod dem blev overordentlig bittert, endog i en sådan grad at de begyndte at sætte sig op mod deres konge, ja, i en sådan grad at de ikke ønskede, at han skulle være deres konge; derfor greb de til våben mod folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 3 Se, kongen overdrog riget til sin søn, og han gav ham navnet Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 4 Og kongen døde i det selv samme år, som lamanitterne begyndte at træffe forberedelser til krig mod Guds folk.
- 5 Se, da Ammon og hans brødre og alle de, der var kommet op sammen med ham, så lamanitternes forberedelser til at udrydde deres brødre, drog de til Midjans land, og der mødte Ammon alle sine brødre; og derfra kom de til Ismaels land, så de kunne holde råd med Lamoni og også med hans bror Anti-Nefi-Lehi om, hvad de skulle gøre for at forsvare sig mod lamanitterne.
- 6 Se, der var ikke en eneste sjæl blandt alle de mennesker, der var blevet omvendt til Herren, som ville gribe til våben mod deres brødre, nej, de ville end ikke træffe nogen forberedelser til krig; ja, og deres konge befalede dem også, at de ikke skulle gøre det.
- 7 Se, disse er de ord, som han sagde til folket angående sagen: Jeg takker min Gud, mit elskede folk, for, at vor store Gud i sin godhed har sendt disse vore brødre nefitterne til os for at prædike for os og for at overbevise os om vore ugudelige fædres overleveringer.
- 8 Og se, jeg takker min store Gud for, at han har givet os en del af sin Ånd til at blødgøre vort hjerte, så vi har optaget forbindelse med disse brødre, nefitterne.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

9 Og se, jeg takker også min Gud for, at vi ved at optage denne forbindelse er blevet overbevist om vore synder og om de mange mord, som vi har begået.

10 Og jeg takker også min Gud, ja, min store Gud for, at han har tilstedt os, at vi kan omvende os fra dette, og også for, at han har tilgivet os for disse vore mange synder og mord, som vi har begået, og borttaget skylden fra vort hjerte ved sin Søns fortjeneste.

11 Og se nu, mine brødre, eftersom det har været alt, vi kunne gøre (da vi var de mest fortabte af hele menneskeslægten), at omvende os fra alle vore synder og de mange mord, som vi har begået, og at få Gud til at borttage dem fra vort hjerte, for det var alt, vi kunne gøre for at omvende os tilstrækkeligt for Gud, så han ville borttage vor skamplet –

12 se, mine højst elskede brødre, eftersom Gud har borttaget vor skamplet, og vore sværd er blevet blanke, så lad os ikke mere plette vore sværd med vore brødres blod.

13 Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, lad os holde vore sværd tilbage, så de ikke bliver plettet med vore brødres blod; for hvis vi igen skulle plette vore sværd, kan de måske ikke mere blive vasket blanke ved vor store Guds Søns blod, der skal blive udgydt til soning af vore synder.

14 Og den store Gud har haft barmhjertighed med os og kundgjort os dette, for at vi ikke skulle fortabes; ja, han har forud kundgjort os dette, fordi han elsker vor sjæl ligeså højt, som han elsker vore børn; derfor besøger han os i sin barmhjertighed ved sine engle, for at frelsesplanen må blive kundgjort for os såvel som for kommende slægter.

15 Åh, hvor barmhjertig er ikke vor Gud! Og se nu, eftersom det har været så meget, som vi har kunnet gøre for at få vore skamletter borttaget fra os, og vore sværd er gjort blanke, lad os da gemme dem bort, så de må holdes blanke som et vidnesbyrd for vor Gud på den yderste dag, eller på den dag da vi skal blive ført frem for ham for at blive dømt, om, at vi ikke har plettet vore sværd med vore brødres blod, siden han gav os sit ord og har gjort os rene derved.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

16 Og se, mine brødre, hvis vore brødre forsøger at udrydde os, se, da vil vi gemme vore sværd bort, vi vil endog grave dem dybt ned i jorden, så de må blive holdt blanke som et vidnesbyrd på den yderste dag om, at vi aldrig har brugt dem; og hvis vore brødre udrydder os, se, da går vi til vor Gud og bliver frelst.

17 Og se, det skete, at da kongen havde afsluttet disse ord, og hele folket var samlet, tog de deres sværd og alle de våben, der blev brugt til udgydelse af menneskeblod, og gravede dem dybt ned i jorden.

18 Og dette gjorde de, da det i deres øjne var et vidnesbyrd for Gud og også for mennesker om, at de aldrig igen ville bruge våben til udgydelse af menneskeblod; og dette gjorde de, idet de bevidnede og sluttede pagt med Gud om, at hellere end at udgyde deres brødres blod ville de ofre deres eget liv; og hellere end at tage noget fra en broder ville de give til ham; og hellere end at tilbringe tiden i dovenskab ville de arbejde rigeligt med deres hænder.

19 Og således ser vi, at da disse lamanitter var blevet bragt til at tro og til kundskab om sandheden, blev de vedholdende og ville lide indtil døden hellere end at begå synd; og således ser vi, at de gravede deres fredsvåben ned, eller de gravede krigsvåbnene ned for fredens skyld.

20 Og det skete, at deres brødre lamanitterne traf forberedelser til krig og kom op til Nefis land med det formål at slå kongen ihjel og at sætte en anden i hans sted og også at udrydde folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi af landet.

21 Se, da folket så, at de kom imod dem, gik de ud for at møde dem og kastede sig til jorden for dem og begyndte at påkalde Herrens navn; og således lå de i denne stilling, da lamanitterne overfaldt dem og begyndte at slå dem ihjel med sværdet.

22 Og uden således at møde nogen modstand slog de et tusind og fem af dem ihjel; og vi ved, at de er velsignede, for de er gået bort for at bo hos deres Gud.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nepi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

- 23 Se, da lamanitterne så, at deres brødre ikke ville flygte for sværdet, og at de heller ikke vendte sig til højre eller til venstre, men at de lagde sig ned og omkom og priste Gud, selv mens de omkom under sværdet –
- 24 se, da lamanitterne så dette, lod de være med at slå dem ihjel; og der var mange, hvis hjerte svulmede for dem af deres brødre, som var faldet for sværdet, for de angrede det, som de havde gjort.
- 25 Og det skete, at de kastede deres krigsvåben fra sig, og de ville ikke tage dem op igen; for de var naget af de mord, som de havde begået; og de faldt ned ligesom deres brødre og forlod sig på barmhjertigheden fra dem, hvis arme var løftet for at slå dem ihjel.
- 26 Og det skete, at Guds folk den dag tog imod flere end det antal, der var blevet slået ihjel; og de, der var blevet slået ihjel, var retfærdige folk; derfor har vi ingen grund til at tvivle på, at de blev frelst.
- 27 Og der blev ikke slået en eneste ugudelig mand ihjel blandt dem, men flere end et tusind blev bragt til kundskab om sandheden; således ser vi, at Herren virker på mange måder for sit folks frelse.
- 28 Se, den største del af de lamanitter, der slog så mange af deres brødre ihjel, var amalekitter og amulonitter, hvoraf den største del var af nehorernes orden.
- 29 Se, blandt dem, der sluttede sig til Herrens folk, var der ingen, der var amalekitter eller amulonitter, eller som var af Nehors orden, men de var virkelige efterkommere af Laman og Lemuel.
- 30 Og således kan vi tydeligt se, at efter at et folk engang er blevet oplyst af Guds Ånd og har fået stor kundskab om det, der vedrører retfærdighed og derefter er faldet fra i synd og overtrædelse, bliver de mere forhærdede, og deres tilstand bliver således værre, end hvis de aldrig havde kendt dette.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

Almas Bog 25

- 1 Og se, nu skete det, at disse lamanitter blev mere vrede, fordi de havde slået deres brødre ihjel, derfor svor de hævn over nefitterne, og de forsøgte ikke mere at slå folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi ihjel på dette tidspunkt.
- 2 Men de tog deres hære og drog over grænsen ind i Zarahemlas land og faldt over de folk, der var i Ammonihahs land og slog dem ihjel.
- 3 Og efter det udkæmpede de mange slag mod nefitterne, i hvilke de blev fordrevet og udryddet.
- 4 Og blandt de lamanitter, der blev slået ihjel, var næsten alle efterkommere af Amulon og hans brødre, som var Noas præster, og de blev slået ihjel ved nefitternes hånd;
- 5 og resten, der var flygtet ud i den østlige ødemark, og som havde tilranet sig magten og myndigheden over lamanitterne, lod mange af lamanitterne omkomme ved ild på grund af deres tro –
- 6 for mange af dem begyndte, efter at have lidt store tab og så mange trængsler, at blive vækket til erindring om de ord, som Aron og hans brødre havde prædikeret for dem i deres land; derfor begyndte de at tvivle på deres fædres overleveringer og at tro på Herren og på, at han gav nefitterne stor magt; og således blev mange af dem omvendt i ødemarken.
- 7 Og det skete, at de herskere, som var resten af Amulons børn, foranledigede, at de skulle sendes i døden, ja, alle dem, der troede på dette.
- 8 Se, dette martyrium bevirkede, at mange af deres brødre blev ophidset til vrede; og der opstod strid i ødemarken; og lamanitterne begyndte at jage efterkommerne af Amulon og hans brødre og begyndte at slå dem ihjel; og de flygtede ud i den østlige ødemark.
- 9 Og se, de bliver den dag i dag jaget af lamanitterne. Således blev de ord, som Abinadi talte, opfyldt angående efterkommerne af de præster, der lod ham lide døden ved ild.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

- 10 For han sagde til dem: Hvad I gør ved mig, er et sindbillede på det tilkommende.
- 11 Og se, Abinadi var den første, der led døden ved ild på grund af sin tro på Gud; se, det er det, han mente med, at mange skulle lide døden ved ild, ligesom han havde lidt.
- 12 Og han sagde til Noas præster, at deres efterkommere skulle lade mange sende i døden på samme måde, som han blev, og at de skulle blive spredt vidt omkring og slået ihjel, ligesom et får, der ingen hyrde har, bliver drevet og slået ihjel af vilde rovdyr; og se nu, disse ord blev bekræftet, for de blev drevet af lamanitterne, og de blev jaget, og de blev slået.
- 13 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne så, at de ikke kunne besejre nefitterne, vendte de igen tilbage til deres eget land; og mange af dem kom over for at bo i Ismaels land og Nefis land og sluttede sig til Guds folk, som var folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 14 Og de gravede også deres krigsvåben ned, ligesom deres brødre havde gjort, og de begyndte at blive et retfærdigt folk; og de vandrede på Herrens veje og bestræbte sig på at holde hans befalinger og hans lovbud.
- 15 Ja, og de holdt Moseloven, for det var nødvendigt, at de endnu skulle holde Moseloven, for den var ikke helt opfyldt. Men til trods for Moseloven så de frem til Kristi komme, da de mente, at Moseloven var et sindbillede på hans komme og troede på, at de måtte holde disse ydre skikke indtil det tidspunkt, da han skulle åbenbares for dem.
- 16 Se, de antog ikke, at frelse fandt sted ved Moseloven; men Moseloven tjente til at styrke deres tro på Kristus; og således bevarede de ved tro et håb til evig frelse, idet de forlod sig på profetiens ånd, som talte om det tilkommende.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

17 Og se nu, Ammon og Aron og Omner og Himni og deres brødre frydede sig overordentligt ved den medgang, som de havde haft blandt lamanitterne, for de så, at Herren havde givet dem i overensstemmelse med deres bønner, og at han også havde bekræftet sit ord for dem i enhver henseende.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

Almas Bog 26

- 1 Og se, dette er Ammons ord til sine brødre, og de lyder: Mine brødre og mine medbrødre, se, jeg siger jer, hvor stor grund har vi ikke til at fryde os, for kunne vi, da vi tog fra Zarahemlas land, have troet, at Gud ville have skænket os så store velsignelser?
- 2 Og se, jeg spørger: Hvilke store velsignelser har han skænket os? Kan I sige det?
- 3 Se, jeg svarer for jer, for vore brødre lamanitterne var i mørke, ja, i den mørkeste afgrund, men se, hvor mange af dem er ikke blevet bragt til at se Guds forunderlige lys! Og dette er den velsignelse, der er blevet skænket os, at vi er blevet gjort til redskaber i Guds hænder til at udføre denne store gerning.
- 4 Se, tusinder af dem fryder sig og er blevet ført ind i Guds fold.
- 5 Se, marken var moden, og velsignede er I, for I svang seglen og høstede af alle jeres kræfter, ja, hele dagen lang arbejdede I; og se antallet af jeres neg! Og de skal samles ind i laderne, så de ikke går til spilde.
- 6 Ja, de skal ikke blive slået ned af uvejret på den yderste dag; ja, ej heller skal de blive revet op af hvirvelvindene, men når uvejret kommer, er de samlet sammen på deres sted, så uvejret ikke kan nå ind til dem; ja, ej heller skal de føres af rasende vinde derhen, hvor fjenden måtte ønske at bære dem.
- 7 Men se, de er i hænderne på høstens Herre, og de er hans; og han vil oprejse dem på den yderste dag.
- 8 Velsignet være vor Guds navn! Lad os synge til hans pris, ja, lad os give tak til hans hellige navn, for han øver retfærdighed for evigt.
- 9 For hvis vi ikke var kommet op fra Zarahemlas land, ville disse vore højt elskede brødre, som har elsket os så højt, stadig have været optændt af had til os, ja, de ville også have været fremmede for Gud.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

10 Og det skete, at da Ammon havde sagt disse ord, irettesatte hans bror Aron ham, idet han sagde: Ammon, jeg frygter, at din glæde forleder dig til pral.

11 Men Ammon sagde til ham: Jeg praler ikke af min egen styrke eller af min egen visdom; men se, min glæde er fuldkommen, ja, mit hjerte er fyldt til randen af glæde, og jeg vil fryde mig i min Gud.

12 Ja, jeg ved, at jeg intet er; hvad min egen styrke angår, er jeg svag; derfor vil jeg ikke prale af mig selv, men jeg vil prale af min Gud, for med hans styrke kan jeg gøre alt; ja, se, mange mægtige mirakler har vi udført i dette land, for hvilket vi vil prise hans navn for evigt.

13 Se, hvor mange tusinde af vore brødre har han ikke løst fra helvedes smerter, og de er blevet bragt til at synge om den forløsende kærlighed, og dette på grund af kraften af hans ord, som er i os; har vi derfor ikke stor grund til at fryde os?

14 Jo, vi har grund til at prise ham for evigt, for han er Gud den Højeste og har løst vore brødre fra helvedes lænker.

15 Ja, de var omsluttet af evigtvarende mørke og undergang; men se, han har ført dem ind i sit evigtvarende lys, ja, ind i evigtvarende frelse, og de er omsluttet af den uforlignelige overflod af hans kærlighed; ja, og vi har været redskaber i hans hånd til at udføre denne store og forunderlige gerning.

16 Lad os derfor juble, ja, vi vil juble i Herren; ja, vi vil fryde os, for vor glæde er fuldkommen; ja, vi vil prise vor Gud for evigt. Se, hvem kan juble for meget i Herren? Ja, hvem kan sige for meget om hans store magt og om hans barmhjertighed og om hans langmodighed med menneskenes børn? Se, jeg siger jer, at jeg kan ikke beskrive blot det mindste af det, som jeg føler.

17 Hvem kunne have troet, at vor Gud ville have været så barmhjertig, at han ville have revet os ud af vor forfærdelige, syndefulde og besmittede tilstand?

18 Se, vi drog frem, ja, i vrede, med mægtige trusler om at tilintetgøre hans kirke.

19 Åh, hvorfor overgav han os da ikke til en forfærdelig undergang, ja, hvorfor lod han ikke sin retfærdigheds sværd falde på os og dømme os til evig fortvivelse?

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

20 Åh, det er som om min sjæl næsten flygter ved tanken derom. Se, han udøvede ikke sin retfærdighed over os, men har i sin store barmhjertighed bragt os over dødens og elendighedens evigtvarende kløft, ja, til vor sjæls frelse.

21 Og se nu, mine brødre, hvilket naturligt menneske findes der, som fatter dette? Jeg siger jer, der findes ingen, der fatter dette, undtagen den angrende.

22 Ja, den, der omvender sig og udøver tro og frembringer gode gerninger og bestandigt beder uden ophør – sådanne bliver det givet at kende Guds hemmeligheder; ja, sådanne skal det blive givet at åbenbare det, som aldrig har været åbenbaret; ja, og det skal blive givet sådanne at bringe tusinder af sjæle til omvendelse, ligesom det er blevet givet os at bringe disse vore brødre til omvendelse.

23 Se, husker I, mine brødre, at vi sagde til vore brødre i Zarahemlas land: Vi drager op til Nefis land for at prædike for vore brødre lamanitterne, og at de lo hånligt ad os?

24 For de sagde til os: Tror I, at I kan bringe lamanitterne til kundskab om sandheden? Tror I, at I kan overbevise lamanitterne om urigtigheden af deres fædres overleveringer, så stivnakket et folk som de er, hvis hjerte fryder sig ved udgydelse af blod, hvis dage er blevet tilbragt i den groveste ugudelighed, og hvis veje har været overtræderens veje fra begyndelsen? Se, mine brødre, I husker, at dette var deres sprog.

25 Og de sagde endvidere: Lad os gribe til våben mod dem, så vi kan udrydde dem og deres ugudelighed af landet, så de ikke løber os over ende og udrydder os.

26 Men se, mine elskede brødre, vi kom ud i ødemarken, ikke i den hensigt at udrydde vore brødre, men i den hensigt, at vi måske kunne frelse nogle få af deres sjæle.

27 Se, da vi følte os nedtrykte i hjertet og skulle til at vende tilbage, se, da trøstede Herren os og sagde: Drag ud blandt jeres brødre lamanitterne, og bær jeres trængsler med tålmodighed, så vil jeg give jer medgang.

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiff-necked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

28 Og se nu, vi er kommet og har været ude blandt dem; og vi har været tålmodige i vore lidelser, og vi har lidt ethvert afsavn; ja, vi har rejst fra hus til hus, idet vi har forladt os på verdens barmhjertighed – ikke på verdens barmhjertighed alene, men også på Guds barmhjertighed.

29 Og vi er gået ind i deres huse og har undervist dem, og vi har undervist dem på deres gader, ja, og vi har undervist dem på deres høje; og vi er også gået ind i deres templer og deres synagoger og har undervist dem; og vi er blevet stødt ud og spottet og spyttet på og slået på kinderne; og vi er blevet stenet og pågrebet og bundet med stærke reb og kastet i fængsel; og ved Guds kraft og visdom er vi blevet udfriet igen.

30 Og vi har lidt alle slags trængsler, og alt dette for at vi måske kunne blive midlet til at frelse en eller anden sjæl; og vi troede, at vor glæde ville blive fuldkommen, hvis vi måske kunne blive midlet til at frelse nogle.

31 Se nu, vi kan se tilbage og se frugterne af vort arbejde, og er de få? Jeg siger jer: Nej, de er mange; ja, og vi kan se deres oprigtighed på grund af deres kærlighed til deres brødre og også til os.

32 For se, de ville hellere ofre deres liv end berøve deres fjende livet, og de har gravet deres krigsvåben dybt ned i jorden på grund af kærlighed til deres brødre.

33 Og se, nu siger jeg jer: Har der været så stor kærlighed i hele landet? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, det har der ikke, ikke engang blandt nefitterne.

34 For se, de ville gribe til våben mod deres brødre; de ville ikke lade sig slå ihjel. Men se, hvor mange af disse har ikke nedlagt livet; og vi ved, at de er gået til deres Gud som følge af deres kærlighed og af deres had til synd.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Se, har vi ikke grund til at fryde os? Jo, jeg siger jer, at der aldrig siden verdens begyndelse har været mennesker, der har haft så stor grund til at fryde sig som vi; ja, og jeg er endog så henrykt i min glæde, at jeg praler i min Gud, for han har al magt, al visdom og al forstand; han fatter alt, og han er et barmhjertigt væsen, ja, til frelse for dem, der vil omvende sig og tro på hans navn.

36 Se, hvis dette er at prale, så vil jeg prale således; for dette er mit liv og mit lys, min glæde og min frelse og min forløsning fra evigtvarende jammer. Ja, velsignet er navnet på min Gud, som har været opmærksom på dette folk, der er en gren af Israels træ og er blevet borte fra sin stamme i et fremmed land; ja, jeg siger, velsignet være min Guds navn, han som har været opmærksom på os vandrere i et fremmed land.

37 Se, mine brødre, vi ser, at Gud er opmærksom på hvert enkelt folk, i hvilket land de end måtte være; ja, han tæller sine folk, og hans inderlige barmhjertighed er over hele jorden. Se, det er min glæde og min store taksigelse; ja, jeg vil give tak til min Gud for evigt. Amen.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Almas Bog 27

- 1 Se, det skete, at da de lamanitter, der var gået i krig mod nefitterne, efter deres mange anstrengelser for at udrydde dem, havde fundet ud af, at det var nyttesløst at forsøge at udrydde dem, vendte de igen tilbage til Nefis land.
- 2 Og det skete, at amalekitterne var overordentlig vrede på grund af deres tab. Og da de så, at de ikke kunne få hævn over nefitterne, begyndte de at ophidse folket til vrede mod deres brødre, folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi; derfor begyndte de igen at slå dem ihjel.
- 3 Se, dette folk nægtede igen at gribe til våben, og de lod sig slå ihjel efter deres fjenders ønsker.
- 4 Se, da Ammon og hans brødre så dette ødelæggelsesværk blandt dem, som de elskede så højt, og blandt dem, som havde elsket dem så højt – for de blev behandlet, som om de var engle sendt fra Gud for at frelse dem fra evigtvarende undergang – derfor, da Ammon og hans brødre så dette store ødelæggelsesværk, blev de grebet af medfølelse, og de sagde til kongen:
- 5 Lad os samle dette, Herrens, folk sammen, og lad os drage ned til Zarahemlas land til vore brødre, nefitterne, og flygte ud af vore fjenders hænder, så vi ikke bliver udryddet.
- 6 Men kongen sagde til dem: Se, nefitterne vil udrydde os på grund af de mange mord og synder, vi har begået mod dem.
- 7 Og Ammon sagde: Jeg vil gå hen og adspørge Herren, og hvis han siger til os, at vi skal drage ned til vore brødre, vil I da tage af sted?
- 8 Og kongen sagde til ham: Ja, hvis Herren siger til os: Drag af sted! da vil vi drage ned til vore brødre, og vi vil være deres slaver, indtil vi har godtgjort dem de mange mord og synder, som vi har begået mod dem.
- 9 Men Ammon sagde til ham: Det er imod vore brødres lov, som blev indført af min far, at der skal være slaver blandt dem; lad os derfor drage ned og forlade os på vore brødres barmhjertighed.

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

10 Men kongen sagde til ham: Adspørg Herren, og hvis han siger til os: Drag af sted! da vil vi drage af sted; ellers vil vi omkomme i dette land.

11 Og det skete, at Ammon gik hen og adspurgte Herren, og Herren sagde til ham:

12 Før dette folk ud af dette land, så de ikke omkommer; for Satan har et fast greb om hjertet på amalekitterne, som ophidser lamanitterne til vrede mod deres brødre for at slå dem ihjel; drag derfor ud af dette land; og velsignet er dette folk i denne slægt, for jeg vil bevare dem.

13 Og se, det skete, at Ammon gik hen og fortalte kongen alle de ord, som Herren havde talt til ham.

14 Og de samlede hele deres folk sammen, ja, hele Herrens folk, og samlede alle deres flokke og hjerde sammen, og de drog ud af landet og kom ud i ødemar-ken, som skilte Nefis land fra Zarahemlas land, og kom nær til landets grænser.

15 Og det skete, at Ammon sagde til dem: Se, jeg og mine brødre vil drage videre ind i Zarahemlas land, og I skal blive her, indtil vi kommer tilbage; og vi vil prøve vore brødres hjerte, om de vil, at I skal komme ind i deres land.

16 Og det skete, at mens Ammon drog videre ind i landet, at han og hans brødre mødte Alma ovre på det sted, der er omtalt; og se, det var et glædeligt møde.

17 Se, Ammons glæde var så stor, at han var fyldt; ja, han blev så opslugt i sin Guds glæde, at han blev drænet for styrke; og han faldt igen til jorden.

18 Se, var det ikke en overordentlig stor glæde? Se, det er en glæde, som ingen får, undtagen den, der oprigtigt ang-
rer og ydmygt stræber efter lykke.

19 Se, Almas glæde over at møde sine brødre var virkelig stor, og også Arons og Omners og Himnis glæde; men se, deres glæde var ikke sådan, at den oversteg deres kræfter.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

20 Og se, det skete, at Alma ledsagede sine brødre tilbage til Zarahemlas land, ja, til sit eget hus. Og de gik hen og fortalte overdommeren alt det, der var hændt dem i Nefis land blandt deres brødre, lamanitterne.

21 Og det skete, at overdommeren sendte en proklamation ud over hele landet, idet han ønskede af folket deres stemme med hensyn til at give adgang til deres brødre, som var folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi.

22 Og det skete, at folkets stemme lød således: Se, vi vil afgive Jershons land, som ligger mod øst ved havet, som støder op til landet Overflod, og som ligger syd for landet Overflod; og dette land, Jershon, er det land, som vi vil give til vore brødre som arvelod.

23 Og se, vi vil opstille vore hære mellem landet Jershon og landet Nefi, så vi kan beskytte vore brødre i landet Jershon; og dette gør vi for vore brødre som følge af deres frygt for, at de ved at gribe til våben mod deres brødre skal begå synd; og denne deres store frygt skyldtes deres oprigtige anger, som de følte som følge af deres mange mord og deres forfærdelige ugudelighed.

24 Og se nu, dette vil vi gøre for vore brødre, så de kan arve landet Jershon; og vi vil beskytte dem mod deres fjender med vore hære på betingelse af, at de vil give os en del af deres gods for at hjælpe os, så vi kan opretholde vore hære.

25 Se, det skete, at da Ammon havde hørt dette, vendte han og sammen med ham også Alma tilbage til folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi ud i ødemarken, hvor de havde slået deres telte op, og kundgjorde alt dette for dem. Og Alma fortalte dem også om sin omvendelse sammen med Ammon og Aron og sine brødre.

26 Og det skete, at det vakte stor glæde blandt dem. Og de drog ned i Jershons land og tog Jershons land i besiddelse; og de blev af nefitterne kaldt Ammons folk; derfor blev de betegnet ved dette navn fra da af.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

27 Og de var blandt Nefis folk og blev også regnet blandt det folk, som tilhørte Guds kirke. Og de var også kendetegnet ved deres hengivenhed over for Gud og også over for mennesker; for de var fuldkommen ærlige og retsindige i alt; og de var standhaftige i troen på Kristus, ja, indtil enden.

28 Og de så på udgydelsen af deres brødres blod med den største afsky; og de kunne aldrig overtales til at gribe til våben mod deres brødre; og de betragtede aldrig døden med nogen som helst grad af skræk på grund af deres håb og syn på Kristus og opstandelsen. Derfor var døden for dem opslugt ved Kristi sejr over den.

29 Derfor ville de hellere lide døden på den mest pinefulde og kvalfulde måde, som deres brødre kunne volde dem, end de ville gribe til sværdet eller sablen for at slå dem ihjel.

30 Og således var de et hengivent og elsket folk, et af Herren rigt begunstiget folk.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Almas Bog 28

- 1 Og se, det skete, at efter at Ammons folk havde slået sig ned i Jershons land, og en menighed også var blevet oprettet i Jershons land, og nefitternes hære var blevet opstillet rundt omkring Jershons land, ja, ved alle grænserne rundt omkring Zarahemlas land, se, da var lamaniternes hære fulgt efter deres brødre ud i ødemarken.
- 2 Og det kom således til et kolossalt slag, ja, et sådant slag, som man aldrig før havde kendt blandt alle folk i landet fra den tid, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem; ja, og ti tusinder af lamanitterne blev slået ihjel og spredt vidt omkring.
- 3 Ja, og der fandt også en kolossal nedslagtning sted blandt Nefis folk; alligevel blev lamanitterne fordrevet og spredt, og Nefis folk vendte igen tilbage til deres land.
- 4 Og se, dette var en tid, da der hørtes et stort sørgeudbrud og klageråb overalt i hele landet blandt hele Nefis folk –
- 5 ja, råbene fra enker, der sørgede over deres mænd, og også fra fædre, der sørgede over deres sønner, og fra datteren over broderen, ja, fra broderen over faderen; og således hørtes sørgeudbruddet blandt alle dem, der sørgede over deres slægtninge, som var blevet slået ihjel.
- 6 Og se, dette var visselig en sorgfuld dag; ja, en tid med alvor, og en tid med megen faste og bøn.
- 7 Og således ender det femtende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 8 Og dette er beretningen om Ammon og hans brødre, deres rejser i Nefis land, deres lidelser i landet, deres sorger og deres trængsler og deres ufattelige glæde og deres brødres modtagelse og sikkerhed i Jershons land. Og se, måtte Herren, alle menneskers forløser, velsigne deres sjæl for evigt.
- 9 Og dette er beretningen om krigene og stridighederne blandt nefitterne og også om krigene mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne; og det femtende år af dommernes regeringstid er endt.

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

10 Og fra det første år til det femtende har medført udryddelsen af mange tusinde liv; ja, den har medført et forfærdeligt syn af blodsudgydelse.

11 Og ligene af mange tusinde er blevet lagt ned i jorden, mens ligene af andre tusinde hensmuldrer i dynger på jordens overflade; ja, og mange tusinde sørger over tabet af deres slægtninge, fordi de i overensstemmelse med Herrens løfter har grund til at frygte, at disse er overgivet til en tilstand af uendelig jammer.

12 Mens mange tusinde andre oprigtigt sørger over tabet af deres slægtninge, så jubler og fryder de sig dog i håbet og véd endog i overensstemmelse med Herrens løfter, at de skal blive oprejst for at bo ved Guds højre hånd i en tilstand af aldrig ophørende lykke.

13 Og således ser vi, hvor stor menneskets ulighed er på grund af synd og overtrædelse og Djævelens magt, som er resultat af de snedige planer, som han har udtænkt for at besnære menneskenes hjerte.

14 Og således ser vi det store kald til mennesker til flittigt at arbejde i Herrens vingårde; og således ser vi den store årsag til sorg og også til glæde – sorg på grund af død og ødelæggelse blandt menneskene, og glæde på grund af Kristi lys til liv.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Almas Bog 29

- 1 O, gid jeg var en engel og kunne få mit hjertes ønske opfyldt, at jeg kunne drage ud og tale som Guds basun med en røst, der kunne få jorden til at ryste, og råbe omvendelse til hvert eneste folk!
- 2 Ja, som med en tordenrøst ville jeg kundgøre omvendelse og forløsningsplanen for hver eneste sjæl, at de skulle omvende sig og komme til vor Gud, så der ikke skulle være mere sorg på hele jordens overflade.
- 3 Men se, jeg er et menneske og synder i mit ønske, for jeg burde være tilfreds med det, som Herren har tildelt mig.
- 4 Jeg burde ikke med mine ønsker rive op i en retfærdig Guds faste forordning; for jeg ved, at han giver menneskene efter deres ønske, hvad enten det er til død eller til liv; ja, jeg ved, at han tildeler menneskene, ja, forordner dem forordninger, der er uforanderlige, efter deres vilje, hvad enten den er til frelse eller til undergang.
- 5 Ja, og jeg ved, at godt og ondt er blevet lagt frem for alle mennesker; den, der ikke kender godt fra ondt, er uden skyld, men den, der kender godt og ondt, til ham gives der efter hans ønsker, hvad enten han ønsker godt eller ondt, liv eller død, glæde eller samvittighedsnag.
- 6 Se, eftersom jeg ved dette, hvorfor skulle jeg da ønske mere end at udføre det arbejde, som jeg er blevet kaldet til?
- 7 Hvorfor skulle jeg ønske, at jeg var en engel, så jeg kunne tale til alle jordens ender?
- 8 For se, Herren tilsteder alle folkeslag, at nogen fra deres eget folkeslag og tungemål underviser i hans ord, ja, i visdom alt det, som han finder tjenligt, at de skal have; derfor ser vi, at Herren giver råd i visdom i overensstemmelse med det, der er retfærdigt og sandt.
- 9 Jeg kender det, som Herren har befalet mig, og jeg fryder mig ved det. Jeg praler ikke af mig selv, men jeg fryder mig ved det, som Herren har befalet mig; ja, og det er min fryd, at jeg måske kan blive et redskab i Guds hænder til at bringe en eller anden sjæl til omvendelse, og det er min glæde.

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

- 10 Og se, når jeg ser mange af mine brødre oprigtigt angrende og komme til Herren deres Gud, da fyldes min sjæl med glæde, da erindrer jeg, hvad Herren har gjort for mig, ja, at han har hørt min bøn, ja, da erindrer jeg hans barmhjertige arm, som han strakte ud mod mig.
- 11 Ja, og jeg erindrer også mine fædres fangenskab; for jeg ved visselig, at Herren udfriede dem af trældom og derved oprettede sin kirke; ja, Gud Herren, Abrahams Gud, Isaks Gud og Jakobs Gud udfriede dem af trældom.
- 12 Ja, jeg har altid erindret mine fædres fangenskab, og den selv samme Gud, som udfriede dem af egypternes hænder, udfriede dem af trældom.
- 13 Ja, og den selv samme Gud oprettede sin kirke blandt dem; ja, og den selv samme Gud har kaldet mig med et helligt kald til at prædike ordet for dette folk og har givet mig megen medgang, hvorover min glæde er fuldkommen.
- 14 Men jeg glæder mig ikke alene over min egen medgang, men min glæde er mere fuldkommen på grund af den medgang, som mine brødre, der har været oppe i Nefis land, har haft.
- 15 Se, de har arbejdet overordentlig hårdt og har frembragt megen frugt; og hvor stor skal ikke deres løn blive!
- 16 Se, når jeg tænker på disse mine brødres medgang, er det, som om min sjæl bliver borttrykket, ja, som om den blev adskilt fra legemet, så stor er min glæde.
- 17 Og se, måtte Gud tilstede disse mine brødre, at de må sætte sig i Guds rige, ja, og også alle de, der er frugten af deres arbejde, at de ikke mere skal forlade det, men at de må prise ham for evigt. Og måtte Gud tilstede, at det må ske ifølge mine ord, ligesom jeg har talt. Amen.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Almas Bog 30

- 1 Se, nu skete det, efter at Ammons folk havde bosat sig i Jershons land, ja, og også efter at lamanitterne var blevet drevet ud af landet, og deres døde var blevet begravet af landets folk –
- 2 se, deres døde blev ikke talt på grund af det store antal af dem, ej heller blev nefitternes døde talt – men det skete, efter at de havde begravet deres døde og ligeledes efter dagene med faste og sørgeudbrud og bøn (og det var i det sekstende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk), at der begyndte at blive vedvarende fred overalt i hele landet.
- 3 Og folket bestræbte sig på at holde Herrens befalinger; og de var nidkære med hensyn til at iagttage Guds ordinancer i henhold til Moseloven, for de havde fået forklaret, at de skulle holde Moseloven, indtil den skulle blive opfyldt.
- 4 Og således var der ingen uroligheder blandt folket i hele det sekstende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 5 Og det skete, at der i begyndelsen af det syttende år af dommernes regeringstid stadig var vedvarende fred.
- 6 Men det skete i slutningen af det syttende år, at der kom en mand til Zarahemlas land, og han var en antikrist, for han begyndte at prædike for folket imod de profetier, som var blevet talt af profeterne angående Kristi komme.
- 7 Se, der var ingen lov mod et menneskes tro, for det var i direkte modstrid med Guds befalinger, at der skulle være en lov, der ville stille mennesker ulige.
- 8 For således lyder skriftstedet: Vælg i dag, hvem I vil tjene.
- 9 Se, hvis et menneske ønskede at tjene Gud, var det hans privilegium, eller rettere, hvis han troede på Gud, var det hans privilegium at tjene ham; men hvis han ikke troede på ham, var der ingen lov, der kunne straffe ham.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

10 Men hvis han myrdede, blev han straffet med døden; og hvis han røvede, blev han også straffet; og hvis han stjal, blev han også straffet; og hvis han begik ægteskabsbrud, blev han også straffet; ja, for al denne ugudelighed blev de straffet.

11 For der var en lov om, at mennesker skulle dømmes efter deres forbrydelser. Alligevel var der ingen lov mod et menneskes tro, derfor blev et menneske alene straffet for de forbrydelser, det havde begået; derfor var alle mennesker stillet lige.

12 Og denne antikrist, hvis navn var Korihor (og loven kunne ikke anvendes på ham), begyndte at prædike for folket, at der ingen Kristus skulle komme. Og på denne måde prædikede han, idet han sagde:

13 O I, der er bundet af et tåbeligt og et tomt håb, hvorfor bebyrder I jer selv med sådanne tåbeligheder? Hvorfor ser I hen til en Kristus? For ingen kan vide noget om det, der skal komme.

14 Se, det, som I kalder profetier, og som I siger er blevet overdraget af hellige profeter, se, det er jeres fædres tåbelige overleveringer.

15 Hvorledes ved I, at de er sande? Se, I kan ikke kende til det, som I ikke ser; derfor kan I ikke vide, at der skal komme en Kristus.

16 I ser fremad og siger, at I ser forladelse for jeres synder. Men se, det er følgen af et vanvittigt sind, og denne forstyrrelse i jeres sind sker på grund af jeres fædres overleveringer, der forleder jer til en tro på noget, der ikke er sådan.

17 Og meget mere sådant sagde han til dem, idet han fortalte dem, at der ikke kunne foretages nogen soning af menneskenes synder, men at det i dette liv gik enhver i forhold til skabningens adfærd, derfor havde enhver fremgang i forhold til sine naturlige talenter, og at enhver tilegnede sig i forhold til sin styrke, og hvad end et menneske gjorde, var det ingen forbrydelse.

18 Og således prædikede han for dem og forledte manges hjerte og fik dem til at knejse med hovedet i deres ugudelighed, ja, forledte mange kvinder og også mænd til at begå utugtigheder, idet han fortalte dem, at når et menneske var død, så var det forbi.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

19 Se, denne mand drog også over til Jershons land for at prædike dette blandt Ammons folk, som engang var det lamanitiske folk.

20 Men se, de var mere vise end mange af nefitterne, for de greb ham og bandt ham og førte ham frem for Ammon, som var højpræst over dette folk.

21 Og det skete, at han foranledigede, at han skulle føres ud af landet. Og han kom over til Gideons land og begyndte også at prædike for dem; og her havde han ikke megen medgang, for han blev grebet og bundet og ført frem for højpræsten og også for overdommeren i landet.

22 Og det skete, at højpræsten sagde til ham: Hvorfor drager du omkring og fordrejer Herrens veje? Hvorfor lærer du dette folk, at der ingen Kristus skal komme, så du derved afbryder deres glædesudbrud? Hvorfor taler du imod alle de hellige profeters profetier?

23 Se, højpræstens navn var Giddona. Og Korihor sagde til ham: Fordi jeg ikke underviser i jeres fædres tåbelige overleveringer, og fordi jeg ikke lærer dette folk at lade sig binde af tåbelige ordinancer og skikke, som fordums præster har foreskrevet for at tilrane sig magt og myndighed over dem og holde dem i uvidenhed, så de ikke skal løfte hovedet, men blive holdt nede som følge af dine ord.

24 I siger, at dette folk her er et frit folk. Se, jeg siger, at de er i trældom. I siger, at disse gamle profetier er sande. Se, jeg siger, at I ikke ved, at de er sande.

25 I siger, at dette folk er et skyldigt og et faldent folk på grund af en forælders overtrædelse. Se, jeg siger, at et barn ikke er skyldigt på grund af sine forældre.

26 Og I siger også, at Kristus skal komme. Men se, jeg siger, at I ikke ved, at der skal komme en Kristus. Og I siger også, at han skal blive slået ihjel for verdens synder –

Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

27 og således forleder I dette folk efter jeres fædres tåbelige overleveringer og efter jeres egne ønsker; og I holder dem nede, ja, som var de i trældom, så I kan mæske jer ved deres hænders arbejde, så de ikke tør se op med frimodighed, og så de ikke tør nyde deres rettigheder og privilegier.

28 Ja, de tør ikke gøre brug af det, som er deres eget, for ikke at fornærme deres præster, som bebyrder dem efter deres ønsker, og som ved deres overleveringer og deres drømme og deres luner og deres syner og deres foregivne hemmeligheder har fået dem til at tro, at de, hvis de ikke gør i overensstemmelse med deres ord, vil fornærme et ukendt væsen, som de siger er Gud – et væsen, som aldrig har været set eller kendt, og som aldrig har været til eller nogen sinde vil blive til.

29 Se, da højpræsten og overdommeren så hans hjertes hårdhed, ja, da de så, at han endog ville håne Gud, ville de ikke svare ham på hans ord; men de lod ham binde, og de overgav ham i betjentenes hænder og sendte ham til Zarahemlas land, for at han kunne blive fremstillet for Alma og overdommeren, som var regent over hele landet.

30 Og det skete, at da han blev fremstillet for Alma og overdommeren, fortsatte han på samme måde, som han gjorde i Gideons land, ja, han fortsatte med at spotte Gud.

31 Og han førte sig frem med store, højrøstede ord over for Alma og hånede præsterne og lærerne, idet han beskyldte dem for at forlede folket efter deres fædres fjolde overleveringer med det formål at mæske sig ved folkets arbejde.

32 Se, Alma sagde til ham: Du ved, at vi ikke mæsker os ved dette folks arbejde; for se, jeg har lige fra begyndelsen af dommernes regeringstid indtil nu arbejdet med mine egne hænder for mit underhold på trods af mine mange rejser rundt omkring i landet for at kundgøre Guds ord for mit folk.

33 Og på trods af det meget arbejde, som jeg har udført i kirken, har jeg aldrig modtaget så meget som én senine for mit arbejde; ej heller har nogen af mine brødre, undtagen på dommersædet; og da har vi kun fået for vor tid i henhold til loven.

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

34 Og se, hvis vi ikke får noget for vort arbejde i kirken, hvad gavner det os da at arbejde i kirken, hvis det ikke var for at kundgøre sandheden, så vi kan fryde os ved vore brødres glæde?

35 Så hvorfor siger du, at vi prædiker for dette folk for at få vinding, når du selv ved, at vi ikke får nogen vinding? Og se, tror du, at vi bedrager dette folk, hvilket giver dem så stor glæde i hjertet?

36 Og Korihor svarede ham: Ja.

37 Og da sagde Alma til ham: Tror du, at der er en Gud?

38 Og han svarede: Nej.

39 Se, Alma sagde til ham: Vil du igen fornægte, at der er en Gud og også fornægte Kristus? For se, jeg siger dig, at jeg ved, at der er en Gud, og også at Kristus skal komme.

40 Og se, hvad bevis har du for, at der ingen Gud er, eller at Kristus ikke kommer? Jeg siger dig, at du intet har undtagen dine ord alene.

41 Men se, jeg har alting som et vidnesbyrd om, at dette er sandt; og du har også alting som et vidnesbyrd for dig om, at det er sandt, og vil du fornægte det? Tror du på, at dette er sandt?

42 Se, jeg ved, at du tror, men du er besat af en løgnagtig ånd, og du har aflagt Guds Ånd, så den ikke kan finde plads hos dig; men Djævelen har magt over dig, og han leder dig omkring og udvirker anslag, så han kan fordærve Guds børn.

43 Og nu sagde Korihor til Alma: Hvis du vil vise mig et tegn, så jeg kan blive overbevist om, at der er en Gud, ja, vis mig, at han har magt, og så vil jeg blive overbevist om sandheden af dine ord.

44 Men Alma sagde til ham: Du har fået tegn nok, vil du friste din Gud? Vil du sige: Vis mig et tegn, når du har alle disse dine brødres vidnesbyrd og også alle de hellige profeters? Du har skrifterne for dig, ja, og alting viser, at der er en Gud, ja, selve jorden og alt, der er på dens overflade, ja, og dens bevægelse, ja, og også alle planeterne, som bevæger sig i deres regelmæssige bane, vidner om, at der er en allerhøjeste skaber.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

45 Og dog drager du omkring og forleder dette folks hjerte, idet du aflægger vidnesbyrd for dem om, at der ingen Gud er. Og vil du stadig fornægte til trods for alle disse vidnesbyrd? Og han sagde: Ja, jeg vil fornægte, medmindre du viser mig et tegn.

46 Og se, det skete, at Alma sagde til ham: Se, jeg er bedrøvet over dit hjertes hårdhed, ja, at du stadig vil modsætte dig sandhedens ånd, så din sjæl går fortabt.

47 Men se, det er bedre, at din sjæl går tabt, end at du skulle være et redskab til at føre mange sjæle ned i fordærv ved dine løgnagtige og smigrende ord; hvis du derfor igen fornægter, se, da skal Gud slå dig, så du bliver stum, så du aldrig mere skal åbne din mund, så du aldrig mere skal bedrage dette folk.

48 Se, Korihor sagde til ham: Jeg fornægter ikke eksistensen af en Gud, men jeg tror ikke på, at der er en Gud; og jeg siger også, at du ikke ved, at der er en Gud; og medmindre du viser mig et tegn, vil jeg ikke tro.

49 Se, Alma sagde til ham: Dette vil jeg give dig som et tegn, at du skal blive gjort stum i overensstemmelse med mine ord, og jeg siger i Guds navn: Du skal blive gjort stum, så du ikke mere skal have mæle.

50 Se, da Alma havde sagt disse ord, blev Korihor gjort stum, så han i overensstemmelse med Almas ord ikke havde mæle.

51 Og se, da overdommeren så det, rakte han hånden ud og skrev til Korihor, således: Er du overbevist om Guds magt? På hvem ønskede du, at Alma skulle vise sit tegn? Ønskede du, at han skulle plage andre for at vise dig et tegn? Se, han har vist dig et tegn, og vil du nu fortsat fornægte?

52 Og Korihor rakte hånden frem og skrev således: Jeg ved, at jeg er stum, for jeg kan ikke tale; og jeg ved, at intet undtagen Guds kraft kunne bringe dette over mig; ja, og jeg har altid vidst, at der var en Gud.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

53 Men se, Djævelen har bedraget mig, for han viste sig for mig i en engels skikkelse og sagde til mig: Drag ud, og vind dette folk tilbage, for de er alle faret vild efter en ukendt Gud. Og han sagde til mig: Der er ingen Gud; ja, han lærte mig, hvad jeg skulle sige. Og jeg har forkyndt hans ord, og jeg forkyndte dem, fordi de var behagelige for det kødelige sind, og jeg forkyndte dem, så jeg til sidst havde megen medgang, således at jeg sandelig troede, at de var sande; og af denne grund modstod jeg sandheden, så jeg til sidst har bragt denne store forbandelse over mig.

54 Se, da han havde sagt dette, bad han indtrængende Alma om at bede til Gud, så forbandelsen kunne blive taget fra ham.

55 Men Alma sagde til ham: Hvis denne forbandelse blev taget fra dig, ville du igen forlede dette folks hjerte, derfor skal det ske dig som Herren vil.

56 Og det skete, at forbandelsen ikke blev taget bort fra Korihor, men han blev stødt ud og gik fra hus til hus og tiggede føden.

57 Se, efterretningen om, hvad der var hændt Korihor, blev straks forkyndt ud over hele landet; ja, proklamationen blev sendt ud af overdommeren til alle folk i landet, idet den kundgjorde for dem, som havde troet på Korihors ord, at de hastigt skulle omvende sig, for at de samme straffedomme ikke skulle komme over dem.

58 Og det skete, at de alle blev overbevist om Korihors ugudelighed, derfor blev de alle igen omvendt til Herren; og dette gjorde ende på ugudeligheden efter Korihors vis. Og Korihor gik omkring fra hus til hus og tiggede mad til sit underhold.

59 Og det skete, at mens han gik omkring blandt folket – ja, blandt et folk, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne og kaldt sig zoramitter, eftersom de blev ledet af en mand, hvis navn var Zoram – og mens han gik omkring blandt dem, se, da blev han løbet omkuld og trådt ned, indtil han døde.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, inasmuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

60 Og således ser vi enden for den, som fordrejer
Herrens veje; og således ser vi, at Djævelen ikke støtter
sine børn på den yderste dag, men hastigt drager dem
ned til helvede.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the
ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not
support his children at the last day, but doth speedily
drag them down to hell.

Almas Bog 3 I

- 1 Se, det skete efter Korihors endeligt, at Alma, der havde fået tidender om, at zoramitterne fordrejede Herrens veje, og at Zoram, der var deres leder, forledte folkets hjerte til at bøje sig for stumme afguder, igen begyndte at blive syg om hjertet på grund af folkets ugudelighed.
- 2 For det var årsag til stor sorg for Alma at kende til ugudelighed blandt sit folk; derfor var han overordentlig sorgfuld i hjertet på grund af zoramitternes adskillelse fra nefitterne.
- 3 Se, zoramitterne havde samlet sig i et land, som de kaldte Antionum, som lå øst for Zarahemlas land, som næsten grænsede op til kysten, der lå syd for Jershons land, og som også grænsede op til ødemarken mod syd, hvilken ødemark var fuld af lamanitter.
- 4 Se, nefitterne frygtede meget, at zoramitterne ville optage forbindelse med lamanitterne, og at det ville blive årsagen til store tab for nefitterne.
- 5 Og se, eftersom forkyndelsen af ordet havde en stærk tendens til at få folket til at gøre det, der var retfærdigt – ja, den havde haft en større virkning på folkets sind end sværdet eller noget som helst andet, der var hændt dem – mente Alma derfor, at det var tjenligt, at de skulle prøve virkeevnen af Guds ord.
- 6 Derfor tog han Ammon og Aron og Omner; og Himni efterlod han i menigheden i Zarahemla; men de tre førstnævnte tog han med sig og også Amulek og Ze'ezrom, der var i Melek; og han tog også to af sine sønner med sig.
- 7 Se, den ældste af sine sønner tog han ikke med sig, og hans navn var Helaman; men navnene på dem, som han tog med sig, var Shibløn og Corianton; og dette er navnene på dem, som drog med ham ud blandt zoramitterne for at prædike ordet for dem.
- 8 Se, zoramitterne havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne, derfor havde de fået Guds ord prædikeret for sig.

Alma 3 I

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shibløn and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

9 Men de var faldet i stor vildfarelse, for de ville ikke bestræbe sig på at holde Guds befalinger og hans lovbud i henhold til Moseloven.

10 Ej heller ville de iagttage kirkens skikke om daglig at fortsætte i bøn og anrøbelse til Gud, så de ikke skulle falde i fristelse.

11 Ja, kort sagt fordrejede de Herrens veje i såre mange tilfælde; af denne grund drog Alma og hans brødre derfor ind i landet for at prædike ordet for dem.

12 Se, da de var kommet ind i landet, se, da opdagede de til deres forbavselse, at zoramitterne havde bygget synagoger, og at de samledes én dag om ugen, hvilken dag de kaldte Herrens dag; og de tilbad på en måde, som Alma og hans brødre aldrig havde set;

13 for de havde bygget et sted midt i deres synagoger, et sted til at stå på, som ragede højt op over hovedet; og toppen af det gav kun plads til én person.

14 Derfor måtte hver den, der ønskede at tilbede, gå op og stå på toppen af det og strække sine arme op mod himlen og råbe med høj røst og sige:

15 Hellige, hellige Gud! Vi tror, at du er Gud, og vi tror, at du er hellig, og at du var en ånd, og at du er en ånd, og at du vil være en ånd for evigt.

16 Hellige Gud, vi tror på, at du har adskilt os fra vore brødre; og vi tror ikke på vore brødres overlevering, som er blevet overdraget dem på grund af deres fædres barnagtighed; men vi tror på, at du har udvalgt os til at være dine hellige børn; og også at du har kundgjort for os, at der ingen Kristus skal komme.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

17 Men du er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt; og du har udvalgt os, for at vi skal blive frelst, mens alle omkring os er udvalgt til ved din vrede at blive styrtet ned til helvede. For denne hellighed, o Gud, takker vi dig; og vi takker dig også for, at du har udvalgt os, så vi ikke bliver forledt efter vore brødres tåbelige overleveringer, som binder dem fast til en tro på Kristus, hvilket leder deres hjerte til at vandre langt bort fra dig, vor Gud.

18 Og vi takker dig igen, o Gud, for at vi er et udvalgt og et helligt folk. Amen.

19 Se, det skete, at efter at Alma og hans brødre og hans sønner havde hørt disse bønner, var de forbavsede over al måde.

20 For se, hver mand gik op og opsendte de samme bønner.

21 Se, stedet blev af dem kaldt Rameumptom, der, når det bliver oversat, betyder den hellige forhøjning.

22 Se, fra denne forhøjning opsendte hver mand den selv samme bøn til Gud, idet de takkede deres Gud for, at de var udvalgt af ham, og at han ikke forledte dem efter deres brødres overlevering, og at deres hjerte ikke var borttrøvet til at tro noget, som skulle komme, og som de intet vidste om.

23 Se, efter at hele folket havde opsendt tak på denne måde, vendte de tilbage til deres hjem og talte aldrig mere om deres Gud, før de igen havde samlet sig ved den hellige forhøjning for at opsende tak på deres måde.

24 Se, da Alma så dette, blev han bedrøvet i hjertet, for han så, at de var et ugudeligt og afsporet folk; ja, han så, at de lod hjertet være optaget af guld og af sølv og af alle slags fine ejendele.

25 Ja, og han så også, at deres hjerte i deres stolthed var indbildsk til stort praleri.

26 Og han opløftede sin røst til himlen og råbte, idet han sagde: O, hvor længe, o Herre, vil du tillade, at dine tjenere skal bo hernede i kødet for at se så grov ugudelighed blandt menneskenes børn.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

27 Se, o Gud, de anråber dig, og dog er deres hjerte opslugt af deres stolthed. Se, o Gud, de anråber dig med deres mund, mens de er opblæste i storhed over verdens tomme ting.

28 Se, o min Gud, deres kostbare klæder og deres ringe og deres armbånd og deres guldsmykker og alle deres kostbarheder, som de smykker sig med; og se, de lader hjertet være optaget af dem, og dog anråber de dig og siger: Vi takker dig, o Gud, for vi er et udvalgt folk for dig, mens andre skal fortæbes.

29 Ja, og de siger, at du har kundgjort for dem, at der ingen Kristus skal komme.

30 O, Herre Gud, hvor længe vil du tillade, at der skal være en sådan ugudelighed og troløshed blandt dette folk? O Herre, vil du give mig styrke, så jeg kan bære mine skrøbeligheder? For jeg er skrøbelig, og en sådan ugudelighed blandt dette folk smerter min sjæl.

31 O Herre, mit hjerte er overordentlig sorgfuldt, vil du trøste min sjæl i Kristus? O Herre, vil du give mig, at jeg må have styrke, så jeg med tålmodighed kan lide disse trængsler, som kommer over mig på grund af dette folks ugudelighed?

32 O Herre, vil du trøste min sjæl og give mig medgang og ligeledes mine medarbejdere, som er med mig – ja, Ammon og Aron og Omner og også Amulek og Ze'ezrom og mine to sønner – ja, vil du trøste alle disse, o Herre? Ja, vil du trøste deres sjæl i Kristus?

33 Vil du give dem, at de må have styrke, så de kan bære de trængsler, der skal komme over dem på grund af dette folks syndighed?

34 O Herre, vil du give os, at det må lykkes for os at bringe dem tilbage til dig i Kristus?

35 Se, o Herre, deres sjæl er dyrebar, og mange af dem er vore brødre; giv os derfor, o Herre, magt og visdom, så vi kan bringe disse vore brødre tilbage til dig.

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

36 Se, det skete, at da Alma havde sagt disse ord, lagde han hænderne på alle dem, der var med ham. Og se, da han lagde hænderne på dem, blev de fyldt af den hellige Ånd.

37 Og efter dette skiltes de, den ene fra den anden, og gjorde sig ingen bekymring om, hvad de skulle spise, eller hvad de skulle drikke, eller hvad de skulle tage på.

38 Og Herren sørgede for dem, så de ikke skulle sulte, ej heller skulle de tørste; ja, og han gav dem også styrke, så de ikke skulle lide nogen slags trængsler, uden at de blev opslugt i glæden over Kristus. Se, dette var i overensstemmelse med Almas bøn, og det var, fordi han bad i tro.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Almas Bog 32

- 1 Og det skete, at de drog ud og begyndte at prædike Guds ord for folket, idet de gik ind i deres synagoger og ind i deres huse; ja, de prædikede endog ordet på deres gader.
- 2 Og det skete, at de efter meget arbejde blandt dem begyndte at få medgang blandt den fattige klasse af folk; for se, de blev stødt ud af synagogerne på grund af deres klæders grovhed.
- 3 Derfor fik de ikke lov til at komme ind i deres synagoger for at dyrke Gud, da de blev regnet for tilsølede; derfor var de fattige; ja, de blev af deres brødre regnet for slagger; derfor var de fattige, hvad angår det, der hører verden til; og de var også fattige i hjertet.
- 4 Se, mens Alma underviste og talte til folket på højen Onida, kom der en stor mængde til ham, som var dem, om hvem vi har talt, og som var fattige i hjertet på grund af deres fattigdom, hvad angår det, der hører verden til.
- 5 Og de kom til Alma, og den, der var mest fremtrædende blandt dem, sagde til ham: Se, hvad skal disse mine brødre gøre, for de bliver foragtet af alle mennesker på grund af deres fattigdom, ja, og især af vore præster, for de har stødt os ud af vore synagoger, som vi har arbejdet rigeligt med vore egne hænder for at bygge; og de har stødt os ud på grund af vor overordentlig store fattigdom, og vi har ikke noget sted at dyrke vor Gud; og se, hvad skal vi gøre?
- 6 Og se, da Alma hørte dette, vendte han sig straks om med ansigtet vendt lige mod ham, og han så med stor glæde, for han så, at deres trængsler virkelig havde ydmyget dem, og at de var beredte til at høre ordet.
- 7 Derfor sagde han ikke mere til den anden mængde, men han strakte hånden ud og råbte til dem, som han så, og som oprigtigt angrede, og sagde til dem:
- 8 Jeg ser, at I er ydmyge i hjertet, og om så er, da er I velsignede.
- 9 Se, jeres broder har sagt: Hvad skal vi gøre, for vi er blevet stødt ud af vore synagoger, så vi ikke kan tilbede vor Gud?

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

10 Se, jeg siger jer: Mener I, at I ikke kan tilbede Gud, uden at det nødvendigvis sker i jeres synagoger?

11 Og endvidere vil jeg spørge jer: Mener I, at I ikke må tilbede Gud mere end én gang om ugen?

12 Jeg siger jer: Det er godt, at I er blevet stødt ud af jeres synagoger, så I kan være ydmyge, og så I kan lære visdom, for det er nødvendigt, at I skal lære visdom; og det er fordi, at I er blevet stødt ud, og at I bliver foragtet af jeres brødre på grund af jeres overordentlig store fattigdom, at I er bragt til at være ydmyge i hjertet; for I er bragt til at være ydmyge af nødvendighed.

13 Og se, fordi I bliver nødt til at være ydmyge, er I velsignede, for et menneske stræber somme tider efter at omvende sig, hvis han bliver nødt til at være ydmyg; og visselig, hver den, der omvender sig, skal finde barmhjertighed; og den, der finder barmhjertighed og holder ud til enden, han skal blive frelst.

14 Og se, som jeg sagde til jer, at fordi I blev nødt til at være ydmyge, så blev I velsignet; mener I da ikke, at de, som selv oprigtigt ydmyger sig på grund af ordet, er mere velsignede?

15 Jo, den, der oprigtigt ydmyger sig og omvender sig fra sine synder og holder ud til enden, han skal blive velsignet – ja, meget mere velsignet end de, der bliver nødt til at være ydmyge på grund af deres overordentlig store fattigdom.

16 Velsignede er derfor de, der ydmyger sig uden at være nødt til at være ydmyge; eller rettere med andre ord, velsignet er den, der tror på Guds ord og bliver døbt uden stædighed i hjertet, ja, uden at være blevet bragt til at kende ordet eller endog være blevet nødt til at kende det, før de vil tro.

17 Ja, der er mange, der siger: Hvis du vil vise os et tegn fra himlen, så kan vi vide det med vished, så vil vi tro.

18 Se, jeg spørger: Er det tro? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, for hvis et menneske ved noget, har han ingen grund til at tro, for han ved det.

19 Og se, hvor meget mere forbandet er ikke den, der kender Guds vilje og ikke gør den, end den, der blot tror, eller blot har årsag til at tro, og falder i overtrædelse?

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

20 Se, derom må I dømme. Se, jeg siger jer, at det er på den ene side, som det er på den anden; og det skal ske enhver efter hans gerninger.

21 Og se, som jeg sagde angående tro: Tro er ikke at have en fuldkommen kundskab om noget; hvis I derfor har tro, har I håb om det, som ikke ses, men som er sandt.

22 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, og jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at Gud er barmhjertig mod alle, som tror på hans navn; derfor ønsker han for det første, at I skal tro, nemlig på hans ord.

23 Og se, han sender sit ord ved engle til mænd, ja, ikke alene mænd, men også kvinder. Se, det er ikke alt, små børn får mange gange givet ord, der beskæmmer de vise og de lærde.

24 Og se, mine elskede brødre, eftersom I har ønsket at få at vide af mig, hvad I skal gøre, fordi I er plaget og stødt ud – se, jeg ønsker ikke, at I skal tro, at jeg har i sinde at dømme jer, undtagen i overensstemmelse med det der er sandt –

25 for jeg tror ikke, at I alle er blevet nødt til at ydmyge jer, for jeg tror sandelig, at der blandt jer er nogle, som ville ydmyge sig, uanset hvilke omstændigheder de måtte være i.

26 Se, som jeg sagde angående tro – at den ikke var en fuldkommen kundskab – sådan er det også med mine ord. I kan ikke til at begynde med til fuldkommenhed kende sandheden deraf, lige så lidt som tro er en fuldkommen kundskab.

27 Men se, hvis I vil vågne op og vække jeres evner til et forsøg med mine ord og udøve den mindste smule tro, ja, selv om I ikke kan gøre mere end ønske at tro, lad da det ønske virke i jer, indtil I tror på en sådan måde, at I kan give plads til en del af mine ord.

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

28 Se, vi vil sammenligne ordet med et frø. Se, hvis I giver plads til, at et frø kan blive sået i jeres hjerte, se, hvis det er et sandt frø eller et godt frø, og hvis I ikke kaster det ud ved jeres vantro, så I modsætter jer Herrens Ånd, se, da vil det begynde at svulme i jeres bryst, og når I føler disse svulmende bevægelser, begynder I at sige til jer selv: Det må nødvendigvis være sådan, at det er et godt frø, eller at ordet er godt, for det begynder at udvikle min sjæl, ja, det begynder at oplyse min forstand, ja, det begynder at blive mig liffligt.

29 Se nu, forøger dette ikke jeres tro? Jeg siger jer: Jo, dog er den ikke vokset til en fuldkommen kundskab.

30 Men se, når frøet svulmer og spirer og begynder at vokse, da er I nødt til at sige, at frøet er godt; for se, det svulmer og spirer og begynder at vokse. Og se nu, styrker dette ikke jeres tro? Jo, det styrker jeres tro, for I vil sige: Jeg ved, at det er et godt frø, for se, det spirer og begynder at vokse.

31 Og se nu, er I sikre på, at det er et godt frø? Jeg siger jer: Ja, for ethvert frø frembringer af sin egen slags.

32 Hvis frøet derfor vokser, er det godt, men hvis det ikke vokser, se, da er det ikke godt, derfor bliver det kastet bort.

33 Og se nu, fordi I har gjort forsøget og har sået frøet, og det svulmer og spirer og begynder at vokse, må I nødvendigvis vide, at frøet er godt.

34 Og se nu, er jeres kundskab fuldkommen? Ja, jeres kundskab er fuldkommen med hensyn til dette, og jeres tro er uvirksom, og dette fordi I ved, for I ved, at ordet har fået jeres sjæl til at svulme, og I ved også, at det er spiret op, så jeres forstand begynder at blive oplyst og jeres sind begynder at udvides.

35 O, er dette da ikke virkeligt? Jeg siger jer: Jo, fordi det er lys; og hvad der end er lys, er godt, fordi det er begribeligt; derfor ved I, at det er godt; og se nu, efter at I har smagt dette lys, er jeres kundskab fuldkommen?

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

36 Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, ej heller må I lægge troen til side, for I har kun udøvet jeres tro til at så frøet, så I kunne gøre forsøget for at finde ud af, om frøet var godt.

37 Og se, når træet begynder at vokse, siger I: Lad os passe det med stor omsorg, så det kan slå rod, så det kan vokse op og frembringe frugt til os. Og se nu, hvis I passer det med megen omsorg, slår det rod og vokser op og frembringer frugt.

38 Men hvis I forsømmer træet og ikke har tanke for dets pasning, se, da slår det ikke nogen rod; og når solens hede kommer og svider det, visner det bort, fordi det ingen rod har, og I rykker det op og kaster det ud.

39 Se, dette er ikke, fordi frøet ikke var godt, ej heller er det, fordi frugten deraf ikke ville være ønskværdig, men det er, fordi jeres jord er ufrugtbar, og I ikke vil passe træet, derfor kan I ikke få frugten af det.

40 Og på samme måde: Hvis I ikke vil pleje ordet, idet I med et troens øje ser frem til frugten deraf, så kan I aldrig plukke frugten af livets træ.

41 Men dersom I vil pleje ordet, ja, passe træet, når det begynder at vokse ved jeres tro med stor flid og med tålmodighed, idet I med glæde ser frem til frugten af det, da slår det rod, og se, det skal blive et træ, der vokser op til evigtvarende liv.

42 Og på grund af jeres flid og jeres tro og jeres tålmodighed med hensyn til at pleje ordet, så det må kunne slå rod i jer, se, da skal I snart plukke frugten af det, som er yderst dyrebar, som er mere sød end alt, hvad der er sødt, og som er mere hvid end alt, hvad der er hvidt, ja, og mere ren end alt, hvad der er rent; og I skal tage for jer af denne frugt, indtil I er mætte, så I ikke sulter, ej heller skal I tørste.

43 Da, mine brødre, skal I høste lønnen for jeres tro og jeres flid og tålmodighed og langmodighed, mens I ventede på, at træet skulle frembringe frugt til jer.

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Almas Bog 33

- 1 Se, efter at Alma nu havde talt disse ord, sendte de bud til ham og ønskede at få at vide, om de skulle tro på én Gud, for at de kunne få den frugt, om hvilken han havde talt, eller hvorledes de skulle så det frø, eller det ord, om hvilket han havde talt, og som han sagde skulle sås i deres hjerte, eller på hvilken måde de skulle begynde at udøve deres tro.
- 2 Og Alma sagde til dem: Se, I har sagt, at I ikke kan tilbede jeres Gud, fordi I er blevet stødt ud af jeres synagoger. Men se, jeg siger jer, at hvis I mener, at I ikke kan tilbede Gud, tager I meget fejl, og I burde granske skrifterne, og hvis I mener, at de har lært jer dette, så forstår I dem ikke.
- 3 Husker I at have læst, hvad Zenos, den fordums profet, har sagt angående bøn eller tilbedelse?
- 4 For han sagde: Du er barmhjertig, o Gud, for du har hørt min bøn, selv da jeg var i ørkenen; ja, du var barmhjertig, da jeg bad for dem, der var mine fjender, og du vendte dem til mig.
- 5 Ja, o Gud, og du var barmhjertig mod mig, da jeg anråbte dig på min mark, da jeg anråbte dig i min bøn, og du hørte mig.
- 6 Og videre, o Gud, da jeg vendte tilbage til mit hus, hørte du mig i min bøn.
- 7 Og da jeg gik ind i mit kammer, o Herre, og bad til dig, hørte du mig.
- 8 Ja, du er barmhjertig mod dine børn, når de anråber dig for at blive hørt af dig og ikke af mennesker, og du vil høre dem.
- 9 Ja, o Gud, du har været barmhjertig mod mig og hørt mine råb midt i dine forsamlinger.
- 10 Ja, og du har også hørt mig, når jeg er blevet stødt ud og er blevet foragtet af mine fjender; ja, du hørte mine råb og var vred på mine fjender, og du hjemsøgte dem i din vrede med hastig undergang.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

11 Og du hørte mig på grund af mine trængsler og min oprigtighed; og det er på grund af din Søn, at du har været så barmhjertig mod mig; derfor vil jeg anråbe dig i alle mine trængsler, for i dig er min glæde, for du har bortvendt dine straffedomme fra mig på grund af din Søn.

12 Og nu sagde Alma til dem: Tror I de skrifter, der er blevet skrevet af dem, der levede fordum?

13 Se, hvis I gør det, da må I tro på, hvad Zenos sagde, for se, han sagde: Du har bortvendt dine straffedomme på grund af din Søn.

14 Se nu, mine brødre, jeg vil spørge, om I har læst skrifterne? Hvis I har, hvordan kan I så undlade at tro på Guds Søn?

15 For der står ikke skrevet, at Zenos alene talte om dette, men Zenok talte også om dette –

16 for se, han sagde: Du er vred, o Herre, på dette folk, fordi de ikke vil forstå din barmhjertighed, som du har skænket dem på grund af din Søn.

17 Og nu, mine brødre, ser I, at en anden fordums profet har vidnet om Guds Søn, og fordi folket ikke ville forstå hans ord, stenede de ham til døde.

18 Men se, det er ikke alt; disse er ikke de eneste, der har talt angående Guds Søn.

19 Se, han blev omtalt af Moses; ja, og se, der blev rejst et sindbillede i ørkenen, så hver den, der ville se på det, kunne leve. Og mange så og levede.

20 Men få forstod betydningen af dette, og dette på grund af hjertets hårdhed. Men der var mange, der var så forhærdede, at de ikke ville se, derfor omkom de. Se, grunden til, at de ikke ville se, er, at de ikke troede, at det kunne helbrede dem.

21 O, mine brødre, hvis I kunne blive helbredt ved blot at kaste blikket omkring, for at I kunne blive helbredt, ville I da ikke hurtigt se, eller ville I hellere forhærde hjertet i vantro og være lade, så I ikke kaster blikket omkring, så I omkommer?

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

22 Hvis så er, skal ve komme over jer; men hvis så ikke er, da kast blikket omkring, og begynd at tro på Guds Søn, at han vil komme for at forløse sit folk, og at han skal lide og dø for at sone for deres synder, og at han skal opstå igen fra de døde, hvilket skal tilvejebringe opstandelsen, så alle mennesker skal stå foran ham for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger på den yderste og dommens dag.

23 Og nu, mine brødre, ønsker jeg af jer, at I skal så dette ord i hjertet, og når det begynder at svulme, så plej det ved jeres tro. Og se, det bliver et træ, der vokser op i jer til evigtvarende liv. Og måtte Gud da tilstede jer, at jeres byrder må blive lette ved glæden over hans Søn. Og alt dette kan I gøre, hvis I vil. Amen.

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

Almas Bog 34

- 1 Og se, det skete, efter at Alma havde talt disse ord til dem, at han satte sig ned på jorden, og Amulek rejste sig og begyndte at undervise dem, idet han sagde:
- 2 Mine brødre, jeg tror, at det er umuligt, at I kan være uvidende om det, der er blevet talt angående Kristi komme, han som vi underviser i er Guds Søn; ja, jeg ved, at I blev undervist rigeligt i dette, før I skilte jer ud fra os.
- 3 Og da I har ønsket af min elskede broder, at han skal fortælle jer, hvad I skal gøre på grund af jeres trængsler, har han talt noget til jer for at berede jeres sind, ja, og han har formanet jer til tro og tålmodighed –
- 4 ja, til at have så megen tro, som til at så ordet i hjertet, så I kan prøve forsøget med dets godhed.
- 5 Og vi har set, at det store spørgsmål, som ligger jer på sinde, er, om ordet er i Guds Søn, eller om der ingen Kristus skal komme.
- 6 Og I så også, at min broder har bevist over for jer i mange tilfælde, at ordet til frelse er i Kristus.
- 7 Min broder har henvist til Zenos' ord om, at forløsningen kommer ved Guds Søn, og også til Zenoks ord, og han har også henvist til Moses for at bevise, at dette er sandt.
- 8 Og se nu, jeg vil selv vidne for jer om, at dette er sandt. Se, jeg siger jer, at jeg ved, at Kristus skal komme blandt menneskenes børn for at påtage sig sit folks overtrædelser, og at han skal sone for verdens synder, for Gud Herren har talt det.
- 9 For det er nødvendigt, at der skal foretages en forsoning, for i henhold til den evige Guds store plan må der foretages en forsoning, ellers skal hele menneskeslægten uundgåeligt fortabes, ja, alle er forhærdede, ja, alle er faldne og er fortabte og må gå til grunde, hvis det ikke var for den forsoning, som nødvendigvis skal foretages.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

10 For det er nødvendigt, at der skal bringes et stort og sidste offer, ja, ikke et offer af et menneske, ej heller af et dyr, ej heller af nogen slags fugl, for det skal ikke være et menneskebragt offer; men det skal være et altomfattende og evigt offer.

11 Se, der er ikke nogen, der kan ofre sit eget blod og derved sone for en andens synder. Se, hvis nogen myrder, se, tager da vor lov, som er retfærdig, hans brors liv? Jeg siger jer: Nej.

12 Men loven kræver, at den, der har myrdet, lader livet; derfor kan intet mindre end en altomfattende forsoning være tilstrækkelig for verdens synder.

13 Derfor er det nødvendigt, at der skal bringes et stort og sidste offer; og så skal der være, eller må der nødvendigvis være, en ende på blodsudgydelse; så skal Moseloven være opfyldt; ja, den skal være helt opfyldt, hvert bogstav og hver tøddel, og intet skal være forgået.

14 Og se, dette er hele meningen med loven; hver lille del peger mod det store og sidste offer; og dette store og sidste offer bliver Guds Søn, ja, altomfattende og evigt.

15 Og således skal han bringe frelse til alle dem, der vil tro på hans navn, for dette er hensigten med denne sidste ofring, at tilvejebringe den inderlige barmhertighed, som overvælder retfærdigheden og tilvejebringer en måde for menneskene, hvorpå de kan have tro til omvendelse.

16 Og således kan barmhertigheden tilfredsstille retfærdighedens krav og omslutter dem i sikkerhedens arme, mens den, der ikke udøver nogen tro til omvendelse, bliver udsat for hele loven bestående af retfærdighedens krav; derfor tilvejebringes den store og evige forløsningsplan kun for den, der har tro til omvendelse.

17 Måtte Gud derfor tilstede jer, mine brødre, at I må begynde at udøve jeres tro til omvendelse, så I begynder at påkalde hans hellige navn om, at han vil have barmhertighed med jer;

18 ja, anrøb ham om barmhertighed, for han er mægtig til at frelse.

19 Ja, ydmyg jer, og vedbliv i bøn til ham.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

- 20 Anråb ham, når I er i jeres marker, ja, for alle jeres flokke.
 21 Anråb ham i jeres huse, ja, for hele jeres husstand, både morgen, middag og aften.
 22 Ja, anråb ham mod jeres fjenders magt.
 23 Ja, anråb ham mod Djævelen, som er en fjende af al retfærdighed.
 24 Anråb ham for markens afgrøder, for at I må have fremgang med dem.
 25 Anråb for flokkene på jeres marker, for at de må forøges.
 26 Men det er ikke alt, I må udøse jeres sjæl i jeres kamre og på jeres skjulte steder og i jeres ødemark.
 27 Ja, og når I ikke anråber Herren, lad da hjertet være fyldt, bestandig henvendt i bøn til ham for jeres velfærd og også for velfærden for dem, der er omkring jer.
 28 Og se nu, mine elskede brødre, jeg siger jer: Tro ikke, at det er alt, for efter at I har gjort alt dette, hvis I så viser den trængende og den nøgne bort og ikke besøger den syge og plagede og ikke giver af jeres gods, hvis I har noget, til dem, som står i behov – jeg siger jer, at hvis I ikke gør noget af dette, se, da er jeres bøn forgæves og gavner jer intet, og I er som hyklere, der fornægter troen.
 29 Hvis I derfor ikke husker at være næstekærlige, er I som de slagger, som smelterne kaster bort (da de ikke er af nogen værdi), og bliver trådt under fode af menneskene.
 30 Og se, mine brødre, jeg ønsker, at I, efter at I har fået så mange vidnesbyrd, og eftersom de hellige skrifter vidner om dette, gør dette og frembringer frugt, der fører til omvendelse.
 31 Ja, jeg ønsker, at I vil gøre dette og ikke forhærde hjertet længere; for se, nu er tiden og dagen for jeres frelse, og hvis I derfor vil omvende jer og ikke forhærde hjertet, skal den store forløsningsplan straks blive sat i værk for jer.
 32 For se, dette liv er tiden for menneskene at berede sig til at møde Gud, ja, se dette livs dag er dagen for menneskene at udføre deres arbejde.
- Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.
 Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.
 Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.
 Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.
 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.
 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.
 But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.
 Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.
 And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.
 Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.
 And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.
 Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.
 For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

33 Og se, som jeg sagde jer før, eftersom I har fået så mange vidnesbyrd, bønfaller jeg jer derfor om, at I ikke udsætter jeres omvendelses dag indtil enden; for efter denne livets dag, som er os givet til at berede os til evigheden, se, hvis vi ikke gør bedre brug af vor tid, mens vi er i dette liv, da kommer den mørke nat, hvori intet arbejde kan udføres.

34 I kan ikke sige, når I kommer til dette forfærdelige skæbnesvangre tidspunkt: Jeg vil omvende mig. Jeg vil vende tilbage til min Gud. Nej, I kan ikke sige dette, for den selv samme ånd, som besidder jeres legeme, når I går bort fra dette liv, den selv samme ånd har magt til at besidde jeres legeme i den evige verden.

35 For se, hvis I har udsat jeres omvendelses dag helt indtil døden, se, da er I blevet underkastet Djævelens ånd, og han besegler jer som sine; derfor har Herrens Ånd trukket sig bort fra jer og har ingen plads i jer, og Djævelen har al magt over jer; og det er de ugudeliges endelige tilstand.

36 Og dette ved jeg, fordi Herren har sagt, at han ikke bor i vanhellige templer, men i de retfærdiges hjerte bor han; ja, og han har også sagt, at de retfærdige skal sætte sig i hans rige for aldrig mere at gå ud, men at deres klæder skal blive gjort hvide ved Lammets blod.

37 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg ønsker af jer, at I skal huske dette, og at I skal udarbejde jeres frelse med frygt for Gud, og at I ikke mere skal fornægte Kristi komme,

38 at I ikke mere skal stride mod Helligånden, men at I skal modtage den og påtage jer Kristi navn; at I skal ydmyge jer, ja, til støvet, og tilbede Gud, hvor end I måtte være, i ånd og i sandhed; og at I daglig skal leve i taksigelse for den store barmhjertighed og de mange velsignelser, som han skænker jer.

39 Ja, og jeg formaner jer også, mine brødre, til bestandig at være årvågne i bøn, så I ikke bliver forledt af Djævelens fristelser, så han ikke skal overmande jer, så I ikke skal blive hans undersætter på den yderste dag; for se, han belønner jer ikke med noget godt.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

40 Og se, mine elskede brødre, jeg ønsker at formane jer til at have tålmodighed og til at bære alle slags trængsler, til ikke at håne dem, der støder jer ud på grund af jeres overordentlig store fattigdom, så I ikke bliver syndere ligesom de,

41 men til at have tålmodighed og bære disse trængsler med et fast håb om, at I en dag skal hvile fra alle jeres trængsler.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Almas Bog 35

- 1 Se, det skete, at efter at Amulek havde afsluttet disse ord, trak de sig bort fra mængden og kom over i Jershons land.
- 2 Ja, og resten af brødrene kom også over i Jershons land, efter at de havde prædikeret ordet for zoramitterne.
- 3 Og det skete, at efter at den mere ansete del af zoramitterne havde rådført sig med hinanden angående de ord, der var blevet prædikeret for dem, blev de vrede på grund af ordet, for det ødelagde deres beskæftigelse, derfor ville de ikke lytte til ordene.
- 4 Og de sendte bud til folket i hele landet og samlede dem sammen og rådførte sig med dem angående de ord, der var blevet talt.
- 5 Se, deres herskere og deres præster og deres lærere lod ikke folket vide noget angående deres hensigter, derfor fandt de i hemmelighed ud af indstillingen blandt hele folket.
- 6 Og det skete, at efter at de havde fundet ud af indstillingen blandt hele folket, blev de, der var for de ord, der var blevet talt af Alma og hans brødre, stødt ud af landet; og de var mange, og de kom også over i Jershons land.
- 7 Og det skete, at Alma og hans brødre forkyndte for dem.
- 8 Se, det zoramitiske folk blev vrede på Ammons folk, som var i Jershon, og zoramitternes øverste hersker, der var en meget ugudelig mand, sendte bud over til Ammons folk, for han ønskede af dem, at de skulle støde alle dem ud af deres land, som kom over fra dem til deres land.
- 9 Og han udslyngede mange trusler mod dem. Og se, Ammons folk frygtede ikke deres ord, derfor stødte de dem ikke ud, men de tog imod alle de fattige zoramitter, som kom over til dem; og de plejede dem og klædte dem og gav dem jorder som arvelod; og de tog sig af dem i forhold til deres trang.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

10 Se, dette ophidsede zoramitterne til vrede mod Ammons folk, og de begyndte at blande sig med lamanitterne og også at ophidse dem til vrede mod dem.

11 Og således begyndte zoramitterne og lamanitterne at træffe forberedelser til krig mod Ammons folk og også mod nefitterne.

12 Og således endte det syttende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

13 Og Ammons folk drog ud af Jershons land og kom over i Meleks land og gav plads i Jershons land til nefiternes hære, så de kunne stride mod lamaniternes hære og zoramitternes hære, og således begyndte en krig mellem lamanitterne og nefitterne i det attende år af dommerens regeringstid; og der skal gives en beretning om deres krige siden hen.

14 Og Alma og Ammon og deres brødre og også Almas to sønner vendte tilbage til Zarahemlas land efter at have været redskaber i Guds hænder til at bringe mange af zoramitterne til omvendelse; og så mange, som blev bragt til omvendelse, blev drevet ud af deres land; men de har fået jorder som arvelod i Jershons land, og de har grebet til våben for at forsvare sig selv og deres hustruer og børn og deres jorder.

15 Se, Alma, som var bedrøvet over sit folks ugudelighed, ja, over de krige og de blodsudgydelser og de stridigheder, der var blandt dem, og som havde været ude for at kundgøre ordet eller havde været sendt ud for at kundgøre ordet for hele folket i hver by, og som havde set, at folket begyndte at vokse sig hårde i hjertet, og at de begyndte at blive forarget over ordets strenghed, blev overordentlig sorgfuld i hjertet.

16 Derfor foranledigede han, at hans sønner skulle samles, så han kunne give dem sin befaling hver for sig angående det, der har med retfærdighed at gøre. Og vi har en beretning om de befalinger, som han gav dem ifølge hans egen optegnelse.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Almas Bog 36

- 1 Min søn, lån øre til mine ord, for jeg sværger over for dig, at for så vidt som du holder Guds befalinger, skal du have fremgang i landet.
- 2 Jeg ønsker, at du skal gøre, som jeg har gjort med hensyn til at huske vore fædres fangenskab, for de var i trældom, og ingen kunne udfri dem undtagen Abrahams Gud og Isaks Gud og Jakobs Gud; og han udfriede dem visselig i deres trængsler.
- 3 Og se, o min søn Helaman, se, du er i din ungdom, og derfor bønfalder jeg dig om, at du vil høre mine ord og lære af mig, for jeg ved, at hver den, der sætter sin lid til Gud, bliver støttet under sine prøvelser og sine besværligheder og sine trængsler og bliver ophøjet på den yderste dag.
- 4 Og jeg ønsker ikke, at du skal tro, at jeg ved dette af mig selv – ikke af det timelige, men af det åndelige, ikke af det kødelige sind, men af Gud.
- 5 Se nu, jeg siger dig, hvis jeg ikke var blevet født af Gud, ville jeg ikke have vidst dette, men Gud har ved sin hellige engels mund kundgjort dette for mig, dog ikke på grund af nogen værdighed hos mig.
- 6 For jeg gik omkring med Mosijas sønner og forsøgte at tilintetgøre Guds kirke, men se, Gud sendte sin hellige engel for at standse os på vejen.
- 7 Og se, han talte til os, som var det med en tordenrøst, og hele jorden bævede under vore fødder, og vi faldt alle til jorden, for frygt for Herren kom over os.
- 8 Men se, røsten sagde til mig: Rejs dig! Og jeg rejste mig op og så englen.
- 9 Og han sagde til mig: Om du så selv gerne vil tilintetgøres, så forsøg dog ikke mere at tilintetgøre Guds kirke.
- 10 Og det skete, at jeg faldt til jorden; og i et tidsrum af tre dage og tre nætter kunne jeg ikke åbne munden, ej heller bruge mine lemmer.

Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

11 Og englen sagde mere til mig, som blev hørt af mine brødre, men jeg hørte det ikke, for da jeg hørte de ord: Om du så gerne selv vil tilintetgøres, så forsøg dog ikke mere at tilintetgøre Guds kirke, blev jeg grebet af så stor frygt og forbløffelse over, at jeg måske skulle blive tilintetgjort, at jeg faldt til jorden og ikke hørte mere.

12 Men jeg blev martret af evig pinsel, for min sjæl blev i højeste grad revet op og martret af alle mine synder.

13 Ja, jeg erindrede alle mine synder og misgerninger, for hvilke jeg blev pint med helvedes smerter; ja, jeg indså, at jeg havde sat mig op imod min Gud, og at jeg ikke havde holdt hans hellige befalinger.

14 Ja, og jeg havde myrdet mange af hans børn, eller rettere sagt ledt dem i fordærv; ja, og kort sagt havde mine misgerninger været så store, at selve tanken om at komme ind i min Guds nærhed martrede min sjæl med uudsigelig rædsel.

15 Åh, tænkte jeg, gid jeg kunne blive forvist og udslettet, både sjæl og legeme, så jeg ikke skulle blive ført frem i min Guds nærhed for at blive dømt efter mine handlinger.

16 Og se, i tre dage og tre nætter blev jeg martret, ja, med en fordømt sjæls smerter.

17 Og det skete, at mens jeg således blev martret med pinsel, mens jeg blev revet op ved erindringen om mine mange synder, se, da erindrede jeg også at have hørt min far profetere for folket angående en Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, som skulle komme for at sone for verdens synder.

18 Se, da mit sind greb fat om denne tanke, råbte jeg i mit hjerte: O Jesus, du Guds Søn, hav barmhjertighed med mig, som er i bitterheds galde og er omsluttet af dødens evigtvarende lænker.

19 Og se nu, da jeg tænkte dette, kunne jeg ikke mere erindre mine smerter, ja, jeg blev ikke mere revet op ved erindringen om mine synder.

20 Og åh, hvilken glæde og hvilket forunderligt lys så jeg ikke, ja, min sjæl blev fyldt af glæde, lige så overordentlig stor som min smerte havde været!

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

21 Ja, jeg siger dig, min søn, at intet kunne være så intenst og så bittert, som mine smerter var. Ja, og videre siger jeg til dig, min søn, at på den anden side kan intet være så intenst og sødt, som min glæde var.

22 Ja, det forekom mig, at jeg ligesom vor fader Lehi så Gud sidde på sin trone, omgivet af utallige skarer af engle, der så ud, som om de sang og priste deres Gud; ja, og min sjæl længtes efter at være dér.

23 Men se, mine lemmer fik atter deres styrke, og jeg stod på benene og tilkendegav for folket, at jeg var blevet født af Gud.

24 Ja, og fra den tid og helt indtil nu har jeg arbejdet uden ophør for at kunne bringe sjæle til omvendelse, så jeg kunne få dem til at smage den overordentlig store glæde, som jeg smagte, så de også kunne blive født af Gud og blive fyldt af Helligånden.

25 Ja, og se nu, min søn, Herren giver mig overordentlig stor glæde ved frugten af mit arbejde.

26 For på grund af det ord, som han har givet mig, se, da er mange blevet født af Gud og har smagt, som jeg har smagt, og har med egne øjne set, som jeg har set; derfor kender de til det, som jeg har talt om, ligesom jeg kender det, og den kundskab, som jeg har, er fra Gud.

27 Og jeg er blevet støttet under prøvelser og besværligheder af enhver art, ja, og i alle slags trængsler, ja, Gud har udfriet mig fra fængsel og fra bånd og fra døden, ja, og jeg sætter min lid til ham, og han vil stadig udfri mig.

28 Og jeg ved, at han vil oprejse mig på den yderste dag, så jeg kan bo hos ham i herlighed, ja, og jeg vil prise ham for evigt, for han har bragt vore fædre ud af Egypten, og han lod egypterne opsluge i Det Røde Hav, og han førte dem ved sin magt ind i det forjættede land, ja, og han har udfriet dem af trældom og fangenskab fra tid til anden.

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

29 Ja, og han har også bragt vore fædre ud af Jerusalems land, og han har også ved sin evigtvarende magt udfriet dem af trældom og fangenskab fra tid til anden helt op til denne dag, og jeg har altid bevaret deres fangenskab i erindringen, ja, og du bør også bevare deres fangenskab i erindringen, ligesom jeg har gjort.

30 Men se, min søn, det er ikke alt, for du bør vide, som jeg ved, at for så vidt som du holder Guds befalinger, skal du have fremgang i landet; og du bør også vide, at for så vidt som du ikke vil holde Guds befalinger, skal du blive forstødt fra hans nærhed. Se, dette er ifølge hans ord.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Almas Bog 37

- 1 Og se, min søn Helaman, jeg befaler dig, at du tager de optegnelser, der har været mig betroet;
- 2 og jeg befaler dig også, at du fører en optegnelse om dette folk på Nefis plader, ligesom jeg har gjort, og bevarer alle disse ting hellige, som jeg har bevaret, ja, ligesom jeg har bevaret dem, for det er med et víst formål, at de bliver bevaret.
- 3 Og disse bronzeplader, som indeholder disse indgravninger, og som har optegnelserne af de hellige skrifter på sig, og som har optegnelsen om vore forfædres slægt lige fra begyndelsen –
- 4 se, det er blevet profeteret af vore fædre, at de skulle blive bevaret og overdraget fra én slægt til den næste og blive beskyttet og bevaret ved Herrens hånd, indtil de skal udgå til alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, så de skal få kendskab til de hemmeligheder, de indeholder.
- 5 Og se nu, hvis de bliver bevaret, må de bevare deres glans, ja, og de skal bevare deres glans, og ligeså skal alle de plader, der indeholder det, der er hellig skrift.
- 6 Se, du mener måske, at dette er tåbeligt af mig, men se, jeg siger dig, at ved små og enkle ting bliver der udrettet store ting; og små midler beskæmmer i mange tilfælde de vise.
- 7 Og Gud Herren virker ved midler for at opnå sine store og evige formål; og ved meget små midler beskæmmer Herren de vise og tilvejebringer mange sjæles frelse.
- 8 Og se, Gud har hidtil anset det for víst, at disse optegnelser skulle bevares, for se, de har øget dette folks hukommelse, ja, og overbevist mange om vildfarelsen af deres veje og bragt dem til kundskab om deres Gud til deres sjæls frelse.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

- 9 Ja, jeg siger dig, at var det ikke for det, som disse optegnelser indeholder, og som findes på disse plader, kunne Ammon og hans brødre ikke have overbevist så mange tusinde lamanitter om deres fædres urigtige overlevering, ja, disse optegnelser og deres ord bragte dem til omvendelse, det vil sige: De bragte dem til kundskab om Herren, deres Gud, og fik dem til at fryde sig i Jesus Kristus, deres forløser.
- 10 Og hvem ved, om de ikke bliver midlet til at bringe mange tusinde af dem, ja, og også mange tusinde af vore stivnakkede brødre, nefitterne, som nu forhærder hjertet i synd og misgerninger, til kundskab om deres forløser?
- 11 Se, disse hemmeligheder er endnu ikke blevet gjort fuldstændig kendt for mig, derfor vil jeg lade være med at sige mere derom.
- 12 Og det kan være tilstrækkeligt, hvis jeg blot siger, at de er bevaret med et vist formål, hvilket formål er kendt af Gud, for han giver i visdom råd om alle sine gerninger, og hans stier er rette, og hans vej er ét evigt kredsløb.
- 13 O husk, husk, min søn Helaman, hvor strenge Guds befalinger er. Og han sagde: Hvis I holder mine befalinger, skal I have fremgang i landet – men hvis I ikke holder hans befalinger, skal I blive forstødt fra hans nærhed.
- 14 Og husk nu, min søn, at Gud har betroet dig disse ting, som er hellige, og som han har holdt hellige, og som han også vil beskytte og bevare med det, som han anser for et vist formål, for at han kan vise sin magt for kommende slægter.
- 15 Og se nu, jeg siger dig ved profetiens ånd, at hvis du overtræder Guds befalinger, se, da skal dette, som er helligt, blive taget fra dig ved Guds kraft, og du skal blive overgivet til Satan, så han kan sigte dig som avner for vinden.
- 16 Men hvis du holder Guds befalinger og gør med disse ting, som er hellige, sådan som Herren befaler dig (for du må bønfalde Herren om alt, hvad du skal gøre ved dem), se, da kan ingen magt på jorden eller i helvede tage dem fra dig, for Gud har magt til at opfylde alle sine ord.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

- 17 For han vil opfylde alle sine løfter, som han vil give dig, for han har opfyldt sine løfter, som han har givet vore fædre.
- 18 For han lovede dem, at han ville bevare disse ting med det, som han anser for et vist formål, for at han kunne vise sin magt for kommende slægter.
- 19 Og se nu, ét formål har han opnået, nemlig atter at bringe mange tusinde af lamanitterne til kundskab om sandheden; og han har vist sin magt ved dem, og han vil også stadig vise sin magt ved dem for kommende slægter; derfor skal de bevares.
- 20 Derfor befaler jeg dig, min søn Helaman, at være flittig til at opfylde alle mine ord og at være flittig til at holde Guds befalinger, som de er skrevet.
- 21 Og se, jeg vil tale til dig angående disse fireogtyve plader, at du bevarer dem, så mysterierne og mørkets gerninger og deres hemmelige gerninger eller de hemmelige gerninger blandt de folk, der er blevet udryddet, må blive tilkendegivet for dette folk, ja, at alle deres mord og røverier og deres plyndringer og al deres ugudelighed og alle deres vederstyggeligheder må blive tilkendegivet for dette folk, ja, og at du bevarer disse oversættere.
- 22 For se, Herren så, at hans folk begyndte at arbejde i mørket, ja, udføre hemmelige mord og vederstyggeligheder; derfor sagde Herren, at hvis de ikke omvendte sig, ville de blive udryddet fra jordens overflade.
- 23 Og Herren sagde: Jeg vil berede min tjener Gazelem en sten, der skal skinne i mørket og give lys, så jeg må kunne åbenbare for mit folk, som tjener mig, så jeg må kunne åbenbare deres brødrers gerninger for dem, ja, deres hemmelige gerninger, deres mørke gerninger og deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder.
- 24 Og se, min søn, disse oversættere blev beredt, for at Guds ord kunne blive opfyldt, som han talte, da han sagde:

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

25 Jeg vil bringe alle deres hemmelige gerninger og deres vederstyggeligheder ud af mørket til lyset; og medmindre de omvender sig, vil jeg udrydde dem fra jordens overflade; og jeg vil bringe alle deres hemmeligheder og vederstyggeligheder frem i lyset for ethvert folkeslag, som herefter skal tage landet i besiddelse.

26 Og se, min søn, vi ser, at de ikke omvendte sig, derfor er de blevet udryddet, og så langt er Guds ord blevet opfyldt; ja, deres hemmelige vederstyggeligheder er blevet bragt ud af mørket og gjort kendt for os.

27 Og se, min søn, jeg befaler dig at holde alle deres eder og deres pagter og deres aftaler i deres hemmelige vederstyggeligheder skjult; ja, og alle deres tegn og deres underer skal du holde tilbage fra dette folk, for at de ikke skal lære dem at kende, for at de ikke ved et tilfælde også skal henfalde i mørke og blive udryddet.

28 For se, der er en forbandelse over hele dette land, at der i overensstemmelse med Guds kraft skal komme ødelæggelse over alle disse mørkets arbejdere, når de er fuldstændig modne; derfor ønsker jeg ikke, at dette folk skal blive udryddet.

29 Derfor skal du holde disse hemmelige planer med deres eder og deres pagter tilbage fra dette folk, og kun deres ugudelighed og deres mord og deres vederstyggeligheder skal du gøre kendt for dem; og du skal lære dem at afsky en sådan ugudelighed og sådanne vederstyggeligheder og mord; og du skal også lære dem, at disse folk blev udryddet som følge af deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder og deres mord.

30 For se, de myrdede alle Herrens profeter, som kom blandt dem for at kundgøre deres ugudelighed for dem; og blodet fra dem, som de myrdede, råbte til Herren deres Gud om hævn over dem, der var deres mordere; og således kom Guds straffedomme over disse, der hengav sig til mørke gerninger og hemmelige sammensværgelser.

31 Ja, og forbandet være landet for evigt og altid for disse mørkets arbejdere og hemmelige sammensværgelser, ja, til undergang, medmindre de omvender sig, før de er fuldstændig modne.

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

- 32 Og se, min søn, husk de ord, som jeg har talt til dig, betro ikke dette folk disse hemmelige planer, men lær dem et evigtvarende had til synd og ugudelighed.
- 33 Forkynd omvendelse og tro på Herren Jesus Kristus for dem; lær dem at ydmyge sig og at være sagtmodige og ydmyge af hjertet; lær dem at modstå alle Djævelens fristelser med deres tro på Herren Jesus Kristus.
- 34 Lær dem aldrig at blive trætte af at gøre gode gerninger, men at være sagtmodige og ydmyge af hjertet, for sådanne skal finde hvile for sjælen.
- 35 O husk dette, min søn, og lær visdom i din ungdom; ja, lær i din ungdom at holde Guds befalinger.
- 36 Ja, og anrån Gud for hele dit underhold; ja, lad alle dine gerninger være for Herren, og hvor du end går hen, lad det ske i Herren; ja, lad alle dine tanker være henvendt til Herren; ja, lad dit hjertes hengivenhed være rettet mod Herren for evigt.
- 37 Rådfør dig med Herren i alle dine gerninger, så vejleder han dig til din gavn; ja, når du lægger dig om aftenen, da læg dig for Herren, så han kan våge over dig i din søvn; og når du står op om morgenen, lad da dit hjerte være fuldt af tak til Gud; og hvis du gør dette, skal du blive løftet op på den yderste dag.
- 38 Og se, min søn, jeg har noget at sige angående det, som vore fædre kalder en kugle, eller vejviser – eller vore fædre kaldte den Liahona, der, når det bliver oversat, betyder kompas; og Herren beredte den.
- 39 Og se, der er intet menneske, som kan udføre så kunstfærdigt et stykke arbejde. Og se, den blev beredt for at vise vore fædre den vej, de skulle rejse i ørkenen.
- 40 Og den virkede for dem i forhold til deres tro på Gud; hvis de derfor havde tilstrækkelig tro til at være overbevist om, at Gud kunne udvirke, at disse visere ville pege den vej, de skulle gå, se, da blev det gjort; derfor fik de dette mirakel og også mange andre mirakler, som blev udvirket ved Guds kraft dag for dag.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

41 Alligevel viste den dem forunderlige gerninger, fordi disse mirakler blev udvirket med små midler. De blev lade og glemte at udøve deres tro og flid, og så ophørte disse forunderlige gerninger, og de havde ingen fremgang på deres rejse.

42 Derfor forblev de i ørkenen eller rejste ikke en direkte vej og blev plaget af sult og tørst på grund af deres overtrædelser.

43 Og se, min søn, jeg ønsker, at du skal forstå, at dette ikke er uden en skygge, for når vore fædre var lade med hensyn til at give agt på dette kompas (se, dette var time-ligt), havde de ingen fremgang; således er det også med det, der er åndeligt.

44 For se, det er lige så let at give agt på Kristi ord, som vil udpege en ret vej til evig salighed for jer, som det var for vore fædre at give agt på dette kompas, som udpegede en ret vej til det forjættede land for dem.

45 Og se, jeg siger: Er der ikke et sindbillede i dette? For lige så vist som denne vejviser bragte vore fædre, som fulgte dens anvisning, til det forjættede land, skal Kristi ord, hvis vi følger deres anvisninger, føre os hinsides denne sorgens dal til et langt bedre forjættet land.

46 O, min søn, lad os ikke være lade på grund af vejens lethed; for således var det med vore fædre, for det var beredt sådan for dem, at hvis de ville se op, kunne de leve; således er det også med os. Vejen er beredt, og hvis vi vil se op, kan vi leve for evigt.

47 Og se, min søn, se til, at du tager vare på disse hellige ting; ja, se til, at du ser hen til Gud og lever. Drag ud til dette folk, og kundgør ordet, og vær alvorlig. Min søn, farvel.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Almas Bog 38

- 1 Min søn, lån øre til mine ord, for jeg siger dig, ligesom jeg sagde til Helaman, at for så vidt som du holder Guds befalinger, skal du have fremgang i landet; og for så vidt som du ikke vil holde Guds befalinger, skal du blive forstødt fra hans nærhed.
- 2 Og se, min søn, jeg har tiltro til, at jeg skal få stor glæde af dig på grund af din standhaftighed og din trofasthed mod Gud; for eftersom du i din ungdom er begyndt at se hen til Herren din Gud, så håber jeg, at du vil fortsætte med at holde hans befalinger; for velsignet er den, der holder ud til enden.
- 3 Jeg siger dig, min søn, at jeg allerede har haft stor glæde ved dig på grund af din trofasthed og din flid og din tålmodighed og din langmodighed blandt det zoramitiske folk.
- 4 For jeg ved, at du var bundet, ja, og jeg ved også, at du blev stenet for ordets skyld; og du bar alt dette med tålmodighed, fordi Herren var med dig; og nu ved du, at Herren udfriede dig.
- 5 Og se, min søn Shibløn, jeg ønsker, at du vil huske, at i den udstrækning som du sætter din lid til Gud, i lige så høj grad skal du blive udfriet af dine prøvelser og dine besværligheder og dine trængsler, og du skal blive løftet op på den yderste dag.
- 6 Se, min søn, jeg ønsker ikke, at du skal tro, at jeg ved dette af mig selv, men det er Guds Ånd, som er i mig, der kundgør mig dette, for hvis jeg ikke var blevet født af Gud, ville jeg ikke have vidst dette.
- 7 Men se, Herren sendte i sin store barmhjertighed sin engel for at kundgøre for mig, at jeg måtte standse ødelæggelsesværket blandt hans folk; ja, og jeg har set en engel ansigt til ansigt, og han talte med mig, og hans røst var som torden, og den rystede hele jorden.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shibløn, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

- 8 Og det skete, at jeg i tre dage og tre nætter var i den bitreste smerte og sjælekval; og først da jeg anråbte Herren Jesus Kristus om barmhjertighed, fik jeg forladelse for mine synder. Men se, jeg anråbte ham, og jeg fandt fred i min sjæl.
- 9 Og se, min søn, jeg har sagt dig dette, for at du kan lære visdom, for at du kan lære af mig, at der ikke er nogen anden vej eller noget andet middel, hvorved mennesket kan blive frelst, end i og ved Kristus. Se, han er verdens liv og lys. Se, han er sandhedens og retfærdighedens ord.
- 10 Og se, da du er begyndt at forkynde ordet, så ønsker jeg, at du skal blive ved med at forkynde; og jeg ønsker, at du vil være flittig og mådeholden i alt.
- 11 Se til, at du ikke bliver indbildsk i stolthed; ja, se til, at du ikke praler af din egen visdom, ej heller af din megen styrke.
- 12 Vær frimodig, men ikke anmassende; og se også til, at du tøjler alle dine lidenskaber, så du kan være fyldt af kærlighed; se til, at du afholder dig fra dovenskab.
- 13 Bed ikke, som zoramitterne gør, for du har set, at de beder for at blive hørt af mennesker og for at blive rost for deres visdom.
- 14 Sig ikke: O Gud, jeg takker dig for, at vi er bedre end vore brødre, men sig hellere: O Herre, tilgiv mig min uværdighed, og husk på mine brødre i barmhjertighed – ja, erkend til enhver tid din uværdighed for Gud.
- 15 Og måtte Herren velsigne din sjæl og tage imod dig på den yderste dag i sit rige, så du kan sætte dig ned i fred. Tag nu af sted, min søn, og forkynd ordet for dette folk. Vær alvorlig. Min søn, farvel.
- And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.
- And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.
- And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.
- See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.
- Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.
- Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.
- Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy— yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.
- And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Almas Bog 39

- 1 Og se, min søn, jeg har noget mere at sige til dig end det, som jeg sagde til din bror; for se, har du ikke lagt mærke til din brors standhaftighed, hans trofasthed og hans flid i at holde Guds befalinger? Se, har han ikke været et godt eksempel for dig?
- 2 For du gav ikke så megen agt på mine ord, som din bror gjorde blandt det zoramitiske folk. Se, dette er, hvad jeg har imod dig: Du fortsatte, indtil du pralede af din styrke og din visdom.
- 3 Og det er ikke alt, min søn. Du gjorde det, der forurodigede mig, for du svigtede tjenestegerningen og drog over til Sirons land inden for lamanitternes grænser efter skøgen Isabel.
- 4 Ja, hun stjal manges hjerte, men det var ingen undskyldning for dig, min søn. Du burde have passet den tjenestegerning, som var blevet dig betroet.
- 5 Ved du ikke, min søn, at dette er en vederstyggelighed i Herrens øjne, ja, yderst vederstyggeligt, mere end alle andre synder, bortset fra det at udgyde uskyldigt blod eller at fornægte Helligånden?
- 6 For se, hvis du fornægter Helligånden, når den én gang har haft plads i dig, og du ved, at du fornægter den, se, da er det en synd, der er utilgivelig; ja, og hver den, som myrder trods lys og kundskab fra Gud, for ham er det ikke let at få tilgivelse, ja, jeg siger dig, min søn, at for ham er det ikke let at få en tilgivelse.
- 7 Og se, min søn, Gud give, at du ikke havde været skyldig i så stor en forbrydelse. Jeg ville ikke dvæle ved dine forbrydelser for at rive op i din sjæl, hvis det ikke var til dit eget bedste.
- 8 Men se, du kan ikke skjule dine forbrydelser for Gud, og medmindre du omvender dig, vil de stå som et vidnesbyrd mod dig på den yderste dag.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

- 9 Se, min søn, jeg ønsker, at du skal omvende dig og aflægge dine synder og ikke mere gå efter dine øjnes begær, men fornægte dig alt dette, for medmindre du gør det, kan du på ingen måde arve Guds rige. Åh, husk det, og tag det på dig, og fornægt dig dette.
- 10 Og jeg befaler dig at tage det på dig at rådføre dig med dine ældre brødre i dine forehavender, for se, du er i din ungdom, og du står i behov for at blive næret af dine brødre. Og giv agt på deres råd.
- 11 Lad dig ikke forlede af noget tomt eller tåbeligt; lad ikke Djævelen igen forlede dit hjerte til disse ugudelige skøger. Se, o min søn, hvor stor syndighed har du ikke bragt over zoramitterne, for da de så din opførsel, ville de ikke tro på mine ord.
- 12 Og nu siger Herrens Ånd til mig: Befal dine børn at gøre godt, så de ikke leder mange folks hjerte i fordærv; derfor, min søn, befaler jeg dig med frygt for Gud, at du afholder dig fra dine misgerninger,
- 13 at du vender dig til Herren af hele din kraft, dit sind og din styrke, at du ikke forleder flere til at handle ugudeligt, men snarere vender tilbage til dem og erkender dine fejl og det forkerte, som du har gjort.
- 14 Søg ikke efter rigdom eller denne verdens tomme ting, for se, du kan ikke tage dem med dig.
- 15 Og nu, min søn, vil jeg sige dig noget angående Kristi komme. Se, jeg siger dig, at han er den, der visselig skal komme for at borttage verdens synder; ja, han kommer for at kundgøre glædelige tidender om frelse for sit folk.
- 16 Og se, min søn, dette var den tjenestegerning, som du var kaldet til, at kundgøre disse glædelige tidender for dette folk for at berede deres sind, eller rettere for at frelsen kunne blive dem til del, så de kunne berede deres børns sind til at høre ordet på tidspunktet for hans komme.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

- 17 Og nu vil jeg berolige dit sind noget med hensyn til dette emne. Se, du undrer dig over, hvorfor dette skulle være kendt så længe i forvejen. Se, jeg siger dig: Er en sjæl på dette tidspunkt ikke lige så dyrebar for Gud, som en sjæl er det på tidspunktet for hans komme?
- 18 Er det ikke lige så nødvendigt, at forløsningsplanen bliver kundgjort for dette folk som for deres børn?
- 19 Er det ikke lige så let for Herren at sende sin engel for at kundgøre disse glædelige tidender for os nu som for vore børn, eller som efter at han er kommet?
- And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?
- Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?
- Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Almas Bog 40

- 1 Se, min søn, her er noget mere, som jeg ønsker at sige dig, for jeg fornemmer, at dit sind er bekymret angående de dødes opstandelse.
- 2 Se, jeg siger dig, at der er ingen opstandelse – eller jeg vil sige med andre ord, at dette dødelige ifører sig ikke udødelighed, denne forgængelighed ifører sig ikke uforgængelighed – førend efter Kristi komme.
- 3 Se, han tilvejebringer de dødes opstandelse. Men se, min søn, endnu er der ingen opstandelse. Se, jeg udfolder en hemmelighed for dig; alligevel er der mange hemmeligheder, der bliver bevaret, så ingen kender dem undtagen Gud selv. Men jeg vil vise dig én ting, som jeg flittigt har bedt Gud om at lade mig vide, nemlig angående opstandelsen.
- 4 Se, der er et tidspunkt fastsat, da alle skal komme frem fra de døde. Se, hvornår det tidspunkt kommer, ved ingen; men Gud kender det tidspunkt, der er fastsat.
- 5 Se, om der bliver ét tidspunkt eller et andet tidspunkt eller et tredje tidspunkt, da menneskene skal komme frem fra de døde, betyder ikke noget, for Gud kender alt dette, og det er mig tilstrækkeligt at vide, at det er tilfældet, at der er et tidspunkt fastsat, da alle skal opstå fra de døde.
- 6 Se, der må nødvendigvis være et tidsrum mellem tidspunktet for døden og tidspunktet for opstandelsen.
- 7 Og nu vil jeg spørge: Hvad bliver der af menneskenes sjæl fra dette tidspunkt, hvor de dør, til det tidspunkt, der er fastsat for opstandelsen?
- 8 Se, om der er fastsat mere end ét tidspunkt for menneskene at opstå på, så betyder det ikke noget, for alle dør ikke på én gang, og det betyder ikke noget; alt er som én dag for Gud, og tiden bliver alene målt for menneskene.
- 9 Derfor, der er fastsat et tidspunkt for menneskene, da de skal opstå fra de døde, og der er et tidsrum mellem tidspunktet for døden og opstandelsen. Og se, angående dette tidsrum, hvad der bliver af menneskenes sjæl, er det, som jeg flittigt har bedt Herren om at lade mig vide, og dette er det, som jeg kender til.

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

- 10 Og når det tidspunkt kommer, da alle skal opstå, da skal de vide, at Gud kender alle de tidspunkter, der er fastsat for mennesket.
- 11 Se, angående sjælens tilstand mellem døden og opstandelsen: Se, det er blevet mig kundgjort af en engel, at alle menneskers ånder, så snart de har forladt dette dødelige legeme, ja, alle menneskers ånder, hvad enten de er gode eller onde, bliver ført hjem til den Gud, der gav dem livet.
- 12 Og da skal det ske, at de retfærdiges ånder bliver modtaget i en tilstand af lykke, som kaldes paradiset, en tilstand af hvile, en tilstand af fred, hvori de skal hvile fra alle deres besværligheder og fra al bekymring og sorg.
- 13 Og da skal det ske, at de ugudeliges ånder, ja, de, der er onde – for se, de har ingen lod eller del i Herrens Ånd; for se, de valgte onde gerninger hellere end gode, derfor kom Djævelens ånd ind i dem og tog deres bolig i besiddelse – og disse skal blive stødt ud i det yderste mørke; der skal være gråd og jammer og tænderskæren, og dette på grund af deres egen ugudelighed, idet de blev ført omkring som fanger efter Djævelens vilje.
- 14 Se, det er den tilstand, de ugudeliges sjæl befinder sig i, ja, i mørke og i en tilstand af forfærdelig, frygtindgydende forventning om Guds vredes rasende harme over dem; således forbliver de i denne tilstand, såvel som de retfærdige i paradiset, indtil tiden for deres opstandelse.
- 15 Se, der er nogle, der har forstået, at denne, sjælens, tilstand af lykke og tilstand af elendighed før opstandelsen var en første opstandelse. Ja, jeg indrømmer, at det ifølge de ord, der er talt, kan betegnes som en opstandelse, oprejsningen af ånden eller sjælen og dens overgivelse til lykke eller elendighed.
- 16 Og se, det er videre blevet sagt, at der er en første opstandelse, en opstandelse af alle dem, der har været til, eller som er til, eller som bliver til, op til Kristi opstandelse fra de døde.
- 17 Se, vi formoder ikke, at denne første opstandelse, der bliver talt om på denne måde, kan være sjælens opstandelse og deres overgivelse til lykke eller elendighed. Du kan ikke formode, at det er, hvad det betyder.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

18 Se, jeg siger dig: Nej, men det betyder sjælens genforening med legemet for dem fra Adams dage op til Kristi opstandelse.

19 Se, om sjælen og legemet af dem, om hvem der er blevet talt, alle skal blive genforenet på én gang, de ugudelige såvel som de retfærdige, siger jeg ikke; lad det være nok, at jeg siger, at de alle kommer frem, eller med andre ord at deres opstandelse sker førend opstandelsen af dem, der dør efter Kristi opstandelse.

20 Se, min søn, jeg siger ikke, at deres opstandelse finder sted ved Kristi opstandelse, men se, jeg siger det som min mening, at de retfærdiges sjæl og legeme bliver genforenet ved Kristi opstandelse og hans opstigning til himlen.

21 Men om det bliver ved hans opstandelse eller senere, siger jeg ikke; men så meget siger jeg, at der er et tidsrum mellem døden og legemets opstandelse, og at sjælen er i en tilstand af lykke eller elendighed indtil det tidspunkt, der er fastsat af Gud, da de døde skal komme frem og blive genforenet, både sjæl og legeme, og blive ført frem for Gud og blive dømt efter deres gerninger.

22 Ja, dette tilvejebringer genoprettelsen af det, om hvilket der er blevet talt ved profeternes mund.

23 Sjælen skal blive bragt tilbage til legemet og legemet til sjælen, ja, og hvert lem og led skal blive bragt tilbage til sit legeme, ja, end ikke et hår på hovedet skal gå tabt, men alt skal blive bragt tilbage til dets rette og fuldkomne skikkelse.

24 Og se, min søn, det er den genoprettelse, der er blevet talt om ved profeternes mund.

25 Og da skal de retfærdige stråle i Guds rige.

26 Men se, en forfærdelig død kommer over de ugudelige, for de dør med hensyn til det, der vedrører retfærdighed, for de er urene, og intet urent kan arve Guds rige; men de bliver stødt ud og overgivet til at spise af frugterne af deres arbejde eller deres gerninger, som har været onde; og de drikker bundfaldet af et bittert bæger.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Almas Bog 4 I

- 1 Og se, min søn, jeg har noget at sige angående den genoprettelse, hvorom der er blevet talt; for se, nogle har fordrejet skrifterne og er faret meget vild på grund af dette. Og jeg fornemmer, at dit sind også har været bekymret angående dette. Men se, jeg vil forklare det for dig.
- 2 Jeg siger dig, min søn, at genoprettelsesplanen er nødvendig i forbindelse med Guds retfærdighed, for det er nødvendigt, at alt skal blive bragt tilbage til dets rette orden. Se, det er nødvendigt og retfærdigt i overensstemmelse med Kristi kraft og opstandelse, at menneskets sjæl skal blive bragt tilbage til dets legeme, og at enhver del af legemet skal blive bragt tilbage til det.
- 3 Og det er nødvendigt, hvad angår Guds retfærdighed, at menneskene skal dømmes efter deres gerninger, og hvis deres gerninger har været gode i dette liv, og deres hjertes ønsker har været gode, at de da også på den yderste dag skal blive bragt tilbage til det, der er godt.
- 4 Og hvis deres gerninger er onde, skal de blive bragt tilbage til dem som onde. Derfor skal alt blive bragt tilbage til dets rette orden, enhver til sin naturlige skikkelse – dødelighed oprejst til udødelighed, forgængelighed til uforgængelighed – oprejst til uendelig lykke for at arve Guds rige, eller til uendelig elendighed for at arve Djævelens rige, det ene på den ene side og det andet på den anden –
- 5 den ene oprejst til lykke efter sit ønske om lykke, eller til det gode efter sit ønske om det gode, og den anden til det onde efter sit ønske om det onde; for ligesom han har ønsket at gøre ondt hele dagen lang, således skal han få sin belønning i form af ondt, når natten kommer.
- 6 Og således er det på den anden side: Hvis han har omvendt sig fra sine synder og ønsket retfærdighed lige til sine dages ende, da skal han blive belønnet med retfærdighed.
- 7 Disse er dem, der bliver forløst af Herren, ja, disse er dem, der bliver ført ud, der bliver udfriet fra mørkets uendelige nat; og således står eller falder de, for se, de er deres egne dommere, enten til at gøre godt eller til at gøre ondt.

Alma 4 I

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

8 Se, Guds forordninger står ikke til at ændre; derfor er vejen beredt, så hver den, der vil, kan vandre derpå og blive frelst.

9 Og se nu, min søn, vov ikke endnu en forseelse mod din Gud med hensyn til de lærepunkter, som du hidtil har vovet at begå synd imod.

10 Antag ikke, fordi der er blevet talt angående genoprettelse, at du skal blive bragt tilbage fra synd til lykke. Se, jeg siger dig: Ugudelighed har aldrig været lykke.

11 Og se, min søn, alle mennesker, som er i en naturlig tilstand, eller jeg vil snarere sige i en kødelig tilstand, er i bitterheds galde og i syndens bånd; de er uden Gud i verden, og de har levet i modstrid med Guds natur; derfor er de i en tilstand, der er i modstrid med lykkens natur.

12 Og se nu, er betydningen af ordet genoprettelse at tage noget i en naturlig tilstand og anbringe det i en unaturlig tilstand, eller at anbringe det i en tilstand, som er modsat dets natur?

13 O, min søn, dette er ikke tilfældet, men betydningen af ordet genoprettelse er at bringe ondt tilbage for ondt eller kødeligt for kødeligt eller djævelsk for djævelsk – godt for det, der er godt, retfærd for det, der er retfærd, retfærdigt for det, der er retfærdigt, barmhjertigt for det, der er barmhjertigt.

14 Se derfor til, min søn, at du er barmhjertig mod dine brødre; handl ret, døm retfærdigt og gør bestandigt godt; og hvis du gør alt dette, så vil du få din løn; ja, du skal igen få barmhjertighed gengivet til dig, du skal igen få retfærdighed gengivet til dig, du skal igen få en retfærdig dom gengivet til dig, og du skal igen blive belønnet med det gode.

15 For det, som du sender ud, skal vende tilbage til dig igen og blive dig gengivet; ordet genoprettelse dømmer derfor synderen mere fuldt ud og retfærdiggør ham på ingen måde.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

Almas Bog 42

- 1 Og se, min søn, jeg fornemmer, at der er noget mere, som bekymrer dit sind, og som du ikke kan forstå, og som angår Guds retfærdighed i forbindelse med at straffe synderen; for du forsøger at forestille dig, at det er uretfærdigt, at synderen bliver overført til en tilstand af elendighed.
- 2 Se nu, min søn, jeg vil forklare dette for dig. For se, efter at Gud Herren havde sendt vore første forældre bort fra Edens have for at dyrke jorden, hvorfra de var taget – ja, han drev mennesket ud, og ved den østlige ende af Edens have satte han keruber og et flammesværd, der vendte til alle sider, for at vogte livets træ –
- 3 ser vi, at mennesket var blevet som Gud, idet det kendte godt og ondt; og for at han ikke skulle række hånden ud og også tage af livets træ og spise og leve for evigt, satte Gud Herren keruber og flammesværdet, for at han ikke skulle spise af frugten.
- 4 Og således ser vi, at der blev tilstedt mennesket en tid til at omvende sig, ja, en prøvetid, en tid til at omvende sig og tjene Gud.
- 5 For se, hvis Adam straks havde rakt hånden ud og spist af livets træ, ville han ifølge Guds ord have levet evigt og intet tidsrum have haft til omvendelse; ja, og Guds ord ville også have været tomt, og den store frelsesplan ville være blevet forpurret.
- 6 Men se, det blev bestemt for mennesket, at han skulle dø – derfor, ligesom de blev afskåret fra livets træ, skulle de blive udryddet fra jordens overflade – og mennesket blev for evigt fortabt; ja, de blev et faldent menneske.
- 7 Og nu ser du heraf, at vore første forældre blev forstødt både timeligt og åndeligt fra Herrens nærhed; og således ser vi, at de blev undersætter, der skulle følge deres egen vilje.
- 8 Se nu var det ikke tjenligt, at mennesket skulle vindes tilbage fra denne timelige død, for det ville tilintetgøre den store plan for lykke.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

9 Eftersom sjælen aldrig kunne dø, og faldet havde bragt en åndelig død såvel som en timelig død over hele menneskeslægten, det vil sige, at de var forstødt fra Herrens nærhed, var det derfor tjenligt, at menneskeslægten skulle vindes tilbage fra denne åndelige død.

10 Eftersom de var blevet kødelige, sanselige og djævelske af natur, blev denne prøvetilstand derfor en tilstand, hvori de skulle berede sig; den blev en forberedende tilstand.

11 Og husk nu, min søn, at hvis det ikke var for forløsningsplanen (hvis vi lægger den til side), ville deres sjæl, så snart de var døde, være elendig, fordi de var forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.

12 Og se, der var intet middel til at vinde menneskene tilbage fra denne faldne tilstand, som mennesket havde bragt over sig selv som følge af sin egen ulydighed;

13 derfor kunne forløsningsplanen under hensyntagen til retfærdigheden ikke blive tilvejebragt undtagen på betingelse af menneskenes omvendelse i denne prøvetilstand, ja, denne forberedende tilstand; for var det ikke for disse betingelser, kunne barmhjertigheden ikke få nogen virkning, uden at det ville tilintetgøre retfærdighedens værk. Se, retfærdighedens værk kunne ikke blive tilintetgjort; hvis så var, ville Gud ophøre med at være Gud.

14 Og således ser vi, at hele menneskeslægten var falden, og de var i retfærdighedens greb, ja, Guds retfærdighed, som overgav dem til for evigt at være forstødt fra hans nærhed.

15 Og se, barmhjertighedens plan kunne ikke blive bragt til at virke, medmindre der blev foretaget en forsoning; derfor soner Gud selv for verdens synder for at bringe barmhjertighedens plan til at virke og tilfredsstille retfærdighedens krav, så Gud kan være en fuldkommen og retfærdig Gud og også en barmhjertig Gud.

16 Se, omvendelse kunne ikke blive menneskene til del, uden at der var en straf – som også var evig, ligesom sjælens liv skulle være – knyttet dertil i modsætning til planen for lykke, der også var lige så evig som sjælens liv.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

17 Se, hvorledes kunne et menneske omvende sig, medmindre han syndede? Hvorledes kunne han synde, hvis der ingen lov var? Hvorledes kunne der være en lov, medmindre der var en straf?

18 Se, der blev knyttet en straf dertil og givet en retfærdig lov, der gav mennesker samvittighedsnag.

19 Se, hvis der ingen lov blev givet – at hvis et menneske myrdede, så skulle han dø – ville han da være bange for, at han skulle dø, hvis han myrdede?

20 Og ligeledes, hvis der ingen lov blev givet mod synd, ville mennesker ikke være bange for at synde.

21 Og hvis der ingen lov blev givet, og hvis mennesker syndede, hvad kunne retfærdigheden da gøre, eller barmhjertigheden for den sags skyld, for de ville ingen krav have på skabningen?

22 Men der er givet en lov og knyttet en straf dertil og givet en omvendelse, hvilken omvendelse barmhjertigheden gør krav på, ellers gør retfærdigheden krav på skabningen og fuldbyrder loven, og loven tildeler straffen; hvis det ikke var således, ville retfærdighedens værk blive tilintetgjort, og Gud ville ophøre med at være Gud.

23 Men Gud ophører ikke med at være Gud, og barmhjertigheden gør krav på den angrende, og barmhjertigheden kommer på grund af forsoningen, og forsoningen tilvejebringer de dødes opstandelse, og de dødes opstandelse bringer menneskene tilbage til Guds nærhed, og således bliver de bragt tilbage i hans nærhed for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger i overensstemmelse med loven og retfærdigheden.

24 For se, retfærdigheden fremsætter alle sine krav, og barmhjertigheden gør også krav på alle, der er hendes egne; og således bliver ingen, undtagen de oprigtigt angrende, frelst.

25 For mener du, at barmhjertigheden kan berøve retfærdigheden? Jeg siger dig: Nej, ikke den mindste smule. Hvis så var, ville Gud ophøre med at være Gud.

26 Og således opnår Gud sine store og evige formål, som var beredt fra verdens grundlæggelse. Og således tilvejebringes menneskenes frelse og forløsning og også deres undergang og elendighed.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

27 Derfor, o min søn, kan hver den, der vil, komme og frit drikke af livets vand; og hver den, der ikke vil komme, han bliver ikke tvunget til at komme; men på den yderste dag skal det blive gengivet ham efter hans handlinger.

28 Hvis han har ønsket at gøre ondt og ikke har omvendt sig i sine dage, se, da skal ondt blive gjort mod ham i overensstemmelse med den gengivelse, som Gud tilvejebringer.

29 Og se, min søn, jeg ønsker af dig, at du ikke skal lade dette forurolige dig mere, men alene lade dine synder forurolige dig med den uro, der skal bringe dig ned til omvendelse.

30 O, min søn, jeg ønsker af dig, at du ikke mere vil fornægte Guds retfærdighed. Forsøg ikke at undskylde dig på den mindste måde på grund af dine synder ved at fornægte Guds retfærdighed, men lad Guds retfærdighed og hans barmhjertighed og hans langmodighed få fuldt råderum i dit hjerte, og lad det bringe dig ned i støvet i ydmyghed.

31 Og se, o min søn, du er kaldet af Gud til at prædike ordet for dette folk. Og se, min søn, begiv dig på din vej, og kundgør ordet med sandhed og alvor, så du kan bringe sjæle til omvendelse, så barmhjertighedens store plan må have krav på dem. Og måtte Gud give dig i overensstemmelse med mine ord. Amen.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Almas Bog 43

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Almas sønner drog ud blandt folket for at forkynde ordet for dem. Og Alma selv kunne heller ikke holde sig i ro, og han drog også ud.
- 2 Se, vi skal ikke sige mere angående deres forkyndelse, bortset fra at de prædikede ordet og sandheden i overensstemmelse med profetiens og åbenbarelsens ånd; og de prædikede efter Guds hellige orden, hvorved de var kaldet.
- 3 Og nu vender jeg tilbage til en beretning om krigene mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne i det attende år af dommernes regeringstid.
- 4 For se, det skete, at zoramitterne blev lamanitter; i begyndelsen af det attende år så det nefitiske folk derfor, at lamanitterne var ved at falde over dem, derfor traf de forberedelser til krig, ja, de samlede deres hære i Jershons land.
- 5 Og det skete, at lamanitterne kom med deres tusinder; og de kom ind i Antionums land, som er zoramiternes land; og en mand ved navn Zerahemna var deres leder.
- 6 Og se, eftersom amalekitterne var af en mere ugudeligg og morderisk indstilling end lamanitterne var af og i sig selv, udpegede Zerahemna derfor øverste anførere over lamanitterne, og de var alle amalekitter og zoramitter.
- 7 Se, dette gjorde han, så han kunne bevare deres had til nefitterne, så han kunne bringe dem til underkastelse for at fuldføre sine forehavender.
- 8 For se, hans forehavender var at ophidse lamanitterne til vrede mod nefitterne; dette gjorde han for at kunne tilrane sig stor magt over dem og også for at kunne få magt over nefitterne ved at bringe dem i trældom.
- 9 Og se, nefitternes forehavende var at tage vare på deres jorder og deres huse og deres hustruer og deres børn, så de kunne bevare dem mod deres fjenders hænder, og også så de kunne bevare deres rettigheder og deres privilegier, ja, og også deres frihed, så de kunne tilbede Gud efter deres ønsker.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

10 For de vidste, at hvis de faldt i lamanitternes hænder, så ville hver den, der tilbad Gud i ånd og i sandhed, den sande og levende Gud, blive slået ihjel af lamanitterne.

11 Ja, de kendte også lamanitternes umådelige had til deres brødre, som var folket Anti-Nefi-Lehi, som blev kaldt Ammons folk – og de ville ikke gribe til våben, ja, de havde indgået en pagt, og de ville ikke bryde den – hvis de faldt i lamanitternes hænder, ville de derfor blive udryddet.

12 Og nefitterne ville ikke tillade, at de blev udryddet, derfor gav de dem lande som deres arvelod.

13 Og Ammons folk gav nefitterne en stor del af deres gods til at forsørge deres hær med; og således blev nefitterne nødt til at stå alene mod lamanitterne, der var en blanding af Lamans og Lemuels og Ismaels sønner og alle dem, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne, og som var amalekitter og zoramitter og efterkommerne af Noas præster.

14 Se, disse efterkommere var næsten lige så talrige som nefitterne var; og således blev nefitterne nødt til at stride mod deres brødre, endog til blodsudgydelse.

15 Og det skete, at da lamanitternes hære havde samlet sig i Antionums land, se, da var nefitternes hære rede til at møde dem i Jershons land.

16 Se, nefitternes leder, eller den mand, der var blevet udpeget til at være øverste anfører over nefitterne – se, den øverste anfører overtog kommandoen over alle nefitternes hære – og hans navn var Moroni.

17 Og Moroni tog hele kommandoen og ledelsen af deres krige. Og han var kun femogtyve år gammel, da han blev udpeget til øverste anfører over nefitternes hære.

18 Og det skete, at han mødte lamanitterne på grænsen til Jershon, og hans folk var bevæbnede med sværd og med sabler og alle slags krigsvåben.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

19 Og da lamaniternes hære så, at Nefis folk, eller at Moroni havde beredt sit folk med brynjer og med arm-skjolde, ja, og også med skjolde til at beskytte hovedet med, og de var også klædt i tykke klæder –

20 se, Zerahemnas hær var ikke beredt med noget sådant; de havde kun deres sværd og deres sabler, deres buer og deres pile, deres sten og deres slynger; og de var nøgne bortset fra et skind, der var bundet om lænderne på dem; ja, alle var nøgne bortset fra zoramitterne og amalekitterne,

21 men de var ikke bevæbnet med brynjer, ej heller skjolde – derfor blev de overordentlig bange for nefiternes hære på grund af deres bevæbning, på trods af at antallet af dem var så meget større end nefitterne.

22 Se, nu skete det, at de ikke turde gå imod nefitterne på grænsen til Jershon, derfor drog de ud af Antionums land og ud i ødemarken og rejste omkring i ødemarken bort til floden Sidons udspring, så de kunne gå ind i Mantis land og tage landet i besiddelse, for de mente ikke, at Moronis hære vidste, hvor de var draget hen.

23 Men det skete, at så snart de var draget ud i ødemarken, sendte Moroni spioner ud i ødemarken for at holde øje med deres hær; og Moroni, som kendte Almas profetier, sendte også visse mænd til ham, for han ønskede af ham, at han skulle adspørge Herren om, hvor nefiternes hære skulle drage hen for at forsvare sig mod lamanitterne.

24 Og det skete, at Herrens ord kom til Alma, og Alma fortalte Moronis sendebud, at lamaniternes hære marcherede omkring i ødemarken, for at de kunne komme over i Mantis land, for at de kunne begynde et angreb på den svagere del af folket. Og disse sendebud drog af sted og afleverede budskabet til Moroni.

25 Se, efter at have efterladt en del af sin hær i Jershons land, for at en del af lamanitterne ikke på en eller anden måde skulle komme ind i det land og tage byen i besiddelse, tog Moroni den øvrige del af sin hær og marcherede over til Mantis land.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

26 Og han lod alle folk i den del af landet samle sig for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne for at forsvare deres jorder og deres land, deres rettigheder og deres friheder; derfor var de rede til det tidspunkt, da lamanitterne kom.

27 Og det skete, at Moroni lod sin hær skjule sig i den dal, som lå i nærheden af bredden af floden Sidon, og som lå vest for floden Sidon i ødemarken.

28 Og Moroni anbragte spioner rundt omkring, for at han kunne vide, hvornår lamanitternes hær kom.

29 Og se, da Moroni kendte lamanitternes hensigt, at det var deres hensigt at udrydde deres brødre eller at underlægge sig dem og bringe dem i trældom, så de kunne oprette et rige for sig selv over hele landet,

30 og han, som også vidste, at det var nefitternes eneste ønske at bevare deres jorder og deres frihed og deres kirke, han mente derfor ikke, at det var nogen synd, at han skulle forsvare dem ved list, derfor fandt han gennem sine spioner ud af, hvilken vej lamanitterne ville tage.

31 Derfor delte han sin hær og førte en del over i dalen og skjulte dem mod øst og mod syd ved højen Ripla,

32 og resten skjulte han i den vestlige dal, vest for floden Sidon, og på den måde ned til grænsen til landet Manti.

33 Og efter således at have opstillet sin hær efter sit ønske, var han rede til at møde dem.

34 Og det skete, at lamanitterne kom op nord for højen, hvor en del af Moronis hær var skjult.

35 Og da lamanitterne havde passeret højen Ripla og kom ind i dalen og begyndte at krydse floden Sidon, blev den hær, der var skjult syd for højen, og som blev ført af en mand, hvis navn var Lehi, og han førte sin hær frem og omringede lamanitterne bagfra mod øst.

36 Og det skete, at lamanitterne, da de så nefitterne falde over dem bagfra, vendte omkring og begyndte at stride med Lehis hær.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

37 Og dødens værk begyndte på begge sider, men det var mest frygteligt på lamaniternes side, fordi deres nøgenhed blev udsat for nefitternes svære slag med deres sværd og deres sabler, hvilket medførte døden ved næsten hvert eneste slag,

38 mens der på den anden side kun nu og da faldt en mand blandt nefitterne for deres sværd og på grund af blodtab, for de var beskyttet på de vigtigste dele af kroppen, eller de vigtigste dele af kroppen var beskyttet mod lamaniternes slag med deres brynjer og deres armskjolde og deres hjelme; og således fortsatte nefitterne dødens værk blandt lamanitterne.

39 Og det skete, at lamanitterne blev rædselsslagne på grund af den store udryddelse blandt dem, endog så meget at de begyndte at flygte hen imod floden Sidon.

40 Og de blev forfulgt af Lehi og hans mænd; og de blev af Lehi drevet ud i Sidons vande, og de krydsede Sidons vande. Og Lehi holdt sine hære tilbage på bredden af floden Sidon, for at de ikke skulle krydse den.

41 Og det skete, at Moroni og hans hær mødte lamanitterne i dalen på den anden side af floden Sidon og begyndte at falde over dem og slå dem ihjel.

42 Og lamanitterne flygtede igen for dem hen imod Mantis land, og de blev igen mødt af Moronis hære.

43 Se, i dette tilfælde kæmpede lamanitterne overordentlig hårdt; ja, aldrig havde man set lamanitterne kæmpe med sådan overordentlig stor styrke og stort mod, nej, end ikke fra begyndelsen.

44 Og de blev ansporet af zoramitterne og amalekitterne, som var deres øverste anførere og ledere, og af Zerahemna, som var deres øverste anfører eller deres øverste leder og hærfører; ja, de kæmpede som drager, og mange af nefitterne blev slået ihjel ved deres hænder, ja, for de huggede mange af deres hjelme midt over, og de gennemborede mange af deres brynjer, og de huggede mange af deres arme af; og således huggede lamanitterne løs i deres rasende vrede.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their headplates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

45 Alligevel var nefitterne ansporet af en bedre sag, for de kæmpede ikke for et monarki, ej heller magt, men de kæmpede for deres hjem og deres friheder, deres hustruer og deres børn og deres alt, ja, for deres gudsyndelse og deres kirke.

46 Og de gjorde det, som de følte var den pligt, som de skyldte deres Gud; for Herren havde sagt til dem og også til deres fædre: For så vidt som I ikke er skyldige i den første krænelse, ej heller den anden, skal I ikke lade jer slå ihjel ved jeres fjenders hænder.

47 Og videre har Herren sagt: I skal forsvare jeres familier, endog til blodsudgydelse. Derfor, af denne årsag, stred nefitterne mod lamanitterne for at forsvare sig selv og deres familier og deres jorder, deres land og deres rettigheder og deres religion.

48 Og det skete, at da Moronis mænd så lamaniternes heftighed og vrede, var de lige ved at vige og flygte for dem. Og Moroni, der fornemmede deres hensigt, sendte bud og ansporede deres hjerte med disse tanker – ja, tankerne om deres jorder, deres frihed, ja, deres frihed fra trældom.

49 Og det skete, at de vendte sig mod lamanitterne, og med én røst anrøbte de Herren deres Gud for deres frihed og deres udfrielse af trældom.

50 Og de begyndte at stå imod lamanitterne med kraft; og i den selv samme time, da de anrøbte Herren for deres frihed, begyndte lamanitterne at flygte for dem; og de flygtede helt til Sidons vande.

51 Se, lamanitterne var de mest talrige, ja, flere end dobbelt så mange som nefitterne; alligevel blev de drevet tilbage, således at de var samlet i én skare i dalen på bredden af floden Sidon.

52 Derfor var de omringet af Moronis hære, ja, endog på begge sider af floden, for se, mod øst var Lehis mænd.

53 Da nu Zerahemna så Lehis mænd øst for floden Sidon og Moronis hære vest for floden Sidon, og at de var omringet af nefitterne, blev de slået af skræk.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

54 Se, da Moroni så deres skræk, befalede han sine Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded
mænd, at de skulle holde inde med at udgyde deres blod. his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

Almas Bog 44

- 1 Og det skete, at de holdt inde og trak sig lidt tilbage fra dem. Og Moroni sagde til Zerahemna: Se, Zerahemna, at vi ikke ønsker at være blodtørstige mænd. I ved, at I er i vore hænder, dog ønsker vi ikke at slå jer ihjel.
- 2 Se, vi er ikke draget ud for at kæmpe imod jer, for at vi kan udgyde jeres blod for magt; ej heller ønsker vi at bringe nogen under trældomsåget. Men det er netop af den grund, at I er kommet mod os; ja, og I er vrede på os på grund af vor religion.
- 3 Men nu ser I, at Herren er med os, og I ser, at han har overgivet jer i vore hænder. Og se, jeg ønsker, at I skal forstå, at det er gjort for os på grund af vor religion og vor tro på Kristus. Og nu ser I, at I ikke kan tilintetgøre denne vor tro.
- 4 Nu ser I, at det er Guds sande tro; ja, I ser, at Gud vil støtte, bevare og opretholde os, så længe vi er trofaste mod ham og mod vor tro og vor religion; og aldrig vil Herren tillade, at vi bliver udryddet, medmindre vi falder i overtrædelse og fornægter vor tro.
- 5 Og se, Zerahemna, jeg befaler jer i Gud den Almægtiges navn, han, som har styrket vore arme, så vi har fået magt over jer ved vor tro, ved vor religion og ved vor gudsdyrkelse og ved vor kirke og ved det hellige underhold, som vi skylder vore hustruer og vore børn, ved den frihed, der binder os til vore jorder og vort land, ja, og også ved bevarelsen af Guds hellige ord, som vi skylder al vor lykke, og ved alt, hvad der er os mest kært –
- 6 ja, og det er ikke alt, jeg befaler jer ved alle de ønsker, I har for livet, at I overdrager jeres krigsvåben til os, så vil vi ikke stræbe efter jeres blod, men vi vil skåne jeres liv, hvis I vil drage bort og ikke igen drage i krig mod os.
- 7 Og se, hvis I ikke gør det, se, da er I i vore hænder, og jeg vil befale mine mænd, at de skal falde over jer og påføre jeres legeme dødelige sår, så I bliver udslettet, og da får vi at se, hvem der får magt over dette folk, ja, vi får at se, hvem der bliver ført i trældom.

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

8 Og se, det skete, at da Zerahemna havde hørt disse ord, kom han hen og overlod sit sværd og sin sabel og sin bue i Moronis hænder og sagde til ham: Se, her er vore krigsvåben; vi vil overdrage dem til jer, men vi vil ikke tillade os selv at aflægge en ed til jer, som vi ved, at vi vil bryde, og også vore børn; men tag vore krigsvåben, og tillad os at drage ud i ødemarken, ellers vil vi beholde vore sværd, og vi vil omkomme eller sejre.

9 Se, vi er ikke af jeres tro, vi tror ikke, at det er Gud, der har overgivet os i jeres hænder, men vi tror, at det er jeres snedighed, der har beskyttet jer mod vore sværd. Se, det er jeres brynjer og jeres skjolde, der har beskyttet jer.

10 Og se, da Zerahemna var færdig med at tale disse ord, gav Moroni sværdet og krigsvåbnene, som han havde modtaget, tilbage til Zerahemna, og sagde: Se, vi vil gøre ende på striden.

11 Se, jeg kan ikke tilbagekalde de ord, som jeg har talt, derfor skal I, så sandt som Herren lever, ikke drage bort, medmindre I drager bort med en ed på, at I ikke igen vil vende jer mod os for at føre krig. Se, da I er i vore hænder, vil vi lade jeres blod flyde ud på jorden, eller også må I underkaste jer de betingelser, som jeg har fremsat.

12 Og se, da Moroni havde sagt disse ord, tog Zerahemna sit sværd tilbage, og han var vred på Moroni, og han styrtede frem, for at han kunne dræbe Moroni, men da han hævdede sværdet, se, da slog en af Moronis soldater det til jorden, og det knækkede ved fæstet; og han slog også Zerahemna, så han huggede skalpen af ham, og den faldt til jorden. Og Zerahemna trak sig tilbage fra dem ind midt blandt sine soldater.

13 Og det skete, at den soldat, der stod ved siden af, og som huggede skalpen af Zerahemna, tog skalpen op fra jorden ved håret og lagde den på spidsen af sit sværd og strakte det ud mod dem, idet han sagde til dem med høj røst:

14 Ligesom denne skalp er faldet til jorden, hvilken skalp er jeres høvdings skalp, således skal I falde til jorden, medmindre I overdrager jeres krigsvåben og drager bort med en pagt om fred.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

15 Se, der var mange, som, da de hørte disse ord og så skalpen, som var på sværdet, blev slået af frygt; og mange kom frem og kastede deres krigsvåben for fødderne af Moroni og indgik en pagt om fred. Og så mange, som indgik en pagt, lod de drage ud i ødemarken.

16 Se, det skete, at Zerahemna blev overordentlig vred, og han ophidsede resten af sine soldater til vrede, til at stride kraftigere mod nefitterne.

17 Og nu blev Moroni vred på grund af lamaniternes stædighed, derfor befalede han sine folk, at de skulle falde over dem og slå dem ihjel. Og det skete, at de begyndte at slå dem ihjel, ja, og lamanitterne stred med deres sværd og af alle deres kræfter.

18 Men se, deres nøgne hud og deres bare hoved var udsat for nefitternes skarpe sværd; ja, se, de blev gennem-boret og hugget ned, ja, og faldt overordentlig hurtigt for nefitternes sværd; og de begyndte at blive mejet ned, ligesom Moronis soldat havde profeteret.

19 Se, da Zerahemna så, at de alle var ved at blive slået ihjel, anræbte han Moroni indtrængende og lovede, at han og også hans folk ville slutte pagt med dem om, at de, hvis de ville skåne de tilbageværendes liv, aldrig ville drage i krig mod dem igen.

20 Og det skete, at Moroni igen lod dødens værk høre op blandt folket. Og han tog krigsvåbnene fra lamanitterne; og efter at de havde indgået en pagt med ham om fred, fik de lov til at drage ud i ødemarken.

21 Se, antallet af deres døde blev ikke talt på grund af det store antal, ja, antallet af deres døde var overordentlig stort, både på nefitternes og på lamaniternes side.

22 Og det skete, at de kastede deres døde i Sidons vande, og de er skyllet bort og er begravet i havets dyb.

23 Og nefitternes, eller Moronis, hære vendte tilbage og kom til deres huse og deres jorder.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

24 Og således endte det attende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk. Og således endte Almas optegnelser, som var skrevet på Nefis plader.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Beretningen om Nefis folk og deres krige og splid i Helamans dage ifølge Helamans optegnelse, som han førte i sine dage.

Almas Bog 45

- 1 Se, nu skete det, at Nefis folk frydede sig overordentlig, fordi Herren igen havde udfriet dem af deres fjenders hænder, derfor gav de tak til Herren deres Gud; ja, og de fastede meget og bad meget, og de tilbad Gud med overordentlig stor glæde.
- 2 Og det skete i det nittende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at Alma kom til sin søn Helaman og sagde til ham: Tror du de ord, som jeg talte til dig angående de optegnelser, som er blevet ført?
- 3 Og Helaman sagde til ham: Ja, jeg tror.
- 4 Og Alma sagde igen: Tror du på Jesus Kristus, som skal komme?
- 5 Og han sagde: Ja, jeg tror alle de ord, som du har talt.
- 6 Og Alma sagde igen til ham: Vil du holde mine befalinger?
- 7 Og han sagde: Ja, jeg vil holde dine befalinger af hele mit hjerte.
- 8 Da sagde Alma til ham: Velsignet er du, og Herren vil give dig fremgang i dette land.
- 9 Men se, jeg har noget at profetere for dig, men hvad jeg profeterer for dig, skal du ikke kundgøre, ja, hvad jeg profeterer for dig, skal ikke blive kundgjort, før profetien er opfyldt; skriv derfor de ord, som jeg skal tale.
- 10 Og dette er ordene: Se, jeg fornemmer, at netop dette folk, nefitterne, i overensstemmelse med åbenbarelsens ånd, som er i mig, fire hundrede år fra den tid da Jesus Kristus skal give sig til kende for dem, skal synke ned i vantro.
- 11 Ja, og da skal de se krige og pest, ja, hungersnød og blodsudgydelse, indtil Nefis folk bliver udslettet –

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

12 ja, og dette fordi de synker ned i vantro og henfalder til mørkets gerninger og uterlighed og al slags syndighed, ja, jeg siger dig, at fordi de synder mod så stort lys og så megen kundskab, ja, jeg siger dig, at fra den dag skal end ikke det fjerde slægtled gå bort, før denne store syndighed finder sted.

13 Og når den store dag kommer, se, da kommer den tid meget snart, da de, der nu er, eller efterkommerne af dem, der nu bliver regnet blandt Nefis folk, ikke mere skal blive regnet blandt Nefis folk.

14 Men hver den, der bliver tilbage og ikke bliver slået ihjel på den store og frygtelige dag, skal blive regnet blandt lamanitterne og skal blive ligesom dem, alle undtagen nogle få, som skal kaldes Herrens disciple; og dem vil lamanitterne forfølge, indtil de bliver udslettet. Og se, på grund af ugudelighed vil denne profeti blive opfyldt.

15 Og se, det skete, at efter at Alma havde sagt dette til Helaman, velsignede han ham og også sine andre sønner; og han velsignede også jorden for de retfærdiges skyld.

16 Og han sagde: Så siger Gud Herren: Forbandet skal landet være, ja, dette land, til undergang for alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk, som handler ugudeligt, når de er fuldmodne; og som jeg har sagt, så skal det ske, for dette er Guds forbandelse og velsignelse over landet, for Herren kan ikke se på synd med den mindste grad af billigelse.

17 Og se, da Alma havde sagt disse ord, velsignede han kirken, ja, alle dem, der ville stå fast i troen fra den tid af.

18 Og da Alma havde gjort dette, drog han ud af Zarahemlas land, som om han ville tage til Meleks land. Og det skete, at man aldrig hørte mere til ham; hvad angår hans død eller begravelse ved vi intet.

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

19 Se, dette ved vi, at han var en retfærdig mand, og det udsagn spredtes i kirken, at han var blevet taget op af Ånden eller begravet ved Herrens hånd ligesom Moses. Men se, skrifterne siger, at Herren tog Moses til sig, og vi formoder, at han også har modtaget Alma hos sig i ånden; af denne årsag ved vi derfor intet om hans død og begravelse.

20 Og se, det skete i begyndelsen af det nittende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at Helaman drog ud blandt folket for at kundgøre ordet for dem.

21 For se, på grund af deres krige med lamanitterne og de mange små tilfælde af splid og uroligheder, der havde været blandt folket, blev det nødvendigt, at Guds ord skulle kundgøres blandt dem, ja, og at der skulle foretages en regulering overalt i kirken.

22 Derfor drog Helaman og hans brødre ud for igen at etablere kirken i hele landet, ja, i hver by overalt i det land, som Nefis folks havde taget i besiddelse. Og det skete, at de udpegede præster og lærere overalt i hele landet, over alle menighederne.

23 Og se, det skete, efter at Helaman og hans brødre havde udpeget præster og lærere over menighederne, at der opstod kiv blandt dem, og de ville ikke give agt på Helamans og hans brødres ord,

24 men de blev stolte, for de var indbildske i hjertet på grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme, derfor blev de rige i deres egne øjne og ville ikke give agt på deres ord om at vandre retsindigt for Gud.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Almas Bog 46

- 1 Og det skete, at så mange, som ikke ville lytte til Helamans og hans brødres ord havde samlet sig mod deres brødre.
- 2 Og se nu, de var overordentlig vrede, i en sådan grad at de var besluttede på at slå dem ihjel.
- 3 Se, lederen for dem, der var vrede på deres brødre, var en stor og en stærk mand, og hans navn var Amalikija.
- 4 Og Amalikija nærede ønske om at blive konge, og de folk, der var vrede, nærede også ønske om, at han skulle være deres konge, og de var for størstedelens vedkommende underdommerne i landet, og de stræbte efter magt.
- 5 Og de var blevet ledt af Amalikijas smiger, at hvis de ville støtte ham og indsætte ham som konge, så ville han gøre dem til herskere over folket.
- 6 Således blev de forledt af Amalikija til at skille sig ud til trods for Helamans og hans brødres forkyndelse, ja, til trods for deres overordentlig store omsorg for kirken, for de var højpræster over kirken.
- 7 Og der var mange i kirken, som troede på Amalikijas smigrende ord, derfor skilte de sig endog ud fra kirken; og således blev forholdene for Nefis folk overordentlig usikre og farlige til trods for den store sejr, som de havde vundet over lamanitterne, og den store glæde, som de havde haft på grund af deres udfrielse ved Herrens hånd.
- 8 Således ser vi, hvor hurtigt menneskenes børn glemmer Herren deres Gud, ja, hvor hurtige til at gøre misgerninger og til at lade sig forlede af den Onde.
- 9 Ja, og vi ser også den store ugudelighed, som én meget ugudelig mand kan få til at finde sted blandt menneskenes børn.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, inso-much that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

10 Ja, vi ser, at Amalikija, fordi han var en mand af sne-
dige anslag og en mand af mange smigrende ord, at han
forledte mange folks hjerte til at handle ugudeligt, ja, og
til at forsøge at tilintetgøre Guds kirke og til at tilintet-
gøre frihedens grundvold, som Gud havde skænket
dem, eller som Gud for de retfærdiges skyld havde sendt
ned over landets overflade som en velsignelse.

11 Og se, det skete, at da Moroni, som var den øverste
hærfører over nefitternes hære, havde hørt om disse op-
splitninger, blev han vred på Amalikija.

12 Og det skete, at han rev sin kjortel itu, og han tog et
stykke deraf og skrev på det: Til erindring om vor Gud,
vor religion og frihed og vor fred, vore hustruer og vore
børn; og han fastgjorde det på enden af en stang.

13 Og han iførte sig sin hjelm og sin brynje og sine skjol-
de og spændte sin rustning om lænderne; og han tog
stangen, for enden af hvilken hans iturevne kjortel hang
(og han kaldte det frihedserklæringen), og han bøjede
sig til jorden og bad indtrængende til sin Gud om, at fri-
hedens velsignelser måtte hvile over hans brødre, så læn-
ge der var en flok kristne tilbage til at besidde landet –

14 for således blev alle Kristi sande troende, som tilhørte
Guds kirke, kaldt af dem, der ikke tilhørte kirken.

15 Og de, der tilhørte kirken, var trofaste; ja, alle de, der
virkelig troede på Kristus, påtog sig med glæde Kristi
navn, eller navnet kristne, som de blev kaldt på grund af
deres tro på Kristus, som skulle komme.

16 Og derfor bad Moroni på dette tidspunkt for, at de
kristnes sag og landets frihed måtte blive begunstiget.

17 Og det skete, at da han havde udøst sin sjæl til Gud,
kaldte han alt det land, som lå syd for landet
Ødelæggelse, ja, kort sagt alt landet både mod nord og
mod syd, et udvalgt land og et frihedens land.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of
cunning device and a man of many flattering words,
that he led away the hearts of many people to do
wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God,
and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had
granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent
upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was
the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had
heard of these dissensions, he was angry with
Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took
a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our
God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our
wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the
end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-
plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his
loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end
thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty)
and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed
mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest
upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of
Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who be-
longed to the church of God, called by those who did
not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faith-
ful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took
upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as
they were called, because of their belief in Christ who
should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the
cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land
might be favored.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his
soul to God, he named all the land which was south of
the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both
on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the
land of liberty.

- 18 Og han sagde: Gud vil visselig ikke tillade, at vi, som bliver foragtet, fordi vi har påtaget os Kristi navn, skal blive trådt ned og slået ihjel, førend vi bringer det over os ved vore egne overtrædelser.
- 19 Og da Moroni havde sagt disse ord, drog han ud blandt folket og svingede den afrevne del af sin klædning i luften, så alle kunne se det, som han havde skrevet på den afrevne del, og han råbte med høj røst, idet han sagde:
- 20 Se, hver den, der vil hævde denne erklæring i landet, lad dem komme frem i Herrens styrke og indgå en pagt om, at de vil hævde deres rettigheder og deres religion, så Gud Herren kan velsigne dem.
- 21 Og det skete, at da Moroni havde udråbt disse ord, se, da kom folket løbende med deres rustninger spændt om lænderne, og de rev deres klæder itu som tegn på eller som en pagt om, at de ikke ville svigte Herren deres Gud; eller med andre ord, hvis de skulle overtræde Guds befalinger eller falde i overtrædelse og skamme sig ved at påtage sig Kristi navn, så skulle Herren rive dem itu, ligesom de havde revet deres klæder itu.
- 22 Se, dette var den pagt, som de sluttede, og de kastede deres klæder for Moronis fødder, idet de sagde: Vi slutter pagt med vor Gud om, at vi skal blive udryddet, ligesom vore brødre i landet mod nord, hvis vi falder i overtrædelse; ja, han må kaste os for fødderne af vore fjender, ligesom vi har kastet vore klæder for dine fødder for at blive trådt under fode, hvis vi falder i overtrædelse.
- 23 Moroni sagde til dem: Se, vi er en rest af Jakobs efterkommere; ja, vi er en rest af Josefs efterkommere, hvis kjortel blev revet i mange stykker af hans brødre; ja, og se nu, lad os huske at holde Guds befalinger, ellers bliver vore klæder revet itu af vore brødre, og vi bliver kastet i fængsel eller solgt eller slået ihjel.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

- 24 Ja, lad os bevare vor frihed som en rest af Josef; ja, lad os huske de ord, Jakob sagde, før han døde, for se, han så, at en del af resten af Josefs kjortel var bevaret og ikke var mørnet. Og han sagde: Ligesom denne rest af min søns klædning er blevet bevaret, således skal en rest af min søns efterkommere blive bevaret ved Guds hånd, og han skal tage dem til sig, mens resten af Josefs efterkommere skal omkomme ligesom resten af hans klædning.
- 25 Se nu, dette volder min sjæl sorg, dog finder min sjæl glæde over min søn på grund af den del af hans efterkommere, som Gud skal tage til sig.
- 26 Se nu, sådan var Jakobs sprog.
- 27 Og se, hvem ved, om ikke den rest af Josefs efterkommere, som skal forgå ligesom hans klædning, er dem, der har skilt sig ud fra os? Ja, om det ikke skal blive os selv, hvis vi ikke står fast i troen på Kristus.
- 28 Og se, det skete, at da Moroni havde sagt disse ord, drog han ud og sendte også bud til alle de dele af landet, hvor der var opsplitninger, og samlede alle de folk, der nærede ønske om at hævde deres frihed og om at stå imod Amalikija og dem, der havde skilt sig ud, og som blev kaldt amalikijaitter.
- 29 Og det skete, at da Amalikija så, at Moronis folk var talrigere end amalikijaitterne – og han så også, at hans folk var tvivlrådige med hensyn til retfærdigheden af den sag, som de havde påtaget sig – tog han derfor, da han frygtede, at han ikke skulle opnå sin hensigt, dem af sine folk, som ville, og drog bort til Nefis land.
- 30 Se, Moroni tænkte, at det ikke var tjenligt, at lamanitterne fik mere styrke, derfor påtænkte han at afskære Amalikijas folk eller at pågribe dem og bringe dem tilbage og sende Amalikija i døden, ja, for han vidste, at han ville ophidse lamanitterne til vrede mod dem og få dem til at drage ud for at kæmpe mod dem; og dette vidste han, at Amalikija ville gøre, så han kunne opnå sine formål.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

31 Derfor tænkte Moroni, at det var tjenligt, at han skulle tage sine hære, som havde samlet sig og bevæbnet sig og indgået en pagt om at bevare freden – og det skete, at han tog sin hær og marcherede ud i ødemarken med sine telte for at afskære Amalikija vejen i ødemarken.

32 Og det skete, at han gjorde efter sine ønsker og marcherede ud i ødemarken og indhentede Amalikijas hær.

33 Og det skete, at Amalikija flygtede med et lille antal sine mænd, og resten faldt i Moronis hænder og blev ført tilbage til Zarahemlas land.

34 Se, Moroni, der var en mand, som var blevet udpeget af overdommerne og ved folkets stemme, han havde derfor magt over nefitternes hære til efter sin vilje at opstille og udøve myndighed over dem.

35 Og det skete, at hver den blandt amalikijaitterne, som ikke ville indgå en pagt om at støtte frihedens sag, så de kunne bevare et frit styre, lod han sende i døden; og der var kun få, der forkastede frihedspagten.

36 Og det skete også, at han lod frihedserklæringen hejse på hvert tårn, der var i hele det land, som nefitterne besad; og således plantede Moroni frihedens banner blandt nefitterne.

37 Og de begyndte igen at få fred i landet; og således opretholdt de fred i landet indtil hen mod slutningen af det nittende år af dommernes regeringstid.

38 Og Helaman og højpræsterne opretholdt også orden i kirken; ja, endog i et tidsrum af fire år havde de megen fred og glæde i kirken.

39 Og det skete, at der var mange, der døde faste i troen på, at deres sjæl var forløst ved Herren Jesus Kristus; således forlod de verden med glæde.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

40 Og der var nogle, der døde af feber, som på visse tider af året var meget hyppig i landet – men ikke så meget på grund af feber takket være de fortrinlige egenskaber ved de mange planter og rødder, som Gud havde beredt til at fjerne årsagen til de sygdomme, som menneskene var underkastet på grund af klimaets natur –

41 men der var mange, der døde af alderdom; og de, der døde i troen på Kristus, er, hvad vi nødvendigvis må antage, lykkelige i ham.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Almas Bog 47

- 1 Nu vender vi i vor optegnelse tilbage til Amalikija og dem, som sammen med ham var flygtet ud i ødemarken, for se, han havde med sig taget dem, der fulgte med ham, og var draget op i Nefis land blandt lamanitterne og havde ophidset lamanitterne til vrede mod Nefis folk, således at lamanitternes konge sendte en proklamation ud over hele sit land, blandt hele sit folk om, at de skulle samle sig igen for at drage ud og kæmpe mod nefitterne.
- 2 Og det skete, at da denne proklamation var blevet sendt ud blandt dem, blev de overordentlig bange, ja, de frygtede for at mishage kongen, og de frygtede også for at drage ud for at kæmpe mod nefitterne af frygt for, at de skulle miste livet. Og det skete, at de ikke ville, eller at størstedelen af dem ikke ville adlyde kongens befalinger.
- 3 Og se, det skete, at kongen blev vred på grund af deres ulydighed, og derfor gav han Amalikija kommandoen over den del af sin hær, som var lydige mod hans befalinger, og befalede ham, at han skulle drage ud og tvinge dem til våben.
- 4 Se nu, dette var Amalikijas ønske, for han var en meget lumsk mand med hensyn til at gøre ondt, derfor lagde han i sit hjerte den plan at afsætte lamanitternes konge.
- 5 Og se, han havde fået kommandoen over den del af lamanitterne, som var for kongen; og han forsøgte at vinde yndest hos dem, der ikke var lydige, derfor drog han hen til det sted, som blev kaldt Onida, for der var alle lamanitterne flygtet hen, for de opdagede hæren komme, og da de formodede, at de kom for at udrydde dem, flygtede de derfor til Onida, til våbenstedet.
- 6 Og de havde udpeget en mand til at være konge og leder over dem, for i deres sind var de med en urokkelig afgørelse opsat på, at de ikke ville lade sig tvinge til at gå mod nefitterne.
- 7 Og det skete, at de havde samlet sig på toppen af det bjerg, som blev kaldt Antipas, som forberedelse til at kæmpe.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

- 8 Se, det var ikke Amalikijas hensigt at udkæmpe et slag mod dem i overensstemmelse med kongens befalinger, men se, det var hans hensigt at vinde yndest hos de lamanitiske hære, så han kunne stille sig i spidsen for dem og afsætte kongen og tage riget i besiddelse.
- 9 Og se, det skete, at han lod sin hær slå deres telte op i dalen, som lå i nærheden af bjerget Antipas.
- 10 Og det skete, at da det blev nat, sendte han en hemmelig udsending til bjerget Antipas og ønskede af lederen for dem, som var på bjerget – og hans navn var Lehonti – at han skulle komme ned til foden af bjerget, for han ønskede at tale med ham.
- 11 Og det skete, at da Lehonti modtog budskabet, turde han ikke gå ned til foden af bjerget. Og det skete, at Amalikija for anden gang sendte bud og ønskede af ham, at han skulle komme ned. Og det skete, at Lehonti ikke ville; og han sendte igen for tredje gang bud.
- 12 Og det skete, at da Amalikija fandt, at han ikke kunne få Lehonti til at komme ned fra bjerget, gik han op på bjerget næsten op til Lehontis lejr, og han sendte igen for fjerde gang sit budskab til Lehonti og ønskede af ham, at han skulle komme ned og tage sine vagter med sig.
- 13 Og det skete, at da Lehonti med sine vagter var kommet ned til Amalikija, at Amalikija ønskede af ham, at han skulle komme ned med sin hær om natten og i deres lejr omringe de mænd, som kongen havde givet ham kommandoen over, og sagde, at han ville overgive dem i Lehontis hænder, hvis han ville gøre ham (Amalikija) til næstøverste leder over hele hæren.
- 14 Og det skete, at Lehonti kom ned med sine mænd og omringede Amalikijas mænd, så de, før de vågnede ved dagens gry, var omringet af Lehontis hære.
- 15 Og det skete, at da de så, at de var blevet omringet, bønfuldt de Amalikija om, at han ville lade dem slutte sig til deres brødre, så de ikke skulle blive dræbt. Se, det var netop det, som Amalikija ønskede.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the nighttime, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

16 Og det skete, at han overgav sine mænd i modstrid med kongens befalinger. Se, det var det, som Amalikija ønskede, for at han kunne opnå sine forehavender med hensyn til at afsætte kongen.

17 Se, det var skik blandt lamanitterne, hvis deres øverste leder blev dræbt, da at udpege deres næstøverste leder til deres øverste leder.

18 Og det skete, at Amalikija foranledigede, at en af hans tjenere skulle give Lehonti gift lidt efter lidt, så han døde.

19 Se, da Lehonti var død, udpegede lamanitterne Amalikija til deres leder og øverste hærfører.

20 Og det skete, at Amalikija marcherede med sine hære (for han havde opnået sine ønsker), til Nefis land, til byen Nefi, som var den vigtigste by.

21 Og kongen kom ud for at møde ham med sine vagter, for han formodede, at Amalikija havde udført hans befalinger, og at Amalikija havde samlet så stor en hær sammen for at drage mod nefitterne for at kæmpe.

22 Men se, da kongen kom ud for at møde ham, foranledigede Amalikija, at hans tjenere skulle gå frem for at møde kongen. Og de trådte frem og bøjede sig for kongen, som for at vise ham ærbødighed på grund af hans storhed.

23 Og det skete, at kongen rakte hånden frem for at rejse dem, som det var skik hos lamanitterne som et tegn på fred, hvilken skik de havde overtaget fra nefitterne.

24 Og det skete, at da han havde rejst den første op fra jorden, se, da dolkede han kongen i hjertet, og han faldt til jorden.

25 Se, kongens tjenere flygtede, og Amalikijas tjenere råbte op og sagde:

26 Se, kongens tjenere har dolket ham i hjertet, og han er faldet, og de er flygtet; se her, kom og se.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

27 Og det skete, at Amalikija befalede, at hans hære skulle marchere frem og se, hvad der var sket med kongen; og da de var kommet til stedet og fandt kongen liggende i sit levrede blod, foregav Amalikija at være vred og sagde: Lad hver den, der elskede kongen, træde frem og forfølge hans tjenere, så de kan blive slået ihjel.

28 Og det skete, at alle de, der elskede kongen, trådte frem, da de hørte disse ord, og forfulgte kongens tjenere.

29 Se, da kongens tjenere så en hær forfølge sig, blev de igen rædselsslagne og flygtede ud i ødemarken og kom over til Zarahemlas land og sluttede sig til Ammons folk.

30 Og den hær, der forfulgte dem, vendte om efter forgæves at have forfulgt dem; og således vandt Amalikija ved sit bedrag folkets hjerte.

31 Og det skete den næste dag, at han drog ind i byen Nefi med sine hære og tog byen i besiddelse.

32 Og se, det skete, at dronningen, da hun havde hørt, at kongen var blevet slået ihjel – for Amalikija havde sendt en udsending til dronningen, som oplyste hende om, at kongen var blevet slået ihjel af sine tjenere, at han havde forfulgt dem med sin hær, men at det var forgæves, og at de havde taget deres flugt –

33 derfor, da dronningen havde modtaget dette budskab, sendte hun bud til Amalikija og ønskede af ham, at han ville skåne folket i byen, og hun ønskede også af ham, at han skulle komme ind til hende, og hun ønskede også af ham, at han skulle bringe vidner med sig, der kunne vidne om kongens død.

34 Og det skete, at Amalikija tog den samme tjener, som slog kongen ihjel, og alle dem, der var med ham, og gik ind til dronningen til det sted, hvor hun sad; og de vidnede alle for hende, at kongen var blevet slået ihjel af sine egne tjenere; og de sagde også: De er flygtet, vidner det ikke imod dem? Og således stillede de dronningen tilfreds med hensyn til kongens død.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35 Og det skete, at Amalikija stræbte efter dronningens yndest og tog hende til hustru; og således vandt han riget ved sit bedrag og ved hjælp af sine snedige tjenere; ja, han blev anerkendt som konge overalt i hele landet blandt hele det lamanitiske folk, der bestod af lamanitterne og lemuelitterne og ismaelitterne og alle dem, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne fra Nefis regeringstid op til nærværende tid.

36 Se, de, der havde skilt sig ud, havde den samme lærdom og de samme oplysninger fra nefitterne, ja, var blevet undervist i den samme kundskab om Herren, alligevel er det besynderligt at bemærke, at de, ikke længe efter at de havde skilt sig ud, blev mere forhærdede og ubodfærdige og mere vilde, ugudelige og grusomme end lamanitterne – idet de slugte lamaniternes overleveringer og hengav sig til ugidelighed og al slags uterlighed, ja, idet de fuldstændig glemte Herren deres Gud.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Almas Bog 48

- 1 Og se, det skete, at så snart Amalikija havde fået riget, begyndte han at anspore lamaniternes hjerte imod Nefis folk, ja, han udpegede mænd til at tale til lamanitterne imod nefitterne fra deres tårne.
- 2 Og således ansporede han deres hjerte imod nefitterne i en sådan grad, at han i slutningen af det nittende år af dommernes regeringstid efter indtil da at have fuldført sine forehavender, ja, efter at være blevet gjort til konge over lamanitterne, stræbte efter også at regere over hele landet, ja, over alle de folk, der var i landet, nefitterne såvel som lamanitterne.
- 3 Derfor havde han fuldført sit forehavende, for han havde forhærdet lamaniternes hjerte og forblindet deres sind og ophidset dem til vrede, således at han havde samlet en talrig hærskare sammen for at drage ud for at kæmpe mod nefitterne.
- 4 For på grund af det store antal af sit folk var han besluttet på at besejre nefitterne og at bringe dem i trældom.
- 5 Og som følge heraf udpegede han øverste anførere blandt zoramitterne, da de var bedst kendt med nefitternes styrke og deres tilflugtssteder og de svageste dele af deres byer; derfor udpegede han dem til at være øverste anførere for sine hære.
- 6 Og det skete, at de tog deres tros og drog frem gennem ødemarken mod Zarahemlas land.
- 7 Se, det skete, at mens Amalikija således havde opnået magt ved svindel og bedrag, havde Moroni på den anden side beredt folkets sind til at være trofast mod Herren deres Gud.
- 8 Ja, han havde styrket nefitternes hære og opført små fæstninger eller tilflugtssteder ved at opkaste jordvolde rundt omkring for at omslutte sine hære og også ved at bygge mure af sten for at omslutte dem, rundt om deres byer og deres lands grænser, ja, omkring hele landet.
- 9 Og i deres svageste befæstninger satte han det største antal mænd; og således befæstede og styrkede han det land, der var i nefitternes besiddelse.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

- 10 Og således traf han forberedelser til at forsvare deres frihed, deres jorder, deres hustruer og deres børn og deres fred, så de kunne leve for Herren deres Gud, og så de kunne bevare det, som af deres fjender blev kaldt de kristnes sag.
- 11 Og Moroni var en stærk og en mægtig mand; han var en mand med en fuldkommen forståelse, ja, en mand, der ikke frydede sig ved blodsudgydelse, en mand, hvis sjæl glædede sig over sit lands og sine brøders frihed fra trældom og slaveri,
- 12 ja, en mand, hvis hjerte svulmede af taksigelse til sin Gud for de mange privilegier og velsignelser, som han skænkede sit folk, en mand, der arbejdede overordentlig hårdt for sit folks velfærd og sikkerhed.
- 13 Ja, og han var en mand, der var fast i troen på Kristus, og han havde svoret med en ed at ville forsvare sit folk, sine rettigheder, sit land og sin religion, ja, om han så skulle miste sit blod.
- 14 Se, nefitterne var blevet oplært i at forsvare sig mod deres fjender, endog til at udgyde blod om det var nødvendigt; ja, og de var også blevet formanet til aldrig at vække anstød, ja, og aldrig at løfte sværdet, medmindre det var mod en fjende, medmindre det var for at bevare livet.
- 15 Og dette var deres tro, at Gud, ved at de gjorde således, ville give dem fremgang i landet, eller med andre ord, hvis de var trofaste i at holde Guds befalinger, at han da ville give dem fremgang i landet, ja, formane dem til at flygte eller til at berede sig til krig afhængig af deres fare,
- 16 og også, at Gud ville tilkendegive for dem, hvor de skulle drage hen for at forsvare sig mod deres fjender, og ved at gøre således ville Herren udfri dem; og dette var Moronis tro, og hans hjerte frydede sig ved det, ikke ved udgydelse af blod, men ved at gøre godt, ved at bevare sit folk, ja, ved at holde Guds befalinger, ja, og modsætte sig ugudelighed.
- 17 Ja, sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer: Hvis alle mennesker havde været og var og altid ville være ligesom Moroni, se, så ville selve helvedes magter være blevet rystet for evigt, ja, Djævelen ville aldrig få magt over menneskenes børns hjerte.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

18 Se, han var en mand ligesom Ammon, Mosijas søn, ja, og som Mosijas andre sønner, ja, og også Alma og hans sønner, for de var alle Guds mænd.

19 Se nu, Helaman og hans brødre stod ikke mindre til tjeneste for folket end Moroni, for de prædikede Guds ord, og de døbte alle mennesker til omvendelse, hver den, der ville lytte til deres ord.

20 Og således gik de frem, og folket ydmygede sig på grund af deres ord i en sådan grad, at de blev meget be- gunstiget af Herren, og således var de fri for indbyrdes krige og stridigheder, ja, i et tidsrum af fire år.

21 Men, som jeg har sagt, blev de i slutningen af det nit- tende år på trods af deres indbyrdes fred modvilligt tvunget til at stride mod deres brødre lamanitterne.

22 Ja, og kort sagt hørte deres krige med lamanitterne ikke op i et tidsrum af mange år på trods af deres store modvilje.

23 Se, de var kede af at skulle gribe til våben mod lami- nitterne, for de frydede sig ikke ved udgydelse af blod, ja, og det var ikke alt – de var kede af at være midlet til at sende så mange af deres brødre ud af denne verden ind i en evig verden, uforberedte til at møde deres Gud.

24 Alligevel kunne de ikke tillade sig at nedlægge deres liv, så deres hustruer og børn ville blive massakreret med den barbariske grusomhed, som blev udvist af dem, der engang var deres brødre, ja, og som havde skilt sig ud fra deres kirke og havde forladt dem og var draget ud for at udrydde dem ved at slutte sig til lamanitterne.

25 Ja, de kunne ikke bære, at deres brødre skulle fryde sig ved nefitternes blod, så længe der var nogen, der ville holde Guds befalinger, for Herrens løfter var, at hvis de holdt hans befalinger, ville de få fremgang i landet.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did hum- ble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among them- selves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst them- selves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstand- ing their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be mas- saced by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Almas Bog 49

- 1 Og se, det skete i den ellefte måned i det nittende år på den tiende dag i måneden, at man så lamaniternes hære nærme sig Ammonihass land.
- 2 Og se, byen var blevet genopbygget, og Moroni havde opstillet en hær ved grænserne til byen, og de havde opkastet jord rundt omkring for at værne sig mod lamaniternes pile og sten, for se, de kæmpede med sten og med pile.
- 3 Se, jeg sagde, at byen Ammonihah var blevet genopbygget. Jeg siger jer, ja, at den var delvist genopbygget; og fordi lamanitterne havde ødelagt den én gang på grund af folkets ugudelighed, formodede de, at den igen ville blive et let bytte for dem.
- 4 Men se, hvor stor blev ikke deres skuffelse; for se, nefitterne havde gravet en vold af jord op omkring sig, der var så høj, at lamanitterne ikke kunne kaste deres sten og deres pile efter dem, så de havde nogen virkning, ej heller kunne de falde over dem undtagen ad det sted, de havde deres indgang.
- 5 Se, på dette tidspunkt blev lamaniternes øverste anførere overordentlig forbavsede over nefitternes visdom med hensyn til at berede deres sikre steder.
- 6 Se, lamaniternes anførere havde ment, at de på grund af det store antal af dem, ja, de havde ment, at de ville have mulighed for at falde over dem, som de hidtil havde gjort; ja, og de havde også gjort sig beredte med skjolde og brynjer, og de havde også gjort sig beredte med klæder af skind, ja, meget tykke klæder til at dække deres nøgenhed med.
- 7 Og således beredte mente de, at de let kunne besejre og underlægge deres brødre trældomsåget eller slå dem ihjel og massakrere dem efter deres behag.
- 8 Men se, til deres største forbavselse havde de forberedt sig til dem på en måde, som aldrig havde været kendt blandt Lehis børn. Se, de var beredte til lamanitterne, til at kæmpe efter Moronis anvisninger.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

9 Og det skete, at lamanitterne eller amalikijaitterne blev overordentlig forbavsede over deres måde at forberede sig til krig på.

10 Se, hvis kong Amalikija var kommet ned fra Nefis land i spidsen for sin hær, ville han måske have fået lamanitterne til at angribe nefitterne i byen Ammonihah, for se, han bekymrede sig ikke om sit folks blod.

11 Men se, Amalikija kom ikke selv ned for at kæmpe. Og se, hans øverste anførere turde ikke angribe nefitterne i byen Ammonihah, for Moroni havde ændret den måde, hvorpå nefitterne ordnede deres anliggender, således at lamanitterne blev modløse over deres tilflugtssteder, og de kunne ikke falde over dem.

12 Derfor trak de sig tilbage til ødemarken og tog deres tros og marcherede mod Noas land, da de antog, at det var det næstbedste sted for dem at falde over nefitterne.

13 For de vidste ikke, at Moroni havde befæstet eller havde bygget sikre fæstninger for hver by i hele landet rundt omkring; derfor marcherede de frem mod Noas land med en fast beslutning, ja, deres øverste anførere trådte frem og aflagde ed på, at de ville udrydde folket i den by.

14 Men se, til deres forbavselse var byen Noa, som hidtil havde været et svagt sted, nu ved Moronis hjælp blevet stærk, ja, så den overgik byen Ammonihah i styrke.

15 Og se nu, det anså Moroni for vist, for han havde ment, at de ville blive rædselsslagne over byen Ammonihah, og at de, eftersom byen Noa hidtil havde været den svageste del af landet, derfor ville marchere derhen for at kæmpe; og således skete det efter hans ønske.

16 Og se, Moroni havde udpeget Lehi til at være den øverste anfører over mændene i den by; og det var den selv samme Lehi, som kæmpede mod lamanitterne i dalen øst for floden Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

17 Og se, nu skete det, at da lamanitterne fandt ud af, at Lehi havde kommandoen over byen, blev de igen modløse, for de frygtede Lehi overordentlig meget; alligevel havde deres øverste anførere svoret med en ed, at de ville angribe byen, derfor førte de deres hære frem.

18 Se nu, lamanitterne kunne ikke komme ind i deres sikre fæstninger ad nogen anden vej end ad indgangen på grund af højden af den skanse, der var blevet opkastet, og dybden af den grav, der var blevet gravet omkring den, undtagen ad indgangen.

19 Og således var nefitterne rede til at slå alle sådanne ihjel, som ville forsøge at kravle op for at trænge ind i fæstningen ad nogen anden vej, ved at kaste sten og pile ned mod dem.

20 Således var de rede, ja, en gruppe af deres stærkeste mænd med deres sværd og deres slynger, til at slå alle dem ned, der ville forsøge at komme ind i deres sikre sted ad det sted, hvor de havde deres indgang; og således var de rede til at forsvare sig mod lamanitterne.

21 Og det skete, at lamanitternes anførere førte deres hære op foran det sted, hvor de havde deres indgang, og begyndte at stride mod nefitterne for at komme ind i deres sikre sted; men se, de blev drevet tilbage igen og igen i et sådant omfang, at de blev slået ihjel under en vældig nedslagning.

22 Se, da de fandt, at de ikke kunne få magt over nefitterne ad passagen, begyndte de at grave deres skanser af jord væk for at skabe en passage for deres hære, så de kunne få lige mulighed for at slås; men se, under disse forsøg blev de fejlet bort af de sten og pile, der blev kastet mod dem; og i stedet for at fylde gravene ved at bryde skanserne af jord ned, blev de i nogen grad fyldt af deres døde og sårede kroppe.

23 Således fik nefitterne al magt over deres fjender, og således forsøgte lamanitterne at udrydde nefitterne, indtil alle deres øverste anførere var blevet slået ihjel; ja, og mere end tusind af lamanitterne var blevet slået ihjel, mens der på den anden side ikke var en eneste nefit, der var blevet slået ihjel.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

- 24 Der var omtrent halvtreds, der var såret, som havde været udsat for lamanitternes pile gennem indgangen, men de var blevet værnet af deres skjolde og deres brynjer og deres hjelme i en sådan grad, at deres sår var på benene, og mange af dem var meget alvorlige.
- 25 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne så, at deres øverste anførere alle var blevet slået ihjel, flygtede de ud i ødemarken. Og det skete, at de vendte tilbage til Nefis land for at underrette deres konge, Amalikija, som var nefit af fødsel, om deres store tab.
- 26 Og det skete, at han blev overordentlig vred på sit folk, fordi han ikke havde opnået sit ønske med hensyn til nefitterne; han havde ikke underkastet dem trældomsåget.
- 27 Ja, han blev overordentlig vred, og han forbandede Gud og også Moroni, idet han svor med en ed, at han ville drikke hans blod; og det fordi Moroni havde holdt Guds befalinger med hensyn til at forberede sit folks sikkerhed.
- 28 Og det skete, at på den anden side takkede Nefis folk Herren deres Gud på grund af hans uforlignelige magt ved at udfri dem af deres fjenders hænder.
- 29 Og således endte det nittende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 30 Ja, og der var vedvarende fred blandt dem og overordentlig stor fremgang i kirken på grund af den agtpågenhed og flid, som de viste Guds ord, som blev kundgjort for dem af Helaman og Shibløn og Corianton og Ammon og hans brødre, ja, og af alle dem, som var blevet ordineret af Guds hellige orden, og som var blevet døbt til omvendelse og sendt ud for at prædike blandt folket.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shibløn, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Almas Bog 50

- 1 Og se, det skete, at Moroni ikke holdt op med at træffe forberedelser til krig eller til at forsvare sit folk mod lamanitterne, for han foranledigede, at hans hære skulle begynde i begyndelsen af det tyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at de skulle begynde at grave jorddynger op rundt om alle byerne overalt i hele det land, som nefitterne var i besiddelse af.
- 2 Og på toppen af disse jordvolde foranledigede han, at der skulle bygges tømmer, ja, tømmerkonstruktioner op til mandshøjde rundt omkring byerne.
- 3 Og han foranledigede, at der på disse tømmerkonstruktioner skulle bygges en konstruktion af spidse pæle oven på tømmeret rundt omkring; og de var stærke og høje.
- 4 Og han lod opføre tårne, der hævede sig over dette pæleværk, og han lod sikre steder bygge på disse tårne, så lamaniternes sten og pile ikke kunne volde dem nogen skade.
- 5 Og de var indrettet, så de kunne kaste sten fra toppen af dem efter deres behag og deres styrke og slå dem ihjel, der ville forsøge at nærme sig byens mure.
- 6 Således opførte Moroni støttepunkter som forberedelse til fjendens komme rundt omkring hver by i hele landet.
- 7 Og det skete, at Moroni foranledigede, at hans hære skulle drage ud i den østlige ødemark, ja, og de drog ud og drev alle de lamanitter, der var i den østlige ødemark, ind i deres egne lande, som lå syd for Zarahemlas land.
- 8 Og Nefis land strakte sig i lige linje fra det østlige hav til det vestlige.
- 9 Og det skete, at da Moroni havde drevet alle lamanitterne ud af den østlige ødemark, som lå nord for de lande, som de selv var i besiddelse af, foranledigede han, at de indbyggere, der var i Zarahemlas land og i landet rundt omkring, skulle drage ud i den østlige ødemark helt ud til grænseegnene ved kysten og tage landet i besiddelse.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

10 Og han opstillede også hære mod syd ved grænseegnene af deres besiddelser og lod dem opføre befæstninger, så de kunne sikre deres hære og deres folk mod deres fjenders hænder.

11 Og således afskar han alle lamaniternes støttepunkter i den østlige ødemark, ja, og også mod vest, idet han befæstede grænsen mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne, mellem Zarahemlas land og Nefis land, fra det vestlige hav langs kilderne til floden Sidon – og nefitterne besad alt landet mod nord, ja, alt det land, der lå nord for landet Overflod, efter deres behag.

12 Og således forsøgte Moroni med sine hære, der daglig voksede på grund af den sikkerhed for beskyttelse, som hans værker bragte dem, at afskære lamaniternes styrke og magt fra de lande, der var i deres besiddelse, så de ikke skulle få nogen magt over de lande, der var i deres besiddelse.

13 Og det skete, at nefitterne begyndte grundlæggelsen af en by, og de gav byen navnet Moroni; og det var ved det østlige hav, og det var mod syd ved grænsen til lamaniternes besiddelser.

14 Og de begyndte også at lægge grunden til en by mellem byen Moroni og byen Aron, som forbandt Moronis og Arons grænser; og de gav byen, eller landet, navnet Nefiha.

15 Og de begyndte også i det selv samme år at bygge mange byer mod nord, én på en særegen måde, som de kaldte Lehi, og som lå mod nord ved grænseegnene ved kysten.

16 Og således endte det tyvende år.

17 Og under disse fremgangsrige forhold levede Nefis folk i begyndelsen af det enogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

18 Og de havde overordentlig stor fremgang og blev overordentlig rige; ja, de mangfoldiggjorde sig og voksede sig stærke i landet.

19 Og således ser vi, hvor barmhjertige og retfærdige alle Herrens måder at handle på er med hensyn til opfyldelsen af alle hans ord til menneskenes børn; ja, vi kan se, at hans ord bliver bekræftet netop på dette tidspunkt, de ord, som han talte til Lehi, da han sagde:

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

20 Velsignet er du og dine børn, og de skal blive velsignet. For så vidt som de holder mine befalinger, skal de have fremgang i landet. Men husk, at for så vidt som de ikke vil holde mine befalinger, skal de blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.

21 Og vi ser, at disse løfter er blevet bekræftet, hvad angår Nefis folk, for det har været deres skænderier og deres stridigheder, ja, deres myrden og deres plyndren, deres afgudsdyrkelse, deres utugtigheder og deres vederstyggeligheder, som var blandt dem indbyrdes, der bragte deres krige og ødelæggelser over dem.

22 Og de, der var trofaste i at holde Herrens befalinger, blev udfriet til alle tider, mens tusinder af deres ugudelige brødre er blevet overgivet til trældom eller til at komme ved sværdet eller til at synke ned i vantro og blande sig med lamanitterne.

23 Men se, der havde aldrig siden Nefis dage været en lykkeligere tid blandt Nefis folk end i Moronis dage, ja, netop på denne tid i det enogtyvende år af dommernes regeringstid.

24 Og det skete, at det toogtyvende år af dommernes regeringstid også endte i fred, ja, og også det treogtyvende år.

25 Og det skete, at der i begyndelsen af det fireogtyvende år af dommernes regeringstid også ville have været fred blandt Nefis folk, havde det ikke været for en strid, der fandt sted blandt dem angående Lehis land og Moriantons land, som stødte op til grænserne til Lehi; og de lå begge ved grænseegnene ud mod kysten.

26 For se, de folk, der besad Moriantons land, gjorde krav på en del af Lehis land; derfor opstod der en hed strid mellem dem, således at folket i Morianton greb til våben mod deres brødre, og de var besluttede på at ville slå dem ihjel ved sværdet.

27 Men se, de folk, som besad Lehis land, flygtede til Moronis lejr og bønfuldt ham om hjælp, for se, de havde ikke uret.

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

28 Og det skete, at da folket i Morianton, der blev ledt af en mand, hvis navn var Morianton, fandt ud af, at folket i Lehi var flygtet til Moronis lejr, blev de overordentlig skrækslagne for, at Moronis hær skulle falde over dem og udrydde dem.

29 Derfor lagde Morianton dem det i hjertet, at de skulde flygte til det land, der lå mod nord, og som var dækket af store områder med vand, og sætte sig i besiddelse af det land, der lå mod nord.

30 Og se, de ville have bragt denne plan til udførelse (hvad der ville have givet grund til beklagelse), men se, Morianton, som var en mand med meget temperament, han blev derfor vred på en af sine tjenestepiger, og han faldt over hende og slog hende meget.

31 Og det skete, at hun flygtede og kom over til Moronis lejr og fortalte Moroni alt om sagen og også om deres hensigter om at flygte til landet mod nord.

32 Se nu, folket i landet Overflod, eller rettere Moroni, frygtede, at de ville lytte til Moriantons ord og forene sig med hans folk, og således ville han komme i besiddelse af disse dele af landet, hvilket ville lægge grundvolden til alvorlige følger for Nefis folk, ja, disse følger ville føre til omstyrningen af deres frihed.

33 Derfor sendte Moroni en hær af sted med deres tros for at komme foran Moriantons folk for at standse deres flugt ind i landet mod nord.

34 Og det skete, at de ikke indhentede dem, førend de var kommet til grænsen af landet Ødelæggelse; og dér indhentede de dem ved det smalle pas, som ved havet førte ind i landet mod nord, ja, ved havet mod vest og mod øst.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

35 Og det skete, at den hær, som var sendt af sted af Moroni, og som blev ledt af en mand, hvis navn var Teankum, mødte Moriantons folk; og så stædige var Moriantons folk (da de blev ansjoret af hans ugudelighed og hans smigrende ord), at et slag begyndte mellem dem, i hvilket Teankum slog Morianton ihjel og slog hans hær og tog dem til fange og vendte tilbage til Moronis lejr. Og således endte det fireogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

36 Og således blev Moriantons folk ført tilbage. Og efter at de havde sluttet pagt om at holde fred, blev de ført tilbage til Moriantons land, og der fandt en forening sted mellem dem og Lehis folk, og de blev også ført tilbage til deres jorder.

37 Og det skete i det samme år, hvor freden blev genoprettet blandt Nefis folk, at Nefiha, den anden overdommer, døde efter at have udfyldt dommersædet med fuldkommen retsindighed for Gud.

38 Alligevel havde han nægtet Alma at tage de optegnelser og de ting i besiddelse, der af Alma og hans fædre blev agtet som værende yderst hellige, derfor havde Alma overdraget dem til sin søn Helaman.

39 Se, det skete, at Nefihas søn blev udpeget til at udfylde dommersædet i sin fars sted, ja, han blev udpeget til overdommer og regent over folket med en ed og hellig ordinance til at dømme retfærdigt og til at bevare freden og folkets frihed og til at skænke dem deres hellige privilegier til at tilbede Herren deres Gud, ja, til at støtte og bevare Guds sag alle sine dage og til at bringe de ugudelige til doms i forhold til deres forbrydelse.

40 Se nu, hans navn var Pahoran. Og Pahoran udfyldte sin fars sæde og begyndte i slutningen af det fireogtyvende år at regere over Nefis folk.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Almas Bog 5 I

- 1 Og se, det skete i begyndelsen af det femogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, efter at de havde stiftet fred mellem Lehis folk og Moriantons folk, hvad angår deres lande, og efter at de havde påbegyndt det femogtyvende år i fred;
- 2 dog bevarede de ikke længe en fuldstændig fred i landet, for der opstod en strid blandt folket angående overdommeren Pahoran, for se, der var en del af folket, der ønskede, at nogle få bestemte punkter i loven skulle ændres.
- 3 Men se, Pahoran ville ikke ændre loven eller tillade, at den blev ændret, derfor lyttede han ikke til dem, der havde indsendt deres stemme sammen med deres anmodninger angående ændringen af loven.
- 4 Derfor blev de, der nærede ønske om, at loven skulle ændres, vrede på ham og ønskede, at han ikke længere skulle være overdommer over landet, derfor opstod der et hedt skænderi angående sagen, men ikke til blodsudgydelse.
- 5 Og det skete, at de, der nærede ønske om, at Pahoran skulle afsættes fra dommersædet, blev kaldt kongemænd; for de nærede ønske om, at loven skulle ændres på en måde, der ville omstyrte det frie styre og indsætte en konge over landet.
- 6 Og de, der nærede ønske om, at Pahoran skulle forblive overdommer over landet, påtog sig navnet frimænd; og således var adskillelsen mellem dem; for frimændene havde svoret eller sluttet pagt om at ville hævde deres rettigheder og privilegierne i forbindelse med deres religion ved et frit styre.
- 7 Og det skete, at denne sag, som de stredes om, blev afgjort ved folkets stemme. Og det skete, at folkets stemme faldt ud til fordel for frimændene, og Pahoran beholdt dommersædet, hvilket gav anledning til megen fryd blandt Pahorans brødre og også blandt mange af frihedens folk, som også bragte kongemændene til tavshed, så de ikke turde at gøre modstand, men blev nødt til at bevare frihedens sag.

Alma 5 I

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

8 Se, de, der var for konger, var dem af høj byrd, og de stræbte efter at blive konger, og de blev støttet af dem, der stræbte efter magt og myndighed over folket.

9 Men se, det var en kritisk tid for sådanne stridigheder blandt Nefis folk; for se, Amalikija havde igen ophidset det lamanitiske folks hjerte mod det nefitiske folk, og han var i færd med at samle soldater fra alle dele af sit land og bevæbne dem og med al flid træffe forberedelser til krig, for han havde svoret at ville drikke Moronis blod.

10 Men se, vi skal få at se, at det løfte, som han aflagde, var overilet; alligevel gjorde han sig selv og sine hære rede til at drage ud for at kæmpe mod nefitterne.

11 Se, hans hære var ikke så store, som de hidtil havde været, på grund af de mange tusinde, der var blevet slået ihjel ved nefitternes hånd; men til trods for deres store tab, havde Amalikija dog samlet en overraskende stor hær, således at han ikke frygtede for at drage ned til Zarahemlas land.

12 Ja, Amalikija drog endog selv ned i spidsen for lamanitterne. Og det var i det femogtyvende år af dommerens regeringstid; og det var på den samme tid, hvor de var begyndt at afgøre de anliggender, som de stredes om med hensyn til overdommeren Pahoran.

13 Og det skete, at da de mennesker, der blev kaldt kongemænd, havde hørt, at lamanitterne var på vej ned for at kæmpe mod dem, blev de glade i hjertet; og de nægtede at gribe til våben, for de var så vrede på overdommeren og også på frihedens folk, at de ikke ville gribe til våben for at forsvare deres land.

14 Og det skete, at da Moroni så dette og også så, at lamanitterne var ved at komme ind over landets grænser, blev han overordentlig vred på grund af stædigheden hos de folk, som han havde arbejdet med så stor flid for at beskytte; ja, han blev overordentlig vred; hans sjæl blev fyldt af vrede mod dem.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

- 15 Og det skete, at han sendte en anmodning med folkets stemme til landets regent og ønskede af ham, at han skulle læse den og give ham (Moroni) magt til at tvinge dem, der havde skilt sig ud, til at forsvare deres land eller til at sende dem i døden.
- 16 For han så det som sin vigtigste opgave at gøre ende på sådanne stridigheder og en sådan kiv blandt folket, for se, dette havde hidtil været årsag til al deres ødelæggelse. Og det skete, at den blev imødekommet i overensstemmelse med folkets stemme.
- 17 Og det skete, at Moroni befalede, at enten ville hans hær drage mod disse kongemænd for at bryde deres stolthed og deres overlegenhed ned og jævne dem med jorden, eller også måtte de gribe til våben og støtte frihedens sag.
- 18 Og det skete, at hærene marcherede frem mod dem; og de brød deres stolthed og hovmod ned, således at de, når de hævdede deres krigsvåben for at kæmpe mod Moronis mænd, blev hugget ned og jævnet med jorden.
- 19 Og det skete, at der var fire tusinde af dem, der havde skilt sig ud, der blev hugget ned med sværdet; og de af deres ledere, der ikke var blevet slået ihjel i slaget, blev taget og kastet i fængsel, for der var ingen tid til rettergang på det tidspunkt.
- 20 Og resten af dem, der havde skilt sig ud, indordnede sig under frihedens banner, hellere end at blive slået til jorden med sværdet, og blev tvunget til at hejse frihedserklæringen på deres tårne og i deres byer og at gribe til våben til forsvar for deres land.
- 21 Og således gjorde Moroni ende på disse kongemænd, så der ikke mere var nogen, der var kendt under benævnelsen kongemænd; og således gjorde han ende på stædigheden og stoltheden blandt de folk, der påstod at være af adeligt blod; men de blev fornedret til at ydmyge sig ligesom deres brødre og til at kæmpe tappert for deres frihed fra trældom.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

- 22 Se, det skete, at mens Moroni således var i færd med at bryde krigene og stridighederne ned blandt sit eget folk og at underkaste dem fred og civilisation og at fastsætte bestemmelser som forberedelse til krig mod lamanitterne, se, da var lamanitterne kommet ind i Moronis land, som lå i grænseegnene ved kysten.
- 23 Og det skete, at nefitterne ikke var tilstrækkelig stærke i byen Moroni, derfor fordrev Amalikija dem og slog mange ihjel. Og det skete, at Amalikija tog byen i besiddelse, ja, tog alle deres befæstninger i besiddelse.
- 24 Og de, der flygtede ud af byen Moroni, kom til byen Nefiha; og folket i byen Lehi samlede sig også og traf forberedelser og var rede til at modtage lamanitterne i kamp.
- 25 Men det skete, at Amalikija ikke ville lade lamanitterne drage mod byen Nefiha for at kæmpe, men holdt dem nede ved kysten, idet han efterlod mænd i hver by til at holde og forsvare dem.
- 26 Og således fortsatte han, idet han tog mange byer i besiddelse, byen Nefiha og byen Lehi og byen Morianton og byen Omner og byen Gid og byen Mulek, som alle lå i de østlige grænseegne ved kysten.
- 27 Og således havde lamanitterne ved Amalikijas snedighed og deres utallige hærskarer indtaget så mange byer, der alle var stærkt befæstede efter Moronis måde at lave befæstninger på, og som alle blev støttepunkter for lamanitterne.
- 28 Og det skete, at de marcherede til grænsen af landet Overflod og drev nefitterne foran sig og slog mange ihjel.
- 29 Men det skete, at de blev mødt af Teankum, som havde slået Morianton ihjel og havde afskåret hans folk under hans flugt.
- 30 Og det skete, at han også afskar Amalikija, mens han marcherede frem med sin talrige hær for at sætte sig i besiddelse af landet Overflod og også landet mod nord.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

31 Men se, han blev mødt af en skuffelse, idet han blev tvunget tilbage af Teankum og hans mænd, for de var store krigere; og hver eneste af Teankums mænd overgik lamanitterne i styrke og i krigskunst, således at de vandt fordel over lamanitterne.

32 Og det skete, at de hærgede dem i en sådan grad, at de huggede ind på dem, indtil det blev mørkt. Og det skete, at Teankum og hans mænd slog deres telte op på grænsen til landet Overflod; og Amalikija slog sine telte op i grænseegnene på stranden ved kysten, og på denne måde blev de fordrevet.

33 Og det skete, at da det var blevet nat, sneg Teankum og hans tjener sig bort og gik ud ved nattetide og gik ind i Amalikijas lejr; og se, sønnen havde overvældet dem på grund af deres store udmattelse, som skyldtes dagens arbejde og hede.

34 Og det skete, at Teankum i hemmelighed sneg sig ind i kongens telt og jog et kastespyd i hjertet på ham, og han forvoldte kongens død øjeblikkeligt, så han ikke vækkede sine tjenere.

35 Og han vendte igen i hemmelighed tilbage til sin egen lejr, og se, hans mænd sov, men han vækkede dem og fortalte dem alt det, som han havde gjort.

36 Og han foranledigede, at hans hære skulle stå i beredskab for det tilfælde, at lamanitterne var vågnet og ville falde over dem.

37 Og således ender det femogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk; og således ender Amalikijas dage.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, inso-much that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, inso-much that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Almas Bog 52

- 1 Og se, det skete i det seksogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, se, da lamanitterne vågnede på den første morgen i den første måned, se, da fandt de Amalikija død i sit eget telt; og de så også, at Teankum var rede til at udkæmpe et slag mod dem på den dag.
- 2 Og se, da lamanitterne så dette, blev de bange, og de opgav deres forehavende om at marchere ind i landet mod nord og trak sig med hele deres hær tilbage til byen Mulek og søgte beskyttelse i deres befæstninger.
- 3 Og det skete, at Amalikijas bror blev udpeget til konge over folket, og hans navn var Ammoron; således blev kong Ammoron, kong Amalikijas bror, udpeget til at regere i hans sted.
- 4 Og det skete, at han befalede, at hans folk skulle holde de byer, som de havde indtaget ved blodsudgydelse; for de havde ikke indtaget nogen byer, uden at de havde tabt meget blod.
- 5 Og se, Teankum så, at lamanitterne var besluttede på at holde de byer, som de havde indtaget, og de dele af landet, som de havde sat sig i besiddelse af; og da Teankum også så, hvor kæmpestort antallet af dem var, mente han ikke, at det var tjenligt, at han forsøgte at angribe dem i deres fæstninger.
- 6 Men han holdt sine mænd rundt omkring, som om han traf forberedelser til krig, ja, og han beredte sig i sandhed på at forsvare sig mod dem ved at opkaste mure rundt omkring og berede tilflugtssteder.
- 7 Og det skete, at han således blev ved med at berede sig til krig, indtil Moroni havde sendt et stort antal mænd af sted for at styrke hans hær.
- 8 Og Moroni sendte også ordre til ham om at beholde alle de fanger, der faldt i hans hænder; for eftersom lamanitterne havde taget mange fanger, skulle han beholde alle de fangne lamanitter som gidsler for dem, som lamanitterne havde taget.
- 9 Og han sendte også ordre til ham om, at han skulle befæste landet Overflod og sikre det smalle pas, som førte til landet mod nord, for at lamanitterne ikke skulle indtage dette punkt og få magt til at hærge dem fra alle sider.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

10 Og Moroni sendte også bud til ham og ønskede af ham, at han skulle være trofast i at holde den del af landet, og at han skulle søge enhver lejlighed til at plage lamanitterne i den del, så meget som det stod i hans magt, så han måske ved list eller på anden måde atter kunne indtage de byer, der var blevet taget ud af deres hænder, og også at han skulle befæste og styrke de byer rundt omkring, som ikke var faldet i lamanitternes hænder.

11 Og han sagde også til ham: Jeg ville komme til dig, men se, lamanitterne er faldet over os ved landets grænser ved det vestlige hav; og se, jeg drager mod dem, derfor kan jeg ikke komme til dig.

12 Se, kongen (Ammoron), var draget ud af Zarahemlas land og havde fortalt dronningen om sin brors død og havde samlet et stort antal mænd og var marcheret frem mod nefitterne i grænseegnene ved det vestlige hav.

13 Og således forsøgte han at hærge nefitterne og at trække en del af deres styrker til den del af landet, mens han havde befalet dem, som han havde efterladt til at sætte sig i besiddelse af de byer, som han havde indtaget, at de også skulle hærge nefitterne i grænseegnene ved det østlige hav og skulle tage så meget af deres land i besiddelse, som det stod i deres magt ud fra styrken af deres hære.

14 Og således var nefitterne i denne farlige situation ved slutningen af det seksogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

15 Men se, det skete i det syvogtyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at Teankum efter befaling fra Moroni – som havde opstillet hære til at beskytte de sydlige og de vestlige grænser af landet og var begyndt sin march mod landet Overflod, for at han med sine mænd kunne hjælpe Teankum med at tage de byer tilbage, som de havde tabt –

16 og det skete, at Teankum havde modtaget ordrer til at foretage et angreb på byen Mulek og tage den tilbage, hvis det var muligt.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

17 Og det skete, at Teankum traf forberedelser til at foretage et angreb på byen Mulek og marchere frem med sin hær mod lamanitterne; men han så, at det var umuligt, at han kunne besejre dem, mens de var i deres fæstninger, derfor opgav han sit forehavende og vendte igen tilbage til byen Overflod for at afvente Moronis komme, så han kunne få styrke til sin hær.

18 Og det skete, at Moroni ankom med sin hær til Overflodens land i slutningen af det syvogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

19 Og i begyndelsen af det otteogtyvende år holdt Moroni og Teankum og mange af de øverste anførere krigsråd – hvad de skulle gøre for at få lamanitterne til at komme ud mod dem for at kæmpe; eller om de på en eller anden måde kunne smigre dem ud af deres støttepunkter, så de kunne vinde fordel over dem og atter indtage byen Mulek.

20 Og det skete, at de sendte udsendinge til den lamanitiske hær, som beskyttede byen Mulek, til deres leder, hvis navn var Jakob, og ønskede af ham, at han ville komme ud med sine hære og møde dem på sletterne mellem de to byer. Men se, Jakob, der var zoramit, ville ikke komme ud med sin hær for at møde dem på sletterne.

21 Og det skete, at Moroni, der ikke nærrede noget håb om at møde dem på åben mark, han udtænkte derfor en plan, så han kunne lokke lamanitterne ud af deres støttepunkter.

22 Derfor foranledigede han, at Teankum skulle tage et lille antal mænd og marchere ned i nærheden af kysten; og Moroni og hans hær marcherede om natten ud i ødemarken vest for byen Mulek; og da lamanitternes vagter således den næste dag opdagede Teankum, løb de hen og fortalte det til Jakob, deres leder.

23 Og det skete, at lamanitternes hære marcherede frem mod Teankum, idet de antog, at de ved deres antal kunne besejre Teankum på grund af hans lille antal. Og da Teankum så lamanitternes hære komme ud mod sig, begyndte han nede ved kysten at trække sig tilbage mod nord.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

24 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne så, at han begyndte at flygte, fattede de mod og forfulgte ham med al kraft. Og mens Teankum således ledte de lamanitter, som foræves forfulgte ham, bort, se, da befalede Moroni, at en del af hans hær, som var med ham, skulle marchere ind i byen og tage den i besiddelse.

25 Og det gjorde de og slog alle dem ihjel, som var blevet efterladt for at beskytte byen, ja, alle dem der ikke ville aflevere deres krigsvåben.

26 Og således satte Moroni sig i besiddelse af byen Mulek med en del af sin hær, mens han marcherede ud med resten for at møde lamanitterne, når de vendte tilbage fra forfølgelsen af Teankum.

27 Og det skete, at lamanitterne forfulgte Teankum, indtil de kom i nærheden af byen Overflod, og der blev de mødt af Lehi og en lille hær, som var blevet efterladt for at beskytte byen Overflod.

28 Og se nu, da lamanitternes øverste anførere så Lehi komme mod dem med sin hær, flygtede de i stor forvirring af frygt for, at de måske ikke kunne nå tilbage til byen Mulek, før Lehi indhentede dem, for de var trætte på grund af deres march, og Lehis mænd var friske.

29 Se, lamanitterne vidste ikke, at Moroni havde været bag dem med sin hær, og alt, hvad de frygtede, var Lehi og hans mænd.

30 Se, Lehi nærede ikke ønske om at indhente dem, før de mødte Moroni og hans hær.

31 Og det skete, at før lamanitterne havde trukket sig langt tilbage, blev de omringet af nefitterne, af Moronis mænd på den ene side og af Lehis mænd på den anden side, og de var alle friske og fulde af styrke, men lamanitterne var trætte på grund af deres lange march.

32 Og Moroni befalede sine mænd, at de skulle falde over dem, indtil de havde afleveret deres krigsvåben.

33 Og det skete, at Jakob, som var deres anfører, og som også var zoramit, og som havde en uovervindelig ånd, han førte lamanitterne frem til at kæmpe med et overordentlig stort raseri mod Moroni.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

34 Da Moroni stod i vejen for deres march, var Jakob derfor besluttet på at slå dem ihjel og hugge sig vej gennem dem til byen Mulek. Men se, Moroni og hans mænd var stærkere, derfor veg de ikke for lamanitterne.

35 Og det skete, at de på begge sider kæmpede med overordentlig stort raseri, og mange blev slået ihjel på begge sider; ja, og Moroni blev såret, og Jakob blev dræbt.

36 Og Lehi gik løs på deres bagtrop med sine stærke mænd med et sådant raseri, at lamanitterne i bagtroppe afleverede deres krigsvåben; og resten af dem, som var meget forvirrede, vidste ikke, hvor de skulle flygte hen eller angribe.

37 Se, da Moroni så deres forvirring, sagde han til dem: Hvis I vil bringe jeres krigsvåben frem og aflevere dem, se, da vil vi holde op med at udgyde jeres blod.

38 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne havde hørt disse ord, kom deres øverste anførere, alle de, der ikke var blevet slået ihjel, frem og kastede deres våben for fødderne af Moroni og befalede også deres mænd, at de skulle gøre det samme.

39 Men se, der var mange, som ikke ville; og de, som ikke ville aflevere deres sværd, blev taget og bundet, og deres krigsvåben blev taget fra dem, og de blev tvunget til at marchere med deres brødre til landet Overflod.

40 Og se, antallet af fanger, der blev taget, oversteg mere end antallet af dem, der var blevet slået ihjel, ja, flere end dem, der var blevet slået ihjel på begge sider.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

Almas Bog 53

- 1 Og det skete, at de satte vagter over de lamanitiske fanger og tvang dem til at gå ud og begrave deres døde, ja, og de døde nefitter, som var slået ihjel; og Moroni satte mænd over dem til at bevogte dem, mens de udførte deres arbejde.
- 2 Og Moroni drog til byen Mulek med Lehi og tog kommando over byen og gav den til Lehi. Se nu, denne Lehi var en mand, der havde været sammen med Moroni i størstedelen af hans slag, og han var en mand som Moroni, og de frydede sig ved hinandens sikkerhed, ja, de var elsket af hinanden og var også elsket af hele Nefis folk.
- 3 Og det skete, efter at lamanitterne var færdige med at begrave deres døde og også de døde nefitter, at de blev marcheret tilbage til landet Overflod; og på Moronis ordre foranledigede Teankum, at de skulle begynde at arbejde på at grave en grav rundt omkring landet eller byen Overflod.
- 4 Og han foranledigede, at de skulle bygge et brystværn af tømmer på indersiden af graven; og de kastede jord op fra graven mod dette brystværn af tømmer; og således fik de lamanitterne til at arbejde, indtil de havde omsluttet byen Overflod med en stærk mur af tømmer og jord i en overordentlig stor højde.
- 5 Og denne by blev fra da af et overordentlig stærkt støttepunkt; og i denne by bevogtede de de tilfangetagne lamanitter, ja, endda inden for en mur, som de havde ladet dem bygge med deres egne hænder. Se, Moroni var nødt til at lade lamanitterne arbejde, for det var let at bevogte dem, når de arbejdede; og han ønskede at have alle sine styrker, når han skulle foretage et angreb på lamanitterne.
- 6 Og det skete, at Moroni således havde vundet sejr over en af de største af lamanitternes hære og havde sat sig i besiddelse af byen Mulek, som var en af lamanitternes stærkeste fæstninger i Nefis land; og således havde han også bygget et støttepunkt, hvori han kunne holde sine fanger indespærret.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

- 7 Og det skete, at han ikke mere indlod sig på et slag med lamanitterne det år, men han beskæftigede sine mænd med at træffe forberedelser til krig, ja, og med at bygge befæstninger til værn mod lamanitterne, ja, og også med at udfri deres kvinder og deres børn fra sult og trængsel og med at skaffe mad til deres hære.
- 8 Og se, det skete, at lamanitternes hære ved det vestlige hav mod syd under Moronis fravær og som følge af nogle intriger blandt nefitterne, hvilket forårsagede kiv blandt dem, havde vundet en del terræn over nefitterne, ja, i en sådan grad at de havde sat sig i besiddelse af et antal af deres byer i den del af landet.
- 9 Og således blev de på grund af intern ugudelighed, ja, på grund af indbyrdes kiv og intriger sat i den farligste situation.
- 10 Og se nu, jeg har noget at sige angående Ammons folk, som i begyndelsen var lamanitter; men af Ammon og hans brødre, eller rettere sagt ved Guds ord og kraft, var de blevet omvendt til Herren; og de var blevet ført ned til Zarahemlas land og var lige siden blevet beskyttet af nefitterne.
- 11 Og på grund af deres ed havde de været forhindret i at gribe til våben mod deres brødre, for de havde aflagt en ed på, at de aldrig mere ville udgyde blod; og i overensstemmelse med deres ed ville de være omkommet, ja, de ville have ladet sig falde i hænderne på deres brødre, havde det ikke været for den medlidenhed og den overordentlig store kærlighed, som Ammon og hans brødre havde næret til dem.
- 12 Og af denne grund blev de ført ned til Zarahemlas land, og de var siden da blevet beskyttet af nefitterne.
- 13 Men det skete, at da de så den fare og de mange trængsler og megen modgang, som nefitterne bar for deres skyld, blev de rørt af medfølelse og nærrede ønske om at gribe til våben til forsvar for deres land.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue amongst themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

14 Men se, da de skulle til at gribe deres krigsvåben, blev de overvældet af Helamans og hans brøders overtalelser, for de stod i begreb med at ville bryde den ed, som de havde aflagt.

15 Og Helaman frygtede, at de ved at gøre dette ville fortabe deres sjæl; derfor var alle de, der havde indgået denne pagt, nødt til at se på, at deres brødre vadede gennem deres trængsler i deres farlige situation på dette tidspunkt.

16 Men se, det skete, at de havde mange sønner, som ikke havde indgået en pagt om, at de ikke ville gribe deres krigsvåben for at forsvare sig mod deres fjender; derfor samlede de sig på dette tidspunkt, så mange, som var i stand til at gribe til våben, og de kaldte sig nefitter.

17 Og de indgik en pagt om at kæmpe for nefitternes frihed, ja, om at beskytte landet, om de så skulle nedlægge deres liv; ja, de indgik endog pagt om, at de aldrig ville opgive deres frihed, men at de i alle tilfælde ville kæmpe for at beskytte nefitterne og sig selv mod trældom.

18 Se nu, der var to tusinde af disse unge mænd, der indgik denne pagt og greb deres krigsvåben for at forsvare deres land.

19 Og se nu, ligesom de hidtil aldrig havde været en ulempe for nefitterne, blev de nu på dette tidspunkt også en stor støtte, for de greb deres krigsvåben, og de ville, at Helaman skulle være deres leder.

20 Og de var alle unge mænd, og de var overordentlig tapre, hvad angår mod og også styrke og ihærdighed; men se, det var ikke alt – de var mænd, som til enhver tid var pålidelige i alt, hvad de end blev betroet.

21 Ja, de var mænd af sandhed og alvor, for de var blevet formanet til at holde Guds befalinger og vandre retsindigt for ham.

22 Og se, det skete, at Helaman marcherede i spidsen for sine to tusinde unge krigere til støtte for folkene ved landets grænser mod syd ved det vestlige hav.

23 Og således endte det otteogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Almas Bog 54

- 1 Og se, det skete i begyndelsen af dommernes niogtyvende år, at Ammoron sendte bud til Moroni og ønskede af ham, at han skulle udveksle fanger.
- 2 Og det skete, at Moroni frydede sig overordentlig ved denne anmodning, for han ønskede de forsyninger, der blev givet til underhold for de lamanitiske fanger, til underhold for sit eget folk; og han ønskede også sine egne folk til forstærkning af sin hær.
- 3 Se, lamanitterne havde taget mange kvinder og børn, og der fandtes ikke en kvinde eller et barn blandt alle Moronis fanger, eller de fanger som Moroni havde taget; derfor udtænkte Moroni en list for at få så mange af de tilfangetagne nefitter fra lamanitterne, som det var muligt.
- 4 Derfor skrev han et brev og sendte det med Ammorons tjener, han som havde bragt et brev til Moroni. Se, disse er de ord, som han skrev til Ammoron, og som lød:
- 5 Se, Ammoron, jeg har skrevet noget til jer angående denne krig, som I har ført mod mit folk, eller rettere som din bror har ført mod dem, og som I stadig er besluttet på at fortsætte efter hans død.
- 6 Se, jeg ville fortælle jer noget om Guds retfærdighed og hans almægtige vredes sværd, som hænger over jer, medmindre I omvender jer og trækker jeres hære tilbage til jeres egne lande, eller jeres ejendomsland, hvilket er Nefis land.
- 7 Ja, jeg ville fortælle dig dette, hvis du var i stand til at lytte til det, ja, jeg ville fortælle dig om det forfærdelige helvede, der venter på at modtage sådanne mordere, som du og din bror har været, medmindre I omvender jer og opgiver jeres morderiske formål og vender tilbage med jeres hære til jeres egne lande.
- 8 Men eftersom I én gang har forkastet dette og har kæmpet mod Herrens folk, så må jeg forvente, at I gør det igen.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 Og se nu, vi er rede til at modtage jer, ja, og medmindre I opgiver jeres hensigt, se, da vil I bringe vreden hos den Gud, som I har forkastet, ned over jer, ja, til jeres fuldstændige udryddelse.
- 10 Men så sandt som Herren lever, skal vore hære falde over jer, medmindre I trækker jer tilbage, og I skal snart blive hjem søgt af død, for vi vil genvinde vore byer og vore lande, ja, og vi vil hævde vor religion og vor Guds sag.
- 11 Men se, jeg formoder, at jeg taler forgæves til dig om dette, eller jeg formoder, at du er et helvedes barn, derfor vil jeg slutte mit brev med at fortælle dig, at jeg ikke vil udveksle fanger, undtagen på betingelse af at I vil udlevere en mand og hans hustru og hans børn for én fange; hvis det er tilfældet, at I vil gøre det, vil jeg udveksle.
- 12 Og se, hvis I ikke gør dette, vil jeg komme mod jer med mine hære; ja, jeg vil endog bevæbne mine kvinder og mine børn, og jeg vil komme mod jer, og jeg vil forfølge jer helt ind i jeres eget land, som er vort første arveland; ja, og det skal blive blod for blod og liv for liv; og jeg vil udkæmpe et slag mod jer, indtil I er udryddet fra jordens overflade.
- 13 Se, jeg er i min vrede, og ligeså mit folk; I har forsøgt at myrde os, og vi har kun forsøgt at forsvare os. Men se, hvis I yderligere forsøger at udrydde os, vil vi forsøge at udrydde jer; ja, og vi vil stræbe efter vort land, vort første arveland.
- 14 Nu slutter jeg mit brev. Jeg er Moroni; jeg er leder for det nefitiske folk.
- 15 Se, det skete, at Ammoron, da han havde modtaget dette brev, blev vred. Og han skrev endnu et brev til Moroni, og disse er de ord, som han skrev, og som lød:
- 16 Jeg er Ammoron, lamaniternes konge; jeg er bror til Amalikija, som I har myrdet. Se, jeg vil hævne hans blod på jer, ja, og jeg vil falde over jer med mine hære, for jeg frygter ikke jeres trusler.
- 17 For se, jeres fædre forurettede deres brødre i en sådan grad, at de berøvede dem deres ret til regeringsmagten, skønt den med rette tilkom dem.

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

18 Og se nu, hvis I vil nedlægge jeres våben og underkaste jer at blive regeret af dem, hvem regeringsmagten rettelig tilkommer, så vil jeg foranledige, at mit folk skal nedlægge deres våben og ikke længere skal være i krig.

19 Se, du har udslynget mange trusler mod mig og mit folk, men se, vi frygter ikke dine trusler.

20 Alligevel vil jeg med glæde tilstede en udveksling af fanger efter din anmodning, så jeg kan reservere min mad til mine krigsfolk; og vi vil føre en krig, der skal være evigt, enten til nefitternes underkastelse under vor myndighed eller til deres evige udslættelse.

21 Og med hensyn til den Gud, som du siger, vi har forkastet, se, vi kender ikke til et sådant væsen, ej heller gør I, men dersom der er et sådant væsen, da ved vi ikke andet, end at han har skabt os lige såvel som jer.

22 Og om så er, at der findes en djævel og et helvede, se, mon han da ikke vil sende dig dertil for at bo sammen med min bror, som I har myrdet, og om hvem du har antydet, at han er gået til et sådant sted? Men se, det betyder ikke noget.

23 Jeg er Ammoron og er efterkommer af Zoram, som jeres fædre tvang og førte ud af Jerusalem.

24 Og se nu, jeg er en frimodig lamanit; se, denne krig er blevet ført for at hævne deres forurettelser og for at hævde og at opnå deres ret til regeringsmagten; og jeg slutter mit brev til Moroni.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Almas Bog 55

- 1 Se, det skete, at da Moroni havde modtaget dette brev, blev han endnu mere vred, fordi han vidste, at Ammoron havde et fuldkomment kendskab til sit bedrageri; ja, han vidste, at Ammoron vidste, at det ikke var en retfærdig sag, der havde fået ham til at føre krig mod Nefis folk.
- 2 Og han sagde: Se, jeg vil ikke udveksle fanger med Ammoron, medmindre han vil opgive sin hensigt, som jeg har anført i mit brev, for jeg vil ikke tilstede ham, at han skal få mere magt end den, han har fået.
- 3 Se, jeg kender det sted, hvor lamanitterne bevogter mine folk, som de har taget til fange, og da Ammoron ikke vil efterkomme mit brev, se, da vil jeg give ham i overensstemmelse med mine ord, ja, jeg vil sprede død blandt dem, indtil de trygler om fred.
- 4 Og se, det skete, at da Moroni havde sagt disse ord, foranledigede han, at der skulle foretages en eftersøgning blandt hans mænd, for at han blandt dem måske kunne finde en mand, der var efterkommer af Laman.
- 5 Og det skete, at de fandt en, hvis navn var Laman, og han var en af tjenerne hos den konge, som blev myrdet af Amalickija.
- 6 Se, Moroni foranledigede, at Laman og et lille antal hans mænd skulle gå hen til de vagter, der var over nefitterne.
- 7 Se, nefitterne blev bevogtet i byen Gid, derfor udpegede Moroni Laman og foranledigede, at et lille antal mænd skulle gå med ham.
- 8 Og da det blev aften, gik Laman hen til de vagter, der var over nefitterne, og se, de så ham komme og de råbte ham an, men han siger til dem: Frygt ikke, se, jeg er lamanit. Se, vi er flygtet fra nefitterne, og de sover, og se, vi har taget noget af deres vin og bragt den med os.
- 9 Se, da lamanitterne hørte disse ord, tog de mod ham med glæde, og de sagde til ham: Giv os af din vin, så vi kan drikke, det glæder os, at I således har taget vin med jer, for vi er udmattede.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

10 Men Laman sagde til dem: Lad os gemme vor vin, til vi drager mod nefitterne for at kæmpe. Men disse ord gav dem blot et endnu større ønske om at drikke af vinen.

11 For, sagde de, vi er udmattede, lad os derfor drikke af vinen, og vi får snart vore rationer af vin, som vil styrke os til at drage mod nefitterne.

12 Og Laman sagde til dem: I kan gøre efter jeres ønsker.

13 Og det skete, at de tog rigeligt for sig af vinen; og den smagte dem godt, derfor tog de mere rigeligt for sig af den; og den var stærk, for den var særlig stærkt tilberedt.

14 Og det skete, at de drak og blev lystige, og snart var de alle berusede.

15 Og se, da Laman og hans mænd så, at de alle var berusede og var i en dyb søvn, vendte de tilbage til Moroni og fortalte ham alt det, der var hændt.

16 Og se, dette var i overensstemmelse med Moronis plan. Og Moroni havde forsynet sine mænd med krigsvåben, og han tog til byen Gid, mens lamanitterne var i en dyb søvn og var berusede, og kastede så mange krigsvåben ind til fangerne, at de alle blev bevæbnet;

17 ja, selv til deres kvinder og så mange af deres børn, som var i stand til at bruge et krigsvåben, da havde Moroni bevæbnet alle disse fanger; og alt dette blev gjort i dyb stilhed.

18 Men hvis de havde vækket lamanitterne, se, da var de berusede, og nefitterne kunne have slået dem ihjel.

19 Men se, dette var ikke Moronis ønske; han frydede sig ikke ved mord eller blodsudgydelse, men han frydede sig ved at kunne redde sit folk fra udryddelse; og af denne årsag, nemlig at han skulle bringe uretfærdighed over sig, ville han ikke falde over lamanitterne og slå dem ihjel i deres beruselse.

20 Men han havde opnået sit ønske, for han havde bevæbnet de tilfangetagne nefitter, som var inden for bymuren, og havde givet dem magt til at sætte sig i besiddelse af de dele, som var inden for murene.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

21 Og derpå lod han de mænd, som var med ham, trække sig et stykke tilbage fra dem og omringe lamanitternes hære.

22 Se nu, dette blev gjort om natten, så da lamanitterne vågnede om morgenen, så de, at de var omringet af nefitterne udenfor, og at deres fanger var bevæbnet indenfor.

23 Og således så de, at nefitterne havde magt over dem, og under disse omstændigheder fandt de, at det ikke var tjenligt, at de skulle kæmpe med nefitterne, derfor afkrævede deres øverste anførere dem deres krigsvåben, og de bragte dem frem og kastede dem for fødderne af nefitterne, mens de bad om barmhjertighed.

24 Se nu, dette var Moronis ønske. Han tog dem som krigsfanger og tog byen i besiddelse og foranledigede, at alle de fanger, som var nefitter, skulle frigives; og de sluttede sig til Moronis hær og var en stor styrke for hans hær.

25 Og det skete, at han foranledigede, at de lamanitter, som han havde taget til fange, skulle påbegynde et arbejde med at forstærke befæstningerne rundt omkring byen Gid.

26 Og det skete, at da han havde befæstet byen Gid efter sit ønske, foranledigede han, at hans fanger skulle føres til byen Overflod; og han bevogtede også denne by med en overordentlig stærk styrke.

27 Og det skete, at de til trods for alle lamanitternes intriger vogtede og forvarede alle de fanger, som de havde taget, og de holdt også alt det land og den fordel, som de havde taget tilbage.

28 Og det skete, at nefitterne igen begyndte at blive sejrige og at genvinde deres rettigheder og deres privilegier.

29 Mange gange forsøgte lamanitterne at omringe dem om natten, men ved disse forsøg mistede de mange fanger.

30 Og mange gange forsøgte de at give nefitterne af deres vin, så de kunne udrydde dem med gift eller drukenskab.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

31 Men se, nefitterne var ikke langsomme til at erindre Herren deres Gud i denne deres trængsels stund. De kunne ikke fanges i deres snarer, ja, de ville ikke drikke af deres vin, medmindre de først havde givet det til nogle af de lamanitiske fanger.

32 Og således var de forsigtige med, at der ikke blev givet dem nogen gift, for hvis deres vin forgiftede en lamanit, ville den også forgifte en nefit; og således prøvede de alle deres drikke.

33 Og se, det skete, at det blev nødvendigt for Moroni at træffe forberedelser til at angribe byen Morianton; for se, lamanitterne havde ved deres arbejde befæstet byen Morianton, indtil den var blevet et overordentlig stærkt støttepunkt.

34 Og de bragte bestandig nye styrker ind i den by og også nye tilførsler af forsyninger.

35 Og således endte det niogtyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Almas Bog 56

- 1 Og se, det skete i begyndelsen af det tredivte år af dom-
mernes regeringstid på den anden dag i den første må-
ned, at Moroni modtog et brev fra Helaman, hvori han
redegjorde for forholdene hos folket i den del af landet.
- 2 Og disse er de ord, som han skrev, og som lød: Min
højt elskede broder Moroni, såvel i Herren som i vor
krigsførelses modgang; se, min elskede broder, jeg har
noget at fortælle dig angående vor krigsførelse i denne
del af landet.
- 3 Se, to tusinde sønner af de mænd, som Ammon førte
ned fra Nefis land – se, du ved, at de er efterkommere af
Laman, som var vor fader Lehis ældste søn;
- 4 se, jeg behøver ikke at fortælle dig om deres overleve-
ringer eller deres vantro, for du kender til alt dette –
- 5 derfor er det mig nok at fortælle dig, at to tusinde af
disse unge mænd har grebet deres krigsvåben og ville, at
jeg skulle være deres leder; og vi er draget ud for at for-
svare vort land.
- 6 Og se, du kender også til den pagt, som deres fædre
sluttede om, at de ikke ville gribe til deres krigsvåben
mod deres brødre for at udgyde blod.
- 7 Men i det seksogtyvende år, da de så vore trængsler og
vor modgang for deres skyld, var de lige ved at bryde den
pagt, som de havde sluttet, og gribe til deres krigsvåben
til vort forsvar.
- 8 Men jeg ville ikke tillade dem, at de skulle bryde den
pagt, som de havde sluttet, da jeg antog, at Gud ville
styrke os i en sådan grad, at vi ikke skulle lide mere på
grund af opfyldelsen af den ed, som de havde aflagt.
- 9 Men se, her er noget, som vi kan glæde os meget over.
For se, i det seksogtyvende år marcherede jeg, Helaman,
i spidsen for disse to tusinde unge mænd til byen Juda
for at hjælpe Antipus, som du havde udpeget til leder
for folket i den del af landet.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the
thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second
day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from
Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quar-
ter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My
dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in
the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved
brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our
warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men
whom Ammon brought down out of the land of
Nephi—now ye have known that these were descen-
dants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father
Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their
traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concern-
ing all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two
thousand of these young men have taken their weapons
of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we
have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant
which their fathers made, that they would not take up
their weapons of war against their brethren to shed
blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our
afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were
about to break the covenant which they had made and
take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break
this covenant which they had made, supposing that
God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should
not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which
they had taken.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have
great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I,
Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand
young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom
ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of
the land.

10 Og jeg føjede mine to tusinde sønner (for de er værdige til at blive kaldt sønner), til Antipus' hær, hvilken styrke Antipus frydede sig overordentlig meget ved; for se, hans hær var blevet svækket af lamanitterne, fordi deres styrker havde slået et stort antal af vore mænd ihjel, af hvilken grund vi må sørge.

11 Dog må vi, hvad det angår, trøste os med, at de er døde for deres lands og for deres Guds sag, ja, og de er lykkelige.

12 Og lamanitterne havde også beholdt mange fanger, som alle er øverste anførere, for ingen andre har de ladet i live. Og vi formoder, at de nu på dette tidspunkt er i Nefis land; det er de, hvis de ikke er slået ihjel.

13 Og se, dette er de byer, som lamanitterne har sat sig i besiddelse af ved udgydelsen af så mange af vore tapre mænds blod:

14 Mantis land, eller byen Manti, og byen Ze'ezrom og byen Cumeni og byen Antipara.

15 Og det er de byer, som de havde taget i besiddelse, da jeg ankom til byen Judea; og jeg fandt Antipus og hans mænd i gang med at arbejde af alle deres kræfter med at befæste byen.

16 Ja, de var nedtrykte i såvel legemet som i ånden, for de havde kæmpet tappert om dagen og arbejdet om natten for at holde deres byer; og således havde de lidt store trængsler af enhver art.

17 Og se, de var besluttede på at sejre på dette sted eller dø; derfor kan du nok tænke dig, at denne lille styrke, som jeg bragte med mig, ja, disse mine sønner, gav dem store håb og megen glæde.

18 Og se, det skete, at da lamanitterne så, at Antipus havde modtaget en større styrke til sin hær, blev de på Ammorons ordre tvunget til ikke at drage mod byen Judea eller mod os for at kæmpe.

19 Og således blev vi begunstiget af Herren, for var de faldet over os i vor svaghed, kunne de måske have udryddet vor lille hær, men således blev vi bevaret.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

20 De blev af Ammoron befalet at holde de byer, som de havde indtaget. Og således endte det seksogtyvende år. Og i begyndelsen af det syvogtyvende år havde vi beredt vor by og os selv til forsvar.

21 Se, vi nærede ønske om, at lamanitterne ville falde over os, for vi nærede ikke ønske om at foretage et angreb på dem i deres støttepunkter.

22 Og det skete, at vi havde spioner ude rundt omkring for at holde øje med lamaniternes bevægelser, for at de ikke skulle drage forbi os om natten eller om dagen for at foretage et angreb på vore andre byer, som lå mod nord.

23 For vi vidste, at i disse byer var de ikke tilstrækkelig stærke til at møde dem; derfor nærede vi ønske om, hvis de drog forbi os, at falde over dem bagfra og således angribe dem bagfra, samtidig med at de blev mødt forfra. Vi mente, at vi kunne besejre dem, men se, vi blev skuffet i dette vort ønske.

24 De turde ikke at drage forbi os med hele deres hær, ej heller turde de at gøre det med en del af den af frygt for, at de ikke skulle være tilstrækkelig stærke, og at de skulle falde.

25 Ej heller turde de marchere ned mod byen Zarahemla, ej heller turde de krydse Sidons kilder over til byen Nefiha.

26 Og således var de besluttede på med deres styrker at holde de byer, som de havde indtaget.

27 Og se, det skete i den anden måned af dette år, at der blev bragt os mange forsyninger fra fædrene til mine to tusinde sønner.

28 Og der blev også sendt to tusinde mænd til os fra Zarahemlas land. Og således var vi beredt med ti tusinde mænd og forsyninger til dem og også til deres hustruer og deres børn.

29 Og lamanitterne, der således så vore styrker øges dagligt og forsyninger ankomme til vort underhold, de begyndte at blive skrækslagne og begyndte at gøre udfald for om muligt at gøre en ende på vor modtagelse af forsyninger og styrke.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

30 Se, da vi så, at lamanitterne begyndte at blive urolige på denne måde, nærrede vi ønske om at anvende en list over for dem; derfor befalede Antipus, at jeg skulle marchere ud med mine små sønner til en nærliggende by, som om vi førte forsyninger til en nærliggende by.

31 Og vi skulle marchere tæt forbi byen Antipara, som om vi var på vej til byen bag dem i grænseegnene ved kysten.

32 Og det skete, at vi marcherede ud, som om vi ville drage til den by med vore forsyninger.

33 Og det skete, at Antipus marcherede ud med en del af sin hær og efterlod resten til at holde byen. Men han marcherede ikke ud, førend jeg var draget ud med min lille hær og kom i nærheden af byen Antipara.

34 Og se, i byen Antipara var lamaniternes stærkeste hær udstationeret, ja, den talrigste.

35 Og det skete, at da de var blevet underrettet af deres spioner, kom de ud med deres hær og marcherede mod os.

36 Og det skete, at vi flygtede fra dem nordpå. Og således ledte vi lamaniternes mægtigste hær bort,

37 ja, endog et betydeligt stykke vej, så vidt at de, da de så Antipus' hær forfølge dem af alle deres kræfter, ikke vendte sig til højre eller venstre, men fortsatte deres march i lige retning efter os; og det var deres hensigt, formoder vi, at slå os ihjel, før Antipus kunne indhente dem, og dette for at de ikke skulle blive omringet af vore folk.

38 Og se, Antipus, der så vor fare, fremskyndede hærens march. Men se, det blev nat, derfor indhentede de os ikke, ej heller indhentede Antipus dem; derfor slog vi lejr for natten.

39 Og det skete, at før morgenen gryede, se, da forfulgte lamanitterne os. Se, vi var ikke tilstrækkelig stærke til at stride mod dem, ja, jeg ville ikke tillade, at mine små sønner skulle falde i deres hænder; derfor fortsatte vi vor march, og på vor march begav vi os ud i ødemarken.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

40 Se, de turde ikke holde til højre eller til venstre, af frygt for at de skulle blive omringet; ej heller ville jeg holde til højre eller til venstre, af frygt for at de skulle indhente mig, og at vi ikke kunne stå os imod dem, men blive slået ihjel, og at de ville undslippe; og således flygtede vi hele den dag ud i ødemarken, ja, indtil det blev mørkt.

41 Og det skete, at vi igen, da morgenlyset brød frem, så, at lamanitterne var over os, og vi flygtede for dem.

42 Men det skete, at de ikke forfulgte os langt, før de gjorde holdt; og det var om morgenen på den tredje dag i den syvende måned.

43 Og se, om de var blevet indhentet af Antipus, vidste vi ikke, men jeg sagde til mine mænd: Se, vi ved ikke, om de har gjort holdt med det formål, at vi skal gå imod dem, så de kan fange os i deres snare.

44 Hvad siger I derfor, mine sønner, vil I gå mod dem for at kæmpe?

45 Og se, jeg siger dig, min elskede bror Moroni, at jeg aldrig havde set så stort et mod, nej, ikke blandt nogen af nefitterne.

46 For ligesom jeg altid havde kaldt dem mine sønner (for de var alle meget unge), så sagde de til mig: Far, se, vor Gud er med os, og han vil ikke tillade, at vi skal falde, lad os derfor drage frem; vi vil ikke slå vore brødre ihjel, hvis de vil lade os i fred; lad os derfor drage frem, så de ikke skal besejre Antipus' hær.

47 Se, de havde aldrig kæmpet, dog frygtede de ikke døden; og de tænkte mere på deres fædres frihed, end de tænkte på deres eget liv; ja, det var blevet dem fortalt af deres mødre, at hvis de ikke tvivlede, ville Gud udfri dem.

48 Og de gentog deres mødres ord for mig, idet de sagde: Vi tvivler ikke på, at vore mødre vidste det.

49 Og det skete, at jeg med mine to tusinde vendte om mod disse lamanitter, som havde forfulgt os. Og se nu, Antipus' hære havde indhentet dem, og et skrækeligt slag var begyndt.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

50 Antipus' hær, der var udmattet på grund af deres lange march over så kort et tidsrum, var nær ved at falde i hænderne på lamanitterne, og var jeg ikke vendt om med mine to tusinde, havde de opnået deres hensigt.

51 For Antipus var faldet for sværdet, og mange af hans ledere på grund af deres træthed, som var forårsaget af hastigheden af deres march – derfor begyndte Antipus' mænd, som var forvirrede på grund af deres ledes fald, at vige for lamanitterne.

52 Og det skete, at lamanitterne fattede mod og begyndte at forfølge dem, og således forfulgte lamanitterne dem med stor kraft, da Helaman faldt over deres bagtrop med sine to tusinde og begyndte at slå dem ihjel, således at hele den lamanitiske hær gjorde holdt og vendte sig mod Helaman.

53 Se, da Antipus' folk så, at lamanitterne havde vendt sig om, samlede de deres mænd og faldt igen over lamaniternes bagtrop.

54 Og se, det skete, at vi, Nefis folk, Antipus' folk og jeg med mine to tusinde omringede lamanitterne og slog dem, ja, således at de blev nødt til at overdrage deres krigsvåben og overgive sig selv som krigsfanger.

55 Og se, det skete, at da de havde overgivet sig til os, se, da talte jeg disse unge mænd, som havde kæmpet sammen med mig, idet jeg frygtede, at mange af dem var blevet slået ihjel.

56 Men se, til min store glæde var ikke én sjæl af dem faldet til jorden; ja, og de havde kæmpet som med Guds styrke; ja, aldrig havde man kendt mænd, som havde kæmpet med en så mirakuløs styrke; med en så mægtig kraft var de faldet over lamanitterne, at de havde skræmt dem; og af denne årsag havde lamanitterne overgivet sig som krigsfanger.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

57 Og da vi ikke havde noget sted til vore fanger, så vi kunne bevogte dem og holde dem fra lamanitternes hæ-
re, sendte vi dem til Zarahemlas land sammen med en
del af Antipus' mænd, som ikke var blevet slået ihjel, og
resten tog jeg og forenede dem med mine unge ammo-
nitter og begav os på vor march tilbage til byen Juda.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we
could guard them to keep them from the armies of the
Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of
Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain
of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and
joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our
march back to the city of Judea.

Almas Bog 57

- 1 Og se, det skete, at jeg modtog et brev fra Ammoron, kongen, hvori der stod, at hvis jeg ville udlevere de krigsfanger, som vi havde taget, så ville han overgive byen Antipara til os.
- 2 Men jeg sendte et brev til kongen om, at vi var sikre på, at vore styrker var tilstrækkelige til at indtage byen Antipara ved vor egen kraft, og at vi ved at udlevere fangerne til gengæld for den by ville anse os for ukloge, og at vi kun ville udlevere vore fanger ved udveksling.
- 3 Og Ammoron afviste mit brev, for han ville ikke udveksle fanger; derfor begyndte vi at træffe forberedelser til at gå imod byen Antipara.
- 4 Men folket fra Antipara forlod byen og flygtede til de andre byer, som var i deres besiddelse, for at befæste dem; og således faldt byen Antipara i vore hænder.
- 5 Og således endte det otteogtyvende år af dommernes regeringstid.
- 6 Og det skete, at vi i begyndelsen af det niogtyvende år modtog en tilførsel af forsyninger og også en forstærkning til vor hær på seks tusinde mand fra Zarahemlas land og fra landet rundt omkring foruden tres af ammonitternes sønner, som var kommet for at slutte sig til deres brødre, min lille skare på to tusinde. Og se nu, vi var stærke, ja, og vi havde også fået tilført rigeligt af forsyninger.
- 7 Og det skete, at det var vort ønske at udkæmpe et slag mod den hær, som var blevet sat til at beskytte byen Cumeni.
- 8 Og se nu, jeg vil vise dig, at vi snart fik opfyldt vort ønske, ja, med vor stærke styrke, eller med en del af vor stærke styrke, omringede vi byen Cumeni om natten, lidt før de skulle modtage en tilførsel af forsyninger.
- 9 Og det skete, at vi slog lejr omkring byen i mange nætter, men vi sov på vore sværd og satte vagter, så lamanitterne ikke kunne falde over os om natten og slå os ihjel, hvilket de forsøgte mange gange, men lige så mange gange, som de forsøgte dette, flød deres blod.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

10 Langt om længe ankom deres forsyninger, og de skulde til at gå ind i byen om natten. Og vi, der i stedet for at være lamanitter var nefitter, greb derfor dem og deres forsyninger.

11 Og til trods for at lamanitterne blev afskåret fra deres underhold på denne måde, var de stadig fast besluttede på at holde byen, derfor blev det nødvendigt, at vi tog disse forsyninger og sendte dem til Juda og vore fanger til Zarahemlas land.

12 Og det skete, at der ikke var gået mange dage, før lamanitterne begyndte at miste alt håb om bistand, derfor overgav de byen i vore hænder; og således havde vi opnået vore hensigter med hensyn til at indtage byen Cumeni.

13 Men det skete, at vore fanger var så talrige, at vi til trods for vort kæmpestore antal var nødt til at anvende hele vor styrke til at bevogte dem eller at sende dem i døden.

14 For se, de brød ud i store antal og kæmpede med sten og med køller, eller hvad som helst de ellers kunne få fat på, således at vi slog over to tusinde af dem ihjel, efter at de havde overgivet sig som krigsfanger.

15 Derfor blev det nødvendigt for os, at vi gjorde en ende på deres liv eller under bevogtning og med sværd i hånd førte dem ned til Zarahemlas land; og vore forsyninger strakte heller ikke mere end til vore egne folk til trods for det, som vi havde taget fra lamanitterne.

16 Og se, under disse kritiske omstændigheder blev det en meget alvorlig sag at træffe en afgørelse angående disse krigsfanger; alligevel besluttede vi os til at sende dem ned til Zarahemlas land, derfor udvalgte vi en del af vore mænd og gav dem ansvaret for vore fanger og for at føre dem ned til Zarahemlas land.

17 Men det skete, at de vendte tilbage den næste dag. Og se nu, vi udspurgte dem ikke angående fangerne, for se, lamanitterne var over os, og de vendte tilbage i tide til at redde os fra at falde i deres hænder. For se, Ammoron havde til hjælp for dem sendt dem en ny tilførsel af forsyninger og også en talrig hær.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

18 Og det skete, at de mænd, som vi sendte med fangerne, ankom i tide til at holde dem tilbage, da de var ved at overvinde os.

19 Men se, min lille skare på to tusinde og tres kæmpede med største frygtløshed, ja, de stod fast mod lamanitterne og bragte død over alle dem, der modsatte sig dem.

20 Og da resten af vor hær var ved at vige for lamanitterne, se, da var disse to tusinde og tres urokkelige og uforfærdede.

21 Ja, de adlød og bestræbte sig på med nøjagtighed at udføre enhver kommando, der blev givet, ja, og det skete dem helt efter deres tro; og jeg huskede de ord, som de sagde til mig, at deres mødre havde lært dem.

22 Og se nu, det var disse mine sønner og de mænd, der var blevet udvalgt til at ledsage fangerne, vi skylder denne store sejr, for det var dem, der slog lamanitterne; derfor blev de drevet tilbage til byen Manti.

23 Og vi beholdt vor by Cumeni og blev ikke alle slået ihjel ved sværdet; alligevel havde vi lidt et stort tab.

24 Og det skete, efter at lamanitterne var flygtet, at jeg straks gav ordre til, at de af mine mænd, som var blevet såret, skulle hentes fra de faldne, og foranledigede, at deres sår skulle forbindes.

25 Og det skete, at der var to hundrede ud af mine to tusinde og tres, der var besvimet på grund af blodtab, alligevel var der ved Guds godhed og til vor store forbavselse og også til hele vor hærs glæde ikke én sjæl af dem, der omkom, ja, og ej heller var der én sjæl blandt dem, som ikke havde fået mange sår.

26 Og se, det, at de var blevet bevaret, var forbavsende for hele vor hær, ja, at de var blevet skånet, mens der var tusind af vore brødre, der var blevet slået ihjel. Og vi tilskriver det med rette Guds mirakuløse magt på grund af deres overordentlig store tro på det, som det var blevet dem fortalt, at de skulle tro på – at der var en retfærdig Gud, og at hver den, der ikke tvivlede, skulle blive bevaret ved hans forunderlige magt.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

27 Se, sådan troede de, som jeg har talt om; de er unge, og deres sind er fast, og de sætter bestandig deres lid til Gud.

28 Og se, det skete, efter at vi således havde draget omsorg for vore sårede mænd og havde begravet vore døde og også lamaniternes døde, som var mange, se, da udsurgte vi Gid angående de fanger, som de var taget af sted med for at drage ned til Zarahemlas land.

29 Se, Gid var den øverste anfører for den gruppe, der var blevet udpeget til at bevogte dem ned til landet.

30 Og se, dette er de ord, som Gid sagde til mig: Se, vi begyndte at drage ned til Zarahemlas land med vore fanger. Og det skete, at vi mødte de spioner fra vore hære, som var blevet sendt ud for at holde øje med lamaniternes hær.

31 Og de råbte til os og sagde: Se, lamaniternes hære marcherer mod byen Cumeni, og se, de vil falde over dem, ja, og vil udrydde vore folk.

32 Og det skete, at vore fanger hørte deres råb, hvilket fik dem til at fatte mod, og de satte sig op imod os.

33 Og det skete på grund af deres oprør, at vi foranledigede, at vore sværd skulle falde på dem. Og det skete, at de i samlet trop løb ind i vore sværd, hvorved størstedelen af dem blev slået ihjel; og resten af dem brød igennem og flygtede fra os.

34 Og se, da de var flygtet, og vi ikke kunne indhente dem, begav vi os i hast på vor march mod byen Cumeni, og se, vi ankom i tide, så vi kunne hjælpe vore brødre med at holde byen.

35 Og se, vi er igen blevet udfriet af vore fjenders hænder. Og velsignet er vor Guds navn, for se, det er ham, som har udfriet os, ja, som har udvirket dette store for os.

36 Se, det skete, at da jeg, Helaman, havde hørt disse ord fra Gid, blev jeg fyldt af overordentlig stor glæde på grund af Guds godhed ved at bevare os, så vi ikke alle skulle omkomme; og jeg er vis på, at de, der er blevet slået ihjel, at deres sjæl er gået ind til deres Guds hvile.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Almas Bog 58

- 1 Og se, nu skete det, at vort næste mål var at indtage byen Manti; men se, der var ingen måde, hvorpå vi med vore små grupper kunne få dem ud af byen. For se, de huskede det, som vi hidtil havde gjort, derfor kunne vi ikke lokke dem væk fra deres støttepunkter.
- 2 Og de var så langt mere talstærke, end vor hær var, at vi ikke turde gå frem og angribe dem i deres støttepunkter.
- 3 Ja, og det blev nødvendigt, at vi anvendte vore mænd til at holde de dele af landet, som vi havde taget tilbage af vore besiddelser; derfor blev det nødvendigt, at vi skulle vente, så vi kunne modtage større styrke fra Zarahemlas land og også en ny tilførsel af forsyninger.
- 4 Og det skete, at jeg derfor sendte en udsending til regenten i vort land for at gøre ham bekendt med forholdene hos vort folk. Og det skete, at vi ventede på at modtage forsyninger og styrke fra Zarahemlas land.
- 5 Men se, det gavnede os kun lidt, for lamanitterne modtog også stor styrke fra dag til dag og også mange forsyninger; ja, således var vore omstændigheder på den tid.
- 6 Og lamanitterne gjorde udfald mod os fra tid til anden, idet de var besluttede på at udrydde os ved list; alligevel kunne vi ikke komme til at kæmpe med dem på grund af deres tilflugtssteder og deres støttepunkter.
- 7 Og det skete, at vi i disse vanskelige omstændigheder ventede i et tidsrum af mange måneder, lige indtil vi var ved at omkomme af mangel på mad.
- 8 Men det skete, at vi modtog mad, der under bevogtning blev bragt til os af en hær på to tusinde mand, der kom os til hjælp; og det er al den hjælp, vi modtog til at forsvare os selv og vort land mod at falde i vore fjenders hænder, ja, til at stride mod en fjende, der var utællelig.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

- 9 Og se, årsagen til disse vore vanskeligheder, eller årsagen til at de ikke sendte os mere styrke, kendte vi ikke, derfor var vi bedrøvede og også fulde af frygt for, at Guds straffedomme på en eller anden måde skulle komme over vort land til vort fald og vor fuldstændige udryddelse.
- 10 Derfor udøste vi vor sjæl i bøn til Gud om, at han ville styrke os og udfri os af vore fjenders hænder, ja, og også give os styrke, så vi kunne beholde vore byer og vore lande og vor ejendom til vort folks underhold.
- 11 Ja, og det skete, at Herren vor Gud velsignede os med vished om, at han ville udfri os, ja, således at han talte fred til vor sjæl og skænkede os stor tro og fik os til at håbe på vor udfrielse ved ham.
- 12 Og vi fattede mod med vor lille styrke, som vi havde modtaget, og var med en fast beslutning opsat på at sejre over vore fjender og at hævde vore lande og vor ejendom og vore hustruer og vore børn og vor friheds sag.
- 13 Og således drog vi af alle vore kræfter ud mod lamanitterne, som var i byen Manti; og vi slog vore telte op i udkanten af ødemarken, som lå nær ved byen.
- 14 Og det skete den næste dag, at da lamanitterne så, at vi var i grænseegnene ved ødemarken, som lå nær ved byen, at de sendte deres spioner ud rundt omkring os, for at de kunne finde ud af størrelsen og styrken af vor hær.
- 15 Og det skete, at da de så, at vi ikke var stærke, hvad angik antallet af os, og da de frygtede, at vi skulle afskære dem fra deres forsyninger, medmindre de drog ud for at kæmpe mod os og dræbe os, og da de ligeledes mente, at de let kunne udrydde os med deres talrige hærskarer, begyndte de derfor at træffe forberedelser til at drage ud mod os for at kæmpe.
- 16 Og da vi så, at de var ved at træffe forberedelser til at komme ud mod os, se, da foranledigede jeg, at Gid med en lille gruppe mænd skulle skjule sig i ødemarken, og også at Teomner og en lille gruppe mænd også skulle skjule sig i ødemarken.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, in-somuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

17 Se, Gid og hans mænd var til højre og de andre til venstre; og da de således havde skjult sig, se, da forblev jeg sammen med resten af min hær på det selv samme sted, hvor vi først havde slået vore telte op, for at afvente det tidspunkt, da lamanitterne ville komme ud for at kæmpe.

18 Og det skete, at lamanitterne kom ud med deres talrige hær mod os. Og da de var kommet og skulle til at falde over os med sværdet, foranledigede jeg, at mine mænd, de som var hos mig, skulle trække sig tilbage ud i ødemarken.

19 Og det skete, at lamanitterne fulgte efter os med stor hast, for de nærrede et overmåde stort ønske om at indhente os, så de kunne slå os ihjel; derfor fulgte de efter os ud i ødemarken; og vi drog forbi midt mellem Gid og Teomner, således at disse ikke blev opdaget af lamanitterne.

20 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne var draget forbi, eller da hæren var draget forbi, rejste Gid og Teomner sig fra deres skjulesteder og afskar lamanitternes spioner, så de ikke kunne vende tilbage til byen.

21 Og det skete, at da de havde afskåret dem, løb de til byen og faldt over de vagter, som var blevet ladet tilbage for at bevogte byen, således at de dræbte dem og tog byen i besiddelse.

22 Se, dette blev gjort, fordi lamanitterne havde ladet hele deres hær med undtagelse af nogle få vagter blive ledt ud i ødemarken.

23 Og det skete, at Gid og Teomner på denne måde var kommet i besiddelse af deres støttepunkter. Og det skete, at vi efter at have rejst meget omkring i ødemarken begav os i retning af Zarahemlas land.

24 Og da lamanitterne så, at de marcherede mod Zarahemlas land, blev de overordentlig bange for, at der var lagt en plan for at føre dem til udryddelse; derfor begyndte de igen at trække sig tilbage til ødemarken, ja, tilbage ad den samme vej, som de var kommet.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

25 Og se, det blev nat, og de slog deres telte op, for lamanitternes øverste anførere havde antaget, at nefitterne var udmattede på grund af deres march; og da de antog, at de havde fordrevet hele deres hær, gjorde de sig derfor ingen tanke om byen Manti.

26 Se, det skete, at da det blev nat, foranledigede jeg, at mine mænd ikke skulle sove, men at de skulle marchere frem ad en anden vej mod Mantis land.

27 Og på grund af denne vor march ved nattetide, se, da var vi den næste dag kommet så langt foran lamanitterne, at vi ankom før dem til byen Manti.

28 Og således skete det, at vi ved denne list tog byen Manti i besiddelse uden udgydelse af blod.

29 Og det skete, at da lamanitternes hære kom i nærheden af byen og så, at vi var rede til at møde dem, blev de overordentlig forbavsede og slået af stor frygt, således at de flygtede ud i ødemarken.

30 Ja, og det skete, at de lamanitiske hære flygtede ud af hele denne del af landet. Men se, de havde ført mange kvinder og børn med sig ud af landet.

31 Og de byer, der blev indtaget af lamanitterne, er på dette tidspunkt alle i vor besiddelse; og vore fædre og vore kvinder og vore børn er på vej tilbage til deres hjem, alle undtagen de, som er blevet taget til fange og ført bort af lamanitterne.

32 Men se, vore hære er for små til at holde et så stort antal byer og så store besiddelser.

33 Men se, vi forlader os på vor Gud, som har givet os sejr over disse lande, således at vi har taget de byer og de lande, som var vore egne.

34 Se, vi kender ikke årsagen til, at regeringen ikke giver os mere styrke; ej heller véd de mænd, der er kommet op til os, hvorfor vi ikke har modtaget større styrke.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

35 Se, vi ved ikke, om I ikke har haft modgang og har trukket styrkerne over til den del af landet; om så er, ønsker vi ikke at murre.

36 Og om det ikke er så, se, da er vi bange for, at der er en eller anden splittelse i regeringen, så de ikke sender os flere mænd til hjælp; for vi ved, at de er mere talrige end de, som de har sendt.

37 Men se, det betyder intet – vi stoler på, at Gud vil udfri os til trods for vore hæres svaghed, ja, og vil udfri os af vore fjenders hænder.

38 Se, dette er i det niogtyvende år, i slutningen af det, og vi er i besiddelse af vore lande; og lamanitterne er flygtet til Nefis land.

39 Og disse sønner af Ammons folk, som jeg har talt så rosende om, er med mig i byen Manti; og Herren har støttet dem, ja, og bevaret dem mod at falde for sværdet, i en sådan grad at ikke én eneste sjæl er blevet slået ihjel.

40 Men se, de har fået mange sår; alligevel står de fast på den frihed, hvormed Gud har gjort dem frie; og de er omhyggelige med at huske Herren deres Gud fra dag til dag; ja, de bestræber sig bestandigt på at holde hans løvbud og hans retsregler og hans befalinger; og deres tro på profetierne om det, der skal komme, er stærk.

41 Og se, min elskede broder Moroni, måtte Herren vor Gud, som har forløst os og gjort os frie, bestandig bevare dig i sin nærhed, ja, og måtte han begunstige dette folk, ja, så det må lykkes for jer at sætte jer i besiddelse af alt det, som lamanitterne har taget fra os, som var til vort underhold. Og se nu, jeg slutter mit brev. Jeg er Helaman, Almas søn.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

Almas Bog 59

- 1 Se, det skete i det tredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, efter at Moroni havde modtaget og havde læst Helamans brev, at han blev overordentlig glad på grund af hans velfærd, ja, den overordentlig høje grad i hvilken det var lykkedes Helaman at tage de lande, som de havde mistet.
- 2 Ja, og han kundgjorde det for hele sit folk i hele landet rundt omkring i den del, hvor han var, så de også kunne fryde sig.
- 3 Og det skete, at han straks sendte et brev til Pahoran og ønskede af ham, at han skulle lade mænd samle sig for at styrke Helaman, eller Helamans hære, således at han med lethed kunne holde den del af landet, som han på så mirakuløs vis havde fået hjælp til at vinde tilbage.
- 4 Og det skete, da Moroni havde sendt dette brev til Zarahemlas land, begyndte han igen at lægge en plan, så han kunne indtage resten af de besiddelser og byer, som lamanitterne havde taget fra dem.
- 5 Og det skete, at mens Moroni således var ved at træffe forberedelser til at drage mod lamanitterne for at kæmpe, se, da blev Nefihas folk, som var samlet sammen fra byen Moroni og byen Lehi og byen Morianton, angrebet af lamanitterne.
- 6 Ja, de, der var blevet tvunget til at flygte fra Mantis land og fra landet deromkring, var kommet over og havde sluttet sig til lamanitterne i denne del af landet.
- 7 Og da de således var overordentlig talrige, ja, og modtog styrke fra dag til dag, drog de på Ammorons befaling ud mod Nefihas folk, og de begyndte at slå dem ihjel under en overordentlig stor nedslagtning.
- 8 Og deres hære var så talrige, at resten af Nefihas folk blev nødt til at flygte for dem, og de kom og sluttede sig til Moronis hær.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephihah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

- 9 Og se, da Moroni havde antaget, at der ville blive sendt mænd til byen Nefiha for at hjælpe folket med at holde byen, og da han vidste, at det var lettere at redde byen fra at falde i lamaniternes hænder end at tage den tilbage fra dem, antog han, at de let kunne holde den.
- 10 Derfor holdt han alle sine styrker tilbage for at holde de steder, han havde genvundet.
- 11 Og se, da Moroni så, at byen Nefiha var faldet, blev han overordentlig sorgfuld og begyndte at blive bange for, at de på grund af folkets ugudelighed ville falde i deres brødres hænder.
- 12 Se, dette var tilfældet for alle hans øverste anførere. De tvivlede og undrede sig også over folkets ugudelighed, og dette på grund af lamaniternes medgang i forhold til dem.
- 13 Og det skete, at Moroni blev vred på regeringen på grund af dens ligegyldighed med hensyn til deres lands frihed.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Almas Bog 6o

- 1 Og det skete, at han igen skrev til landets regent, som var Pahoran, og disse er de ord, som han skrev, og som lød: Se, jeg stiler mit brev til Pahoran i byen Zarahemla, til landets overdommer og regent og også til alle dem, der af dette folk er blevet valgt til at styre og forvalte denne krigs anliggender.
- 2 For se, jeg har noget at sige til dem som fordømmelse; for se, I ved selv, at I er blevet udpeget til at samle mænd og bevæbne dem med sværd og med sabler og alle slags krigsvåben af enhver art og sende dem ud mod lamanitterne i hvilke dele af vort land, de end måtte komme ind.
- 3 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at jeg selv og også mine mænd og også Helaman og hans mænd har lidt overordentlig store lidelser, ja, endog sult, tørst og udmattelse og alle slags trængsler af enhver art.
- 4 Men se, var det alt, vi havde lidt, ville vi ikke murre eller klage.
- 5 Men se, stor har nedslagtningen været blandt vort folk; ja, tusinder er faldet for sværdet, hvor det kunne have været anderledes, hvis I havde ydet vore hære tilstrækkelig styrke og bistand. Ja, stor har jeres forsømmelse af os været.
- 6 Og se nu, vi ønsker at kende årsagen til denne overordentlig store forsømmelse; ja, vi ønsker at kende årsagen til jeres tankeløse tilstand.
- 7 Tænker I, at I kan sidde på jeres troner i en tilstand af tankeløs sløvhed, mens jeres fjender spreder dødens værk omkring jer? Ja, mens de myrder tusinder af jeres brødre –
- 8 ja, netop dem, som har set op til, at I skulle beskytte dem, ja, som har bragt jer i en stilling, hvor I kunne have bistået dem, ja, I kunne have sendt dem hære for at have styrket dem og have reddet tusinder af dem fra at falde for sværdet.

Alma 6o

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

- 9 Men se, det er ikke alt – I har holdt jeres forsyninger tilbage fra dem, således at mange har kæmpet og er blødt til døde på grund af de store ønsker, som de havde for dette folks velfærd; ja, og dette har de gjort, mens de var ved at omkomme af sult på grund af jeres overordentlig store forsømmelse af dem.
- 10 Og se, mine elskede brødre – for I burde være elsket, ja, og I burde have sat jer mere flittigt i bevægelse for dette folks velfærd og frihed; men se, I har forsømt dem, således at tusinders blod skal komme over jeres hoved som hævn, ja, for kendt af Gud er alle deres råb og alle deres lidelser –
- 11 se, kan I tro, at I kunne sidde på jeres troner, og at I som følge af Guds overvældende godhed kunne undlade at gøre noget, og at han ville udfri jer? Se, hvis I har troet det, så har I troet forgæves.
- 12 Tror I, at når så mange af jeres brødre er blevet dræbt, at det er på grund af deres ugudelighed? Jeg siger jer, at hvis I har troet det, så har I troet forgæves, for jeg siger jer, at der er mange, der er faldet for sværdet; og se, det bliver jer til fordømmelse.
- 13 For Herren tillader, at de retfærdige bliver slået ihjel, så hans retfærdighed og dom kan komme over de ugudelige; derfor behøver I ikke at antage, at de retfærdige er fortabte, fordi de bliver slået ihjel; men se, de går ind til Herren deres Guds hvile.
- 14 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, jeg frygter overordentlig for, at Guds straffedomme kommer over dette folk på grund af deres overordentlig store efterladenhed, ja, selv vor regerings efterladenhed og deres overordentlig store forsømmelse over for deres brødre, ja, over for dem, der er blevet slået ihjel.
- 15 For var det ikke for den ugudelighed, som først begyndte hos vore overhoveder, kunne vi have modstået vore fjender, så de ingen magt kunne have fået over os.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

16 Ja, havde det ikke været for den krig, som brød ud blandt os indbyrdes; ja, var det ikke for disse kongemænd, som forårsagede så megen blodsudgydelse blandt os; ja, havde vi på det tidspunkt, da vi stredes indbyrdes, forenet vor styrke, som vi hidtil havde gjort; ja, havde det ikke været for det ønske om magt og myndighed over os, som disse kongemænd havde; havde de været tro mod vor friheds sag og forenede med os og var draget ud mod vore fjender i stedet for at gribe til sværdet mod os, hvilket var årsag til så megen blodsudgydelse blandt os; ja, hvis vi var draget ud mod dem i Herrens styrke, da ville vi have spredt vore fjender, for det ville være blevet gjort i overensstemmelse med opfyldelsen af hans ord.

17 Men se, nu falder lamanitterne over os, tager vore lande i besiddelse, og de myrder vore folk med sværdet, ja, vore kvinder og vore børn og fører dem også bort som fanger, idet de lader dem lide alle slags trængsler, og det på grund af den store ugudelighed hos dem, der stræber efter magt og myndighed, ja, netop disse kongemænd.

18 Men hvorfor skulle jeg sige meget angående denne sag? For vi ved jo ikke, om I ikke selv stræber efter myndighed. Vi ved ikke, om I ikke også er forrædere mod jeres land.

19 Eller har I forsømt os, fordi I er i hjertet af vort land, og I er omgivet af sikkerhed og derfor ikke sørger for at sende mad til os og også mænd til at styrke vore hære?

20 Har I glemt Herren jeres Guds befalinger? Ja, har I glemt vore fædres fangenskab? Har I glemt de mange gange, vi er blevet udfriet af vore fjenders hænder?

21 Eller tror I, at Herren stadig vil udfri os, mens vi sidder på vore troner og ikke gør brug af de midler, som Herren har givet os?

22 Ja, vil I sidde i uvirksomhed, mens I er omgivet af tusinder, ja, og titusinder af dem, som også sidder i uvirksomhed, mens der er tusinder rundt omkring ved landets grænser, som falder for sværdet, ja, sårede og blødnede.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

23 Tror I, at Gud vil se på jer som skyldfri, når I sidder stille og betragter dette? Jeg siger jer: Nej. Se, jeg ønsker, at I skal huske, at Gud har sagt, at den indvendige side af karret skal renses først, og derefter skal den udvendige side også renses.

24 Og se, medmindre I omvender jer fra det, som I har gjort, og begynder at være virksomme og sender føde og mænd til os og også til Helaman, så han kan forsvare de dele af vort land, som han har genvundet, og så vi også kan genvinde resten af vore besiddelser i disse egne, se, da er det tjenligt, at vi ikke strider mere mod lamanitterne, førend vi har rensset den indvendige side af vort kar, ja, vor regerings øverste overhoveder.

25 Og medmindre I efterkommer mit brev og kommer frem og viser mig en sand frihedsånd og bestræber jer på at styrke og forstærke vore hære og give dem føde til deres underhold, se, da vil jeg efterlade en del af mine frimænd til at holde denne del af vort land, og jeg vil efterlade Guds styrke og velsignelse over dem, så ingen anden magt kan virke mod dem –

26 og dette på grund af deres overordentlig store tro og deres tålmodighed i deres modgang –

27 og jeg vil komme til jer, og hvis der er nogen blandt jer, som har et ønske om frihed, ja, om der kun er en gnist af frihed tilbage, se, da vil jeg ophidse til opstande blandt jer, ja, lige indtil de, der har ønske om at tilrane sig magt og myndighed, bliver udslettet.

28 Ja, se, jeg frygter ikke jeres magt eller jeres myndighed, men det er min Gud, som jeg frygter, og det er i henhold til hans befalinger, at jeg griber til sværdet for at forsvare mit lands sag, og det er på grund af jeres ugdelighed, at vi har lidt så stort tab.

29 Se, det er tid, ja, tiden er nu for hånden, da retfærdighedens sværd, medmindre I rører på jer til forsvar for jeres land og jeres små, hænger over jer, ja, og det skal falde på jer og hjemsøge jer helt til jeres fuldstændige ødelæggelse.

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

30 Se, jeg venter på hjælp fra jer, og medmindre I kommer os til undsætning, se, da kommer jeg til jer, endog jer i Zarahemlas land, og slår jer med sværdet, således at I ikke mere skal have magt til at hindre dette folks fremgang i vor friheds sag.

31 For se, Herren vil ikke tillade, at I skal leve og vokse jer stærke i jeres syndighed for at udrydde hans retfærdige folk.

32 Se, kan I mene, at Herren vil skåne jer og gå frem til dom mod lamanitterne, når det er deres fædres overlevring, som har forårsaget deres had, ja, og det er blevet mangedoblet af dem, der har skilt sig ud fra os, mens jeres ugudelighed er en følge af jeres kærlighed til ære og verdens tomme ting?

33 I ved, at I overtræder Guds love, og I ved, at I tramper dem under fode. Se, Herren siger til mig: Hvis de, som I har udpeget til jeres regenter, ikke omvender sig fra deres synder og syndighed, skal I drage op for at kæmpe mod dem.

34 Og se nu, jeg, Moroni, er bundet i henhold til den pagt, som jeg har sluttet om at holde min Guds befalinger, derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal holde fast ved Guds ord og hastigt sende nogle af jeres forsyninger og af jeres mænd til mig og også til Helaman.

35 Og se, hvis I ikke gør det, da kommer jeg hastigt til jer, for se, Gud vil ikke tillade, at vi skal omkomme af sult, derfor vil han give os af jeres føde, selv om det skal ske ved sværdet. Se nu til, at I opfylder Guds ord.

36 Se, jeg er Moroni, jeres øverste anfører. Jeg stræber ikke efter magt, men efter at bryde den ned. Jeg stræber ikke efter verdens ære, men efter Guds ære og mit lands frihed og velfærd. Og således slutter jeg mit brev.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

Almas Bog 61

- 1 Se, nu skete det, at snart efter at Moroni havde sendt sit brev til den øverste regent, modtog han et brev fra Pahoran, den øverste regent. Og disse er de ord, som han modtog:
- 2 Jeg, Pahoran, som er den øverste regent over dette land, sender disse ord til Moroni, den øverste anfører for hæren. Se, jeg siger dig, Moroni, at jeg ikke glæder mig over jeres store trængsler, ja, det bedrøver min sjæl.
- 3 Men se, der er dem, der glæder sig over dine trængsler, ja, i en sådan grad, at de har rejst sig i oprør mod mig og også mod dem af mit folk, der er frimænd, ja, og de, der har rejst sig, er overordentlig talrige.
- 4 Og det er dem, der har forsøgt at tage dommersædet fra mig, som har været årsag til denne store ugudelighed; for de har brugt megen smiger, og de har forledt mange folks hjerte, hvilket vil blive årsag til svær trængsel blandt os; de har holdt vore forsyninger tilbage og har skræmt vore frimænd, så de ikke er kommet til dig.
- 5 Og se, de har drevet mig ud fra sig, og jeg er flygtet til Gideons land med så mange mænd, som det var mig muligt at samle.
- 6 Og se, jeg har sendt en proklamation ud i denne del af landet; og se, de flokkes daglig til os for at gribe til våben til forsvar for deres land og deres frihed og for at hævne vore forurettelser.
- 7 Og de er kommet til os, således at de, der har rejst sig i oprør mod os, bydes trods, ja, således at de frygter os og ikke tør drage ud mod os for at kæmpe.
- 8 De har sat sig i besiddelse af Zarahemlas land, eller byen Zarahemla; de har udpeget en konge over sig, og han har skrevet et brev til lamanitternes konge, hvori han har indgået et forbund med ham, i hvilket forbund han har indvilliget i at holde byen Zarahemla, hvilket han tror vil sætte lamanitterne i stand til at erobre resten af landet, og han skal indsættes som konge over dette folk, når de bliver besejret af lamanitterne.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proklamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

9 Og se, i dit brev har du kritiseret mig, men det betyder ikke noget, jeg er ikke vred, men fryder mig ved dit hjertes storhed. Jeg, Pahoran, stræber ikke efter magt, men kun efter at beholde mit dommersæde, så jeg kan bevare mit folks rettigheder og frihed. Min sjæl står fast i den frihed, hvormed Gud har gjort os fri.

10 Og se nu, vi vil modsætte os ugudelighed, endog til blodsudgydelse. Vi ville ikke udgyde lamaniternes blod, hvis de forblev i deres eget land.

11 Vi ville ikke udgyde vore brødres blod, hvis ikke de rejste sig i oprør og greb til sværdet mod os.

12 Vi ville underkaste os trældomsåget, hvis det blev krævet af Guds retfærdighed, eller hvis han skulle befale os at gøre det.

13 Men se, han befaler os ikke, at vi skal underkaste os vore fjender, men at vi skal sætte vor lid til ham, og han vil udfri os.

14 Derfor, min elskede broder Moroni, lad os modsætte os det onde, og et hvilket som helst onde, vi ikke kan modsætte os med vore ord, ja, såsom oprør og opsplittninger, lad os modsætte os dem med vore sværd, så vi kan bevare vor frihed, så vi kan fryde os over det store privilegium ved vor kirke og ved vor forløser og vor Guds sag.

15 Kom derfor hastigt til mig med nogle få af dine mænd, og efterlad resten under Lehis og Teankums ledelse; giv dem magt til at føre krigen i den del af landet i overensstemmelse med Guds Ånd, der også er den frihedsånd, som er i dem.

16 Se, jeg har sendt nogle få forsyninger til dem, så de ikke skal omkomme, førend du kan komme til mig.

17 Saml den styrke, du kan, under din march hertil, og vi vil hastigt drage mod dem, der har skilt sig ud, i vor Guds styrke i overensstemmelse med den tro, som er i os.

18 Og vi vil tage byen Zarahemla i besiddelse, så vi kan få mere føde at sende frem til Lehi og Teankum; ja, vi vil drage mod dem i Herrens styrke, og vi vil gøre en ende på denne store ugudelighed.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

19 Og se, Moroni, jeg glæder mig over at have modtaget dit brev, for jeg var noget bekymret over, hvad vi skulle gøre, om det ville være rigtigt af os at drage ud mod vore brødre.

20 Men du har sagt, at medmindre de omvender sig, har Herren befalet dig, at du skal drage ud mod dem.

21 Se til, at du styrker Lehi og Teankum i Herren; sig til dem, at de ikke skal frygte, for Gud vil udfri dem, ja, og også alle dem, der står fast i den frihed, hvormed Gud har gjort dem fri. Og nu slutter jeg mit brev til min elskede broder Moroni.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Almas Bog 62

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Moroni havde modtaget dette brev, fattede hans hjerte mod, og han blev fyldt af en overordentlig stor glæde på grund af Pahorans trofasthed, at han ikke også var en forræder mod friheden og sit lands sag.
- 2 Men han sørgede også overordentlig meget på grund af ugudeligheden blandt dem, der havde drevet Pahoran fra dommersædet, ja, kort sagt på grund af dem, der havde sat sig op imod deres land og også deres Gud.
- 3 Og det skete, at Moroni efter Pahorans ønske tog et lille antal mænd og gav Lehi og Teankum kommando over resten af sin hær og begyndte sin march mod Gideons land.
- 4 Og han rejste frihedens banner i hver eneste by, som han kom til, og samlede enhver styrke, han kunne, under hele sin march mod Gideons land.
- 5 Og det skete, at tusinder flokkedes om hans banner og greb til deres sværd til forsvar for deres frihed, for at de ikke skulle komme i trældom.
- 6 Og da Moroni således havde samlet alle de mænd, han kunne under hele sin march, kom han til Gideons land; og da han forenede sine styrker med Pahorans, blev de overordentlig stærke, endog stærkere end Pakus' mænd, han der var konge for dem, der havde skilt sig ud, og som havde drevet frimændene ud af Zarahemlas land og havde taget landet i besiddelse.
- 7 Og det skete, at Moroni og Pahoran drog ned til Zarahemlas land med deres hære og drog frem mod byen og mødte Pakus' mænd, således at det kom til kamp mellem dem.
- 8 Og se, Pakus blev slået ihjel, og hans mænd blev taget til fange, og Pahoran blev genindsat i sit dommersæde.
- 9 Og Pakus' mænd fik deres rettergang i henhold til loven, og også de kongemænd, der var blevet pågrebet og kastet i fængsel; og de blev henrettet i henhold til loven, ja, hver den af Pakus' mænd og af kongemændene, som ikke ville gribe til våben til forsvar for landet, men ville kæmpe mod det, blev sendt i døden.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

10 Og således blev det nødvendigt, at denne lov skulle iagttages nøje af hensyn til landets sikkerhed; ja, og hver den, der nægtede at bevare deres frihed, blev hastigt henrettet i henhold til loven.

11 Og således endte det tredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk; Moroni og Pahoran havde genoprettet freden i Zarahemlas land blandt deres eget folk, idet de havde straffet alle dem, som ikke var tro mod frihedens sag, med døden.

12 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det enogtredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at Moroni straks foranledigede, at der skulle sendes forsyninger, og også at der skulle sendes en hær på seks tusinde mand til Helaman til at hjælpe ham med at holde den del af landet.

13 Og han foranledigede også, at der skulle sendes en hær på seks tusinde mand med en tilstrækkelig mængde mad til Lehis og Teankums hære. Og det skete, at dette blev gjort for at befæste landet mod lamanitterne.

14 Og det skete, at Moroni og Pahoran, der efterlod et stort antal mænd i Zarahemlas land, begyndte deres march mod Nefihas land med et stort antal mænd, fast besluttede på at overmande lamanitterne i den by.

15 Og det skete, at mens de marcherede mod dette land, overmandede de et stort antal af lamanitternes mænd og slog mange af dem ihjel og tog deres forsyninger og deres krigsvåben.

16 Og det skete, efter at de havde overmandet dem, at de fik de dem til at indgå en pagt om, at de ikke mere ville gribe til deres krigsvåben mod nefitterne.

17 Og da de havde indgået denne pagt, sendte de dem hen for at bo blandt Ammons folk; og i antal var de omtrent fire tusinde, som ikke var blevet slået ihjel.

18 Og det skete, at da de havde sendt dem bort, fortsatte de deres march mod Nefihas land. Og det skete, at da de kom til byen Nefiha, slog de deres telte op på Nefihas sletter, som ligger i nærheden af byen Nefiha.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

19 Se, Moroni nærde ønske om, at lamanitterne skulle komme ud for at kæmpe mod dem på sletterne, men lamanitterne, der kendte til deres overordentlig store mod, og som så det store antal af dem, turde derfor ikke at komme ud mod dem, derfor kom de ikke ud for at kæmpe den dag.

20 Og da natten kom, gik Moroni ud i nattens mørke og klatrede op på toppen af muren for at udspionere, i hvilken del af byen lamanitterne lå lejret med deres hær.

21 Og det skete, at de lå mod øst ved indgangen; og de sov alle. Og se, Moroni vendte tilbage til sin hær og foranledigede, at de i hast skulle gøre stærke reb og stiger klar, som kunne fires ned fra toppen af muren på den indvendige side af muren.

22 Og det skete, at Moroni foranledigede, at hans mænd skulle marchere frem og klatre op på toppen af muren og fire sig ned i den del af byen, ja, mod vest, hvor lamanitterne ikke lå lejret med deres hære.

23 Og det skete, at de alle blev firet ned i byen om natten ved hjælp af deres stærke reb og deres stiger; da morgenen kom, var de således alle indenfor byens mure.

24 Og se, da lamanitterne vågnede og så, at Moronis hære var indenfor murene, blev de overordentlig rædselsslagne i en sådan grad, at de flygtede ud ad passagen.

25 Og se, da Moroni så, at de flygtede for ham, foranledigede han, at hans mænd skulle marchere frem mod dem, og slog mange ihjel og omringede mange andre og tog dem til fange; og resten af dem flygtede ind i Moronis land, som lå i grænseegnene ved kysten.

26 Således havde Moroni og Pahoran sat sig i besiddelse af byen Nefiha uden tab af en eneste sjæl; og der var mange af lamanitterne, der blev slået ihjel.

27 Se, det skete, at mange af de lamanitter, der var fanger, nærde ønske om at slutte sig til Ammons folk og blive et frit folk.

28 Og det skete, at så mange, som nærde ønske derom, de fik efter deres ønske.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

29 Derfor sluttede alle de lamanitiske fanger sig til Ammons folk og begyndte at arbejde overordentlig flittigt med at dyrke jorden, avle al slags korn samt opdrætte flokke og hjerde af enhver art; og således blev nefitterne befriet for en stor byrde, ja, således at de blev befriet for alle de tilfangetagne lamanitter.

30 Se, det skete, at Moroni, efter at han havde sat sig i besiddelse af byen Nefiha og havde taget mange fanger, hvilket formindskede lamaniternes hære overordentlig meget, og havde befriet mange af de nefitter, der var blevet taget til fange, hvilket styrkede Moronis hær overordentlig meget, Moroni drog derfor af sted fra Nefhis land til Lehis land.

31 Og det skete, at da lamanitterne så, at Moroni var på vej imod dem, blev de igen rædselsslagne og flygtede for Moronis hær.

32 Og det skete, at Moroni og hans hær forfulgte dem fra by til by, indtil de blev mødt af Lehi og Teankum, og lamanitterne flygtede for Lehi og Teankum helt ned til grænseegnene ved kysten, indtil de kom til Moronis land.

33 Og alle lamaniternes hære var samlet, således at de alle udgjorde én hær i Moronis land. Se, Ammoron, lamaniternes konge, var også med dem.

34 Og det skete, at Moroni og Lehi og Teankum slog lejr med deres hære rundt omkring på grænsen til Moronis land, således at lamanitterne var omringet i grænseegnene ved ødemarken mod syd og i grænseegnene ved ødemarken mod øst.

35 Og således slog de lejr for natten. For se, nefitterne og også lamanitterne var udmattede på grund af den anstrengende march, derfor udtænkte de ikke nogen list til om natten, bortset fra Teankum, for han var overordentlig vred på Ammoron i en sådan grad, at han mente, at Ammoron og Amalickija, hans bror, havde været årsag til denne store og vedvarende krig mellem dem og lamanitterne, hvilket havde været årsag til så megen krig og blodsudgydelse, ja, og så stor hungersnød.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephahah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephahah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

36 Og det skete, at Teankum i sin vrede gik ind i lamanitternes lejr og firede sig ned over byens mure. Og han gik fra sted til sted med et reb, således at han til sidst fandt kongen, og han kastede et kastespyd mod ham, som gennemborede ham nær hjertet. Men se, kongen vækkede sine tjenere, før han døde, således at de forfulgte Teankum og slog ham ihjel.

37 Se, det skete, at da Lehi og Moroni erfarede, at Teankum var død, blev de overordentlig sorgfulde, for se, han var en mand, der havde kæmpet tappert for sit land, ja, en sand ven af friheden, og han havde lidt mange overordentlig svære trængsler. Men se, han var død og var gået al kødets gang.

38 Se, det skete, at Moroni den næste dag marcherede frem og faldt over lamanitterne, således at han slog dem ihjel under en stor nedslagtning; og de drev dem ud af landet, og de flygtede, ja, så de ikke på dette tidspunkt vendte om mod nefitterne.

39 Og således endte det enogtredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk; og således havde de haft krige og blodsudgydelser og hungersnød og trængsel i et tidsrum af mange år.

40 Og der havde været mord og stridigheder og opsplitninger og al slags ugudelighed blandt Nefis folk; alligevel blev de skånet for de retfærdiges skyld, ja, på grund af de retfærdiges bønner blev de skånet.

41 Men se, på grund af den overordentlig store længde på krigen mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne var mange blevet forhærdede på grund af krigens overordentlig store længde; og mange var på grund af deres trængsler blevet blødgjort i en sådan grad, at de ydmygede sig for Gud, endog i ydmyghedens dyb.

42 Og det skete, at efter at Moroni havde befæstet de dele af landet, som var mest udsat for lamanitterne, indtil de var tilstrækkeligt stærke, vendte han tilbage til byen Zarahemla; og også Helaman vendte tilbage til sin arvelod; og der var endnu engang skabt fred blandt Nefis folk.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

43 Og Moroni overlod kommandoen over sine hære i hænderne på sin søn, hvis navn var Moroniha, og han trak sig tilbage til sit hus, så han kunne tilbringe resten af sine dage i fred.

44 Og Pahoran vendte tilbage til dommersædet; og Helaman påtog sig igen at prædike Guds ord for folket, for på grund af de mange krige og stridigheder var det blevet nødvendigt, at der igen skulle foretages en regulering i kirken.

45 Derfor gik Helaman og hans brødre ud og kundgjorde Guds ord med megen kraft til overbevisning af mange folk om deres ugudelighed, hvilket fik dem til at omvende sig fra deres synder og blive døbt til Herren deres Gud.

46 Og det skete, at de igen etablerede Guds kirke overalt i hele landet.

47 Ja, og der blev fastsat bestemmelser henhørende til loven. Og deres dommere og deres overdommere blev valgt.

48 Og Nefis folk begyndte igen at have fremgang i landet og begyndte igen at mangfoldiggøre sig og at vokse sig overordentlig stærke i landet. Og de begyndte at blive overordentlig rige.

49 Men til trods for deres rigdom eller deres styrke eller deres velstand var de ikke indbildske i deres øjnes stolthed, ej heller var de langsomme til at huske Herren deres Gud, men de ydmygede sig overordentligt for ham.

50 Ja, de huskede, hvor store ting Herren havde gjort for dem, at han havde udfriet dem fra død og fra bånd og fra fængsler og fra alle slags trængsler, og han havde udfriet dem af deres fjenders hænder.

51 Og de bad bestandig til Herren deres Gud, således at Herren velsignede dem i overensstemmelse med sit ord, så de voksede sig stærke og havde fremgang i landet.

52 Og det skete, at alt dette blev gjort. Og Helaman døde i det femogtredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Almas Bog 63

- 1 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det seksogtredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at Shibløn tog de hellige ting, som af Alma var blevet overdraget til Helaman, i besiddelse.
- 2 Han var en retfærdig mand, og han vandrede retsindigt for Gud, og han bestræbte sig på bestandigt at gøre godt og at holde Herren sin Guds befalinger; og ligeså gjorde hans bror.
- 3 Og det skete, at Moroni også døde. Og således endte det seksogtredivte år af dommernes regeringstid.
- 4 Og det skete i det syvogtredivte år af dommernes regeringstid, at der var en stor gruppe mennesker, som talte fem tusinde og fire hundrede mænd med deres hustruer og deres børn, som drog ud af Zarahemlas land ind i det land, der lå mod nord.
- 5 Og det skete, at Hagot, der var en meget videbegærlig mand, han gik derfor i gang og byggede sig et overordentlig stort skib i grænseegnene af landet Overflod mod landet Ødelæggelse, og han satte det i vandet i det vestlige hav ved den smalle tange, som førte ind i landet mod nord.
- 6 Og se, der var mange af nefitterne, som gik derind og sejlede af sted med megen proviant, og også mange kvinder og børn; og de sejlede mod nord. Og således endte det syvogtredivte år.
- 7 Og i det otteogtredivte år byggede denne mand andre skibe. Og det første skib kom også tilbage, og mange flere folk gik ind i det, og de tog også megen proviant med og sejlede igen ud mod landet mod nord.
- 8 Og det skete, at man aldrig siden hørte noget til dem. Og vi formoder, at de er druknet i havets dyb. Og det skete, at endnu et skib også sejlede af sted, og hvor hun sejlede hen, ved vi ikke.
- 9 Og det skete, at der i det år var mange folk, som drog ind i landet mod nord. Og således endte det otteogtredivte år.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shibløn took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

- 10 Og det skete i det ni og tredivte år af dommernes regeringstid, at Shibløn også døde, og Corianton var draget bort til landet mod nord i et skib for at bringe forsyninger til de folk, der var draget bort til dette land.
- 11 Derfor blev det nødvendigt for Shibløn før sin død at overdrage de hellige ting til Helamans søn, som hed Helaman, idet han blev kaldt efter sin fars navn.
- 12 Se nu, alle de indgraveringer, der var i Helamans besiddelse, blev skrevet af og sendt ud til menneskenes børn over hele landet, med undtagelse af de dele, som Alma havde befalet ikke skulle komme frem.
- 13 Alligevel skulle disse ting holdes hellige og overdrages fra den ene slægt til den anden; derfor var de i dette år blevet overdraget til Helaman før Shibløns død.
- 14 Og det skete også i dette år, at der var nogle, som havde skilt sig ud, som var gået over til lamanitterne, og de blev igen ophidset til vrede mod nefitterne.
- 15 Og også i det selv samme år kom de ned med en talrig hær for at føre krig mod Moronihass folk, eller mod Moronihass hær, i hvilket forehavende de blev slået og drevet tilbage igen til deres egne lande, idet de led store tab.
- 16 Og således endte det niogtredivte år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 17 Og således endte beretningen om Alma og hans søn Helaman og også Shibløn, som var hans søn.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shibløn died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shibløn to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shibløn.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shibløn, who was his son.

Helamans Bog

En beretning om nefitterne. Deres krige og stridigheder og deres kiv. Og også mange hellige profeters profetier før Kristi komme, ifølge Helamans optegnelser, han som var Helamans søn, og også ifølge hans sønners optegnelser, helt op til Kristi komme. Og også mange aflamanitterne bliver omvendt. En beretning om deres omvendelse. En beretning om lamaniternes retfærdighed og nefitternes ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder ifølge Helamans og hans sønners optegnelse, helt op til Kristi komme, hvilken optegnelse kaldes Helamans bog, og så videre.

Helamans Bog 1

- 1 Og se nu, det skete i begyndelsen af det fyrretyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, at der opstod en alvorlig vanskelighed blandt det nefitiske folk.
- 2 For se, Pahoran var død og gået al kødets gang; derfor opstod der blandt de brødre, der var Pahorans sønner, en alvorlig strid om, hvem der skulle have dommersædet.
- 3 Se, dette er navnene på dem, der stredes om dommersædet, og som også fik folket til at strides: Pahoran, Pa'anki og Pakumeni.
- 4 Se, dette er ikke alle Pahorans sønner (for han havde mange), men dette er dem, der stredes om dommersædet; derfor forårsagede de en opdeling af folket i tre grupper.
- 5 Alligevel skete det, at Pahoran ved folkets stemme blev udpeget til at være overdommer og regent over Nefis folk.
- 6 Og det skete, at Pakumeni, da han så, at han ikke kunne få dommersædet, accepterede folkets stemme.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

7 Men se, Pa'anki og den del af folket, der nærede ønske om, at han skulle være deres regent, blev overordentlig vrede; derfor stod han i begreb med ved smiger at få disse mennesker til at rejse sig i oprør mod deres brødre.

8 Og det skete, da han skulle til at gøre dette, se, da blev han pågrebet og blev prøvet i overensstemmelse med folkets stemme og dømt til døden, for han havde rejst sig i oprør og forsøgt at tilintetgøre folkets frihed.

9 Se, da de mennesker, der nærede ønske om, at han skulle være deres regent, så, at han blev dømt til døden, blev de vrede; og se, de sendte en vis Kishkumen af sted, ja, til Pahorans dommersæde og myrdede Pahoran, mens han sad på dommersædet.

10 Og han blev forfulgt af Pahorans tjenere; men se, så hastig var Kishkumens flugt, at ingen kunne indhente ham.

11 Og han gik til dem, der havde sendt ham, og de indgik alle en pagt, ja, svor ved deres evige skaber, at de ikke ville fortælle nogen, at Kishkumen havde myrdet Pahoran.

12 Derfor blev Kishkumen ikke kendt blandt Nefis folk, for han var i forklædning på det tidspunkt, da han myrdede Pahoran. Og Kishkumen og hans bande, som havde sluttet pagt med ham, blandede sig med folket på en sådan måde, at de ikke alle kunne findes; men så mange, som blev fundet, blev dømt til døden.

13 Og se nu, Pakumeni blev i overensstemmelse med folkets stemme udpeget til at være overdommer og regent over folket til at regere i sin bror Pahorans sted, og det var i overensstemmelse med hans ret. Og alt dette blev gjort i det fyrretyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, og det fik en ende.

14 Og det skete i det enogfyrretyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at lamanitterne havde samlet en utællelig hær af mænd og bevæbnet dem med sværd og med sabler og med buer og med pile og med hjelme og med brynjer og med alle slags skjolde af enhver art.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breast-plates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 Og de kom igen ned, så de kunne føre krig mod nefitterne. Og de blev anført af en mand, hvis navn var Coriantumr; og han var efterkommer af Zarahemla; og han var en, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne; og han var en stor og en mægtig mand.

16 Derfor antog lamaniternes konge, hvis navn var Tubalot, og som var Ammorons søn, at Coriantumr, der var en mægtig mand, kunne stå sig imod nefitterne med sin styrke og også med sin store visdom, således at han ved at sende ham ud ville få magt over nefitterne –

17 derfor ophidsede han dem til vrede, og han samlede sine hære, og han udpegede Coriantumr til at være leder for dem, og han foranledigede, at de skulle marchere ned til Zarahemlas land for at kæmpe mod nefitterne.

18 Og det skete, at de på grund af den megen strid og de store vanskeligheder i regeringen ikke havde sat tilstrækkelig med vagter i Zarahemlas land, for de havde ment, at lamanitterne ikke turde komme ind i hjertet af deres lande for at angribe den store by Zarahemla.

19 Men det skete, at Coriantumr marcherede frem i spidsen for sin talrige skare og faldt over byens indbyggere, og deres march foregik med en så overordentlig stor fart, at der ingen tid var for nefitterne til at samle deres hære.

20 Derfor huggede Coriantumr vagtposterne ned ved indgangen til byen og marcherede med hele sin hær ind i byen, og de slog enhver ihjel, som satte sig til modværge mod dem, således at de tog hele byen i besiddelse.

21 Og det skete, at Pakumeni, som var overdommer, flygtede for Coriantumr lige til byens mure. Og det skete, at Coriantumr huggede ham ned, mens han stod ved muren, så han døde. Og således endte Pakumeni sine dage.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

- 22 Og se, da Coriantumr så, at han var i besiddelse af byen Zarahemla og så, at nefitterne var flygtet for dem og var blevet slået ihjel og var blevet pågrebet og var blevet kastet i fængsel, og at han havde sat sig i besiddelse af den stærkeste fæstning i hele landet, fattede hans hjerte mod, således at han stod i begreb med at drage ud mod hele landet.
- 23 Og se, han forblev ikke i Zarahemlas land, men med en stor hær marcherede han frem, ja, mod byen Overflod, for det var hans agt at drage frem og hugge sig vej med sværdet, så han kunne indtage de nordlige dele af landet.
- 24 Og da han mente, at deres største styrke var midt i landet, marcherede han derfor frem, idet han ikke gav dem tid til at samle sig andet end i små grupper; og på denne måde faldt de over dem og huggede dem til jorden.
- 25 Men se, Coriantumrs march gennem landets midte gav Moroniha stor fordel over dem til trods for det store antal nefitter, der blev slået ihjel.
- 26 For se, Moroniha havde ment, at lamanitterne ikke turde komme ind i midten af landet, men at de ville angribe byerne rundt omkring i grænseegnene, sådan som de hidtil havde gjort; derfor havde Moroniha foranlediget, at deres stærke hære skulle holde disse områder rundt omkring ved grænseegnene.
- 27 Men se, lamanitterne var ikke bange, sådan som han havde ønsket, men de var kommet ind i midten af landet og havde indtaget hovedstaden, som var byen Zarahemla, og drog gennem de vigtigste dele af landet, idet de slog folket ihjel under en stor nedslagtning, både mænd, kvinder og børn og tog mange byer og støttepunkter i besiddelse.
- 28 Men da Moroniha havde opdaget dette, sendte han straks Lehi af sted med en hær uden om for at afskære dem, før de kom til landet Overflod.
- 29 Og dette gjorde han; og han afskar dem, før de kom til landet Overflod, og udkæmpede et slag mod dem, således at de begyndte at trække sig tilbage mod Zarahemlas land.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

- 30 Og det skete, at Moroniha afskar dem på deres tilba-
getog og udkæmpede et slag mod dem af en sådan stør-
relse, at det blev et overordentlig blodigt slag; ja, mange
blev slået ihjel, og blandt dem, der blev slået ihjel, var
også Coriantumr.
- 31 Og se nu, lamanitterne kunne ikke trække sig tilbage
i nogen retning, hverken mod nord eller mod syd eller
mod øst eller mod vest, for de var omringet på alle sider
af nefitterne.
- 32 Og således havde Coriantumr kastet lamanitterne
ind midt blandt nefitterne, således at de var i nefitternes
magt, og han selv var blevet slået ihjel, og lamanitterne
overgav sig i nefitternes hænder.
- 33 Og det skete, at Moroniha igen tog byen Zarahemla i
besiddelse og foranledigede, at de lamanitter, der var
blevet taget til fange, skulle drage ud af landet i fred.
- 34 Og således endte det enogfyrretyvende år af dommer-
nes regeringstid.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them
in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, inso-
much that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea,
many were slain, and among the number who were slain
Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat ei-
ther way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on
the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on
every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites
into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they
were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was
slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the
hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession
of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the
Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart
out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of
the judges.

Helamans Bog 2

- 1 Og det skete i det toogfyrretyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, efter at Moronihah igen havde stiftet fred mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne, se, at der ingen var til at udfylde dommersædet, derfor opstod der igen en strid blandt folket om, hvem der skulle udfylde dommersædet.
- 2 Og det skete, at Helaman, der var Helamans søn, ved folkets stemme blev udpeget til at udfylde dommersædet.
- 3 Men se, Kishkumen, som havde myrdet Pahoran, lå på lur for også at slå Helaman ihjel; og han blev støttet af sin bande, som havde indgået en pagt om, at ingen skulle kende til hans ugudelighed.
- 4 For der var en vis Gadianton, som var overordentlig dygtig til at bruge mange ord og også til sin beskæftigelse, at udføre det hemmelige værk af mord og røveri, derfor blev han leder af Kishkumens bande.
- 5 Derfor smigrede han dem og også Kishkumen med, at hvis de ville indsætte ham i dommersædet, ville han tilstede dem, der tilhørte hans bande, at de blev indsat til at have magt og myndighed over folket; derfor forsøgte Kishkumen at slå Helaman ihjel.
- 6 Og det skete, mens han var på vej til dommersædet for at slå Helaman ihjel, se, en af Helamans tjenere havde været ude om natten og havde ved at forklæde sig fået kendskab til de planer, der var blevet lagt af denne bande om at slå Helaman ihjel –
- 7 og det skete, at han mødte Kishkumen, og han gav ham et tegn; derfor gjorde Kishkumen ham bekendt med målet for sit ønske og ønskede af ham, at han ville føre ham til dommersædet, så han kunne myrde Helaman.
- 8 Og da Helamans tjener var blevet bekendt med hele Kishkumens hjerte, og hvordan at det var hans mål at myrde, og at det også var målet for alle dem, der tilhørte hans bande, at myrde og at røve og at vinde magt (og dette var deres hemmelige plan og deres sammensværgelse), sagde Helamans tjener til Kishkumen: Lad os gå hen til dommersædet.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

9 Se, dette behagede Kishkumen overordentlig meget, for han antog, at han kunne gennemføre sin plan; men se, mens de var på vej hen til dommersædet, stak Helamans tjener Kishkumen lige i hjertet, så han faldt død om uden et suk. Og han løb hen og fortalte Helaman alt det, som han havde set og hørt og gjort.

10 Og det skete, at Helaman sendte folk ud for at pågribe denne bande af røvere og hemmelige mordere, så de kunne blive henrettet i henhold til loven.

11 Men se, da Gadianton fandt ud af, at Kishkumen ikke vendte tilbage, frygtede han, at han skulle blive slået ihjel, derfor foranledigede han, at hans bande skulle følge ham. Og de tog deres flugt ud af landet og ud i ødemarken ad en hemmelig vej, og da Helaman sendte folk ud for at pågribe dem, var de således ikke nogen steder at finde.

12 Og mere om denne Gadianton skal der siges siden hen. Og således endte det toogfyrretyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

13 Og se, i slutningen af denne bog vil I se, at denne Gadianton blev årsag til Nefis folks fald, ja, til deres næsten fuldstændige udryddelse.

14 Se, jeg mener ikke slutningen af Helamans bog, men jeg mener slutningen af Nefis bog, hvorfra jeg har taget hele den beretning, som jeg har skrevet.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Helamans Bog 3

- 1 Og se, det skete i det treogfyrretyvende år af dommer-
nes regeringstid, at der ingen strid var blandt Nefis folk
bortset fra lidt stolthed, der var i kirken, hvad der forår-
sagede lidt kiv blandt folket, hvilke anliggender blev af-
gjort i slutningen af det treogfyrretyvende år.
- 2 Og der var ingen strid blandt folket i det fireogfyrre-
tyvende år, ej heller var der megen strid i det femogfyr-
retyvende år.
- 3 Og det skete i det seksogfyrretyvende, ja, at der var
megen strid og mange, som skilte sig ud, således at over-
ordentlig mange rejste ud af Zarahemlas land og drog
op til landet mod nord for at arve det.
- 4 Og de rejste et så overordentlig langt stykke vej, at de
kom til store søer og mange floder.
- 5 Ja, og de spredte sig endog ud over alle dele af landet
ind i enhver del, som ikke var blevet efterladt øde og
uden tømmer på grund af de mange indbyggere, som
før havde arvet landet.
- 6 Og se, ingen del af landet var øde, undtagen hvad an-
går tømmer; men på grund af omfanget af ødelæggelsen
af det folk, der før havde beboet landet, blev det kaldt
for øde.
- 7 Og da der kun var lidt tømmer på landets overflade,
blev de folk, der drog ud, derfor overordentlig dygtige
til at arbejde med cement; derfor byggede de huse af ce-
ment, som de boede i.
- 8 Og det skete, at de mangfoldiggjorde sig og spredte
sig og drog ud fra landet mod syd til landet mod nord og
spredte sig i en sådan grad, at de begyndte at dække hele
jordens overflade fra havet mod syd til havet mod nord,
fra havet mod vest til havet mod øst.
- 9 Og de folk, der var i landet mod nord, boede i telte og
i huse af cement; og de lod ethvert træ, der spirede frem
af jordens overflade, vokse op, så de med tiden kunne få
tømmer til at bygge deres huse af, ja, deres byer og deres
templer og deres synagoger og deres helligdomme og al-
le slags bygninger.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of
the reign of the judges, there was no contention among
the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was
in the church, which did cause some little dissensions
among the people, which affairs were settled in the end-
ing of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in
the forty and fourth year; neither was there much con-
tention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there
was much contention and many dissensions; in the
which there were an exceedingly great many who de-
parted out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth
unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance,
insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and
many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of
the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered
desolate and without timber, because of the many in-
habitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it
were for timber; but because of the greatness of the de-
struction of the people who had before inhabited the
land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the
land, nevertheless the people who went forth became
exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore
they did build houses of cement, in the which they did
dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and
spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the
land northward, and did spread insomuch that they be-
gan to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea
south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

And the people who were in the land northward did
dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did
suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of
the land that it should grow up, that in time they might
have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and
their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuar-
ies, and all manner of their buildings.

10 Og det skete, at da tømmer kun fandtes overordentlig sparsomt i landet mod nord, sendte de meget derop ved hjælp af skibsfart.

11 Og således satte de folk i landet mod nord i stand til at bygge mange byer, både af træ og af cement.

12 Og det skete, at der var mange af Ammons folk, der var lamanitter af fødsel, som også drog af sted ind i dette land.

13 Og se, der er blandt mange af dette folk ført mange optegnelser om dette folks virke, og disse optegnelser om dem er detaljerede og meget omfattende.

14 Men se, ikke en hundrededel af dette folks virke, ja, beretningen om lamanitterne og om nefitterne og deres krige og stridigheder og kiv og deres forkyndelse og deres profetier og deres skibsfart og deres bygning af skibe og deres bygning af templer og af synagoger og deres helligdomme og deres retfærdighed og deres ugudelighed og deres mord og deres røverier og deres plyndringer og alle slags vederstyggeligheder og utugtigheder kan rummes i dette værk.

15 Men se, der er mange bøger og mange optegnelser af enhver art, og de er hovedsagelig blevet ført af nefitterne.

16 Og de er blevet overdraget fra den ene slægt til den næste af nefitterne, lige indtil de er faldet i overtrædelse og er blevet myrdet, udplyndret og jaget og fordrevet og slået ihjel og spredt over jordens overflade og blandet med lamanitterne, indtil de ikke mere kaldes nefitter, eftersom de er blevet ugudelige og vilde og grusomme, ja, selv er blevet lamanitter.

17 Og nu vender jeg igen tilbage til min beretning; altså, det, som jeg har omtalt, skete, efter at der havde været store stridigheder og uroligheder og krige og kiv blandt Nefis folk.

18 Og det seksogfyrretyvende år af dommernes regeringstid endte;

19 og det skete, at der stadig var stor strid i landet, ja, selv i det syvogfyrretyvende år og også i det otteogfyrretyvende år.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

20 Alligevel udfyldte Helaman dommersædet i retfærdighed og upartiskhed; ja, han bestræbte sig på at holde Guds lovbud og retsregler og befalinger; og han gjorde bestandig det, der var ret i Guds øjne; og han vandrede på sin fars veje, således at han havde fremgang i landet.

21 Og det skete, at han fik to sønner. Han gav den ældste navnet Nephi og den yngste navnet Lehi. Og de begyndte at vokse op for Herren.

22 Og det skete, at krigene og stridighederne i et begrænset omfang begyndte at høre op blandt det nefitiske folk i slutningen af det otteogfyrretyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

23 Og det skete i det niogfyrretyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at der blev skabt vedvarende fred i landet lige bortset fra de hemmelige sammensværgelser, som røveren Gadianton havde stiftet i de mere befolkede dele af landet, hvilket på det tidspunkt ikke var kendt af dem, der stod i spidsen for regeringen; derfor blev de ikke udryddet af landet.

24 Og det skete i det selv samme år, at der var overordentlig stor fremgang i kirken, således at der var tusinder, der sluttede sig til kirken og blev døbt til omvendelse.

25 Og så stor var fremgangen i kirken, og så mange var de velsignelser, der blev udøst over folket, at endog højpræsterne og lærerne selv var overmåde forbavsede.

26 Og det skete, at Herrens værk havde fremgang, så der blev døbt og føjet mange sjæle til Guds kirke, ja, endog titusinder.

27 Således kan vi se, at Herren er barmhjertig mod alle, som i hjertets oprigtighed vil påkalde hans hellige navn.

28 Ja, således ser vi, at himlens port er åben for alle, nemlig for dem, der vil tro på Jesu Kristi navn, han, som er Guds Søn.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

29 Ja, vi ser, at hver den, der vil, kan gribe fat i Guds ord, som er levende og virksomt, som skal sønderdele al Djævelens snedighed og alle hans snarer og rænker og lede Kristi menneske ad en snæver og trang vej over den evigtvarende elendigheds kløft, som er beredt til at opsluge de ugudelige –

30 og anbringe deres sjæl, ja, deres udødelige sjæl ved Guds højre hånd i Himmeriget, så de kan sætte sig sammen med Abraham og Isak og med Jakob og med alle vore hellige fædre og ikke mere gå ud derfra.

31 Og i det år var der vedvarende glæde i Zarahemlas land og i alle egnene rundt omkring, ja, i hele det land, som nefitterne besad.

32 Og det skete, at der var fred og overordentlig stor glæde i resten af det niogfyrretyvende år; ja, og der var også vedvarende fred og stor glæde i det halvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid.

33 Og i det enoghalvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid var der også fred bortset fra den stolthed, som begyndte at komme ind i kirken – ikke ind i Guds kirke, men ind i hjertet på de folk, der foregav at tilhøre Guds kirke –

34 og de blev indbildske i stolthed, så de endog forfulgte mange af deres brødre. Se, dette var et stort onde, som fik den mere ydmyge del af folket til at lide store forfølgelser og til at vade gennem megen trængsel.

35 Alligevel fastede og bad de ofte og voksede sig stærkere og stærkere i deres ydmyghed og fastere og fastere i troen på Kristus, indtil deres sjæl blev fyldt af glæde og fortrøstning, ja, indtil deres hjerte blev rensed og helliggjort, hvilken helliggørelse finder sted som følge af, at de giver deres hjerte hen til Gud.

36 Og det skete, at det tooghalvtredsindstyvende år også endte i fred bortset fra den overordentlig store stolthed, der var kommet ind i folkets hjerte, og det var på grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme og deres velstand i landet; og den voksede i dem fra dag til dag.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

37 Og det skete i det treoghalvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at Helaman døde, og hans ældste søn Nephi begyndte at regere i hans sted. Og det skete, at han udfyldte dommersædet i retfærdighed og upartiskhed, ja, han holdt Guds befalinger og vandrede på sin fars veje.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Helamans Bog 4

- 1 Og det skete i det fireoghalvtredsindstyvende år, at der var megen kiv i kirken, og der var også strid blandt folket i en sådan grad, at der fandt megen blodsudgydelse sted.
- 2 Og den oprørske del blev slået ihjel og drevet ud af landet, og de drog over til lamaniternes konge.
- 3 Og det skete, at de anstrengte sig for at ophidse lamanitterne til krig mod nefitterne; men se, lamanitterne var overordentlig bange, således at de ikke ville lytte til ordene fra dem, der havde skilt sig ud.
- 4 Men det skete i det seksoghalvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at der var nogle, der havde skilt sig ud, og som drog op fra nefitterne til lamanitterne; og det lykkedes dem sammen med de andre at ophidse dem til vrede mod nefitterne; og de beredte sig alle til krig det år.
- 5 Og i det syvoghalvtredsindstyvende år kom de ned mod nefitterne for at kæmpe, og de begyndte dødens værk, ja, således at det i det otteoghalvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid lykkedes dem at sætte sig i besiddelse af Zarahemlas land, ja, og også alle landene lige til det land, der lå i nærheden af Overflodens land.
- 6 Og nefitterne og Moronihahs hære blev fordrevet, ja, ind i landet Overflod;
- 7 og der forskansede de sig mod lamanitterne fra det vestlige hav til det østlige, hvilket var en dagsrejse for en nefit langs den grænse, som de havde befæstet, og hvor de havde anbragt deres hære for at forsvare det nordlige land.
- 8 Og således havde de, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne, ved hjælp af en talrig hær af lamanitter indtaget al nefitternes besiddelse, som lå i landet mod syd. Og alt dette blev gjort i det otte- og nioghalvtredsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid.
- 9 Og det skete i det tresindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at det lykkedes for Moronihah med sine hære at indtage mange dele af landet; ja, de vandt mange byer tilbage, som var faldet i lamaniternes hænder.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

10 Og det skete i det enogtresindstyvende år af dommer-
nes regeringstid, at det lykkedes for dem at vinde endog
halvdelen af alle deres besiddelser tilbage.

11 Se, nefitternes store tab og den store nedslagtning,
der fandt sted blandt dem, ville ikke have fundet sted,
havde det ikke været for den ugudelighed og den veder-
styggelighed, som var blandt dem, ja, og den var også
blandt dem, der foregav at tilhøre Guds kirke.

12 Og det var på grund af deres hjertes stolthed, på
grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme, ja, det var
på grund af deres undertrykkelse af de fattige, fordi de
tilbageholdt deres mad fra de sultne, tilbageholdt deres
klæder fra de nøgne og slog deres ydmyge brødre på kin-
den, drev spot med det, der var helligt, forkastede profe-
tiens og åbenbarelsens ånd, myrdede, plyndrede, løj,
stjal, begik ægteskabsbrud, ophidsede sig til store stri-
digheder og rømte til lamanitterne i Nefis land –

13 og på grund af denne deres store ugudelighed og de-
res pralen af deres egen styrke, blev de overladt til deres
egen styrke; derfor havde de ingen fremgang, men de
blev plaget og slået og fordrevet af lamanitterne, indtil
de havde mistet besiddelsen af næsten alle deres lande.

14 Men se, Moroniha prædikede meget for folket på
grund af deres ugudelighed, og Nefi og Lehi, som var
Helamans sønner, prædikede også meget for folket, ja,
og profeterede meget for dem angående deres syndig-
hed, og hvad der ville ske med dem, hvis de ikke om-
vendte sig fra deres synder.

15 Og det skete, at de omvendte sig, og for så vidt som de
omvendte sig, begyndte de at have fremgang.

16 For da Moroniha så, at de omvendte sig, vovede han
at føre dem fra sted til sted og fra by til by, indtil de hav-
de vundet halvdelen af deres ejendom og halvdelen af al-
le deres lande tilbage.

17 Og således endte det enogtresindstyvende år af dom-
mernes regeringstid.

18 Og det skete i det toogtresindstyvende år af dommer-
nes regeringstid, at Moroniha ikke kunne vinde flere be-
siddelser fra lamanitterne.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the
reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the
half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great
slaughter which was among them, would not have hap-
pened had it not been for their wickedness and their
abomination which was among them; yea, and it was
among those also who professed to belong to the
church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, be-
cause of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of
their oppression to the poor, withholding their food
from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the
naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the
cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, deny-
ing the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering,
plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising
up in great contentions, and deserting away into the
land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their
boastings in their own strength, they were left in their
own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were
afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites,
until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things
unto the people because of their iniquity, and also
Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did
preach many things unto the people, yea, and did
prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniq-
uities, and what should come unto them if they did not
repent of their sins.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inas-
much as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did
venture to lead them forth from place to place, and
from city to city, even until they had regained the one-
half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of
the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the
reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no
more possessions over the Lamanites.

19 Derfor opgav de deres plan om at indtage resten af deres lande, for så talrige var lamanitterne, at det var umuligt for nefitterne at få mere magt over dem; derfor anvendte Moroniha alle sine hære til at holde de dele af landet, som han havde indtaget.

20 Og det skete, at nefitterne på grund af det store antal lamanitter nærrede stor frygt for, at de skulle blive overvundet og trådt ned og slået ihjel og udryddet.

21 Ja, de begyndte at huske Almas profetier og også Mosijas ord; og de indså, at de havde været et stivnakket folk, og at de havde regnet Guds befalinger for intet,

22 og at de havde ændret Mosijas lov og trådt den eller det, som Herren befalede ham at give til folket, under fode; og de indså, at deres love var blevet forvansket, og at de var blevet et ugudeligt folk i en sådan grad, at de var ugudelige i samme grad som lamanitterne.

23 Og på grund af deres ugudelighed var kirken begyndt at svinde hen; og de begyndte at miste troen på profetiens ånd og åbenbarelsens ånd; og Guds straffedomme stirrede dem i ansigtet.

24 Og de så, at de var blevet svage ligesom deres brødre, lamanitterne, og at Herrens Ånd ikke mere bevarede dem; ja, den havde trukket sig tilbage fra dem, fordi Herrens Ånd ikke bor i vanhellige templer –

25 derfor holdt Herren op med at bevare dem ved sin mirakuløse og uforlignelige kraft, for de var faldet ned i en tilstand af vantro og forfærdelig ugudelighed; og de så, at lamanitterne var overordentlig meget mere talrige end de, og at de, medmindre de ville holde sig til Herren deres Gud, uundgåeligt måtte omkomme.

26 For se, de så, at lamanitternes styrke var lige så stor som deres styrke, ja, mand for mand. Og således var de faldet i denne store overtrædelse, ja, således var de inden for et tidsrum af ikke mange år blevet svage på grund af deres overtrædelse.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Helamans Bog 5

- 1 Og det skete i det selv samme år, se, at Nefi overgav dommersædet til en mand, hvis navn var Cezoram.
- 2 For eftersom deres love og regeringsførelse blev fastlagt ved folkets stemme, og de, som valgte det onde, var mere talrige end de, som valgte det gode, var de derfor ved at blive modne til udryddelse, for lovene var blevet forvansket.
- 3 Ja, og det var ikke alt, de var et stivnakket folk i en sådan grad, at de ikke kunne regeres ved loven eller retfærdighed, uden at det ville føre til deres undergang.
- 4 Og det skete, at Nefi var blevet træt på grund af deres ugudelighed, og han opgav dommersædet og påtog sig at prædike Guds ord resten af sine dage, og det gjorde også hans bror Lehi resten af sine dage.
- 5 For de huskede de ord, som deres far Helaman talte til dem. Og disse er de ord, han talte:
- 6 Se, mine sønner, jeg ønsker af jer, at I skal huske at holde Guds befalinger; og jeg ønsker, at I skal kundgøre disse ord for folket. Se, jeg har givet jer navn efter vore første forældre, som kom ud af Jerusalems land; og dette har jeg gjort, for at I, når I erindrer jeres navne, må erindre dem, og at I, når I erindrer dem, må erindre deres gerninger, og at I, når I erindrer deres gerninger, må vide, hvordan det er sagt og også skrevet, at de var gode.
- 7 Derfor ønsker jeg, mine sønner, at I skal gøre det, der er godt, så der må blive sagt om jer og også skrevet, ligesom der er blevet sagt og skrevet om dem.
- 8 Og se, mine sønner, se, jeg har noget mere at ønske af jer, hvilket ønske er, at I ikke skal gøre dette, for at I kan prale, men at I skal gøre dette for at samle jer en skat i himlen, ja, én som er evig, og som ikke svinder bort, ja, så I må få den dyrebare gave, som evigt liv er, og som vi har grund til at tro er blevet givet vore fædre.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

9 O husk, husk, mine sønner, de ord, som kong Benjamin talte til sit folk; ja, husk, at der ikke findes nogen anden vej eller noget andet middel, hvorved mennesket kan blive frelst end ved Jesu Kristi forsonende blod, han, der skal komme; ja, husk, at han kommer for at forløse verden.

10 Og husk også de ord, som Amulek talte til Ze'ezrom i byen Ammonihah, for han sagde til ham, at Herren visse- lig skulle komme for at forløse sit folk, men at han ikke skulle komme for at forløse dem i deres synder, men for at forløse dem fra deres synder.

11 Og han er blevet givet magt fra Faderen til at forløse dem fra deres synder på grund af omvendelse, derfor har han sendt sine engle ud for at kundgøre tidenderne om betingelserne for den omvendelse, der bringer menne- sker til Forløserens kraft, til deres sjæls frelse.

12 Og se, mine sønner, husk, husk, at det er på klippen, vor forløser, som er Kristus, Guds Søn, at I skal bygge jer- res grundvold, så når Djævelen udsender sine mægtige vinde, ja, sine pile i hvirvelvinden, ja, når alle hans hagl og hans mægtige uvejr skal ramme jer, at det ingen magt skal få over jer til at drage jer ned i elendighedens og den uendelige jammers kløft på grund af den klippe, som I er bygget på, som er en sikker grundvold, en grundvold, hvorpå menneskene, hvis de bygger derpå, ikke kan fal- de.

13 Og det skete, at dette var de ord, som Helaman lærte sine sønner; ja, han lærte dem meget, som ikke er skre- vet, og også meget som er skrevet.

14 Og de huskede hans ord, og derfor gik de ud, idet de holdt Guds befalinger, for at undervise i Guds ord blandt hele Nefis folk, begyndende i byen Overflod,

15 og derfra til byen Gid, og fra byen Gid til byen Mulek,

16 ja, fra den ene by til den anden, indtil de havde været ude hos hele Nefis folk, som var i landet mod syd, og derfra ind i Zarahemlas land blandt lamanitterne.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

17 Og det skete, at de prædikede med stor kraft, således at de beskæmmede mange af dem, der havde skilt sig ud, og som var gået over fra nefitterne, således at de kom frem og bekendte deres synder og blev døbt til omvendelse og straks vendte tilbage til nefitterne for at forsøge at gøre den uret, som de havde begået, god igen.

18 Og det skete, at Nephi og Lehi prædikede for lamanitterne med så stor magt og myndighed, for de var blevet givet magt og myndighed, så de kunne tale, og det blev også givet dem, hvad de skulle sige –

19 derfor talte de til lamanitternes store forbavselse, så de blev overbevist, således at otte tusinde af de lamanitter, som var i Zarahemlas land og rundt omkring, blev døbt til omvendelse og blev overbevist om ugudeligheden af deres fædres overleveringer.

20 Og det skete, at Nephi og Lehi fortsatte derfra til Nefis land.

21 Og det skete, at de blev pågrebet af en af lamanitternes hære og kastet i fængsel; ja, i det selv samme fængsel, hvori Ammon og hans brødre blev kastet af Limhis tjenere.

22 Og efter at de havde været fængslet i mange dage uden at få mad, se, da gik de ind i fængslet for at hente dem, så de kunne slå dem ihjel.

23 Og det skete, at Nephi og Lehi blev omgivet som af ild, således at de ikke turde lægge hånd på dem af frygt for, at de skulle blive forbrændt. Alligevel blev Nephi og Lehi ikke forbrændt; og det var, som stod de midt i ilden uden at blive forbrændt.

24 Og da de så, at de var omgivet af en ildsøjle, og at den ikke brændte dem, fattede deres hjerte mod.

25 For de så, at lamanitterne ikke turde lægge hånd på dem, ej heller turde de komme i nærheden af dem, men stod, som om de var blevet stumme af forbløffelse.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

26 Og det skete, at Nephi og Lehi trådte frem og begyndte at tale til dem og sagde: Frygt ikke, for se, det er Gud, der har vist jer denne forunderlige foreteelse, hvorved det er blevet vist jer, at I ikke kan lægge hånd på os for at slå os ihjel.

27 Og se, da de havde sagt disse ord, rystede jorden overordentlig kraftigt, og fængslets mure rystede, som var de ved at styrte til jorden, men se, de faldt ikke. Og se, de, der var i fængslet, var lamanitter og nefitter, som havde skilt sig ud.

28 Og det skete, at de blev overskygget af en sky af mørke, og en forfærdelig, højtidelig frygt kom over dem.

29 Og det skete, at der lød en røst, som var den oven over skyen af mørke, og den sagde: Omvend jer, omvend jer, og forsøg ikke mere at slå mine tjenere ihjel, som jeg har sendt til jer for at kundgøre gode tidender.

30 Og det skete, at da de hørte denne røst og fattede, at det ikke var en tordenrøst, ej heller var det en røst som en tumultagtig larm, men se, det var en stille røst af fuldkommen mildhed, som havde det været en hvisken, og den gennemborede dem helt ind til selve sjælen –

31 og til trods for røstens mildhed, se, så rystede jorden overordentlig kraftigt, og fængslets mure vaklede igen, som var det ved at styrte til jorden, og se, den sky af mørke, som havde overskygget dem, spredtes ikke –

32 og se, røsten lød igen og sagde: Omvend jer, omvend jer, for Himmeriget er for hånden, og forsøg ikke mere at slå mine tjenere ihjel. Og det skete, at jorden atter rystede og murene vaklede.

33 Og røsten lød også igen for tredje gang og talte forunderlige ord til dem, som ikke kan udtrykkes af mennesket; og murene vaklede igen, og jorden rystede, som var den ved at sønderdeles.

34 Og det skete, at lamanitterne ikke kunne flygte på grund af den sky af mørke, som overskyggede dem; ja, og de var også ubevægelige på grund af den frygt, som kom over dem.

35 Se, der var blandt dem én, som var nefit af fødsel, og som engang havde hørt til Guds kirke, men havde skilt sig ud fra den.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

36 Og det skete, at han vendte sig om, og se, han så Nefis og Lehis ansigt gennem skyen af mørke, og se, de strålede overordentlig stærkt, ligesom engles ansigter. Og han så, at de løftede deres blik mod himlen, og de så ud, som om de talte eller opløftede deres røst til et eller andet væsen, som de så.

37 Og det skete, at denne mand råbte til mængden, for at få dem til at vende sig om og se. Og se, der blev givet dem kraft, så de vendte sig om og så, og de så Nefis og Lehis ansigt.

38 Og de sagde til manden: Se, hvad betyder alt dette, og hvem er det, som disse mænd taler med?

39 Se, mandens navn var Aminadab. Og Aminadab sagde til dem: De taler med Guds engle.

40 Og det skete, at lamanitterne sagde til ham: Hvad skal vi gøre, for at denne sky af mørke kan blive fjernet, så den ikke overskygger os?

41 Og Aminadab sagde til dem: I må omvende jer og anråbe røsten, lige indtil I får tro på Kristus, som blev forkyndt for jer af Alma og Amulek og Ze'ezrom; og når I gør dette, skal skyen af mørke blive fjernet, så den ikke overskygger jer.

42 Og det skete, at de alle begyndte at anråbe røsten fra ham, der havde rystet jorden, ja, de råbte, indtil skyen af mørke blev spredt.

43 Og det skete, at da de kastede blikket omkring og så, at skyen af mørke var spredt, så den ikke overskyggede dem, se, da så de, at de var omgivet, ja, hver enkelt sjæl, af en ildsøjle.

44 Og Nefi og Lehi stod midt blandt dem, ja, de var omgivet; ja, det var som stod de midt i en flammende ild, dog gjorde den dem ingen skade, ej heller greb den fat i fængslets mure; og de blev fyldt af den glæde, der er uudsigelig og fuld af herlighed.

45 Og se, Guds hellige Ånd kom ned fra himlen og ind i deres hjerte, og de blev fyldt, som var det med ild, og de kunne tale forunderlige ord.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

46 Og det skete, at der lød en røst til dem, ja, en behagelig røst, som var det en hvisken, som sagde:

47 Fred, fred være med jer på grund af jeres tro på min Højtelskede, som var til fra verdens grundlæggelse.

48 Og se, da de hørte dette, kastede de blikket opad som for at se, hvorfra røsten kom, og se, de så himlene åbne, og engle kom ned fra himlen og betjente dem.

49 Og der var omkring tre hundrede sjæle, som så og hørte dette; og det blev dem budt at gå ud og ikke være forundret, ej heller skulle de tvivle.

50 Og det skete, at de gik ud og forkyndte for folket, idet de i alle egnene rundt omkring kundgjorde alt det, som de havde hørt og set, således at størstedelen af lamanitterne blev overbevist af dem på grund af de store beviser, som de havde modtaget.

51 Og så mange, som blev overbevist, nedlagde deres krigsvåben og aflagde også deres had og deres fædres overlevering.

52 Og det skete, at de gav nefitterne deres ejendomslande tilbage.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Helamans Bog 6

- 1 Og det skete, at da det toogtresindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid var endt, var alt dette hændt, og lamanitterne var for størstedelens vedkommende blevet et retfærdigt folk i en sådan grad, at deres retfærdighed overgik nefitternes på grund af deres fasthed og deres standhaftighed i troen.
- 2 For se, der var mange af nefitterne, der var blevet forhærdede og ubodfærdige og groft ugudelige i en sådan grad, at de forkastede Guds ord og al den forkyndelse og profeti, som fandt sted blandt dem.
- 3 Alligevel følte de mennesker, som var i kirken, stor glæde på grund af lamanitternes omvendelse, ja, på grund af Guds kirke, som var blevet oprettet blandt dem. Og de plejede fællesskab, den ene med den anden, og frydede sig, den ene med den anden, og havde stor glæde.
- 4 Og det skete, at mange af lamanitterne kom ned til Zarahemlas land og berettede for det nefitiske folk om den måde, hvorpå de var blevet omvendt, og formanede dem til tro og omvendelse.
- 5 Ja, og mange prædikede med overordentlig stor kraft og myndighed, så mange af dem blev bragt ned i ydmyghedens dyb, så de blev Guds og Lammets ydmyge tilhængere.
- 6 Og det skete, at mange af lamanitterne drog ind i landet mod nord, og Nephi og Lehi drog også ind i landet mod nord for at prædike for folket. Og således endte det treogtresindstyvende år.
- 7 Og se, der var fred i hele landet, således at nefitterne drog til hvilken som helst del af landet, de ville, hvad enten det var blandt nefitterne eller lamanitterne.
- 8 Og det skete, at lamanitterne også drog hvorhen, de end ville, hvad enten det var blandt lamanitterne eller blandt nefitterne, og således kunne de frit omgås, den ene med den anden, for at købe og for at sælge og for at opnå vinding alt efter deres ønske.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

- 9 Og det skete, at de blev overordentlig rige, både lamanitterne og nefitterne; og de havde en overordentlig stor overflod af guld og af sølv og af alle slags kostbare metaller, både i landet mod syd og i landet mod nord.
- 10 Se, landet mod syd blev kaldt Lehi, og landet mod nord blev kaldt Mulek, hvilket var efter Sidkijas søn; for Herren førte Mulek ind i landet mod nord og Lehi ind i landet mod syd.
- 11 Og se, der var alle slags guld i begge disse lande, og sølv og kostbar malm af enhver art; og der var også kunsthåndværkere, som forarbejdede alle slags malm og forædlede den; og således blev de rige.
- 12 De dyrkede korn i overflod, både i nord og i syd; og de trivedes overordentlig godt, både i nord og i syd. Og de mangfoldiggjorde sig og voksede sig overordentlig stærke i landet. Og de opdrættede mange flokke og hjerde, ja, meget fedekvæg.
- 13 Se, deres kvinder arbejdede og spandt og fremstillede al slags klæde af fintvævet linned og klæde af enhver art til at klæde deres nøgenhed med. Og således gik det fireogtresindstyvende år i fred.
- 14 Og i det femogtresindstyvende år havde de også stor glæde og fred, ja, og megen forkyndelse og mange profetier angående det, der skulle komme. Og således gik det femogtresindstyvende år.
- 15 Og det skete i det seksogtresindstyvende år af dommerens regeringstid, se, at Cezoram blev myrdet ved en ukendt hånd, mens han sad på dommersædet. Og det skete i det samme år, at hans søn, der var blevet udpeget af folket i hans sted, også blev myrdet. Og således endte det seksogtresindstyvende år.
- 16 Og i begyndelsen af det syvogtresindstyvende år begyndte folket igen at vokse sig overordentlig ugudeligt.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

- 17 For se, Herren havde velsignet dem så længe med verdens rigdomme, at de ikke var blevet ophidset til vrede, til krige eller til blodsudgydelse, derfor begyndte de at lade hjertet blive optaget af rigdomme, ja, de begyndte at forsøge at få vinding, så de kunne hæve sig, den ene over den anden; derfor begyndte de at begå hemmelige mord og at røve og at plyndre, så de kunne få vinding.
- 18 Og se nu, disse mordere og ransmænd var en bande, der var blevet dannet af Kishkumen og Gadianton. Og se, det var således, at der var mange i Gadiantons bande, selv blandt nefitterne. Men se, de var mere talrige blandt den mere ugudelige del af lamanitterne. Og de blev kaldt Gadiantons røvere og mordere.
- 19 Og det var dem, der myrdede overdommeren Cezoram og hans søn, mens de sad på dommersædet; og se, de blev ikke fundet.
- 20 Og se, det skete, at da lamanitterne fandt ud af, at der var røvere blandt dem, blev de overordentlig sorgfulde, og de brugte ethvert middel, der var i deres magt, for at udrydde dem fra jordens overflade.
- 21 Men se, Satan ophidsede hjertet hos størstedelen af nefitterne i en sådan grad, at de forenede sig med disse røverbander og indgik deres pagter og aflagde deres eder om, at de ville beskytte og bevare hinanden i hvilke vanskelige forhold, de end måtte komme ud for, så de ikke skulle lide for deres mord og deres plyndringer og deres tyverier.
- 22 Og det skete, at de havde deres tegn, ja, deres hemmelige tegn og deres hemmelige ord, og dette for at de kunne kende en broder, som havde indgået pagten, så hans broder, uanset hvilken ugudelighed han måtte øve, ikke skulle blive gjort fortræd af sin broder eller af dem, som tilhørte hans bande, og som havde påtaget sig denne pagt.
- 23 Og således kunne de myrde og plyndre og stjæle og begå utugtigheder og al slags ugudelighed i modstrid med deres lands love og også deres Guds love.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

24 Og hver den blandt dem, der hørte til deres bande, og som afslørede deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder for verden, skulle prøves, ikke i henhold til deres lands love, men i henhold til deres ugudeligheds love, som var blevet givet af Gadianton og Kishkumen.

25 Se nu, det er disse hemmelige eder og pagter, som Alma befalede sin søn ikke måtte komme ud til verden, for at de ikke skulle blive et middel til at føre folket ned i fordærvelse.

26 Se nu, disse hemmelige eder og pagter kom ikke til Gadianton fra de optegnelser, som var blevet overdraget Helaman, men se, de blev lagt i Gadiantons hjerte af det selv samme væsen, som lokkede vore første forældre til at spise af den forbudne frugt –

27 ja, det selv samme væsen, der sammen med Kain smedede rænker om, at hvis han myrdede sin bror Abel, skulle det ikke blive kendt for verden. Og sammen med Kain og hans tilhængere smedede han rænker fra den tid af.

28 Og det er også det selv samme væsen, som lagde det i folkets hjerte at bygge et tårn, der var tilstrækkelig højt til, at de kunne nå til himlen. Og det var det selv samme væsen, som forledte de folk, der kom fra dette tårn til dette land, og som spredte mørkets gerninger og vederstyggeligheder over hele landets overflade, indtil han trak folket ned i fuldstændig undergang og til et evigtvarende helvede.

29 Ja, det er det selv samme væsen, som lagde det i Gadiantons hjerte stadig at fortsætte mørkets og de hemmelige mords værk; og han har bragt det frem fra menneskets begyndelse helt op til denne tid.

30 Og se, det er ham, der er ophavsmanden til al synd. Og se, han fortsætter med sine mørkets gerninger og hemmelige mord og overdrager deres rænker og deres eder og deres pagter og deres planer om forfærdelig ugudelighed fra slægtled til slægtled i det omfang, han kan få greb om menneskenes børns hjerte.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

31 Og se nu, han havde fået fast greb om nefitternes hjerte, ja, i en sådan grad, at de var blevet overordentlig ugudelige; ja, størstedelen af dem havde vendt sig bort fra retfærdighedens vej og trampede Guds befalinger under fode og vendte sig mod deres egne veje og gjorde sig afguder af deres guld og deres sølv.

32 Og det skete, at al denne syndighed kom over dem inden for et tidsrum af ikke mange år, således at størstedelen af den var kommet over dem i det syvogtresindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

33 Og de voksede også i deres syndighed i det otteogtresindstyvende år til de retfærdiges store sorg og beklagelse.

34 Og således ser vi, at nefitterne begyndte at synke ned i vantro og vokse i ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder, mens lamanitterne begyndte at vokse overordentlig meget i kundskaben om deres Gud, ja, de begyndte at holde hans lovbud og befalinger og at vandre i sandhed og retsindighed for ham.

35 Og således ser vi, at Herrens Ånd begyndte at trække sig tilbage fra nefitterne på grund af deres hjertes ugudelighed og hårdhed.

36 Og således ser vi, at Herren begyndte at udøse sin Ånd over lamanitterne på grund af den lethed og villighed, hvormed de troede på hans ord.

37 Og det skete, at lamanitterne jagede Gadiantons røverbande; og de prædikede Guds ord blandt den mere ugudelige del af dem, sådan at denne røverbande blev fuldstændig udryddet blandt lamanitterne.

38 Og det skete på den anden side, at nefitterne byggede dem op og støttede dem, begyndende med den mere ugudelige del af dem, indtil de havde spredt sig over hele nefitternes land og havde forført størstedelen af de retfærdige, indtil de var sunket ned, så de troede på deres gerninger og tog del i deres rov og sluttede sig til dem i deres hemmelige mord og sammensværgelser.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

39 Og således fik de fuld kontrol over styret, således at de trampede de fattige og de sagtmødige og Guds ydmyge tilhængere under fode og slog dem og mishandlede dem og vendte ryggen til dem.

40 Og således ser vi, at de var i en forfærdelig tilstand og ved at blive modne til en evigtvarende undergang.

41 Og det skete, at således endte det otteogtresindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

NEFIS, HELAMANS SØNS, PROFETI – Gud truer Nefis folk med, at han vil besøge dem i sin vrede til deres fuldstændige udryddelse, medmindre de omvender sig fra deres ugudelighed. Gud slår Nefis folk med pest, de angre og vender sig til ham. Samuel, en lamanit, profeterer for nefitterne.

Helamans Bog 7

- 1 Se, nu skete det i det niogtresindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over det nefitiske folk, at Nefi, Helamans søn, vendte tilbage til Zarahemlas land fra landet mod nord.
- 2 For han havde været ude blandt de folk, som var i landet mod nord, og prædiket Guds ord for dem og profeteret meget for dem;
- 3 og de forkastede alle hans ord, således at han ikke kunne blive blandt dem, men igen vendte tilbage til sit fødeland.
- 4 Og da han så, at folket var i en tilstand af forfærdelig ugudelighed, og at disse gadiantrøvere udfyldte dommersæderne – idet de havde tilranet sig magten og myndigheden over landet, tilsidesat Guds befalinger, og ikke i mindste måde med retfærd i hans øjne, idet de ikke ydede menneskenes børn nogen retfærdighed,
- 5 idet de fordømte de retfærdige på grund af deres retfærdighed, lod de skyldige og de ugudelige gå ustraffede på grund af deres penge og tillige for at bevare deres embeder i spidsen for regeringen, for at regere og gøre efter deres egen vilje, så de kunne opnå vinding og verdens ære, og så de desuden lettere kunne begå ægteskabsbrud og stjæle og dræbe og gøre efter deres egen vilje –
- 6 se, denne store syndighed var kommet over nefitterne inden for et tidsrum af ikke mange år; og da Nefi så det, svulmede hans hjerte af sorg i hans bryst, og han udbrød i sin sjælekval:

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadiantr robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

- 7 Åh, gid jeg kunne have levet mine dage i de dage, da min fader Nephi for første gang kom ud af Jerusalems land, så jeg kunne have glædet mig sammen med ham i det forjættede land; dengang var hans folk beredvillige, urokkelige med hensyn til at holde Guds befalinger og langsomme til at blive ledt til at gøre misgerninger, og de var hurtige til at lytte til Herrens ord –
- 8 ja, hvis mine dage kunne have været i de dage, da ville min sjæl have nydt glæde ved mine brødres retfærdighed.
- 9 Men se, mig er det givet, at disse er mine dage, og at min sjæl skal være fyldt af sorg på grund af denne, mine brødres, ugudelighed.
- 10 Og se, nu skete det, at det fandt sted på et tårn, som stod i Nefis have, som lå ved hovedvejen, som førte til det vigtigste marked, der var i byen Zarahemla; Nephi havde bøjet sig ned på tårnet, som stod i hans have, hvilket tårn også stod nær ved haveporten, som hovedvejen gik forbi.
- 11 Og det skete, at der var nogle mænd, der passerede forbi og så Nephi, mens han udøste sin sjæl til Gud på tårnet; og de løb hen og fortalte folket, hvad de havde set, og folket samledes i mængder for at finde ud af, hvad årsagen var til så stort sørgeudbrud over folkets ugudelighed.
- 12 Og se, da Nephi rejste sig, så han folkemængderne, som havde samlet sig.
- 13 Og det skete, at han åbnede sin mund og sagde til dem: Se, hvorfor har I samlet jer? For at jeg skal fortælle jer om jeres syndighed?
- 14 Ja, fordi jeg er gået op på mit tårn, så jeg kunne udøse min sjæl til min Gud på grund af mit hjertes overordentlig store sorg, som skyldes jeres syndighed!
- 15 Og på grund af mit sørgeudbrud og klageråb har I samlet jer og undrer jer; ja, og I har stor grund til at undre jer; ja, I bør undre jer, fordi I har givet efter, så Djævelen har fået så fast greb om jeres hjerte.
- 16 Ja, hvorledes har I kunnet give efter for tilløkkelserne fra ham, der forsøger at styrte jeres sjæl ned i evigtvarende elendighed og uendelig jammer?

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

17 O, omvend jer, omvend jer! Hvorfor vil I dø? Vend jer, vend jer til Herren jeres Gud. Hvorfor har han svigtet jer?

18 Det er fordi, I har forhærdet hjertet, ja, I vil ikke lytte til den gode hyrdes røst, ja, I har opildnet ham til vrede mod jer.

19 Og se, i stedet for at samle jer, se, da vil han, medmindre I omvender jer, sprede jer vidt omkring, så I bliver føde for hunde og vilde rovdyr.

20 O, hvor kunne I glemme jeres Gud på netop den dag, hvor han har udfriet jer?

21 Men se, det er for at få vinding, for at blive rost af mennesker, ja, og for at I kan få guld og sølv. Og I har ladet hjertet blive optaget af denne verdens rigdomme og tomme ting, for hvilke I myrder og plyndrer og stjæler og aflægger falsk vidnesbyrd mod jeres næste og øver al slags ugudelighed.

22 Og af denne årsag skal ve komme over jer, medmindre I omvender jer. For hvis I ikke vil omvende jer, se, så skal denne store by og også alle de store byer, som er rundt omkring, og som er i vort ejendomsland, blive taget fra jer, så I ikke skal have plads i dem; for se, Herren vil ikke skænke jer styrke, som han hidtil har gjort, til at modstå jeres fjender.

23 For se, så siger Herren: Jeg vil ikke vise min styrke for de ugudelige, ikke mere for den ene end for den anden, undtagen for dem, der omvender sig fra deres synder og lytter til mine ord. Se, derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal indse, mine brødre, at det skal blive bedre for lamanitterne end for jer, medmindre I omvender jer.

24 For se, de er mere retfærdige end I, for de har ikke syndet mod den store kundskab, som I har modtaget; derfor vil Herren være barmhjertig mod dem, ja, han vil forlænge deres dage og forøge deres efterkommere, mens I skal blive fuldstændig udryddet, medmindre I omvender jer.

25 Ja, ve over jer på grund af den store vederstyggelighed, som er opstået blandt jer; og I har forenet jer med den, ja, med den hemmelige bande, som blev stiftet af Gadianton!

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

26 Ja, ve skal komme over jer på grund af den stolthed, som I har ladet komme ind i jeres hjerte, og som har hævet jer over det, der er godt, på grund af jeres overordentlig store rigdomme.

27 Ja, ve over jer på grund af jeres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder!

28 Og medmindre I omvender jer, skal I omkomme; ja, jeres lande skal endog blive taget fra jer, og I skal blive udryddet fra jordens overflade.

29 Se nu, jeg siger ikke af mig selv, at dette skal ske, for det er ikke af mig selv, at jeg ved dette, men se, jeg ved, at dette er sandt, fordi Gud Herren har kundgjort det for mig, derfor vidner jeg om, at det skal ske.

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Helamans Bog 8

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Nefi havde sagt disse ord, se, da var der mænd, som var dommere, og som også tilhørte Gadiantons hemmelige bande, og de var vrede, og de råbte op imod ham, idet de sagde til folket: Hvorfor pågriber I ikke denne mand og fører ham frem, så han kan blive dømt for den forbrydelse, han har begået?
- 2 Hvorfor ser I på denne mand og hører ham håne dette folk og vor lov?
- 3 For se, Nefi havde talt til dem angående korruptheden i deres lov; ja, meget sagde Nefi, som ikke kan skrives; og intet sagde han, der var i modstrid med Guds befalinger.
- 4 Og disse dommere var vrede på ham, fordi han talte ligefremt til dem om deres hemmelige mørkets gerninger; alligevel turde de ikke selv at lægge hånd på ham, for de frygtede, at folket skulle råbe op imod dem.
- 5 Derfor råbte de til folket og sagde: Hvorfor tillader I denne mand at håne os? For se, han dømmer hele dette folk, ja, til undergang, ja, og siger også, at disse vore store byer skal blive taget fra os, så vi ikke skal have plads i dem.
- 6 Og se, vi ved, at dette er umuligt, for se, vi er stærke, og vore byer mægtige; derfor kan vore fjender ikke få nogen magt over os.
- 7 Og det skete, at de således ophidsede folket til vrede mod Nefi og skabte stridigheder blandt dem, for der var nogle, som råbte: Lad denne mand være i fred, for han er en god mand, og det, som han siger, skal visselig ske, medmindre vi omvender os.
- 8 Ja, se, alle de straffedomme, som han har vidnet for os om, skal komme over os; for vi ved, at han har vidnet ret for os om vore misgerninger. Og se, de er mange, og han kender lige såvel alt det, der skal ske os, som han kender til vore misgerninger;
- 9 ja, og se, hvis han ikke havde været profet, kunne han ikke have vidnet om dette.

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

10 Og det skete, at de folk, der forsøgte at gøre det af med Nephi, blev på grund af deres frygt tvunget til ikke at lægge hånd på ham, derfor begyndte han igen at tale til dem, for han så, at han havde vundet yndest for nogles øjne i en sådan grad, at resten af dem frygtede.

11 Derfor blev han drevet til at tale mere til dem og sagde: Se, mine brødre, har I ikke læst, at Gud gav én mand, nemlig Moses, magt til at slå på vandene i Det Røde Hav, og de delte sig til den ene og til den anden side, således at israelitterne, som var vore fædre, kom igennem på tør grund, og vandet lukkede sig over egypternes hære og opslugte dem?

12 Og se nu, hvis Gud gav en sådan magt til denne mand, hvorfor mundhugges I da indbyrdes og siger, at han ikke har givet mig nogen magt, hvorved jeg kan vide noget om de straffedomme, som skal komme over jer, medmindre I omvender jer?

13 Men se, I forkaster ikke alene mine ord, men I forkaster også alle de ord, som er blevet talt af vore fædre, og også de ord, som blev talt af denne mand, Moses, som blev givet så stor magt, ja, de ord, som han har talt angående Messias' komme.

14 Ja, aflagde han ikke vidnesbyrd om, at Guds Søn skulle komme? Og ligesom han løftede kobberslangen op i ørkenen, således skal han, som skulle komme, blive løftet op.

15 Og så mange, som ville se på den slange, skulle leve, på samme måde skal så mange, som vil se hen til Guds Søn med tro og have en angerfuld ånd, leve, ja, få det liv, som er evigt.

16 Og se nu, ikke alene Moses vidnede om dette, men også alle de hellige profeter fra hans dage lige til Abrahams dage.

17 Ja, og se, Abraham så hans komme og blev fyldt af glæde og frydede sig.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

18 Ja, og se, jeg siger jer, at ikke alene Abraham kendte til dette, men der var mange før Abrahams dage, som blev kaldet ved Guds orden, ja, efter hans Søns orden, og dette for at det skulle vises for folket mange, mange tusinde år før hans komme, at forløsning skulle blive dem til del.

19 Og se, jeg ønsker, at I skal vide, at lige siden Abrahams dage har der været mange profeter, der har vidnet om dette, ja, se, profeten Zenos vidnede frimodigt om det, hvilket han blev slået ihjel for.

20 Og se, også Zenok og også Ezias og også Esajas og Jeremias (Jeremias var den selv samme profet, som vidnede om Jerusalems ødelæggelse), og se, vi ved, at Jerusalem blev ødelagt i overensstemmelse med Jeremias' ord. O, hvorfor skulle Guds Søn da ikke komme i overensstemmelse med hans profeti?

21 Og se, vil I bestride, at Jerusalem blev ødelagt? Vil I sige, at Sidkijas sønner ikke blev dræbt, alle med undtagelse af Mulek? Ja, og ser I ikke, at Sidkijas efterkommere er blandt os, og at de blev drevet ud af Jerusalems land? Men se, det er ikke alt –

22 vor fader Lehi blev drevet ud af Jerusalem, fordi han vidnede om dette. Nefi vidnede også om dette og ligeså næsten alle vore fædre helt op til denne tid, ja, de har vidnet om Kristi komme og har set frem til og har frydet sig ved hans dag, som skal komme.

23 Og se, han er Gud, og han er med dem, og han gav sig til kende for dem, at de var forløst af ham, og de gav ham ære på grund af det, der skal ske.

24 Og se, eftersom I ved dette og ikke kan fornægte det, uden at I skulle lyve, har I derfor syndet i dette, for I har afvist alt dette til trods for de mange beviser, som I har modtaget; ja, I har faktisk modtaget alt, både det, der er i himlen, og alt det, der er på jorden, som et vidnesbyrd om, at det er sandt.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

- 25 Men se, I har fornægtet sandheden og sat jer op mod jeres hellige Gud; og selv på dette tidspunkt dynger I vrede op mod jer selv til dommens dag i stedet for at samle jer skatte i himlen, hvor intet fordærves, og hvor intet, der er urent, kan komme.
- 26 Ja, selv på dette tidspunkt er I ved at blive modne til evigtvarende undergang på grund af jeres mord og jeres utugt og ugudelighed, ja, og medmindre I omvender jer, skal den snart komme over jer.
- 27 Ja, se, den står allerede nu for døren, ja, gå ind til dommersædet og søg, og se, jeres dommer er myrdet, og han ligger i sit blod, og han er blevet myrdet af sin bror, som stræber efter at sidde i dommersædet.
- 28 Og se, de tilhører begge jeres hemmelige bande, hvis ophavsmand er Gadianton og den Onde, som forsøger at ødelægge menneskers sjæl.
- But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.
- Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.
- Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.
- And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Helamans Bog 9

- 1 Se, nu skete det, at da Nefi havde talt disse ord, løb visse mænd, som var blandt dem, hen til dommersædet; ja, der var fem, som løb, og de sagde undervejs til hinanden:
- 2 Se, nu vil vi med vished erfare, om denne mand er profet, og om Gud har befaleet ham at profetere sådanne forunderlige ting for os. Se, det tror vi ikke, at han har, ja, vi tror ikke, at han er profet, men hvis det, som han har sagt om overdommeren, er sandt, at han er død, da vil vi tro, at de andre ord, som han har talt, er sande.
- 3 Og det skete, at de løb af al kraft og kom ind til dommersædet, og se, overdommeren var faldet til jorden og lå i sit blod.
- 4 Og se nu, da de så dette, blev de overordentlig forbavsede i en sådan grad, at de faldt til jorden, for de havde ikke troet de ord, som Nefi havde talt angående overdommeren.
- 5 Men se, da de så, troede de, og frygt kom over dem for, at alle de straffedomme, som Nefi havde talt om, skulle komme over folket; derfor skælvede de og var faldet til jorden.
- 6 Se, straks efter at dommeren var blevet myrdet – han blev i hemmelighed stukket ned af sin bror, og han flygtede, og tjenerne løb ud og fortalte det til folket og råbte op om mord blandt dem;
- 7 og se, folket samlede sig på det sted, hvor dommersædet stod – og se, til deres forbavselse så de disse fem mænd, som var faldet til jorden.
- 8 Og se nu, folket vidste intet angående den mængde, der havde samlet sig ved Nefis have, derfor sagde de til hinanden: Disse mænd er dem, der har myrdet dommeren, og Gud har slået dem, så de ikke kunne flygte fra os.
- 9 Og det skete, at de greb fat i dem og bandt dem og kastede dem i fængsel. Og der blev sendt en proklamation ud om, at dommeren var blevet slået ihjel, og at morderne var blevet pågrebet og kastet i fængsel.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

10 Og det skete, at folket samlede sig den næste dag for at sørge og for at faste ved begravelsen af den store overdommer, som var blevet slået ihjel.

11 Og således var de dommere, der havde været ved Nefis have og hørt hans ord, også samlet ved begravelsen.

12 Og det skete, at de spurgte sig for blandt folket og sagde: Hvor er de fem, der blev sendt af sted for at spørge sig for angående overdommeren, om han var død? Og de svarede og sagde: Med hensyn til de fem, som I siger, I har sendt af sted, ved vi intet, men der er fem, der er morderne, som vi har kastet i fængsel.

13 Og det skete, at dommerne bad om at få dem ført frem; og de blev ført frem, og se, det var de fem, som var blevet sendt af sted; og se, dommerne udspurgte dem for at få kendskab til sagen, og de fortalte dem alt det, de havde gjort og sagde:

14 Vi løb og kom til stedet, hvor dommersædet er, og da vi så alt, nøjagtig som Nefi havde vidnet om det, blev vi forbavsede i en sådan grad, at vi faldt til jorden; og da vi var kommet os over vor forbavselse, se, da kastede de os i fængsel.

15 Se, hvad mordet på denne mand angår, så ved vi ikke, hvem der har gjort det; og vi ved kun så meget, at vi løb og kom derhen, sådan som I ønskede, og se, han var død, sådan som Nefi havde sagt.

16 Og se, det skete, at dommerne fremlagde sagen for folket og råbte imod Nefi og sagde: Se, vi ved, at denne Nefi må have aftalt med en eller anden at slå dommeren ihjel, for at han dernæst kunne kundgøre det for os, så han kunne omvende os til sin tro, så han kunne ophøje sig til at være en stor mand, udvalgt af Gud, og til profet.

17 Og se nu, vi vil afsløre denne mand, og han skal bekende sin forseelse og gøre os bekendt med denne dommers sande morder.

18 Og det skete, at de fem blev frigivet på begravelsesdagen. Alligevel irettesatte de dommerne med hensyn til de ord, som de havde talt mod Nefi og stredes med dem efter en, således at de bragte dem til tavshed.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

19 Alligevel foranledigede de, at Nephi skulle pågribes og bindes og føres frem for mængden, og de begyndte at udspørge ham på forskellige måder for at få ham til at modsige sig selv, så de kunne anklage ham til døden –

20 idet de sagde til ham: Du er medskyldig; hvem er den mand, som har begået dette mord? Fortæl os det nu og vedstå din forseelse; og de sagde: Se, her er penge, og vi vil også skænke dig livet, hvis du vil fortælle os det og vedstå den aftale, du har truffet med ham.

21 Men Nephi sagde til dem: O, I tåber, I uomskårne af hjertet, I blinde og I stivnakkede mennesker, ved I, hvor længe Herren jeres Gud vil tillade, at I fortsætter på denne, jeres, syndige vej?

22 O, I burde begynde at hyle og sørge på grund af den store ødelæggelse, som på dette tidspunkt venter jer, medmindre I omvender jer.

23 Se, I siger, at jeg har aftalt med en mand, at han skulle myrde Cezoram, vor overdommer. Men se, jeg siger jer, at dette er fordi, jeg har vidnet for jer, så I kunne få kendskab til dette, ja, som et vidnesbyrd for jer om, at jeg kendte til den ugudelighed og de vederstyggeligheder, som er blandt jer.

24 Og fordi jeg har gjort dette, siger I, at jeg har aftalt med en mand, at han skulle gøre dette; ja, fordi jeg viste jer dette tegn, er I vrede på mig og forsøger at berøve mig livet.

25 Og se nu, jeg vil vise jer et andet tegn, og se, om I på grund af dette vil forsøge at gøre det af med mig.

26 Se, jeg siger jer: Gå til Seantum, som er Cezorams bror, og sig til ham:

27 Har Nephi, der foregiver at være profet, og som profeterer så meget ondt angående dette folk, aftalt med dig, at du skulle myrde Cezoram, som er din bror?

28 Og se, han vil sige til jer: Nej.

29 Og I skal sige til ham: Har du myrdet din bror?

30 Og han skal stå med frygt og ikke vide, hvad han skal sige. Og se, han skal benægte det over for jer, og han skal lade, som om han er forbavset; alligevel skal han kundgøre for jer, at han er uskyldig.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

31 Men se, I skal undersøge ham, og I skal finde blod på skøderne af hans kappe.

32 Og når I har set dette, skal I sige: Hvor kommer dette blod fra? Ved vi ikke, at det er din brors blod?

33 Og da skal han bæve og skal se bleg ud, som om døden var kommet over ham.

34 Og da skal I sige: På grund af denne frygt og denne blegthed, som er kommet over dit ansigt, se, da ved vi, at du er skyldig.

35 Og da skal større frygt komme over ham, og da skal han bekende for jer og ikke mere nægte, at han har begået dette mord.

36 Og da skal han sige til jer, at jeg, Nephi, intet kunne kende til sagen, medmindre det blev givet mig ved Guds kraft. Og da skal I vide, at jeg er en ærlig mand, og at jeg er sendt til jer af Gud.

37 Og det skete, at de gik hen og gjorde, netop sådan som Nephi havde sagt til dem. Og se, de ord, han havde sagt, var sande, for i overensstemmelse med ordene nægtede han; og også i overensstemmelse med ordene bekendte han.

38 Og han blev ført frem for at bevise, at han selv var selve morderen, således at de fem blev sat på fri fod, og ligeså blev Nephi.

39 Og der var nogle af nefitterne, som troede på Nefis ord; og der var også nogle, der troede på grund af de fems vidnesbyrd, for de var blevet omvendt, mens de var i fængsel.

40 Og se, der var nogle blandt folket, som sagde, at Nephi var profet.

41 Og der var andre, som sagde: Se, han er en gud, for medmindre han er en gud, kunne han ikke kende til alt. For se, han har fortalt os vort hjertes tanker og har også fortalt os andet; og han har endog givet os kendskab til vor overdommers sande morder.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Helamans Bog 10

- 1 Og det skete, at der fandt et opbrud sted blandt folket, således at de skiltes hid og did og gik hver deres vej og lod Nefi være alene, mens han stod midt blandt dem.
- 2 Og det skete, at Nefi gik hjemad mod sit eget hus, mens han grundede over det, som Herren havde vist ham.
- 3 Og det skete, mens han således grundede – for han var meget nedslået på grund af det nefitiske folks ugudelighed, deres hemmelige mørkets gerninger, deres myrden og deres plyndren og al slags syndighed – og det skete, mens han således grundede i sit hjerte, se, da lød der en røst til ham, som sagde:
- 4 Velsignet er du Nefi for det, som du har gjort, for jeg har set, hvorledes du med utrættelighed har kundgjort ordet, som jeg har givet dig, for dette folk. Og du har ikke frygtet dem og har ikke søgt at redde dit eget liv, men har søgt min vilje og at holde mine befalinger.
- 5 Og se, fordi du har gjort dette med en sådan utrættelighed, se, så vil jeg velsigne dig for evigt; og jeg vil gøre dig mægtig i ord og i handling, i tro og i gerninger; ja, så alt skal blive gjort for dig i overensstemmelse med dit ord, for du vil ikke bede om det, der strider imod min vilje.
- 6 Se, du er Nefi, og jeg er Gud. Se, jeg kundgør det for dig i overværelse af mine engle, at du skal have magt over dette folk og skal slå jorden med hunger og med pest og ødelæggelse i forhold til dette folks ugudelighed.
- 7 Se, jeg giver dig magt til, at hvad som helst du besegler på jorden, skal være beseglet i himlen; og hvad som helst du løser på jorden, skal være løst i himlen; og således skal du have magt blandt dette folk.
- 8 Og hvis du således siger til dette tempel, at det skal blive brudt i to stykker, da skal det blive gjort.
- 9 Og hvis du siger til dette bjerg: Du skal kastes ned og blive jævn, da skal det blive gjort.
- 10 Og se, hvis du siger, at Gud skal slå dette folk, da skal det ske.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

- 11 Og se nu, jeg befaler dig, at du skal gå ud og kundgøre for dette folk, at så siger Gud Herren, som er den Almægtige: Medmindre I omvender jer, skal I blive slået, lige indtil I bliver udryddet.
- 12 Og se, nu skete det, at da Herren havde talt disse ord til Nephi, standsede han og gik ikke til sit eget hus, men vendte tilbage til mængderne, som var spredt omkring på landets overflade og begyndte at kundgøre for dem Herrens ord, som var blevet talt til ham angående deres undergang, hvis de ikke omvendte sig.
- 13 Se nu, til trods for det store mirakel, som Nephi havde gjort ved at fortælle dem om overdommerens død, forhærdede de hjertet og lyttede ikke til Herrens ord.
- 14 Derfor kundgjorde Nephi Herrens ord for dem og sagde: Medmindre I omvender jer, så siger Herren, skal I blive slået, lige indtil I bliver udryddet.
- 15 Og det skete, at da Nephi havde kundgjort ordet for dem, se, da forhærdede de stadig hjertet og ville ikke lytte til hans ord; derfor hånede de ham og forsøgte at lægge hånd på ham, så de kunne kaste ham i fængsel.
- 16 Men se, Guds kraft var med ham, og de kunne ikke gribe ham for at kaste ham i fængsel, for han blev taget af Ånden og ført bort ud af deres midte.
- 17 Og det skete, at således gik han frem i Ånden fra mængde til mængde og kundgjorde Guds ord, lige indtil han havde kundgjort det for dem alle eller udbredt det blandt hele folket.
- 18 Og det skete, at de ikke ville lytte til hans ord; og der opstod stridigheder, således at de blev splittet indbyrdes og begyndte at slå hinanden ihjel med sværdet.
- 19 Og således endte det enoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, inasmuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helamans Bog 11

- 1 Og se, det skete i det tooghalvfjerdsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at stridighederne tog til, således at der var krige overalt i hele landet blandt hele Nefis folk.
- 2 Og det var denne hemmelige bande af røvere, som videredførte dette ødelæggelsens og ugudelighedens værk. Og denne krig varede hele det år; og i det treoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år varede den også ved.
- 3 Og det skete, at i det år anrøbte Nefi Herren og sagde:
 - 4 O Herre, tillad ikke, at dette folk skal blive udryddet ved sværdet, men, o Herre, lad der hellere blive hungersnød i landet til at vække dem til erindring om Herren deres Gud, så vil de måske omvende sig og vende sig til dig.
- 5 Og således blev det gjort i overensstemmelse med Nefis ord. Og der blev stor hungersnød i landet blandt hele Nefis folk. Og således fortsatte hungersnøden i det fireoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år, og ødelæggelsesværket hørte op ved sværdet, men blev hårdt ved hungersnød.
- 6 Og dette ødelæggelsesværk fortsatte også i det femoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år. For jorden blev slået, så den var tør og ikke frembragte korn i kornets tid; og al jorden blev slået blandt lamanitterne såvel som blandt nefitterne, så de blev slået, så de omkom i tusindvis i de mere ugudelige dele af landet.
- 7 Og det skete, at folket så, at de var ved at omkomme på grund af hungersnøden, og de begyndte at erindre Herren deres Gud, og de begyndte at erindre Nefis ord.
- 8 Og folket begyndte at bønfalde deres overdommere og ledere om, at de skulle sige til Nefi: Se, vi ved, at du er en gudsmænd, anrøb derfor Herren vor Gud om at bortvende denne hungersnød fra os, så ikke alle de ord, som du har talt angående vor udryddelse, skal gå i opfyldelse.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

- 9 Og det skete, at dommerne talte til Nefi i overensstemmelse med de ord, som var blevet ønsket. Og det skete, at da Nefi så, at folket havde omvendt sig og ydmygede sig i sæk, anråbte han igen Herren og sagde:
- 10 O Herre, se, dette folk omvender sig; og de har fejlet Gadiantons bande ud af deres midte, således at de er blevet udsløtt, og de har skjult deres hemmelige planer i jorden.
- 11 Se, o Herre, vil du bortvende din vrede på grund af denne deres ydmyghed og lade din vrede være tilfredsstillt ved udryddelsen af disse ugudelige mennesker, som du allerede har udryddet.
- 12 O Herre, vil du bortvende din vrede, ja, din rasende vrede, og foranledige, at denne hungersnød hører op i dette land.
- 13 O Herre, vil du lytte til mig og foranledige, at det må blive gjort i overensstemmelse med mine ord, og sende regn ned på jordens overflade, så hun kan frembringe sin frugt og sit korn i kornets tid.
- 14 O Herre, du lyttede til mine ord, da jeg sagde: Lad der blive en hungersnød, så sværdets pest kan høre op! Og jeg ved, at du også på dette tidspunkt vil lytte til mine ord, for du sagde: Hvis dette folk omvender sig, vil jeg skåne dem.
- 15 Ja, o Herre, og du ser, at de har omvendt sig på grund af den hungersnød og den pest og ødelæggelse, som er kommet over dem.
- 16 Og se, o Herre, vil du bortvende din vrede og igen prøve, om de vil tjene dig? Og hvis så er, o Herre, kan du velsigne dem ifølge dine ord, som du har sagt.
- 17 Og det skete, at Herren i det seksoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år bortvendte sin vrede fra folket og foranledigede, at der faldt regn på jorden, således at hun frembragte sin frugt i frugtens tid. Og det skete, at hun frembragte sit korn i kornets tid.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

18 Og se, folket frydede sig og priste Gud, og hele landets overflade var fyldt af fryd; og de forsøgte ikke mere at slå Nefi ihjel, men de agtede ham som en stor profet og en gudsmænd, som var blevet givet magt og myndighed af Gud.

19 Og se, Lehi, hans bror, stod ikke det mindste tilbage for ham med hensyn til det, der hører til retfærdighed.

20 Og således skete det, at Nefis folk igen begyndte at have fremgang i landet og begyndte at opbygge deres øde steder og begyndte at mangfoldiggøre sig og sprede sig, indtil de dækkede hele landets overflade, både mod nord og mod syd, fra det vestlige hav til det østlige hav.

21 Og det skete, at det seksoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år endte i fred. Og det syvoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år begyndte i fred, og kirken bredte sig over hele landets overflade, og størstedelen af folket, både nefitterne og lamanitterne, tilhørte kirken, og de havde overordentlig stor fred i landet, og således endte det syvoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år.

22 Og de havde også fred i det otteoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år bortset fra nogle få stridigheder angående de lærepunkter, som var blevet fremsat af profeterne.

23 Og i det nioghalvfjerdsindstyvende år opstod der megen strid. Men det skete, at Nefi og Lehi og mange af deres brødre, som kendte til de sande lærepunkter, for de fik daglig mange åbenbaringer, de prædikede derfor for folket, således at de gjorde en ende på deres strid i det selv samme år.

24 Og det skete, at der i det firsindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk, var et vist antal af dem, som havde skilt sig ud fra Nefis folk, og som nogle år forinden var gået over til lamanitterne og havde påtaget sig navnet lamanitter, og også et vist antal, som var virkelige efterkommere af lamanitterne, som blev ophidset til vrede af dem, eller af dem, der havde skilt sig ud, derfor påbegyndte de en krig mod deres brødre.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

25 Og de begik mord og plyndrede, og så trak de sig tilbage til bjergene og ud i ødemarken og til hemmelige steder, og de skjulte sig, så de ikke kunne blive opdaget, og modtog dagligt en forøgelse til deres antal, i og med at nogle skilte sig ud og tog ud til dem.

26 Og således blev de med tiden, ja, inden for et tidsrum af ikke mange år, en overordentlig stor bande af røvere; og de fandt frem til alle Gadiantons hemmelige planer, og således blev de Gadiantons røvere.

27 Se nu, disse røvere anrettede stor skade, ja, endog stor ødelæggelse blandt Nefis folk og også blandt det lamanitiske folk.

28 Og det skete, at det blev nødvendigt, at der blev sat en stopper for dette ødelæggelsesværk, derfor sendte de en hær af stærke mænd ud i ødemarken og op i bjergene for at finde frem til denne røverbande og udrydde dem.

29 Og se, det skete i det selv samme år, at de blev drevet tilbage, helt til deres egne lande. Og således endte det firsindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne rege-rede over Nefis folk.

30 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det enogfirsindstyven-de år, at de igen drog ud mod denne røverbande og slog mange ihjel; og de blev også selv hjemsøgt af stor udryd-delse.

31 Og de blev igen nødt til at vende tilbage fra ødemar-ken og fra bjergene til deres egne lande på grund af det overordentlig store antal af disse røvere, som oversvøm-mede bjergene og ødemarken.

32 Og det skete, at således endte dette år. Og røverne blev stadig flere og voksede sig stærke i en sådan grad, at de trodsede nefitternes og også lamanitternes samlede hære; og de forårsagede, at der kom stor frygt over folket på hele landets overflade.

33 Ja, for de hjemsøgte mange dele af landet og forvoldte store ødelæggelser mod dem, ja, de dræbte mange og førte andre ud i ødemarken som fanger, ja, i særdeleshed deres kvinder og deres børn.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dis-senters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; there-fore they sent an army of strong men into the wilder-ness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the num-bers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

34 Se, dette store onde, som ramte folket på grund af deres ugudelighed, vakte dem igen til erindring om Herren deres Gud.

35 Og således endte det enogfirsindstyvende år af dommerens regeringstid.

36 Og i det toogfirsindstyvende år begyndte de igen at glemme Herren deres Gud. Og i det treogfirsindstyvende år begyndte de at vokse sig stærke i ugudelighed. Og i det fireogfirsindstyvende år forbedrede de sig ikke.

37 Og det skete i det femogfirsindstyvende år, at de voksede sig stærkere og stærkere i deres stolthed og i deres ugudelighed; og således var de igen ved at blive modne til undergang.

38 Og således endte det femogfirsindstyvende år.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Helamans Bog 12

- 1 Og således kan vi se, hvor falske og også hvor ustadige menneskenes børns hjerte er, ja, vi kan se, at Herren i sin mægtige, grænseløse godhed velsigner og giver fremgang til dem, der sætter deres lid til ham.
- 2 Ja, og vi kan se, at på selv samme tid, som han giver sit folk fremgang, ja, ved vækst på deres marker, i deres flokke og deres hjerde og i guld og i sølv og i alle slags kostbarheder af enhver art og type, ved at skåne deres liv og udfri dem af deres fjenders hænder, ved at blødgøre deres fjenders hjerte, så de ikke erklærer krige mod dem, ja, og ved kort sagt at gøre alt for sit folks velfærd og lykke, ja, da er det, at de forhærder hjertet og glemmer Herren deres Gud og tramper den Hellige under fode – ja, og dette på grund af deres medgang og deres overordentlig store velstand.
- 3 Og således ser vi, at medmindre Herren revser sit folk med mange trængsler, ja, medmindre han hjemsøger dem med død og med skræk og med hungersnød og al slags pest, erindrer de ham ikke.
- 4 O, hvor tåbelige og hvor forfængelige og hvor onde og djævelske og hvor hurtige til at gøre misgerninger og hvor langsomme til at gøre godt er ikke menneskenes børn, ja, hvor hurtige til at lytte til den Ondes ord og til at lade hjertet blive optaget af verdens tomme ting!
- 5 Ja, hvor hurtige til at blive indbildske i stolthed, ja, hvor hurtige til at prale og gøre alt muligt af det, der er ugudeligt; og hvor langsomme er de ikke til at huske Herren deres Gud, og til at låne øre til hans råd, ja, hvor langsomme til at vandre på visdommens stier!
- 6 Se, de ønsker ikke, at Herren deres Gud, som har skabt dem, skal herske og regere over dem; til trods for hans store godhed og hans barmhjertighed mod dem, regner de hans råd for intet, og de vil ikke, at han skal være deres vejleder.
- 7 O, hvor stor er ikke menneskenes børns intethed, ja, de er endog mindre end jordens støv.
- 8 For se, støvet på jorden flytter sig hid og did, så den sonderdeler sig på vor mægtige og evige Guds befaling.

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

9 Ja, se, ved hans røst skælver og bæver højene og bjergene.

10 Og ved hans røsts kraft bliver de brudt op og bliver jævne, ja, som en dal.

11 Ja, ved hans røsts kraft ryster hele jorden.

12 Ja, ved hans røsts kraft rokket grundvoldene, helt ind til selve kernen.

13 Ja, og hvis han siger til jorden: Bevæg dig! så bevæger den sig.

14 Ja, hvis han siger til jorden: Du skal bevæge dig baglæns, så det forlænger dagen med mange timer! så sker det,

15 og således bevæger jorden sig baglæns i overensstemmelse med hans ord, og det synes for mennesket, som om solen står stille; ja, og se, sådan er det, for visse er det jorden, der bevæger sig, og ikke solen.

16 Og se også, hvis han siger til vandene i det store dyb: Bliv udtørret! så sker det.

17 Se, hvis han siger til dette bjerg: Hæv dig, og kom hen og fald ned over denne by, så den bliver begravet! se, så sker det.

18 Og se, hvis en mand skjuler en skat i jorden, og Herren siger: Lad den være forbandet på grund af ugdeligheden hos ham, der har skjult den! se, så skal den være forbandet.

19 Og hvis Herren siger: Vær du forbandet, så ingen skal finde dig fra denne tid og for evigt! se, så får ingen den fra nu af og for evigt.

20 Og se, hvis Herren siger til et menneske: På grund af din syndighed skal du være forbandet for evigt! så skal det blive gjort.

21 Og hvis Herren siger: På grund af din syndighed skal du blive forstødt fra min nærhed! så vil han foranledige, at det skal ske således.

22 Og ve den, til hvem han siger dette, for det skal blive sagt til den, der gør misgerninger, og han kan ikke blive frelst; derfor, af denne årsag, at mennesker må kunne blive frelst, er omvendelse blevet kundgjort.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

- 23 Velsignede er derfor de, der vil omvende sig og lytte til Herren deres Guds røst; for det er dem, der skal blive frelst.
- 24 Og måtte Gud i sin mægtige fylde tilstede, at menneskene må blive bragt til omvendelse og gode gerninger, så de må blive bragt tilbage til nåde for nåde i forhold til deres gerninger.
- 25 Og jeg ville ønske, at alle mennesker kunne blive frelst. Men vi læser, at på den store og yderste dag er der nogle, som skal blive stødt ud, ja, som vil blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed;
- 26 ja, som vil blive overgivet til en tilstand af uendelig elendighed og derved opfylde de ord, som lyder: De, der har gjort godt, skal få evigtvarende liv; og de, der har gjort ondt, skal få evigtvarende fordømmelse. Og således er det. Amen.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hear-ken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, accord- ing to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the pres- ence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless mis- ery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

Helamans Bog 13

- 1 Og se, det skete i det seksogfirsindstyvende år, at nefitterne stadig forblev i ugudelighed, ja, i stor ugudelighed, mens lamanitterne nidkært bestræbte sig på at holde Guds befalinger i henhold til Moseloven.
- 2 Og det skete, at der i dette år var en vis Samuel, en lamanit, som kom til Zarahemlas land og begyndte at prædike for folket. Og det skete, at han prædikede omvendelse for folket i mange dage, og de stødte ham ud, og han var ved at vende tilbage til sit eget land.
- 3 Men se, Herrens røst kom til ham, at han skulle vende tilbage igen og profetere for folket, hvad der blev ham indgivet i hjertet.
- 4 Og det skete, at de ikke ville tillade, at han kom ind i byen, derfor steg han op på dens mur og strakte hånden ud og råbte med høj røst og profeterede det for folket, som Herren lagde ham i hjertet.
- 5 Og han sagde til dem: Se, jeg, Samuel, en lamanit, taler Herrens ord, som han lægger mig i hjertet, og se, han har lagt mig i hjertet at sige til dette folk, at retfærdighedens sværd hænger over dette folk, og der går ikke fire hundrede år, før retfærdighedens sværd falder på dette folk.
- 6 Ja, en stor ødelæggelse venter dette folk, og den kommer visselig over dette folk, og intet kan frelse dette folk bortset fra omvendelse og tro på Herren Jesus Kristus, som visselig skal komme til verden og skal lide meget og skal blive slået ihjel for sit folk.
- 7 Og se, en engel fra Herren har kundgjort det for mig, og han bragte min sjæl glædelige tidender. Og se, jeg blev sendt til jer for også at kundgøre det for jer, så I kan få glædelige tidender, men se, I ville ikke modtage mig.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

- 8 Derfor, så siger Herren: På grund af det nefitiske folks hårdhertethed tager jeg, medmindre de omvender sig, mit ord bort fra dem, og jeg trækker min Ånd tilbage fra dem, og jeg bærer ikke længere over med dem, og jeg vender deres brødres hjerte mod dem.
- 9 Og der skal ikke gå fire hundrede år, før jeg foranlediger, at de bliver slået; ja, jeg hjemsøger dem med sværdet og med hungersnød og med pest.
- 10 Ja, jeg hjemsøger dem i min rasende vrede, og der skal være nogle af det fjerde slægtled blandt jeres fjender, som skal leve længe nok til at se jeres fuldstændige undergang; og dette skal visselig ske, medmindre I omvender jer, siger Herren; og disse af det fjerde slægtled, skal bringe jeres undergang over jer.
- 11 Men hvis I omvender jer og igen vender jer til Herren jeres Gud, bortvender jeg min vrede, siger Herren; ja, så siger Herren, velsignede er de, der omvender sig og vender sig til mig, men ve den, der ikke omvender sig.
- 12 Ja, ve denne store by Zarahemla, for se, det er på grund af dem, der er retfærdige, at den bliver skånet; ja, ve denne store by, for jeg ser, siger Herren, at der er mange, ja, endog størstedelen af denne store by, der forhærder hjertet mod mig, siger Herren.
- 13 Men velsignede er de, der omvender sig, for dem skåner jeg. Men se, hvis det ikke var for de retfærdige, som er i denne store by, se, da ville jeg foranledige, at der kom ild ned fra himlen og ødelagde den.
- 14 Men se, det er for de retfærdiges skyld, at den bliver skånet. Men se, den tid kommer, siger Herren, at når I støder de retfærdige ud fra jer, da skal I være modne til udryddelse; ja, ve denne store by på grund af den ugudelighed og de vederstyggeligheder, som findes i hende.
- 15 Ja, og ve byen Gideon for den ugudelighed og de vederstyggeligheder, som findes i hende.
- 16 Ja, og ve alle de byer, som findes i landet rundt omkring, og som er i nefitternes besiddelse, på grund af den ugudelighed og de vederstyggeligheder, som findes i dem.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

- 17 Og se, en forbandelse skal komme over landet, siger Hærskarers Herre, på grund af det folk, som er i landet, ja, på grund af deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder.
- 18 Og det skal ske, siger Hærskarers Herre, ja, vor mægtige og sande Gud, at den, som skjuler skatte i jorden, aldrig mere skal finde dem igen på grund af landets mægtige forbandelse, medmindre han er en retfærdig mand og skjuler dem i Herren.
- 19 For jeg vil, siger Herren, at de skal skjule deres skatte til mig, og forbandet være de, der ikke skjuler deres skatte til mig, for ingen skjuler deres skatte til mig, bortset fra de retfærdige; og den, der ikke skjuler sine skatte til mig, forbandet er han og også skatten, og ingen skal få den tilbage på grund af landets forbandelse.
- 20 Og den dag skal komme, da de skal skjule deres skatte, fordi de har ladet hjertet blive optaget af rigdomme; og fordi de har ladet hjertet blive optaget af deres rigdomme og vil skjule deres skatte, når de flygter for deres fjender, forbandet være de og også deres skatte, fordi de ikke vil skjule dem til mig; og på den dag skal de blive slået, siger Herren.
- 21 Se, I indbyggere i denne store by, og lyt til mine ord; ja, lyt til de ord, som Herren siger, for se, han siger, at I er forbandet på grund af jeres rigdomme, og jeres rigdomme er også forbandet, fordi I har ladet hjertet blive optaget af dem og ikke har lyttet til ordene fra ham, som gav dem til jer.
- 22 I husker ikke Herren jeres Gud i det, som han har velsignet jer med, men I husker altid jeres rigdomme, skønt I ikke takker Herren jeres Gud for dem; ja, jeres hjerte er ikke vendt til Herren, men det svulmer af stor stolthed til pral og til stor hovmod, misundelse, stridigheder, ondsindethed, forfølgelse og mord og al slags syndighed.
- 23 Af denne årsag har Gud Herren foranlediget, at en forbandelse skal komme over landet og også over jeres rigdomme, og dette på grund af jeres syndighed.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

24 Ja, ve dette folk på grund af denne tid, som er kommet, da I støder profeterne ud og spotter dem og kaster sten mod dem og slår dem ihjel og begår al slags ugudelighed mod dem, ligesom de gjorde fordum.

25 Og se, når I taler, siger I: Hvis vore dage havde været i vor fordums fædres dage, havde vi ikke slået profeterne ihjel, havde vi ikke stenet dem og stødt dem ud.

26 Se, I er værre end de, for så sandt som Herren lever, bliver I, hvis der kommer en profet blandt jer og kundgør jer Herrens ord, der vidner om jeres synder og syndighed, vrede på ham og støder ham ud og forsøger på alle måder at slå ham ihjel; ja, I vil sige, at han er en falsk profet, og at han er en synder og af Djævelen, fordi han vidner om, at jeres handlinger er onde.

27 Men se, hvis der kommer en mand blandt jer og siger: Gør dette, og det er der ingen synd i; gør hint, og I skal ikke lide! ja, han siger: Vandr efter jeres eget hjertes stolthed, ja, vandr efter jeres øjnes stolthed, og gør, hvad end jeres hjerte ønsker! – og hvis der kommer en mand blandt jer og siger dette, modtager I ham og siger, at han er profet.

28 Ja, I løfter ham op, og I giver ham af jeres gods, I giver ham af jeres guld og af jeres sølv, og I klæder ham i kostbare klæder; og fordi han taler smigrende ord til jer, og han siger, at alt er vel, så finder I ingen fejl hos ham.

29 O, du ugudelige og du afsporede slægt, I forhærdede og stivnakkede mennesker, hvor længe tror I, at Herren vil tåle jer? Ja, hvor længe vil I tillade jer at blive ledt af tåbelige og blinde vejledere? Ja, hvor længe vil I vælge mørke frem for lys?

30 Ja, se, Herrens vrede er allerede tændt imod jer, se, han har forbandet landet på grund af jeres ugudelighed.

31 Og se, den tid kommer, da han vil forbande jeres rigdomme, så de vil blive glatte, så I ikke kan holde på dem; og i jeres fattigdoms dage kan I ikke beholde dem.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

32 Og i jeres fattigdoms dage skal I anråbe Herren, og I skal råbe forgæves, for jeres ødelæggelse er allerede kommet over jer, og jeres undergang er gjort sikker, og på den dag skal I græde og hyle, siger Hærskarers Herre. Og da skal I klage og sige:

33 O, gid jeg havde omvendt mig og ikke havde dræbt profeterne og stenet dem og stødt dem ud! Ja, på den dag skal I sige: O, gid vi havde husket Herren vor Gud den dag, da han gav os vore rigdomme, så var de ikke blevet glatte, så vi mistede dem, for se, vore rigdomme er forsvundet for os.

34 Se, vi lægger et stykke værktøj her, og i morgen er det borte; og se, vore sværd bliver taget fra os den dag, vi søger efter dem til kamp.

35 Ja, vi har skjult vore skatte, og de er gledet fra os på grund af landets forbandelse.

36 O, gid vi havde omvendt os den dag, da Herrens ord kom til os; for se, landet er forbandet, og alle ting er blevet glatte, og vi kan ikke holde på dem.

37 Se, vi er omgivet af dæmoner, ja, vi er omringet af hans engle, han som har forsøgt at fordærve vor sjæl. Se, vor syndighed er stor. O Herre, kan du ikke bortvende din vrede fra os? Og sådan skal jeres sprog være i de dage.

38 Men se, jeres prøves dage er forbi, I har udsat jeres frelses dag, indtil det er evigtvarende for sent, og jeres undergang er gjort sikker; ja, for alle jeres livs dage har I stræbt efter det, som I ikke kunne få, og I har stræbt efter lykke ved at gøre misgerninger, hvilket er i modstrid med beskaffenheden af den retfærdighed, som er hos vort mægtige og evige overhoved.

39 O, I folk i dette land, gid I ville høre mine ord! Og jeg beder om, at Herrens vrede må blive bortvendt fra jer, og at I vil omvende jer og blive frelst.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Helamans Bog 14

- 1 Og se, det skete, at lamanitten Samuel profeterede meget mere, som ikke kan skrives.
- 2 Og se, han sagde til dem: Se, jeg giver jer et tegn, for der kommer endnu fem år, og se, så kommer Guds Søn for at forløse alle dem, som vil tro på hans navn.
- 3 Og se, dette vil jeg give jer som et tegn på tidspunktet for hans komme; for se, der skal være store lys på himlen i et sådant omfang, at der om natten, før han kommer, intet mørke skal være, i et sådant omfang at det for mennesker skal se ud som om, det var dag.
- 4 Derfor skal der være én dag og en nat og en dag, som om det var én dag og der ingen nat var; og dette skal være jer et tegn, for I skal lægge mærke til solens opgang og også til dens nedgang, derfor skal I med vished vide, at der skal være to dage og en nat; alligevel skal natten ikke formørkes, og dét skal være natten, før han bliver født.
- 5 Og se, der skal også stige en ny stjerne op, en sådan, som I aldrig før har set; og dette skal også være jer et tegn.
- 6 Og se, det er ikke alt; der skal være mange tegn og undere på himlen.
- 7 Og det skal ske, at I alle vil blive forbløffet og undre jer i en sådan grad, at I falder til jorden.
- 8 Og det skal ske, at hver den, der tror på Guds Søn, han skal have evigtvarende liv.
- 9 Og se, på denne måde har Herren ved sin engel befalet mig, at jeg skulle komme og fortælle jer dette, ja, han har befalet mig, at jeg skulle profetere dette for jer; ja, han har sagt til mig: Råb til dette folk: Omvend jer, og bered Herrens vej.
- 10 Og se, fordi jeg er lamanit og har talt de ord til jer, som Herren har befalet mig, og fordi det var hårdt mod jer, er I nu vrede på mig og forsøger at slå mig ihjel og har stødt mig ud fra jer.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

11 Og I skal høre mine ord, for i den hensigt er jeg steget op på denne bys mure, for at I kan høre om og kende til Guds straffedomme, som venter jer på grund af jeres syndighed, og for at I også kan kende betingelserne for omvendelse.

12 Og også for at I kan kende til Jesu Kristi komme, Guds Søn, himlens og jordens Fader, skaberen af alt fra begyndelsen, og for at I kan kende til tegnene på hans komme i den hensigt, at I kan tro på hans navn.

13 Og hvis I tror på hans navn, vil I omvende jer fra alle jeres synder, så I derved kan få forladelse for dem ved hans fortjenester.

14 Og se videre, et andet tegn giver jeg til jer, ja, et tegn på hans død.

15 For se, han må visselig dø, for at frelse kan blive tilvejebragt; ja, det påhviler ham og bliver nødvendigt, at han dør for at tilvejebringe de dødes opstandelse, så menneskene derved kan blive bragt ind i Herrens nærhed.

16 Ja, se, denne død tilvejebringer opstandelsen og forløser hele menneskeslægten fra den første død – den åndelige død, for hele menneskeslægten, som ved Adams fald blev forstødt fra Herrens nærhed, betragtes som død, både med hensyn til det timelige og til det åndelige.

17 Men se, Kristi opstandelse forløser menneskeslægten, ja, hele menneskeslægten og bringer dem tilbage i Herrens nærhed.

18 Ja, og den tilvejebringer betingelsen for omvendelse, så hver den, der omvender sig, han ikke bliver hugget om og kastet i ilden, men hver den, der ikke omvender sig, bliver hugget om og kastet i ilden; og der kommer igen en åndelig død over dem, ja, en anden død, for de bliver igen forstødt med hensyn til det, der hører til retfærdighed.

19 Derfor, omvend jer, omvend jer, så I ikke, ved at vide dette og ikke gøre derefter, selv skal lade jer komme under fordømmelse og blive ført ned til denne anden død.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

20 Men se, som jeg sagde til jer angående et andet tegn, et tegn på hans død, se, på den dag, da han lider døden, skal solen blive formørket og nægte at give sit lys til jer, og ligeså månen og stjernerne, og der skal ikke være noget lys på dette lands overflade i et tidsrum af tre dage fra det tidspunkt, han lider døden, til det tidspunkt han igen opstår fra de døde.

21 Ja, på det tidspunkt han opgiver ånden, skal der være torden og lyn i et tidsrum af mange timer, og jorden skal ryste og bæve; og de klipper, som er på denne jords overflade, og som er både over jorden og under den, og som I på dette tidspunkt ved er faste eller hvoraf størstedelen er én fast masse, skal blive brudt op,

22 ja, de skal blive brudt i to stykker og skal derefter altid være fulde af sprækker og revner og blive fundet som brudte stykker på hele jordens overflade, ja, både over jorden og under den.

23 Og se, der skal komme mægtige uvejr, og mange bjerge skal blive lagt lave ligesom en dal, og der skal være mange steder, som nu kaldes dale, der skal blive til bjerge, hvis højde er stor.

24 Og mange hovedveje skal blive brudt op, og mange byer skal blive lagt øde.

25 Og mange grave skal blive åbnet og skal afgive mange af deres døde, og mange hellige skal vise sig for mange.

26 Og se, således har englen talt til mig, for han sagde til mig, at der skulle være torden og lyn i et tidsrum af mange timer.

27 Og han sagde til mig, at mens tordenen og lynene varede, og uvejret, at dette skulle ske, og at mørke skulle dække hele jordens overflade i et tidsrum af tre dage.

28 Og englen sagde til mig, at mange skal se det, der er større end dette i den hensigt, at de skal tro, at disse tegn og disse undere skulle ske på hele dette lands overflade i den hensigt, at der ikke skulle være nogen grund til van-tro blandt menneskenes børn –

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

29 Og dette i den hensigt, at hver den, der vil tro, kan blive frelst, og at der vil komme en retfærdig straffedom over hver den, der ikke vil tro; og også at de, hvis de bliver dømt skyldige, da selv bringer deres egen fordømmelse over sig.

30 Og husk nu, husk, mine brødre, at hver den, som fortabes, fortabes af sig selv; og hver den, som gør misgerninger, gør det mod sig selv; for se, I er frie, det er jer tilladt at handle selv; for se, Gud har givet jer en kundskab, og han har gjort jer fri.

31 Han har givet jer, at I kan kende godt fra ondt, og han har givet jer, at I kan vælge liv eller død; og I kan gøre godt og blive bragt tilbage til det, der er godt, eller blive gengældt med det, der er godt; eller I kan gøre ondt og blive gengældt med det, der er ondt.

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Helamans Bog 15

- 1 Og se, mine elskede brødre, se, jeg kundgør for jer, at medmindre I omvender jer, skal jeres huse lægges øde.
- 2 Ja, medmindre I omvender jer, skal jeres kvinder have stor grund til at sørge på den dag, da de giver die; for I skal forsøge at flygte, og der skal ikke være noget tilflugtssted; ja, ve dem, som er med barn, for de skal være tunge og kan ikke flygte; derfor bliver de trådt ned og bliver ladet tilbage for at omkomme.
- 3 Ja, ve dette folk, som kaldes Nefis folk, medmindre de omvender sig, når de ser alle disse tegn og undere, som skal blive vist dem; for se, de har været et folk, som var udvalgt af Herren, ja, Nefis folk har han elsket, og han har også revset dem, ja, i deres syndigheds dage har han revset dem, fordi han elsker dem.
- 4 Men se, mine brødre, lamanitterne har han hadet, fordi deres handlinger bestandigt har været onde, og det på grund af ugudeligheden af deres fædres overlevering. Men se, frelse er blevet dem til del ved nefitternes forkyndelse, og i den hensigt har Herren forlænget deres dage.
- 5 Og jeg ønsker, at I skal se, at størstedelen af dem er på pligtens sti, og de vandrer med omhu for Gud, og de bestræber sig på at holde hans befalinger og hans lovbud og hans retsregler i henhold til Moseloven.
- 6 Ja, jeg siger jer, at størstedelen af dem gør dette, og de bestræber sig med utrættelig flid på at bringe resten af deres brødre til kundskab om sandheden; derfor er der mange, der slutter sig til dem hver dag.
- 7 Og se, I ved det selv, for I har været vidne til, at så mange af dem, som bliver bragt til kundskab om sandheden og til at kende til deres fædres ugudelige og vederstyggelige overleveringer og bliver ledt til at tro på de hellige skrifter, ja, de hellige profeters profetier, som er skrevet, og som leder dem til tro på Herren og til omvendelse, hvilken tro og omvendelse medfører en forandring i hjertet hos dem –

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

- 8 derfor er, som I selv ved, så mange, som er kommet hertil, faste og standhaftige i troen og i det, hvormed de er blevet gjort fri.
- 9 Og I ved også, at de har gravet deres krigsvåben ned, og de er bange for at tage dem op for ikke derved på en eller anden måde at komme til at synde, ja, I kan se, at de er bange for at synde – for se, de vil lade sig træde ned og slå ihjel af deres fjender og vil ikke løfte deres sværd mod dem, og dette på grund af deres tro på Kristus.
- 10 Og se, på grund af deres standhaftighed, når de tror på det, som de tror på, for på grund af deres fasthed, efter at de én gang er blevet oplyst, se, da vil Herren velsigne dem og forlænge deres dage til trods for deres ugudelighed –
- 11 ja, selv om de skulle synke ned i vantro, vil Herren forlænge deres dage, indtil den tid kommer, som er blevet omtalt af vore fædre og også af profeten Zenos og mange andre profeter angående vore brødres, lamaniternes, tilbagevenden til kundskab om sandheden –
- 12 ja, jeg siger jer, at i de sidste tider er Herrens løfter blevet udstrakt til vore brødre, lamanitterne; og til trods for de mange trængsler, som de skal få, og til trods for, at de skal blive drevet hid og did på jordens overflade og blive jaget og skal blive slået og spredt vidt omkring uden at have noget tilflugtssted, vil Herren være barmhjertig mod dem.
- 13 Og dette er ifølge profetien, at de igen skal blive bragt til den sande kundskab, som er kundskaben om deres forløser og deres store og sande hyrde og blive regnet blandt hans får.
- 14 Derfor siger jeg til jer: Det skal blive bedre for dem end for jer, medmindre I omvender jer.
- 15 For se, var de mægtige gerninger, som er blevet vist for jer, blevet vist for dem, ja, for dem, som er sunket ned i vantro på grund af deres fædres overleveringer, så kan I selv se, at de aldrig igen ville være sunket ned i vantro.
- 16 Derfor siger Herren: Jeg vil ikke udrydde dem fuldstændig, men jeg vil foranledige, at de på min visdoms dag skal vende tilbage til mig, siger Herren.

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

17 Og se nu, siger Herren, angående det nefitiske folk: Hvis de ikke vil omvende sig og bestræbe sig på at gøre min vilje, vil jeg udrydde dem fuldstændig, siger Herren, på grund af deres vantro til trods for de mange mægtige gerninger, som jeg har udført blandt dem; og så vist som Herren lever, skal dette ske, siger Herren.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Helamans Bog 16

- 1 Og se, det skete, at der var mange, der hørte lamanitten Samuels ord, som han talte på byens mure. Og så mange, som troede på hans ord, gik hen og søgte efter Nephi; og da de var kommet hen og havde fundet ham, bekendte de deres synder for ham og benægtede dem ikke, for de ønskede, at de kunne blive døbt til Herren.
- 2 Men så mange, som der var, som ikke troede på Samuels ord, blev vrede på ham; og de kastede sten efter ham på muren, og også mange skød pile efter ham, mens han stod på muren; men Herrens Ånd var med ham, således at de ikke kunne ramme ham med deres sten, ej heller med deres pile.
- 3 Se, da de så, at de ikke kunne ramme ham, var der mange flere, som troede på hans ord, således at de gik hen til Nephi for at blive døbt.
- 4 For se, Nephi døbte og profeterede og prædikede, idet han råbte omvendelse til folket, viste tegn og undere og udførte mirakler blandt folket, så de kunne vide, at Kristus snart måtte komme –
- 5 idet han fortalte om det, som snart skulle ske, så de, på det tidspunkt, hvor det skete, kunne vide og huske, at det var blevet gjort kendt for dem på forhånd i den hensigt, at de skulle tro; derfor gik så mange, som troede på Samuels ord, hen til ham for at blive døbt, for de kom angrende og bekendte deres synder.
- 6 Men størstedelen af dem troede ikke på Samuels ord; da de derfor så, at de ikke kunne ramme ham med deres sten og deres pile, råbte de til deres anførere og sagde: Pågrib denne karl, og bind ham, for se, han har en djævel i sig; og på grund af kraften fra den djævel, der er i ham, kan vi ikke ramme ham med vore sten og vore pile; pågrib ham derfor, og bind ham og bort med ham.
- 7 Og da de gik hen for at lægge hånd på ham, se, da kastede han sig ned fra muren og flygtede ud af deres lande, ja, ind i sit eget land og begyndte at prædike og at profetere blandt sit eget folk.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

8 Og se, man hørte aldrig mere noget til ham blandt nefitterne; og således var forholdene hos folket.

9 Og således endte det seksogfirsindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.

10 Og således endte også det syvogfirsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, idet størstedelen af folket forblev i deres stolthed og ugudelighed, og den mindre del vandrede med større omhu for Gud.

11 Og dette var også forholdene i det otteogfirsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid.

12 Og der var kun få ændringer i forholdene hos folket i det niogfirsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, bortset fra at folket begyndte at blive mere forhærdede i ugudelighed og mere og mere at gøre det, som var i modstrid med Guds befalinger.

13 Men det skete i det halvfemsindstyvende år af dommernes regeringstid, at der blev givet folket store tegn og undere; og profeternes ord begyndte at blive opfyldt.

14 Og engle viste sig for mennesker, vise mennesker, og kundgjorde dem glædelige tidender om stor glæde; således begyndte skrifterne i dette år at blive opfyldt.

15 Alligevel begyndte folket at forhærde hjertet, alle bortset fra den del af dem, der var mest troende, både blandt nefitterne og også blandt lamanitterne, og de begyndte at forlade sig på deres egen styrke og på deres egen visdom og at sige:

16 Nogle ting har de måske gættet rigtigt blandt så mange, men se, vi ved, at alle disse store og forunderlige gerninger, som der er blevet talt om, ikke kan ske.

17 Og de begyndte at drøfte det og at strides indbyrdes, idet de sagde:

18 Det er fornuftstridigt, at et sådant væsen som en Kristus skal komme; hvis så var, og han er Guds Søn, himlens og jordens Fader, som det er blevet talt, hvorfor vil han da ikke vise sig for os lige såvel som for dem, der er i Jerusalem?

19 Ja, hvorfor vil han ikke vise sig i dette land lige såvel som i Jerusalems land?

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvellous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

- 20 Men se, vi ved, at dette er en ugudelig overlevering, som er blevet overleveret os af vore forfædre for at få os til at tro på noget stort og forunderligt, der skulle ske, men ikke blandt os, men i et land, der er langt borte, et land som vi ikke kender; derfor kan de holde os i uvidenhed, for vi kan ikke med vore egne øjne se, at det er sandt.
- 21 Og de vil med den Ondes snedige og hemmelighedsfulde kneb udvirke et eller andet stort mysterium, som vi ikke kan forstå, og som vil holde os nede, så vi skal være tjenere for deres ord og også tjenere for dem, for vi er afhængige af, at de lærer os ordet; og således vil de holde os i uvidenhed alle vort livs dage, hvis vi vil overgive os til dem.
- 22 Og folket forestillede sig i hjertet meget mere, som var tåbeligt og forfængeligt; og de blev meget oprørte, for Satan opæggede dem til bestandig at gøre misgerninger, ja, han gik omkring og spredte rygter og splid på hele landets overflade, så han kunne forhærde folkets hjerte mod det, der var godt, og mod det, der skulle ske.
- 23 Og til trods for de tegn og de undere, som blev udvirket blandt Herrens folk, og de mange mirakler, som de gjorde, fik Satan et fast greb om hjertet hos folk på hele landets overflade.
- 24 Og således endte det halvfemsindstyvende år af den periode, hvor dommerne regerede over Nefis folk.
- 25 Og således endte Helamans bog ifølge Helamans og hans sønners optegnelse.

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

Tredje Nefi

Nefis Bog

Af Nefi, søn af Nefi, som var
Helamans søn

Og Helaman var søn af Helaman, som var søn af Alma, som var søn af Alma, som var efterkommer af Nefi, som var søn af Lehi, der drog ud fra Jerusalem i det første år af Sidkijas, Judas konges, regeringstid.

Tredje Nefi 1

- 1 Se, det skete, at det enoghalvfemsindstyvende år var gået, og det var seks hundrede år fra det tidspunkt, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem; og det var i det år, da Lakoneus var overdommer og regent over landet.
- 2 Og Nefi, Helamans søn, var draget ud af Zarahemlas land efter at have givet sin søn Nefi, der var hans ældste søn, ansvaret for bronzepladerne og alle de optegnelser, som var blevet ført, og alle de ting, der var blevet holdt hellige siden Lehis udrejse fra Jerusalem.
- 3 Så drog han ud af landet, og hvor han drog hen, ved ingen; og hans søn Nefi førte optegnelserne i hans sted, ja, optegnelsen om dette folk.
- 4 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det tooghalvfemsindstyvende år, se, profeternes profetier begyndte at blive mere fuldstændig opfyldt, for der begyndte at blive udvirket større tegn og større mirakler blandt folket.
- 5 Men der var nogle, som begyndte at sige, at tiden var gået for opfyldelsen af de ord, som blev talt af lamanitten Samuel.
- 6 Og de begyndte at fryde sig over deres brødre, idet de sagde: Se, tiden er gået, og Samuels ord er ikke blevet opfyldt, derfor har jeres glæde over og jeres tro på dette været forgæves.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son
of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7 Og det skete, at de skabte et stort røre overalt i hele landet; og de mennesker, som troede, begyndte at blive meget sorgfulde af frygt for, at det, som var blevet talt, måske ikke ville ske.
- 8 Men se, de ventede standhaftigt på den dag og den nat og den dag, der skulle være som én dag, som om der ingen nat var, så de kunne erfare, at deres tro ikke havde været forgæves.
- 9 Se, det skete, at der blev fastsat en dag af de ikke-troende, på hvilken alle de, der troede på disse overleveringer, skulle sendes i døden, medmindre det tegn, der var blevet givet af profeten Samuel, viste sig.
- 10 Se, det skete, at da Nefi, Nefis søn, så denne ugudelighed blandt sit folk, blev hans hjerte overordentlig sorgfuldt.
- 11 Og det skete, at han gik ud og bøjede sig til jorden og indtrængende anrøbede sin Gud for sit folk, ja, for dem, som stod for at blive slået ihjel på grund af deres tro på deres fædres overlevering.
- 12 Og det skete, at han indtrængende anrøbede Herren hele den dag; og se, Herrens røst kom til ham og sagde:
- 13 Løft dit hoved, og vær ved godt mod; for se, tiden er for hånden, og i denne nat skal tegnet blive givet, og i morgen kommer jeg til verden for at vise verden, at jeg vil opfylde alt det, som jeg har ladet tale ved mine hellige profeters mund.
- 14 Se, jeg kommer til mine egne for at opfylde alt det, som jeg har kundgjort for menneskenes børn fra verdens grundlæggelse og for at gøre både Faderens og Sønnens vilje – Faderens på grund af mig og Sønnens på grund af mit kød. Og se, tiden er for hånden, og i denne nat skal tegnet blive givet.
- 15 Og det skete, at de ord, der kom til Nefi, blev opfyldt, sådan som de var blevet talt; for se, ved solnedgang var der intet mørke; og folket begyndte at blive forbavset, fordi der intet mørke var, da natten kom.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

16 Og der var mange, der ikke havde troet profeternes ord, som faldt til jorden og blev, som var de døde, for de vidste, at den store ødelæggelsesplan, som de havde lagt for dem, der troede på profeternes ord, var blevet forpurret, for det tegn, der var blevet givet, var allerede for hånden.

17 Og de begyndte at forstå, at Guds Søn snart måtte komme; ja, kort sagt alle folk på hele jordens overflade fra vest til øst, både i landet mod nord og i landet mod syd, blev så overordentlig forbavsede, at de faldt til jorden.

18 For de vidste, at profeterne havde vidnet om dette i mange år, og at tegnet, som var blevet givet, allerede var for hånden; og de begyndte at frygte på grund af deres ugudelighed og deres vantro.

19 Og det skete, at der ikke var noget mørke hele den nat, men det var så lyst, som var det middag. Og det skete, at solen igen stod op om morgenen i overensstemmelse med sin rette orden; og de vidste, at det var den dag, da Herren skulle fødes på grund af det tegn, som var blevet givet.

20 Og det var sket, ja, alt til mindste enkelthed, i overensstemmelse med profeternes ord.

21 Og det skete også, at en ny stjerne viste sig i overensstemmelse med ordet.

22 Og det skete, at fra det tidspunkt af begyndte der at blive spredt løgne ud blandt folket af Satan for at forhærde deres hjerte i den hensigt, at de ikke skulle tro på de tegn og undere, som de havde set; men til trods for disse løgne og bedrag, troede størstedelen af folket og blev omvendt til Herren.

23 Og det skete, at Nefi drog ud blandt folket, og også mange andre, og døbte til omvendelse, hvorved der skete en stor forladelse af synder. Og således begyndte folket igen at få fred i landet.

24 Og der var ingen stridigheder, bortset fra at der var nogle få, der begyndte at prædike, idet de anstrengte sig for at bevise ved hjælp af skrifterne, at det ikke mere var nødvendigt at iagttage Moseloven. Se, heri tog de fejl, fordi de ikke havde forstået skrifterne.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

25 Men det skete, at de snart blev omvendt og blev overbevist om den vildfarelse, de var i, for det blev kundgjort for dem, at loven endnu ikke var opfyldt, og at den skulle opfyldes til mindste enkelthed; ja, ordet kom til dem, at den skulle opfyldes, ja, at ikke ét bogstav eller én tøddel skulle forgå, før det alt sammen skulle opfyldes; derfor blev de i det selv samme år bragt til kundskab om deres vildfarelse og bekendte deres fejl.

26 Og således gik det tooghalvfemsindstyvende år og bragte glædelige tidender til folket på grund af de tegn, der skete i overensstemmelse med alle de hellige profeters profetiske ord.

27 Og det skete, at det treoghalvfemsindstyvende år og så gik i fred, bortset fra gadiantrøverne, som boede i bjergene, og som oversvømmede landet; for så stærke var deres fæstninger og deres hemmelige steder, at folket ikke kunne besejre dem; derfor begik de mange mord og foretog mange nedslagtinger blandt folket.

28 Og det skete, at de i det fireoghalvfemsindstyvende år begyndte at øges i høj grad, fordi der var mange, der havde skilt sig ud fra nefitterne, som flygtede over til dem, hvilket voldte megen sorg for de nefitter, der blev tilbage i landet.

29 Og der var også en årsag til megen sorg blandt lamanitterne, for se, de havde mange børn, som voksede op og begyndte at vokse sig stærke i år, så de blev selvrådige, og de blev af løgne og smigrende ord fra nogle, der var zoramitter, forledt til at slutte sig til disse gadiantrøvere.

30 Og således blev lamanitterne også plaget og begyndte at aftage i deres tro og retfærdighed på grund af den opvoksende slægts ugudelighed.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadiantron robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadiantron robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

Tredje Nefi 2

- 1 Og det skete, at således gik også det femoghalvfemsindstyvende år, og folket begyndte at glemme de tegn og undere, som de havde hørt, og begyndte at blive mindre og mindre forbavsede over et tegn eller et under fra himlen, i en sådan grad at de begyndte at blive hårde i hjertet og blinde i sindet og begyndte at tvivle på alt, som de havde hørt og set –
- 2 idet de i hjertet indbildte sig en tom forestilling om, at de blev udvirket af mennesker og ved Djævelens magt for at forlede og bedrage folkets hjerte; og således satte Satan sig igen i besiddelse af folkets hjerte, således at han forblindede deres øjne og forledte dem til at tro, at læren om Kristus var tåbelig og tom.
- 3 Og det skete, at folket begyndte at vokse sig stærke i ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder; og de troede ikke, at der ville blive givet flere tegn og undere; og Satan gik omkring og forledte folkets hjerte, fristede dem og fik dem til at begå stor ugudelighed i landet.
- 4 Og således gik det seksoghalvfemsindstyvende år; og også det syvoghalvfemsindstyvende år; og også det otteoghalvfemsindstyvende år; og også det nioghalvfemsindstyvende år.
- 5 Og der var også gået et hundrede år siden Mosijas dage, han, som var konge over det nefitiske folk.
- 6 Og der var gået seks hundrede og ni år, siden Lehi forlod Jerusalem.
- 7 Og der var gået ni år fra det tidspunkt, da det tegn, som blev omtalt af profeterne, på, at Kristus skulle komme til verden, blev givet.
- 8 Se, nefitterne begyndte at regne deres tid fra denne tid, da tegnet blev givet, eller fra Kristi komme; derfor var der gået ni år.
- 9 Og Nefi, som var far til den Nefi, der havde ansvaret for optegnelserne, vendte ikke tilbage til Zarahemlas land og kunne ikke findes nogetsteds i hele landet.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

10 Og det skete, at folket stadig forblev i ugudelighed til trods for den megen forkyndelse og profeti, som blev udbredt blandt dem; og således gik også det tiende år; og det ellefte år gik også i syndighed.

11 Og det skete i det trettende år, at der opstod krige og stridigheder over hele landet, for gadiantrøverne var blevet så talrige og slog så mange af folket ihjel og lagde så mange byer øde og spredte så megen død og nedslagtning overalt i hele landet, at det blev nødvendigt, at hele folket, både nefitterne og lamanitterne, greb til våben mod dem.

12 Derfor forenede alle de lamanitter, som var blevet omvendt til Herren, sig med deres brødre, nefitterne, og blev af hensyn til sikkerheden for deres liv, og for deres kvinders og deres børns, tvunget til at gribe til våben mod disse gadiantrøvere, ja, og også for at hævde deres rettigheder og privilegierne med hensyn til deres kirke og deres tilbedelse og deres frihed.

13 Og det skete, at før det trettende år var gået, blev nefitterne truet med fuldstændig udryddelse som følge af denne krig, som var blevet meget hård.

14 Og det skete, at de lamanitter, som havde forenet sig med nefitterne, blev regnet blandt nefitterne;

15 og deres forbandelse blev taget fra dem, og deres hud blev hvid som nefitternes;

16 og deres unge mænd og deres døtre blev overordentlig skønne, og de blev regnet blandt nefitterne og blev kaldt nefitter. Og således endte det trettende år.

17 Og det skete i begyndelsen af det fjortende år, at krigen mellem røverne og Nefis folk fortsatte og blev overordentlig hård; alligevel opnåede Nefis folk nogen fordel over røverne, således at de drev dem tilbage ud af deres lande op i bjergene og til deres hemmelige steder.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadiantron robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadiantron robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

18 Og således endte det fjortende år. Og i det femtende år kom de frem mod Nefis folk, og på grund af Nefis folks ugudelighed og deres mange stridigheder og megen kiv vandt gadiantrøerne mange fordele over dem.

19 Og således endte det femtende år, og således var folket i en tilstand, hvor de havde mange trængsler; og ødelæggelsens sværd hang over dem, således at de var lige ved at blive slået ned af det, og dette på grund af deres ugudelighed.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadiantr robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

Tredje Nefi 3

- 1 Og se, det skete i det sekstende år efter Kristi komme, at Lakoneus, landets regent, modtog et brev fra lederen og regenten over denne røverbande; og dette var de ord, som stod skrevet, og som lød:
 - 2 Lakoneus, allerædleste og høje regent over landet, se, jeg skriver dette brev til dig og giver dig overordentlig stor ros for din fasthed og også for dit folks fasthed med hensyn til at hævde det, som I mener er jeres ret og frihed; ja, I står jer godt, som om I blev støttet af en guds hånd i forsvaret af jeres frihed og jeres ejendom og jeres land eller det, som I kalder således.
 - 3 Og det synes mig at være en skam, allerædleste Lakoneus, at I er så tåbelige og forfængelige at tro, at I kan stå jer mod så mange tapre mænd, som står under min kommando, og som nu på dette tidspunkt står bevæbnede og med stor iver venter på ordet: Drag ned mod nefitterne, og udryd dem.
 - 4 Og jeg, der kender deres uovervindelige ånd, og som har prøvet dem på slagmarken, og som kender til deres evigtvarende had til jer på grund af den megen uret, som I har gjort dem, jeg ved, at hvis de derfor drog mod jer, ville de hjemsøge jer med fuldstændig udryddelse.
 - 5 Derfor har jeg skrevet dette brev og forsegle det med min egen hånd, fordi jeg føler for jeres velfærd på grund af jeres fasthed i det, som I tror er ret, og jeres ædle ånd på slagmarken.
 - 6 Derfor skriver jeg til dig, da jeg ønsker af dig, at I vil opgive jeres byer, jeres lande og jeres besiddelser til dette mit, folk, hellere end at de skulle hjemsøge jer med sværdet, og at udryddelse skulle komme over jer.
 - 7 Eller med andre ord, overgiv jer til os, og forén jer med os, og bliv bekendt med vore hemmelige gerninger, og bliv vore brødre, så I kan blive som os – ikke vore slaver, men vore brødre og parthavere i alt vort gods.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

- 8 Og se, jeg sværger over for dig med en ed på, at hvis I vil gøre dette, skal I ikke blive udryddet, men hvis I ikke vil gøre det, sværger jeg over for dig med en ed på, at jeg næste måned vil befale, at mine hære skal drage ned mod jer, og de skal ikke holde deres hånd tilbage og skal ikke skåne nogen, men skal slå jer ihjel og skal lade sværdet falde over jer, lige indtil I bliver udslettet.
- 9 Og se, jeg er Giddianhi; og jeg er regent over dette, Gadiantons, hemmelige forbund, hvilket forbund og dets gerninger jeg ved er gode; og de er af ældgammel dato, og de er blevet overdraget til os.
- 10 Og jeg skriver dette brev til dig, Lakoneus, og jeg håber, at I vil overgive jeres lande og jeres ejendom uden udgydelse af blod, så dette mit folk, som har skilt sig ud fra jer på grund af jeres ugudelighed ved at formene dem deres rettigheder til regeringsmagten, må genvinde deres rettigheder og regeringsmagten, og medmindre I gør dette, vil jeg hævne deres uret. Jeg er Giddianhi.
- 11 Og se, det skete, at da Lakoneus modtog dette brev, blev han overordentlig forbavset på grund af den frimodighed, som Giddianhi udviste ved at kræve at få nefiternes land i besiddelse og også ved at true folket og ved at hævne den uret, der var begået mod dem, der ingen uret havde lidt, bortset fra at de havde gjort sig selv uret ved at skille sig ud og gå over til disse ugudelige og vederstyggelige røvere.
- 12 Se nu, denne Lakoneus, regenten, var en retfærdig mand og kunne ikke skræmmes af en røvers krav og trusler; derfor efterkom han ikke brevet fra Giddianhi, røvernes regent, men han foranledigede, at hans folk skulle anråbe Herren om at have styrke til den tid, da røverne ville komme ned mod dem.
- 13 Ja, han sendte en proklamation ud til hele folket om, at de skulle samle deres kvinder og deres børn, deres flokke og deres hjerde og alt deres gods bortset fra deres jord på ét sted.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

14 Og han foranledigede, at der skulle bygges befæstninger rundt omkring dem, og deres styrke skulle være overordentlig stor. Og han foranledigede, at der skulle opstilles hære af både nefitterne og af lamanitterne eller af alle dem, som blev regnet blandt nefitterne, som vogter rundt omkring for at vogte dem og for at værne dem mod røverne dag og nat.

15 Ja, han sagde til dem: Så sandt som Herren lever vil I, medmindre I omvender jer fra al jeres syndighed og anråber Herren, på ingen måde blive udfriet af disse gadiantrøveres hænder.

16 Og så store og forunderlige var Lakoneus' ord og profetier, at de fik frygt til at komme over hele folket; og de anstrengte sig af alle kræfter for at handle i henhold til Lakoneus' ord.

17 Og det skete, at Lakoneus udpegede øverste anførere for alle nefitternes hære til at kommandere på det tidspunkt, da røverne kom ned fra ødemarken mod dem.

18 Se, den øverste af alle de øverste anførere og den store hærfører for alle nefitternes hære blev udpeget, og hans navn var Gidgiddoni.

19 Se, det var skik blandt alle nefitterne (undtagen når de var ugudelige) at udpege en til øverste anfører, som havde åbenbarelsens og også profetiens ånd; derfor var denne Gidgiddoni en stor profet blandt dem, ligesom også overdommeren var.

20 Se, folket sagde til Gidgiddoni: Bed til Herren, og lad os drage op i bjergene og ud i ødemarken, så vi kan falde over røverne og udrydde dem i deres egne lande.

21 Men Gidgiddoni siger til dem: Herren forbyde det, for hvis vi drog imod dem, ville Herren overgive os i deres hænder; derfor vil vi gøre os rede midt i vore lande, og vi vil samle alle vore hære sammen, og vi vil ikke drage imod dem, men vi vil vente, til de kommer imod os; så sandt som Herren lever, vil han derfor overgive dem i vore hænder, hvis vi gør dette.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadiantrōvers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

- 22 Og det skete i det syttende år i den sidste del af året, at Lakoneus' proklamation var gået ud over hele landets overflade, og de havde taget deres heste og deres vogne og deres kvæg og alle deres flokke og deres hjerde og deres korn og alt deres gods og var marcheret af sted i tusindvis og i titusindvis, indtil de alle var kommet til det sted, der var blevet udpeget, hvor de skulle samle sig for at forsvare sig mod deres fjender.
- 23 Og det land, der var blevet udpeget, var Zarahemlas land og det land, der lå mellem landet Zarahemla og landet Overflod, ja, til den grænse, som lå mellem landet Overflod og landet Ødelæggelse.
- 24 Og der var mange, mange tusinde mennesker, som blev kaldt nefitter, der samlede sig i dette land. Se, Lakoneus foranledigede, at de skulle samle sig i landet mod syd på grund af den store forbandelse, som var over landet mod nord.
- 25 Og de forskansede sig mod deres fjender; og de boede i ét land og i én gruppe, og de frygtede de ord, der var blevet talt af Lakoneus, i en sådan grad at de omvendte sig fra alle deres synder; og de opsendte deres bønner til Herren deres Gud om, at han ville udfri dem på det tidspunkt, da deres fjender kom ned mod dem for at kæmpe.
- 26 Og de var overordentlig sorgfulde på grund af deres fjender. Og Gidgiddoni foranledigede, at de skulle lave krigsvåben af enhver art, og at de skulle være stærke med rustninger og med skjolde og med småskjolde efter den måde, han anviste.
- And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.
- And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.
- And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.
- And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.
- And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

Tredje Nefi 4

- 1 Og det skete i slutningen af det attende år, at disse røverhære havde beredt sig til krig og begyndte at komme ned og at gøre udfald fra højene og oppe fra bjergene og ødemarken og deres støttesteder og deres hemmelige steder og begyndte at sætte sig i besiddelse af landene, både de, der lå i landet mod syd, og de, der lå i landet mod nord, og begyndte at sætte sig i besiddelse af alle de lande, som var blevet rømmet af nefitterne, og de byer, som var blevet efterladt øde.
- 2 Men se, der var ingen vilde rovdyr eller vildt i de lande, som var blevet rømmet af nefitterne, og der var intet vildt til røverne, undtagen i ødemarken.
- 3 Og røverne kunne ikke leve andre steder end i ødemarken på grund af mangel på føde, for nefitterne havde efterladt deres land øde og havde samlet deres flokke og deres hjerde og alt deres gods, og de var i én gruppe.
- 4 Derfor havde røverne ingen mulighed for at plyndre og skaffe sig føde undtagen ved at komme frem i åben kamp mod nefitterne; og nefitterne var i én gruppe og havde så stort et antal og havde forsynet sig med forråd og heste og kvæg og flokke af enhver art, så de kunne opretholde livet i et tidsrum af syv år, i løbet af hvilken tid de håbede at kunne udrydde røverne fra landets overflade; og således gik det attende år.
- 5 Og det skete i det nittende år, at Giddianhi fandt, at det var nødvendigt, at han drog ud for at kæmpe mod nefitterne, for der var ingen måde, hvorpå de kunne opretholde livet, undtagen ved at plyndre og røve og myrde.
- 6 Og de turde ikke at sprede sig ud over landets overflade, således at de kunne dyrke korn af frygt for, at nefitterne skulle falde over dem og slå dem ihjel; derfor gav Giddianhi befaling til sine hære om, at de i dette år skulle drage ud for at kæmpe mod nefitterne.

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

7 Og det skete, at de kom frem for at kæmpe; og det var i den sjette måned; og se, stor og skrækkelig var den dag, da de kom frem for at kæmpe; og de var omgjordet på røveres vis, og de havde et lammeskind om lænderne, og de var farvet med blod, og hovedet var raget, og de havde hjelme på; ja, stort og skrækkeligt var synet af Giddianhis hære på grund af deres panser og på grund af, at de var farvet med blod.

8 Og det skete, at nefitternes hære, da de så synet af Giddianhis hær, alle faldt til jorden og opløftede deres røb til Herren deres Gud om, at han ville skåne dem og udfri dem af deres fjenders hænder.

9 Og det skete, at da Giddianhis hære så dette, begyndte de at råbe med høj røst på grund af deres glæde, for de troede, at nefitterne var faldet om af frygt på grund af den skræk, deres hære spredte.

10 Men deri blev de skuffet, for nefitterne frygtede ikke dem, men de frygtede deres Gud og anrøbte ham om beskyttelse; da Giddianhis hære kastede sig over dem, var de derfor beredte til at møde dem, ja, i Herrens styrke tog de imod dem.

11 Og slaget begyndte i denne den sjette måned; og stort og skrækkeligt var dette slag, ja, stor og skrækkelig var denne nedslagtning, så at man aldrig havde set så stor en nedslagtning blandt hele Lehis folk, siden han forlod Jerusalem.

12 Og til trods for de trusler, som Giddianhi havde udslynget, og de eder, som han havde aflagt, se, så slog nefitterne dem, således at de veg tilbage for dem.

13 Og det skete, at Gidgiddoni befalede, at hans hære skulle forfølge dem så langt som til ødemarkens grænseegne, og at de ikke skulle skåne nogen, der faldt i deres hænder undervejs; og således forfulgte de dem og slog dem ihjel til ødemarkens grænseegne, lige indtil de havde udført Gidgiddonis befaling.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

14 Og det skete, at Giddianhi, som havde stået og kæmpet med frimodighed, blev forfulgt, da han flygtede; og da han var udmattet på grund af, at han havde kæmpet meget, blev han indhentet og slået ihjel. Og således var røveren Giddianhis endeligt.

15 Og det skete, at nefitternes hære igen vendte tilbage til deres sikre sted. Og det skete, at dette, det nittende, år gik, og røverne kom ikke igen for at kæmpe; ej heller kom de igen i det tyvende år.

16 Og i det enogtyvende år kom de ikke frem for at kæmpe, men de kom frem fra alle sider for at belejre Nefis folk; for de troede, at hvis de kunne afskære Nefis folk fra deres lande og kunne indeslutte dem fra alle sider, og hvis de kunne afskære dem fra al deres virke udenfor, at de da kunne få dem til at overgive sig i overensstemmelse med deres ønsker.

17 Se, de havde udpeget sig en anden leder, hvis navn var Zemnariha; derfor var det Zemnariha, der foranledigede, at denne belejring skulle finde sted.

18 Men se, dette var en fordel for nefitterne, for det var umuligt for røverne at opretholde belejringen tilstrækkelig længe til, at den fik nogen virkning på nefitterne på grund af den store mængde forråd, som de havde oplagret,

19 og på grund af knapheden af forråd blandt røverne; for se, de havde intet at leve af, bortset fra kød, som de skaffede sig i ødemarken;

20 og det skete, at der blev knaphed på vildt i ødemarken i en sådan grad, at røverne var ved at omkomme af sult.

21 Og nefitterne marcherede bestandig ud ved dag og ved nat og faldt over deres hære og slog dem ihjel i tusindvis og i titusindvis.

22 Og således blev det Zemnarihas folks ønske at trække sig tilbage fra deres forehavende på grund af den store ødelæggelse, der kom over dem ved dag og ved nat.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

23 Og det skete, at Zemnariha gav befaling til sine folk om, at de skulle ophæve belejringen og marchere ind i de fjerneste dele af landet mod nord.

24 Og se, Gidgiddoni, der var klar over deres forehavende og kendte til den svaghed, de led under på grund af mangel på mad, og den store nedslagtning, som havde fundet sted blandt dem, han sendte derfor sine hære ud ved nattetide og afskar dem vejen for deres tilbagetog og anbragte sine hære langs vejen for deres tilbagetog.

25 Og dette gjorde de ved nattetide og kom på deres march foran røverne, så da røverne den næste dag begyndte deres march, blev de mødt af nefitternes hære både forfra og bagfra.

26 Og de røvere, som var mod syd, blev også afskåret fra deres tilflugtssteder. Og alt dette skete på Gidgiddonis befaling.

27 Og der var mange tusinde, som overgav sig som fanger til nefitterne, og resten af dem blev slået ihjel.

28 Og deres leder Zemnariha blev pågrebet og hængt i et træ, ja, i toppen af det, indtil han var død. Og da de havde hængt ham, indtil han var død, fældede de træet til jorden og råbte med høj røst og sagde:

29 Måtte Herren bevare sit folk i retfærdighed og i hjertets hellighed, så de må lade alle, som forsøger at slå dem ihjel på grund af magt og hemmelige sammensværgelser, fælde til jorden, ligesom denne mand er blevet fældet til jorden.

30 Og de frydede sig og råbte igen med én røst og sagde: Måtte Abrahams Gud og Isaks Gud og Jakobs Gud beskytte dette folk i retfærdighed, så længe de påkalder deres Guds navn for at få beskyttelse.

31 Og det skete, at de alle som én brød ud i lovsang og lovprisning af deres Gud for det store, han havde gjort for dem ved at have bevaret dem fra at falde i deres fjenders hænder.

32 Ja, de råbte: Hosanna til Gud den Højeste. Og de råbte: Velsignet være Herren Gud den Almægtiges, Gud den Højestes, navn.

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

33 Og deres hjerte var så fyldt af glæde, at mange tårer vældede frem på grund af Guds store godhed ved at have udfriet dem af deres fjenders hænder; og de vidste, at det var på grund af deres omvendelse og deres ydmyghed, at de var blevet udfriet fra en evigtvarende undergang.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

Tredje Nefi 5

- 1 Og se nu, der var ikke en levende sjæl blandt hele det nefitiske folk, som tvivlede det mindste på ordene fra alle de hellige profeter, som havde talt; for de vidste, at det nødvendigvis måtte være sådan, at de måtte blive opfyldt.
- 2 Og de vidste, at Kristus nødvendigvis måtte være kommet på grund af de mange tegn, der var blevet givet i overensstemmelse med profeternes ord; og på grund af det, der allerede var sket, vidste de, at det nødvendigvis måtte være sådan, at alt ville ske i overensstemmelse med det, der var blevet talt.
- 3 Derfor aflagde de alle deres synder og deres vederstyggeligheder og deres utugtigheder og tjente Gud med al flid dag og nat.
- 4 Og se, det skete, at da de havde taget alle røverne til fange, således at ingen, som ikke var blevet slået ihjel, undslap, kastede de deres fanger i fængsel og lod Guds ord blive prædikeret for dem; og så mange, som ville omvende sig fra deres synder og indgå en pagt om, at de ikke mere ville myrde, blev sat fri.
- 5 Men så mange, som ikke indgik en pagt, og som stadig fortsatte med at have disse hemmelige mord i hjertet, ja, så mange, som blev grebet i at udslynge trusler mod deres brødre, blev dømt og straffet i henhold til loven.
- 6 Og således gjorde de en ende på alle disse ugudelige og hemmelige og vederstyggelige sammensværgelser, hvori der blev begået så megen ugudelighed og så mange mord.
- 7 Og således var det toogtyvende år gået og også det treogtyvende og det fireogtyvende og det femogtyvende år; og således var der gået femogtyve år.
- 8 Og meget var hændt, som i nogles øjne ville synes stort og forunderligt; alligevel kan det ikke alt sammen skrives i denne bog, ja, denne bog kan ikke engang rumme en hundrededel af det, der skete blandt så mange folk i et tidsrum af femogtyve år;

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

9 men se, der findes optegnelser, som indeholder alt dette folks virke; og en kortere, men sand beretning, blev skrevet af Nefi.

10 Derfor har jeg udfærdiget min optegnelse om dette ud fra Nefis optegnelse, der var indgraveret på de plader, som blev kaldt Nefis plader.

11 Og se, jeg udfærdiger optegnelsen på plader, som jeg har lavet med mine egne hænder.

12 Og se, jeg hedder Mormon, for jeg er opkaldt efter Mormons land, det land, hvori Alma etablerede kirken blandt folket, ja, den første menighed, der blev oprettet blandt dem efter deres overtrædelse.

13 Se, jeg er discipel af Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn. Jeg er blevet kaldet af ham til at kundgøre hans ord blandt hans folk, så de kan få evigtvarende liv.

14 Og det er blevet hensigtsmæssigt, at jeg efter Guds vilje – for at bøunnerne fra dem, som er gået hinsides, og som var de hellige, kan blive opfyldt i overensstemmelse med deres tro – skulle udfærdige en optegnelse om det, der er blevet gjort –

15 ja, en kort optegnelse om det, der er håndt fra den tid, da Lehi forlod Jerusalem, helt op til nærværende tid.

16 Derfor udfærdiger jeg min optegnelse ud fra de beretninger, der er blevet givet af dem, der var før mig, indtil begyndelsen af min dag;

17 og så udfærdiger jeg en optegnelse om det, som jeg har set med mine egne øjne.

18 Og jeg ved, at den optegnelse, som jeg udfærdiger, er en retfærdig og en sand optegnelse; alligevel er der meget, som vi på grund af vort sprog ikke er i stand til at skrive.

19 Og nu afslutter jeg mine ord, som er om mig selv, og går videre med at give min beretning om det, der har været før mig.

20 Jeg er Mormon og direkte efterkommer af Lehi. Jeg har grund til at prise min Gud og min frelser Jesus Kristus, fordi han bragte vore fædre ud af Jerusalems land (og ingen vidste noget om det med undtagelse af ham selv og dem, som han førte ud af det land), og fordi han har givet mig og mit folk så megen kundskab til vor sjæls frelse.

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

21 Visselig har han velsignet Jakobs hus og har været barmhjertig mod Josefs efterkommere.

22 Og for så vidt som Lehis børn har holdt hans befalinger, har han velsignet dem og givet dem fremgang i overensstemmelse med sit ord.

23 Ja, og visselig skal han igen bringe en rest af Josefs efterkommere til kundskab om Herren deres Gud.

24 Og så vist som Herren lever, vil han fra jordens fire hjørner indsamle hele resten af Jakobs efterkommere, som er spredt vidt omkring på hele jordens overflade.

25 Og eftersom han har sluttet pagt med hele Jakobs hus, så skal den pagt, hvormed han har sluttet pagt med Jakobs hus, blive opfyldt, når han anser tiden for at være inde, sådan at hele Jakobs hus igen skal blive bragt til kundskab om den pagt, som han har sluttet med dem.

26 Og da skal de kende deres forløser, som er Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn; og da skal de blive indsamlet fra jordens fire hjørner til deres egne lande, hvorfra de er blevet spredt; ja, så sandt som Herren lever, således skal det ske. Amen.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

Tredje Nefi 6

- 1 Og se, det skete, at det nefitiske folk alle vendte tilbage til deres egne lande i det seksogtyvende år, hver mand med sin familie, sine flokke og sine hjerde, sine heste og sit kvæg og alt, hvad der tilhørte dem.
- 2 Og det skete, at de ikke havde spist alt deres forråd op, derfor tog de alt det med sig, som de ikke havde brugt, alt deres korn af enhver art, og deres guld og deres sølv og alle deres kostbarheder, og de vendte tilbage til deres egne lande og deres besiddelser, både i nord og i syd, både i landet mod nord og i landet mod syd.
- 3 Og de skænkede de røvere, som havde indgået en pagt om at holde freden i landet, og som nærede ønske om at forblive lamanitter, jorder i forhold til deres antal, så de ved deres arbejde kunne få tilstrækkeligt til livets ophold; og således skabte de fred i hele landet.
- 4 Og de begyndte igen at have fremgang og at vokse sig mægtige; og det seks- og syvogtyvende år gik, og der var stor orden i landet; og de havde udformet deres love ud fra upartiskhed og retfærdighed.
- 5 Og se, der var intet i hele landet, der kunne hindre folket i at have vedvarende fremgang, medmindre de faldt i overtrædelse.
- 6 Og se, det var Gidgiddoni og dommeren Lakoneus og de, der var blevet udpeget til ledere, der havde skabt denne store fred i landet.
- 7 Og det skete, at mange byer blev bygget på ny, og mange gamle byer blev sat i stand.
- 8 Og mange hovedveje blev bygget og mange veje anlagt, som førte fra by til by og fra land til land og fra sted til sted.
- 9 Og således gik det otteogtyvende år, og folket havde vedvarende fred.
- 10 Men det skete i det niogtyvende år, at der opstod nogle skænderier blandt folket; og nogle blev indbildske i stolthed og praleri på grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme, ja, så det forårsagede store forfølgelser;

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

11 for der var mange købmænd i landet og også mange advokater og mange embedsmænd.

12 Og folket begyndte at blive opdelt i klasser efter deres rigdomme og deres mulighed for at lære; ja, nogle var uvidende på grund af deres fattigdom, og andre modtog stor lærdom på grund af deres rigdom.

13 Nogle var indbildske i stolthed, og andre var overordentlig ydmyge; nogle gengældte spot med spot, mens andre tog imod spot og forfølgelse og alle slags trængsler og ikke tog til genmæle mod hån, men var ydmyge og angrende over for Gud.

14 Og således opstod der en stor ulighed over hele landet, således at kirken begyndte at blive splittet op, ja, således at kirken i det tredivte år var splittet op over hele landet, undtagen blandt nogle få af de lamanitter, der var blevet omvendt til den sande tro; og de ville ikke vige fra den, for de var faste og standhaftige og urokkelige, villige til med al flid at holde Herrens befalinger.

15 Se, årsagen til denne syndighed blandt folket var denne: Satan havde stor magt til at opægge folket til at begå al slags ugudelighed og til at gøre dem opblæste i stolthed, for han fristede dem til at stræbe efter magt og myndighed og rigdomme og verdens tomme ting.

16 Og således forledte Satan folkets hjerte til at begå al slags ugudelighed; derfor havde de kun nydt fred nogle få år.

17 Og således var de i begyndelsen af det tredivte år – efter at folket i et tidsrum af lang tid havde været overladt til at blive ledt omkring af Djævelens fristelser, hvorhen han end ønskede at lede dem, og til at gøre en hvilken som helst misgerning han ønskede, at de skulle gøre – og således var de i begyndelsen af dette det tredivte år i en tilstand af forfærdelig ugudelighed.

18 Se, de syndede ikke i uvidenhed, for de kendte Guds vilje angående sig, for den var blevet forklaret for dem; derfor satte de sig med vilje op imod Gud.

19 Og se, det var i Lakoneus', Lakoneus' søns, dage, for Lakoneus udfyldte sin fars sæde og regerede over folket det år.

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

20 Og der begyndte at komme mænd, der var inspireret fra himlen og udsendt, som stod frem blandt folket over hele landet, idet de frimodigt prædikede og vidnede om folkets synder og syndighed og vidnede for dem om den forløsning, som Herren ville tilvejebringe for sit folk eller med andre ord om Kristi opstandelse; og de vidnede frimodigt om hans død og lidelser.

21 Se, der var mange blandt folket, som blev overordentlig vrede på grund af dem, der vidnede om dette; og de, der blev vrede, var hovedsagelig de øverste dommere og dem, der havde været højpræster og advokater; ja, alle de, der var advokater, blev vrede på dem, der vidnede om dette.

22 Se, der var ingen advokat eller dommer eller højpræst, som havde magt til at dømme nogen til døden, medmindre deres dom blev underskrevet af landets regent.

23 Se, der var mange af dem, der vidnede om det, der hører Kristus til, som vidnede frimodigt, og som blev pågrebet og sendt hemmeligt i døden af dommerne, så efterretningen om deres død ikke kom til landets regent førend efter deres død.

24 Se nu, det var i modstrid med landets love, at nogen skulle blive sendt i døden, medmindre de havde bemyndigelse fra landets regent –

25 derfor blev der bragt en klage op til Zarahemlas land, til landets regent, over disse dommere, der i modstrid med loven havde dømt Herrens profeter til døden.

26 Se, det skete, at de blev pågrebet og ført op for dommeren for at blive dømt for den forbrydelse, som de havde begået, i henhold til den lov, som var blevet givet af folket.

27 Se, det skete, at disse dommere havde mange venner og slægtninge; og resten, ja, næsten alle advokaterne og højpræsterne samlede sig og forenede sig med slægtningene til disse dommere, som skulle prøves i henhold til loven.

28 Og de indgik en pagt, den ene med den anden, ja, den selv samme pagt som blev givet af dem fordum, hvilken pagt blev givet og forrettet af Djævelen for at forene menneskene mod al retfærdighed.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

29 Derfor forenede de sig mod Herrens folk og indgik en pagt om at udrydde dem og at udfri dem, der var skyldige i mord, af retfærdighedens greb, hvilken retfærdighed skulle til at ske fyldest i henhold til loven.

30 Og de trodsede deres lands lov og rettigheder; og de sluttede pagt, den ene med den anden, om at slå regenten ihjel og at indsætte en konge over landet, så landet ikke mere skulle være frit, men skulle være underkastet konger.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

Tredje Nefi 7

- 1 Se nu, jeg vil vise jer, at de ikke indsatte en konge over landet; men i det samme år, ja, i det tredivte år, slog de landets overdommer ihjel, ja, myrdede ham på dommersædet.
- 2 Og folket var delt, den ene mod den anden; og de skilte sig ud, den ene fra den anden, i stammer, enhver under hensyntagen til sin familie og sin slægt og venner; og således tilintetgjorde de landets styre.
- 3 Og hver stamme udpegede en høvding, eller en leder, over sig; og således blev de til stammer og ledere af stammer.
- 4 Se nu, der var ingen blandt dem, som ikke havde megen familie og mange slægtninge og venner; derfor blev deres stammer overordentlig store.
- 5 Se, alt dette skete, og der var endnu ingen krige blandt dem; og al denne ugudelighed var kommet over folket, fordi de overgav sig til Satans magt.
- 6 Og styrets bestemmelser blev tilsidesat på grund af den hemmelige sammensværgelse af venner og slægtninge til dem, der havde myrdet profeterne.
- 7 Og de forårsagede en stor strid i landet, således at den mest retfærdige del af befolkningen næsten alle var blevet ugudelige, ja, der var kun få retfærdige mennesker blandt dem.
- 8 Og således var der ikke gået seks år, før størstedelen af folket havde vendt sig bort fra deres retfærdighed, som hunden til sit bræk eller som soen til sin vælten sig i sølet.
- 9 Se, denne hemmelige sammensværgelse, der havde bragt så stor ugudelighed over folket, samlede sig og stilledede en mand, som de kaldte Jakob, i spidsen for sig;
- 10 og de kaldte ham deres konge; derfor blev han konge over denne ugudelige bande; og han var en af de mest fremtrædende, som havde afgivet sin stemme imod de profeter, som havde vidnet om Jesus.

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, inasmuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

11 Og det skete, at de ikke var så stærke i antal som folkets stammer, som havde forenet sig, bortset fra at deres ledere hver for sig udstedte deres egne love for hver deres stamme; alligevel var de fjender; til trods for, at de ikke var et retfærdigt folk, var de dog forenede i hadet til dem, som havde indgået en pagt om at tilintetgøre styret.

12 Derfor, da Jakob så, at deres fjender var mere talrige end de, og da han var konge over banden, befalede han derfor sit folk, at de skulle flygte ind i den nordligste del af landet og dér opbygge sig et rige, indtil nogle, der havde skilt sig ud, havde sluttet sig til dem (for han smigrede dem med, at der ville komme mange, der havde skilt sig ud), og de blev tilstrækkelig stærke til at stride mod folkets stammer; og det gjorde de.

13 Og så hastig var deres march, at man ikke kunne gribe ind over for dem, før de var kommet uden for folkets rækkevidde. Og således endte det tredivte år; og således var forholdene hos Nefis folk.

14 Og det skete i det enogtredivte år, at de delte sig i stammer, hver mand under hensyntagen til sin familie, slægt og venner; alligevel var de kommet til enighed om, at de ikke ville gå i krig, den ene mod den anden; men de var ikke forenede med hensyn til deres love og deres regeringsform, for de var fastlagt efter sindelaget hos dem, der var deres høvdinge og deres ledere. Men de udstedte meget strenge love om, at en stamme ikke skulle begå overgreb mod en anden, således at de i nogen grad havde fred i landet; alligevel var deres hjerte vendt fra Herren deres Gud, og de stenede profeterne og stødte dem ud fra sig.

15 Og det skete, at Nefi – som havde fået besøg af engle og også havde hørt Herrens røst, og som derfor, da han havde set engle og var et øjenvidne og havde fået magt, så han kunne have kendskab til Kristi tjenestegerning, og også var et øjenvidne til deres hurtige tilbagevenden fra retfærdighed til ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder,

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

16 og som derfor var bedrøvet over deres hjertes hårdhed og deres sinds blindhed – gik ud blandt dem i det selv samme år og begyndte at vidne frimodigt om omvendelse og syndsforladelse ved tro på Herren Jesus Kristus.

17 Og han forkyndte meget for dem; og det kan ikke alt sammen skrives, og en del af det ville ikke være tilstrækkelig, derfor er det ikke skrevet i denne bog. Og Nefi forkyndte med kraft og med stor myndighed.

18 Og det skete, at de blev vrede på ham, ja, fordi han havde større kraft end de, for det var ikke muligt for dem at tvivle på hans ord, for så stor var hans tro på Herren Jesus Kristus, at engle betjente ham dagligt.

19 Og i Jesu navn uddrev han djævle og urene ånder; og han oprejste endog sin bror fra de døde, efter at denne var blevet stenet og havde lidt døden ved folket.

20 Og folket så det og var vidne til det og var vrede på ham på grund af hans magt, og han gjorde også mange andre mirakler for øjnene af folket i Jesu Kristi navn.

21 Og det skete, at det enogtredivte år gik, og der var kun få, der blev omvendt til Herren; men så mange, som blev omvendt, tilkendegav i sandhed for folket, at de havde følt Guds kraft og Ånd, som var i Jesus Kristus, på hvem de troede.

22 Og så mange, som fik uddrevet djævle af sig og blev helbredt for deres sygdomme og deres skrøbeligheder, tilkendegav i sandhed for folket, at de var blevet påvirket af Guds Ånd og var blevet helbredt; og de viste også tegn og gjorde nogle mirakler blandt folket.

23 Således gik også det toogtredivte år. Og Nefi råbte til folket i begyndelsen af det treogtredivte år, og han prædikede omvendelse og syndsforladelse for dem.

24 Se, jeg vil også gerne have jer til at huske, at der ikke var nogen, der var bragt til omvendelse, som ikke blev døbt med vand.

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

25 Derfor blev der af Nefi ordineret mænd til denne tjenestegerning, så alle sådanne, der kom til dem, kunne blive døbt med vand, og dette som et bevis på og et vidnesbyrd for Gud og for folket om, at de havde omvendt sig og fået forladelse for deres synder.

26 Og der var i begyndelsen af dette år mange, der blev døbt til omvendelse, og således gik størstedelen af året.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

Tredje Nefi 8

- 1 Og se, det skete, at der ifølge vor optegnelse, og vi ved, at vor optegnelse er sand, for se, det var en retfærdig mand, der førte optegnelsen – for han gjorde i sandhed mange mirakler i Jesu navn, og der var ingen, der kunne gøre et mirakel i Jesu navn, medmindre han var rensset helt og aldeles for al sin ugudelighed –
- 2 og se, det skete, hvis der ikke er blevet begået nogen fejl af denne mand i opregningen af vor tid, at det treog-tredivte år var gået.
- 3 Og folket begyndte med stor alvor at se efter det tegn, som var blevet givet af profeten Samuel, lamanitten, ja, efter det tidspunkt, da der skulle være mørke over landets overflade i et tidsrum af tre dage.
- 4 Og der opstod stor tvivl og mange mundhuggerier blandt folket, til trods for at der var blevet givet så mange tegn.
- 5 Og det skete i det fireog-tredivte år i den første måned på den fjerde dag i måneden, at der rejste der sig en vældig storm, en sådan som man aldrig før havde set i hele landet.
- 6 Og der var også et stort og skrækkeligt uvejr, og der var en så skrækkelig torden, at den rystede hele jorden, som om den var ved at sønderdeles.
- 7 Og der var overordentlig skarpe lyn, sådanne som man aldrig før havde set i landet.
- 8 Og byen Zarahemla brød i brand.
- 9 Og byen Moroni sank ned i havets dyb, og dens indbyggere druknede.
- 10 Og jorden blev væltet ind over byen Moroniha, så der i stedet for byen blev et stort bjerg.
- 11 Og der fandt en stor og skrækkelig ødelæggelse sted i landet mod syd.
- 12 Men se, der fandt en endnu større og mere skrækkelig ødelæggelse sted i landet mod nord; for se, hele landets overflade blev forandret som følge af uvejret og hvirvelvindene og tordenen og lynene og hele jordens overordentlig store skælven.

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

- 13 Og hovedvejene blev brudt op, og de jævne veje blev ødelagt, og mange jævne steder blev ujævne.
- 14 Og mange store og betydelige byer sank, og mange brændte, og mange rystede, til bygningerne deri var faldet til jorden, og indbyggerne deri var blevet slået ihjel, og stederne var ladet øde.
- 15 Og der var nogle byer, som blev stående; men skaden deri var overordentlig stor, og der var mange i dem, der blev slået ihjel.
- 16 Og der var nogle, der blev ført bort af hvirvelvinden, og hvor de blev ført hen, ved ingen, ud over at man ved, at de blev ført bort.
- 17 Og således blev hele jordens overflade deformeret som følge af uvejret og tordenen og lynene og jordens skælven.
- 18 Og se, klipperne blev brudt i to stykker, de blev brudt op overalt på hele jordens overflade i en sådan grad, at de blev fundet som brudte stykker og fulde af sprækker og revner på hele landets overflade.
- 19 Og det skete, at da tordenen og lynene og stormen og uvejret og jordens skælven hørte op – for se, de varede i et tidsrum af omtrent tre timer; og det blev sagt af nogle, at tiden havde været længere; alligevel skete alle disse store og skrækkelige ting i løbet af et tidsrum af omtrent tre timer – og se, da kom der mørke over hele landets overflade.
- 20 Og det skete, at der kom tæt mørke over hele landets overflade i en sådan grad, at de af dets indbyggere, som ikke var faldet, kunne føle disen af mørke.
- 21 Og man kunne ikke tænde noget lys på grund af mørket, hverken tællelys eller fakler, ej heller kunne man tænde ild med deres fine og overordentlig tørre træ, så man kunne overhovedet ikke tænde noget lys;
- 22 og der var ikke noget lys at se, hverken ild eller glimt, hverken solen eller månen eller stjernerne, for så tæt var den tåge af mørke, som lå over landets overflade.
- And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.
- And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.
- And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.
- And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.
- And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.
- And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.
- And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.
- And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;
- And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;
- And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

23 Og det skete, at den varede i et tidsrum af tre dage, så der intet lys var at se; og der var bestandig stor sørgen og hysten og gråd blandt hele folket; ja, stor var folkets stønnen som følge af mørket og den store ødelæggelse, som var kommet over dem.

24 Og på et sted hørte man dem råbe og sige: O, gid vi havde omvendt os før denne store og skrækkelige dag, og da ville vore brødre være blevet skånet, og de ville ikke være blevet brændt i den store by Zarahemla.

25 Og på et andet sted hørte man dem råbe og sørge og sige: O, gid vi havde omvendt os før denne store og skrækkelige dag og ikke havde dræbt og stenet profeterne og stødt dem ud, så ville vore mødre og vore skønne døtre og vore børn være blevet skånet og ikke være blevet begravet i den store by Moroniha. Og således var folkets hysten stor og skrækkelig.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

Tredje Nefi 9

- 1 Og det skete, at der blandt alle jordens indbyggere på hele dette lands overflade hørtes en røst, som råbte:
- 2 Ve, ve, ve dette folk; ve indbyggerne på hele jorden, medmindre de omvender sig; for Djævelen ler, og hans engle fryder sig på grund af de slagne blandt mit folks skønne sønner og døtre; og det er på grund af deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder, at de er faldet.
- 3 Se, den store by Zarahemla har jeg brændt op af ild, og ligeså indbyggerne deri.
- 4 Og se, den store by Moroni har jeg ladet synke i havets dyb og dens indbyggere drukne.
- 5 Og se, den store by Moroniha har jeg dækket med jord, og ligeså indbyggerne deri, for at skjule deres syndighed og deres vederstyggeligheder fra mit ansigt, så profeternes og de helliges blod ikke mere skal komme op til mig imod dem.
- 6 Og se, byen Gilgal har jeg ladet synke, og indbyggerne deri begrave i jordens dyb.
- 7 Ja, og byen Oniha og indbyggerne deri og byen Mokum og indbyggerne deri og byen Jerusalem og indbyggerne deri; og vande har jeg ladet komme op i deres sted for at skjule deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder fra mit ansigt, så profeternes og de helliges blod ikke mere skal komme op til mig imod dem.
- 8 Og se, byen Gadiandi og byen Gadiomna og byen Jakob og byen Gimgimno, alle disse har jeg ladet synke og skabt høje og dale i deres sted; og indbyggerne deri har jeg begravet i jordens dyb for at skjule deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder fra mit ansigt, så profeternes og de helliges blod ikke mere skal komme op til mig imod dem.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 Og se, den store by Jakobugath, som var beboet af kong Jakobs folk, har jeg ladet brænde op af ild på grund af deres synder og deres ugudelighed, som var større end al anden ugudelighed på hele jorden på grund af deres hemmelige mord og sammensværgelser, for det var dem, der ødelagde mit folks fred og landets styre; derfor lod jeg dem brænde op for at tilintetgøre dem fra mit ansigt, så profeternes og de helliges blod ikke mere skulle komme op til mig imod dem.

10 Og se, byen Laman og byen Josh og byen Gad og byen Kishkumen har jeg ladet brænde op af ild, og ligeså indbyggerne deri på grund af deres ugudelighed ved at have stødt profeterne ud og stenet dem, som jeg sendte for at foreholde dem deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder.

11 Og fordi de stødte dem alle ud, så der ingen retfærdige var blandt dem, sendte jeg ild ned og slog dem ihjel, så deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder måtte blive skjult fra mit ansigt, så blodet fra profeterne og de hellige, som jeg sendte ud blandt dem, ikke skulle råbe til mig fra jorden imod dem.

12 Og mange store ødelæggelser har jeg ladet komme over dette land og over dette folk på grund af deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder.

13 O, alle I, som er blevet skånet, fordi I var mere retfærdige end de, vil I nu ikke vende tilbage til mig og angre jeres synder og blive omvendt, så jeg kan helbrede jer?

14 Ja, sandelig siger jeg til jer, hvis I vil komme til mig, skal I få evigt liv. Se, min barmhjertigheds arm er strakt ud mod jer, og hver den, der vil komme, ham vil jeg tage imod; og velsignede er de, der kommer til mig.

15 Se, jeg er Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn. Jeg skabte himlene og jorden og alt, som er i dem. Jeg var hos Faderen fra begyndelsen. Jeg er i Faderen, og Faderen er i mig, og i mig har Faderen herliggjort sit navn.

16 Jeg kom til mine egne, og mine egne tog ikke imod mig. Og skrifterne angående mit komme er opfyldt.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

17 Og så mange, som har taget imod mig, til dem har jeg givet at blive Guds sønner, og det samme vil jeg til så mange, som skal tro på mit navn, for se, ved mig tilvebringes forløsningen, og i mig er Moseloven opfyldt.

18 Jeg er verdens lys og liv. Jeg er Alfa og Omega, begyndelsen og enden.

19 Og I skal ikke mere bringe mig udgydelse af blod; ja, jeres slagtofre og jeres brændofre skal høre op, for jeg vil ikke tage imod nogen af jeres slagtofre og jeres brændofre.

20 Og I skal som offer bringe mig et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd. Og den, der kommer til mig med et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd, ham vil jeg døbe med ild og med Helligånden, ligesom lamanitterne på grund af deres tro på mig på det tidspunkt, da de blev omvendt, blev døbt med ild og med Helligånden, og de vidste det ikke.

21 Se, jeg er kommet til verden for at bringe forløsning til verden, for at frelse verden fra synd.

22 Den, der derfor omvender sig og kommer til mig som et lille barn, ham vil jeg tage imod, for af sådanne består Guds rige. Se, for sådanne har jeg nedlagt mit liv og har taget det op igen; omvend jer derfor og kom til mig, I jordens ender, og bliv frelst.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

Tredje Nefi 10

- 1 Og se nu, det skete, at alle folk i landet hørte disse ord og var vidne til dem. Og efter disse ord var der stilhed i landet i et tidsrum af mange timer;
- 2 for så stor var folkets forbavselse, at de holdt op med at klage og hyle over tabet af deres slægtninge, som var blevet slået ihjel; derfor var der stilhed i hele landet i et tidsrum af mange timer.
- 3 Og det skete, at der igen kom en røst til folket, og alle folk hørte og var vidne til den, og den sagde:
- 4 O, I folk i disse store byer, som er faldet, som er efterkommere af Jakob, ja, som er af Israels hus, hvor ofte har jeg ikke samlet jer, som en høne samler sine kyllinger under sine vinger og har passet jer.
- 5 Og videre, hvor ofte har jeg ikke villet samle jer, som en høne samler sine kyllinger under sine vinger, ja, o I folk af Israels hus, som er faldet; ja, o I folk af Israels hus, I, som bor ved Jerusalem, såvel som I, der er faldet; ja, hvor ofte har jeg ikke villet samle jer, som en høne samler sine kyllinger, og I ville ikke.
- 6 O, I Israels hus, som jeg har skånet, hvor ofte vil jeg ikke samle jer, som en høne samler sine kyllinger under sine vinger, hvis I vil omvende jer og vende tilbage til mig med hjertets faste forsæt.
- 7 Men hvis ikke, o Israels hus, så skal jeres bopladser blive øde, indtil tidspunktet for opfyldelsen af pagten med jeres fædre.
- 8 Og se, det skete, at efter at folket havde hørt disse ord, se, da begyndte de at græde og hyle igen på grund af tabet af deres slægtninge og venner.
- 9 Og det skete, at således gik de tre dage. Og det var om morgenen, og mørket spredtes fra landets overflade, og jorden holdt op med at ryste, og klipperne holdt op med at revne, og den frygtelige stønnen holdt op, og al den tumultagtige larm hørte op.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

10 Og jorden samlede sig igen, så den blev fast, og sørgeudbruddene og gråden og jammeren fra de folk, hvis liv var blevet skånet, hørte op; og deres sørgeudbrud blev vendt til glæde og deres klageråb til pris og taksigelse til Herren Jesus Kristus, deres forløser.

11 Og så vidt blev de skrifter, der var blevet talt af profeterne, opfyldt.

12 Og det var den mere retfærdige del af folket, som var blevet reddet, og det var dem, der tog imod profeterne og ikke stenede dem; og det var dem, der ikke havde udgydt de helliges blod, der blev skånet –

13 og de blev skånet og sank ikke ned og blev begravet i jorden, og de druknede ikke i havets dyb, og de blev ikke opbrændt af ild, ej heller faldt der noget ned over dem og knuste dem til døde, og de blev ikke ført bort i hvirvelvinden, ej heller blev de overvældet af disen af røg og af mørke.

14 Og se, den, der læser, lad ham forstå; den, der har skrifterne, lad ham granske dem og se og betragte, om ikke alle disse dødsfald og ødelæggelser ved ild og ved røg og ved uejr og ved hvirvelvinde og ved, at jorden åbnede sig for at tage dem til sig, og er alt dette ikke en opfyldelse af mange af de hellige profeters profetier.

15 Se, jeg siger jer: Ja, mange har vidnet om, at dette skulle ske ved Kristi komme og blev slået ihjel, fordi de vidnede om dette.

16 Ja, profeten Zenos vidnede om dette, og også Zenok talte om dette, fordi de især vidnede om os, som er resten af deres efterkommere.

17 Se, vor fader Jakob vidnede også om en rest af Josefs efterkommere. Og se, er vi ikke en rest af Josefs efterkommere? Og dette, som vidner om os, er det ikke skrevet på de bronzeplader, som vor fader Lehi bragte med fra Jerusalem?

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

18 Og det skete, at i slutningen af det fireogtredivte år, se, jeg vil vise jer, at de af Nefis folk, som var blevet skånet, og også de, der var blevet kaldt lamanitter, og som var blevet skånet, blev vist store begunstigelser og fik store velsignelser udøst over hovedet i en sådan grad, at Kristus snart efter sin opstigning til himlen i sandhed gav sig til kende for dem –

19 idet han viste dem sit legeme og forkyndte for dem; og der skal siden hen gives en beretning om hans tjenestegerning. Derfor afslutter jeg mine ord for denne gang.

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Jesus Kristus viste sig for Nefis folk, mens mængden var samlet i landet Overflod, og forkyndte for dem; og på denne måde viste han sig for dem.

Tredje Nefi 11

- 1 Og se, det skete, at en stor mængde af Nefis folk var forsamlet rundt omkring templet, som lå i landet Overflod; og de gav udtryk for deres forundring og undren, den ene over for den anden, og viste, den ene til den anden, den store og forunderlige forandring, der havde fundet sted.
- 2 Og de talte også om denne Jesus Kristus, om hvem tegnet på hans død var blevet givet.
- 3 Og det skete, at mens de således talte, den ene med den anden, hørte de en røst, der lød, som om den kom fra himlen; og de kastede blikket omkring, for de forstod ikke den røst, som de hørte; og det var ikke en barsk røst, ej heller var det en høj røst; alligevel og til trods for, at det var en sagte røst, gennemborede den dem, der hørte den, til det inderste i en sådan grad, at der ikke var nogen del af deres legeme, som den ikke fik til at skælve; ja, den gennemborede dem til sjælens inderste og fik hjertet til at brænde.
- 4 Og det skete, at de igen hørte røsten, og de forstod den ikke.
- 5 Og igen for tredje gang hørte de røsten og åbnede deres ører for at høre den; og deres øjne var rettet mod lyden af den, og de så bestandig op mod himlen, hvorfra lyden kom.
- 6 Og se, den tredje gang forstod de den røst, som de hørte, og den sagde til dem:
- 7 Se, min elskede Søn, i hvem jeg har velbehag, i hvem jeg har herliggjort mit navn – hør ham.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8 Og det skete, at de, da de forstod, igen kastede blikket op mod himlen; og se, de så en mand stige ned fra himlen, og han var klædt i en hvid kjortel; og han kom ned og stod midt blandt dem, og hele mængden havde øjnene rettet mod ham, og de turde ikke åbne deres munde, ikke engang den ene til den anden, og vidste ikke, hvad det betød, for de troede, det var en engel, der havde vist sig for dem.

9 Og det skete, at han strakte sin hånd ud og talte til folket og sagde:

10 Se, jeg er Jesus Kristus, som profeterne bevidnede skulle komme til verden.

11 Og se, jeg er verdens lys og liv; og jeg har drukket af det bitre bæger, som Faderen har givet mig, og har herliggjort Faderen ved at påtage mig verdens synder, hvorved jeg har underkastet mig Faderens vilje i alt fra begyndelsen.

12 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, faldt hele mængden til jorden, for de huskede, at det var blevet profeteret blandt dem, at Kristus skulle vise sig for dem efter sin opstigning til himlen.

13 Og det skete, at Herren talte til dem og sagde:

14 Rejs jer, og kom hen til mig, så I kan stikke jeres hænder i min side, og så I også kan føle naglemærkerne i mine hænder og i mine fødder, så I kan vide, at jeg er Israels Gud og hele jordens Gud og er blevet slået ihjel for verdens synder.

15 Og det skete, at mængden kom frem og stak deres hænder i hans side og følte naglemærkerne i hans hænder og i hans fødder; og dette gjorde de, idet de kom frem en efter en, indtil de alle var kommet frem, og med deres egne øjne så og med deres egne hænder følte og med vished vidste og aflagde vidnesbyrd om, at det var ham, om hvem det var skrevet af profeterne, at han skulle komme.

16 Og da de alle havde været henne og havde erfaret for sig selv, råbte de som med én røst og sagde:

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

17 Hosianna! Velsignet være Gud den Højestes navn!
Og de faldt ned for Jesu fødder og tilbad ham.

18 Og det skete, at han talte til Nephi (for Nephi var blandt mængden), og han bød ham, at han skulle komme frem.

19 Og Nephi rejste sig og kom frem og bøjede sig for Herren og kyskede hans fødder.

20 Og Herren bød ham, at han skulle rejse sig. Og han rejste sig og stod foran ham.

21 Og Herren sagde til ham: Jeg giver dig magt til, at du skal døbe dette folk, når jeg igen er steget op til himlen.

22 Og igen kaldte Herren andre og sagde det samme til dem; og han gav dem magt til at døbe. Og han sagde til dem: På denne måde skal I døbe, og der skal ikke være nogen mundhuggerier blandt jer.

23 Sandelig siger jeg til jer, at den, der omvender sig fra sine synder som følge af jeres ord og ønsker at blive døbt i mit navn, skal I døbe på denne måde: Se, I skal gå ned og stå i vandet, og i mit navn skal I døbe dem.

24 Og se nu, disse er de ord, som I skal sige, idet I kalder dem ved navn og siger:

25 Med myndighed, givet mig af Jesus Kristus, døber jeg dig i Faderens og i Sønnens og i Helligåndens navn. Amen.

26 Og så skal I sænke dem ned i vandet og igen komme op af vandet.

27 Og på denne måde skal I døbe i mit navn; for se, sandelig siger jeg jer, at Faderen og Sønnen og Helligånden er ét; og jeg er i Faderen og Faderen i mig, og Faderen og jeg er ét.

28 Og sådan som jeg har befalet jer, således skal I døbe. Og der skal ikke være nogen mundhuggerier blandt jer, som der hidtil har været; ej heller skal der være mundhuggerier blandt jer angående detaljerne i min lære, som der hidtil har været.

29 For sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer: Den, der har stridens ånd, er ikke af mig, men er af Djævelen, som er faderen til strid, og han ophidser menneskers hjerte til at strides med vrede, den ene mod den anden.

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

30 Se, det er ikke min lære at ophidse menneskers hjerte til vrede, den ene mod den anden, men det er min lære, at sådant skal afskaffes.

31 Se, sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, jeg vil kundgøre min lære for jer.

32 Og dette er min lære, og det er den lære, som Faderen har givet til mig; og jeg aflægger vidnesbyrd om Faderen, og Faderen aflægger vidnesbyrd om mig, og Helligånden aflægger vidnesbyrd om Faderen og mig; og jeg aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at Faderen befaler alle mennesker overalt at omvende sig og tro på mig.

33 Og den, der tror på mig og bliver døbt, han skal blive frelst; og det er dem, der skal arve Guds rige.

34 Og den, der ikke tror på mig og ikke bliver døbt, skal blive fordømt.

35 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at dette er min lære, og jeg aflægger vidnesbyrd om, at den er fra Faderen, og den, der tror på mig, tror også på Faderen; og for ham vil Faderen aflægge vidnesbyrd om mig, for han vil besøge ham med ild og med Helligånden.

36 Og således vil Faderen aflægge vidnesbyrd om mig, og Helligånden vil aflægge vidnesbyrd for ham om Faderen og mig, for Faderen og jeg og Helligånden er ét.

37 Og atter siger jeg til jer: I skal omvende jer og blive som et lille barn og blive døbt i mit navn, ellers kan I på ingen måde modtage dette.

38 Og atter siger jeg til jer: I skal omvende jer og blive døbt i mit navn og blive som et lille barn, ellers kan I på ingen måde arve Guds rige.

39 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at dette er min lære, og den, der bygger på den, bygger på min klippe, og helvedes porte skal ikke få magt over dem.

40 Og den, der kundgør mere eller mindre end dette og udgiver det for min lære, han er af det onde og er ikke bygget på min klippe; men han bygger på en grundvold af sand, og helvedes porte står åbne for at modtage en sådan, når oversvømmelserne kommer og vindene slår imod dem.

41 Gå derfor ud til dette folk, og kundgør de ord, som jeg har talt, til jordens ender.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

Tredje Nefi 12

- 1 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord til Nephi og til dem, som var blevet kaldet (se, antallet af dem, der var blevet kaldet og havde fået magt og myndighed til at døbe, var tolv), og se, da strakte han sin hånd ud til mængden og råbte til dem og sagde: Velsignede er I, hvis I giver agt på ordene fra disse tolv, som jeg har udvalgt blandt jer til at betjene jer og til at være jeres tjenere; og til dem har jeg givet magt, så de kan døbe jer med vand; og efter at I er døbt med vand, se, da vil jeg døbe jer med ild og med Helligånden; velsignede er I derfor, hvis I vil tro på mig og blive døbt, efter at I har set mig og ved, at jeg er til.
- 2 Og videre, mere velsignede er de, der vil tro på jeres ord, fordi I vil vidne om, at I har set mig, og at I ved, at jeg er til. Ja, velsignede er de, der vil tro på jeres ord og stige ned i ydmyghedens dyb og blive døbt, for de skal blive besøgt med ild og med Helligånden og skal få forladelse for deres synder.
- 3 Ja, velsignede er de fattige i ånden, som kommer til mig, for deres er Himmeriget.
- 4 Og videre, velsignede er alle de, som sørger, for de skal trøstes.
- 5 Og velsignede er de sagtmodige, for de skal arve jorden.
- 6 Og velsignede er alle de, som hungrer og tørster efter retfærdighed, for de skal fyldes med Helligånden.
- 7 Og velsignede er de barmhjertige, for de skal møde barmhjertighed.
- 8 Og velsignede er alle de rene i hjertet, for de skal se Gud.
- 9 Og velsignede er alle de, som stifter fred, for de skal kaldes Guds børn.
- 10 Og velsignede er alle de, som bliver forfulgt for mit navns skyld, for deres er Himmeriget.
- 11 Og velsignede er I, når man håner jer og forfølger jer og urigtigt siger al slags ondt imod jer på grund af mig.

3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

12 For I skal have stor glæde og være overordentlig glade, for stor skal jeres løn være i himlen; for således forfulgte de de profeter, som var før jer.

13 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer: Jeg byder jer at være jordens salt; men hvis saltet mister sin kraft, hvormed skal jorden da saltes? Saltet skal fra da af ikke du til andet end at kastes bort og trædes under fode af mennesker.

14 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer: Jeg byder jer at være et lys for dette folk. En by, der ligger på et bjerg, kan ikke skjules.

15 Se, tænder man et lys og sætter det under en skæppe? Nej, men på en lystage, så det giver lys til alle, der er i huset.

16 Lad derfor jeres lys skinne for dette folk således, at de må se jeres gode gerninger og ære jeres Fader, som er i himlen.

17 Tro ikke, at jeg er kommet for at nedbryde loven eller profeterne. Jeg er ikke kommet for at nedbryde, men for at opfylde.

18 For sandelig siger jeg til jer: Ikke det mindste bogstav eller en eneste tøddel af loven er forgået, men i mig er det alt sammen blevet opfyldt.

19 Og se, jeg har givet jer min Faders lov og befalinger, for at I skal tro på mig og for at I skal omvende jer fra jeres synder og komme til mig med et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd. Se, I har befalingerne foran jer, og loven er opfyldt.

20 Derfor, kom til mig og bliv I frelst; for sandelig siger jeg til jer, at medmindre I holder mine befalinger, som jeg har befalet jer på dette tidspunkt, skal I under ingen omstændigheder komme ind i Himmeriget.

21 I har hørt, at det er blevet sagt af dem fordum, og det står også skrevet for jer, at du ikke må begå drab, og at hver den, der begår drab, skal være i fare for Guds dom;

22 men jeg siger jer, at hver den, som er vred på sin broder, skal være i fare for hans dom. Og hver den, som siger til sin broder: Raka! skal være i fare for rådet; og hver den, som siger: Din tåbe, skal være i fare for helvedes ild.

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

23 Derfor, hvis I kommer til mig eller ønsker at komme
til mig og kommer i tanke om, at din broder har noget
imod dig –

24 gå da hen til din broder, og bliv først forliget med din
broder, og kom så til mig med hjertets faste forsæt, så vil
jeg tage imod dig.

25 Skynd dig at blive enig med din modpart, mens du er
på vej sammen med ham, så han ikke på noget tidspunkt
skal pågribe dig, og du skal blive kastet i fængsel.

26 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg dig: Du skal på ingen må-
de slippe ud derfra, førend du har betalt den sidste seni-
ne. Og mens I er i fængsel, kan I da betale en eneste seni-
ne? Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer: Nej.

27 Se, der er skrevet af dem fordem, at du må ikke begå
ægteskabsbrud.

28 Men jeg siger dig, at hver den, som ser på en kvinde,
så han begærer hende, har allerede begået ægteskabs-
brud i sit hjerte.

29 Se, jeg giver jer den befaling, at I ikke lader noget af
dette komme ind i hjertet.

30 For det er bedre, at I fornægter jer selv dette, hvorved
I tager jeres kors op, end at I bliver kastet i helvede.

31 Der står skrevet, at hver den, som skiller sig fra sin hu-
stru, lad ham give hende et skilsmissebrev.

32 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer, at hver den, som skiller
sig fra sin hustru af anden grund end utugt, bliver årsag
til, at hun begår ægteskabsbrud, og den, som gifter sig
med hende, der er fraskilt, begår ægteskabsbrud.

33 Og videre står der skrevet: Du må ikke sværge falsk,
men skal holde dine eder for Herren;

34 men sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer: Sværg slet ikke,
hverken ved himlen, for den er Guds trone,

35 eller ved jorden, for den er hans fodskammel;

36 ej heller skal du sværge ved dit hoved, for du kan ikke
gøre et eneste hår sort eller hvidt;

37 men lad din tale være ja, ja; nej, nej; for hvad der er ud
over dette, er ondt.

38 Og se, der står skrevet: Et øje for et øje, og en tand for
en tand;

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to
come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath
aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled
to thy brother, and then come unto me with full pur-
pose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in
the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and
thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means
come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost sen-
nine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one sen-
nine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou
shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a
woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery al-
ready in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye
suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these
things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye
should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away
his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put
away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication,
causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry
her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thy-
self, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; nei-
ther by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou
canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay;
for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a
tooth for a tooth;

39 men jeg siger jer, at I ikke skal modsætte jer det onde,
men hver den, som slår dig på din højre kind, til ham
skal du også vende den anden;
40 og hvis nogen vil sagsøge dig ved retten og tage din
kjortel, så lad ham også få din kappe;
41 og hver den, som tvinger dig til at gå en mil, gå du to
med ham.
42 Giv til den, som beder dig, og vend dig ikke bort fra
den, der vil låne af dig.
43 Og se, der står også skrevet, at du skal elske din næste
og hade din fjende;
44 men se, jeg siger jer: Elsk jeres fjender, velsign dem,
som forbander jer, gør godt mod dem, som hader jer, og
bed for dem, som foragteligt udnytter jer og forfølger
jer,
45 så I må være børn af jeres Fader, som er i himlen; for
han lader sin sol stå op over de onde og over de gode.
46 Derfor er det, som var fordum, som var under loven,
alt sammen opfyldt i mig.
47 Det gamle er hørt op, og alt er blevet nyt.
48 Derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal være fuldkomne, ligesom
jeg, eller jeres Fader som er i himlen, er fuldkommen.

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but
whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to
him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away
thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go
with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that
would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy
neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless
them that curse you, do good to them that hate you,
and pray for them who despitefully use you and perse-
cute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in
heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on
the good.

Therefore those things which were of old time,
which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have become
new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I,
or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

Tredje Nefi 13

- 1 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg, at jeg ønsker, at I skal give almisser til de fattige, men pas på, at I ikke giver jeres almisser i menneskers påsyn for at blive set af dem, ellers får I ingen løn af jeres Fader, som er i himlen.
- 2 Derfor, når I giver jeres almisse, så lad ikke blæse i basun foran jer, som hyklerne gør i synagogerne og på gaderne, for at de kan blive æret af mennesker. Sandelig siger jeg jer: De har fået deres løn.
- 3 Men når du giver almisse, lad da ikke din venstre hånd vide, hvad din højre hånd gør,
- 4 for at dine almisser kan være i det skjulte; og din Fader, som ser i det skjulte, skal selv belønne dig åbenlyst.
- 5 Og når du beder, skal du ikke gøre som hyklerne; for de elsker at bede, mens de står i synagogerne og på gadehjørnerne, så de kan blive set af mennesker. Sandelig siger jeg til jer: De har fået deres løn.
- 6 Men du, når du beder, så gå ind i dit kammer, og når du har lukket din dør, så bed til din Fader, som er i det skjulte; og din Fader, som ser i det skjulte, skal belønne dig åbenlyst.
- 7 Men når I beder, så brug ikke tomme gentagelser, som hedningerne gør, for de tror, at de vil blive hørt for deres megen tale.
- 8 Vær I derfor ikke som dem, for jeres Fader ved, hvad I har behov for, før I beder ham.
- 9 På denne måde skal I derfor bede: Vor Fader, som er i himlen, helliget blive dit navn.
- 10 Din vilje ske på jorden, som den sker i himlen.
- 11 Og tilgiv os vor skyld, som vi tilgiver vore skyldnere.
- 12 Og led os ikke i fristelse, men udfri os fra det onde.
- 13 For dit er riget og magten og æren for evigt. Amen.
- 14 For hvis I tilgiver mennesker deres overtrædelser, vil jeres himmelske Fader også tilgive jer;
- 15 men hvis I ikke tilgiver mennesker deres overtrædelser, vil jeres Fader heller ikke tilgive jer deres overtrædelser.

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

16 Endvidere, når I faster, så vær ikke som hyklerne med et trist udseende, for de forvrænger deres ansigtsudtryk, for at de må fremstå for mennesker som fastende. Sandelig siger jeg jer, de har fået deres løn.

17 Men du, når du faster, så salv dit hoved, og vask dit ansigt,

18 for at du ikke skal fremstå som fastende for mennesker, men for din Fader, som er i det skjulte; og din Fader, som ser i det skjulte, skal belønne dig åbenlyst.

19 Saml jer ikke skatte på jorden, hvor møl og rust fortærer, og tyve bryder ind og stjæler;

20 men saml jer skatte i himlen, hvor hverken møl eller rust fortærer, og hvor tyve hverken bryder ind eller stjæler.

21 For hvor din skat er, der vil også dit hjerte være.

22 Legemets lys er øjet; hvis derfor dit øje er målrettet, vil hele dit legeme være fuld af lys.

23 Men hvis dit øje er ondt, vil hele dit legeme være fuld af mørke. Hvis derfor det lys, der er i dig, er mørke, hvor stort er da ikke det mørke!

24 Ingen kan tjene to herrer; for enten vil han hade den ene og elske den anden, eller også vil han holde sig til den ene og foragte den anden. I kan ikke tjene både Gud og mammon.

25 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, så han på de tolv, som han havde udvalgt, og sagde til dem: Husk de ord, som jeg har talt. For se, I er dem, som jeg har udvalgt til at betjene dette folk. Derfor siger jeg til jer: Nær ingen bekymring for jeres liv, hvad I skal spise, eller hvad I skal drikke; ej heller for legemet, hvad I skal klæde jer med. Er ikke livet mere end mad, og legemet mere end klæder?

26 Se luftens fugle, for de sår ikke, ej heller høster de eller samler i lade; dog giver jeres himmelske Fader dem føden. Er I ikke meget bedre end de?

27 Hvem af jer kan ved at bekymre sig lægge en alen til sin vækst?

28 Og hvorfor bekymrer I jer for klæder? Betragt liljerne på marken, hvorledes de vokser; de arbejder ikke, ej heller spinder de,

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

29 og dog siger jeg til jer, at end ikke Salomo i al sin pragt var klædt som en af dem.

30 Hvis Gud derfor klæder markens græs, som står i dag og i morgen kastes i ovnen, så vil han også klæde jer, hvis I ikke er lidettroende.

31 Nær derfor ingen bekymring og sig: Hvad skal vi spise? eller: Hvad skal vi drikke? eller: Hvormed skal vi klæde os?

32 For jeres himmelske Fader ved, at I har behov for alt dette.

33 Men søg I først Guds rige og hans retfærdighed, så skal alt dette gives jer i tilgift.

34 Nær derfor ingen bekymring for dagen i morgen, for dagen i morgen skal bekymre sig for det, der hører den til. Hver dag har nok i sin plage.

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

Tredje Nefi 14

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, vendte han sig igen mod mængden og åbnede igen sin mund til dem og sagde: Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer: Døm ikke, for at I ikke selv skal blive dømt.
- 2 For med den dom, I dømmes, skal I selv dømmes, og med det mål, I måler, skal der tilmåles jer.
- 3 Og hvorfor ser du splinten, som er i din broders øje, men lægger ikke mærke til bjælken, som er i dit eget øje?
- 4 Eller hvorledes kan du sige til din broder: Lad mig trække splinten ud af dit øje – og se, der er en bjælke i dit eget øje.
- 5 Din hykler! fjern først bjælken fra dit eget øje; og så kan du se klart til at fjerne splinten fra din broders øje.
- 6 Giv ikke det, der er helligt, til hundene, kast ej heller jeres perler for svin, for at de ikke skal trampe dem under føde og vende sig om og sønderrive jer.
- 7 Bed, og der skal gives jer; søg, og I skal finde; bank på, og der skal lukkes op for jer.
- 8 For enhver, der beder, får; og den, der søger, finder; og for den, der banker på, skal der lukkes op.
- 9 Eller hvilket menneske er der blandt jer, som, hvis hans søn beder om brød, vil give ham en sten?
- 10 Eller hvis han beder om en fisk, vil han da give ham en slange?
- 11 Hvis da I, som er onde, forstår at give gode gaver til jeres børn, hvor meget mere vil så ikke jeres Fader, som er i himlen, give gode ting til dem, som beder ham?
- 12 Derfor, alt hvad I vil, at mennesker skal gøre mod jer, gør I netop det mod dem, for dette er loven og profeterne.
- 13 Gå I ind ad den snævre port; for vid er den port, og bred er den vej, som fører til undergang, og mange er de, som går ind ad den;
- 14 for snæver er den port, og trang er den vej, som fører til livet, og få er de, som finder den.
- 15 Vogt jer for falske profeter, som kommer til jer i fåreklæder, men indeni er de glubske ulve.

3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

16 I skal kende dem på deres frugter. Plukker man druer af tjørn eller figner af tidsler?

17 Således bærer hvert godt træ gode frugter; men et fordærvet træ bærer dårlig frugt.

18 Et godt træ kan ikke bære dårlige frugter, ej heller kan et fordærvet træ bære god frugt.

19 Ethvert træ, som ikke bærer god frugt, hugges om og kastes i ilden.

20 Altså, af deres frugter skal I kende dem.

21 Ikke enhver, som siger til mig: Herre, Herre, skal komme ind i Himmeriget; men den, der gør min Faders vilje, han som er i himlen.

22 Mange vil sige til mig på den dag: Herre, Herre, har vi ikke profeteret i dit navn og uddrevet djævlene i dit navn og gjort mange vidunderlige gerninger i dit navn?

23 Og da vil jeg erklære for dem: Jeg har aldrig kendt jer; gå bort fra mig, I, som gør misgerninger.

24 Den, som derfor hører disse mine ord og handler efter dem, vil jeg sammenligne med en vis mand, som byggede sit hus på en klippe –

25 og regnen faldt, og oversvømmelserne kom, og vindene blæste og slog imod dette hus, og det faldt ikke, for det var grundlagt på en klippe.

26 Og enhver, som hører disse mine ord og ikke handler efter dem, skal sammenlignes med en tåbe, som byggede sit hus på sandet –

27 og regnen faldt, og oversvømmelserne kom, og vindene blæste og slog imod dette hus, og det faldt, og stort var dets fald.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

Tredje Nefi 15

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde afsluttet disse ord, kastede han blikket rundt omkring på mængden og sagde til dem: Se, I har hørt det, som jeg forkyndte, inden jeg steg op til min Fader; derfor, den, som husker disse mine ord og handler efter dem, ham vil jeg oprejse på den yderste dag.
- 2 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde sagt disse ord, fornemmede han, at der var nogle blandt dem, som undrede sig og funderede over, hvad han ønskede med hensyn til Moseloven, for de forstod ikke de ord, at det gamle var hørt op, og at alt var blevet nyt.
- 3 Og han sagde til dem: Vær ikke forundrede over, at jeg sagde til jer, at det gamle var hørt op, og at alt var blevet nyt.
- 4 Se, jeg siger jer, at den lov, som blev givet til Moses, er opfyldt.
- 5 Se, jeg er ham, som gav loven, og jeg er ham, som sluttede pakt med mit folk Israel; derfor er loven opfyldt i mig, for jeg er kommet for at opfylde loven; derfor har den fået en ende.
- 6 Se, jeg tilintetgør ikke profeterne, for så mange, som ikke er blevet opfyldt i mig, sandelig siger jeg jer, skal alle blive opfyldt.
- 7 Og fordi jeg sagde til jer, at det gamle er hørt op, tilintetgør jeg ikke det, der er blevet talt angående det tilkommende.
- 8 For se, den pakt, som jeg har sluttet med mit folk, er ikke helt opfyldt; men den lov, som blev givet til Moses, har fået en ende ved mig.
- 9 Se, jeg er loven og lyset. Se hen til mig, og hold ud til enden, og så skal I leve; for til den, der holder ud indtil enden, vil jeg give evigt liv.
- 10 Se, jeg har givet jer befalingerne; derfor, hold mine befalinger. Og dette er loven og profeterne, for de vidnede i sandhed om mig.
- 11 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, sagde han til de tolv, som han havde udvalgt:
- 12 I er mine disciple, og I er et lys for dette folk, som er en rest af Josefs hus.

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

13 Og se, dette er jeres arveland, og Faderen har givet det til jer.

14 Og ikke på noget tidspunkt har Faderen givet mig befaling om, at jeg skulle fortælle det til jeres brødre ved Jerusalem.

15 Ej heller har Faderen på noget tidspunkt givet mig befaling om, at jeg skulle fortælle dem om de andre stammer af Israels hus, som Faderen har ført ud af landet.

16 Så meget befalede Faderen mig, at jeg skulle fortælle dem:

17 At jeg har andre får, som ikke er af denne fold; også dem må jeg lede, og de skal høre min røst, og der skal blive én fold og én hyrde.

18 Og se, på grund af stivnakkethed og vantro forstod de ikke mine ord; derfor blev jeg af Faderen befalet ikke at sige mere om dette til dem.

19 Men sandelig siger jeg til jer, at Faderen har befalet mig, og jeg siger det til jer, at I blev skilt ud fra dem på grund af deres ugudelighed; derfor er det på grund af deres ugudelighed, at de ikke ved noget om jer.

20 Og sandelig siger jeg videre til jer, at de andre stammer har Faderen skilt ud fra dem; og det er på grund af deres ugudelighed, at de ikke ved noget om dem.

21 Og sandelig siger jeg til jer, at I er dem, om hvem jeg sagde: Jeg har andre får, som ikke er af denne fold; også dem må jeg lede, og de skal høre min røst, og der skal blive én fold og én hyrde.

22 Og de forstod mig ikke, for de troede, det var ikke-jøderne; for de forstod ikke, at ikke-jøderne ville blive omvendt ved deres forkyndelse.

23 Og de forstod mig ikke, da jeg sagde, at de skulle høre min røst; og de forstod mig ikke, at ikke-jøderne ikke på noget tidspunkt skulle høre min røst – at jeg ikke skulle give mig til kende for dem undtagen ved Helligånden.

24 Men se, I har både hørt min røst og set mig; og I er mine får, og I er regnet blandt dem, som Faderen har givet mig.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

Tredje Nefi 16

- 1 Og sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at jeg har andre får, som ikke er i dette land, ej heller i Jerusalems land, ej heller i nogen del af det omkringliggende land, hvor jeg har været for at tjene.
- 2 For dem, som jeg taler om, er dem, som endnu ikke har hørt min røst; ej heller har jeg på noget tidspunkt givet mig til kende for dem.
- 3 Men jeg har fået den befaling af Faderen, at jeg skal drage hen til dem, og at de skal høre min røst og skal blive regnet blandt mine får, så der kan blive én fold og én hyrde; derfor drager jeg bort for at vise mig for dem.
- 4 Og jeg befaler jer, at I skal skrive disse ord, efter at jeg er borte, så dersom mit folk ved Jerusalem, de, som har set mig og været sammen med mig i min tjenestegering, ikke beder Faderen i mit navn om, at de må få kundskab om jer ved Helligånden og også om de andre stammer, som de ikke kender til, at disse ord, som I skal skrive, kan blive bevaret og kan blive tilkendegivet for ikke-jøderne, så resten af deres efterkommere, som på grund af deres vantro skal blive spredt over hele jordens overflade, ved ikke-jødernes fylde kan blive bragt ind eller kan blive bragt til kundskab om mig, deres forløser.
- 5 Og da vil jeg samle dem ind fra jordens fire hjørner; og da vil jeg opfylde den pagt, som Faderen har sluttet med alle folk af Israels hus.
- 6 Og velsignede er ikke-jøderne på grund af deres tro på mig i og ved Helligånden, som vidner for dem om mig og om Faderen.
- 7 Se, på grund af deres tro på mig, siger Faderen, og på grund af jeres vantro, o Israels hus, skal sandheden i de sidste dage komme til ikke-jøderne, så fylden af dette vil blive kundgjort for dem.
- 8 Men ve de ikke-troende blandt ikke-jøderne, siger Faderen – for til trods for, at de har bredt sig ud over dette lands overflade og har spredt mit folk, som er af Israels hus, og mit folk, som er af Israels hus, er blevet stødt ud fra dem og er blevet trådt under fode af dem,

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

9 og på grund af Faderens barmhjertighed mod ikke-jøderne og ligeså Faderens straffedomme over mit folk, som er af Israels hus, sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at efter alt dette, og efter at jeg har ladet mit folk, som er af Israels hus, blive slået og blive plaget og blive slået ihjel og blive stødt ud fra dem og blive hadet af dem og blive til spot og spe blandt dem –

10 og således befaler Faderen, at jeg skal sige til jer: På den dag, da ikke-jøderne synder imod mit evangelium og forkaster mit evangeliums fylde og i hjertets stolthed hæver sig over alle folkeslag og over alle folk på hele jorden og bliver fyldt med al slags løgn og bedrag og fortræd og al slags hykleri og mord og præstelist og utugtigheder og hemmelige vederstyggeligheder; og hvis de gør alt dette og forkaster mit evangeliums fylde, se, siger Faderen, da vil jeg tage mit evangeliums fylde fra dem.

11 Og da vil jeg erindre min pagt, som jeg har sluttet med mit folk, o Israels hus, og jeg vil bringe mit evangelium til dem.

12 Og jeg vil vise for dig, o Israels hus, at ikke-jøderne ikke skal have magt over jer; men jeg vil erindre min pagt med jer, o Israels hus, og I skal komme til kundskab om mit evangeliums fylde.

13 Men hvis ikke-jøderne vil omvende sig og vende sig til mig, siger Faderen, se, da skal de blive regnet blandt mit folk, o Israels hus.

14 Og jeg vil ikke tillade mit folk, som er af Israels hus, at drage igennem dem og træde dem ned, siger Faderen.

15 Men hvis de ikke vil vende sig til mig og lytte til min røst, da vil jeg tillade dem, ja, da vil jeg tillade mit folk, o Israels hus, at de drager igennem dem og træder dem ned, og de skal blive som salt, der har mistet sin kraft, og som derefter ikke duer til andet end at blive kastet bort og til at blive trådt under føde af mit folk, o Israels hus.

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

16 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, således har Faderen befalet mig – at jeg skulle give dette folk dette land som deres arvelod.

17 Og så skal profeten Esajas' ord opfyldes, som lyder:

18 Dine vægttere skal opløfte røsten, med fælles røst skal de synge, for de skal med egne øjne se, når Herren genrejser Zion.

19 Bryd ud i glæde, syng sammen, I Jerusalems øde steder, for Herren har trøstet sit folk, han har forløst Jerusalem.

20 Herren har blottet sin hellige arm for øjnene af alle folkeslagene, og alle jordens ender skal se Guds frelse.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

Tredje Nefi 17

- 1 Se, nu skete det, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, så han sig igen omkring på mængden, og han sagde til dem: Se, min tid er for hånden.
- 2 Jeg fornemmer, at I er svage, at I ikke kan forstå alle mine ord, som jeg er blevet befalet af Faderen at tale til jer på dette tidspunkt.
- 3 Gå derfor til jeres hjem, og grund over det, som jeg har sagt, og bed Faderen i mit navn om, at I må forstå, og bered jeres sind til morgendagen, så kommer jeg til jer igen.
- 4 Men nu drager jeg til Faderen og også hen for at vise mig for Israels tabte stammer, for de er ikke tabt for Faderen, for han ved, hvor han har ført dem hen.
- 5 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde talt således, kastede han igen blikket omkring på mængden og så, at de var rørt til tårer og så vedholdende på ham, som om de ville bede ham om at blive lidt længere hos sig.
- 6 Og han sagde til dem: Se, mit indre er fyldt af medfølelse for jer.
- 7 Har I nogen blandt jer, som er syge? Bring dem herhen. Har I nogen, der er lamme eller blinde eller halte eller vanføre eller spedalske, eller som er krøblinger, eller som er døve, eller som er plaget på anden måde? Bring dem herhen, og jeg vil helbrede dem, for jeg har medfølelse med jer; mit indre er fyldt af barmhjertighed.
- 8 For jeg fornemmer, at I ønsker, at jeg skal vise for jer, hvad jeg har gjort for jeres brødre ved Jerusalem, for jeg ser, at jeres tro er tilstrækkelig til, at jeg kan helbrede jer.
- 9 Og det skete, at da han således havde talt, kom hele mængden, alle som én, frem med deres syge og deres plagede og deres lamme og med deres blinde og med deres stumme og med alle dem, der på en eller anden måde var plaget; og han helbredte dem hver og en, efterhånden som de blev ført frem for ham.

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

10 Og alle, både de, der var blevet helbredt, og de, der var raske, bøjede sig ned for hans fødder og tilbad ham; og så mange, som kunne komme frem for mængden, kysede hans fødder, således at de badede hans fødder med deres tårer.

11 Og det skete, at han befalede dem, at deres små børn skulle bringes frem.

12 Så de bragte deres små børn frem og satte dem ned på jorden rundt omkring ham, og Jesus stod midt blandt dem, og mængden gav plads, indtil de alle var blevet bragt frem til ham.

13 Og det skete, at da de alle var blevet bragt frem, og Jesus stod midt blandt dem, befalede han mængden, at de skulle knæle ned på jorden.

14 Og det skete, at da de havde knælet ned på jorden, sukkede Jesus ved sig selv og sagde: Fader, jeg er foruroiget på grund af ugudeligheden blandt de folk, som er af Israels hus.

15 Og da han havde sagt disse ord, knælede han også selv ned på jorden; og se, han bad til Faderen, og det, som han bad, kan ikke skrives; og mængden, som hørte ham, aflagde vidnesbyrd.

16 Og på denne måde aflægger de vidnesbyrd: Aldrig før har øjet set, ej heller har øret hørt så store og vidunderlige ting, som vi så og hørte Jesus sige til Faderen.

17 Og ingen tunge kan udtale, ej heller kan noget menneske skrive, ej heller kan menneskehjertet fatte så store og vidunderlige ting, som vi både så og hørte Jesus sige; og ingen kan fatte den glæde, som fyldte vor sjæl på det tidspunkt, vi hørte ham bede til Faderen for os.

18 Og det skete, at da Jesus var færdig med at bede til Faderen, rejste han sig; men så stor var mængdens glæde, at de var overvældede.

19 Og det skete, at Jesus talte til dem og bød dem rejse sig.

20 Og de rejste sig op fra jorden, og han sagde til dem: Velsignede er I på grund af jeres tro. Og se nu, min glæde er fuldkommen.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

21 Og da han havde sagt disse ord, græd han, og mængden aflægger vidnesbyrd om det, og han tog deres små børn, et efter et, og velsignede dem og bad til Faderen for dem.

22 Og da han havde gjort dette, græd han igen;

23 og han talte til mængden og sagde til dem: Se jeres små.

24 Og da de så op for at se dem, kastede de blikket mod himlen, og de så himlene åbne, og de så engle stige ned fra himlen, som var det midt gennem ild, og de kom ned og omgav de små, og de blev omringet af ild; og englene betjente dem.

25 Og mængden så og hørte og aflægger vidnesbyrd; og de ved, at deres vidnesbyrd er sandt, for de så og hørte det alle sammen hver især; og i antal var de omtrent to tusinde og fem hundrede sjæle, og de omfattede mænd, kvinder og børn.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

Tredje Nefi 18

- 1 Og det skete, at Jesus befalede sine disciple, at de skulle bringe ham noget brød og vin.
- 2 Og mens de var henne efter brød og vin, befalede han mængden, at de skulle sætte sig ned på jorden.
- 3 Og da disciplene var kommet med brød og vin, tog han af brødet og brød og velsignede det; og han gav det til disciplene og befalede, at de skulle spise.
- 4 Og da de havde spist og var blevet mætte, befalede han, at de skulle give det til mængden.
- 5 Og da mængden havde spist og var blevet mætte, sagde han til disciplene: Se, en blandt jer skal ordineres, og ham vil jeg give magt, så han kan bryde brødet og velsigne det og give det til min kirkes folk, til alle dem, som vil tro og blive døbt i mit navn.
- 6 Og dette skal I altid bestræbe jer på at gøre, ligesom jeg har gjort, ligesom jeg har brudt brødet og velsignet det og givet det til jer.
- 7 Og dette skal I gøre til erindring om mit legeme, som jeg har vist jer. Og det skal være et vidnesbyrd for Faderen om, at I altid erindrer mig. Og hvis I altid erindrer mig, skal I have min Ånd til at være hos jer.
- 8 Og det skete, at da han havde sagt disse ord, befalede han sine disciple, at de skulle tage af vinen i bægeret og drikke af den, og at de også skulle give den til mængden, så de kunne drikke af den.
- 9 Og det skete, at de gjorde så og drak af den og blev mætte, og de gav den til mængden, og de drak, og de blev mætte.
- 10 Og da disciplene havde gjort dette, sagde Jesus til dem: Velsignede er I for det, som I har gjort, for dette er at efterkomme mine befalinger, og dette vidner for Faderen om, at I er villige til at gøre det, som jeg har befalet jer.

3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

11 Og dette skal I altid gøre for dem, som omvender sig og bliver døbt i mit navn; og I skal gøre det til erindring om mit blod, som jeg har udgydt for jer, så I kan bevidne for Faderen, at I altid erindrer mig. Og hvis I altid erindrer mig, skal I have min Ånd til at være hos jer.

12 Og jeg giver jer den befaling, at I skal gøre dette. Og hvis I altid gør dette, da er I velsignede, for så er I bygget på min klippe.

13 Men de blandt jer, som gør mere eller mindre end dette, er ikke bygget på min klippe, men er bygget på en grundvold af sand; og når regnen falder, og oversvømmelserne kommer, og vindene blæser og slår imod dem, falder de, og helvedes porte er rede, åbne til at tage imod dem.

14 Derfor, velsignede er I, hvis I vil holde mine befalinger, som Faderen har befalet mig, at jeg skulle give til jer.

15 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer: I skal altid våge og bede, for at I ikke skal blive fristet af Djævelen og blive ført bort som fanger af ham.

16 Og ligesom jeg har bedt blandt jer, således skal I bede i min kirke, blandt mit folk, som omvender sig og bliver døbt i mit navn. Se, jeg er lyset, jeg er et eksempel for jer.

17 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord til sine disciple, vendte han sig igen mod mængden og sagde til dem:

18 Se, sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, I skal altid våge og bede, for at I ikke skal falde i fristelse, for Satan ønsker at få jer, så han kan sigte jer som hvede.

19 Derfor skal I altid bede til Faderen i mit navn;

20 og hvad I end beder Faderen om i mit navn, som er ret, i tro på at I skal få det, se, det skal gives jer.

21 Bed i jeres familie til Faderen og altid i mit navn, så jeres hustru og jeres børn må blive velsignet.

22 Og se, I skal mødes ofte, og I skal ikke forbyde nogen at komme til jer, når I mødes sammen, men tillad dem, at de må komme til jer, og forbyd dem det ikke;

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

23 men I skal bede for dem og skal ikke støde dem ud; og dersom de kommer til jer ofte, skal I bede for dem til Faderen i mit navn.

24 Derfor, hold jeres lys op, så det kan skinne for verden. Se, jeg er det lys, som I skal holde op – det, som I har set mig gøre. Se, I ser, at jeg har bedt til Faderen, og I har alle været vidner til det.

25 Og I ser, at jeg ikke har befalet, at nogen af jer skulle gå bort, men jeg har tværtimod befalet, at I skulle komme til mig, så I kunne føle og se; det samme skal I gøre mod verden, og hver den, der bryder denne befaling, tillader sig selv at blive ledt i fristelse.

26 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, vendte han igen blikket mod de disciple, som han havde udvalgt, og sagde til dem:

27 Se, sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, jeg giver jer endnu en befaling, og så må jeg drage til min Fader, så jeg kan opfylde andre befalinger, han har givet mig.

28 Og se nu, dette er den befaling, som jeg giver til jer, at I ikke bevidst skal tillade nogen at spise og drikke af mit kød og blod uværdigt, når I forretter det;

29 for den, der uværdigt spiser og drikker mit kød og blod, spiser og drikker fordømmelse for sin sjæl; hvis I derfor ved, at et menneske er uværdigt til at spise og drikke af mit kød og blod, skal I forbyde ham det.

30 Alligevel skal I ikke støde ham bort fra jer, men I skal betjene ham og skal bede for ham til Faderen i mit navn; og dersom han omvender sig og bliver døbt i mit navn, så skal I tage imod ham og give ham af mit kød og blod.

31 Men hvis han ikke omvender sig, skal han ikke regnes blandt mit folk, for at han ikke skal tilintetgøre mit folk; for se, jeg kender mine får, og de er talte.

32 Alligevel skal I ikke støde ham ud af jeres synagoger eller jeres tilbedelsessteder, for sådanne skal I fortsætte med at betjene, for I ved ikke, om de ikke vil vende tilbage og omvende sig og komme til mig med hjertets faste forsæt, og jeg skal helbrede dem; og I skal være midlet til at bringe frelse til dem.

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

33 Derfor, hold disse ord, som jeg har befalet jer, så I ikke kommer under fordømmelse; for ve den, som Faderen dømmer skyldig.

34 Og jeg giver jer disse befalinger på grund af de mundhuggerier, der har været blandt jer. Og velsignede er I, hvis I ikke har nogen mundhuggerier blandt jer.

35 Og nu drager jeg til Faderen, for det er nødvendigt, at jeg drager til Faderen for jeres skyld.

36 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde afsluttet disse ord, rørte han med hånden de disciple, som han havde udvalgt, en efter en, indtil han havde rørt dem alle, og talte til dem, mens han rørte ved dem.

37 Og mængden hørte ikke de ord, som han talte, derfor aflagde de ikke vidnesbyrd; men disciplene aflagde vidnesbyrd om, at han gav dem magt til at give Helligånden. Og jeg vil vise jer herefter, at dette vidnesbyrd er sandt.

38 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde rørt ved dem alle, kom der en sky og overskyggede mængden, så de ikke kunne se Jesus.

39 Og mens de var overskyggede, forlod han dem og steg op til himlen. Og disciplene så og aflagde vidnesbyrd om, at han igen steg op til himlen.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

Tredje Nefi 19

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus var steget op til himlen, skiltes mængden, og hver mand tog sin hustru og sine børn og vendte tilbage til sit eget hjem.
- 2 Og ordet spredtes straks blandt folket, endnu før det blev mørkt, at mængden havde set Jesus, og at han havde betjent dem, og at han også den næste dag ville vise sig for mængden.
- 3 Ja, gennem hele natten spredtes ordet om Jesus; og i et sådant omfang sendte de bud til folket, at der var mange, ja, et overordentlig stort antal, som arbejdede overordentlig hårdt hele den nat, for at de den næste dag kunne være på det sted, hvor Jesus ville vise sig for mængden.
- 4 Og det skete den næste dag, da mængden var samlet, se, da gik Nefi og hans bror, som han havde oprejst fra de døde, og hvis navn var Timotheus, og også hans søn, hvis navn var Jonas, og også Mathoni og Mathoniha, hans bror, og Kumen og Kumenonhi og Jeremias og Shemnon og Jonas og Sidkija og Esajas – se, dette var navnene på de disciple, som Jesus havde udvalgt – og det skete, at de trådte frem og stod midt i mængden.
- 5 Og se, mængden var så stor, at de foranledigede, at den skulle opdeles i tolv grupper.
- 6 Og de tolv underviste mængden; og se, de foranledigede, at mængden skulle knæle ned på jordens overflade og skulle bede til Faderen i Jesu navn.
- 7 Og disciplene bad også til Faderen i Jesu navn. Og det skete, at de rejste sig op og betjente folket.
- 8 Og da de havde forkyndt de samme ord, som Jesus havde talt – uden på nogen måde at afvige fra de ord, som Jesus havde talt – se, da knælede de igen og bad til Faderen i Jesu navn.
- 9 Og de bad om det, som de ønskede mest, og de ønskede, at Helligånden måtte blive givet til dem.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

10 Og da de havde bedt således, gik de ned til bredden af vandet, og mængden fulgte dem.

11 Og det skete, at Nephi gik ud i vandet og blev døbt.

12 Og han kom op af vandet og begyndte at døbe. Og han døbte alle dem, som Jesus havde udvalgt.

13 Og det skete, da de alle var blevet døbt og var kommet op af vandet, at Helligånden faldt på dem, og de blev fyldt af Helligånden og med ild.

14 Og se, de blev omringet, som var det af ild, og den kom ned fra himlen, og mængden var vidne til det og aflagde vidnesbyrd; og engle kom ned fra himlen og betjente dem.

15 Og det skete, at mens englene betjente disciplene, se, da kom Jesus og stod midt blandt dem og betjente dem.

16 Og det skete, at han talte til mængden og befalede dem, at de igen skulle knæle ned på jorden, og også at hans disciple skulle knæle ned på jorden.

17 Og det skete, at da de alle var knælet ned på jorden, befalede han sine disciple, at de skulle bede.

18 Og se, de begyndte at bede, og de bad til Jesus, idet de kaldte ham deres Herre og deres Gud.

19 Og det skete, at Jesus gik ud af deres midte og gik et lille stykke vej bort fra dem og bøjede sig til jorden, og han sagde:

20 Fader, jeg takker dig for, at du har givet Helligånden til dem, som jeg har udvalgt; og det er på grund af deres tro på mig, at jeg har udvalgt dem af verden.

21 Fader, jeg beder dig om, at du vil give Helligånden til alle dem, som vil tro på deres ord.

22 Fader, du har givet dem Helligånden, fordi de tror på mig; og du ser, at de tror på mig, for du hører dem, og de beder til mig; og de beder til mig, fordi jeg er hos dem.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

23 Og se, Fader, jeg beder til dig for dem og også for alle dem, som vil tro på deres ord, at de må tro på mig, at jeg må være i dem, ligesom du, Fader, er i mig, at vi må være ét.

24 Og det skete, at da Jesus således havde bedt til Faderen, kom han hen til sine disciple, og se, de blev stadig ved med uden ophør at bede til ham; og de brugte ikke mange ord, for det blev dem givet, hvad de skulle bede, og de var opfyldt af ønsket.

25 Og det skete, at Jesus velsignede dem, mens de bad til ham; og hans ansigt smilede over dem, og lyset i hans ansigt skinnede på dem, og se, de blev så hvide som Jesu ansigt og klæder; og se, deres hvidhed overgik al hvidhed, ja, der kunne ikke på jorden være noget så hvidt som deres hvidhed.

26 Og Jesus sagde til dem: Bliv ved med at bede, og de holdt ikke op med at bede.

27 Og han vendte sig igen fra dem og gik et lille stykke vej bort og bøjede sig til jorden; og han bad igen til Faderen og sagde:

28 Fader, jeg takker dig for, at du har rensset dem, som jeg har udvalgt, på grund af deres tro; og jeg beder for dem og også for dem, som vil tro på deres ord, at de må blive rensset i mig ved tro på deres ord, ligesom de er blevet rensset i mig.

29 Fader, jeg beder ikke for verden, men for dem, som du har givet mig fra verden på grund af deres tro, at de må blive rensset i mig, at jeg må være i dem, som du, Fader, er i mig, at vi må være ét, at jeg må blive herliggjort i dem.

30 Og da Jesus havde talt disse ord, kom han igen til sine disciple; og se, de bad standhaftigt og uden ophør til ham; og han smilede igen til dem; og se, de var hvide ligesom Jesus.

31 Og det skete, at han igen gik et lille stykke vej bort og bad til Faderen.

32 Og ingen tunge kan udtale de ord, som han bad, ej heller kan de ord, som han bad, nedskrives af noget menneske.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

33 Og mængden hørte og aflægger vidnesbyrd; og deres hjerte var åbent, og de forstod i hjertet de ord, som han bad.

34 Alligevel, så store og forunderlige var de ord, som han bad, at de ikke kan skrives, ej heller kan de udtrykkes af noget menneske.

35 Og det skete, at da Jesus var færdig med at bede, kom han igen hen til disciplene og sagde til dem: Så stor tro har jeg aldrig set blandt alle jøderne; derfor kunne jeg ikke vise dem så store mirakler på grund af deres vantro.

36 Sandelig siger jeg til jer, der er ingen af dem, der har set så store ting, som I har set; ej heller har de hørt så store ting, som I har hørt.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

Tredje Nefi 20

- 1 Og det skete, at han befalede mængden, at de skulle høre op med at bede, og også sine disciple. Og han befalede dem, at de ikke skulle høre op med at bede i hjertet.
- 2 Og han befalede dem, at de skulle rejse sig op og stå på benene. Og de rejste sig op og stod på benene.
- 3 Og det skete, at han igen brød brødet og velsignede det og gav disciplene at spise.
- 4 Og da de havde spist, befalede han dem, at de skulle bryde brødet og give det til mængden.
- 5 Og da de havde givet det til mængden, gav han dem også vin at drikke og befalede dem, at de skulle give den til mængden.
- 6 Se, der var hverken blevet bragt brød eller vin af disciplene, ej heller af mængden;
- 7 men han gav dem i sandhed brød at spise og også vin at drikke.
- 8 Og han sagde til dem: Den, der spiser dette brød, spiser af mit legeme for sin sjæl; og den, der drikker af denne vin, drikker af mit blod for sin sjæl; og hans sjæl skal aldrig hungrig eller tørstig, men skal være mæt.
- 9 Se, da mængden alle havde spist og drukket, se, da blev de fyldt af Ånden; og de råbte med én røst og gav pris til Jesus, som de både så og hørte.
- 10 Og det skete, at da de alle havde givet pris til Jesus, sagde han til dem: Se, nu fuldfører jeg den befaling, som Faderen har befalet mig angående dette folk, som er en rest af Israels hus.
- 11 I husker, at jeg talte til jer og sagde, at når Esajas' ord skulle opfyldes – se, de er skrevet, I har dem hos jer, gransk dem derfor –
- 12 og sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at når de bliver opfyldt, så opfyldes den pagt, som Faderen har sluttet med sit folk, o Israels hus.

3 Nephi 20

- And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.
- And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.
- And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.
- And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.
- And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.
- Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;
- But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.
- And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.
- Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.
- And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.
- Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—
- And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

13 Og da skal de rester, som er spredt omkring på jordens overflade, blive indsamlet fra øst og fra vest og fra syd og fra nord, og de skal blive bragt til kundskab om Herren deres Gud, som har forløst dem.

14 Og Faderen har befaleet mig, at jeg skal give jer dette land som jeres arvelod.

15 Og jeg siger jer, at hvis ikke-jøderne ikke omvender sig efter den velsignelse, som de skal få, efter at de har spredt mit folk –

16 da skal I, som er en rest af Jakobs hus, gå ud blandt dem; og I skal være midt blandt dem, som skal være mange; og I skal være blandt dem som en løve blandt skovens dyr og som en ung løve blandt fåreflokkene, som, hvis den går igennem dem, både træder ned og flår i stykker; og ingen kan udfri dem.

17 Din hånd skal løftes mod dine modstandere, og alle dine fjender skal tilintetgøres.

18 Og jeg vil samle mit folk sammen, som en mand samler sine neg på gulvet.

19 For jeg vil gøre mit folk, med hvem Faderen har sluttet pagt, ja, jeg vil gøre dine horn til jern og jeg vil gøre dine klove til bronze. Og du skal knuse mange folk; og jeg vil hellige deres bytte til Herren, og deres gods til hele jordens Herre. Og se, jeg er ham, som gør det.

20 Og det skal ske, siger Faderen, at min retfærdigheds sværd skal hænge over dem på den dag; og medmindre de omvender sig, skal det falde på dem, siger Faderen, ja, på alle de ikke-jødiske folkeslag.

21 Og det skal ske, at jeg vil grundfæste mit folk, o Israels hus.

22 Og se, dette folk vil jeg grundfæste i dette land som en opfyldelse af den pagt, som jeg sluttede med jeres fader Jakob; og det skal blive et nyt Jerusalem. Og himlens kræfter skal være midt blandt dette folk; ja, selv jeg vil være midt blandt jer.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

23 Se, jeg er den, om hvem Moses talte, da han sagde: En profet som mig vil Herren jeres Gud lade fremstå for jer af jeres brødre; ham skal I høre i alt, hvad end han vil sige til jer. Og det skal ske, at hver sjæl, som ikke vil høre på den profet, skal blive forstødt af folket.

24 Sandelig siger jeg til jer, ja, og alle profeterne fra Samuel og dem, som følger efter, så mange, som har talt, har vidnet om mig.

25 Og se, I er profeternes børn, og I er af Israels hus, og I er med i den pagt, som Faderen sluttede med jeres fædre, idet han sagde til Abraham: Og i dine efterkommere skal alle jordens slægter blive velsignet.

26 Faderen har oprejst mig for jer først og sendt mig for at velsigne jer ved at vende hver af jer fra jeres syndighed; og dette fordi I er pagtens børn –

27 og efter at I er blevet velsignet, da opfylder Faderen den pagt, som han sluttede med Abraham, idet han sagde: I dine efterkommere skal alle jordens stammer blive velsignet – så Helligånden udøses over ikke-jøderne ved mig, hvilken velsignelse til ikke-jøderne skal gøre dem mægtige, mere end alle andre, så de vil sprede mit folk, o Israels hus.

28 Og de skal være en svøbe for folket i dette land. Alligevel, når de har modtaget mit evangeliums fylde, da vil jeg, hvis de forhærder hjertet mod mig, gengælde deres syndighed på deres eget hoved, siger Faderen.

29 Og jeg vil erindre den pagt, som jeg har sluttet med mit folk, og jeg har sluttet pagt med dem om, at jeg vil samle dem sammen, når jeg anser tiden for at være inde, at jeg igen vil give dem deres fædres land som deres arvelod, hvilket er Jerusalems land, som er det forjættede land for dem for evigt, siger Faderen.

30 Og det skal ske, at den tid kommer, da mit evangeliums fylde skal blive prædikeret for dem.

31 Og de skal tro på mig, at jeg er Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, og skal bede til Faderen i mit navn.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

32 Da skal deres vægttere opløfte deres røst, og med forenet røst skal de synge, for de skal se med egne øjne.

33 Da vil Faderen samle dem sammen igen og give dem Jerusalem som deres arveland.

34 Da skal de bryde ud i glæde: Syng sammen, I Jerusalems øde steder, for Faderen har trøstet sit folk, han har forløst Jerusalem.

35 Faderen har blottet sin hellige arm for øjnene af alle folkeslagene; og alle jordens ender skal se Faderens frelse; og Faderen og jeg er ét.

36 Og da skal det opfyldes, som står skrevet: Vågn op, vågn op igen, og ifør dig din styrke, o Zion; ifør dig dine smukke klæder, o Jerusalem, du hellige by, for fra nu af skal de uomskårne og de urene aldrig mere komme ind i dig.

37 Ryst støvet af dig; rejs dig, tag sæde, o Jerusalem; løs-gør dig af dine halslænker, o du fangne Zions datter.

38 For så siger Herren: I har solgt jer selv for intet, og I skal forløses uden penge.

39 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, at mit folk skal kende mit navn; ja, på den dag skal de vide, at jeg er ham, som taler.

40 Og da skal de sige: Hvor herlige på bjergene er ikke fødderne af ham, som bringer gode tidender til dem; som forkynder fred; som bringer gode tidender til dem om godt; som forkynder frelse; som siger til Zion: Din Gud regerer!

41 Og da skal et råb gå ud: Bryd op, bryd op, drag ud derfra, rør ikke det, der er urent; drag ud af hendes midte; vær rene, I, som bærer Herrens kar.

42 For I skal ikke drage ud i hast, ej heller drage ud ved flugt, for Herren vil gå foran jer, og Israels Gud skal være jeres bagtrop.

43 Se, min tjener vil handle klogt; han skal ophøjes og prises og være højt æret.

44 Ligesom mange blev forbavset over dig – hans ansigt var så forpint, mere end noget menneske, og hans lege-me mere end menneskenes børn –

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

45 således skal han bestænke mange folkeslag; kongerne skal lukke munden over for ham, for det, som ikke var blevet dem fortalt, skal de se, og det, som de ikke havde hørt, skal de fatte.

46 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, alt dette skal visselig ske, ligesom Faderen har befaleet mig. Da skal denne pagt, som Faderen har sluttet med sit folk, blive opfyldt, og da skal Jerusalem igen bebos af mit folk, og det skal være deres arveland.

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

Tredje Nefi 21

- 1 Og sandelig siger jeg til jer: Jeg giver jer et tegn, så I kan kende det tidspunkt, da dette skal til at finde sted – at jeg skal indsamle mit folk, o Israels hus, fra deres lange adspjaltelse og igen skal oprette mit Zion blandt dem;
- 2 og se, dette er det, som jeg vil give jer til tegn – for sandelig siger jeg til jer, at når dette, som jeg kundgør for jer, og som jeg herefter selv vil kundgøre for jer og vil kundgøre for jer ved Helligåndens kraft, som skal gives jer af Faderen, skal blive gjort kendt for ikke-jøderne, så de kan kende til dette folk, som er en rest af Jakobs hus, og til dette mit folk, som vil blive spredt af dem;
- 3 sandelig, sandelig siger jeg jer, at når dette bliver gjort kendt for dem ved Faderen og ved Faderen kommer frem fra dem til jer;
- 4 for Faderen anser det for vist, at de bliver grundfæstet i dette land og bliver bosat som et frit folk ved Faderens magt, så dette måtte komme frem fra dem til en rest af jeres efterkommere, så Faderens pagt, som han har sluttet med sit folk, o Israels hus, må blive opfyldt;
- 5 derfor, når dette værk og det værk, som herefter vil blive udvirket blandt jer, vil komme frem fra ikke-jøderne til jeres efterkommere, som vil synke ned i vantro på grund af ugudelighed;
- 6 for således er det Faderens ønske, at det skal komme frem fra ikke-jøderne, for at han kan vise sin magt for ikke-jøderne i den hensigt, at ikke-jøderne, hvis de ikke forhærder hjertet, at de må omvende sig og komme til mig og blive døbt i mit navn og få kundskab om de sande punkter i min lære, så de må blive regnet blandt mit folk, o Israels hus;
- 7 og når dette sker, at jeres efterkommere begynder at få kundskab om dette – skal det være et tegn for dem, så de kan vide, at Faderens værk allerede er begyndt, sådan at den pagt, som han har sluttet med de folk, som er af Israels hus, vil blive opfyldt.

3 Nephi 21

- And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;
- And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;
- Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;
- For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;
- Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;
- For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;
- And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

8 Og når den dag kommer, skal det ske, at konger skal lukke deres mund; for det, som ikke var blevet dem fortalt, skal de se, og det, som de ikke havde hørt, skal de fatte.

9 For på den dag skal Faderen for min skyld udvirke et værk, som skal blive et stort og forunderligt værk blandt dem; og der skal være dem blandt dem, som ikke vil tro det, skønt en mand skal forkynde det for dem.

10 Men se, min tjeners liv skal være i min hånd; derfor skal de ikke volde ham skade, skønt han skal være forpint på grund af dem. Dog vil jeg helbrede ham, for jeg vil vise dem, at min visdom er større end Djævelens snedighed.

11 Derfor skal det ske, at hver den, som ikke vil tro på mine, Jesu Kristi, ord, som Faderen skal lade ham bringe frem til ikke-jøderne og skal give ham magt til at bringe frem til ikke-jøderne, de skal blive stødt ud fra mit folk, som tilhører pagten (det skal blive gjort, ligesom Moses sagde).

12 Og mit folk, som er en rest af Jakob, skal være blandt ikke-jøderne, ja, midt blandt dem som en løve blandt skovens vilde dyr, som en ung løve blandt fåreflokkene, som, hvis den går igennem dem, både træder ned og flår i stykker, og ingen kan udfri dem.

13 Deres hånd skal løftes mod deres modstandere, og alle deres fjender skal tilintetgøres.

14 Ja, ve ikke-jøderne, medmindre de omvender sig; for det skal ske på den dag, siger Faderen, at jeg vil tilintetgøre dine heste fra din midte, og jeg vil ødelægge dine stridsvogne;

15 og jeg vil tilintetgøre byerne i dit land og nedbryde alle dine støttepunkter;

16 og jeg vil udrydde trolddom af dit land, og du skal ikke mere have sandsigere;

17 dine udskårne gudebilleder vil jeg også tilintetgøre og dine oprejste gudebilleder fra din midte, og du skal ikke mere tilbede dine hænders værk;

18 og jeg vil rykke dine lunde op fra din midte; ligeså vil jeg ødelægge dine byer.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

19 Og det skal ske, at al løgn og bedrag og misundelse og stridigheder og præstelist og utugtigheder skal afskaffes.

20 For det skal ske, siger Faderen, at hver den, som på den dag ikke vil omvende sig og komme til min elskede Søn, dem vil jeg forstøde fra mit folk, o Israels hus;

21 og jeg vil fuldbyrde hævn og raseri over dem, som over hedningerne, sådan som de ikke før har hørt.

22 Men hvis de vil omvende sig og lytte til mine ord og ikke forhærde hjertet, vil jeg oprette min kirke blandt dem, og de skal optages i pagten og blive regnet blandt denne Jakobs rest, til hvem jeg har givet dette land som arvelod.

23 Og de skal hjælpe mit folk, Jakobs rest, og også så mange af Israels hus, som vil komme, så de kan bygge en by, som skal kaldes det ny Jerusalem.

24 Og da skal de hjælpe mit folk, som er spredt over hele landets overflade, så de kan blive indsamlet til det ny Jerusalem.

25 Og da skal himlens magt komme ned blandt dem; og jeg vil også være midt blandt dem.

26 Og da skal Faderens værk begynde på den dag, ja, når dette evangelium skal blive prædikeret blandt resten af dette folk. Sandelig siger jeg til jer: På den dag skal Faderens værk begynde blandt alle de spredte af mit folk, ja, nemlig blandt de stammer, som har været tabte, som Faderen har ført ud af Jerusalem.

27 Ja, værket skal begynde blandt alle de spredte af mit folk med Faderen som den, der bereder den vej, hvorved de kan komme til mig, så de kan påkalde Faderen i mit navn.

28 Ja, og da skal værket begynde med Faderen som den, der bereder den vej, hvorved hans folk kan blive samlet hjem til deres arveland.

29 Og de skal drage ud fra alle folkeslag, og de skal ikke drage ud forhastet eller ved flugt, for jeg vil drage foran dem, siger Faderen, og jeg vil være deres bagtrop.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

Tredje Nefi 22

- 1 Og da skal det, som står skrevet, ske: Syng, du ufrugtbar, du, som ikke fødte; bryd ud i sang og råb højt, du, som ikke fik fødselsveer; for flere er den barnløses børn end den gifte hustrus børn, siger Herren.
- 2 Gør mere plads i dit telt, og lad dem spænde dine boligens dug ud; spar ikke, gør dine teltreb lange, og forstærk dine stave;
- 3 for du skal bryde ud til højre og til venstre, og dine efterkommere skal arve ikke-jøderne og gøre de øde byer beboede.
- 4 Frygt ikke, for du skal ikke skamme dig, vær heller ikke beskæmmet, for du skal ikke gøres til skamme; for du skal glemme din ungdoms skam og skal ikke erindre din ungdoms vanære og skal ikke længere erindre din enkestands vanære.
- 5 For din skaber, din ægtemand, Hærskarers Herre er hans navn; og din forløser, Israels Hellige – hele jordens Gud skal han kaldes.
- 6 For Herren har kaldet dig som en kvinde, der er svigtet og bedrøvet i ånden, og som en hustru, der var ung, da du blev afvist, siger din Gud.
- 7 For et kort øjeblik har jeg svigtet dig, men med stor barmhjertighed vil jeg samle dig.
- 8 I en kortvarig vrede skjulte jeg et øjeblik mit ansigt for dig, men med evigtvarende godhed vil jeg have barmhjertighed med dig, siger Herren, din forløser.
- 9 For dette er som Noas vande for mig, for som jeg har svoret, at Noas vande ikke mere skulle komme over jorden, således har jeg svoret, at jeg ikke ville være vred på dig.
- 10 For bjergene skal vige og højene fjernes, men min godhed skal ikke vige fra dig, ej heller skal min fredspagt fjernes, siger Herren, som har barmhjertighed med dig.
- 11 O, du plagede, uvejrhægede og utrøstede! Se, jeg vil lægge dine sten op med skønne farver og lægge din grundvold med safirer.
- 12 Og jeg vil gøre dine vinduer af agater og dine porte af karfunkler og hele din ringmur af ædelstene.

3 Nephi 22

- And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.
- Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;
- For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.
- Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.
- For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.
- For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.
- For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.
- In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.
- For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.
- For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.
- O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.
- And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

13 Og alle dine børn skal blive undervist af Herren; og stor skal dine børns fred blive.

14 På retfærdighed skal du grundfæstes; du skal være langt fra undertrykkelse, for du skal ikke frygte, og fra skræk, for den skal ikke komme dig nær.

15 Se, de skal visselig samle sig mod dig, ikke med min vilje; og hver den, der samler sig mod dig, skal falde for din skyld.

16 Se, jeg har skabt smeden, som blæser til kullene i ilden, og som tilvirker et redskab til sit værk; og jeg har skabt ødelæggeren til at ødelægge.

17 Intet våben, der tilvirkes mod dig, skal virke, og hver tunge, der håner dig i retten, skal du fordømme. Dette er Herrens tjeneres arv, og deres retfærdighed er af mig, siger Herren.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

Tredje Nefi 23

- 1 Og se, nu siger jeg til jer, at I burde granske dette. Ja, den befaling giver jeg jer, at I skal granske det flittigt, for betydningsfulde er Esajas' ord.
- 2 For visselig talte han om alt, der angår mit folk, som er af Israels hus; derfor må han nødvendigvis også tale til ikke-jøderne.
- 3 Og alt det, som han talte, er sket eller skal ske helt i overensstemmelse med de ord, som han talte.
- 4 Giv derfor agt på mine ord, skriv det, som jeg har sagt jer, og i overensstemmelse med Faderens tid og vilje skal de udgå til ikke-jøderne.
- 5 Og hver den, som vil lytte til mine ord og omvender sig og bliver døbt, han skal blive frelst. Gransk profeterne, for der er mange, som vidner om dette.
- 6 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde sagt disse ord, sagde han videre til dem, efter at han havde udlagt alle de skrifter for dem, som de havde modtaget, sagde han til dem: Se, andre skrifter ønsker jeg, at I skal skrive, som I ikke har.
- 7 Og det skete, at han sagde til Nefi: Hent den optegnelse, som I har ført.
- 8 Og da Nefi havde hentet optegnelserne og lagt dem foran ham, kastede han blikket på dem og sagde:
- 9 Sandelig siger jeg til jer: Jeg befalede min tjener Samuel, lamanitten, at han skulle vidne for dette folk, at på den dag, da Faderen skulle herliggøre sit navn i mig, at der da var mange hellige, der skulle opstå fra de døde og skulle vise sig for mange og skulle betjene dem. Og han sagde til dem: Var det ikke så?
- 10 Og hans disciple svarede ham og sagde: Jo, Herre, Samuel profeterede i overensstemmelse med dine ord, og de blev alle opfyldt.
- 11 Og Jesus sagde til dem: Hvordan kan det være, at I ikke har skrevet dette, at mange hellige opstod og viste sig for mange og betjente dem?

3 Nephi 23

- And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.
- For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.
- And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.
- Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.
- And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.
- And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.
- And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.
- And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:
- Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?
- And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.
- And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

12 Og det skete, at Nefi huskede, at dette ikke var blevet skrevet.

13 Og det skete, at Jesus befalede, at det skulle skrives; derfor blev det skrevet, sådan som han befalede.

14 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus under ét havde udlagt alle de skrifter, som de havde skrevet, befalede han dem, at de skulle undervise i det, som han havde udlagt for dem.

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

Tredje Nefi 24

- 1 Og det skete, at han befalede dem, at de skulle skrive de ord, som Faderen havde givet til Malakias, og som han ville berette for dem. Og det skete, at efter at de var blevet skrevet, udlagde han dem. Og disse er de ord, han berettede for dem, og som lød: Så sagde Faderen til Malakias: Se, jeg vil sende mit sendebud, og han skal berede vejen for mig, og Herren, som I søger, skal pludselig komme til sit tempel, ja, pagtens sendebud, som I fryder jer ved; se, han kommer, siger Hærskarers Herre.
- 2 Men hvem kan udholde den dag, han kommer, og hvem skal bestå, når han viser sig? For han er som en smelters ild og som en tvætters lud.
- 3 Og han skal sidde som en, der smelter og renser sølv; og han skal rense Levis sønner og lutre dem som guld og sølv, så de kan bringe Herren et offer i retfærdighed.
- 4 Da skal Judas og Jerusalems ofre være Herren til behag som i fordums dage og som i svundne år.
- 5 Og jeg vil komme jer nær for at dømme; og jeg vil blive et hurtigt vidne mod troldmændene og mod ægteskabsbryderne og mod menederne og mod dem, som undertrykker daglejeren med hensyn til hans løn, enken og den faderløse, og som afviser den fremmede, og ikke frygter mig, siger Hærskarers Herre.
- 6 For jeg er Herren, jeg forandrer mig ikke; derfor bliver I, Jakobs sønner, ikke opslugt.
- 7 Helt fra jeres fædres dage er I afvejet fra mine ordnancer og har ikke levet efter dem. Vend om til mig, så vil jeg vende om til jer, siger Hærskarers Herre. Men I siger: I hvad skal vi vende om?
- 8 Vil et menneske røve fra Gud? Ikke desto mindre har I røvet fra mig! Men I siger: Hvori har vi røvet fra dig? I tiende og offergaver.
- 9 I er forbandede med en forbandelse, for I har røvet fra mig, ja, hele folket.

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi —Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

10 Bring I hele tienden til forrådshuset, så der kan være mad i mit hus; og prøv mig nu hermed, siger Hærskarers Herre, om jeg ikke vil åbne jer himlens vinduer og øse en velsignelse ud over jer, så der ikke vil være plads nok til at modtage den.

11 Og jeg vil irettesætte æderen for jeres skyld, og han skal ikke ødelægge jordens frugt; ej heller skal jeres vinstok smide sin frugt på marken før tid, siger Hærskarers Herre.

12 Og alle folkeslag skal kalde jer velsignede, for I skal blive et dejligt land, siger Hærskarers Herre.

13 Jeres ord har været hårde imod mig, siger Herren. Ikke desto mindre siger I: Hvad har vi talt imod dig?

14 I har sagt: Det er nytteløst at tjene Gud, og hvad gæver det, at vi har levet efter hans ordinancer, og at vi har vandret sørgende for Hærskarers Herre?

15 Og nu priser vi de stolte lykkelige; ja, de, der øver ugudelighed, klarer sig godt; ja, de, der frister Gud, slipper endog godt fra det.

16 Da talte de, som frygtede Herren, ofte, den ene med den anden, og Herren lyttede og hørte efter, og en mindebog blev skrevet for ham om dem, der frygtede Herren, og som tænkte på hans navn.

17 Og de skal være mine, siger Hærskarers Herre, på den dag, da jeg samler mine juveler, og jeg vil skåne dem, som en mand skåner sin egen søn, som tjener ham.

18 Da skal I vende om og skelne mellem den retfærdige og den ugudelige, mellem den, der tjener Gud, og den, der ikke tjener ham.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightful land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

Tredje Nefi 25

- 1 For se, den dag kommer, der skal brænde som en ovn; og alle de stolte, ja, og alle, som handler ugudeligt, skal være som stubbe; og den dag, der kommer, skal brænde dem op, siger Hærskarers Herre, så der ikke bliver hverken rod eller gren tilbage af dem.
- 2 Men for jer, som frygter mit navn, skal Retfærdighedens Søn rejse sig med helbredelse i sine vinger; og I skal gå frem og vokse op som kalve i båsen.
- 3 Og I skal træde de ugudelige ned, for de skal blive aske under jeres fodsåler på den dag, da jeg vil gøre dette, siger Hærskarers Herre.
- 4 Husk min tjener Moses' lov, som jeg gav ham på Horeb for hele Israel med lovuddene og retsreglerne.
- 5 Se, jeg vil sende jer profeten Elias, før Herrens store og frygtelige dag kommer;
- 6 og han skal vende fædrenes hjerte til børnene og børnenes hjerte til deres fædre, så jeg ikke skal komme og slå jorden med en forbandelse.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

Tredje Nefi 26

- 1 Og se, det skete, at da Jesus havde sagt dette, udlagde han det for mængden; og han udlagde alt for dem, både stort og småt.
- 2 Og han sagde: Disse skrifter, som I ikke havde hos jer, befalede Faderen mig, at jeg skulle give til jer, for han anså det for vist, at de skulle gives til kommende slægter.
- 3 Og han udlagde alt, lige fra begyndelsen indtil den tid, da han skal komme i sin herlighed – ja, endog alt det, der skal ske på jordens overflade, lige indtil elementerne skal smelte af brændende hede og jorden skal blive rullet sammen som en bogrulle, og himlen og jorden skal forgå;
- 4 og lige til den store og yderste dag, da alle folk og alle slægter og alle folkeslag og tungemål skal stå foran Gud for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger, om de er gode, eller om de er onde –
- 5 hvis de er gode, til opstandelsen til evigtvarende liv; og hvis de er onde, til opstandelsen til fordømmelse; disse svarer til hinanden, den ene på den ene side og den anden på den anden side, i overensstemmelse med den barmhjertighed og den retfærdighed og den hellighed, der er i Kristus, som var til før verden begyndte.
- 6 Og se, der kan ikke i denne bog skrives blot en hundredel af det, som Jesus i sandhed lærte folket;
- 7 men se, Nefis plader indeholder størstedelen af det, som han lærte folket.
- 8 Og dette, som er en mindre del af det, som han lærte folket, har jeg skrevet; og jeg har skrevet det i den hensigt, at det igen må blive bragt til dette folk fra ikke-jøderne i overensstemmelse med de ord, som Jesus har talt.
- 9 Og når de har modtaget dette, som det er nødvendigt, at de skal få først for at prøve deres tro, og om det skal være sådan, at de tror på dette, da skal det, som er større, blive tilkendegivet for dem.
- 10 Og dersom de ikke vil tro på dette, da skal det, som er større, holdes tilbage fra dem til deres fordømmelse.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

11 Se, jeg skulle til at skrive det, alt det, der var indgrave-
ret på Nefis plader, men Herren forbød det, idet han
sagde: Jeg vil prøve mit folks tro.

12 Derfor skriver jeg, Mormon, det, som er blevet mig
befalet af Herren. Og nu afslutter jeg, Mormon, mine
ord og går videre med at skrive det, som er blevet mig
befalet.

13 Derfor ønsker jeg, at I skal se, at Herren i sandhed un-
derviste folket i et tidsrum af tre dage; og derefter viste
han sig ofte for dem og brød ofte brødet og velsignede
det og gav det til dem.

14 Og det skete, at han underviste og betjente børnene i
den mængde, om hvilken der er blevet talt, og han løste
deres tunge, og de talte store og forunderlige ting til de-
res fædre, ja, større end det, han havde åbenbaret for fol-
ket; og han løste deres tunge, så de kunne udtrykke sig.

15 Og det skete, at efter at han var steget op til himlen –
anden gang han viste sig for dem, og var draget til
Faderen efter at have helbredt alle deres syge og deres
lamme og åbnet øjnene på deres blinde og åbnet de dø-
ves ører og efter virkelig at have foretaget alle slags hel-
bredelser blandt dem og oprejst en mand fra de døde og
efter at have vist dem sin magt og være steget op til
Faderen –

16 se, da skete det den næste dag, at mængden samlede
sig, og de både så og hørte disse børn; ja, selv spædbørn
åbnede deres mund og udtrykte forunderlige ting; og
det, som de udtrykte, blev det forbudt noget menneske
at skrive.

17 Og det skete, at de disciple, som Jesus havde udvalgt,
fra det tidspunkt af begyndte at døbe og at undervise så
mange, som kom til dem; og så mange, som blev døbt i
Jesu navn, blev fyldt af Helligånden.

18 Og mange af dem så og hørte uudsigelige ting, som
det ikke er lovligt at skrive.

19 Og de underviste og betjente hinanden; og de havde
alt fælles blandt sig, idet alle handlede retfærdigt, den
ene med den anden.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were en-
graven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade
it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which
have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I,
Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to
write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the
Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three
days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft,
and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto
them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister
unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been
spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did
speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things,
even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and
he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into
heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto
them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed
all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of
their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even
had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a
man from the dead, and had shown forth his power
unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the mul-
titude gathered themselves together, and they both saw
and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their
mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things
which they did utter were forbidden that there should
not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus
had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and
to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as
were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the
Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable
things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another;
and they had all things common among them, every
man dealing justly, one with another.

20 Og det skete, at de gjorde alt, sådan som Jesus havde
befalet dem.

21 Og de, der blev døbt i Jesu navn, blev kaldt Kristi kir-
ke.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as
Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus
were called the church of Christ.

Tredje Nefi 27

- 1 Og det skete, at mens Jesu disciple rejste omkring og prædikede det, som de havde både hørt og set, og døbte i Jesu navn, skete det, at disciplene samlede sig og forenede sig i indtrængende bøn og faste.
- 2 Og Jesus viste sig igen for dem, for de bad til Faderen i hans navn; og Jesus kom og stod midt blandt dem og sagde til dem: Hvad vil I, at jeg skal give jer?
- 3 Og de sagde til ham: Herre, vi vil, at du vil fortælle os det navn, hvorved vi skal kalde denne kirke, for der er mundhuggerier blandt folket angående denne sag.
- 4 Og Herren sagde til dem: Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer: Hvorfor skulle folket murre og mundhugges angående dette?
- 5 Har de ikke læst skrifterne, som siger, at I må påtage jer Kristi navn, som er mit navn? For ved dette navn skal I blive kaldt på den yderste dag.
- 6 Og den, der påtager sig mit navn og holder ud til enden, han skal blive frelst på den yderste dag.
- 7 Derfor, hvad end I vil gøre, det skal I gøre i mit navn; derfor skal I kalde kirken ved mit navn; og I skal påkalde Faderen i mit navn om, at han vil velsigne kirken på grund af mig.
- 8 Og hvordan kan den være min kirke, medmindre den kaldes ved mit navn? For hvis en kirke kaldes ved Moses' navn, så er den Moses' kirke; eller hvis den kaldes ved et menneskes navn, så er den et menneskes kirke; men hvis den kaldes ved mit navn, så er den min kirke, dersom de er bygget på mit evangelium.
- 9 Sandelig siger jeg til jer, at I er bygget på mit evangelium; derfor skal I kalde hvad som helst, I kalder noget, ved mit navn; hvis I derfor påkalder Faderen for kirken, vil Faderen høre jer, hvis det sker i mit navn;
- 10 og dersom kirken er bygget på mit evangelium, så vil Faderen vise sine egne gerninger deri.

3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

11 Men hvis den ikke er bygget på mit evangelium og er bygget på menneskers gerninger eller på Djævelens gerninger, sandelig siger jeg jer, så får de glæde af deres gerninger i en tid, og snart efter kommer enden, og de bliver hugget om og kastet i ilden, hvorfra ingen vender tilbage.

12 For deres gerninger følger dem, for det er på grund af deres gerninger, at de bliver hugget om; husk derfor det, som jeg har sagt jer.

13 Se, jeg har givet jer mit evangelium, og dette er det evangelium, som jeg har givet jer – at jeg kom til verden for at gøre min Faders vilje, fordi min Fader sendte mig.

14 Og min Fader sendte mig, så jeg kunne blive løftet op på korset, så jeg, efter at jeg var blevet løftet op på korset, kunne drage alle mennesker til mig, for at mennesker, ligesom jeg var blevet løftet op ved mennesker, skulle blive løftet op ved Faderen for at stå foran mig for at blive dømt efter deres gerninger, om de er gode, eller om de er onde –

15 og af denne årsag er jeg blevet løftet op; derfor vil jeg i overensstemmelse med Faderens magt drage alle mennesker til mig, så de kan blive dømt efter deres gerninger.

16 Og det skal ske, at den, der omvender sig og bliver døbt i mit navn, skal blive fyldt; og hvis han holder ud til enden, se, da vil jeg holde ham skyldfri over for min Fader på den dag, da jeg skal stå frem for at dømme verden.

17 Og den, der ikke holder ud til enden, han er den, som også skal blive hugget om og kastet i ilden, hvorfra de ikke mere kan vende tilbage på grund af Faderens retfærdighed.

18 Og dette er det ord, som han har givet menneskenes børn. Og af den årsag opfylder han de ord, som han har givet, og han lyver ikke, men opfylder alle sine ord.

19 Og intet urent kan komme ind i hans rige; derfor går intet ind til hans hvile, undtagen de, der har vasket deres klæder i mit blod på grund af deres tro og omvendelse fra alle deres synder og deres trofasthed til enden.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilled the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

20 Se, dette er befalingen: Omvend jer, alle I jordens ender, og kom til mig, og bliv døbt i mit navn, så I må blive helliggjort ved modtagelsen af Helligånden, så I må stå uplettede for mig på den yderste dag.

21 Sandelig, sandelig siger jeg til jer, dette er mit evangelium; og I kender det, som I må gøre i min kirke; for de gerninger, som I har set mig gøre, skal I også gøre; for det, som I har set mig gøre, det skal I også gøre;

22 derfor, hvis I gør dette, velsignede er I, for I skal blive løftet op på den yderste dag.

23 Skriv det, som I har set og hørt, bortset fra det som er forbudt.

24 Skriv dette folks gerninger, som skal ske, ligesom der er blevet skrevet om det, der er sket.

25 For se, ud fra de bøger, som er blevet skrevet, og som skal blive skrevet, skal dette folk blive dømt, for ved dem skal deres gerninger blive kendt for mennesker.

26 Og se, alt er skrevet ved Faderen, derfor skal verden blive dømt ud fra de bøger, som skal blive skrevet.

27 Og vid I, at I skal være dette folks dommere i overensstemmelse med den dom, som jeg giver jer, og som skal være retfærdig. Hvad slags mænd burde I derfor være? Sandelig siger jeg til jer: Ligesom jeg er.

28 Og nu drager jeg til Faderen. Og sandelig siger jeg til jer: Hvad I end beder Faderen om i mit navn, det skal gives jer.

29 Derfor, bed, og I skal få; bank på, og der skal lukkes op for jer; for den, der beder, får; og for den, der banker på, skal der lukkes op.

30 Og se nu, min glæde er stor, ja, til fulde på grund af jer og også denne slægt; ja, endog Faderen glæder sig, og også alle de hellige engle på grund af jer og denne slægt, for ingen af dem er fortabt.

31 Se, jeg ønsker, at I skal forstå; for jeg mener dem af denne slægt, som nu er i live, og ingen af dem er fortabt, og i dem har jeg en fylde af glæde.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

32 Men se, jeg bedrøves på grund af det fjerde slægtled fra dette slægtled, for de bliver ført bort som fanger af ham, ligesom fortabelsens søn blev; for de vil sælge mig for sølv og for guld og for det, som møl fortærer, og som tyve kan bryde ind og stjæle. Og på den dag vil jeg hjem-søge dem ved at gengælde deres gerninger på deres eget hoved.

33 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde afsluttet disse ord, sagde han til sine disciple: Gå I ind ad den snævre port; for snæver er den port, og trang er den vej, som fører til livet, og få er de, som finder den; men vid er den port, og bred den vej, som fører til døden, og mange er de, som rejser derad, indtil natten kommer, hvori ingen kan arbejde.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

Tredje Nefi 28

- 1 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde sagt disse ord, talte han til sine disciple en for en og sagde til dem: Hvad er det, I ønsker af mig, efter at jeg er gået til Faderen?
- 2 Og de talte alle, bortset fra tre, og sagde: Vi ønsker, at vor tjenestegerning, hvortil du har kaldet os, må høre op, efter at vi har levet en menneskealder, så vi hastigt må komme til dig i dit rige.
- 3 Og han sagde til dem: Velsignede er I, fordi I ønsker dette af mig; efter at I er blevet tooghalvfjerds år gamle, skal I derfor komme til mig i mit rige; og hos mig skal I finde hvile.
- 4 Og da han havde talt til dem, vendte han sig mod de tre og sagde til dem: Hvad vil I, at jeg skal gøre for jer, når jeg er gået til Faderen?
- 5 Og de sørgede i deres hjerte, for de turde ikke tale til ham om det, som de ønskede.
- 6 Og han sagde til dem: Se, jeg kender jeres tanker, og I har ønsket det samme, som Johannes, min elskede, ønskede af mig, han, som var sammen med mig i min tjenestegerning, førend jeg blev løftet op af jøderne.
- 7 Derfor, mere velsignede er I, for I skal aldrig smage døden; men I skal leve og se alt, hvad Faderen skal gøre for menneskenes børn, ja, indtil alt skal blive opfyldt efter Faderens vilje, når jeg skal komme i min herlighed med himlens kræfter.
- 8 Og I skal aldrig lide dødens smerter; men når jeg kommer i min herlighed, skal I blive forandret på et øjeblik fra dødelighed til udødelighed; og så skal I blive velsignet i min Faders rige.
- 9 Og videre, I skal ikke have smerter, mens I bor i kødet, ej heller sorg, andet end over verdens synder; og alt dette vil jeg gøre på grund af det, som I har ønsket af mig, for I har ønsket, at I må bringe menneskesjæle til mig, så længe verden står.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

10 Og af denne årsag skal I have en fylde af glæde, og I skal sætte jer i min Faders rige, ja, jeres glæde skal være fuldkommen, ligesom Faderen har givet mig en fylde af glæde, og I skal være ligesom jeg er, og jeg er ligesom Faderen, og Faderen og jeg er ét,

11 og Helligånden aflægger vidnesbyrd om Faderen og mig, og Faderen giver Helligånden til menneskenes børn på grund af mig.

12 Og det skete, at da Jesus havde talt disse ord, rørte han med sin finger ved hver af dem bortset fra de tre, som skulle blive tilbage, og derefter forlod han dem.

13 Og se, himlene blev åbnet, og de blev taget op til himlen og så og hørte uudsigelige ting.

14 Og det blev dem forbudt, at de skulle udtale sig, ej heller blev der givet dem magt, så de kunne udtale sig om det, som de så og hørte;

15 og om de var i legemet eller ude af legemet kunne de ikke sige, for det syntes dem, som om der skete en forklarelse af dem, så de blev forandret fra dette legeme af kød til en udødelig tilstand, så de kunne se det, der hører Gud til.

16 Men det skete, at de igen forkyndte på jordens overflade; alligevel forkyndte de ikke det, som de havde hørt og set på grund af den befaling, der var blevet dem givet i himlen.

17 Og se, om de var dødelige eller udødelige fra den dag, de blev forklaret, ved jeg ikke;

18 men så meget ved jeg ud fra den optegnelse, som er blevet givet – de gik omkring på hele landets overflade og betjente hele folket og optog så mange i kirken, som ville tro på deres forkyndelse, idet de døbte dem, og så mange, som blev døbt, modtog Helligånden.

19 Og de blev kastet i fængsel af dem, som ikke tilhørte kirken. Og fængslerne kunne ikke holde dem, for de blev brudt i stykker.

20 Og de blev kastet ned i jorden; men de slog jorden med Guds ord, således at de ved hans magt blev udfriet af jordens dyb; og derfor kunne de ikke grave grave, der var dybe nok til at holde dem.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

21 Og tre gange blev de kastet ind i en ovn og tog ingen skade.

22 Og to gange blev de kastet ned i en hule med vilde rovdyr; og se, de legede med rovdyrene, som et barn med et diende lam, og tog ingen skade.

23 Og det skete, at de således gik omkring blandt hele Nefis folk og prædikede Kristi evangelium for alle folk på landets overflade, og de blev omvendt til Herren og blev optaget i Kristi kirke, og således blev de folk, der levede i det slægtled, velsignet i overensstemmelse med Jesu ord.

24 Og nu holder jeg, Mormon, op med at tale om dette for en tid.

25 Se, jeg skulle til at skrive navnene på dem, som aldrig skulle smage døden, men Herren forbød det, derfor skriver jeg dem ikke, for de er skjult for verden.

26 Men se, jeg har set dem, og de har betjent mig.

27 Og se, de vil være blandt ikke-jøderne, og ikke-jøderne skal ikke kende dem.

28 De vil også være blandt jøderne, og jøderne skal ikke kende dem.

29 Og det skal ske, når Herren i sin visdom finder det tjenligt, at de skal betjene alle Israels spredte stammer og alle folkeslag, stammer, tungemål og folk og skal bringe mange sjæle fra dem til Jesus, så deres ønske kan blive opfyldt, og også på grund af Guds overbevisende kraft, som er i dem.

30 Og de er som Guds engle, og hvis de beder til Faderen i Jesu navn, kan de vise sig for hvem som helst, som de finder for godt.

31 Derfor skal der blive udvirket store og forunderlige gerninger af dem, før den store og kommende dag, da alle folk visselig må stå for Kristi dommersæde.

32 Ja, selv blandt ikke-jøderne skal der blive udvirket et stort og forunderligt værk af dem før dommedag.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

33 Og hvis I havde alle de skrifter, som giver en beretning om alle Kristi forunderlige gerninger, ville I ud fra Kristi ord vide, at dette visselig skal ske.

34 Og ve den, som ikke vil lytte til Jesu ord eller til dem, som han har udvalgt og sendt blandt dem; for den, som ikke tager imod Jesu ord og ordene fra dem, som han har sendt, tager ikke imod ham; og derfor vil han ikke tage imod dem på den yderste dag;

35 og det ville være bedre for dem, om de ikke var blevet født. For tror I, at I kan slippe for retfærdigheden fra en krænket Gud, som er blevet trampet under føde af mennesker, så frelse på den måde kan blive tilvejebragt?

36 Og se nu, eftersom jeg talte angående dem, som Herren har udvalgt, ja, nemlig de tre, som blev taget op til himlen, at jeg ikke vidste, om de blev rensset fra dødelighed til udødelighed –

37 men se, siden jeg skrev dette, har jeg adspurgt Herren, og han har tilkendegivet for mig, at der nødvendigvis måtte udvirkes en forandring af deres legeme, da de ellers nødvendigvis måtte smage døden;

38 derfor, for at de ikke skulle smage døden, blev der udvirket en forandring af deres legeme, så de ikke skulle lide smerte eller sorg, undtagen over verdens synder.

39 Se, denne forandring svarede ikke til den, der skal finde sted på den yderste dag; men der blev udvirket en forandring af dem, således at Satan ingen magt kunne få over dem, så han ikke kunne friste dem; og de blev helliggjort i kødet, så de blev hellige, og så jordens magter ikke kunne holde dem.

40 Og i denne tilstand skulle de forblive indtil Kristi dommedag; og på den dag skulle de undergå en større forandring og blive modtaget i Faderens rige for ikke mere at gå ud, men bo hos Gud i evighed i himlene.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

Tredje Nefi 29

- 1 Og se nu, jeg siger jer, at når Herren i sin visdom finder det tjenligt, at disse ord skal komme til ikke-jøderne i overensstemmelse med hans ord, da kan I vide, at den pagt, som Faderen har gjort med Israels børn angående deres tilbageførelse til deres arvelande, allerede begynder at blive opfyldt.
- 2 Og I kan vide, at Herrens ord, som er blevet talt ved de hellige profeter, alle skal blive opfyldt; og I behøver ikke at sige, at Herren udsætter sit komme til Israels børn.
- 3 Og I behøver ikke at forestille jer i hjertet, at de ord, som er blevet talt, er tomme, for se, Herren vil erindre sin pagt, som han har sluttet med sit folk af Israels hus.
- 4 Og når I ser disse ord komme frem blandt jer, da behøver I ikke længere at lade hånt om Herrens gerninger; for hans retfærdigheds sværd er i hans højre hånd, og se, hvis I på den dag lader hånt om hans gerninger, da vil han foranledige, at det snart skal falde på jer.
- 5 Ve den, der lader hånt om Herrens gerninger; ja, ve den, der forkaster Kristus og hans gerninger.
- 6 Ja, ve den, der forkaster Herrens åbenbaringer, og som siger, at Herren ikke længere virker ved åbenbaring eller ved profeti eller ved gaver eller ved tungemål eller ved helbredelser eller ved Helligåndens kraft.
- 7 Ja, og ve den, der på den dag for vindings skyld siger, at der ikke kan udvirkes noget mirakel ved Jesus Kristus; for den, som gør det, skal blive som fortabelsens søn, for hvem der ifølge Kristi ord ikke var nogen barmhjertighed!
- 8 Ja, og I behøver ikke længere at hvæse ad eller lade hånt om eller gøre nar af jøderne eller af nogen af resten af Israels hus; for se, Herren erindrer sin pagt med dem, og han vil gøre med dem i overensstemmelse med det, som han har svoret.
- 9 Derfor skal I ikke tro, at I kan vende Herrens højre hånd til den venstre, så han ikke skal fælde dom til opfyldelse af den pagt, som han har sluttet med Israels hus.

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

Tredje Nefi 30

- 1 Lyt, o I ikke-jøder, og hør Jesu Kristi, den levende Guds Søns ord, som han har befalet mig, at jeg skal tale angående jer; for se, han befaler mig, at jeg skal skrive således:
- 2 Vend jer, alle I ikke-jøder, fra jeres ugudelige veje; og omvend jer fra jeres onde gerninger, fra jeres løgne og bedrag og fra jeres utugtigheder og fra jeres hemmelige vederstyggeligheder og jeres afgudsdyrkelse og fra jeres mord og jeres præstelist og jeres misundelse og jeres stridigheder og fra al jeres ugudelighed og alle jeres vederstyggeligheder, og kom til mig, og bliv døbt i mit navn, så I kan få forladelse for jeres synder og blive fyldt af Helligånden, så I kan blive regnet blandt mit folk, som er af Israels hus.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

Fjerde Nefi

Nefis Bog

Af Nefi, som er søn af Nefi – en af Jesu Kristi disciple

En beretning om Nefis folk ifølge hans optegnelse.

- 1 Og det skete, at det fireogtredivte år gik og også det femogtredivte år, og se, Jesu disciple havde dannet Kristi kirke i alle landene rundt omkring. Og så mange, som kom til dem og oprigtigt omvendte sig fra deres synder, blev døbt i Jesu navn; og de modtog også Helligånden.
- 2 Og det skete i det seksogtredivte år, at alle mennesker på hele landets overflade, både nefitter og lamanitter, blev omvendt til Herren, og der var ingen stridigheder og mundhuggerier blandt dem, og enhver handlede retfærdigt, den ene med den anden.
- 3 Og de havde alt til fælles blandt sig, derfor var der ikke fattige og rige, trælle og frie, men de blev alle gjort frie og delagtige i den himmelske gave.
- 4 Og det skete, at det syvogtredivte år også gik, og der fortsatte med at være fred i landet.
- 5 Og der blev udvirket store og forunderlige gerninger af Jesu disciple, i og med at de helbredte de syge og oprejste de døde og fik de lamme til at gå og de blinde til at få deres syn og de døve til at høre; og alle slags mirakler udførte de blandt menneskenes børn; og i intet udvirkede de mirakler, uden at det var i Jesu navn.
- 6 Og således gik det otteogtredivte år og også det niogtredivte og det enogfyrretyvende og det toogfyrretyvende, ja, helt til niogfyrre år var gået og også det enoghalvtredsindstyvende og det tooghalvtredsindstyvende; ja, helt til nioghalvtreds år var gået.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

7 Og Herren gav dem overordentligt stor fremgang i landet, ja, i en sådan grad, at de igen byggede byer, der hvor byer var blevet brændt op.

8 Ja, selv den store by Zarahemla lod de bygge op igen.

9 Men der var mange byer, som var sunket, og hvor der var kommet vand op i stedet for; derfor kunne disse byer ikke genopbygges.

10 Og se nu, det skete, at Nefis folk voksede sig stærkt og mangfoldiggjorde sig overordentlig hurtigt og blev et overordentlig skønt og tiltalende folk.

11 Og de blev gift og blev bortgiftet og blev velsignet i overensstemmelse med den mængde af løfter, som Herren havde givet dem.

12 Og de vandrede ikke mere efter Moselovens skikke og ordinancer, men de vandrede efter de befalinger, som de havde fået af deres Herre og deres Gud, idet de fortsatte med at faste og bede og med ofte at mødes sammen både for at bede og for at høre Herrens ord.

13 Og det skete, at der ikke var nogen strid blandt alle mennesker i hele landet, men der blev udvirket mægtige mirakler blandt Jesu disciple.

14 Og det skete, at det enoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år gik og også det tooghalvfjerdsindstyvende år, ja, kort sagt til det nioghalvfjerdsindstyvende år var gået; ja, hundrede år var gået, og Jesu disciple, som han havde udvalgt, var alle gået til Guds paradis bortset fra de tre, som skulle blive tilbage; og der blev ordineret andre disciple i deres sted; og også mange af dette slægtled var gået bort.

15 Og det skete, at der ikke var nogen strid i landet på grund af Guds kærlighed, som boede i folkets hjerte.

16 Og der var ingen misundelse eller stridigheder eller optøjer eller utugtigheder eller løgne eller mord eller nogen slags uterlighed, og visselig kunne der ikke findes noget lykkeligere folk blandt alle de folk, der var blevet skabt ved Guds hånd.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

17 Der fandtes ingen røvere eller mordere, ej heller var der lamanitter eller nogen form for -itter; men de var alle ét, Kristi børn og arvinger til Guds rige.

18 Og hvor velsignede var de ikke! For Herren velsignede dem i alle deres gerninger; ja, de blev velsignet og havde fremgang, indtil et hundrede og ti år var gået; og det første slægtled fra Kristus var gået bort, og der var ingen strid i hele landet.

19 Og det skete, at Nephi, han, som førte denne sidste optegnelse (og han førte den på Nefis plader), døde, og hans søn Amos førte den i hans sted; og han førte den også på Nefis plader.

20 Og han førte den i fireogfirs år, og der var stadig fred i landet bortset fra, at der var en lille del af folket, som havde rejst sig mod kirken og påtaget sig navnet lamanitter, derfor begyndte der igen at være lamanitter i landet.

21 Og det skete, at Amos også døde (og det var et hundrede og fireoghalvfems år efter Kristi komme), og hans søn Amos førte optegnelsen i hans sted, og han førte den også på Nefis plader; og den blev også skrevet i Nefis bog, som er denne bog.

22 Og det skete, at der var gået to hundrede år; og det andet slægtled var alle gået bort bortset fra nogle få.

23 Og se, jeg, Mormon, vil, at I skal vide, at folket havde mangfoldiggjort sig i en sådan grad, at de var spredt ud over hele landets overflade, og at de var blevet overordentlig rige på grund af deres fremgang i Kristus.

24 Og se, i dette to hundrede og første år begyndte der at være nogle blandt dem, som blev indbildske i stolthed, idet de gik med kostbare klæder og med alle slags fine perler og verdens skønne ting.

25 Og fra den tid af havde de ikke mere deres ejendele og deres gods fælles blandt sig.

26 Og de begyndte at blive delt i klasser; og de begyndte at oprette kirker til sig selv for vindings skyld, og de begyndte at fornægte Kristi sande kirke.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

27 Og det skete, at da der var gået to hundrede og ti år, var der mange kirker i landet; ja, der var mange kirker, som foregav at kende Kristus, og dog forkastede de størstedelen af hans evangelium, således at de tillod al slags ugudelighed og uddelte det, der var helligt, til den, som det var blevet nægtet på grund af uværdighed.

28 Og denne kirke fik en overordentlig stor tilvækst på grund af ugudelighed og på grund af Satans magt, som fik et fast greb om deres hjerte.

29 Og videre, der var endnu en kirke, som forkastede Kristus; og de forfulgte Kristi sande kirke på grund af deres ydmyghed og deres tro på Kristus; og de foragtede dem på grund af de mange mirakler, som blev udvirket blandt dem.

30 Derfor udøvede de magt og myndighed over de af Jesu disciple, som forblev blandt dem, og de kastede dem i fængsel; men ved Guds ords magt, som var i dem, blev fængslerne brudt i stykker, og de gik omkring og udførte mægtige mirakler blandt dem.

31 Alligevel og til trods for alle disse mirakler forhærdede folket hjertet og forsøgte at dræbe dem, ligesom jøderne ved Jerusalem forsøgte at dræbe Jesus ifølge hans ord.

32 Og de kastede dem i ovne med ild, og de kom ud uden at have lidt skade.

33 Og de kastede dem også ned i huler med vilde rovdyr, og de legede med de vilde rovdyr, ligesom et barn med et lam; og de kom op af dem uden at have lidt skade.

34 Alligevel forhærdede folket hjertet, for de blev forledt af mange præster og falske profeter til at oprette mange kirker og til at begå al slags ugudelighed. Og de slog Jesu folk, men Jesu folk slog ikke igen. Og således sank de ned i vantro og ugudelighed fra år til år, lige indtil der var gået to hundrede og tredive år.

35 Og se, det skete i dette år, ja, i det to hundrede og enogtredivte år, at der fandt en stor opsplittning sted blandt folket.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

36 Og det skete, at der i dette år opstod et folk, som blev kaldt nefitter, og de var sande troende på Kristus; og blandt dem var der dem, som af lamanitterne blev kaldt jakobitter og josefitter og zoramitter;

37 derfor blev de, der var de sande troende på Kristus og de sande tilbedere af Kristus (og blandt dem var de tre af Jesu disciple, som skulle blive tilbage), kaldt nefitter og jakobitter og josefitter og zoramitter.

38 Og det skete, at de, der forkastede evangeliet, blev kaldt lamanitter og lemuelitter og ismaelitter; og de sank ikke ned i vantro, men de satte sig bevidst op mod Kristi evangelium; og de lærte deres børn, at de ikke skulle tro, ligesom deres fædre sank ned fra begyndelsen.

39 Og det var på grund af deres fædres ugudelighed og vederstyggelighed, ligesom det var i begyndelsen. Og de blev oplært til at hade Guds børn, ligesom lamanitterne fra begyndelsen blev oplært til at hade Nefis børn.

40 Og det skete, at der var gået to hundrede og fireogfyre år, og således var forholdene hos folket. Og den mere ugudelige del af folket voksede sig stærkere og blev overordentlig mere talrige end Guds folk var.

41 Og de fortsatte stadig med at oprette kirker til sig selv og pryde dem med alle slags kostbarheder. Og således gik to hundrede og halvtreds år, og også to hundrede og tres år.

42 Og det skete, at den ugudelige del af folket igen begyndte at indføre Gadiantons hemmelige eder og sammensværgelser.

43 Og det folk, der blev kaldt Nefis folk, begyndte også at blive stolte i hjertet på grund af deres overordentlig store rigdomme, og at blive forfængelige ligesom deres brødre, lamanitterne.

44 Og fra den tid begyndte disciplene at sørge over verdens synder.

45 Og det skete, at da tre hundrede år var gået, var både Nefis folk og lamanitterne blevet overordentlig ugudelige, det ene såvel som det andet.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

46 Og det skete, at Gadiantons røvere spredte sig over hele landets overflade; og der var ingen, der var retfærdige, bortset fra Jesu disciple. Og guld og sølv samlede de sig i overflod og drev al slags handel.

47 Og det skete, efter at der var gået tre hundrede og fem år (og folket forblev stadig i ugudelighed), at Amos døde, og hans bror Ammaron førte optegnelsen i hans sted.

48 Og det skete, at da der var gået tre hundrede og tyve år, skjulte Ammaron, der blev drevet dertil af Helligånden, de optegnelser, der var hellige – ja, alle de hellige optegnelser, der var blevet overdraget fra slægtled til slægtled, og som var hellige – helt op til det tre hundrede og tyvende år efter Kristi komme.

49 Og han skjulte dem til Herren, for at de igen måtte komme til resten af Jakobs hus i overensstemmelse med Herrens profetier og løfter. Og således er afslutningen på Ammarons optegnelser.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Mormons Bog

Mormons Bog 1

- 1 Og nu udfærdiger jeg, Mormon, en optegnelse om det, som jeg har både set og hørt, og kalder den Mormons Bog.
- 2 Og omkring det tidspunkt, da Ammaron skjulte optegnelserne til Herren, kom han til mig (jeg var omkring ti år gammel, og jeg begyndte at blive undervist en del på den måde, hvorpå der undervises blandt mit folk), og Ammaron sagde til mig: Jeg fornemmer, at du er et alvorligt barn og er hurtig til at opfatte.
- 3 Derfor ønsker jeg, at du, når du bliver omkring fireogtyve år gammel, skal erindre det, som du har lagt mærke til angående dette folk, og, når du når den alder, drage til landet Antum, til en høj, som skal kaldes Shim; og dér har jeg henlagt til Herren alle de hellige indgravninger angående dette folk.
- 4 Og se, du skal tage Nefis plader med dig, og resten skal du efterlade på det sted, hvor de er; og du skal på Nefis plader indgravere alt det, som du har lagt mærke til angående dette folk.
- 5 Og jeg, Mormon, der er efterkommer af Nefi (og min fars navn var Mormon), jeg erindrede det, som Ammaron havde befalet mig.
- 6 Og det skete, at jeg, da jeg var elleve år gammel, af min far blev ført til landet mod syd, ja, helt til Zarahemlas land.
- 7 Hele landets overflade var blevet dækket af bygninger, og folket var næsten lige så talrigt, som var de havets sand.
- 8 Og det skete i dette år, at der opstod en krig mellem nefitterne, som bestod af nefitterne og jakobitterne og josefitterne og zoramitterne; og denne krig var mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne og lemuelitterne og ismaelitterne.
- 9 Se, lamanitterne og lemuelitterne og ismaelitterne blev kaldt lamanitter, og de to parter var nefitter og lamanitter.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

10 Og det skete, at krigen mellem dem begyndte langs grænserne til Zarahemla ved Sidons vande.

11 Og det skete, at nefitterne havde samlet et stort antal mænd, ja, flere end et antal på tredive tusinde. Og det skete, at de i det selv samme år udkæmpede et antal slag, i hvilke nefitterne slog lamanitterne og slog mange af dem ihjel.

12 Og det skete, at lamanitterne trak sig tilbage fra deres forehavende, og der blev sluttet fred i landet; og freden varede ved i et tidsrum af omkring fire år, så der ikke fandt nogen blodsudgydelse sted.

13 Men ugudeligheden var udbredt over hele landets overflade i en sådan grad, at Herren tog sine elskede disciple bort, og udvirkelsen af mirakler og helbredelse hørte op på grund af folkets ugudelighed.

14 Og der var ingen gaver fra Herren, og Helligånden kom ikke over nogen på grund af deres ugudelighed og vantro.

15 Og jeg, der var femten år gammel og havde et noget alvorligt sind, jeg blev derfor besøgt af Herren og smagte og kendte til Jesu godhed.

16 Og jeg forsøgte at prædike for dette folk, men min mund blev lukket, og det blev mig forbudt, at jeg skulle prædike for dem; for se, de havde bevidst sat sig op imod deres Gud; og de elskede disciple blev taget bort fra landet på grund af deres ugudelighed.

17 Men jeg forblev blandt dem, men det blev mig forbudt at prædike for dem på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed, og på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed blev landet forbandet for dem.

18 Og disse gadiantrøvere, som var blandt lamanitterne, oversvømmede landet, således at indbyggerne begyndte at skjule deres skatte i jorden; og de blev glatte, fordi Herren havde forbandet landet, så de ikke kunne holde på dem eller finde dem igen.

19 Og det skete, at der fandtes trolddom og hekseri og magi, og den Ondes kraft blev udøvet på hele landets overflade til opfyldelse af alle Abinadis og også lamanitten Samuels ord.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

And these Gadiantr robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Mormons Bog 2

- 1 Og det skete i det selv samme år, at der igen opstod en krig mellem nefitterne og lamanitterne. Og skønt jeg var ung, var jeg stor af vækst, derfor udpegede Nefis folk mig til, at jeg skulle være deres leder eller lederen for deres hære.
- 2 Derfor skete det, at jeg i mit sekstende år drog ud i spidsen for en hær af nefitter mod lamanitterne; således var der gået tre hundrede og seksogtyve år.
- 3 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og syvogtyvende år, at lamanitterne faldt over os med overordentlig stor styrke, i en sådan grad at de skræmte mine hære; derfor ville de ikke kæmpe, og de begyndte at trække sig tilbage mod de nordlige lande.
- 4 Og det skete, at vi kom til byen Angola, og vi tog byen i besiddelse og traf forberedelser til at forsvare os mod lamanitterne. Og det skete, at vi befæstede byen af alle vore kræfter, men til trods for alle vore befæstninger faldt lamanitterne over os og drev os ud af byen.
- 5 Og de drev os også ud af Davids land.
- 6 Og vi marcherede videre og kom til Josvas land, som lå i de vestlige grænseegne ved kysten.
- 7 Og det skete, at vi samlede vort folk sammen, så hurtigt som det var muligt, så vi kunne få dem sammen i én gruppe.
- 8 Men se, landet var fyldt med røvere og med lamanitter; og til trods for den store ødelæggelse, som hang over mit folk, omvendte de sig ikke fra deres onde gerninger; derfor spredtes der blod og nedslagtning over hele landets overflade, både fra nefitternes side og også fra lamanitternes side; og der fandt en altomfattende omvæltning sted overalt på landets overflade.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 Og se, lamanitterne havde en konge, og hans navn var Aron, og han drog imod os med en hær på fire og fyrre tusinde. Og se, jeg stod ham imod med to og fyrre tusinde. Og det skete, at jeg slog ham med min hær, så han flygtede for mig. Og se, alt dette skete, og der var gået tre hundrede og tredive år.

10 Og det skete, at nefitterne begyndte at omvende sig fra deres ugudelighed og begyndte at råbe, som det var blevet profeteret af profeten Samuel; for se, ingen kunne beholde det, der var hans eget, på grund af de tyve og de røvere og de mordere og den magi og det hekseri, som fandtes i landet.

11 Således begyndte de at sørge og klage over hele landet på grund af dette, og især blandt Nefis folk.

12 Og det skete, at da jeg, Mormon, så deres klagen og deres sorgen og deres sorg for Herren, begyndte mit hjerte at fryde sig i mig, for jeg kendte Herrens barmhjertighed og langmodighed, hvorfor jeg mente, at han ville være barmhjertig mod dem, så de igen ville blive et retfærdigt folk.

13 Men se, denne min glæde var forgæves, for deres sorg var ikke til omvendelse på grund af Guds godhed, men den var snarere de fordømtes sorg, fordi Herren ikke stedse ville tillade dem at finde lykke ved synd.

14 Og de kom ikke til Jesus med et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd, men de forbandede Gud og ønskede at dø. Alligevel kæmpede de med sværdet for deres liv.

15 Og det skete, at min sorg vendte tilbage til mig igen, og jeg så, at nådens dag var forpasset for dem, både temmeligt og åndeligt; for jeg så tusinder af dem blive hugget ned i åbent oprør mod deres Gud og blive dynget op som møg på landets overflade. Og således var der gået tre hundrede og fireogfyrre år.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

16 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og femogfyrretyvende år, at nefitterne begyndte at flygte for lamanitterne; og de blev forfulgt, lige indtil de kom til Jashons land, før det var muligt at standse dem på deres tilbagetog.

17 Og se, byen Jashon lå i nærheden af det land, hvor Ammaron havde henlagt optegnelserne til Herren, for at de ikke skulle blive ødelagt. Og se, jeg var i overensstemmelse med Ammarons ord gået hen og havde taget Nefis plader og udfærdigede en optegnelse i overensstemmelse med Ammarons ord.

18 Og på Nefis plader udfærdigede jeg en fuldstændig beretning om al ugudeligheden og alle vederstyggelighederne, men på disse plader undlod jeg at skrive en fuldstændig beretning om deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder, for se, et vedvarende syn af ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder har været for mine øjne, lige siden jeg har været i stand til at se menneskenes veje.

19 Og ve mig på grund af deres ugudelighed, for mit hjerte har alle mine dage været fyldt af sorg på grund af deres ugudelighed; alligevel ved jeg, at jeg skal blive løftet op på den yderste dag.

20 Og det skete, at i dette år blev Nefis folk igen jaget og fordrevet. Og det skete, at vi blev drevet af sted, indtil vi var kommet nordpå til det land, som blev kaldt Sem.

21 Og det skete, at vi befæstede byen Sem, og vi samlede vort folk i den udstrækning, det var muligt, for at vi måske kunne redde dem fra udryddelse.

22 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og seksogfyrretyvende år, at de igen begyndte at falde over os.

23 Og det skete, at jeg talte til mit folk og tilskyndede dem med stor styrke til, at de skulle stå frygtløst imod lamanitterne og kæmpe for deres hustruer og deres børn og deres huse og deres hjem.

24 Og mine ord vakte dem i nogen grad til kraft, således at de ikke flygtede for lamanitterne, men stod dem frygtløst imod.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

25 Og det skete, at vi stred med en hær på tredive tusinde mod en hær på halvtreds tusinde. Og det skete, at vi stod dem imod med en sådan urokkelighed, at de flygtede for os.

26 Og det skete, at da de var flygtet, forfulgte vi dem med vore hære og mødte dem igen og slog dem; alligevel var Herrens styrke ikke med os, ja, vi var overladt til os selv, så Herrens Ånd ikke forblev i os, derfor var vi blevet svage ligesom vore brødre.

27 Og mit hjerte sørgede på grund af denne mit folks store ulykke, på grund af deres ugudelighed og deres vederstyggeligheder. Men se, vi drog ud mod lamanitterne og Gadiantons røvere, indtil vi igen havde taget vort arveland i besiddelse.

28 Og det tre hundrede og niogfyrretyvende år var gået. Og i det tre hundrede og halvtredsindstyvende år sluttede vi en traktat med lamanitterne og Gadiantons røvere, hvori vi fik delt vore arvelande.

29 Og lamanitterne gav os landet mod nord, ja, helt til den smalle passage, som førte ind i landet mod syd. Og vi gav lamanitterne alt landet mod syd.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Mormons Bog 3

- 1 Og det skete, at lamanitterne ikke drog ud til kamp igen, førend der var gået yderligere ti år. Og se, jeg havde beskæftiget mit folk, nefitterne, med at forberede deres jorder og deres våben til det tidspunkt, da de skulle i kamp.
- 2 Og det skete, at Herren sagde til mig: Råb til dette folk: Omvend jer, og kom til mig, og bliv døbt, og opbyg min kirke igen, så skal I blive skånet.
- 3 Og jeg råbte til dette folk, men det var forgæves; og de indså ikke, at det var Herren, der havde skånet dem og skænket dem en mulighed for omvendelse. Og se, de forhærdede hjertet mod Herren deres Gud.
- 4 Og det skete, efter at dette tiende år var gået, hvilket i alt var tre hundrede og tres år fra Kristi komme, at lamanitternes konge sendte mig et brev, som gav mig kendskab til, at de var ved at berede sig på igen at drage ud for at kæmpe mod os.
- 5 Og det skete, at jeg foranledigede, at mit folk skulle samle sig i landet Ødelæggelse i en by, som lå i grænseegnene ved det smalle pas, som førte ind i landet mod syd.
- 6 Og dér opstillede vi vore hære for at kunne standse lamanitternes hære, så de ikke skulle sætte sig i besiddelse af nogen af vore lande, derfor befæstede vi os mod dem af al vor magt.
- 7 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og enogtresindstyvende år, at lamanitterne kom ned til byen Ødelæggelse for at kæmpe mod os; og det skete, at vi i det år slog dem, således at de igen vendte tilbage til deres egne lande.
- 8 Og i det tre hundrede og toogtresindstyvende år kom de igen ned for at kæmpe. Og vi slog dem igen og slog et stort antal af dem ihjel, og deres døde blev kastet i havet.
- 9 Og se, på grund af dette store, som mit folk nefitterne havde gjort, begyndte de at prale af deres egen styrke og begyndte at sværge ved himlene, at de ville hævne sig over blodet fra deres brødre, som var blevet slået ihjel af deres fjender.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

10 Og de svor ved himlene og også ved Guds trone, at de ville drage op for at kæmpe mod deres fjender og ville udrydde dem fra landets overflade.

11 Og det skete, at jeg, Mormon, fra dette tidspunkt af fuldstændig nægtede at være hærfører og leder for dette folk på grund af deres ugudelighed og vederstyggelighed.

12 Se, jeg havde ført dem, til trods for deres ugudelighed havde jeg mange gange ført dem i kamp og havde elsket dem af hele mit hjerte med Guds kærlighed, som var i mig, og min sjæl var blevet udøst i bøn til min Gud den hele dag for dem; alligevel skete det uden tro på grund af deres hjertes hårdhed.

13 Og tre gange har jeg udfriet dem af deres fjenders hænder, og de har ikke omvendt sig fra deres synder.

14 Og da de havde svoret ved alt, hvad der var blevet dem forbudt af vor Herre og frelser Jesus Kristus, at de ville drage op mod deres fjender for at kæmpe og hævne sig over blodet fra deres brødre, se, da kom Herrens røst til mig og sagde:

15 Hævnen er min, og jeg vil gengælde; og fordi dette folk ikke omvendte sig, efter at jeg havde udfriet dem, se, da skal de blive tilintetgjort fra jordens overflade.

16 Og det skete, at jeg fuldstændig nægtede at drage op mod mine fjender; og jeg gjorde, ligesom Herren havde befalet mig; og jeg stod som et passivt vidne for over for verden at tilkendegive det, som jeg så og hørte i overensstemmelse med tilkendegivelserne fra Ånden, som havde vidnet om det tilkommende.

17 Derfor skriver jeg til jer, ikke-jøder, og også til jer, Israels hus, så I, når værket begynder, skal være ved at berede jer på at vende tilbage til jeres arveland.

18 Ja, se, jeg skriver til alle jordens ender, ja, til jer, Israels tolv stammer, som skal blive dømt efter jeres gerninger af de tolv, som Jesus valgte til at være sine disciple i Jerusalems land.

19 Og jeg skriver også til resten af dette folk, som også skal blive dømt af de tolv, som Jesus valgte i dette land; og de skal blive dømt af de andre tolv, som Jesus valgte i Jerusalems land.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

- 20 Og dette tilkendegiver Ånden for mig, derfor skriver jeg til jer alle. Og af denne årsag skriver jeg til jer, for at I kan vide, at I alle skal stå for Kristi dommersæde, ja, hver sjæl som tilhører hele Adams menneskelige slægt; og I skal stå frem for at blive dømt efter jeres gerninger, hvad enten de er gode eller onde;
- 21 og også for at I kan tro på Jesu Kristi evangelium, som I skal have blandt jer; og også for at jøderne, Herrens pagtsfolk, skal have endnu et vidne foruden ham, som de så og hørte, om at Jesus, som de slog ihjel, var den sande Kristus og den sande Gud.
- 22 Og jeg ville ønske, at jeg kunne formå alle jer jordens ender til at omvende jer og berede jer til at stå for Kristi dommersæde.
- And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;
- And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.
- And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Mormons Bog 4

- 1 Og se, det skete i det tre hundrede og treogtresindstyvende år, at nefitterne drog op med deres hære fra landet Ødelæggelse for at kæmpe mod lamanitterne.
- 2 Og det skete, at nefitternes hære blev drevet tilbage til Ødelæggelsens land. Og mens de endnu var udmattede, faldt en frisk lamanitisk hær over dem, og de udkæmpede et voldsomt slag, således at lamanitterne tog byen Ødelæggelse i besiddelse og slog mange af nefitterne ihjel og tog mange fanger.
- 3 Og resten flygtede og sluttede sig til indbyggerne i byen Teankum. Se, byen Teankum lå i grænseegnene ved kysten, og det var også i nærheden af byen Ødelæggelse.
- 4 Og det var fordi, nefitternes hære drog op mod lamanitterne, at de begyndte at blive slået, for havde det ikke været for dette, kunne lamanitterne ingen magt have haft over dem.
- 5 Men se, Guds straffedomme vil ramme de ugudelige; og det er ved de ugudelige, at de ugudelige bliver straffet, for det er de ugudelige, som ophidser menneskenes børns hjerte til blodsudgydelse.
- 6 Og det skete, at lamanitterne traf forberedelser til at drage mod byen Teankum.
- 7 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og fireogtresindstyvende år, at lamanitterne drog mod byen Teankum, så de også kunne tage byen Teankum i besiddelse.
- 8 Og det skete, at de blev slået og drevet tilbage af nefitterne. Og da nefitterne så, at de havde fordrevet lamanitterne, pralede de igen af deres egen styrke; og de drog ud i deres egen kraft og tog igen byen Ødelæggelse i besiddelse.
- 9 Og se, alt dette var sket, og der var blevet slået tusinder ihjel på begge sider, både på nefitternes og lamanitternes.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, inso-much that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

- 10 Og det skete, at det tre hundrede og seksogtresindstyvende år var gået, og lamanitterne faldt igen over nefitterne for at kæmpe, og dog omvendte nefitterne sig ikke fra det onde, som de havde gjort, men fremturede bestandig i deres ugudelighed.
- 11 Og det er umuligt for tungen at beskrive eller for mennesket at skrive en dækkende beskrivelse af det rædselsvækkende syn af blod og nedslagtning, der udspillede sig blandt folket, både blandt nefitterne og lamanitterne; og hvert hjerte var forhærdet, så de frydede sig ved bestandig at udgyde blod.
- 12 Og der havde aldrig været så stor ugudelighed blandt nogen af Lehis børn, og ifølge Herrens ord ej heller blandt hele Israels hus, som der var blandt dette folk.
- 13 Og det skete, at lamanitterne tog byen Ødelæggelse i besiddelse, og dette fordi antallet af dem oversteg antallet af nefitter.
- 14 Og de marcherede også frem mod byen Teankum og drev indbyggerne ud af hende og tog mange fanger, både kvinder og børn, og bragte dem som ofre til deres afguder.
- 15 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og syvogtresindstyvende år, at nefitterne, som var vrede, fordi lamanitterne havde ofret deres kvinder og deres børn, at de drog ud mod lamanitterne med overordentlig stor vrede i en sådan grad, at de igen slog lamanitterne og drev dem ud af deres lande.
- 16 Og lamanitterne kom ikke mod nefitterne igen før end i det tre hundrede og femoghalvfjerdsindstyvende år.
- 17 Og i dette år kom de ned mod nefitterne med alle deres styrker; og de blev ikke talt på grund af det store antal af dem.
- 18 Og fra det tidspunkt af fik nefitterne ingen magt over lamanitterne, men begyndte at blive fejret væk af dem som dug for solen.
- 19 Og det skete, at lamanitterne kom ned mod byen Ødelæggelse; og der blev udkæmpet et overordentlig voldsomt slag i landet Ødelæggelse, i hvilket de slog nefitterne.
- And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.
- And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.
- And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.
- And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.
- And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.
- And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.
- And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.
- And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.
- And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.
- And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

20 Og de flygtede igen for dem, og de kom til byen Boaz, og dér modstod de lamanitterne med overordentlig stor frygtløshed, i en sådan grad at lamanitterne ikke slog dem, førend de var kommet mod dem igen for anden gang.

21 Og da de var kommet for anden gang, blev nefitterne fordrevet og nedslagtet under en overordentlig stor nedslagtning; deres kvinder og deres børn blev igen ofret til afguderne.

22 Og det skete, at nefitterne igen flygtede for dem, idet de tog alle indbyggerne med sig fra både byerne og landsbyerne.

23 Og da jeg, Mormon, nu så, at lamanitterne var ved at omstyrte landet, drog jeg derfor til højen Shim og tog alle de optegnelser op, som Ammaron havde skjult til Herren.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mormons Bog 5

- 1 Og det skete, at jeg gik ud blandt nefitterne og tilbagekaldte den ed, som jeg havde aflagt på, at jeg ikke mere ville hjælpe dem; og de gav mig igen kommandoen over deres hære, for de så på mig, som om jeg kunne udfri dem fra deres trængsler.
- 2 Men se, jeg var uden håb, for jeg kendte Herrens straffedomme, som ville komme over dem, for de omvendte sig ikke fra deres syndigheder, men de kæmpede for deres liv uden at påkalde det væsen, som havde skabt dem.
- 3 Og det skete, at lamanitterne kom mod os, da vi var flygtet til byen Jordan; men se, de blev drevet tilbage, så de ikke indtog byen på det tidspunkt.
- 4 Og det skete, at de igen kom mod os, men vi holdt byen. Og der var også andre byer, som blev holdt af nefitterne, hvilke støttepunkter afskar dem, så de ikke kunne komme ind i det land, som lå foran os, og udrydte indbyggerne i vort land.
- 5 Men det skete, at ethvert land, vi var draget forbi, og hvis indbyggere ikke blev samlet ind, blev udryddet af lamanitterne, og deres byer og landsbyer og storbyer blev brændt ned med ild; og således gik tre hundrede og nioghalvfjerds år.
- 6 Og det skete i det tre hundrede og firsindstyvende år, at lamanitterne igen kom mod os for at kæmpe, og vi modstod dem frygtløst; men det var alt sammen forgæves, for så stort var antallet af dem, at de trådte det nefitiske folk under fode.
- 7 Og det skete, at vi igen begav os på flugt, og de, hvis flugt var hurtigere end lamaniternes, undslap, men de, hvis flugt ikke oversteg lamaniternes, blev fejet omkuld og slået ihjel.
- 8 Og se, nu ønsker, jeg Mormon, ikke at rive op i menneskers sjæl ved at udpensle for dem et så forfærdeligt syn af blod og nedslagtning, som blev udspillet for mine øjne; men da jeg ved, at dette visselig må blive kundgjort, og at alt, hvad der er skjult, må blive åbenbaret på hustagene –

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

9 og også at kundskab om dette må komme til resten af disse folk og også til ikke-jøderne, som Herren har sagt skulle sprede dette folk, og dette folk skulle blive regnet for intet blandt dem – derfor skriver jeg en lille forklarelse, idet jeg ikke vover at give en fuldstændig beretning om det, som jeg har set på grund af den befaling, som jeg har modtaget, og også for, at I ikke skal have alt for stor sorg på grund af dette folks ugudelighed.

10 Og se nu, dette siger jeg til deres efterkommere og også til ikke-jøderne, som har omsorg for Israels hus, og som indser og ved, hvorfra deres velsignelser kommer.

11 For jeg ved, at sådanne vil sørge over Israels hus' ulykke, ja, de vil sørge over udryddelsen af dette folk, de vil sørge over, at dette folk ikke havde omvendt sig, så de kunne være blevet favnet i Jesu arme.

12 Se, dette er skrevet til resten af Jakobs hus, og det er skrevet på denne måde, fordi det er kendt af Gud, at ugudelighed ikke vil bringe det frem til dem; og det skal blive skjult til Herren, så det må komme frem, når han anser tiden for at være inde.

13 Og dette er den befaling, som jeg har modtaget; og se, det skal komme frem i overensstemmelse med Herrens befaling, når han i sin visdom finder det tjenligt.

14 Og se, det skal komme til de ikke-troende blandt jøderne; og i denne hensigt skal det komme: for at de må blive overbevist om, at Jesus er Kristus, den levende Guds Søn; for at Faderen gennem sin højt Elskede kan opnå sit store og evige formål ved at bringe jøderne eller hele Israels hus tilbage til deres arveland, som Herren deres Gud har givet dem, til opfyldelse af sin pagt;

15 og også for at efterkommerne af dette folk mere fuldstændig må tro på hans evangelium, som skal udgå til dem fra ikke-jøderne; for dette folk skal blive spredt og skal blive et mørkt, et tilsølet og et frastødende folk, værre end beskrivelsen af noget, der nogen sinde har været blandt os, ja, endog værre end noget, der har været blandt lamanitterne, og dette på grund af deres vantro og afgudsdyrkelse.

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

16 For se, Herrens Ånd er allerede hørt op med at kæmpe med deres fædre; og de er uden Kristus og Gud i verden; og de bliver drevet rundt som avner for vinden.

17 De var engang et tiltalende folk, og de havde Kristus som deres hyrde; ja, de blev ledt af Gud Faderen selv.

18 Men se, nu bliver de ledt rundt af Satan, ligesom avner bliver drevet for vinden, eller som et fartøj bliver kastet om på bølgerne uden sejl eller anker, eller uden noget at styre hende med; og ligesom hun er, således er de.

19 Og se, Herren har holdt deres velsignelser, som de kunne have fået i landet, tilbage til fordel for ikke-jøderne, som skal tage landet i besiddelse.

20 Men se, det skal ske, at de vil blive fordrevet og spredt af ikke-jøderne; og efter at de er blevet fordrevet og spredt af ikke-jøderne, se, da vil Herren erindre den pagt, som han sluttede med Abraham og med hele Israels hus.

21 Og Herren vil også erindre de retfærdiges bønner, som er blevet opsendt til ham for dem.

22 Og da, o I ikke-jøder, hvorledes kan I stå for Guds magt, medmindre I vil omvende jer og vende jer fra jeres onde veje?

23 Ved I ikke, at I er i Guds hænder? Ved I ikke, at han har al magt, og at jorden på hans store befaling skal blive rullet sammen som en skriftrulle?

24 Derfor, omvend jer, og ydmyg jer for ham, så han ikke skal vende sig mod jer i retfærdighed – så en rest af Jakobs efterkommere ikke skal gå ud blandt jer som en løve og flå jer i stykker, og der ikke er nogen til at udfri jer.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Mormons Bog 6

- 1 Og nu slutter jeg min optegnelse angående udryddelsen af mit folk nefitterne. Og det skete, at vi marcherede af sted foran lamanitterne.
- 2 Og jeg, Mormon, skrev et brev til lamaniternes konge og ønskede af ham, at han ville tilstede os, at vi kunne samle vort folk i Cumoras land ved en høj, som blev kaldt Cumora, og dér kunne vi udkæmpe et slag mod dem.
- 3 Og det skete, at lamaniternes konge tilstedte mig det, som jeg ønskede.
- 4 Og det skete, at vi marcherede af sted til Cumoras land, og vi slog vore telte op rundt omkring højen Cumora; og det var i et land med mange vande, floder og kilder; og her havde vi håb om at få fordel over lamanitterne.
- 5 Og da der var gået tre hundrede og fireogfirs år, havde vi indsamlet hele resten af vort folk til Cumoras land.
- 6 Og det skete, at da vi havde indsamlet hele vort folk til ét i Cumoras land, se, da begyndte jeg, Mormon, at blive gammel; og da jeg vidste, at det ville blive mit folks sidste kamp, og da jeg var blevet befalet af Herren, at jeg ikke skulle lade de optegnelser, som var blevet overdraget fra vore fædre, og som var hellige, falde i lamaniternes hænder (for lamanitterne ville ødelægge dem), udfærdigede jeg derfor denne optegnelse ud fra Nefis plader og skjulte alle de optegnelser, der var blevet mig betroet ved Herrens hånd, i højen Cumora bortset fra disse få plader, som jeg gav min søn Moroni.
- 7 Og det skete, at mit folk med deres hustruer og deres børn nu så lamaniternes hære marchere frem imod sig; og med den forfærdelige frygt for døden, som fylder brystet på alle de ugudelige, ventede de på at modtage dem.
- 8 Og det skete, at de kom for at kæmpe mod os, og hver eneste sjæl var fyldt af skræk på grund af det store antal af dem.
- 9 Og det skete, at de faldt over mit folk med sværdet og med buen og med pilen og med øksen og med alle slags krigsvåben.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

10 Og det skete, at mine mænd blev hugget ned, ja, selv mine ti tusinde, som var med mig, og jeg faldt såret om midt blandt dem; og de drog forbi mig, så de ikke gjorde ende på mit liv.

11 Og da de var brudt igennem og havde hugget hele mit folk ned, bortset fra fireogtyve af os (hvoriblandt var min søn Moroni), og vi, som havde overlevet de døde af vort folk, så fra toppen af højen Cumora, den næste dag da lamanitterne var vendt tilbage til deres lejr, de ti tusinde af mit folk, som var blevet hugget ned, og som var blevet ført an af mig.

12 Og vi så også de ti tusinde af mit folk, som var blevet ført an af min søn Moroni.

13 Og se, Gidgiddonas ti tusinde var faldet, og også han midt blandt dem.

14 Og Lama var faldet med sine ti tusinde, og Gilgal var faldet med sine ti tusinde, og Limha var faldet med sine ti tusinde, og Jeneum var faldet med sine ti tusinde, og Cumeniha og Moroniha og Antionum og Shiblom og Sem og Josh var faldet med hver deres ti tusinde.

15 Og det skete, at der var ti mere, som faldt for sværdet hver med deres ti tusinde; ja, hele mit folk, bortset fra de fireogtyve, som var med mig, og også nogle få, som var undsluppet til landene mod syd, og nogle få, som var rømmet til lamanitterne, var faldet; og deres kød og knogler og blod lå på jordens overflade, efterladt af hænderne på dem, som havde slået dem ihjel til at rådne på jorden og til at hensmuldre og vende tilbage til deres moder jord.

16 Og min sjæl var sønderrevet af kval på grund af de slagte af mit folk, og jeg råbte:

17 O, I skønne, hvor kunne I vige fra Herrens vej! O, I skønne, hvor kunne I forkaste den Jesus, som stod med åbne arme for at tage imod jer!

18 Se, hvis I ikke havde gjort dette, ville I ikke være faldet. Men se, I er faldet, og jeg sørger over tabet af jer.

19 O, I skønne sønner og døtre, I fædre og mødre, I mænd og hustruer, I skønne, hvorledes kunne det ske, at I kunne falde!

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

20 Men se, I er borte, og min sorg kan ikke bringe jer tilbage.

21 Og den dag kommer snart, da jeres dødelighed skal iføre sig udødelighed, og disse legemer, som nu rådner i forgængelighed, skal snart blive uforgængelige legemer; og da skal I stå for Kristi dommersæde for at blive dømt efter jeres gerninger; og dersom I er retfærdige, da bliver I velsignet hos jeres fædre, som er gået forud for jer.

22 O, gid I havde omvendt jer, før denne store ødelæggelse kom over jer! Men se, I er borte, og Faderen, ja, himlens evige Fader, kender jeres tilstand, og han gør med jer i overensstemmelse med sin retfærdighed og barmhjertighed.

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Mormons Bog 7

- 1 Og se, jeg vil tale noget til den rest af dette folk, som er blevet skånet, dersom Gud vil give dem mine ord, så de kan kende til det, der angår deres fædre; ja, jeg taler til jer, I rest af Israels hus; og disse er de ord, jeg taler:
- 2 Vid I, at I er af Israels hus.
- 3 Vid I, at I må komme til omvendelse, ellers kan I ikke blive frelst.
- 4 Vid I, at I må nedlægge jeres krigsvåben og ikke mere fryde jer ved udgydelse af blod og ikke gribe til dem igen, medmindre det skulle ske, at Gud befaler jer det.
- 5 Vid I, at I må komme til kundskab om jeres fædre og omvende jer fra alle jeres synder og syndigheder og tro på Jesus Kristus, at han er Guds Søn, og at han blev slået ihjel af jøderne, og at han ved Faderens kraft er opstået igen, hvorved han har vundet sejren over graven; og i ham er dødens brod også opslugt.
- 6 Og han tilvejebringer de dødes opstandelse, hvorved mennesket skal blive oprejst for at stå for hans dommersæde.
- 7 Og han har tilvejebragt verdens forløsning, hvorved det er givet den, som bliver fundet skyldfri for ham på dommedag, at bo i Guds nærhed i hans rige for sammen med de himmelske kor at synge uophørlige lovsange til Faderen og til Sønnen og til Helligånden, som er én Gud, i en tilstand af lykke som ingen ende har.
- 8 Omvend jer derfor, og bliv døbt i Jesu navn, og grib fat i Kristi evangelium, som vil blive fremlagt for jer, ikke alene i denne optegnelse, men også i den optegnelse, som skal komme til ikke-jøderne fra jøderne, hvilken optegnelse skal komme fra ikke-jøderne til jer.
- 9 For se, den er skrevet i den hensigt, at I må tro på den; og hvis I tror på den, vil I også tro på denne; og hvis I tror på denne, vil I komme til at kende til jeres fædre og også de forunderlige gerninger, som blev udført blandt dem ved Guds kraft.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

10 Og I vil også vide, at I er en rest af Jakobs efterkom-
mere; derfor regnes I med til den første pagts folk; og
dersom I tror på Kristus og bliver døbt, først med vand
og derefter med ild og med Helligånden, idet I følger
Frelserens eksempel i overensstemmelse med det, som
han har befalet os, da skal det gå jer vel på dommens dag.
Amen.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the
seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the
people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe
in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with
fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of
our Savior, according to that which he hath com-
manded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judg-
ment. Amen.

Mormons Bog 8

- 1 Se, jeg, Moroni, afslutter min far Mormons optegnelse. Se, jeg har kun lidt at skrive, noget, som min far har befalet mig.
- 2 Og se, det skete, at efter det store og kolossale slag ved Cumora, se, de nefitter, som var undsluppet til landet mod syd, blev jaget af lamanitterne, indtil de alle var blevet slået ihjel.
- 3 Og min far blev også dræbt af dem, og kun jeg er alene tilbage for at skrive den sørgelige beretning om udryddelsen af mit folk. Men se, de er borte, og jeg opfylder min fars befaling. Om de vil slå mig ihjel, ved jeg ikke.
- 4 Derfor vil jeg skrive og skjule optegnelserne i jorden; og hvor jeg så går hen, er uden betydning.
- 5 Se, min far har udfærdiget denne optegnelse, og han har skrevet, hvad hensigten var dermed. Og se, jeg ville også skrive den, hvis jeg havde plads på pladerne, men det har jeg ikke; og malm har jeg ikke, for jeg er alene. Min far er blevet slået ihjel i kamp og alle mine slægtninge, og jeg har ingen venner, ej heller noget sted at gå hen; og hvor længe Herren vil tillade, at jeg skal leve, ved jeg ikke.
- 6 Se, der er gået fire hundrede år siden vor Herres og frelsers komme.
- 7 Og se, lamanitterne har jaget og dræbt mit folk nefitterne fra by til by og fra sted til sted, indtil de ikke mere er til; og stort har deres fald været; ja, stor og forunderlig er udryddelsen af mit folk, nefitterne.
- 8 Og se, det er Herrens hånd, som har gjort det. Og se også, lamanitterne ligger i krig, den ene med den anden; og dette lands overflade er ét vedvarende kredsløb af mord og blodsudgydelse, og ingen kender enden på krigen.
- 9 Og se nu, jeg siger ikke mere angående dem, for der er ingen, bortset fra lamanitter og røvere, der er tilbage på landets overflade.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

10 Og der er ingen, der kender den sande Gud, bortset fra Jesu disciple, som forblev i landet, indtil folkets ugdelighed blev så stor, at Herren ikke ville tillade dem at blive hos folket; og om de er på landets overflade, ved ingen.

11 Men se, min far og jeg har set dem, og de har betjent os.

12 Og den, som modtager denne optegnelse og ikke fordømmer den på grund af de ufuldkommenheder, som findes i den, han skal kende til det, der er større end dette. Se, jeg er Moroni; og var det muligt, ville jeg kundgøre alt for jer.

13 Se, jeg holder op med at tale angående dette folk. Jeg er Mormons søn, og min far var efterkommer af Nephi.

14 Og jeg er den, som skjuler denne optegnelse til Herren; pladerne er i sig selv ikke af nogen værdi ifølge Herrens befaling. For han siger i sandhed, at ingen skal få dem for at skaffe sig vinding; men optegnelsen derpå er af stor værdi, og den, som bringer den frem i lyset, ham vil Herren velsigne.

15 For ingen kan have magt til at bringe den frem i lyset, undtagen det bliver givet ham af Gud, for Gud vil, at det skal blive gjort alene med hans ære for øje eller til gavn for Herrens fordums og længe spredte pagtsfolk.

16 Og velsignet være han, som bringer den frem i lyset, for den skal blive bragt frem fra mørket til lyset i overensstemmelse med Guds ord; ja, den skal blive bragt frem fra jorden, og den skal skinne fra mørket og komme til folkets kundskab; og det skal blive gjort ved Guds kraft.

17 Og hvis der er fejl deri, så er det et menneskes fejl. Men se, vi ved ikke af nogen fejl; alligevel ved Gud alt; lad derfor den, som fordømmer, passe på, at han ikke kommer i fare for helvedes ild.

18 Og den, som siger: Vis mig den, ellers skal I blive slået – lad ham passe på, at han ikke befaler det, som er forbudt af Herren.

19 For se, den, som dømmes overilet, skal selv blive dømt overilet, for efter hans gerninger skal hans løn være; derfor skal den, der slår, selv blive slået af Herren.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

20 Se, hvad skriftstedet siger: Mennesket skal ikke slå, ej heller skal han dømme; for dommen er min, siger Herren, og hævn er også min, og jeg vil gengælde.

21 Og den, der udslynger vrede og stridigheder mod Herrens værk og mod Herrens pagtsfolk, som er Israels hus, og som vil sige: Vi vil tilintetgøre Herrens værk, og Herren vil ikke erindre sin pagt, som han har sluttet med Israels hus – han er i fare for at blive hugget om og kastet i ilden;

22 for Herrens evige formål skal rulle videre, indtil alle hans løfter er blevet opfyldt.

23 Gransk Esajas' profetier. Se, jeg kan ikke skrive dem. Ja, se, jeg siger jer, at de hellige, som er gået forud for mig, og som har ejet dette land, skal råbe, ja, fra støvet vil de råbe til Herren; og så sandt som Herren lever, vil han erindre den pagt, som han har sluttet med dem.

24 Og han kender deres bønner, at de var for deres brødres vel. Og han kender deres tro, for i hans navn kunne de flytte bjerge, og i hans navn kunne de få jorden til at ryste, og ved hans ords kraft fik de fængsler til at styrte til jorden; ja, selv den brændende ovn kunne ikke volde dem skade, ej heller vilde rovdyr eller giftige slanger, på grund af hans ords kraft.

25 Og se, deres bønner var også for ham, som Herren vil le lade bringe dette frem.

26 Og ingen behøver at sige, at dette ikke skal komme frem, for det skal det visselig, for Herren har sagt det; for op af jorden skal det komme ved Herrens hånd, og ingen kan forhindre det, og det skal ske på en dag, da det vil blive sagt, at mirakler er hørt op; og det skal være som om, nogen talte fra de døde.

27 Og det skal ske på en dag, da de helliges blod skal råbe til Herren på grund af hemmelige sammensværgelser og mørkets gerninger.

28 Ja, det skal ske på en dag, da Guds kraft skal blive forkastet, og kirker skal blive fordærvede og være indbildske i hjertets stolthed; ja, på en dag, da kirkeledere og lærere vil hæve sig i hjertets stolthed, så de endog misunderdem, som tilhører deres kirker.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

29 Ja, det skal ske på en dag, da man skal høre om ild og uvejr og røgdis i fremmede lande;

30 og man skal også høre om krige, rygter om krige og jordskælv på forskellige steder.

31 Ja, det skal ske på en dag, da der vil være store forureninger på jordens overflade; der skal være mord og røveri og løgn og bedrageri og utugtigheder og alle slags vederstyggeligheder; og da skal der være mange, der skal sige: Gør dette, eller gør hint, og det har ingen betydning, for Herren vil støtte sådanne på den yderste dag. Men ve sådanne, for de er i bitterheds galde og i syndens bånd.

32 Ja, det skal ske på en dag, da der vil være oprettet kirker, som vil sige: Kom til mig, og for jeres penge skal I blive tilgivet for jeres synder.

33 O, I ugudelige og afsporede og stivnakkede folk, hvorfor har I oprettet kirker til jer selv for vindings skyld? Hvorfor har I fordrejet Guds hellige ord, så I måske bringer fordømmelse over jeres sjæl? Se, se hen til Guds åbenbaringer; for se, den tid kommer på den dag, da alt dette må blive opfyldt.

34 Se, Herren har vist mig store og forunderlige ting angående det, som snart må ske på den dag, da dette skal finde sted blandt jer.

35 Se, jeg taler til jer, som om I var til stede, og dog er I det ikke. Men se, Jesus Kristus har vist jer for mig, og jeg kender jeres gerninger.

36 Og jeg ved, at I vandrer i jeres hjertes stolthed; og der er ingen med undtagelse af nogle få, som ikke bilder sig noget ind i deres hjertes stolthed, hvilket fører til, at de går med meget fine klæder, og til misundelse og stridigheder og ondsindethed og forfølgelse og alle slags syndigheder; og jeres kirker, ja, hver eneste, er blevet fordærvet på grund af jeres hjertes stolthed.

37 For se, I elsker penge og jeres gods og jeres fine klæder og udsmykningen af jeres kirker mere, end I elsker de fattige og de trængende, de syge og de plagede.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

38 O, I besmittede, I hyklere, I lærere, som sælger jer selv for det, som vil fordærve, hvorfor har I besmittet Guds hellige kirke? Hvorfor skammer I jer ved at påtage jer Kristi navn? Hvorfor mener I ikke, at en uendelig lykke har større værdi end den elendighed, som aldrig dør – på grund af verdens ros?

39 Hvorfor smykker I jer med det, som ikke har noget liv, og så alligevel lader de sultne og de trængende og de nøgne og de syge og de plagede gå forbi jer uden at ænse dem?

40 Ja, hvorfor opretter I jeres hemmelige vederstyggeligheder for at få vinding og får enker til at sørge over for Herren, og også forældreløse til at sørge over for Herren, og også deres fædres og deres mænds blod til at råbe til Herren fra jorden om hævn over jeres hoved?

41 Se, hævnens sværd hænger over jer; og den tid kommer snart, da han hævner de helliges blod på jer, for han vil ikke længere tåle deres råb.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Mormons Bog 9

- 1 Og se, jeg taler også angående dem, der ikke tror på Kristus.
- 2 Se, vil I tro på jeres hjemføjelser dag – se, når Herren kommer, ja, på den store dag, når jorden skal blive rullet sammen som en bogrulle, og elementerne skal smelte af brændende hede, ja, på den store dag, da I skal blive ført frem for Guds lam – vil I da sige, at der ikke er nogen Gud?
- 3 Vil I da stadig forkaste Kristus, eller kan I se Guds lam? Tror I, at I skal bo hos ham med en bevidsthed om jeres skyld? Tror I, at I kan være lykkelige ved at bo hos det hellige Væsen, når jeres sjæl er martret af en bevidsthed om skyld, fordi I til stadighed har overtrådt hans love?
- 4 Se, jeg siger jer, at I ville være mere elendige ved at bo hos en hellig og retfærdig Gud med en bevidsthed om jeres tilsølethed over for ham, end I ville være ved at bo hos de fordømte sjæle i helvede.
- 5 For se, når I bliver bragt til at se jeres nøgenhed for Gud og også Guds herlighed og Jesu Kristi hellighed, da vil det antænde en flamme af uudslukkelig ild hos jer.
- 6 O, I ikke-troende, vend jer da til Herren, anrøb indtrængende Faderen i Jesu navn, så I måske kan blive fundet pletfrie, rene, skønne og hvide, idet I er blevet rensede ved Lammets blod, på den store og yderste dag.
- 7 Og videre taler jeg til jer, som forkaster Guds åbenbaringer og siger, at de er afskaffet, at der ikke er nogen åbenbaringer, ej heller profetier, ej heller gaver, ej heller helbredelse, ej heller tungetale og oversættelse af tungetale.
- 8 Se, jeg siger jer, at den, der forkaster dette, kender ikke Kristi evangelium, ja, han har ikke læst skrifterne, hvis han har, så forstår han dem ikke.
- 9 For læser vi ikke, at Gud er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt, og at der hos ham ikke findes foranderlighed eller skygge af ændring?

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

10 Og se, hvis I har forestillet jer en gud, der forandrer sig, eller hos hvem der findes skygge af ændring, da har I forestillet jer en gud, som ikke er en gud, der gør mirakler.

11 Men se, jeg vil vise jer en gud, der gør mirakler, ja, Abrahams Gud og Isaks Gud og Jakobs Gud; og det er den selv samme Gud, som skabte himlene og jorden og alt, som er i dem.

12 Se, han skabte Adam, og ved Adam kom menneskets fald. Og på grund af menneskets fald kom Jesus Kristus, ja, Faderen og Sønnen; og på grund af Jesus Kristus kom menneskets forløsning.

13 Og på grund af menneskets forløsning, som kom ved Jesus Kristus, bliver de bragt tilbage til Herrens nærhed; ja, det er derved, at alle mennesker bliver forløst, fordi Kristi død tilvejebringer opstandelsen, som tilvejebringer en forløsning fra en uendelig søvn, af hvilken søvn alle mennesker skal blive vækket ved Guds kraft, når basunen lyder; og de skal komme frem, både små og store, og alle skal stå foran hans domstol, forløst og løst fra dette dødens evige bånd, hvilken død er en timelig død.

14 Og så kommer den Helliges straffedom over dem; og da kommer den tid, da den, der er tilsølet, skal forblive tilsølet; og den, der er retfærdig, skal forblive retfærdig; den, der er lykkelig, skal forblive lykkelig, og den, der er ulykkelig, skal forblive ulykkelig.

15 Og se, o alle I, der har forestillet jer en gud, som ikke kan gøre mirakler, jeg vil spørge jer: Er alt det, som jeg har talt om, sket? Er enden kommet endnu? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, og Gud er ikke hørt op med at være en gud, som gør mirakler.

16 Se, er det, som Gud har udført, ikke vidunderligt i vore øjne? Jo, og hvem kan fatte Guds vidunderlige gerninger?

17 Hvem vil sige, at det ikke var et mirakel, at himlen og jorden blev til ved hans ord, og at mennesket ved hans ords kraft blev skabt af jordens støv, og at der ved hans ords kraft er blevet udført mirakler?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

18 Og hvem vil sige, at Jesus Kristus ikke gjorde mange mægtige mirakler? Og der blev udført mange mægtige mirakler ved apostlenes hænder.

19 Og hvis der blev udført mirakler dengang, hvorfor kan Gud da være hørt op med at være en gud, der gør mirakler, og alligevel være et uforanderligt væsen? Og se, jeg siger jer, at han forandrer sig ikke, om så var, ville han høre op med at være Gud, og han hører ikke op med at være Gud og er en Gud, der gør mirakler.

20 Og grunden til, at han hører op med at gøre mirakler blandt menneskenes børn, er, at de synker ned i vantro og viger fra den rette vej og ikke kender den Gud, som de skulle sætte deres lid til.

21 Se, jeg siger jer, at den, som tror på Kristus uden at tvivle, hvad som helst han beder Faderen om i Kristi navn, det skal blive ham skænket; og det løfte er til alle, ja, helt til jordens ender.

22 For se, således sagde Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, til sine disciple, som skulle blive tilbage, ja, og også til alle sine disciple i mængdens påhør: Drag ud i hele verden, og forkynd evangeliet for hver skabning;

23 og den, der tror og bliver døbt, skal blive frelst, men den, der ikke tror, skal blive fordømt;

24 og disse tegn skal følge dem, der tror: i mit navn skal de uddrive djævlene, de skal tale med nye tunger, de skal tage på slanger, og hvis de drikker noget dødbringende, skal det ikke skade dem, de skal lægge hænder på de syge, og de skal komme sig.

25 Og hver den, der tror på mit navn uden at tvivle, for ham vil jeg bekræfte alle mine ord, ja, helt til jordens ender.

26 Og se nu, hvem kan stå imod Herrens gerninger? Hvem kan forkaste hans ord? Hvem vil rejse sig imod Herrens almægtige kraft? Hvem vil foragte Herrens gerninger? Hvem vil foragte Kristi børn? Se, alle I, som foragter Herrens gerninger, for I skal forundre jer og fortæbes.

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

27 O, foragt da ikke, og bliv ikke forundret, men lyt til Herrens ord, og bed Faderen i Jesu navn om hvad som helst, I står i behov for. Tvivl ikke, men vær troende, og begynd ligesom fordem, og kom til Herren af hele jeres hjerte, og udarbejd jeres egen frelse med frygt og bæven for ham.

28 Vær vise i jeres prøves dage, aflæg al jeres urenhed, bed ikke for at kunne ødsle det bort på jeres lyster, men bed med urokkelig fasthed om, at I ikke vil give efter for nogen fristelse, men at I vil tjene den sande og levende Gud.

29 Se til, at I ikke bliver døbt uværdige, se til, at I ikke uværdigt spiser af Kristi nadver, men se til, at I gør alt i værdighed og gør det i Jesu Kristi, den levende Guds Søns navn; og hvis I gør dette og holder ud til enden, vil I på ingen måde blive stødt ud.

30 Se, jeg taler til jer, som om jeg talte fra de døde, for jeg ved, at I skal få mine ord.

31 Fordøm mig ikke på grund af min ufuldkommenhed, ej heller min far på grund af hans ufuldkommenhed, ej heller dem, som har skrevet før ham; men giv hellere Gud tak for, at han har tilkendegivet vore ufuldkommenheder for jer, så I kan lære at være mere vise, end vi har været.

32 Og se nu, vi har skrevet denne optegnelse i overensstemmelse med vor viden med de skrifttegn, som hos os bliver kaldt de reformerede egyptiske, og som er blevet overleveret og forandret af os i overensstemmelse med vor måde at tale på.

33 Og hvis vore plader havde været store nok, ville vi have skrevet på hebraisk; men det hebraiske er også blevet forandret af os; og hvis vi kunne have skrevet på hebraisk, se, da ville I ikke have haft nogen ufuldkommenhed i vor optegnelse.

34 Men Herren kender det, som vi har skrevet, og også, at intet andet folk kender vort sprog; og fordi intet andet folk kender vort sprog, har han beredt midler til oversættelsen af det.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

35 Og dette er skrevet, for at vi kan gøre vore klæder rene for blodet fra vore brødre, som er sunket ned i vantro.

36 Og se, det, som vi har ønsket angående vore brødre, ja, nemlig at de igen måtte komme til kundskab om Kristus, er i overensstemmelse med bønnerne fra alle de hellige, som har boet i landet.

37 Og måtte Herren Jesus Kristus tilstede, at deres bønner må blive besvaret i overensstemmelse med deres tro; og måtte Gud Faderen erindre den pagt, som han har sluttet med Israels hus, og måtte han velsigne dem for evigt ved tro på Jesu Kristi navn. Amen.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Eters Bog

Optegnelsen om jereditterne, taget fra de fireogtyve plader, der blev fundet af Limhis folk i kong Mosijas dage.

Eters Bog I

- 1 Og nu skrider jeg, Moroni, til at give en beretning om de fordums indbyggere, som blev udryddet ved Herrens hånd på dette nordlige lands overflade.
- 2 Og jeg tager min beretning fra de fireogtyve plader, som blev fundet af Limhis folk, og som bliver kaldt Eters bog.
- 3 Og da jeg antager, at den første del af denne optegnel- se, som taler om verdens skabelse, og også om Adams, og som giver en beretning fra den tid helt frem til det store tårn, og om alt det, der skete blandt menneskenes børn indtil den tid, findes hos jøderne –
- 4 jeg skriver derfor ikke det, som skete fra Adams dage indtil den tid; men det findes på pladerne; og den, der finder dem, han skal få magt, så han kan få den fuld- stændige beretning.
- 5 Men se, jeg giver ikke den fuldstændige beretning, men en del af beretningen giver jeg, fra tårnet og ned til de blev udryddet.
- 6 Og på denne måde giver jeg beretningen. Han, som skrev denne beretning, var Eter, og han var en efterkom- mer af Coriantor.
- 7 Coriantor var Morons søn.
- 8 Og Moron var Etems søn.
- 9 Og Etem var Ahas søn.
- 10 Og Aha var Sets søn.
- 11 Og Set var Shiblons søn.
- 12 Og Shiblon var Coms søn.
- 13 Og Com var Coriantums søn.
- 14 Og Coriantum var Amnigaddas søn.
- 15 Og Amnigadda var Arons søn.
- 16 Og Aron var efterkommer af Het, der var Heartoms søn.
- 17 Og Heartom var Libs søn.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty- four plates found by the people of Limhi in the days of King Mosiah.

Ether I

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblon.

And Shiblon was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

18 Og Lib var Kishs søn.
19 Og Kish var Coroms søn.
20 Og Corom var Levis søn.
21 Og Levi var Kims søn.
22 Og Kim var Moriantons søn.
23 Og Morianton var efterkommer af Riplakish.
24 Og Riplakish var Shez' søn.
25 Og Shez var Hets søn.
26 Og Het var Coms søn.
27 Og Com var Coriantums søn.
28 Og Coriantum var Emers søn.
29 Og Emer var Omers søn.
30 Og Omer var Shules søn.
31 Og Shule var Kibs søn.
32 Og Kib var søn af Oriha, som var søn af Jered,

33 hvilken Jered kom med sin bror og deres familier sammen med nogle andre og deres familier fra det store tårn på den tid, da Herren forvirrede folkets sprog og i sin vrede svor, at de skulle blive spredt over hele jordens overflade; og i overensstemmelse med Herrens ord blev folket spredt.

34 Og da Jereds bror var en stor og mægtig mand og en mand, der var meget begunstiget af Herren, sagde Jered, hans bror, til ham: Anrøb Herren om, at han ikke vil forvirre os, så vi ikke kan forstå vore ord.

35 Og det skete, at Jereds bror anrøbte Herren, og Herren havde medfølelse med Jered, derfor forvirrede han ikke Jereds sprog; og Jered og hans bror blev ikke forvirret.

36 Derpå sagde Jered til sin bror: Anrøb Herren igen, og det kan være, at han vil vende sin vrede fra dem, der er vore venner, så han ikke forvirrer deres sprog.

37 Og det skete, at Jereds bror anrøbte Herren, og Herren havde medfølelse med deres venner og også med deres familier, så de ikke blev forvirret.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

And Corom was the son of Levi.

And Levi was the son of Kim.

And Kim was the son of Morianton.

And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

And Shez was the son of Heth.

And Heth was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

And Emer was the son of Omer.

And Omer was the son of Shule.

And Shule was the son of Kib.

And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

38 Og det skete, at Jered talte til sin bror igen og sagde: Gå hen og adspørg Herren, om han vil drive os ud af landet, og hvis han vil drive os ud af landet, anrån ham da om, hvor vi skal drage hen. Og hvem ved, om ikke Herren vil føre os til et land, der er mere udsøgt end alle andre på jorden. Og om så er, lad os da være trofaste mod Herren, så vi kan få det som vor arvelod.

39 Og det skete, at Jereds bror anrånbe Herren i overensstemmelse med det, der var blevet talt ved Jereds mund.

40 Og det skete, at Herren hørte Jereds bror og havde medfølelse med ham og sagde til ham:

41 Gå ud, og saml dine flokke sammen, både han og hun af enhver art, og jordens frø af enhver art, og også dine familier, og også din bror Jered og hans familie, og også dine venner og deres familier og Jereds venner og deres familier.

42 Og når du har gjort dette, skal du gå i spidsen for dem ned i den dal, der ligger mod nord. Og der vil jeg møde dig, og jeg vil drage foran dig ind i et land, som er mere udsøgt end alle andre lande på jorden.

43 Og der vil jeg velsigne dig og dine efterkommere, og af dine efterkommere og efterkommerne af din bror og af dem, som vil drage med dig, vil jeg oprejse mig et stort folkeslag. Og der skal ikke findes noget større folkeslag på hele jordens overflade end det, som jeg vil oprejse mig af dine efterkommere. Og således vil jeg gøre for dig, fordi du denne lange tid har anrånbt mig.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

Eters Bog 2

- 1 Og det skete, at Jered og hans bror og deres familier og også Jereds og hans brors venner og deres familier drog ned i den dal, der lå mod nord (og dalens navn var Nimrod, idet den var opkaldt efter den mægtige jæger), med deres flokke, som de havde samlet sammen, han og hun af hver art.
- 2 De satte også snarer og fangede luftens fugle, og de lavede også et kar, hvori de medbragte fisk fra vandene.
- 3 Og de medbragte også deseret, der, når det oversættes, betyder honningbi; og således medbragte de bisværme og alle slags af det, der fandtes på landets overflade, frø af enhver art.
- 4 Og det skete, at da de var kommet ned i Nimrods dal, kom Herren ned og talte med Jereds bror; og han var i en sky, og Jereds bror så ham ikke.
- 5 Og det skete, at Herren befalede dem, at de skulle drage ud i ørkenen, ja, ud i den del, hvor der aldrig havde været nogen. Og det skete, at Herren drog foran dem og talte med dem, mens han stod i en sky, og gav anvisninger på, hvor de skulle rejse hen.
- 6 Og det skete, at de rejste i ørkenen og byggede fartøjer, hvori de krydsede mange vande, idet de bestandig blev ledt af Herrens hånd.
- 7 Og Herren ville ikke tillade dem, at de skulle standse i ørkenen hinsides havet, men han ville, at de skulle drage helt til det forjættede land, som var mere udsøgt end alle andre lande, og som Gud Herren havde bevaret til et retfærdigt folk.
- 8 Og i sin vrede havde han svoret over for Jereds bror, at de, der skulle besidde dette forjættede land fra den tid af og for evigt, skulle tjene ham, den sande og eneste Gud, ellers ville de blive fejret bort, når hans vredes fylde kom over dem.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

9 Og nu kan vi se Guds forordninger angående dette land, at det er et forjættet land, og at ethvert folkeslag, der besidder det, må tjene Gud, ellers vil de blive fejtet bort, når hans vredes fylde kommer over dem. Og hans vredes fylde kommer over dem, når de er blevet modne i ugudelighed.

10 For se, dette er et land, der er mere udsøgt end alle andre lande, derfor må den, der besidder det, tjene Gud eller blive fejtet bort, for det er Guds evigtvarende forordning. Og det er ikke førend ugudelighedens fylde blandt landets børn, at de bliver fejtet bort.

11 Og dette kommer til jer, o I ikke-jøder, for at I kan kende Guds forordninger – så I kan omvende jer og ikke fortsætte i jeres syndighed, indtil fylden kommer, så I ikke nedkalder Guds vredes fylde over jer, som landets indbyggere hidtil har gjort.

12 Se, dette er et udsøgt land, og ethvert folkeslag, der besidder det, skal være fri for trældom og for fangenskab og for alle andre folkeslag under himlen, hvis de blot vil tjene landets Gud, som er Jesus Kristus, der er blevet tilkendegivet ved det, som vi har skrevet.

13 Og nu går jeg videre med min optegnelse; for se, det skete, at Herren førte Jered og hans brødre helt frem til det store hav, som skiller landene. Og da de kom til havet, slog de deres telte op, og de gav stedet navnet Moriankumer; og de boede i telte, og boede i telte ved kysten i et tidsrum af fire år.

14 Og det skete ved slutningen af de fire år, at Herren igen kom til Jereds bror og stod i en sky og talte med ham. Og i et tidsrum af tre timer talte Herren med Jereds bror og revsede ham, fordi han ikke huskede at påkalde Herrens navn.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

15 Og Jereds bror angrede det onde, som han havde gjort, og påkaldte Herrens navn for sine brødre, som var med ham. Og Herren sagde til ham: Jeg vil tilgive dig og dine brødre jeres synder; men du skal ikke synde mere, for I skal huske, at min Ånd ikke stedse vil kæmpe med mennesket; hvis I derfor synder, indtil I er fuldstændig modne, vil I blive forstødt fra Herrens nærhed. Og dette er mine tanker om det land, som jeg vil give jer som jeres arvelod, for det skal være et land, mere udsøgt end alle andre lande.

16 Og Herren sagde: Tag fat på arbejdet, og byg fartøjer på samme måde, som I hidtil har bygget. Og det skete, at Jereds bror tog fat på arbejdet, og også hans brødre, og byggede i overensstemmelse med Herrens anvisninger fartøjer på samme måde, som de havde bygget. Og de var små, og de var lette på vandet, ja, som en fugls lethed på vandet.

17 Og de var bygget på en sådan måde, at de var overordentligt tætte, så de kunne holde vand ligesom et fad, og bunden på dem var tæt som et fad, og siderne på dem var tætte som et fad, og enderne på dem var spidset til, og dækket var tæt som et fad, og længden på dem var som længden af et træ, og lugen i dem var, når den var lukket, tæt som et fad.

18 Og det skete, at Jereds bror anråbte Herren og sagde: O Herre, jeg har udført det arbejde, som du har befalet mig, og jeg har lavet fartøjerne sådan, som du har vist mig.

19 Og se, o Herre, i dem findes der intet lys; hvor skal vi styre hen? Og vi omkommer også, for i dem kan vi ikke ånde anden luft end den, som findes i dem; derfor vil vi omkomme.

20 Og Herren sagde til Jereds bror: Se, du skal lave et hul i dækket og ligeså i bunden, og når du trænger til luft, skal du åbne for hullet og få luft. Og om så sker, at der kommer vand ind til dig, se, da skal du lukke for hullet, så I ikke omkommer i det indstrømmende vand.

21 Og det skete, at Jereds bror gjorde, sådan som Herren havde befalet.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

22 Og han anræbte igen Herren og sagde: O Herre, se, jeg har gjort, sådan som du har befaleet mig, og jeg har bygget fartøjerne til mit folk, men se, der findes intet lys i dem. Se, o Herre, vil du tillade, at vi skal krydse dette store vand i mørke?

23 Og Herren sagde til Jereds bror: Hvad vil I, at jeg skal gøre, for at I kan have lys i jeres fartøjer? For se, I kan ikke have ruder, for de vil blive slået i stykker; ej heller skal I tage ild med jer, for I skal ikke drage af sted ved lyset af ild.

24 For se, I skal være som en hval midt i havet, for bølger så høje som bjerge skal slå imod jer. Alligevel vil jeg bringe jer op igen af havets dyb, for vindene er udgået af min mund, og også regnen og oversvømmelserne har jeg sendt ud.

25 Og se, jeg bereder jer på dette, for I kan ikke krydse dette store dyb, medmindre jeg bereder jer mod havets bølger og de vinde, som er udgået, og de oversvømmelser, som skal komme. Derfor, hvad vil I have, at jeg skal berede for jer, så I kan have lys, når I er opslugt i havets dyb?

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Eters Bog 3

- 1 Og det skete, at Jereds bror (se, antallet af fartøjer, der var blevet bygget, var otte), gik op på det bjerg, som de kaldte Shelem på grund af dets overordentlig store højde, og smeltede seksten små sten ud af en klippe; og de var hvide og klare ligesom gennemsigtigt glas; og han bar dem i sine hænder op til toppen af bjerget og anrøbte igen Herren og sagde:
- 2 O Herre, du har sagt, at vi vil blive omgivet af vandet. Se nu, o Herre, og bliv ikke vred på din tjener på grund af hans svaghed over for dig, for vi ved, at du er hellig og bor i himlene, og at vi er uværdige for dig; som følge af faldet er vor natur blevet bestandig ond; alligevel har du, o Herre, givet os den befaling, at vi skal påkalde dig, så vi fra dig kan få efter vore ønsker.
- 3 Se, o Herre, du har slået os på grund af vor ugudelighed og har drevet os ud, og i disse mange år har vi været i ørkenen; alligevel har du været barmhjertig mod os. O Herre, se på mig med medlidenhed, og bortvend din vrede fra dette dit folk, og tillad ikke, at de skal drage over dette oprørte dyb i mørke, men se disse ting, som jeg har smeltet ud af klippen.
- 4 Og jeg ved, o Herre, at du har al magt og kan gøre, hvad end du vil til menneskets gavn; rør derfor ved disse sten, o Herre, med din finger, og bered dem, så de kan lyse i mørket; og de skal lyse for os i de fartøjer, som vi har bygget, så vi kan have lys, mens vi krydser havet.
- 5 Se, o Herre, du kan gøre dette. Vi ved, at du er i stand til at vise stor magt, som synes lille for menneskers forstand.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 Og det skete, at da Jareds bror havde sagt disse ord, se, da strakte Herren sin hånd ud og rørte ved stenene en efter en med sin finger. Og sløret blev taget bort fra Jareds brors øjne, og han så Herrens finger; og den var som fingeren på et menneske, som af kød og blod; og Jareds bror faldt ned for Herren, for han var overvældet af frygt.

7 Og Herren så, at Jareds bror var faldet til jorden, og Herren sagde til ham: Rejs dig, hvorfor er du faldet om?

8 Og han siger til Herren: Jeg så Herrens finger, og jeg frygtede, at han ville slå mig, for jeg vidste ikke, at Herren havde kød og blod.

9 Og Herren sagde til ham: På grund af din tro har du set, at jeg skal påtage mig kød og blod; og aldrig er nogen kommet til mig med så overordentlig stor tro, som du har; for var det ikke sådan, kunne du ikke have set min finger. Så du mere end det?

10 Og han svarede: Nej, Herre, vis dig for mig.

11 Og Herren sagde til ham: Tror du de ord, som jeg vil tale?

12 Og han svarede: Ja, Herre, jeg ved, at du taler sandhed, for du er en sanddru Gud og kan ikke lyve.

13 Og da han havde sagt disse ord, se, da viste Herren sig for ham og sagde: Fordi du ved dette, er du forløst fra faldet; derfor er du blevet ført tilbage til min nærhed; derfor viser jeg mig for dig.

14 Se, jeg er ham, som fra verdens grundlæggelse var beredt til at forløse mit folk. Se, jeg er Jesus Kristus. Jeg er Faderen og Sønnen. I mig skal hele menneskeslægten have liv, og det for evigt, ja, de som vil tro på mit navn; og de skal blive mine sønner og mine døtre.

15 Og aldrig har jeg vist mig for mennesket, som jeg har skabt, for aldrig har mennesket troet på mig, som du har. Ser du, at du er skabt efter mit eget billede? Ja, alle mennesker blev skabt i begyndelsen efter mit eget billede.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

16 Se, dette legeme, som du nu ser, er min ånds legeme; og mennesket har jeg skabt efter min ånds legeme; og ligesom jeg viser mig for dig i ånden, således vil jeg vise mig for mit folk i kødet.

17 Og se, som jeg, Moroni, sagde, kan jeg ikke give en fuldstændig beretning om dette, som er skrevet, derfor er det mig nok at sige, at Jesus viste sig for denne mand i ånden på samme måde og med samme udseende som det legeme, hvormed han viste sig for nefitterne.

18 Og han betjente ham, ligesom han betjente nefitterne; og alt dette for at denne mand skulle vide, at han var Gud, på grund af de mange store gerninger, som Herren havde vist ham.

19 Og på grund af denne mands kundskab kunne han ikke afholdes fra at se ind bag sløret; og han så Jesu finger, som, da han så den, fik ham til at falde om af frygt, for han vidste, at det var Herrens finger; og han havde ikke længere tro, for han vidste uden at tvivle.

20 Da han derfor havde denne fuldkomne kundskab om Gud, kunne han ikke holdes uden for sløret; derfor så han Jesus; og han betjente ham.

21 Og det skete, at Herren sagde til Jereds bror: Se, du skal ikke lade det, som du har set og hørt, komme ud i verden, førend den tid kommer, da jeg skal forherlige mit navn i kødet; derfor skal du bevare det, som du har set og hørt, og ikke vise det til nogen.

22 Og se, når du kommer til mig, skal du skrive det og forsegle det, så ingen kan oversætte det; for du skal skrive det på et sprog, så det ikke kan læses.

23 Og se, disse to sten vil jeg give til dig, og også dem skal du forsegle sammen med det, som du skal skrive.

24 For se, det sprog, som du skal skrive, har jeg forvirret; derfor vil jeg, når jeg anser tiden for at være inde, foranledige, at disse sten skal gøre det, som du skal skrive, tydeligt for menneskenes øjne.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

25 Og da Herren havde sagt disse ord, viste han Jereds bror alle jordens indbyggere, som havde været til, og også alle dem, som ville blive til; og han holdt dem ikke tilbage for hans blik, ja, lige til jordens ender.

26 For han havde tidligere sagt til ham, at hvis han ville tro på ham og på, at han kunne vise ham alt – da ville det blive vist ham; derfor kunne Herren ikke holde noget tilbage for ham, for han vidste, at Herren kunne vise ham alt.

27 Og Herren sagde til ham: Skriv dette, og forsegl det, så vil jeg vise det til menneskenes børn, når jeg anser tiden for at være inde.

28 Og det skete, at Herren befalede ham, at han skulle forsegle de to sten, som han havde modtaget, og ikke vise dem, førend Herren ville vise dem til menneskenes børn.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Eters Bog 4

- 1 Og Herren befalede Jereds bror at gå ned fra bjerget fra Herrens nærhed og skrive det, som han havde set; og det måtte ikke komme ud til menneskenes børn, førend efter at han var blevet løftet op på korset; og af denne grund opbevarede kong Mosija dem, for at de ikke skulle komme ud til verden, førend Kristus havde vist sig for sit folk.
- 2 Og efter at Kristus i sandhed havde vist sig for sit folk, befalede han, at de skulle gøres kendt.
- 3 Og se, siden da er de alle sunket ned i vantro, og der er ingen tilbage undtagen lamanitterne, og de har forkastet Kristi evangelium; derfor er det blevet mig befalet, at jeg igen skal skjule dem i jorden.
- 4 Se, jeg har på disse plader skrevet netop det, som Jereds bror så; og der er aldrig blevet tilkendegivet noget større end det, som blev tilkendegivet for Jereds bror.
- 5 Derfor har Herren befalet mig at skrive det, og jeg har skrevet det. Og han befalede mig, at jeg skulle forsegle det, og han har også befalet mig, at jeg skulle forsegle oversættelsen deraf; derfor har jeg forseglet oversættelserne i overensstemmelse med Herrens befaling.
- 6 For Herren sagde til mig: Det skal ikke udgå til ikke-jøderne, førend den dag, da de omvender sig fra deres ugudelighed og bliver rene for Herren.
- 7 Og på den dag, da de vil udøve tro på mig, siger Herren, sådan som Jereds bror gjorde, så de kan blive helliggjorte i mig, da vil jeg gøre det, som Jereds bror så, kendt for dem, sådan at jeg endog vil udfolde alle mine åbenbaringer for dem, siger Jesus Kristus, Guds Søn, Fader til himlene og til jorden og alt, der er i dem.
- 8 Og den, der vil stride mod Herrens ord, lad ham være forbandet; og den, der vil forkaste dette, lad ham være forbandet; for til dem vil jeg intet større vise, siger Jesus Kristus; for jeg er han, som taler.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

- 9 Og på min befaling åbnes og lukkes himlene; og på mit ord skal jorden ryste; og på min befaling skal dens indbyggere forgå, ja, som ved ild.
- 10 Og den, som ikke tror mine ord, tror ikke mine disciple; og afgør selv, om det ikke er mig, der taler; for I skal vide på den yderste dag, at det er mig, der taler.
- 11 Men den, som tror det, som jeg har talt, ham vil jeg besøge med min Ånds tilkendegivelser, og han skal vide og aflægge vidnesbyrd. For på grund af min Ånd skal han vide, at dette er sandt; for det formår menneskene til at gøre godt.
- 12 Og hvad end der formår menneskene til at gøre godt, er af mig, for det gode kommer ikke fra nogen anden end fra mig. Jeg er han, som leder menneskene til alt godt; den, der ikke vil tro mine ord, vil ikke tro på mig – at jeg er; og den, der ikke vil tro på mig, vil ikke tro på Faderen, som sendte mig. For se, jeg er Faderen, jeg er verdens lys og liv og sandhed.
- 13 Kom til mig, o I ikke-jøder, og jeg vil vise jer det, der er større, den kundskab, der er skjult på grund af vantro.
- 14 Kom til mig, o I Israels hus, og det skal blive tilkendegivet for jer, hvor store ting Faderen har beredt for jer fra verdens grundlæggelse; og det er ikke kommet til jer på grund af vantro.
- 15 Se, når I sønderriver det slør af vantro, der får jer til at forblive i jeres forfærdelige tilstand af ugudelighed og hårdhjertethed og sindsblindhed, da skal de store og forunderlige ting, som har været skjult for jer fra verdens grundlæggelse – ja, når I påkalder Faderen i mit navn med et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd, da skal I vide, at Faderen har husket den pagt, som han sluttede med jeres fædre, o Israels hus.
- 16 Og da skal mine åbenbaringer, som jeg har ladet skrive ved min tjener Johannes, blive foldet ud for øjnene af hele folket. Husk, når I ser dette, da skal I vide, at tiden er for hånden, da det skal blive tilkendegivet, ja, i handling.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

17 Derfor, når I modtager denne optegnelse, da kan I vide, at Faderens værk er begyndt på hele landets overflade.

18 Derfor, omvend jer, alle I jordens ender, og kom til mig, og tro på mit evangelium, og bliv døbt i mit navn; for den, der tror og bliver døbt, skal blive frelst; men den, der ikke tror, skal blive fordømt; og tegn skal følge dem, der tror på mit navn.

19 Og velsignet er den, der på den yderste dag viser sig at være trofast mod mit navn, for han skal blive løftet op for at bo i det rige, som er beredt for ham fra verdens grundlæggelse. Og se, det er mig, der har talt det. Amen.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Eters Bog 5

- 1 Og se, jeg, Moroni, har efter min hukommelse skrevet de ord, som blev mig befalet; og jeg har fortalt dig om det, som jeg har forsegleet; rør det derfor ikke i den hensigt, at du vil oversætte det, for det er dig forbudt, medmindre Gud siden hen anser det for vist.
- 2 Og se, du kan blive begunstiget, så du kan få lov til at vise pladerne til dem, som skal hjælpe med til at bringe dette værk frem;
- 3 og ved Guds kraft skal de blive vist til tre; og derfor skal de med vished vide, at dette er sandt.
- 4 Og ved tre vidners mund skal dette blive stadfæstet; og de tre vidners vidnesbyrd og dette værk, hvori Guds kraft skal vises, og også hans ord, hvorom Faderen og Sønnen og Helligånden aflægger vidnesbyrd – og alt dette skal stå som et vidnesbyrd mod verden på den yderste dag.
- 5 Og dersom de omvender sig og kommer til Faderen i Jesu navn, skal de blive modtaget i Guds rige.
- 6 Og se, afgør selv, om jeg har nogen myndighed til dette, for I skal vide, at jeg har myndighed, når I ser mig, og vi skal stå foran Gud på den yderste dag. Amen.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Eters Bog 6

- 1 Og nu går jeg, Moroni, videre med at skrive optegnelsen om Jered og hans bror.
- 2 For det skete, efter at Herren havde beredt de sten, som Jereds bror havde båret op på bjerget, at Jereds bror kom ned fra bjerget, og han anbragte stenene i de fartøjer, der var blevet bygget, én i hver ende; og se, de gav fartøjerne lys.
- 3 Og således lod Herren stenene lyse i mørket for at give lys til mænd, kvinder og børn, så de ikke skulle krydse de store vande i mørke.
- 4 Og det skete, at da de havde beredt al slags mad, så de kunne leve deraf på vandet og ligeledes foder til deres flokke og hørde og alle de store dyr eller små dyr eller fugle, som de skulle bringe med sig – og det skete, at da de havde gjort alt dette, gik de ombord i deres skibe eller fartøjer og stod til søs, idet de betroede sig til Herren deres Gud.
- 5 Og det skete, at Gud Herren foranledigede, at en rasende vind skulle blæse hen over vandenes overflade mod det forjættede land; og således blev de kastet om på havets bølger for vinden.
- 6 Og det skete, at de mange gange blev begravet i havets dyb på grund af bølgerne, der var så høje som bjerge, og som brød ind over dem, og også på grund af de store og skrækkelige uvejr, som blev forårsaget af vindens heftighed.
- 7 Og det skete, at når de blev begravet i dybet, var der ikke noget vand, der kunne forvolde dem skade, idet skibene var tætte som et fad, og de var også tætte som Noas ark; når de derfor var omgivet af de mange vande, anråbte de Herren, og han bragte dem atter op til overfladen af vandene.
- 8 Og det skete, at vinden aldrig hørte op med at blæse mod det forjættede land, mens de var på vandene; og således blev de drevet frem for vinden.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 Og de sang lovsange til Herren; ja, Jereds bror sang lovsange til Herren, og han takkede og priste Herren hele dagen lang; og når natten kom, holdt de ikke op med at prise Herren.

10 Og således blev de drevet frem; og ingen af havets uhyrer kunne knuse dem, ej heller kunne nogen hval gøre dem skade; og de havde lys til stadighed, hvad enten de var oven over vandet eller under vandet.

11 Og således blev de drevet frem på vandet i tre hundrede og fireogfyrrer dage.

12 Og de gik i land på kysten af det forjættede land. Og da de havde sat fod på kysten af det forjættede land, bøjede de sig ned på landets overflade og ydmygede sig for Herren og udgød glædestårer for Herren på grund af hans store, milde barmhjertighed imod dem.

13 Og det skete, at de drog frem på landets overflade og begyndte at dyrke jorden.

14 Og Jered havde fire sønner, og de hed Jakom og Gilga og Maha og Oriha.

15 Og Jereds bror fik også sønner og døtre.

16 Og Jereds og hans brors venner var i antal omkring toogtyve sjæle; og de fik også sønner og døtre, før de kom til det forjættede land, og derfor begyndte de at blive mange.

17 Og de blev undervist om at vandre ydmygt for Herren, og de blev også undervist fra det høje.

18 Og det skete, at de begyndte at sprede sig ud over landets overflade og at mangfoldiggøre sig og at dyrke jorden; og de voksede sig stærke i landet.

19 Og Jereds bror begyndte at blive gammel, og han så, at han snart måtte gå ned i graven, derfor sagde han til Jered: Lad os samle vort folk sammen, så vi kan tælle dem, og så vi kan få at vide af dem, hvad de ønsker af os, førend vi går ned i vor grav.

20 Og i overensstemmelse hermed blev folket samlet sammen. Se, antallet af Jereds brors sønner og døtre var toogtyve sjæle; og antallet af Jereds sønner og døtre var tolv, hvoraf fire var sønner.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

21 Og det skete, at de talte deres folk; og efter at de havde talt dem, ønskede de at få at vide af dem, hvad de ville, at de skulle gøre, før de gik ned i deres grav.

22 Og det skete, at folket ønskede af dem, at de skulle salve en af deres sønner til at være konge over sig.

23 Og se nu, dette foruroligede dem. Og Jereds bror sagde til dem: Dette fører visselig til fangenskab.

24 Men Jered sagde til sin bror: Tillad dem, at de må få en konge. Og derfor sagde han til dem: Udvælg jer en konge blandt vore sønner, hvem I selv vil.

25 Og det skete, at de valgte Jereds brors førstefødte, og hans navn var Pagag. Og det skete, at han afslog og ikke ville være deres konge. Og folket ville, at hans far skulle tvinge ham, men hans far ville ikke; og han befalede dem, at de ikke skulle tvinge nogen til at være deres konge.

26 Og det skete, at de valgte alle Pagags brødre, og de ville ikke.

27 Og det skete, at heller ingen af Jereds sønner ville, ingen med undtagelse af én, og Oriha blev salvet til at være konge over folket.

28 Og han begyndte at regere, og folket begyndte at have fremgang, og de blev overordentlig rige.

29 Og det skete, at Jered døde og ligeledes hans bror.

30 Og det skete, at Oriha vandrede ydmygt for Herren og huskede, hvilke store ting Herren havde gjort for hans far, og han lærte også sit folk, hvilke store ting Herren havde gjort for deres fædre.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

Eters Bog 7

- 1 Og det skete, at Oriha fældede dom i landet i retfærdighed alle sine dage, og hans dage var overordentlig mange.
- 2 Og han fik sønner og døtre, ja, han fik enogtredive, hvoriblandt var treogtyve sønner.
- 3 Og det skete, at han også fik Kib i sin alderdom. Og det skete, at Kib regerede i hans sted; og Kib fik Corihor.
- 4 Og da Corihor var toogtredive år gammel, satte han sig op mod sin far og drog over og bosatte sig i Nehors land; og han fik sønner og døtre, og de blev overordentlig skønne, hvorfor Corihor drog mange folk med sig.
- 5 Og da han havde samlet en hær sammen, kom han op til Morons land, hvor kongen boede, og tog ham til fange, hvilket opfyldte Jereds brors ord om, at de ville blive ført i fangenskab.
- 6 Se, Morons land, hvor kongen boede, lå i nærheden af det land, som af nefitterne bliver kaldt Ødelæggelse.
- 7 Og det skete, at Kib levede i fangenskab med sit folk under sin søn Corihor, indtil han blev overordentlig gammel; alligevel fik Kib Shule i sin alderdom, mens han endnu var i fangenskab.
- 8 Og det skete, at Shule var vred på sin bror; og Shule voksede sig stærk og blev mægtig, hvad angår menneskelig styrke, og han var også mægtig med hensyn til dømmekraft.
- 9 Derfor kom han til højen Ephraim og smeltede malm ud af højen og lavede sværd af stål til dem, som han havde draget med sig; og efter at han havde bevæbnet dem med sværd, vendte han tilbage til byen Nehor og udkæmpede et slag mod sin bror Corihor, hvorved han vandt riget og gav det tilbage til sin far Kib.
- 10 Og se, på grund af det, som Shule havde gjort, overdrog hans far ham riget, og derfor begyndte han at regere i sin fars sted.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

11 Og det skete, at han fældede dom i retfærdighed, og han udbredte sit rige på hele landets overflade, for folket var blevet overordentlig talrigt.

12 Og det skete, at Shule også fik mange sønner og døtre.

13 Og Corihor omvendte sig fra de mange onder, han havde gjort, derfor gav Shule ham magt i sit rige.

14 Og det skete, at Corihor havde mange sønner og døtre. Og blandt Corihors sønner var der en, hvis navn var Noa.

15 Og det skete, at Noa satte sig op mod Shule, kongen, og også mod sin far Corihor, og drog Cohor, sin bror, med sig og også alle sine brødre og mange af folket.

16 Og han udkæmpede et slag mod Shule, kongen, hvorved han vandt deres første arveland, og han blev konge over den del af landet.

17 Og det skete, at han udkæmpede endnu et slag mod Shule, kongen, og han tog Shule, kongen, og førte ham som fange til Moron.

18 Og det skete, at da han skulle til at sende ham i døden, krøb Shules sønner ind i Noas hus om natten og slog ham ihjel og brød døren ind til fængslet ned og hentede deres far ud og satte ham på hans trone i hans eget rige.

19 Derfor opbyggede Noas søn sin fars rige i hans sted; alligevel fik de ikke mere magt over Shule, kongen, og det folk, der var under Shules, kongens, regering, havde overordentlig stor fremgang og voksede sig stort.

20 Og landet blev delt; og der var to riger, Shules rige og Cohors, Noas søns, rige.

21 Og Cohor, Noas søn, foranledigede, at hans folk udkæmpede et slag mod Shule, i hvilket Shule slog dem og slog Cohor ihjel.

22 Og se, Cohor havde en søn, som hed Nimrod, og Nimrod overdrog Cohors rige til Shule, og han vandt yndest i Shules øjne; derfor viste Shule ham store begunstigelser, og han gjorde efter sine ønsker i Shules rige.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

- 23 Og i Shules regeringstid kom der også profeter, som var sendt af Herren, blandt folket, og de profeterede, at folkets ugudelighed og afgudsdyrkelse var ved at bringe en forbandelse over landet, og at de ville blive udryddet, hvis de ikke omvendte sig.
- 24 Og det skete, at folket hånede profeterne og spottede dem. Og det skete, at kong Shule fældede dom over alle dem, der hånede profeterne.
- 25 Og han udstedte en lov for hele landet, som gav profeterne magt, så de kunne drage, hvorhen de ville; og på grund af det blev folket bragt til omvendelse.
- 26 Og fordi folket omvendte sig fra deres syndighed og afgudsdyrkelse, skånede Herren dem, og de begyndte igen at have fremgang i landet. Og det skete, at Shule fik sønner og døtre i sin alderdom.
- 27 Og der var ikke flere krige i Shules dage, og han erindrede de store ting, Herren havde gjort for hans fædre ved at føre dem over det store dyb til det forjættede land, derfor fældede han dom i retfærdighed alle sine dage.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Eters Bog 8

- 1 Og det skete, at han fik Omer, og Omer regerede i hans sted. Og Omer fik Jered, og Jered fik sønner og døtre.
- 2 Og Jered satte sig op imod sin far og kom og boede i Hets land. Og det skete, at han smigrede mange folk med sine snedige ord, indtil han havde vundet det halve rige for sig.
- 3 Og da han havde vundet det halve rige, udkæmpede han et slag mod sin far, og han førte sin far bort i fangenskab og lod ham tjene i fangenskab.
- 4 Og se, i sine regeringsdage var Omer i fangenskab halvdelen af sine dage. Og det skete, at han fik sønner og døtre, hvoriblandt var Esrom og Coriantumr;
- 5 og de var overordentlig vrede på grund af Jereds, deres brors, gerninger, i en sådan grad at de mønstrede en hær og udkæmpede et slag mod Jered. Og det skete, at de udkæmpede et slag mod ham om natten.
- 6 Og det skete, at da de havde slået Jereds hær, stod de i begreb med også at dræbe ham; men han bønfuldt dem om, at de ikke ville slå ham ihjel, og så ville han overdrage riget til sin far. Og det skete, at de skænkede ham livet.
- 7 Og se, Jered blev overordentlig sorgfuld på grund af tabet af riget, for han havde ladet sit hjerte blive optaget af riget og af verdens herlighed.
- 8 Se, Jereds datter var overordentlig beregnende, og da hun så sin fars sorg, satte hun sig for at udtænke en plan, hvorved hun kunne genvinde riget til sin far.
- 9 Se, Jereds datter var overordentlig skøn. Og det skete, at hun talte med sin far og sagde til ham: Hvorfor har min far så megen sorg? Har han ikke læst den optegnelse, som vore fædre bragte med sig over det store dyb? Se, findes der ikke en beretning om dem fordem, at de ved deres hemmelige planer vandt riger og stor herlighed?

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

10 Og se, lad derfor min far sende bud efter Akish, Kimmnors søn; og se, jeg er skøn, og jeg vil danse for ham, og jeg vil behage ham, så han vil ønske mig til hustru; og hvis han derfor ønsker af dig, at du skal give ham mig til hustru, da skal du sige: Jeg vil give dig hende, hvis du vil bringe mig min fars, kongens hoved.

11 Og se, Omer var en ven af Akish, så da Jered havde sendt bud efter Akish, dansede Jereds datter for ham, så hun behagede ham i en sådan grad, at han ønskede hende til hustru. Og det skete, at han sagde til Jered: Giv mig hende til hustru.

12 Og Jered sagde til ham: Jeg vil give dig hende, hvis du vil bringe mig min fars, kongens, hoved.

13 Og det skete, at Akish samlede alle sine slægtninge i Jereds hus og sagde til dem: Vil I sværge over for mig, at I vil være trofaste mod mig med hensyn til det, som jeg vil ønske af jer?

14 Og det skete, at de alle svor over for ham ved himlens Gud og også ved himlene og også ved jorden og ved deres hoved, at den, der afslog at yde den hjælp, som Akish ønskede, skulle miste hovedet; og den, som røbede noget som helst af det, Akish gjorde dem bekendt med, han skulle miste sit liv.

15 Og det skete, at de således kom overens med Akish. Og Akish forrettede for dem de eder, som var blevet givet af dem fordem, der også stræbte efter magt, og som var blevet overleveret helt fra Kain, der var morder fra begyndelsen.

16 Og de var blevet bevaret ved Djævelens magt, for at de kunne blive forrettet for folket for at holde dem i mørke og for at hjælpe sådanne, som stræbte efter magt, til at vinde magt, til at myrde og til at plyndre og til at lyve og til at begå al slags ugudelighed og alle slags utugtigheder.

17 Og det var Jereds datter, som indgav ham det i hans hjerte at finde disse fordums ting frem; og Jered indgav Akish det i hjertet, hvorfor Akish forrettede dem for sine slægtninge og venner, idet han forledte dem med gyldne løfter til at gøre, hvad end han ønskede.

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimmnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

18 Og det skete, at de dannede en hemmelig sammensværgelse, ligesom dem fordum, hvilken sammensværgelse i Guds øjne er yderst vederstyggelig og ugudelig, mere end alt andet;

19 for Herren virker ikke ved hemmelige sammensværgelser, ej heller vil han, at mennesket skal udgyde blod, men har fra menneskets begyndelse forbudt dette under alle omstændigheder.

20 Og se, jeg, Moroni, skriver ikke noget om beskaffenheden af deres eder og sammensværgelser, for det er blevet mig kundgjort, at de findes blandt alle folk, og de findes blandt lamanitterne.

21 Og de har forårsaget udryddelsen af dette folk, om hvem jeg nu taler, og også udryddelsen af Nefis folk.

22 Og ethvert folkeslag, der støtter sådanne hemmelige sammensværgelser for at få magt og vinding, indtil de har bredt sig ud blandt hele folkeslaget, se, de skal blive udryddet, for Herren vil ikke tillade, at hans helliges blod, som bliver udgydt af dem, stedse skal råbe til ham fra jorden om hævn over dem, uden at han hævner dem.

23 Derfor, o I ikke-jøder, anser Gud det for vist, at dette skal vises jer, så I derved kan omvende jer fra jeres synder og ikke tillade, at disse morderiske sammensværgelser, som er oprettet for at få magt og vinding, får overhånd over jer – og at dette værk, ja, dette, ødelæggelsens, værk kommer over jer, ja, den evige Guds retfærdigheds sværd skal falde på jer til jeres omstyrtelse og tilintetgørelse, hvis I tillader dette at findes.

24 Derfor befaler Herren jer, at I, når I ser dette komme blandt jer, skal vågne op til en erkendelse af jeres forfærdelige stilling på grund af denne hemmelige sammensværgelse, som vil findes blandt jer; og ve over den på grund af blodet fra dem, som er blevet slået ihjel, for de råber fra støvet om hævn over den og ligeledes over dem, som byggede den op.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

25 For det skal ske, at den, som bygger den op, forsøger at omstyrte alle landes, folkeslags og rigers frihed; og den forårsager tilintetgørelsen af alle mennesker, for den er opbygget af Djævelen, som er fader til alle løgne, ja, den selv samme løgner, som forledte vore første forældre, ja, den selv samme løgner, som har fået mennesket til at begå mord fra begyndelsen, og som har forhærdet menneskers hjerte, så de har myrdet profeterne og stenet dem og stødt dem ud fra begyndelsen.

26 Derfor er jeg, Moroni, blevet befalet at skrive dette, for at det onde kan blive afskaffet, og for at den tid må komme, da Satan ingen magt skal have over menneskenes børns hjerte, men at de må blive formået til bestandigt at gøre godt, så de må komme til al retfærdigheds kilde og blive frelst.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Eters Bog 9

- 1 Og nu går jeg, Moroni, videre med min optegnelse. Derfor, se, det skete, at på grund af Akishs og hans venners hemmelige sammensværgelser, se, da omstyrtede de Omers rige.
- 2 Alligevel var Herren barmhjertig mod Omer og også mod hans sønner og mod hans døtre, som ikke stræbte efter hans død.
- 3 Og i en drøm formanede Herren Omer til, at han skulle drage ud af landet; derfor drog Omer ud af landet med sin familie og rejste i mange dage og kom over til og rejste forbi Shims høj og kom over til det sted, hvor nefitterne blev udryddet, og derfra mod øst og kom til et sted ved kysten, som blev kaldt Ablom, og der slog han sit telt op og ligeså gjorde hans sønner og døtre og hele hans husstand undtagen Jered og hans familie.
- 4 Og det skete, at Jered blev salvet til konge over folket ved ugudelighedens hånd; og han gav Akish sin datter til hustru.
- 5 Og det skete, at Akish stræbte sin svigerfar efter livet; og han bad om hjælp fra dem, som han havde fået til at sværge ved de gamles ed, og de huggede hovedet af hans svigerfar, mens denne sad på sin trone og gav audiens for sit folk.
- 6 For så stor var udbredelsen af denne ugudelige og hemmelige forening blevet, at den havde fordærvet hele folkets hjerte; derfor blev Jered myrdet på sin trone, og Akish regerede i hans sted.
- 7 Og det skete, at Akish begyndte at blive misundelig på sin søn, derfor spærrede han ham inde i et fængsel og gav ham kun lidt eller ingen mad, indtil han havde lidt døden.
- 8 Og se, broderen til ham, der havde lidt døden (og hans navn var Nimra), blev vred på sin far på grund af det, som hans far havde gjort mod hans bror.
- 9 Og det skete, at Nimra samlede et lille antal mænd sammen og flygtede ud af landet og kom over og bosatte sig hos Omer.

Ether 9

- And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.
- Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.
- And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.
- And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.
- And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.
- For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.
- And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.
- And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.
- And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

10 Og det skete, at Akish fik andre sønner, og de vandt folkets hjerte, til trods for at de havde svoret over for ham at ville gøre al slags ugudelighed i overensstemmelse med det, som han ønskede.

11 Se, Akishs folk havde ønske om vinding, ligesom Akish havde ønske om magt; derfor tilbød Akishs sønner dem penge, hvorved de drog størstedelen af folket med sig.

12 Og der opstod en krig mellem Akishs sønner og Akish, en krig som varede i et tidsrum af mange år, ja, som førte til, at næsten alle mennesker i riget blev udryddet, ja, alle bortset fra tredive sjæle og dem, som var flygtet med Omers hus.

13 Derfor blev Omer igen indsat i sit arveland.

14 Og det skete, at Omer begyndte at blive gammel; alligevel fik han Emer i sin alderdom; og han salvede Emer til at være konge og til at regere i sit sted.

15 Og efter at han havde salvet Emer til at være konge, så han fred i landet i et tidsrum af to år, og han døde efter at have set overordentlig mange dage, der var fulde af sorg. Og det skete, at Emer regerede i hans sted og udfyldte sin fars fodspor.

16 Og Herren begyndte igen at tage forbandelsen bort fra landet, og Emers hus havde overordentlig stor fremgang i Emers regeringstid, og i løbet af et tidsrum af toogtres år var de blevet overordentlig stærke, således at de blev overordentlig rige –

17 idet de havde alle slags frugt og korn og silke og fint linned og guld og sølv og kostbarheder

18 og også alle slags kvæg, okser og køer og får og svin og geder og også mange andre former for dyr, som var nyttige som føde for mennesket.

19 Og de havde også heste og æsler, og der fandtes elefanter og curelommer og cumommer, som alle var nyttige for mennesket, og især elefanterne, curelommerne og cumommerne.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, inasmuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

20 Og således udøste Herren sine velsignelser over dette land, som var mere udsøgt end alle andre lande; og han befalede, at de, som skulle besidde landet, skulle besidde det for Herren, ellers ville de blive udryddet, når de var blevet modne i ugudelighed, for over sådanne, siger Herren, vil jeg udøse min vredes fylde.

21 Emer fældede dom i retfærdighed alle sine dage, og han fik mange sønner og døtre, og han fik Coriantum, og han salvede Coriantum til at regere i sit sted.

22 Og efter at han havde salvet Coriantum til at regere i sit sted, levede han i fire år, og han så fred i landet; ja, og han så endog Retfærdighedens Søn og frydede og glædede sig ved hans dag; og han døde i fred.

23 Og det skete, Coriantum vandrede i sin fars fodspor og byggede mange mægtige byer, og gav sit folk det, der var godt, i alle sine dage. Og det skete, at han ikke fik nogen børn, førend han blev overordentlig gammel.

24 Og det skete, at hans hustru døde, da hun var et hundrede og to år gammel. Og det skete, at Coriantum i sin alderdom tog en ung pige til hustru og fik sønner og døtre; således levede han, indtil han var et hundrede og toogfyrre år gammel.

25 Og det skete, at han fik Com, og Com regerede i hans sted; og han regerede i niogfyrre år, og han fik Het; og han fik også andre sønner og døtre.

26 Og folket havde igen spredt sig ud over hele landets overflade, og der begyndte igen at blive en overordentlig stor ugudelighed på landets overflade, og Het begyndte igen at antage de fordums hemmelige planer for at slå sin far ihjel.

27 Og det skete, at han styrtede sin far fra tronen, for han slog ham ihjel med hans eget sværd, og han regerede i hans sted.

28 Og der kom igen profeter i landet, som råbte omvendelse til dem – at de skulle berede Herrens vej, ellers ville der komme en forbandelse over landets overflade, ja, der ville komme en stor hungersnød, under hvilken de ville blive udryddet, hvis ikke de omvendte sig.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

29 Men folket troede ikke profeternes ord, men de stødte dem ud, og nogle af dem kastede de i grave og efterlod dem til at omkomme. Og det skete, at de gjorde alt dette i overensstemmelse med kongens, Hets, befaling.

30 Og det skete, at der opstod en stor knaphed i landet, og befolkningen begyndte at blive udryddet overordentlig hurtigt som følge af knapheden, for der faldt ingen regn på jordens overflade.

31 Og der kom også giftige slanger frem på landets overflade og forgiftede mange folk. Og det skete, at deres flokke begyndte at flygte for de giftige slanger mod landet mod syd, som af nefitterne blev kaldt Zarahemla.

32 Og det skete, at der var mange af dem, som omkom undervejs; alligevel var der nogle, der flygtede ind i landet mod syd.

33 Og det skete, at Herren foranledigede slangerne til ikke mere at forfølge dem, men at de skulle spærre vejen, så folket ikke kunne komme forbi, så de, som ville forsøge at komme forbi, ville blive dræbt af de giftige slanger.

34 Og det skete, at folket fulgte dyrenes vej og fortærede ådslerne af dem, som faldt undervejs, indtil de havde fortæret dem alle. Se, da folket så, at de måtte omkomme, begyndte de at omvende sig fra deres syndighed og at anråbe Herren.

35 Og det skete, at da de havde ydmyget sig tilstrækkeligt over for Herren, sendte han regn på jordens overflade; og folket begyndte at live op igen, og der begyndte at komme frugt i de nordlige lande og i alle landene rundt omkring. Og Herren viste dem sin magt ved at redde dem fra hungersnød.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

Eters Bog 10

- 1 Og det skete, at Shez, som var efterkommer af Het – for Het var omkommet under hungersnøden og hele hans husstand bortset fra Shez – derfor begyndte Shez at genopbygge et nedbrudt folk.
- 2 Og det skete, at Shez erindrede sine fædres undergang, og han opbyggede et retfærdigt rige, for han erindrede, hvad Herren havde gjort ved at føre Jered og hans bror over dybet; og han vandrede på Herrens veje; og han fik sønner og døtre.
- 3 Og hans ældste søn, hvis navn var Shez, satte sig op imod ham; alligevel blev Shez på grund af sine overordentlig store rigdomme slået ihjel ved en røvers hånd, hvilket bragte hans far fred igen.
- 4 Og det skete, at hans far opbyggede mange byer på landets overflade, og folket begyndte atter at sprede sig ud over hele landets overflade. Og Shez levede, indtil han nåede en overordentlig høj alder; og han fik Riplakish. Og han døde. Og Riplakish regerede i hans sted.
- 5 Og det skete, at Riplakish ikke gjorde det, der var ret i Herrens øjne, for han havde mange hustruer og medhustruer og lagde det, som var tungt at bære, på menneskers skuldre; ja, han beskattede dem med tunge skatter, og med disse skatter byggede han mange rummelige bygninger.
- 6 Og han opførte sig en overordentlig smuk trone, og han byggede mange fængsler, og den, der ikke ville lade sig beskatte, kastede han i fængsel, og den, som ikke var i stand til at betale skatterne, kastede han i fængsel; og han foranledigede, at de skulle arbejde bestandigt for deres underhold, og den, som nægtede at arbejde, lod han sende i døden.
- 7 Således fik han alt sit fine arbejde gjort, ja, endog sit fine guld lod han lutre i fængslet, og al slags kunstarbejde lod han udføre i fængslet. Og det skete, at han besværede folket med sine utugtigheder og vederstyggeligheder.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

- 8 Og da han havde regeret i et tidsrum af toogfyrrer år, rejste folket sig i oprør imod ham, og der opstod igen krig i landet, således at Riplakish blev dræbt, og hans efterkommere blev drevet ud af landet.
- 9 Og det skete efter et tidsrum af mange år, at Morianton (som var efterkommer af Riplakish), samlede en hær sammen af fordrevne og drog ud og udkæmpede et slag mod folket; og han fik magt over mange byer; og krigen blev overordentlig voldsom og varede i et tidsrum af mange år; og han fik magt over hele landet og indsatte sig selv som konge over hele landet.
- 10 Og efter at han havde indsat sig selv som konge, lattede han folkets byrde, hvorved han vandt yndest i folkets øjne, og de salvede ham til at være deres konge.
- 11 Og han handlede retfærdigt mod folket, men ikke mod sig selv på grund af sine mange utugtigheder, derfor blev han forstødt fra Herrens nærhed.
- 12 Og det skete, at Morianton byggede mange byer, og folket blev overordentlig rigt i hans regeringstid, både på bygninger og på guld og sølv og ved at dyrke korn og på flokke og hjerde og sådanne ting, som var blevet givet dem tilbage.
- 13 Og Morianton levede, indtil han nåede en overordentlig høj alder, og så fik han Kim; og Kim regerede i sin fars sted; og han regerede i otte år, og hans far døde. Og det skete, at Kim ikke regerede i retfærdighed, derfor blev han ikke begunstiget af Herren.
- 14 Og hans bror rejste sig i oprør imod ham, hvorved han førte ham i fangenskab; og han forblev i fangenskab alle sine dage; og han fik sønner og døtre i fangenskab, og i sin alderdom fik han Levi; og han døde.
- 15 Og det skete, at Levi efter sin fars død tjente i fangenskab i et tidsrum af toogfyrrer år. Og han førte krig mod landets konge, hvorved han vandt riget for sig selv.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, inso-much that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

16 Og efter at han havde vundet sig riget, gjorde han det, der var ret i Herrens øjne, og folket havde fremgang i landet; og han levede, indtil han nåede en ganske høj alder, og fik sønner og døtre; og han fik også Corom, som han salvede til konge i sit sted.

17 Og det skete, at Corom gjorde det, der var godt i Herrens øjne, i alle sine dage; og han fik mange sønner og døtre; og efter at han havde set mange dage, gik han bort, ligesom alt andet på jorden; og Kish regerede i hans sted.

18 Og det skete, at Kish også gik bort, og Lib regerede i hans sted.

19 Og det skete, at Lib også gjorde det, der var godt i Herrens øjne. Og i Libs dage blev de giftige slanger udryddet. Derfor drog de ind i landet mod syd for at jage efter føde til folket i landet, for landet var fyldt med skovens dyr. Og Lib blev også selv en stor jæger.

20 Og de byggede en stor by ved den smalle landtange på det sted, hvor havet deler landet.

21 Og de bevarede landet mod syd som en ødemark, hvor de kunne jage vildt. Og hele overfladen af landet mod nord var dækket af indbyggere.

22 Og de var overordentlig arbejdsomme, og de købte og solgte og handlede, den ene med den anden, så de kunne skaffe sig vinding.

23 Og de arbejdede med alle slags malm, og de lavede guld og sølv og jern og bronze og alle slags metaller; og de gravede det ud af jorden, derfor opkastede de mægtige dynger af jord for at få guld- og sølv- og jern- og kobbermalm. Og de udførte al slags fint arbejde.

24 Og de havde silke og fintvævet linned; og de tilvirkede al slags klæde, så de kunne klæde deres nøgenhed.

25 Og de lavede alle slags redskaber til at dyrke jorden med, både til at pløje og til at så, til at høste og til at hyppe og også til at tærsk med.

26 Og de lavede alle slags redskaber, som de lod deres dyr arbejde med.

27 Og de lavede alle slags krigsvåben. Og de udførte al slags arbejde med overordentlig kunstfærdig forarbejdning.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

28 Og aldrig kunne et folk blive mere velsignet, end de var, og mere begunstiget af Herrens hånd. Og de var i et land, som var mere udsøgt end alle lande, for Herren havde talt det.

29 Og det skete, at Lib levede mange år og fik sønner og døtre; og han fik også Heartom.

30 Og det skete, at Heartom regerede i sin fars sted. Og da Heartom havde regeret i fireogtyve år, se, da blev riget taget fra ham. Og han tjente mange år i fangenskab, ja, alle resten af sine dage.

31 Og han fik Het, og Het levede i fangenskab alle sine dage. Og Het fik Aron, og Aron levede i fangenskab alle sine dage; og han fik Amnigadda, og Amnigadda levede også i fangenskab alle sine dage; og han fik Coriantum, og Coriantum levede i fangenskab alle sine dage; og han fik Com.

32 Og det skete, at Com drog halvdelen af riget med sig. Og han regerede over halvdelen af riget i toogfyrre år; og han drog ud for at kæmpe mod kongen, Amgid, og de kæmpede i et tidsrum af mange år, i løbet af hvilken tid Com vandt magt over Amgid og fik magt over resten af riget.

33 Og i Coms dage begyndte der at komme røvere i landet; og de antog de gamle planer og forrettede eder på de gamles måde og forsøgte igen at tilintetgøre riget.

34 Se, Com kæmpede meget mod dem; alligevel kunne han ikke få overhånd over dem.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

Eters Bog I I

- 1 Og i Coms dage kom der også mange profeter og profeterede om, at dette store folk ville blive udryddet, medmindre de ville omvende sig og vende sig til Herren og forsage deres mord og ugudelighed.
- 2 Og det skete, at profeterne blev forkastet af folket, og de flygtede til Com for at få beskyttelse, for folket forsøgte at slå dem ihjel.
- 3 Og de profeterede meget for Com, og han blev velsignet i alle resten af sine dage.
- 4 Og han opnåede en ganske høj alder og fik Shiblom, og Shiblom regerede i hans sted. Og Shibloms bror satte sig op imod ham, og der opstod en overordentlig stor krig i hele landet.
- 5 Og det skete, at Shibloms bror foranledigede, at alle de profeter, som profeterede om folkets undergang, skulle sendes i døden;
- 6 og der skete store katastrofer i hele landet, for de havde vidnet om, at der skulle komme en stor forbandelse over landet og også over folket, og at der skulle finde en stor ødelæggelse sted blandt dem, en sådan som aldrig før havde fundet sted på jordens overflade, og deres knogler skulle blive som dynger af jord på landets overflade, medmindre de omvendte sig fra deres ugudelighed.
- 7 Og de lyttede ikke til Herrens røst på grund af deres ugudelige sammensværgelser, derfor opstod der krige og stridigheder i hele landet og også mange tilfælde af hungersnød og pest, således at der fandt en stor ødelæggelse sted, en sådan som man aldrig før havde kendt på jordens overflade; og alt dette skete i Shibloms dage.
- 8 Og folket begyndte at omvende sig fra deres ugudelighed; og for så vidt som de gjorde dette, havde Herren barmhjertighed med dem.
- 9 Og det skete, at Shiblom blev slået ihjel, og Set blev ført i fangenskab og boede i fangenskab alle sine dage.

Ether I I

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

10 Og det skete, at Aha, hans søn, fik riget, og han rege-
rede over folket alle sine dage. Og han begik al slags ugu-
delighed i sine dage, hvorved han forårsagede udgydel-
sen af meget blod; og få var hans dage.

11 Og Etem, der var efterkommer af Aha, fik riget; og
også han gjorde det, der var ugudeligt, i sine dage.

12 Og det skete, at der i Etems dage igen kom mange
profeter og profeterede for folket; ja, de profeterede, at
Herren ville udrydde dem fuldstændig fra jordens over-
flade, medmindre de omvendte sig fra deres syndighed.

13 Og det skete, at folket forhærdede hjertet og ikke ville
lytte til deres ord; og profeterne sørgede og trak sig til-
bage fra folket.

14 Og det skete, at Etem fældede dom i ugudelighed alle
sine dage; og han fik Moron. Og det skete, at Moron re-
gerede i hans sted; og Moron gjorde det, der var ugude-
ligt for Herren.

15 Og det skete, at der rejste sig et oprør blandt folket på
grund af den hemmelige sammensværgelse, som var ble-
vet dannet for at få magt og vinding; og der fremstod en
mægtig mand blandt dem, fuld af ugudelighed, og han
udkæmpede et slag mod Moron, i hvilket han omstyrte-
de halvdelen af riget; og han holdt halvdelen af riget i
mange år.

16 Og det skete, at Moron styrtede ham og vandt riget
igen.

17 Og det skete, at der opstod en anden mægtig mand,
og han var efterkommer af Jereds bror.

18 Og det skete, at han styrtede Moron og vandt riget,
derfor levede Moron i fangenskab alle resten af sine da-
ge; og han fik Coriantor.

19 Og det skete, at Coriantor levede i fangenskab alle si-
ne dage.

20 Og i Coriantors dage kom der også mange profeter
og profeterede om store og forunderlige ting og råbte
omvendelse til folket, og at Gud Herren, medmindre de
omvendte sig, ville fælde dom over dem til deres fuld-
stændige udryddelse;

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the
kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days.
And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by
which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and
few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain
the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked
in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there
came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the
people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would ut-
terly destroy them from off the face of the earth except
they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their
hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and
the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the
people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment
in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it
came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and
Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion
among the people, because of that secret combination
which was built up to get power and gain; and there
arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave
battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half
of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the
kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him,
and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty
man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron
and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in
captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat
Coriantor.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity
all his days.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many
prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous
things, and cried repentance unto the people, and ex-
cept they should repent the Lord God would execute
judgment against them to their utter destruction;

21 og at Gud Herren ved sin magt ville sende eller føre et andet folk dertil for at tage landet i besiddelse på samme måde, som han førte deres fædre dertil.

22 Og de forkastede alle profeternes ord på grund af deres hemmelige forening og ugudelige vederstyggeligheder.

23 Og det skete, at Coriantor fik Eter, og han døde efter at have levet i fangenskab alle sine dage.

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Eters Bog 12

- 1 Og det skete, at Eters dage var i Coriantumrs dage; og Coriantumr var konge over hele landet.
- 2 Og Eter var Herrens profet; derfor trådte Eter frem i Coriantumrs dage og begyndte at profetere for folket, for han kunne ikke holdes tilbage på grund af Herrens Ånd, som var i ham.
- 3 For han råbte fra om morgenen, lige indtil solen gik ned, mens han formanede folket til at tro på Gud til omvendelse, for at de ikke skulle blive udryddet, og sagde til dem, at ved tro bliver alt opfyldt.
- 4 Derfor kan den, der tror på Gud, med vished håbe på en bedre verden, ja, en plads ved Guds højre hånd, hvilket håb kommer af tro og udgør et anker for menneskenes sjæl, som vil gøre dem sikre og standhaftige, altid rig på gode gerninger, og lede dem til at herliggøre Gud.
- 5 Og det skete, at Eter profeterede store og forunderlige ting for folket, som de ikke troede, fordi de ikke så dem.
- 6 Og nu vil jeg, Moroni, sige noget angående dette; jeg vil vise verden, at tro er det, som man håber på og ikke ser; bestrid det derfor ikke, fordi I ikke ser det, for I modtager intet vidnesbyrd, førend jeres tro er blevet prøvet.
- 7 For det var ved tro, at Kristus viste sig for vore fædre, efter at han var opstået fra de døde; og han viste sig ikke for dem, førend de havde tro på ham; derfor må det nødvendigvis være sådan, at nogen havde tro på ham, for han viste sig ikke for verden.
- 8 Men på grund af menneskenes tro har han vist sig for verden og herliggjort Faderens navn og beredt en vej, så andre derved kan blive delagtige i den himmelske gave, så de kan have håb om det, som de ikke har set.
- 9 Derfor kan også I have håb og blive delagtige i gaven, hvis I blot vil have tro.
- 10 Se, det var ved tro, at de gamle blev kaldet efter Guds hellige orden.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

11 Derfor, ved tro blev Moseloven givet. Men ved sin gave, sin Søn, har Gud beredt en mere fortrinlig vej, og det er ved tro, at den er blevet opfyldt.

12 For hvis der ikke er nogen tro blandt menneskenes børn, kan Gud ikke udføre noget mirakel blandt dem; derfor viste han sig ikke, førend de troede.

13 Se, det var Almas og Amuleks tro, som fik fængslet til at styrte til jorden.

14 Se, det var Nefis og Lehis tro, der udvirkede forandringen af lamanitterne, så de blev døbt med ild og med Helligånden.

15 Se, det var Ammons og hans brøders tro, der udvirkede så stort et mirakel blandt lamanitterne.

16 Ja, og alle de, der udvirkede mirakler, udvirkede dem ved tro, både de, der levede før Kristus, og også de, der levede efter.

17 Og det var ved tro, at de tre disciple fik et løfte om, at de ikke skulle smage døden; og de fik ikke løftet, førend de troede.

18 Og der er heller ikke nogen, der på noget tidspunkt har udvirket mirakler, førend de troede; derfor troede de først på Guds Søn.

19 Og der var mange, hvis tro var så overordentlig stærk, selv før Kristus kom, at de ikke kunne holdes uden for sløret, men som i sandhed med øjnene så det, som de havde set med troens øje, og de var glade.

20 Og se, vi har set i denne optegnelse, at en af disse var Jereds bror, for så stor var hans tro på Gud, at da Gud rakte fingeren frem, kunne han ikke skjule den for Jereds brors øjne på grund af sit ord, som han havde talt til ham, hvilket ord han havde fået ved tro.

21 Og efter at Jereds bror havde set Herrens finger, kunne Herren på grund af det løfte, som Jereds bror havde fået ved tro, ikke skjule noget for hans øjne; derfor viste han ham alt, for han kunne ikke længere holdes uden for sløret.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

22 Og det er ved tro, at mine fædre har fået det løfte, at dette skal komme til deres brødre ved ikke-jøderne; derfor har Herren, ja, Jesus Kristus selv, befalet mig.

23 Og jeg sagde til ham: Herre, ikke-jøderne vil gøre nar af dette på grund af vor svaghed med hensyn til at skrive, for Herre, du har gjort os mægtige med hensyn til ord ved tro, men du har ikke gjort os mægtige med hensyn til at skrive, for du har gjort det således, at hele dette folk kan tale meget på grund af Helligånden, som du har givet dem;

24 og du har gjort det således, at vi kun kan skrive lidt på grund af vore hænders kejtethed. Se, du har ikke gjort os mægtige med hensyn til at skrive, ligesom Jereds bror, for du gjorde ham i stand til, at det, som han skrev, blev mægtigt ligesom du, til med kraft at få mennesker til at læse det.

25 Du har også gjort vore ord kraftige og mægtige, så vi ikke engang kan skrive dem, når vi derfor skriver, ser vi vor svaghed og snubler på grund af sammensætningen af vore ord, og jeg frygter, at ikke-jøderne vil gøre nar af vore ord.

26 Og da jeg havde sagt dette, talte Herren til mig og sagde: Tåber gør nar, men de skal sørge; og min nåde er tilstrækkelig for de sagtmødige, så de ikke vil drage fordel af jeres svaghed;

27 og hvis menneskene kommer til mig, vil jeg vise dem deres svaghed. Jeg giver menneskene svaghed, så de kan være ydmyge; og min nåde er tilstrækkelig for alle mennesker, som ydmyger sig for mig; for hvis de ydmyger sig for mig og har tro på mig, så vil jeg gøre det svage stærkt for dem.

28 Se, jeg vil vise ikke-jøderne deres svaghed, og jeg vil vise dem, at tro, håb og næstekærlighed fører til mig – kil-den til al retfærdighed.

29 Og da jeg, Moroni, havde hørt disse ord, var jeg trøstet og sagde: O Herre, din retfærdige vilje ske, for jeg ved, at du virker for menneskenes børn i forhold til deres tro.

30 For Jereds bror sagde til bjerget Zerim: Flyt dig! og det blev flyttet. Og hvis han ikke havde haft tro, ville det ikke have flyttet sig, altså virker du, efter at mennesker har fået tro.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerim, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

31 For således gav du dig til kende for dine disciple, for efter at de havde fået tro og talte i dit navn, viste du dig for dem i stor kraft.

32 Og jeg husker også, at du har sagt, at du har beredt et hus for mennesket, ja, blandt din Faders boliger, hvorfor mennesket kan få et mere fortrinligt håb; derfor må mennesket håbe, ellers kan det ikke få en arv i det sted, som du har beredt.

33 Og videre husker jeg, at du har sagt, at du har elsket verden så meget, at du har nedlagt dit liv for verden, for at du kunne tage det op igen for at berede et sted for menneskenes børn.

34 Og se, jeg ved, at denne kærlighed, som du har næret til menneskenes børn, er næstekærlighed; derfor, medmindre menneskene nærer næstekærlighed, kan de ikke arve det sted, som du har beredt i din Faders boliger.

35 Derfor ved jeg ud fra det, som du har sagt, at hvis ikke-jøderne ikke nærer næstekærlighed på grund af vor svaghed, at du da vil prøve dem og tage deres talent fra dem, ja, det, som de har modtaget, og give det til dem, som skal have mere rigeligt.

36 Og det skete, at jeg bad til Herren om, at han ville skænke ikke-jøderne nåde, så de kunne nære næstekærlighed.

37 Og det skete, at Herren sagde til mig: Om de ikke nærer næstekærlighed, så betyder det ikke noget for dig, for du har været trofast; derfor skal dine klæder blive gjort rene. Og fordi du har set din svaghed, skal du blive gjort stærk, ja, så du kan sætte dig på den plads, som jeg har beredt i min Faders boliger.

38 Og nu byder jeg, Moroni, farvel til ikke-jøderne, ja, og også til mine brødre, som jeg elsker, indtil vi skal mødes for Kristi dommersæde, hvor alle mennesker skal vide, at mine klæder ikke er plettet af jeres blod.

39 Og da skal I vide, at jeg har set Jesus, og at han har talt med mig ansigt til ansigt, og at han fortalte om dette med tydelig ydmyghed, ligesom et menneske taler med et andet, på mit eget sprog;

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

40 og kun lidt af det har jeg skrevet på grund af min svage evne til at skrive.

41 Og se, jeg vil anbefale jer at søge denne Jesus, om hvem profeterne og apostlene har skrevet, så den nåde, der er i Gud Faderen og også i Herren Jesus Kristus og i Helligånden, som aflægger vidnesbyrd om dem, må være og forblive i jer for evigt. Amen.

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

Eters Bog 13

- 1 Og nu skrider jeg, Moroni, til at afslutte min optegnelse angående udryddelsen af det folk, om hvem jeg har skrevet.
- 2 For se, de forkastede alle Eters ord, for han fortalte dem i sandhed om alt fra menneskets begyndelse, og at dette land, efter at vandene havde trukket sig tilbage fra dets overflade, blev et udsøgt land, mere end alle andre lande, et land, udvalgt af Herren; derfor vil Herren have, at alle mennesker, som bor på overfladen deraf, skal tjene ham;
- 3 og at det var stedet for det ny Jerusalem, som skal komme ned fra himlen, og for Herrens helligdom.
- 4 Se, Eter så Kristi dage, og han talte om et nyt Jerusalem i dette land.
- 5 Og han talte også om Israels hus og om det Jerusalem, hvorfra Lehi skulle komme – at det, efter at være blevet ødelagt, skulle blive bygget op igen, en hellig by for Herren; derfor kunne det ikke blive et nyt Jerusalem, for det havde været til i fordums tid; men det skulle blive bygget op igen og blive en hellig by for Herren; og det skulle blive bygget til Israels hus –
- 6 og at et nyt Jerusalem skulle blive bygget i dette land til resten af Josefs efterkommere, for hvilket der har været et sindbillede.
- 7 For ligesom Josef førte sin far ned til Egyptens land, så han døde dér; derfor førte Herren en rest af Josefs efterkommere ud af Jerusalems land, for at han kunne være barmhjertig mod Josefs efterkommere, så de ikke skulle omkomme, ligesom han var barmhjertig mod Josefs far, så han ikke skulle omkomme.
- 8 Derfor skal resten af Josefs hus blive bygget i dette land, og det skal være et arveland for dem; og de skal bygge en hellig by for Herren, ligesom det fordums Jerusalem; og de skal ikke mere blive blandet med andre, før enden kommer, da jorden skal forgå.
- 9 Og der skal være en ny himmel og en ny jord; og de skal være ligesom de gamle bortset fra, at de gamle er forgået, og alt er blevet nyt.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

- 10 Og så kommer det ny Jerusalem; og velsignede er de, som bor deri, for det er dem, hvis klæder er hvide ved Lammets blod; og det er dem, som bliver regnet blandt resten af Josefs efterkommere, som var af Israels hus.
- 11 Og så kommer også det gamle Jerusalem; og indbyggerne deri, velsignede er de, for de er blevet vasket i Lammets blod; og det er dem, som blev spredt og indsamlet fra jordens fire hjørner og fra nordens landene og er delagtige i opfyldelsen af den pagt, som Gud sluttede med deres fader Abraham.
- 12 Og når dette sker, opfyldes det skriftsted, som siger, at der er dem, der var først, som skal blive sidst; og der er dem, der var sidst, som skal blive først.
- 13 Jeg skulle til at skrive mere, men det bliver mig forbudt; men store og forunderlige var Eters profetier; men de regnede ham for intet og stødte ham ud; og han skjulte sig i en klippehule om dagen, og om natten gik han ud og iagttog det, der skulle komme over folket.
- 14 Og mens han boede i klippehulen, udfærdigede han resten af denne optegnelse, idet han om natten iagttog de ødelæggelser, der kom over folket.
- 15 Og det skete i det selv samme år, som han var blevet stødt ud af folket, at der opstod en stor krig blandt dem, for der var mange, som var mægtige mænd, der rejste sig og forsøgte at slå Coriantumr ihjel ved deres hemmelige planer om ugudelighed, om hvilke der er blevet talt.
- 16 Og se, Coriantumr, der selv havde studeret alle krigskunster og al verdens snedighed, udkæmpede et slag mod dem, som forsøgte at slå ham ihjel.
- 17 Men han omvendte sig ikke, ej heller hans skønne sønner eller døtre, ej heller Cohors skønne sønner og døtre, ej heller Corihors skønne sønner og døtre; og kort sagt var der ingen af de skønne sønner og døtre på hele landets overflade, der omvendte sig fra deres synder.
- And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.
- And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.
- And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.
- And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.
- And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.
- And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.
- And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.
- But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

18 Derfor skete det, at der i det første år, hvor Eter boede i klippehulen, var mange folk, der blev dræbt ved sværdet af disse hemmelige sammensværgelser, der kæmpede mod Coriantumr, for at de kunne vinde riget.

19 Og det skete, at Coriantumrs sønner kæmpede meget og blødte meget.

20 Og i det andet år kom Herrens ord til Eter, at han skulle drage hen og profetere for Coriantumr, at hvis han ville omvende sig og hele hans husstand, så ville Herren give ham hans rige og skåne folket –

21 ellers ville de blive slået ihjel, og hele hans husstand, bortset fra ham selv. Og han ville kun leve for at se opfyldelsen af de profetier, som var blevet talt angående et andet folk, som skulle få landet som deres arvelod; og Coriantumr ville blive begravet af dem; og hver sjæl ville blive slået ihjel, med undtagelse af Coriantumr.

22 Men det skete, at Coriantumr ikke omvendte sig, ej heller hans husstand, ej heller folket, og krigene hørte ikke op; og de forsøgte at dræbe Eter, men han flygtede for dem og skjulte sig igen i klippehulen.

23 Og det skete, at Shared rejste sig, og han udkæmpede også et slag mod Coriantumr; og han slog ham, således at han i det tredje år førte ham i fangenskab.

24 Og i det fjerde år slog Coriantumrs sønner Shared og genvandt riget for deres far.

25 Se, der opstod en krig på hele landets overflade; hver mand kæmpede med sin bande for det, som han ønskede.

26 Og der fandtes røvere og kort sagt al slags ugudelighed på landets overflade.

27 Og det skete, at Coriantumr var overordentlig vred på Shared, og han drog mod ham med sine hære for at kæmpe; og de mødtes i stor vrede, og de mødtes i Gilgals dal, og slaget blev overordentlig hårdt.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

28 Og det skete, at Shared kæmpede imod ham i et tidsrum af tre dage. Og det skete, at Coriantumr slog ham og forfulgte ham, indtil han kom til Heshlons sletter.

29 Og det skete, at Shared igen udkæmpede et slag mod ham på sletterne; og se, han slog Coriantumr og drev ham tilbage til Gilgals dal igen.

30 Og Coriantumr udkæmpede igen et slag mod Shared i Gilgals dal, hvori han slog Shared og slog ham ihjel.

31 Og Shared sårede Coriantumr i låret, så han ikke drog ud for at kæmpe igen i et tidsrum af to år, i hvilken tid hele folket på landets overflade udgød blod, og der var ingen til at holde dem tilbage.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Eters Bog 14

- 1 Og se, der begyndte at komme en stor forbandelse over hele landet på grund af folkets ugudelighed, hvilket gjorde, at hvis en mand lagde sit værktøj eller sit sværd på sin hylde eller på det sted, hvor han ville opbevare det, se, så kunne han ikke finde det den næste dag, så stor var forbandelsen over landet.
- 2 Derfor klamrede hver mand sig til det, der var hans eget, med sine egne hænder og ville ikke låne, ej heller låne ud; og hver mand holdt fæstet af sit sværd i sin højre hånd til forsvar for sin ejendom og sit eget liv og sine hustruers og børns.
- 3 Og se, efter tidsrummet på to år og efter Shareds død, se, da rejste Shareds bror sig, og han udkæmpede et slag mod Coriantumr, i hvilket Coriantumr slog ham og forfulgte ham til Akishs ødemark.
- 4 Og det skete, at Shareds bror udkæmpede et slag mod ham i Akishs ødemark; og slaget blev overordentlig hårdt, og mange tusinde faldt for sværdet.
- 5 Og det skete, at Coriantumr belejrede ødemarken; og Shareds bror marcherede ud af ødemarken om natten og slog en del af Coriantumrs hær ihjel, mens de var berusede.
- 6 Og han kom til Morons land og satte sig på Coriantumrs trone.
- 7 Og det skete, at Coriantumr opholdt sig med sin hær i ødemarken i et tidsrum af to år, hvori han modtog stor styrke til sin hær.
- 8 Se, Shareds bror, hvis navn var Gilead, modtog også stor styrke til sin hær takket være hemmelige sammensværgelser.
- 9 Og det skete, at hans højpræst myrdede ham, mens han sad på sin trone.
- 10 Og det skete, at en fra de hemmelige sammensværgelser myrdede ham i en hemmelig passage og vandt riget til sig selv; og hans navn var Lib; og Lib var en mand af stor vækst, større end nogen anden mand i hele folket.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

11 Og det skete i Libs første år, at Coriantumr kom op til Morons land og udkæmpede et slag mod Lib.

12 Og det skete, at han kæmpede mod Lib, og under kampen ramte Lib ham i armen, så han blev såret; alligevel trængte Coriantumrs hær sig frem mod Lib, så han flygtede ud til grænseegnene ved kysten.

13 Og det skete, at Coriantumr forfulgte ham; og Lib udkæmpede et slag mod ham på kysten.

14 Og det skete, at Lib slog Coriantumrs hær, så de igen flygtede til Akishs ødemark.

15 Og det skete, at Lib forfulgte ham, indtil han kom til Agoshs sletter. Og Coriantumr havde taget hele folket med sig, da han flygtede for Lib til den del af landet, hvortil han flygtede.

16 Og da han var kommet til Agoshs sletter, udkæmpede han et slag mod Lib, og han slog løs på ham, indtil han døde; alligevel faldt Libs bror over Coriantumr i stedet for, og slaget blev overordentlig hårdt, hvorfor Coriantumr igen flygtede for Libs brors hær.

17 Se, navnet på Libs bror blev kaldt for Shiz. Og det skete, at Shiz forfulgte Coriantumr, og han erobrede mange byer, og han slog både kvinder og børn ihjel, og han brændte byerne ned.

18 Og der gik en frygt for Shiz gennem hele landet, ja, et røb lød gennem landet: Hvem kan stå sig imod Shiz' hær? Se, han fejer jorden foran sig!

19 Og det skete, at folket begyndte at flokkes i hære over hele landets overflade.

20 Og de blev delt; en del af dem flygtede til Shiz' hær, og en del af dem flygtede til Coriantumrs hær.

21 Og så omfattende og langvarig havde krigen været, og så længe havde synet af blodsudgydelse og nedslagtning stået på, at hele landets overflade var dækket med ligene af de døde.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

22 Og så hurtigt og hastigt foregik krigen, at der ikke var nogen tilbage til at begrave de døde, men de marcherede fra udgydelse af blod til udgydelse af blod og lod ligene af både mænd, kvinder og børn ligge spredt på landets overflade til at blive bytte for kødædende maddiker.

23 Og stanken fra dem bredte sig over landets overflade, ja, over hele landets overflade; derfor blev folket besværet om dagen og om natten på grund af stanken fra dem.

24 Alligevel holdt Shiz ikke op med at forfølge Coriantumr, for han havde svoret at ville hævne sig på Coriantumr over blodet af sin bror, der var blevet slået ihjel, og på Herrens ord, der kom til Eter om, at Coriantumr ikke skulle falde for sværdet.

25 Og således ser vi, at Herren hjemsøgte dem i sin vredes fylde, og at deres ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder havde beredt en vej til deres evigtvarende udryddelse.

26 Og det skete, at Shiz forfulgte Coriantumr mod øst, helt til grænseegnene ved kysten, og dér udkæmpede han et slag mod Shiz i et tidsrum af tre dage.

27 Og så skrækkelig var ødelæggelsen blandt Shiz' hære, at folket begyndte at blive bange og begyndte at flygte for Coriantumrs hære; og de flygtede til Corihors land og fejede indbyggerne bort foran sig, alle dem, som ikke ville slutte sig til dem.

28 Og de slog deres telte op i Corihors dal, og Coriantumr slog sine telte op i Shurrs dal. Se, Shurrs dal lå i nærheden af højen Comnor, derfor samlede Coriantumr sine hære på højen Comnor og lod en basun lyde for Shiz' hære for at udfordre dem til kamp.

29 Og det skete, at de kom frem, men blev drevet tilbage igen; og de kom for anden gang og blev drevet tilbage igen for anden gang. Og det skete, at de kom igen for tredje gang, og slaget blev overordentlig hårdt.

30 Og det skete, at Shiz ramte Coriantumr, så han gav ham mange dybe sår; og Coriantumr, der havde mistet sit blod, besvimed og blev båret bort, som om han var død.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewn upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

31 Se, tabet af mænd, kvinder og børn var på begge sider så stort, at Shiz befalede sine folk, at de ikke skulle følge Coriantumrs hære, derfor vendte de tilbage til deres lejr.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Eters Bog 15

- 1 Og det skete, at da Coriantumr var kommet sig efter sine sår, begyndte han at huske de ord, som Eter havde talt til ham.
- 2 Han så, at der allerede var blevet slået næsten to millioner af hans folk ihjel ved sværdet, og han begyndte at sørge i hjertet; ja, to millioner mægtige mænd var blevet slået ihjel, og ligeså deres hustruer og deres børn.
- 3 Han begyndte at omvende sig fra det onde, som han havde gjort; han begyndte at huske de ord, der var blevet talt ved alle profeternes mund; og han så dem, at de indtil da var blevet opfyldt, hvert et ord; og hans sjæl sørgede og nægtede at lade sig trøste.
- 4 Og det skete, at han skrev et brev til Shiz, hvori han ønskede af ham, at han ville skåne folket, og skrev, at han da ville opgive riget for folkets livs skyld.
- 5 Og det skete, at da Shiz havde modtaget hans brev, skrev han i et brev til Coriantumr, at hvis han ville overgive sig, så han kunne dræbe ham med hans eget sværd, ville han skåne folkets liv.
- 6 Og det skete, at folket ikke omvendte sig fra deres ugedelighed; og Coriantumrs folk blev ophidset til vrede mod Shiz' folk, og Shiz' folk blev ophidset til vrede mod Coriantumrs folk; derfor udkæmpede Shiz' folk et slag mod Coriantumrs folk.
- 7 Og da Coriantumr så, at han var ved at falde, flygtede han atter for Shiz' folk.
- 8 Og det skete, at han kom til Ripliankums vande, der, når det oversættes, betyder store eller som overgår alle; derfor, da de kom til disse vande, slog de deres telte op; og Shiz slog også sine telte op i nærheden af dem; og derfor kom de den næste dag frem for at kæmpe.
- 9 Og det skete, at de udkæmpede et overordentlig hårdt slag, hvori Coriantumr igen blev såret, og han besvimed som følge af blodtabet.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

- 10 Og det skete, at Coriantumrs hære trængte Shiz' hære, så de slog dem, så de fik dem til at flygte for sig; og de flygtede mod syd og slog deres telte op på et sted, som blev kaldt Ogath.
- 11 Og det skete, at Coriantumrs hær slog deres telte op ved højen Rama; og det var den selv samme høj, hvori min far, Mormon, skjulte de optegnelser, som var hellige, til Herren.
- 12 Og det skete, at de samlede alle de mennesker sammen fra hele landets overflade, som ikke var blevet slået ihjel, med undtagelse af Eter.
- 13 Og det skete, at Eter så alle folkets gerninger; og han så, at de folk, der var for Coriantumr, blev samlet i Coriantumrs hær; og de folk, der var for Shiz, blev samlet i Shiz' hær.
- 14 Derfor samlede de folket over et tidsrum af fire år, så de kunne få fat på alle, som var på landets overflade, og så de kunne få al den styrke, som det var muligt, at de kunne få.
- 15 Og det skete, at da de alle var samlet, enhver til den hær, som han ønskede, med deres hustruer og deres børn – både mænd, kvinder og børn var bevæbnet med krigsvåben og havde skjolde og brynjer og hjelme og var klædt på til krig – marcherede de frem, den ene mod den anden, for at kæmpe; og de kæmpede hele den dag og sejrede ikke.
- 16 Og det skete, at da det blev nat, var de trætte og trak sig tilbage til deres lejre; og efter at de havde trukket sig tilbage til deres lejre, begyndte de at hyle og at klage over tabet af de slagte af deres folk; og så høje var deres skrig, deres hyl og klageråb, at de fuldstændig sønderrev luften.
- 17 Og det skete, at de den næste dag igen drog ud for at kæmpe, og stor og skrækkelig var den dag; alligevel sejrede de ikke, og da natten igen kom, sønderrev de luften med deres skrig, deres hyl og deres sørgeudbrud over tabet af de slagte af deres folk.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

18 Og det skete, at Coriantumr igen skrev et brev til Shiz, hvori han ønskede af ham, at han ikke igen ville komme for at kæmpe, men at han ville tage riget og skåne folkets liv.

19 Men se, Herrens Ånd var hørt op med at kæmpe med dem, og Satan havde fuld magt over folkets hjerte, for de havde overgivet sig til deres hjertes hårdhed og deres sinds blindhed, så de måtte blive tilintetgjort; derfor drog de igen ud for at kæmpe.

20 Og det skete, at de kæmpede hele den dag, og da natten kom, sov de på deres sværd.

21 Og den næste dag kæmpede de, indtil natten kom.

22 Og da natten kom, var de berusede af vrede, ligesom et menneske, der er beruset af vin, og de sov igen på deres sværd.

23 Og den næste dag kæmpede de igen; og da natten kom, var de alle faldet for sværdet med undtagelse af tooghalvtreds af Coriantumrs folk og niogtres af Shiz' folk.

24 Og det skete, at de sov på deres sværd den nat, og den næste dag kæmpede de igen, og de stred af al magt med deres sværd og med deres skjolde hele den dag.

25 Og da natten kom, var der toogtredive af Shiz' folk og syvogtyve af Coriantumrs folk.

26 Og det skete, at de spiste og sov og beredte sig på at dø den næste dag. Og de var store og mægtige mænd hvad angår menneskers styrke.

27 Og det skete, at de kæmpede i et tidsrum af tre timer, og de besvimede som følge af blodtabet.

28 Og det skete, at da Coriantumrs mænd havde fået tilstrækkelig styrke, så de kunne gå, skulle de til at flygte for deres liv; men se, Shiz rejste sig, og ligeså hans mænd, og han svor i sin vrede, at han ville slå Coriantumr ihjel eller selv omkomme for sværdet.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

29 Derfor forfulgte han dem, og den næste dag indhentede han dem; og de kæmpede igen med sværdet. Og det skete, at da de alle var faldet for sværdet med undtagelse af Coriantumr og Shiz, se, da var Shiz besvimet som følge af blodtabet.

30 Og det skete, at efter at Coriantumr havde støttet sig til sit sværd for at hvile sig lidt, huggede han hovedet af Shiz.

31 Og det skete, at efter at han havde hugget hovedet af Shiz, rejste Shiz sig op på hænderne og faldt; og efter at han havde kæmpet for at få luft, døde han.

32 Og det skete, at Coriantumr faldt til jorden og blev, som om han var livløs.

33 Og Herren talte til Eter og sagde til ham: Gå ud. Og han gik ud og så, at Herrens ord alle var blevet opfyldt; og han afsluttede sin optegnelse (og jeg har ikke skrevet en hundrededel), og han skjulte dem på en måde, så Limhis folk fandt dem.

34 Se, de sidste ord, som blev skrevet af Eter, er disse: Hvad enten Herren vil, at jeg skal forvandles, eller at jeg skal lide Herrens vilje i kødet, så betyder det intet, dersom jeg bliver frelst i Guds rige. Amen.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Moronis Bog

Moronis Bog 1

- 1 Se, efter at jeg, Moroni, var blevet færdig med at forkorte beretningen om Jereds folk, troede jeg ikke, at jeg skulle skrive mere, men jeg er endnu ikke omkommet; og jeg giver mig ikke til kende for lamanitterne, for at de ikke skal slå mig ihjel.
- 2 For se, deres indbyrdes krige er overordentlig heftige; og på grund af deres had sender de enhver nefit, som ikke vil fornægte Kristus, i døden.
- 3 Og jeg, Moroni, vil ikke fornægte Kristus; derfor vander jeg, hvorhen jeg kan, for mit eget livs sikkerheds skyld.
- 4 Derfor skriver jeg, i modsætning til hvad jeg havde troet, yderligere nogle få ord, for jeg havde troet, at jeg ikke skulle skrive mere, men jeg skriver yderligere nogle få ord, for at de måske kan blive af værdi for mine brødre, lamanitterne, en dag i fremtiden efter Herrens vilje.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Moronis Bog 2

- 1 Kristi ord, som han talte til sine disciple, de tolv, som han havde udvalgt, da han lagde hænderne på dem:
- 2 Og han kaldte dem ved navn og sagde: I skal påkalde Faderen i mit navn i indtrængende bøn; og efter at I har gjort dette, skal I få magt, så I til den, på hvem I lægger hænderne, skal give Helligånden; og i mit navn skal I give den, for således gør mine apostle.
- 3 Se, Kristus talte disse ord til dem på det tidspunkt, da han viste sig for første gang; og mængden hørte det ikke, men disciplene hørte det; og på så mange, som de lagde deres hænder, faldt Helligånden.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Moronis Bog 3

- 1 Den måde, hvorpå de disciple, som blev kaldt kirkens ældster, ordinerede præster og lærere:
- 2 Efter at de havde bedt til Faderen i Kristi navn, lagde de hænderne på dem og sagde:
- 3 I Jesu Kristi navn ordinerer jeg dig til at være præst (eller hvis han skulle være lærer: ordinerer jeg dig til at være lærer), til at prædike omvendelse og syndernes forladelse ved Jesus Kristus ved udholdenhed i troen på hans navn til enden. Amen.
- 4 Og på denne måde ordinerede de præster og lærere i overensstemmelse med Guds gaver og kald til menneskene; og de ordinerede dem ved Helligåndens kraft, som var i dem.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Moronis Bog 4

- 1 Den måde, hvorpå deres ældster og præster velsignede Kristi kød og blod til kirken, og de velsignede det i overensstemmelse med Kristi befalinger, derfor ved vi, at måden er rigtig, og ældsten eller præsten velsignede det.
- 2 Og de knælede ned sammen med kirken og bad til Faderen i Kristi navn og sagde:
- 3 O Gud, du evige Fader, vi beder dig i din Søns, Jesu Kristi, navn velsigne og hellige dette brød for alle de sjæle, som nyder deraf, så de må spise til erindring om din Søns legeme og vidne for dig, o Gud, du evige Fader, at de er villige til at påtage sig din Søns navn og altid erindre ham og holde hans befalinger, som han har givet dem, så de altid må have hans Ånd hos sig. Amen.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moronis Bog 5

- 1 Den måde, hvorpå vinen blev velsignet. Se, de tog bægeret og sagde:
- 2 O Gud, du evige Fader, vi beder dig i din Søns, Jesu Kristi, navn velsigne og hellige denne vin for alle de sjæle, som drikker deraf, så de må gøre det til erindring om din Søns blod, der blev udgydt for dem, så de må vidne for dig, o Gud, du evige Fader, at de altid erindrer ham, så de må have hans Ånd hos sig. Amen.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moronis Bog 6

- 1 Og nu taler jeg om dåb. Se, ældster, præster og lærere blev døbt; og de blev ikke døbt, medmindre de frembragte frugt, som viste, at de var værdige dertil.
- 2 Ej heller modtog de nogen til dåb, medmindre de trådte frem med et sønderknust hjerte og en angerfuld ånd og vidnede for kirken, at de oprigtigt omvendte sig fra alle deres synder.
- 3 Og ingen blev modtaget til dåb, medmindre de påtog sig Kristi navn og havde en fast beslutning om at ville tjene ham til enden.
- 4 Og efter at de var blevet modtaget til dåb og var blevet påvirket og rensset ved Helligåndens kraft, blev de regnet blandt Kristi kirkes folk; og deres navne blev nedskrevet, så de kunne blive husket og få næring ved Guds gode ord for at holde dem på den rette vej og sørge for, at de bestandig var opmærksomme på bøn, idet de alene stolede på Kristi fortjenester, han som var deres tros ophavsmand og fuldender.
- 5 Og kirken mødtes ofte for at faste og for at bede og for at tale, den ene med den anden, om deres sjæls velfærd.
- 6 Og de mødtes ofte for at nyde brød og vin til erindring om Herren Jesus.
- 7 Og de var omhyggelige med at sikre, at der ikke var nogen ugudelighed blandt dem; og de, som man fandt begik misgerninger, og som tre vidner fra kirken dømte skyldige over for ældsterne, deres navne blev slettet, hvis de ikke omvendte sig og ikke bekendte, og de blev ikke regnet blandt Kristi folk.
- 8 Men så ofte som de med oprigtig hensigt omvendte sig og stræbte efter tilgivelse, blev de tilgivet.
- 9 Og deres møder blev ledt af kirken efter Åndens tilskyndelser og ved Helligåndens kraft; for som Helligåndens kraft ledte dem, hvad enten det var til at prædike eller til at formane eller til at bede eller til at anråbe eller til at synge, således blev det gjort.

Moroni 6

- And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.
- Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.
- And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.
- And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.
- And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.
- And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.
- And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.
- But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.
- And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Moroni's Bog 7

- 1 Og nu skriver jeg, Moroni, nogle få af min fars, Mormons, ord, som han talte angående tro, håb og næstekærlighed; for således talte han til folket, mens han underviste dem i den synagoge, som de havde bygget som et sted til at tilbede i.
- 2 Og nu taler jeg, Mormon, til jer, mine elskede brødre; og det er ved Gud Faderens og vor Herre Jesu Kristi nåde og ved hans hellige vilje takket være den gave, som hans kald til mig er, at det er mig tilladt at tale til jer på dette tidspunkt.
- 3 Derfor vil jeg tale til jer, som tilhører kirken, og som er Kristi fredsommelige tilhængere, og som har fået et tilstrækkeligt håb, ved hvilket I kan gå ind til Herrens hvile fra denne tid af, og indtil I skal hvile hos ham i himlen.
- 4 Og se, mine brødre, jeg bedømmer jer således på grund af jeres fredsommelige omgang med menneskenes børn.
- 5 For jeg husker Guds ord, som lyder: På deres gerninger skal I kende dem, for hvis deres gerninger er gode, så er de også gode.
- 6 For se, Gud har sagt, at et menneske, der er ondt, ikke kan gøre det, som er godt; for hvis han bringer en gave eller beder til Gud, så gavner det ham intet, medmindre han gør det med oprigtig hensigt.
- 7 For se, det bliver ikke regnet ham til retfærdighed.
- 8 For se, hvis et menneske, der er ondt, giver en gave, gør han det vrangvilligt, derfor bliver det tilregnet ham på samme måde, som hvis han havde beholdt gaven; derfor regnes han for ond for Gud.
- 9 Og på samme måde bliver det også regnet et menneske til ondt, hvis han beder uden oprigtig hensigt i hjertet; ja, og det gavner ham intet, for Gud modtager ingen sådan.
- 10 Derfor kan et menneske, der er ondt, ikke gøre det, som er godt; ej heller vil han give en god gave.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

11 For se, en bitter kilde kan ikke give godt vand, ej heller kan en god kilde give bittert vand; derfor kan et menneske, som er Djævelens tjener, ikke følge Kristus, og hvis han følger Kristus, kan han ikke være Djævelens tjener.

12 Derfor kommer alt det, som er godt, fra Gud; og det, som er ondt, kommer fra Djævelen; for Djævelen er fjende af Gud og kæmper bestandigt mod ham og opfordrer og tilskynder til synd og til bestandigt at gøre det, som er ondt.

13 Men se, det, som er af Gud, opfordrer og tilskynder til bestandigt at gøre godt; derfor er alt det, som opfordrer og tilskynder til at gøre godt og til at elske Gud og til at tjene ham, inspireret af Gud.

14 Pas derfor på, mine elskede brødre, at I ikke dømmer det, som er ondt, til at være af Gud, eller det, som er godt og af Gud, til at være af Djævelen.

15 For se, mine brødre, det er givet jer at kunne dømme, så I kan kende godt fra ondt; og måden at dømme på er så tydelig, at I kan kende den med en fuldkommen kundskab, ligesom dagens lys er forskellig fra nattens mørke.

16 For se, Kristi ånd er givet til enhver, så han kan kende godt fra ondt; derfor viser jeg jer, hvordan man skal dømme; for alt, hvad der tilskynder til at gøre godt og formår til at tro på Kristus, udgår ved Kristi gave og kraft; derfor kan I med fuldkommen kundskab vide, at det er af Gud.

17 Men hvad som helst, der formår menneskene til at gøre ondt og ikke tro på Kristus og fornægte ham og ikke tjene Gud, det kan I med fuldkommen kundskab vide er af Djævelen; for på denne måde virker Djævelen, for han formår ingen til at gøre godt, nej, ikke én, ej heller gør hans engle, ej heller gør de, som underkaster sig ham.

18 Og se, mine brødre, eftersom I kender det lys, ved hvilket I kan dømme, hvilket lys er Kristi lys, se da til, at I ikke dømmer urigtigt; for med den selv samme dom, som I dømmer, skal I også blive dømt.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

19 Derfor bønfaller jeg jer, brødre, om, at I skal granske flittigt i Kristi lys, så I kan kende godt fra ondt; og hvis I vil gribe fat i alt godt og ikke fordømme det, skal I med sikkerhed blive Kristi børn.

20 Og se, mine brødre, hvorledes er det muligt, at I kan gribe fat i alt godt?

21 Og nu kommer jeg til den tro, om hvilken jeg sagde, jeg ville tale; og jeg vil fortælle jer, på hvilken måde I kan gribe fat i alt godt.

22 For se, Gud, som ved alt, og som er til fra evighed til evighed, se, han sendte engle ud for at betjene menneskenes børn for at tilkendegive det, der angik Kristi komme; og ved Kristus skulle alt godt komme.

23 Og Gud forkyndte også for profeterne ved sin egen mund, at Kristus skulle komme.

24 Og se, der var forskellige måder, hvorpå han tilkendegav for menneskenes børn det, som var godt; og alt det, som er godt, kommer fra Kristus; ellers var menneskene faldne, og intet godt kunne blive dem til del.

25 Derfor begyndte menneskene ved engles betjening og ved hvert ord, som udgik af Guds mund, at udøve tro på Kristus; og ved tro greb de således fat i alt godt; og således var det indtil Kristi komme.

26 Og efter at han var kommet, blev mennesker også frelst ved tro på hans navn; og ved tro blev de Guds sønner. Og så sandt som Kristus lever, talte han disse ord til vore fædre og sagde: Hvad end I beder Faderen om i mit navn, og som er godt, i tro, overbeviste om at I skal få det, se, det skal blive gjort for jer.

27 Derfor, mine elskede brødre, er mirakler hørt op, fordi Kristus er steget op til himlen og har sat sig ved Guds højre hånd for af Faderen at gøre krav på den ret, som han har til at vise barmhjertighed, hvad angår menneskenes børn?

28 For han har opfyldt lovens krav, og han gør krav på alle dem, der har tro på ham; og de, der har tro på ham, holder fast ved alt godt; derfor taler han menneskenes børns sag; og han bor for evigt i himlene.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

29 Og fordi han har gjort det, mine elskede brødre, er mirakler da hørt op? Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, ej heller er englene hørt op med at betjene menneskenes børn.

30 For se, de er underkastet ham for at tjene på hans befalings ord og for at vise sig for dem, som har en stærk tro og et fast sind i enhver form for gudsfrygt.

31 Og opgaven i deres tjenestegering er at kalde mennesker til omvendelse og at fuldende og at udføre det arbejde, der vedrører Faderens pagter, som han har sluttet med menneskenes børn, at berede vejen blandt menneskenes børn ved at kundgøre Kristi ord for Herrens udvalgte redskaber, så de kan aflægge vidnesbyrd om ham.

32 Og ved at gøre således bereder Gud Herren vejen, så resten af menneskene kan få tro på Kristus, så Helligånden kan få plads i deres hjerte i overensstemmelse med hans kraft; og på denne vis tilvejebringer Faderen de pagter, som han har sluttet med menneskenes børn.

33 Og Kristus har sagt: Hvis I har tro på mig, skal I have magt til at gøre hvad som helst, jeg anser for tjenligt.

34 Og han har sagt: Omvend jer, alle I jordens ender, og kom til mig, og bliv døbt i mit navn, og hav tro på mig, så I kan blive frelst.

35 Og se, mine elskede brødre, hvis det er tilfældet, at det, som jeg har talt til jer, er sandt, og Gud vil vise jer med magt og stor herlighed på den yderste dag, at det er sandt, og hvis det er sandt, er miraklernes dage da hørt op?

36 Eller er englene hørt op med at vise sig for menneskenes børn? Eller har han holdt Helligåndens kraft tilbage fra dem? Eller vil han det, så længe tiden varer, eller jorden står, eller der på dens overflade findes et eneste menneske, der kan frelses?

37 Se, jeg siger jer: Nej, for det er ved tro, at mirakler udvirkes; og det er ved tro, at engle viser sig og betjener menneskene; ve derfor menneskenes børn, hvis dette er hørt op, for det er på grund af vantro, og alt er forgæves.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

38 For ifølge Kristi ord kan ingen blive frelst, medmindre de har tro på hans navn; hvis dette derfor er hørt op, så er troen også hørt op; og forfærdelig er da menneskets tilstand, for de er, som om der ingen forløsning var tilvejebragt.

39 Men se, mine elskede brødre, jeg tror bedre om jer, for jeg tror, at I på grund af jeres sagtmodighed har tro på Kristus; for hvis I ikke har tro på ham, så er I ikke skikket til at blive regnet blandt hans kirkes folk.

40 Og videre, mine elskede brødre, vil jeg tale til jer angående håb. Hvorledes kan I opnå tro, medmindre I har håb?

41 Og hvad er det, I skal håbe på? Se, jeg siger jer, at I skal have håb om ved Kristi forsoning og hans opstandelses kraft at blive oprejst til evigt liv, og dette på grund af jeres tro på ham i overensstemmelse med løftet.

42 Hvis et menneske derfor har tro, må han nødvendigvis have håb, for uden tro kan der ikke være noget håb.

43 Og videre, se, jeg siger jer, at han ikke kan have tro og håb, medmindre han er sagtmodig og ydmyg af hjertet.

44 Hvis ikke, er hans tro og håb forgæves; for ingen bortset fra den sagtmodige og ydmyge af hjertet er antagelig for Gud; og hvis et menneske er sagtmodigt og ydmygt af hjertet og ved Helligåndens kraft bekender, at Jesus er Kristus, må han nødvendigvis nære næstekærlighed; for hvis han ikke nærer næstekærlighed, er han intet; derfor må han nødvendigvis nære næstekærlighed.

45 Og næstekærligheden er langmodig og er venlig og misunder ikke og er ikke opblæst, søger ikke sit eget, bliver ikke let ophidset, tænker ikke ondt og fryder sig ikke ved ugudelighed, men fryder sig ved sandheden, tåler alt, tror alt, håber alt og udholder alt.

46 Derfor, mine elskede brødre, hvis I ikke nærer næstekærlighed, er I intet; for næstekærligheden hører aldrig op. Hold derfor fast ved næstekærligheden, som er det største af alt, for alt skal høre op –

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

47 men næstekærligheden er Kristi rene kærlighed, og den varer ved for evigt; og den, som på den yderste dag findes i besiddelse af den, med ham skal det være vel.

48 Derfor, mine elskede brødre, bed til Faderen med hjertets hele styrke om, at I må blive fyldt af denne kærlighed, som han har skænket alle, som er hans Søns, Jesu Kristi, sande tilhængere, så I kan blive Guds sønner, så vi, når han viser sig, vil være som han, for vi skal se ham, som han er, så vi må have dette håb, så vi må blive renset, ja, ligesom han er ren. Amen.

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Moronis Bog 8

- 1 Et brev fra min far, Mormon, skrevet til mig, Moroni; og det blev skrevet til mig kort efter min kaldelse til tjenestegerningen. Og således skrev han til mig, nemlig:
- 2 Min elskede søn, Moroni, jeg fryder mig overordentlig ved, at din Herre Jesus Kristus har været opmærksom på dig og har kaldet dig til sin tjenestegerning og til sit hellige værk.
- 3 Jeg er altid opmærksom på dig i mine bønner og beder bestandig til Gud Faderen i Jesu, hans hellige barns, navn om, at han i sin uendelige godhed og nåde vil bevare dig ved udholdenhed i tro på hans navn til enden.
- 4 Og nu, min søn, taler jeg til dig om det, som bedrøver mig overordentlig meget; for det bedrøver mig, at der skulle opstå mundhuggerier blandt jer.
- 5 For hvis jeg har hørt sandheden, så har der været mundhuggerier blandt jer angående dåb af jeres små børn.
- 6 Og se, min søn, jeg ønsker af jer, at I skal arbejde flittigt, så denne grove vildfarelse må blive fjernet fra jer, for i den hensigt har jeg skrevet dette brev.
- 7 For straks efter at jeg havde hørt dette fra dig, adspurgte jeg Herren angående denne sag. Og Herrens ord kom til mig ved Helligåndens kraft, således:
- 8 Lyt til Kristi, din forløser, din Herres og din Guds ord. Se, jeg kom til verden, ikke for at kalde de retfærdige, men syndere til omvendelse; de raske har ikke brug for læge, men de som er syge; se, små børn er raske, for de er ikke i stand til at begå synd; derfor er Adams forbandelse taget fra dem ved mig, så den ikke har nogen magt over dem; og loven om omskærelse er afskaffet ved mig.
- 9 Og på denne måde tilkendegav Helligånden Guds ord for mig, derfor ved jeg, min elskede søn, at det er højtidelig bespottelse over for Gud, hvis I døber små børn.

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

10 Se, jeg siger dig, at dette skal I undervise i: Omvendelse og dåb for dem, som kan stilles til regnskab og er i stand til at begå synd; ja, lær forældrene, at de skal omvende sig og blive døbt og ydmyge sig som deres små børn, så skal de alle blive frelst sammen med deres små børn.

11 Og deres små børn har intet behov for omvendelse, ej heller dåb. Se, dåben er til omvendelse for at opfylde befalingerne og få syndsforladelse.

12 Men små børn er levende i Kristus, lige fra verdens grundlæggelse; om det ikke var således, ville Gud være en partisk Gud og også en foranderlig Gud og én, der gør forskel på folk, for hvor mange små børn er ikke døde uden dåb!

13 Derfor, hvis små børn ikke kunne blive frelst uden dåb, måtte de være gået til et uendeligt helvede.

14 Se, jeg siger dig, at den, der tror, at små børn har behov for dåb, er i bitterheds galde og i syndens bånd, for han har hverken tro, håb eller næstekærlighed; hvis han derfor skulle blive slået ihjel, mens han havde denne tanke, måtte han fare ned til helvede.

15 For forfærdelig er den ugudelighed at tro, at Gud frelser det ene barn på grund af dåb, og at det andet skal fortabes, fordi det ikke har nogen dåb.

16 Ve over dem, der fordrejer Herrens veje på denne måde, for de skal fortabes, medmindre de omvender sig. Se, jeg taler med frimodighed, da jeg har myndighed fra Gud; og jeg frygter ikke for, hvad mennesket kan gøre, for fuldkommen kærlighed driver al frygt ud.

17 Og jeg er fyldt af næstekærlighed, som er evigtvarende kærlighed, derfor er alle børn lige for mig, derfor elsker jeg små børn med en fuldkommen kærlighed, og de er alle lige og delagtige i frelsen.

18 For jeg ved, at Gud ikke er en partisk Gud, ej heller et foranderligt væsen, men han er uforanderlig fra al evighed til al evighed.

19 Små børn kan ikke omvende sig, derfor er det forfærdelig ugudelighed at fornægte Guds rene barmhjertighed over for dem, for de er alle levende ved ham på grund af hans barmhjertighed.

20 Og den, der siger, at små børn har behov for dåb, fornægter Kristi barmhjertighed og regner hans forsoning og hans forløsnings kraft for intet.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

21 Ve sådanne, for de er i fare for død, helvede og uendelig pine. Jeg siger det frimodigt, Gud har befalet mig det. Lyt til dem, og giv agt, ellers skal de stå imod dig ved Kristi dommersæde.

22 For se, alle små børn er levende i Kristus, og ligeså alle dem, der ikke har loven. For forløsningens kraft kommer alle dem til gode, som ikke har nogen lov; derfor kan den, som ikke er dømt skyldig, eller den, som ikke er under nogen fordømmelse, ikke omvende sig; og for sådanne er dåben uden nytte –

23 men det er bespottelse over for Gud, og det fornægter Kristi barmhjertighed og hans hellige Ånds kraft og er at sætte lid til døde gerninger.

24 Se, min søn, dette burde ikke finde sted, for omvendelse er for dem, som er under fordømmelse og under forbandelse af en brudt lov.

25 Og de første frugter af omvendelse er dåb; og dåb kommer af tro for at opfylde befalingerne; og opfyldelsen af befalingerne bringer syndsforladelse.

26 Og syndsforladelse bringer sagtmodighed og ydmyghed af hjertet; og som følge af sagtmodighed og ydmyghed af hjertet kommer Helligåndens besøg, hvilken talsmand fylder dem med håb og fuldkommen kærlighed, hvilken kærlighed holder ud ved flid i bønner, indtil enden kommer, da alle de hellige skal bo hos Gud.

27 Se, min søn, jeg skriver til dig igen, hvis jeg ikke snart drager ud mod lamanitterne. Se, dette folkeslags, eller det nefitiske folks, stolthed bliver deres undergang, medmindre de omvender sig.

28 Bed for dem, min søn, om at omvendelse må blive dem til del. Men se, jeg frygter, at Ånden er hørt op med at kæmpe med dem; og i denne del af landet forsøger de også at bekæmpe al magt og myndighed, som kommer fra Gud; og de fornægter Helligånden.

29 Og efter at have afvist så stor kundskab, min søn, må de snart omkomme som en opfyldelse af de profetier, som blev talt af profeterne såvel som ved vor frelsers egne ord.

30 Farvel, min søn, indtil jeg skriver til dig eller ser dig igen. Amen.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Moronis Bog 9

- 1 Min elskede søn, jeg skriver til dig igen, for at du kan vide, at jeg endnu lever; men jeg skriver noget om det, der er foruroligende.
- 2 For se, jeg har haft et hårdt slag med lamanitterne, i hvilket vi ikke sejrede; og Arkeantus er faldet for sværdet og ligeledes Luram og Emrom; ja, og vi har mistet et stort antal af vore udsøgte mænd.
- 3 Og se nu, min søn, jeg frygter, at lamanitterne vil udrydde dette folk; for de omvender sig ikke, og Satan opbidser dem bestandig til vrede, den ene mod den anden.
- 4 Se, jeg arbejder med dem bestandigt; og når jeg taler Guds ord med skarphed, skælver de og bliver vrede på mig; og når jeg ikke bruger skarphed, forhærder de hjertet imod det; derfor frygter jeg, at Herrens Ånd er hørt op med at kæmpe med dem.
- 5 For så overordentlig vrede bliver de, at det synes mig, som om de ikke har nogen frygt for døden; og de har mistet deres kærlighed, den ene til den anden; og de tørster bestandig efter blod og hævn.
- 6 Og se, min elskede søn, lad os på trods af deres hårdhed arbejde flittigt; for hvis vi hørte op med at arbejde, ville vi blive bragt under fordømmelse; for vi har et arbejde at udføre, mens vi er i denne bolig af ler, så vi kan besejre fjenden af al retfærdighed og hvile vor sjæl i Guds rige.
- 7 Og nu skriver jeg noget om dette folks lidelser. For ifølge den efterretning, jeg har fået fra Ammoron, se, så har lamanitterne mange fanger, som de tog ved Sherrizas tårn; og der var mænd, kvinder og børn.
- 8 Og mændene og fædrene til disse kvinder og børn har de dræbt; og de giver kvinderne kødet af deres mænd og børnene kødet af deres fædre at spise; og intet vand, bortset fra en lille smule, giver de dem.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

9 Og til trods for denne store vederstyggelighed fra lamanitternes side, så overgår den ikke vort folks vederstyggelighed i Moriantum. For se, mange af lamanitternes døtre har de taget til fange; og efter at have berøvet dem det, der var yderst kært og dyrebart, mere end alt andet, nemlig kyskhed og dyd –

10 og efter at de havde gjort dette, myrdede de dem på den mest grufulde måde, idet de torturerede deres legeme, til de døde; og efter at de havde gjort dette, fortærer de deres kød som vilde rovdyr på grund af hjertets hårdhed; og de gør det som tegn på tapperhed.

11 O, min elskede søn, hvorledes kan et folk som dette, uden civilisation –

12 (og blot nogle få år er gået, siden de var et civiliseret og tiltalende folk),

13 men, o min søn, hvorledes kan et folk som dette, der fryder sig ved så megen vederstyggelighed –

14 hvorledes kan vi forvente, at Gud vil holde sin hånd tilbage med hensyn til at fælde dom over os?

15 Se, mit hjerte råber: Ve dette folk. Kom frem og fæld dom, o Gud, og skjul deres synder og ugudelighed og vederstyggeligheder for dit ansigt!

16 Og videre, min søn, der er mange enker og deres døtre, som er tilbage i Sherriza, og den del af forrådet, som lamanitterne ikke tog, se, det har Zenefis hær taget og har efterladt dem til at vandre hvorhen de kan efter føde; og mange gamle kvinder falder om undervejs og dør.

17 Og den hær, som er hos mig, er svag; og lamanitternes hære står mellem Sherriza og mig; og så mange, som er flygtet til Arons hær, er blevet ofre for deres forfærdelige råhed.

18 O, mit folks fordærvelse! De er uden orden og uden barmhjertighed. Se, jeg er kun et menneske, og jeg har kun et menneskes styrke, og jeg kan ikke længere gennemtvinge mine befalinger.

19 De er blevet forhærdede i deres fordærvelse; og de er alle lige rå, og de skåner ingen, hverken gammel eller ung; og de fryder sig ved alt undtagen det, der er godt; og vore kvinders og børns lidelser på hele dette lands overflade overgår alt; ja, tungen kan ikke sige det, ej heller kan det skrives.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

20 Og se, min søn, dvæler jeg ikke længere ved dette rædselsvækkende syn. Se, du kender dette folks ugudelighed, du ved, at de er uden principper og ikke længere har evnen til at føle; og deres ugudelighed overgår lamanitternes.

21 Se, min søn, jeg kan ikke anbefale dem over for Gud af frygt for, at han vil slå mig.

22 Men se, min søn, jeg anbefaler dig over for Gud, og jeg sætter min lid til Kristus, at du vil blive frelst, og jeg beder til Gud om, at han vil skåne dit liv, så du kan være vidne til hans folks tilbagevenden til ham eller deres fuldstændige undergang; for jeg ved, at de må omkomme, medmindre de angrer og vender tilbage til ham.

23 Og hvis de omkommer, er det ligesom med jereditterne på grund af deres hjertes egenrådighed, idet de stræber efter blod og hævn.

24 Og dersom de omkommer, så ved vi, at mange af vore brødre er rømmet til lamanitterne, og at mange flere også vil rømme til dem; skriv derfor noget mere, hvis dit liv bliver skånet, og jeg omkommer og ikke ser dig, men jeg sætter min lid til, at jeg snart skal se dig, for jeg har hellige optegnelser, som jeg gerne vil overdrage dig.

25 Min søn, vær trofast i Kristus; og måtte ikke det, som jeg har skrevet, bedrøve dig, så det tynger dig til døde, men måtte Kristus løfte dig op, og måtte hans lidelser og død og det, at han viste sit legeme for vore fædre, og hans barmhjertighed og langmodighed og håbet om hans herlighed og om det evige liv bo i dit sind for evigt.

26 Og måtte nåden fra Gud Faderen, hvis trone er høj i himlene, og fra vor Herre Jesus Kristus, som sidder ved hans magts højre hånd, indtil alting skal blive ham underkastet, være og forblive hos dig for evigt. Amen.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Moronis Bog 10

- 1 Se, jeg, Moroni, skriver noget af det, der synes mig godt; og jeg skriver til mine brødre lamanitterne; og jeg vil, at de skal vide, at der er gået mere end fire hundrede og tyve år, siden tegnet på Kristi komme blev givet.
- 2 Og jeg forsegler disse optegnelser, efter at jeg har talt nogle få formaningsord til jer.
- 3 Se, jeg vil formane jer til, at I, når I læser dette, hvis Gud anser det for vist, at I læser det, at I husker på, hvor barmhjertig Herren har været mod menneskenes børn fra Adams skabelse helt op til den tid, da I modtager dette, og grunder over det i hjertet.
- 4 Og når I modtager dette, vil jeg formane jer til, at I spørger Gud, den evige Fader, i Kristi navn, om ikke dette er sandt; og hvis I spørger af et oprigtigt hjerte, med oprigtig hensigt, idet I har tro på Kristus, så vil han tilkendegive sandheden af det for jer ved Helligåndens kraft.
- 5 Og ved Helligåndens kraft kan I kende sandheden af alt.
- 6 Og hvad som helst, der er godt, er retfærdigt og sandt; derfor forkaster intet, der er godt, Kristus, men erkender, at han er til.
- 7 Og ved Helligåndens kraft kan I erfare, at han er til; derfor vil jeg formane jer til, at I ikke forkaster Guds kraft, for han virker ved kraft i forhold til menneskenes børns tro på samme måde i dag og i morgen og for evigt.
- 8 Og videre, mine brødre, formaner jeg jer til, at I ikke forkaster Guds gaver, for de er mange, og de kommer fra den samme Gud. Og der er forskellige måder, hvorpå disse gaver bliver givet, men det er den samme Gud, som virker i alt og alle; og de bliver givet ved Guds Ånds tilkendegivelser til menneskene for at gavne dem.
- 9 For se, til én er det givet ved Guds Ånd, at han kan undervise i visdomsord;
- 10 og til en anden, at han kan undervise i kundskabsord ved samme Ånd;
- 11 og til en anden overordentlig stor tro; og til en anden helbredelsens gaver ved samme Ånd;

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

12 og videre, til en anden, at han kan udvirke mægtige
mirakler;

13 og videre, til en anden, at han kan profetere om alt;

14 og videre, til en anden at se engle og betjenende ån-
der;

15 og videre, til en anden alle slags tungemål;

16 og videre, til en anden oversættelse af sprog og af for-
skellige slags tungemål.

17 Og alle disse gaver gives ved Kristi Ånd; og de bliver
hvert enkelt menneske til del efter hans ønske.

18 Og jeg vil formane jer til, mine elskede brødre, at I
husker, at enhver god gave kommer fra Kristus.

19 Og jeg vil formane jer til, mine elskede brødre, at I
husker, at han er den samme i går, i dag og for evigt, og
at alle disse gaver, hvorom jeg har talt, og som er åndeli-
ge, aldrig, så længe verden står, bliver taget bort, kun
som følge af menneskenes børns vantro.

20 Derfor må der være tro; og hvis der må være tro, må
der også være håb; og hvis der må være håb, må der også
være næstekærlighed.

21 Og medmindre I nærer næstekærlighed, kan I på in-
gen måde blive frelst i Guds rige; ej heller kan I blive
frelst i Guds rige, hvis I ikke har tro; ej heller kan I, hvis I
intet håb har.

22 Og hvis I intet håb har, må I nødvendigvis være
fortvivlede; og fortvivlelse skyldes ugudelighed.

23 Og Kristus sagde i sandhed til vore fædre: Hvis I har
tro, kan I gøre alt, der er tjenligt for mig.

24 Og se, jeg taler til alle jordens ender: At hvis den dag
kommer, da Guds kraft og gaver bliver taget bort fra jer,
da sker det på grund af vantro.

25 Og ve menneskenes børn, hvis det er tilfældet, for så
er der ingen blandt jer, som gør godt, nej, ikke én. For
hvis der er én blandt jer, som gør godt, gør han det ved
Guds kraft og gaver.

And again, to another, that he may work mighty mir-
acles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy con-
cerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and
ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of lan-
guages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and
they come unto every man severally, according as he
will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that
ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that
ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and
forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken,
which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as
long as the world shall stand, only according to the un-
belief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be
faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope
there must also be charity.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved
in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the
kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye
have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair;
and despair cometh because of iniquity.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have
faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that
if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall
be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the
case; for there shall be none that doeth good among
you, no not one. For if there be one among you that
doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of
God.

26 Og ve dem, som gør, at dette bliver taget bort, og dør, for de dør i deres synder, og de kan ikke blive frelst i Guds rige; og jeg siger det i overensstemmelse med Kristi ord; og jeg lyver ikke.

27 Og jeg formaner jer til at erindre dette; for tiden kommer snart, da I skal vide, at jeg ikke lyver, for I skal se mig ved Guds domstol; og Gud Herren skal sige til jer: Kundgjorde jeg ikke for jer mine ord, som blev skrevet af denne mand, ligesom en, der råber fra de døde, ja, som en, der taler fra støvet?

28 Jeg kundgør dette, for at profetierne kan blive opfyldt. Og se, de skal udgå af den evige Guds mund; og hans ord skal hvile frem fra slægtled til slægtled.

29 Og Gud skal vise jer, at det, som jeg har skrevet, er sandt.

30 Og atter vil jeg formane jer til, at I kommer til Kristus og griber fat i enhver god gave, og ikke rører den onde gave, ej heller det urene.

31 Og vågn op, og rejs dig af støvet, o Jerusalem; ja, og ifør dig dine smukke klæder, o Zions datter; og forstærk dine stave, og udvid dine grænser for evigt, så du ikke mere skal blive blandet med andre, så den evige Faders pagter, som han har sluttet med dig, o Israels hus, må blive opfyldt.

32 Ja, kom til Kristus, og bliv fuldkommengjort i ham, og fornægt jer selv al gudløshed; og hvis I fornægter jer selv al gudløshed og elsker Gud af al jeres kraft, sind og styrke, da er hans nåde tilstrækkelig for jer, så I ved hans nåde kan blive fuldkomne i Kristus; og hvis I ved Guds nåde er fuldkomne i Kristus, kan I ingenlunde fornægte Guds kraft.

33 Og videre, hvis I ved Guds nåde er fuldkomne i Kristus og ikke fornægter hans kraft, da er I helliggjort i Kristus ved Guds nåde gennem udgydelsen af Kristi blod, hvilket er i Faderens pagt til jeres synders forladelse, så I bliver hellige, uden plet.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

34 Og nu byder jeg alle farvel. Jeg går snart bort for at hvile i Guds paradis, indtil min ånd og mit legeme igen forener sig, og jeg bliver ført sejrrig gennem luften for at møde jer for den mægtige Jahves behagelige domstol, for den Evige Dommer over både levende og døde.
Amen.

Slut

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead.
Amen.

The End